

THE TEACHINGS OF THE BUDDHA

The  
Connected  
Discourses  
of the  
Buddha



*A New Translation of the  
Samyutta Nikāya*



*Translated from the Pāli*



*Bhikkhu Bodhi*

VOLUME I



WISDOM PUBLICATIONS • BOSTON

Wisdom Publications  
199 Elm Street  
Somerville MA 02144  
USA

© 2000 Bhikkhu Bodhi

All rights reserved.

No part of this book may be reproduced in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photography, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system or technologies now known or later developed, without permission in writing from the publisher.

*Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data*

Tipiṭaka. Suttapiṭaka. Saṃyuttanikāya. English

The connected discourses of the Buddha : a new translation of the Saṃyutta Nikāya ; translated from the Pāli ; original translation by Bhikkhu Bodhi.

p. cm. — (Teachings of the Buddha)

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 0-86171-168-8 (alk. paper)

I. Bodhi, Bhikkhu. II. Title. III. Series.

BQ1332.B63 E5 2000

294.3'823—dc21

00-033417

ISBN 0-86171-168-8 (Set)

0-86171-188-2 (Vol I)

0-86171-189-0 (Vol II)

05 04 03 02 01

6 5 4 3 2

Set in DPalatino 10 on 12.4 point

Wisdom Publications' books are printed on acid-free paper and meet the guidelines for permanence and durability of the Committee on Production Guidelines for Book Longevity of the Council on Library Resources.

Printed in the United States of America

*Dedicated to  
the memory of  
my teacher*

Venerable Abhidhajamahāraṭṭhaguru  
Balangoda Ānanda Maitreya Mahānāyaka Thera  
(1896–1998)

*and to the  
memories of my  
chief kalyāṇamittas  
in my life as  
a Buddhist monk*

Venerable Nyanaponika Mahāthera  
(1901–1994)

*and*

Venerable Piyadassi Nāyaka Thera  
(1914–1998)

# General Contents

Preface	11
Key to the Pronunciation of Pāli	19
General Introduction	21

## PART I: The Book with Verses (*Sagāthāvagga*)

Contents	59
Introduction	69
1 <i>Devatāsamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses with Devatās	89
2 <i>Devaputtasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses with Young Devas	139
3 <i>Kosalasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses with the Kosalan	164
4 <i>Mārasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses with Māra	195
5 <i>Bhikkhunīsamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses with Bhikkhunīs	221
6 <i>Brahmasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses with Brahmās	231
7 <i>Brāhmanāsamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses with Brahmins	254
8 <i>Vaṅgisasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses with Vaṅgīsa	280
9 <i>Vanasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses in the Woods	294
10 <i>Yakkhasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses with Yakkhas	305
11 <i>Sakkasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses with Sakka	317
Notes	341

PART II: The Book of Causation (*Nidānavagga*)

Contents	505
Introduction	515
12 <i>Nidānasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses on Causation	533
13 <i>Abhisamayamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses on the Breakthrough	621
14 <i>Dhātusamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses on Elements	627
15 <i>Anamataggasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses on Without Discoverable Beginning	651
16 <i>Kassapasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses with Kassapa	662
17 <i>Lābhasakkārasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses on Gains and Honour	682
18 <i>Rāhulasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses with Rāhula	694
19 <i>Lakkhaṇasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses with Lakkhaṇa	700
20 <i>Opammasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses with Similes	706
21 <i>Bhikkhusamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses with Bhikkhus	713
Notes	725

PART III: The Book of the Aggregates (*Khandhavagga*)

Contents	827
Introduction	839
22 <i>Khandhasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses on the Aggregates	853
23 <i>Rādhasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses with Rādha	984
24 <i>Diṭṭhisamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses on Views	991
25 <i>Okkantisamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses on Entering	1004
26 <i>Uppādasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses on Arising	1008
27 <i>Kilesasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses on Defilements	1012
28 <i>Sāriputtasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses with Sāriputta	1015
29 <i>Nāgasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses on Nāgas	1020
30 <i>Supaṇṇasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses on Supaṇṇas	1023
31 <i>Gandhabbasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses on Gandhabbas	1025

32 <i>Valāhakasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses on Cloud Devas	1028
33 <i>Vacchagottasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses with Vacchagotta	1031
34 <i>Jhānasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses on Meditation	1034
Notes	1043

PART IV: The Book of the Six Sense Bases (*Salāyatanavagga*)

Contents	1109
Introduction	1121
35 <i>Salāyatanasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses on the Six Sense Bases	1133
36 <i>Vedanāsamyyutta</i> : Connected Discourses on Feeling	1260
37 <i>Mātugāmasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses on Women	1286
38 <i>Jambukhādakasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses with Jambukhādaka	1294
39 <i>Sāmaṇḍakasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses with Sāmaṇḍaka	1301
40 <i>Moggallānasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses with Moggallāna	1302
41 <i>Cittasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses with Citta	1314
42 <i>Gāmaṇisamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses with Headmen	1332
43 <i>Asaṅkhatasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses on the Unconditioned	1372
44 <i>Abyākatasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses on the Undeclared	1380
Notes	1397

PART V: The Great Book (*Mahāvagga*)

Contents	1461
Introduction	1485
45 <i>Maggasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses on the Path	1523
46 <i>Bojjhaṅgasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses on the Factors of Enlightenment	1567
47 <i>Satipaṭṭhānasamyutta</i> : Connected Discourses on the Establishments of Mindfulness	1627

- 48 *Indriyasamṃyutta*: Connected Discourses on the Faculties 1668  
 49 *Sammappadhānasamṃyutta*: Connected Discourses on the Right Strivings 1709  
 50 *Balasaṃyutta*: Connected Discourses on the Powers 1713  
 51 *Iddhipādasamṃyutta*: Connected Discourses on the Bases for Spiritual Power 1718  
 52 *Anuruddhasamṃyutta*: Connected Discourses with Anuruddha 1750  
 53 *Jhānasamṃyutta*: Connected Discourses on the Jhānas 1762  
 54 *Ānāpānasamṃyutta*: Connected Discourses on Breathing 1765  
 55 *Sotāpattisamṃyutta*: Connected Discourses on Stream-Entry 1788  
 56 *Saccasaṃyutta*: Connected Discourses on the Truths 1838  
 Notes 1882

Concordances

1. Verse Parallels 1967
2. Exact Sutta Parallels 1983
3. Template Parallels 1986
4. Auditor-Setting Variants 1989

Bibliography 1991

Abbreviations 1999

Pāli-English Glossary 2005

Indexes

- Of Subjects 2027
- Of Proper Names 2049
- Of Similes 2063
- Of Pāli Terms Discussed in the Introduction and Notes 2067

## Preface

The present work offers a complete translation of the *Saṃyutta Nikāya*, “The Connected Discourses of the Buddha,” the third major collection in the Sutta Piṭaka, or “Basket of Discourses,” belonging to the Pāli Canon. The collection is so named because the suttas in any given chapter are connected (*saṃyutta*) by the theme after which the chapter is named. The full *Saṃyutta Nikāya* has been translated previously and published in five volumes by the Pali Text Society under the title *The Book of Kindred Sayings*. The first two volumes were translated by Mrs. C.A.F. Rhys Davids, the last three by F.L. Woodward. This translation, first issued between 1917 and 1930, is dated both in style and technical terminology, and thus a fresh rendition of the *Saṃyutta Nikāya* into English has long been an urgent need for students of early Buddhism unable to read the texts in the original Pāli.

My own translation was undertaken in response to a request made to me in the early 1980s by then Bhikkhu Khantipālo (now Laurence Mills). This request was subsequently reinforced by an encouraging letter from Richard Gombrich, the present president of the Pali Text Society, who has been keenly aware of the need to replace the PTS translations of the Nikāyas by more contemporary versions. Although this appeal came in 1985, owing to prior literary commitments, most notably to the editing of Bhikkhu Ñāṇamoli’s translation of the *Majjhima Nikāya*, I could not begin my translation of the *Saṃyutta* in earnest until the summer of 1989. Now, ten years later, after numerous interruptions and the daunting tasks of revision and annotation, it has at last reached completion.

As with *The Middle Length Discourses of the Buddha*, this transla-

tion aims to fulfil two ideals: first, fidelity to the intended meaning of the texts themselves; and second, the expression of that meaning in clear contemporary language that speaks to the non-specialist reader whose primary interest in the Buddha's teaching is personal rather than professional. Of course, any ideas about "the intended meaning of the texts themselves" will inevitably reflect the subjective biases of the translator, but I have tried to minimize this danger to the best of my ability. To attempt to translate Pāli into a modern Western language rooted in a conceptual framework far removed from the "thought world" of the ancient suttas is also bound to involve some degree of distortion. The only remedy against this, perhaps, is to recommend to the reader the study of Pāli and the reading of the material in the original. Unlike English, or even Sanskrit, Pāli is a highly specialized language with only one major sphere of application—the Buddha's teachings—and thus its terminology is extremely precise, free from intrusive echoes from other domains of discourse. It is also rich in nuances, undertones, and conceptual interconnections that no translation can ever succeed in replicating.

My translation is a hybrid based on editions of the Saṃyutta Nikāya coming from different lines of textual transmission. In defense of this approach, as against translating exclusively from one tradition, I can do no better than quote Léon Feer in his introduction to Part I of his PTS edition of SN: "In the choice of readings, I made no preference, and I adopted always the reading which seemed the best wherever it might come from" (p. xiii). I used as my root text the Burmese-script Sixth Buddhist Council edition, but I compared this version with the Sinhala-script Buddha Jayanti edition (itself influenced by the Burmese one), and with the PTS's roman-script edition (which itself draws from older Sinhala and Burmese versions). It was not seldom that I preferred a reading from one of these other versions to that in the Burmese edition, as can be seen from my notes. I also consulted the footnotes on variants in the PTS edition, which occasionally, in my view, had a better reading than any in the printed editions. Though all versions have their flaws, as time went on I found myself increasingly leaning towards the older Sinhala transmission as in many respects the most reliable.

Because Pāli verse is generally much more difficult to translate than prose, at the outset I put aside the first volume of SN, the *Sagāthāvagga*, composed largely in verse, and began with the four prose volumes, II–V. I was apprehensive that, if I began with the *Sagāthāvagga*, I would have quickly lost heart and given up shortly after having made a start. This proved to be a prudent choice, for the *Sagāthāvagga* is indeed sometimes like a dense jungle, with the bare problem of interpreting knotty verses compounded by the multitude of variant readings. The disproportionately large number of notes attached to this volume, many dealing with the variant readings, should give the reader some idea of the difficulty.

Then in late 1998, towards the very end of this project, after I had-already written, typed, proofed, and revised my translation of the *Sagāthāvagga* and its notes several times, the PTS issued a new edition of that volume, intended to replace Feer's pioneering edition of 1884. At that point I was hardly prepared to redo the entire translation, but I did compare the readings found in the new edition with those I had commented on in my notes. In some cases I made minor changes in the translation based on the readings of this edition; in others I stuck to my guns, mentioning the new variant in the relevant notes. This edition also introduced numbering of the verses, something not found in any previous edition of the *Sagāthāvagga* but an idea I had already implemented in my translation to facilitate cross-references in the notes and concordances. However, the new edition of the *Sagāthāvagga* numbered the verses differently than I did, and thus, to keep my translation consistent with the new Pāli text, I had to renumber all the verses—in the text, in the references to the verses in the notes, and in the concordances.

The Saṃyutta Nikāya is divided into five principal parts called *Vaggas*, which I render as books. These are in turn divided into a total of fifty-six *saṃyuttas*, the main chapters, which are further divided into *vaggas* or subchapters (the same Pāli word as used for the books; I differentiate them with capital and simple letters, an orthographic distinction not found in Oriental scripts). The *vaggas* finally are made up of suttas. In the text of the translation I number the *saṃyuttas* in two ways: as chapters within the *Vagga* I give them roman numbers, beginning with "I" within each *Vagga*; as *saṃyuttas* I number them in simple

consecutive order through the whole collection, in arabic numerals, from 1 to 56. I number the suttas by giving first the absolute number of the sutta within the saṃyutta, and following this, in parenthesis, the number of the sutta within the vagga (except when the saṃyutta has no divisions into vaggas). In the introductions and notes I refer to the suttas by the number of the saṃyutta followed by the number of the sutta within that saṃyutta, ignoring the division into vaggas. Thus, for example, 22:95 is saṃyutta 22, sutta 95. The page numbers of the PTS edition are embedded in square brackets, with angle brackets used for the new edition of the Sagāthāvagga.

I have equipped this work with two types of introduction. At the very beginning, before Part I, there is a general introduction to the entire Saṃyutta Nikāya. Here I explain the overall structure of SN, its place in the Pāli Canon, and its particular function in relation to the Buddha's dispensation; I end with a discussion of some technical problems concerning the translation. Each of the five parts is then provided with its own introduction in which I give a survey of each saṃyutta in that part, focusing especially upon the doctrinal principles that underlie the major saṃyuttas. Those who find the General Introduction too dry for their taste should still not pass over the introductions to the parts, for in these I aim to provide the reader with a study guide to the material in the saṃyuttas. Similarly, a general table of contents precedes the entire work, dividing it only into Vaggas and saṃyuttas, while a more detailed table of contents, listing every vagga and sutta, precedes the individual parts.

To further assist the reader to make sense of the suttas, often terse and abstruse, a copious set of notes is provided. These too have been allocated to the back of each part. The purpose of the notes is to clarify difficult passages in the texts and to make explicit the reading I adopt in the face of competing variants. Though I imagine that for many readers the notes on the readings (especially to Part I) will bring on a spell of vertigo, from a scholarly point of view the discussions they contain are essential, as I must establish the text I am translating. The different recensions of SN often have different readings (especially in the verses), and a small difference in a reading can entail a big difference in the meaning. Hence, to justify my rendering for readers who know Pāli I had to explicate my understanding of the

text's wording. At one point I had considered having two sets of notes for each part, one giving explanations of the suttas and other information of general interest, the other dealing with technical issues primarily aimed at specialists. But it proved too difficult to separate the notes so neatly into two classes, and therefore they are all grouped together. Though a substantial number of the notes will be of little interest to the general reader, I still encourage this type of reader to ferret out the notes concerned with meaning, for these provide helpful guidance to the interpretation of the texts.

Within the notes (as in the introductions) references to the suttas, verses, and other notes have been set in bold. When a sutta reference is followed by volume, page, and (sometimes) line numbers, without textual abbreviation, it should be understood that these are references to the PTS edition of SN. References to Part I are always to Ee1.

Many of the notes are drawn from the Pāli commentaries on SN, of which there are two. One is the authorized commentary, the *Saṃyutta Nikāya-aṭṭhakathā*, also known by its proper name, the *Sāratthappakāsini* (abbr: Spk), "The Elucidator of the Essential Meaning." This is ascribed to the great Buddhist commentator, Ācariya Buddhaghosa, who came from South India to Sri Lanka in the fifth century C.E. and compiled the commentaries to the canonical texts on the basis of the ancient Sinhala commentaries (no longer extant) that had been preserved at the Mahāvihāra in Anuradhapura. The other commentarial work is the subcommentary, the *Saṃyutta Nikāya-ṭīkā*, also known as the *Sāratthappakāsini-purāṇa-ṭīkā* (abbr: Spk-pt) and the *Linatthappakāsana* (Part III), "The Elucidation of the Implicit Meaning." This is ascribed to Ācariya Dhammapāla, who may have lived a century or two after Buddhaghosa and resided near Kāñcīpura in South India. The main purpose of the *ṭīkā* is to clear up obscure or difficult points in the *aṭṭhakathā*, but in doing so the author often sheds additional light on the reading and meaning of the canonical text itself.

To keep the notes as concise as possible, the commentaries are generally paraphrased rather than directly quoted, but I use quotation marks to show where I am quoting directly. I have not given volume and page numbers to the citations from Spk and Spk-pt, for I did not have permanent access to the PTS edition of

the former, while the latter is published only in Burmese script. The absence of page numbers, however, should not be a problem, for the commentaries comment on the suttas in direct sequence, and thus those using the PTS edition of Spk should be able to locate any comment easily enough simply by locating the relevant sutta. In the few cases where I cited Spk out of sequence, through inquiry I was able to find out the volume and page number of the PTS edition and I give the full reference in the note.

I should state, as a precaution, that the commentaries explain the suttas as they were understood sometime around the first century C.E. at the latest, at which time the old commentaries drawn upon by Buddhaghosa were closed to further additions. The commentaries view the suttas through the lens of the complex exegetical method that had evolved within the Theravāda school, built up from the interpretations of the ancient teachers welded to a framework constructed partly from the principles of the Abhidhamma system. This exegetical method does not necessarily correspond to the way the teachings were understood in the earliest period of Buddhist history, but it seems likely that its nucleus goes back to the first generation of monks who had gathered around the Buddha and were entrusted with the task of giving detailed, systematic explanations of his discourses. The fact that I cite the commentaries so often in the notes does not necessarily mean that I always agree with them, though where I interpret a passage differently I generally say so. I realize that the notes sometimes repeat things already explained in the introduction to the same part, but in a work of this nature such repetitions can be helpful, particularly as novel ideas briefly treated in the introduction may slip the reader's memory at the time of reading a sutta to which they pertain.

I conclude this preface by acknowledging the contributions that others have made to the completion of this project, for from an early time I was fortunate to have capable help and advice. My most assiduous helper from 1996 onward has been Ven. Bhikkhu Ñāṇatusita of the Netherlands, who read through the translation and the notes at two different stages, made numerous suggestions for improvement, and collected information and references that have been incorporated into the notes. He

also kindly provided me with translations of several of the more important notes to the German translation of SN, particularly of Wilhelm Geiger's notes to the Sagāthāvagga. To Ven. Ñāṇatusita, too, belongs most of the credit for the concordances of parallel passages, an impressive undertaking which required an incredible amount of diligent work.

Ven. Vanarata Ānanda Thera read an early draft of the translation and made useful suggestions. Especially helpful were his comments on the verses, an area in which he has special expertise. A number of his perspicacious remarks, including some radical but convincing readings, are incorporated in the notes. Ayyā Nyānasiri read through the verse translations at an early stage and helped to improve the diction, as did Ven. Thanissaro Bhikkhu at a later stage. Ven. Brahmāli Bhikkhu and Ven. Sujāto Bhikkhu read through most of the prose volumes and made helpful comments, while Ven. Ajahn Brahmavaṃso, though unable to find the time to read the translation itself, made some valuable suggestions regarding terminology. I benefitted from occasional correspondence with K.R. Norman, Lambert Schmithausen, and Peter Skilling, who provided information and opinions on points that fell within their areas of expertise. I also learnt an enormous amount from Professor Norman's notes to his translations of the Thera- and Therīgāthās (*Elders' Verses*, I and II) and the Suttanipāta (*The Group of Discourses*, II). In the final stage, William Pruitt of the Pali Text Society reviewed the entire work, from start to finish, and offered suggestions drawn from his extensive experience as a scholar, translator, and editor. Besides this scholarly help, Tim McNeill of Wisdom Publications and Richard Gombrich of the Pali Text Society gave me constant encouragement. By imposing a strict deadline, Tim ensured that the work finally reached completion. I also thank Carl Yamamoto for his meticulous proofreading of the entire translation.

For all this help I am deeply grateful. For any faults that remain I am fully responsible.

This translation is dedicated to the memory of three eminent Sangha elders with whom I had the fortune to be closely associated during my life as a bhikkhu: my ordination teacher, Ven. Balangoda Ānanda Maitreya Mahānāyaka Thera (with whom I first studied the Sagāthāvagga back in 1973), and my chief

*kalyāṇamittas* (spiritual friends), Ven. Nyanaponika Mahāthera and Ven. Piyadassi Nāyaka Thera. When I started this translation all three were alive and gave me their encouragement; unfortunately, none lived to see it completed.

Bhikkhu Bodhi  
Forest Hermitage  
Kandy, Sri Lanka

## Key to the Pronunciation of Pāli

### *The Pāli Alphabet*

Vowels: a, ā, i, ī, u, ū, e, o

Consonants:

Gutturals:	k, kh, g, gh, ṅ
Palatals	c, ch, j, jh, ñ
Cerebrals	ṭ, ṭh, ḍ, ḍh, ṇ
Dentals	t, th, d, dh, n
Labials	p, ph, b, bh, m
Other	y, r, ḷ, l, v, s, h, ṃ

### *Pronunciation*

a as in "cut"  
ā as in "father"  
i as in "king"  
ī as in "keen"  
u as in "put"  
ū as in "rule"  
e as in "way"  
o as in "home"

Of the vowels, *e* and *o* are long before a single consonant and short before a double consonant. Among the consonants, *g* is always pronounced as in "good," *c* as in "church," *ṅ* as in "onion." The cerebrals (or retroflexes) are spoken with the tongue on the roof of the mouth; the dentals with the tongue on the upper teeth. The aspirates—*kh, gh, ch, jh, ṭh, ḍh, th, dh, ph,*

*bh*—are single consonants pronounced with slightly more force than the nonaspirates, e.g., *th* as in “Thomas” (not as in “thin”); *ph* as in “puff” (not as in “phone”). Double consonants are always enunciated separately, e.g., *dd* as in “mad dog,” *gg* as in “big gun.” The pure nasal (*niggahita*) *ṃ* is pronounced like the *ng* in “song.” An *o* and an *e* always carry a stress; otherwise the stress falls on a long vowel—*ā*, *ī*, *ū*, or on a double consonant, or on *ṃ*.

## General Introduction

The *Saṃyutta Nikāya* is the third great collection of the Buddha’s discourses in the Sutta Piṭaka of the Pāli Canon, the compilation of texts authorized as the Word of the Buddha by the Theravāda school of Buddhism. Within the Sutta Piṭaka it follows the Dīgha Nikāya and Majjhima Nikāya, and precedes the Aṅguttara Nikāya. Like the other Pāli Nikāyas, the *Saṃyutta Nikāya* had counterparts in the canonical collections of the other early Buddhist schools, and one such version has been preserved in the Chinese Tripiṭaka, where it is known as the *Tsa-a-han-ching*. This was translated from the Sanskrit *Saṃyuktāgama*, which the evidence indicates belonged to the Sarvāstivāda school. Thus, while the *Saṃyutta Nikāya* translated in the present work has its locus within the Theravāda canon, it should never be forgotten that it belongs to a body of texts—called the Nikāyas in the Pāli tradition prevalent in southern Asia and the Āgamas in the Northern Buddhist tradition—which stands at the fountainhead of the entire Buddhist literary heritage. It was on the basis of these texts that the early Buddhist schools established their systems of doctrine and practice, and again it was to these texts that later schools also appealed when formulating their new visions of the Buddha’s way.

As a source of Buddhist doctrine the *Saṃyutta Nikāya* is especially rich, for in this collection it is precisely doctrinal categories that serve as the primary basis for classifying the Buddha’s discourses. The word *saṃyutta* means literally “yoked together,” *yutta* (Skt *yukta*) being etymologically related to our English “yoked” and *saṃ* a prefix meaning “together.” The word occurs in the suttas themselves with the doctrinally charged meaning of “fettered” or “bound.” In this sense it is a past participle related

to the technical term *saṃyojana*, “fetter,” of which there are ten that bind living beings to *saṃsāra*, the round of rebirths. But the word *saṃyutta* is also used in a more ordinary sense to mean simply things that are joined or “yoked” together, as when it is said, “Suppose, friend, a black ox and a white ox were *yoked together* by a single harness or yoke” (35:232; S IV 163,12–13). This is the meaning relevant to the present collection of texts. They are suttas—discourses ascribed to the Buddha or to eminent disciples—yoked or connected together. And what connects them, the “harness or yoke” (*damena vā yottena vā*), are the topics that give their titles to the individual chapters, the *saṃyuttas* under which the suttas fall.

#### THE GROUNDPLAN OF THE SAṂYUTTA NIKĀYA

Despite the immense dimensions of the work, the plan according to which it is constructed is fairly simple and straightforward. The Saṃyutta Nikāya that has come down in the Pāli tradition consists of five major *Vaggas*, parts or “books,” each of which corresponds to a single volume in the Pali Text Society’s roman-script edition of the work. Between them, these five volumes contain fifty-six *saṃyuttas*, chapters based on unifying themes.<sup>1</sup> The longer *saṃyuttas* are in turn divided into subchapters, also called *vaggas*, while the smaller *saṃyuttas* can be considered to consist of a single *vagga* identical with the *saṃyutta* itself. Each *vagga*, in this sense, ideally contains ten suttas, though in actuality the number of suttas in a *vagga* can range from as few as five to as many as sixty. Thus we find the word *vagga*, literally “a group,” used to designate both the five major parts of the entire collection and the subordinate sections of the chapters.<sup>2</sup>

The two largest *saṃyuttas*, the Khandhasaṃyutta (22) and the Saḷāyatanaṃsaṃyutta (35), are so massive that they employ still another unit of division to simplify organization. This is the *paññāsaka* or “set of fifty.” This figure is only an approximation, since the sets usually contain slightly more than fifty suttas; indeed, the Fourth Fifty of the Saḷāyatanaṃsaṃyutta contains ninety-three suttas, among them a *vagga* of sixty! Most of these suttas, however, are extremely short, being merely variations on a few simple themes.

Unlike the suttas of the first two Nikāyas, the Dīgha and the Majjhima, the suttas of SN do not have proper names unanimously agreed upon by all the textual traditions. In the old ola leaf manuscripts the suttas follow one another without a clean break, and the divisions between suttas have to be determined by certain symbolic markings. Each *vagga* ends with a short mnemonic verse called the *uddāna*, which sums up the contents of the *vagga* by means of key words representing its component suttas. In modern printed editions of SN these key words are taken to be the titles of the suttas and are placed at their head. As the *uddānas* often differ slightly between the Sinhalese and the Burmese textual traditions, with the PTS edition following now one and now the other, the names of the suttas also differ slightly between the several editions. Moreover, the most recent Burmese edition, that prepared at the Sixth Buddhist Council, sometimes assigns the suttas titles that are fuller and more meaningful than those derivable from the mnemonic verses. In this translation I have generally followed the Burmese edition.

The titles of the *vaggas* also occasionally differ between the traditions. Whereas the Burmese-script edition often names them simply by way of their numerical position—e.g., as “The First Subchapter” (*paṭhamo vaggo*), etc.—the Sinhala-script Buddha Jayanti edition assigns them proper names. When the titles of the *vaggas* differ in this way, I have placed the numerical name given in the Burmese-script edition first, followed parenthetically by the descriptive name given in the Sinhala-script edition. The titles of the *vaggas* are without special significance and do not imply that all the suttas within that *vagga* are related to the idea expressed by the title. Often these titles are assigned merely on the basis of one sutta within the *vagga*, often the first, occasionally a longer or weightier sutta coming later. The grouping of suttas into *vaggas* also appears largely arbitrary, though occasionally several successive suttas deal with a common theme or exemplify an extended pattern.

In his commentaries to the Pāli Canon, Ācariya Buddhaghosa states that SN contains 7,762 suttas, but the text that has come down to us contains, on the system of reckoning used here, only 2,904 suttas.<sup>3</sup> Due to minor differences in the method of distinguishing suttas, this figure differs slightly from the total of 2,889 counted by Léon Feer on the basis of his roman-script edition.

TABLE 1

## A Breakdown of the Saṃyutta Nikāya by Vaggas and Suttas

*(Feer's sutta counts in Ee differing from my own are shown to the far right.)*

	Saṃyutta	Vaggas	Suttas	Feer
Part I:	1	8	81	
<i>Sagāthāvagga</i>	2	3	30	
	3	3	25	
	4	3	25	
	5	1	10	
	6	2	15	
	7	2	22	
	8	1	12	
	9	1	14	
	10	1	12	
	11	3	25	
	Total	28	271	
Part II:	12	9	93	
<i>Nidānavagga</i>	13	1	11	
	14	4	39	
	15	2	20	
	16	1	13	
	17	4	43	
	18	2	22	
	19	2	21	
	20	1	12	
	21	1	12	
	Total	27	286	
Part III:	22	15	159	158
<i>Khandhavagga</i>	23	4	46	
	24	4	96	114
	25	1	10	
	26	1	10	
	27	1	10	

	Saṃyutta	Vaggas	Suttas	Feer
Part III:	28	1	10	
<i>Khandhavagga (cont'd)</i>	29	1	50	
	30	1	46	
	31	1	112	
	32	1	57	
	33	1	55	
	34	1	55	
	Total	33	716	733
Part IV:	35	19	248	207
<i>Salāyatanavagga</i>	36	3	31	29
	37	3	34	
	38	1	16	
	39	1	16	
	40	1	11	
	41	1	10	
	42	1	13	
	43	2	44	
	44	1	11	
	Total	33	434	391
Part V:	45	16	180	
<i>Mahāvagga</i>	46	18	184	187
	47	10	104	103
	48	17	178	185
	49	5	54	
	50	10	108	110
	51	8	86	
	52	2	24	
	53	5	54	
	54	2	20	
	55	7	74	
	56	11	131	
	Total	111	1,197	1,208
Grand Total	232	2,904	2,889	

Table 1 shows how these figures are arrived at, with the divisions into Vaggas, saṃyuttas, and vaggas; the variant figures counted by Feer are given next to my own. The fact that our totals differ so markedly from that arrived at by Buddhaghosa should not cause alarm bells to ring at the thought that some 63% of the original Saṃyutta has been irretrievably lost since the time of the commentaries. For the *Sāratthappakāsinī*, the SN commentary, itself provides us with a check on the contents of the collection at our disposal, and from this it is evident that there are no suttas commented on by Buddhaghosa that are missing from the Saṃyutta we currently possess. The difference in totals must certainly stem merely from different ways of expanding the vaggas treated elliptically in the text, especially in Part V. However, even when the formulaic abridgements are expanded to the full, it is difficult to see how the commentator could arrive at so large a figure.

The five major Vaggas or “books” of the Saṃyutta Nikāya are constructed according to different principles. The first book, the Sagāthāvagga, is unique in being compiled on the basis of literary genre. As the name of the Vagga indicates, the suttas in this collection all contain *gāthās* or verses, though it is not the case (as Feer had assumed at an early point) that all suttas in SN containing verses are included in this Vagga. In many suttas of Part I, the prose setting is reduced to a mere framework for the verses, and in the first saṃyutta even this disappears so that the sutta becomes simply an exchange of verses, presumably between the Buddha and an interlocutor. The other four Vaggas contain major saṃyuttas concerned with the main doctrinal themes of early Buddhism, accompanied by minor saṃyuttas spanning a wide diversity of topics. Parts II, III, and IV each open with a large chapter devoted to a theme of paramount importance: respectively, the chain of causation (i.e., dependent origination, in SN 12), the five aggregates (22), and the six internal and external sense bases (35). Each of these Vaggas is named after its opening saṃyutta and also includes one other saṃyutta dealing with another important topic secondary to the main one: in Part II, the elements (14); in Part III, philosophical views (24); and in Part IV, feeling (36). The other saṃyuttas in each of these collections are generally smaller and thematically lighter, though within these we can also find texts of great depth and power.

Part V tackles themes that are all of prime importance, namely, the various groups of training factors which, in the post-canonical period, come to be called the thirty-seven aids to enlightenment (*sattatimsa bodhipakkhiyā dhammā*). The Vagga concludes with a saṃyutta on the original intuition around which the entire Dhamma revolves, the Four Noble Truths. Hence this book is called the Mahāvagga, the Great Book, though at one point it might have also been called the Maggavagga, the Book of the Path (and indeed the Sanskrit version translated into Chinese was so named).

The organization of SN, from Parts II to V, might be seen as corresponding roughly to the pattern established by the Four Noble Truths. The Nidānavagga, which focuses on dependent origination, lays bare the causal genesis of suffering, and is thus an amplification of the second noble truth. The Khandhavagga and the Saḷāyatanavagga highlight the first noble truth, the truth of suffering; for in the deepest sense this truth encompasses all the elements of existence comprised by the five aggregates and the six internal and external sense bases (see 56:13, 14). The Asaṅkhatasaṃyutta (43), coming towards the end of the Saḷāyatanavagga, discusses the unconditioned, a term for the third noble truth, Nibbāna, the cessation of suffering. Finally, the Mahāvagga, dealing with the path of practice, makes known the way to the cessation of suffering, hence the fourth noble truth. If we follow the Chinese translation of the Skt Saṃyuktāgama, the parallelism is still more obvious, for this version places the Khandhavagga first and the Saḷāyatanavagga second, followed by the Nidānavagga, thus paralleling the first and second truths in their proper sequence. But this version assigns the Asaṅkhatasaṃyutta to the end of the Mahāvagga, perhaps to show the realization of the unconditioned as the fruit of fulfilling the practice.

I said above that what makes the suttas of this collection “connected discourses” are the themes that unite them into fixed saṃyuttas. These, which we might consider the “yokes” or binding principles, constitute the groundplan of the collection, which would preserve its identity even if the saṃyuttas had been differently arranged. There are fifty-six such themes, which I have distinguished into four main categories: doctrinal topics, specific persons, classes of beings, and types of persons. Of the two

saṃyuttas that do not fall neatly into this typology, the Vana-saṃyutta (9) is constructed according to a fixed scenario, generally a monk being admonished by a woodland deity to strive more strenuously for the goal; the Opammasaṃyutta (20) is characterized by the use of an extended simile to convey its message.

In Table 2 (A) I show how the different saṃyuttas can be assigned to these categories, giving the total numbers of suttas in each class and the percentage which that class occupies in the whole. The results of this tabulation should be qualified by noting that the figures given are based on a calculation for the whole Saṃyutta Nikāya. But the Sagāthāvagga is so different in character from the other Vaggas that its eleven saṃyuttas skew the final results, and thus to arrive at a more satisfactory picture of the overall nature of the work we might omit this Vagga. In Table 2 (B) I give the results when the Sagāthāvagga is not counted. Even these figures, however, can convey a misleading picture, for the classification is made by way of titles only, and these provide a very inadequate indication of the contents of the actual saṃyutta. The Rāhulasaṃyutta and the Rāhasaṃyutta, for example, are classified under "Specific Person," but they deal almost exclusively with the three characteristics and the five aggregates, respectively, and give us absolutely no personal information about these individuals; thus their content is properly doctrinal rather than biographical. Moreover, of the eleven chapters named after specific persons, nine are almost entirely doctrinal. Only saṃyuttas 16 and 41, respectively on Mahākassapa and Citta the householder, include material that might be considered of biographical interest. Since the chapters on the main doctrinal topics are invariably much longer than the other chapters, the number of *pages* dealing with doctrine would be immensely greater than those dealing with other themes.

#### THE SAṂYUTTA NIKĀYA AND THE SAṂYUKTĀGAMA

The Pāli commentaries, and even the canonical Cullavagga, give an account of the First Buddhist Council which conveys the impression that the participating elders arranged the Sutta Piṭaka into essentially the form in which it has come down to us today, even with respect to the precise sequence of texts. This is extremely improbable, and it is also unlikely that the council

TABLE 2  
Thematic Analysis of the Saṃyutta Nikāya

Topics	A. Including the Sagāthāvagga											Total	Percentage	
	Saṃyuttas													
Doctrinal Topic	12	13	14	15	17	22	24						26	46%
	25	26	27	34	35	36	43							
	44	45	46	47	48	49	50							
	51	53	54	55	56									
Specific Person	3	4	8	11	16	18	19	23					15	27%
	28	33	38	39	40	41	52							
Class of Beings	1	2	6	10	29	30	31	32					8	14%
Type of Person	5	7	21	37	42								5	9%
Other	9	20											2	4%

Topics	B. Excluding the Sagāthāvagga											Total	Percentage	
	Saṃyuttas													
Doctrinal Topic	12	13	14	15	17	22	24						26	58%
	25	26	27	34	35	36	43							
	44	45	46	47	48	49	50							
	51	53	54	55	56									
Specific Person	16	18	19	23	28	33	38						11	24%
	39	40	41	52										
Class of Beings	29	30	31	32									4	9%
Type of Person	21	37	42										3	7%
Other	20												1	2%

established a fixed and final recension of the Nikāyas. The evidence to the contrary is just too massive. This evidence includes the presence in the canon of suttas that could only have appeared after the First Council (e.g., MN Nos. 84, 108, 124); signs of extensive editing internal to the suttas themselves; and, a weighty factor, the differences in content and organization

between the Pāli Nikāyas and the North Indian Āgamas preserved in the Chinese Tripiṭaka. It is much more likely that what took place at the First Council was the drafting of a comprehensive scheme for classifying the suttas (preserved only in the memory banks of the monks) and the appointment of an editorial committee (perhaps several) to review the material available and cast it into a format conducive to easy memorization and oral transmission. Possibly too the editorial committee, in compiling an authorized corpus of texts, would have closely considered the purposes their collections were intended to serve and then framed their guidelines for classification in ways designed to fulfil these purposes. This is a point I will return to below. The distribution of the texts among groups of reciters (*bhāṇakas*), charged with the task of preserving and transmitting them to posterity, would help to explain the divergences between the different recensions as well as the occurrence of the same suttas in different Nikāyas.<sup>4</sup>

Comparison of the Pāli SN with the Chinese Saṃyuktāgama is particularly instructive and reveals a remarkable correspondence of contents arranged in a different order. I already alluded just above to some differences in organization, but it is illuminating to examine this in more detail.<sup>5</sup> The Chinese version contains nine major Vaggas (following Anesaki, I use the Pāli terms and titles for consistency). The first is the Khandhavagga (our III), the second the Saḷāyatanavagga (our IV), the third the Nidānavagga (our II), which latter also contains the Saccasaṃyutta (56) and the Vedanāsaṃyutta (36), departing markedly from SN in these allocations. Then follows a fourth part named Sāvaka-vagga, without a counterpart in the Pāli version but which includes among others the Sāriputta- (28), Moggallāna- (40), Lakkhaṇa- (19), Anuruddha- (52), and Cittasaṃyuttas (41). The fifth part, whose Pāli title would be Maggavagga, corresponds to SN Mahāvagga (our V), but its saṃyuttas are arranged in a sequence that follows more closely the canonical order of the sets making up the thirty-seven aids to enlightenment: Satipaṭṭhāna (47), Indriya (48), Bala (50), Bojjhaṅga (46), and Magga (45); this part also includes the Ānāpānasati- (54) and Sotāpattisaṃyuttas (55), while a series of small chapters at the end includes a Jhānasaṃyutta (53) and an Asaṅkhatasaṃyutta (43). The sixth Vagga of the Saṃyuktāgama is without a Pāli

parallel but contains the Opammasaṃyutta (20) and a collection of suttas on sick persons which draws together texts distributed among various chapters of SN. Then, as the seventh book, comes the Sagāthāvagga (our I), with twelve saṃyuttas—all eleven of the Pāli version but in a different order and with the addition of the Bhikkhusaṃyutta (21), which in this recension must contain only suttas with verses. Finally comes a Buddha- or Tathāgatavagga, which includes the Kassapa- (16) and Gāmanisaṃyuttas (42), and an Assasaṃyutta, “Connected Discourses on Horses.” This last chapter includes suttas that in the Pāli Canon are found in the Aṅguttara Nikāya.

#### THE ROLE OF THE SAṂYUTTA AMONG THE FOUR NIKĀYAS

Prevalent scholarly opinion, fostered by the texts themselves, holds that the principal basis for distinguishing the four Nikāyas is the length of their suttas. Thus the largest suttas are collected into the Dīgha Nikāya, the middle length suttas into the Majjhima Nikāya, and the shorter suttas are distributed between the Saṃyutta and the Aṅguttara Nikāyas, the former classifying its suttas thematically, the latter by way of the number of items in terms of which the exposition is framed. However, in an important groundbreaking study, Pāli scholar Joy Manné has challenged the assumption that length alone explains the differences between the Nikāyas.<sup>6</sup> By carefully comparing the suttas of DN with those of MN, Manné concludes that the two collections are intended to serve two different purposes within the Buddha’s dispensation. In her view, DN was primarily intended for the purpose of propaganda, to attract converts to the new religion, and thus is aimed mainly at non-Buddhists favourably disposed to Buddhism; MN, in contrast, was directed inwards towards the Buddhist community and its purpose was to extol the Master (both as a real person and as an archetype) and to integrate monks into the community and the practice. Manné also proposes that “each of the first four Nikāyas came about in order to serve a distinct need and purpose in the growing and developing Buddhist community” (p. 73). Here we shall briefly address the question what purposes may have been behind the compilation of SN and AN, in contradistinction to the other two Nikāyas.

In approaching this question we might first note that the suttas of these two Nikāyas provide only minimal circumstantial background to the delivery of the Buddha's discourses. With rare exceptions, in fact, a background story is completely absent and the *nidāna* or "setting" simply states that the sutta was spoken by the Blessed One at such and such a locale. Thus, while DN and MN are replete with drama, debate, and narrative, with DN especially abounding in imaginative excursions, here this decorative framework is missing. In SN the whole setting becomes reduced to a single sentence, usually abbreviated to "At Sāvatti, in Jeta's Grove," and by the fourth book even this disappears. Apart from the *Sagāthāvagga*, which is in a class of its own, the other four books of SN have little ornamentation. The suttas themselves are usually issued as direct proclamations on the doctrine by the Buddha himself; sometimes they take the form of consultations with the Master by a single monk or group of monks; occasionally they are framed as discussions between two eminent monks. Many suttas consist of little more than a few short sentences, and it is not unusual for them simply to ring the permutations on a single theme. When we reach Part V whole chains of suttas are reduced to mere single words in mnemonic verses, leaving to the reciter (or to the modern reader) the task of blowing up the outline and filling in the contents. This indicates that the suttas in SN (as also in AN) were, as a general rule, not targeted at outsiders or even at the newly converted, but were intended principally for those who had already turned for refuge to the Dhamma and were deeply immersed in its study and practice.

On the basis of its thematic arrangement, we might postulate that, in its most distinctive features as a collection (though certainly not in all particulars), SN was compiled to serve as the repository for the many short but pithy suttas disclosing the Buddha's radical insights into the nature of reality and his unique path to spiritual emancipation. This collection would have served the needs of two types of disciples within the monastic order. One were the doctrinal specialists, those monks and nuns who were capable of grasping the deepest dimensions of wisdom and took upon themselves the task of clarifying for others the subtle perspectives on reality opened up by the Buddha's teachings. Because SN brings together in its major

samyuttas the many abstruse, profound, and delicately nuanced suttas on such weighty topics as dependent origination, the five aggregates, the six sense bases, the factors of the path, and the Four Noble Truths, it would have been perfectly suited for those disciples of intellectual bent who delighted in exploring the deep implications of the Dhamma and in explaining them to their spiritual companions. The second type of disciples for whom SN seems to have been designed were those monks and nuns who had already fulfilled the preliminary stages of meditative training and were intent on consummating their efforts with the direct realization of the ultimate truth. Because the suttas in this collection are vitally relevant to meditators bent on arriving at the undeceptive "knowledge of things as they really are," they could well have formed the main part of a study syllabus compiled for the guidance of insight meditators.

With the move from SN to AN, a shift in emphasis takes place from comprehension to personal edification. Because the shorter suttas that articulate the philosophical theory and the main structures of training have found their way into SN, what have been left for inclusion in AN are the short suttas whose primary concern is practical. To some extent, in its practical orientation, AN partly overlaps with SN *Mahāvagga*, which treats the various groups of path factors. To avoid unnecessary duplication the redactors of the canon did not include these topics again in AN under their numerical categories, thereby leaving AN free to focus on those aspects of the training not incorporated in the repetitive sets. AN also includes a notable proportion of suttas addressed to lay disciples, dealing with the mundane, ethical, and spiritual concerns of life within the world. This makes it especially suitable as a text for the edification of the laity.

From this way of characterizing the two Nikayas, we might see SN and AN as offering two complementary perspectives on the Dhamma, both inherent in the original teaching. SN opens up to us the profound perspective reached through contemplative insight, where the familiar consensual world of persons and things gives way to the sphere of impersonal conditioned phenomena arising and perishing in accordance with laws of conditionality. This is the perspective on reality that, in the next stage in the evolution of Buddhist thought, will culminate in the *Abhidhamma*. Indeed, the connection between SN and the

Abhidhamma appears to be a close one, and we might even speculate that it was the nonsubstantialist perspective so prominent in SN that directly gave rise to the type of inquiry that crystallized in the Abhidhamma philosophy. The close relationship between the two is especially evident from the second book of the Pāli Abhidhamma Piṭaka, the *Vibhaṅga*, which consists of eighteen treatises each devoted to the analysis of a particular doctrinal topic. Of these eighteen, the first twelve have their counterparts in SN.<sup>7</sup> Since most of these treatises include a “Suttanta Analysis” (*suttantabhājanīya*) as well as a more technical “Abhidhamma Analysis” (*abhidhammabhājanīya*), it is conceivable that the Suttanta Analyses of the *Vibhaṅga* were the primordial seeds of the Abhidhamma and that it was among the specialists in SN that the idea arose of devising a more technical expository system which eventually came to be called the Abhidhamma.

The Aṅguttara Nikāya serves to balance the abstract philosophical point of view so prominent in SN with an acceptance of the conventional world of consensual realities. In AN, persons are as a rule not reduced to mere collections of aggregates, elements, and sense bases, but are treated as real centres of living experience engaged in a heartfelt quest for happiness and freedom from suffering. The suttas of this collection typically address these needs, many dealing with the practical training of monks and a significant number with the everyday concerns of lay followers. The numerical arrangement makes it particularly convenient for use in formal instruction, and thus it could be easily drawn upon by senior monks when teaching their pupils and by preachers when preparing sermons for the lay community. AN is replete with material that serves both purposes, and even today within the living Theravāda tradition it continues to fulfil this dual function.

The preceding attempt to characterize each Nikāya in terms of a ruling purpose should not be understood to imply that their internal contents are in any way uniform. To the contrary, amidst a welter of repetition and redundancy, each displays enormous diversity, somewhat like organisms of the same genera that exhibit minute specific differences absolutely essential to their survival. Further, it remains an open question, particularly in the case of SN and AN, whether their blueprints were

drawn up with a deliberate pedagogical strategy in mind or whether, instead, the method of arrangement came first and their respective tactical applications followed as a matter of course from their groundplans.

#### RELATIONSHIP WITH OTHER PARTS OF THE CANON

Due partly to the composition of the suttas out of blocks of standardized, transposable text called pericopes, and partly to common points of focus throughout the Sutta Piṭaka, a considerable amount of overlapping can be discovered between the contents of the four Nikāyas. In the case of SN, parallels extend not only to the other three Nikāyas but to the Vinaya Piṭaka as well. Thus we find three SN suttas of great importance also recorded in the Vinaya Mahāvagga, represented as the first three discourses given by the Buddha at the dawn of his ministry: the Dhammacakkappavattana, the Anattalakkhaṇa, and the Ādittapariyāya (56:11; 22:59; 35:28).<sup>8</sup> In the Vinaya, too, there are parallels to the SN suttas on the Buddha’s encounters with Māra (4:4, 5), on his hesitation to teach the Dhamma (6:1), on his first meeting with Anāthapiṇḍika (10:8), on the secession of Devadatta (17:35), and on the tormented spirits seen by Mahāmoggallāna (19:1–21). While it is possible that both the Vinaya and SN received this material via separate lines of oral transmission, in view of the fact that the narrative portions of the Vinaya Piṭaka appear to stem from a later period than the Nikāyas, we might conjecture that the redactors of the Vinaya drew freely upon texts preserved by the Saṃyutta reciters when composing the frameworks for the disciplinary injunctions.

SN includes as individual suttas material which, in DN, is embedded in larger suttas. The most notable instances of this are segments of the Mahāparinibbāna Sutta (e.g., at 6:15; 47:9; 47:12; 51:10), but we find as well a few snippets shared by the Mahāsatipaṭṭhāna Sutta (47:1, 2; 45:8) and a short (*cūḷa*) version of the Mahānidāna Sutta (12:60). The latter shares with its larger counterpart (DN No. 15) only the opening paragraph but thereafter diverges in a completely different direction. Again, any solution to the question of borrowing can only be hypothetical.

The compilers of the canon seem to have laid down stringent rules governing the allocation of texts between SN and AN,

intended to avoid extensive reduplication when a doctrinal theme is also a numerical set. Still, within the bounds set by that condition, a certain amount of overlapping has taken place between the two Nikāyas. They hold in common the suttas on Rohitassa's search for the end of the world (2:26), on the lion's roar (22:78), on the ten qualities of the stream-enterer (12:41 = 55:28), on the death of Kokālika (6:9–10), on the five hindrances (46:55, but in AN without the section on the enlightenment factors), as well as several large blocks of text that in SN do not constitute separate suttas.

It is, however, between SN and MN that the boundary appears to have been the most permeable, for SN contains five whole suttas also found in MN (22:82; 35:87, 88, 121; 36:19), as well as the usual common text blocks. We cannot know whether this dual allocation of the suttas was made with the general consent of the redactors responsible for the whole Sutta Piṭaka or came about because the separate companies of reciters responsible for the two Nikāyas each thought these suttas fitted best into their own collections. But in view of the fact that in SN several suttas appear in two saṃyuttas, thus even in the same Nikāya, the first alternative is not implausible. Suttas from SN have also found their way into the smaller works of the Khuddaka Nikāya—the Suttanipāta, the Udāna, and the Itivuttaka—while the correspondence between verses is legion, as can be seen from Concordance 1 (B).

#### LITERARY FEATURES OF THE SAṂYUTTA

Of the four Nikāyas, SN seems to be the one most heavily subjected to "literary embellishment." While it is possible that some of the variations stemmed from the Buddha himself, it also seems plausible that many of the more minute elaborations were introduced by the redactors of the canon. I wish to call attention to two distinctive features of the collection which bear testimony to this hypothesis. We might conveniently call them "template parallelism" and "auditor-setting variation." The texts that exhibit these features are collated in Concordances 3 and 4 respectively. Here I will explain the principles that lie behind these editorial devices and cite a few notable examples of each.

Template parallels are suttas constructed in accordance with

the same formal pattern but which differ in the content to which this pattern is applied. The template is the formal pattern or mould; the template sutta, a text created by applying this mould to a particular subject, the "raw material" to be moulded into a sutta. Template parallels cut across the division between saṃyuttas and show how the same formula can be used to make identical statements about different categories of phenomena, for example, about the elements, aggregates, and sense bases (*dhātu*, *khandha*, *āyatana*), or about path factors, enlightenment factors, and spiritual faculties (*magganga*, *bojjhaṅga*, *indriya*). The recurrence of template parallels throughout SN gives us an important insight into the structure of the Buddha's teaching. It shows that the teaching is constituted by two intersecting components: a formal component expressed by the templates themselves, and a material component provided by the entities that are organized by the templates. The application of the templates to the material components instructs us how the latter are to be treated. Thus we are made to see, from the template suttas, that the constituent factors of existence are to be understood with wisdom; that the defilements are to be abandoned; and that the path factors are to be developed.

The templates are in turn sometimes subsumed at a higher level by what we might call a paradigm, that is, a particular perspective offering us a panoramic overview of the teaching as a whole. Paradigms generate templates, and templates generate suttas. Thus all one need do to compose different suttas is to subject various types of material to the same templates generated by a single paradigm.

SN abounds in examples of this. One prevalent paradigm in the collection, central to the Dhamma, is the three characteristics of existence: impermanence (*anicca*), suffering (*dukkha*), and non-self (*anattā*). This paradigm governs whole series of suttas both in SN 22 and SN 35, the royal saṃyuttas of Parts III and IV, respectively; for it is above all the five aggregates and the six pairs of sense bases that must be seen with insight in order to win the fruits of liberation. The "three characteristics paradigm" generates four common templates: impermanent, etc., in the three times; the simple contemplation of impermanence, etc.; impermanent, etc., through causes and conditions; and, most critical in the Buddha's soteriological plan, the "what is imper-

manent is suffering" template, which sets the three characteristics in relation to one another.

Another major paradigm is the triad of gratification, danger, and escape (*assāda, ādinava, nissaraṇa*), which generates three templates. At AN I 258–60 we find these templates used to generate three suttas in which the material content is the world as a whole (*loka*). SN, apparently drawing upon certain ways of understanding the concept of the world, contains twelve suttas churned out by these templates—three each in the saṃyuttas on the elements and the aggregates (14:31–33; 22:26–28), and six in the saṃyutta on the sense bases (35:13–18; six because the internal and external sense bases are treated separately). This paradigm is in turn connected to another, on the qualities of true ascetics and brahmins, and together they give birth to three more recurrent templates on how true ascetics and brahmins understand things: by way of the gratification triad; by way of the origin pentad (the gratification triad augmented by the origin and passing away of things); and by way of the noble-truth tetrad (modelled on the Four Noble Truths: suffering, its origin, its cessation, and the way to its cessation). These templates generate suttas on the four elements, gain and honour, the five aggregates, feelings, and the faculties. The last template is also applied several times to the factors of dependent origination, but strangely they are all missing in the Saḷāyatana-saṃyutta.

The main cause of suffering, according to the Buddha, is craving (*taṇhā*), also known as desire and lust (*chanda-rāga*). In SN the task of removing craving serves as a paradigm which generates another set of templates, arrived at by splitting and then recombining the terms of the compound: abandon desire, abandon lust, abandon desire and lust. These are each connected separately to whatever is impermanent, whatever is suffering, and whatever is nonself (intersecting with the three characteristics paradigm), thereby giving rise to nine templates. These are then extended to the aggregates and to the internal and external sense bases, generating respectively nine and eighteen suttas (22:137–45; 35:168–85).

Some templates must have emerged from the conversations into which the monks were drawn in their everyday lives, such as the one based on the question why the holy life is lived under the Blessed One (35:81, 152; 38:4; 45:5, 41–48). Part V, on the

groups pertaining to the path, employs still new templates, though without a single dominant paradigm. Many of the templates occur in the repetition series, which are elaborated in full only in the Maggasaṃyutta and thereafter abbreviated in mnemonic verses. But more substantive templates generate suttas in the bodies of these saṃyuttas, which will be discussed at greater length in the introduction to Part V.

If we closely inspect the concordance of template parallels, we would notice that certain templates are not employed to generate suttas in domains where they seem perfectly applicable. Thus, as noted above, we do not find the "ascetics and brahmins" templates applied to the six sense bases, or the "noble and emancipating" template applied to the five spiritual faculties, or the "seven fruits and benefits" template applied to the four establishments of mindfulness. This raises the intriguing question whether these omissions were made by deliberate design, or because the applications were overlooked, or because suttas got lost in the process of oral transmission. To arrive at cogent hypotheses concerning this question we would have to compare the Pāli recension of SN with the Chinese translation of the Saṃyuktāgama, which would no doubt be a major undertaking requiring a rare combination of skills.

The second distinctive editorial technique of SN is what I call "auditor-setting variation." This refers to suttas that are identical (or nearly identical) in content but differ in regard to the person to whom they are addressed, or in the protagonist involved (in a sutta involving a "plot"), or in the circumstances under which they are spoken. The most notable example of this device is the sutta on how a bhikkhu attains or fails to attain Nibbāna, which occurs seven times (at 35:118, 119, 124, 125, 126, 128, 131), in exactly the same words, but addressed to different auditors, including the deva-king Sakka and the gandhabba Pañcasikha. As the Buddha must have reiterated many suttas to different inquirers, the question arises why this one was selected for such special treatment. Could it have been a way of driving home, to the monks, what they must do to win the goal of the holy life? Or were there more mundane motives behind the redundancy, such as a desire to placate the families of important lay supporters?

Under this category fall several instances where a sutta is

spoken by the Buddha a first time in response to a question from Ānanda, a second time to Ānanda on his own initiative, a third time in response to a question from a group of bhikkhus, and a fourth time to a group of bhikkhus on his own initiative (e.g., 36:15–18; 54:13–16). Again, the Rādhasaṃyutta includes two vaggas of twelve suttas each identical in all respects except that in the first (23:23–34) Rādha asks for a teaching while in the second (23:35–46) the Buddha takes the initiative in speaking.

A third literary embellishment, not quite identical with auditor-setting variation, is the inclusion of chains of suttas that ring the permutations on a simple idea by using different phrasing. Thus the Diṭṭhisāṃyutta (24) contains four “trips” (*gamana*) on speculative views differing only in the framework within which the exposition of views is encased (partial exception being made of the first trip, which for some unclear reason lacks a series of views included in the other three). In the Vacchagottasaṃyutta (33), the wanderer so named approaches the Buddha five times with the same question, about the reason why the ten speculative views arise in the world, and each time the answer is given as not knowing one of the five aggregates; each question and answer makes a separate sutta. Not content with this much, the compilers of the canon seem to have felt obliged to make it clear that each answer could have been formulated using a different synonym for lack of knowledge. Thus the saṃyutta is built up out of ten variants on the first pentad, identical in all respects except for the change of synonyms. The Jhānasaṃyutta (34) exhibits still another literary flourish, the “wheel” (*cakka*) of permutations, whereby a chain of terms is taken in pairwise combinations, exhausting all possibilities.

#### TECHNICAL NOTES

Here I will discuss a few technical matters pertaining to the translation, emphasizing particularly why my renderings here sometimes differ from those used in MLDB. For the sake of precision, I usually refer to SN by volume, page, and line numbers of Ee (Ee1 in references to Part I), and use the saṃyutta and sutta numbers only when the whole sutta is relevant.<sup>9</sup>

#### THE REPETITIONS

Readers of the Pāli suttas are invariably irked, and sometimes dismayed, by the ponderous repetitiveness of the texts. In SN these are more blatant than in the other Nikāyas, even to the extent that in whole vaggas the suttas might differ from one another only in regard to a single word or phrase. Besides this type of reiterative pattern, we also come across the liberal use of stock definitions, stereotyped formulas, and pericopes typical of the Nikāyas as a whole, stemming from the period when they were transmitted orally. It is difficult to tell how much of the repetition stems from the Buddha himself, who as an itinerant teacher must have often repeated whole discourses with only slight variations, and how much is due to zealous redactors eager to ring every conceivable change on a single idea and preserve it for posterity. It is hard, however, not to suspect that the latter have had a heavy hand in the redaction of the texts.

To avoid excessive repetitiveness in the translation I have had to make ample use of elisions. In this respect I follow the printed editions of the Pāli texts, which are also highly abridged, but a translation intended for a contemporary reader requires still more compression if it is not to risk earning the reader’s wrath. On the other hand, I have been keen to see that nothing essential to the original text, including the flavour, has been lost due to the abridgement. The ideals of considerateness to the reader and fidelity to the text sometimes make contrary demands on a translator.

The treatment of repetition patterns in which the same utterance is made regarding a set of items is a perpetual problem in translating Pāli suttas. When translating a sutta about the five aggregates, for example, one is tempted to forgo the enumeration of the individual aggregates and instead turn the sutta into a general statement about the aggregates as a class. To my mind, such a method veers away from proper translation towards paraphrase and thus risks losing too much of the original text. My general policy has been to translate the full utterance in relation to the first and last members of the set, and merely to enumerate the intermediate members separated by ellipsis points. Thus, in a sutta about the five aggregates, I render the statement in full only for form and consciousness, and in between have “feeling

... perception ... volitional formations ...," implying thereby that the full statement likewise applies to them. With the bigger sets I often omit the intermediate terms, rendering the statement only for the first and last members.

This approach has required the frequent use of ellipsis points, a practice which also invites criticism. Several consulting readers thought I might improve the aesthetic appearance of the page (especially in Part IV) by rephrasing repetitive passages in a way that would eliminate the need for ellipsis points. I accepted this suggestion in regard to repetitions in the narrative framework, but in texts of straight doctrinal exposition I adhered to my original practice. The reason is that I think it an important responsibility of the translator, when translating passages of doctrinal significance, to show exactly where text is being elided, and for this ellipsis points remain the best tool at hand.

#### DHAMMA

Rather than embark on the quest for a single English rendering that can capture all the meanings of this polyvalent Pāli word, I have settled for the more pragmatic approach of using different renderings intended to match its different applications.<sup>10</sup> When the word denotes the Buddha's teaching, I have retained the Pāli "Dhamma," for even "teaching" fails to convey the idea that what the Buddha teaches as the Dhamma is not a system of thought original to himself but the fundamental principles of truth, virtue, and liberation discovered and taught by all Buddhas throughout beginningless time. This is the Dhamma venerated by the Buddhas of the past, present, and future, which they look upon as their own standard and guide (see 6:2). From an internal "emic" point of view, the Dhamma is thus more than a particular religious teaching that has appeared at a particular epoch of human history. It is the timeless law in which reality, truth, and righteousness are merged in a seamless unity, and also the conceptual expression of this law in a body of spiritual and ethical teachings leading to the highest goal, Nibbāna, which is likewise comprised by the Dhamma. The word "Dhamma," however, can also signify teachings that deviate from the truth, including the erroneous doctrines of the

"outside" teachers. Thus the Jain teacher Nigaṇṭha Nātaputta is said to "teach the Dhamma to his disciples" (IV 317,25)—certainly not the Buddha's teaching.

In one passage I render Dhamma as "righteousness" (at the Se counterpart of IV 303,21). This is in the epithet *dhammarājā* used for a universal monarch, where "king of righteousness" fits better than "king of the Dhamma," the significance the epithet has relative to the Buddha. The corresponding adjective, *dhammika*, is "righteous."

When *dhamma* occurs as a general term of reference, often in the plural, I usually render it "things." As such, the word does not bear the narrow sense of concrete material objects but includes literally *every-thing*, such as qualities, practices, acts, and relationships. Thus the four factors of stream-entry are, as *dhammas*, things; so too are the twelve factors of dependent origination, the five aggregates, the six pairs of sense bases, and the diverse practices leading to enlightenment. Used in the plural, *dhammā* can also mean teachings, and so I render it at III 225,9 foll., though the exact sense there is ambiguous and the word might also mean the things that are taught rather than the teachings about them. One expression occurring in two suttas (II 58,3-4; IV 328,21-22), *iminā dhammena*, can be most satisfactorily rendered "by this principle," though here *dhamma* points to the Dhamma as the essential teaching. Again, at I 167,9 (= I 168,25, 173,10), we have *dhamme sati*, "when this principle exists," a rule of conduct followed by the Buddha.

When plural *dhammā* acquires a more technical nuance, in contexts with ontological overtones, I render it "phenomena." For instance, *paṭicca-samuppannā dhammā* are "dependently arisen phenomena" (II 26,7), and each of the five aggregates is *loke lokadhamma*, "a world-phenomenon in the world" that the Buddha has penetrated and taught (III 139,22 foll.). When the word takes on a more psychological hue, I render it "states." The most common example of this is in the familiar pair *kusalā dhammā*, wholesome states, and *akusalā dhammā*, unwholesome states (found, for example, in the formula for right effort; V 9,17-27). The enlightenment factor *dhammavicaya-sambojjhaṅga* is said to be nurtured by giving careful attention to pairs of contrasting mental states (among them wholesome and unwholesome states; V 66,18), and thus I render it "the enlightenment

factor of discrimination of states." But since the *dhammas* investigated can also be the four objective supports of mindfulness (V 331–32), *dhammavicaya* might have been translated "discrimination of phenomena." Sometimes *dhammā* signifies traits of character more persistent than transient mental states; in this context I render it "qualities," e.g., Mahākassapa complains that the bhikkhus "have qualities which make them difficult to admonish" (II 204,3–4).

As a sense base and element, the *dhammāyatana* and *dhamma-dhātu* are the counterparts of the *manāyatana*, the mind base, and the *manoviññāṇadhātu*, the mind-consciousness element. The appropriate sense here would seem to be that of ideas and mental images, but the commentaries understand *dhammas* in these contexts to include not only the objects of consciousness but its concomitants as well. Thus I translate it "mental phenomena," which is wide enough to encompass both these aspects of experience. As the fourth *satipaṭṭhāna*, objective base of mindfulness, *dhammā* is often translated "mind-objects." So I rendered it in MLDB, but in retrospect this seems to me unsatisfactory. Of course, any existent can become an object of mind, and thus all *dhammas* in the fourth *satipaṭṭhāna* are necessarily mind-objects; but the latter term puts the focus in the wrong place. I now understand *dhammas* to be phenomena in general, but phenomena arranged in accordance with the categories of *the Dhamma*, the teaching, in such a way as to lead to a realization of the essential Dhamma embodied in the Four Noble Truths.

Finally, *-dhamma* as a suffix has the meaning "is subject to" or "has the nature of." Thus all dependently arisen phenomena are "subject to destruction, vanishing, fading away, and cessation" (*khayadhamma*, *vayadhamma*, *virāgadhamma*, *nirodhadhamma*; II 26,9 foll.). The five aggregates are "of impermanent nature, of painful nature, of selfless nature" (*aniccadhamma*, *dukkhadhamma*, *anattadhamma*; III 195–96).

#### SAṄKHĀRĀ

In MLDB I had changed Ven. Ñāṇamoli's experimental rendering of *saṅkhārā* as "determinations" back to his earlier choice, "formations." Aware that this word has its own drawbacks, in preparing this translation I had experimented with several alter-

natives. The most attractive of these was "constructions," but in the end I felt that this term too often led to obscurity. Hence, like the land-finding crow which always returns to the ship when land is not close by (see Vism 657; Ppn 21:65), I had to fall back on "formations," which is colourless enough to take on the meaning being imparted by the context. Sometimes I prefixed this with the adjective "volitional" to bring out the meaning more clearly.

*Saṅkhārā* is derived from the prefix *saṃ* (= con), "together," and the verb *karoti*, "to make." The noun straddles both sides of the active-passive divide. Thus *saṅkhāras* are both things which put together, construct, and compound other things, and the things that are put together, constructed, and compounded.

In SN the word occurs in five major doctrinal contexts:

(1) As the second factor in the formula of dependent origination, *saṅkhāras* are the kammically active volitions responsible, in conjunction with ignorance and craving, for generating rebirth and sustaining the forward movement of *saṃsāra* from one life to the next. *Saṅkhārā* is synonymous with *kamma*, to which it is etymologically related, both being derived from *karoti*. These *saṅkhāras* are distinguished as threefold by their channel of expression, as bodily, verbal, and mental (II 4,8–10, etc.); they are also divided by ethical quality into the meritorious, demeritorious, and imperturbable (II 82,9–13). To convey the relevant sense of *saṅkhārā* here I render the term "volitional formations." The word might also have been translated "activities," which makes explicit the connection with *kamma*, but this rendering would sever the connection with *saṅkhārā* in contexts other than dependent origination, which it seems desirable to preserve.

(2) As the fourth of the five aggregates, *saṅkhārā* is defined as the six classes of volitions (*cha cetanākāyā*, III 60,25–28), that is, volition regarding the six types of sense objects. Hence again I render it volitional formations. But the *saṅkhārakkhandha* has a wider compass than the *saṅkhārā* of the dependent origination series, comprising all instances of volition and not only those that are kammically active. In the Abhidhamma Piṭaka and the commentaries the *saṅkhārakkhandha* further serves as an umbrella category for classifying all mental concomitants of consciousness apart from feeling and perception. It thus comes to include all wholesome, unwholesome, and variable mental

factors mentioned but not formally classified among the aggregates in the Sutta Piṭaka.

(3) In the widest sense, *saṅkhārā* comprises all conditioned things, everything arisen from a combination of conditions. In this sense all five aggregates, not just the fourth, are *saṅkhāras* (see III 132,22-27), as are all external objects and situations (II 191,11-17). The term here is taken to be of passive derivation—denoting what is conditioned, constructed, compounded—hence I render it simply “formations,” without the qualifying adjective. This notion of *saṅkhārā* serves as the cornerstone of a philosophical vision which sees the entire universe as constituted of conditioned phenomena. What is particularly emphasized about *saṅkhāras* in this sense is their impermanence. Recognition of their impermanence brings insight into the unreliable nature of all mundane felicity and inspires a sense of urgency directed towards liberation from saṃsāra (see 15:20; 22:96).

(4) A triad of *saṅkhāras* is mentioned in connection with the attainment of the cessation of perception and feeling: the bodily formation, the verbal formation, and the mental formation (IV 293,7-28). The first is in-and-out breathing (because breath is bound up with the body); the second, thought and examination (because by thinking one formulates the ideas one expresses by speech); the third, perception and feeling (because these things are bound up with the mind). Two of these terms—the bodily formation and the mental formation—are also included in the expanded instructions on mindfulness of breathing (V 311,21-22; 312,4-5).

(5) The expression *padhānasāṅkhārā* occurs in the formula for the four *iddhipādas*, the bases for spiritual power. The text explains it as the four right kinds of striving (V 268,8-19). I render it “volitional formations of striving.” Though, strictly speaking, the expression signifies energy (*virīya*) and not volition (*cetanā*), the qualifier shows that these formations occur in an active rather than a passive mode.

Apart from these main contexts, the word *saṅkhāra* occurs in several compounds—*āyusāṅkhāra* (II 266,19; V 262,22-23), *jīvitasāṅkhāra* (V 152,29-153,2) *bhavasāṅkhāra* (V 263,2)—which can be understood as different aspects of the life force.

The past participle connected with *saṅkhārā* is *saṅkhata*, which I

translate “conditioned.” Unfortunately I could not render the two Pāli words into English in a way that preserves the vital connection between them: “formed” is too specific for *saṅkhata*, and “conditions” too wide for *saṅkhārā* (and it also encroaches on the domain of *paccaya*). If “constructions” had been used for *saṅkhārā*, *saṅkhata* would have become “constructed,” which preserves the connection, though at the cost of too stilted a translation. Regrettably, owing to the use of different English words for the pair, a critically important dimension of meaning in the suttas is lost to view. In the Pāli we can clearly see the connection: the *saṅkhāras*, the active constructive forces instigated by volition, create and shape conditioned reality, especially the conditioned factors classified into the five aggregates and the six internal sense bases; and this conditioned reality itself consists of *saṅkhāras* in the passive sense, called in the commentaries *saṅkhata-saṅkhārā*.

Further, it is not only this connection that is lost to view, but also the connection with Nibbāna. For Nibbāna is the *asaṅkhata*, the unconditioned, which is called thus precisely because it is neither made by *saṅkhāras* nor itself a *saṅkhāra* in either the active or passive sense. So, when the texts are taken up in the Pāli, we arrive at a clear picture in fine focus: the active *saṅkhāras* generated by volition perpetually create passive *saṅkhāras*, the *saṅkhata dhammas* or conditioned phenomena of the five aggregates (and, indirectly, of the objective world); and then, through the practice of the Buddha’s path, the practitioner arrives at the true knowledge of conditioned phenomena, which disables the generation of active *saṅkhāras*, putting an end to the constructing of conditioned reality and opening up the door to the Deathless, the *asaṅkhata*, the unconditioned, which is Nibbāna, final liberation from impermanence and suffering.

#### NĀMARŪPA

In MLDB, I also had changed Ven. Nāṇamoli’s “name-and-form” back to his earlier rendering, “mentality-materiality.” In some respects the latter is doctrinally more accurate, but it is also unwieldy, particularly when translating verse, and thus here I return to “name-and-form.” The compound was of pre-Buddhistic origins and is used in the Upaniṣads to denote the

differentiated manifestation of *brahman*, the nondual reality. For the sages of the Upaniṣads, *nāmarūpa* is the manifestation of *brahman* as multiplicity, apprehended by the senses as diversified appearances or forms, and by thought as diversified names or concepts (the assignment of names and concepts being understood as grounded in objective reality rather than as the end-product of a purely subjective process). The Buddha adopted this expression and invested it with a meaning consonant with his own system. Here it becomes the physical and cognitive sides of individual existence. In the expression *bahiddhā nāmarūpa*, “external name-and-form” (at II 24,2), we seem to find a vestige of the original meaning—the world as distinguished according to its appearances and names—but divested of the monistic implications.

In the Buddha’s system, *rūpa* is defined as the four great elements and the form derived from them. Form is both internal to the person (as the body with its senses) and external (as the physical world). The Nikāyas do not explain derived form (*upādāya rūpaṃ*), but the Abhidhamma analyses it into some twenty-four kinds of secondary material phenomena which include the sensitive substances of the sense faculties and four of the five sense objects (the tactile object is identified with three of the great elements—earth, heat, and air—which each exhibit tangible properties). Though I render *nāma* as name, this should not be taken too literally. *Nāma* is the assemblage of mental factors involved in cognition: feeling, perception, volition, contact, and attention (*vedanā, saññā, cetanā, phassa, manasikāra*; II 3,34–35). These are called “name” because they contribute to the process of cognition by which objects are subsumed under conceptual designations.

It should be noted that in the Nikāyas, *nāmarūpa* does not include consciousness (*viññāna*). Consciousness is its condition, and the two are mutually dependent, like two sheaves of reeds leaning one against the other (II 114,17–19). Consciousness can operate only in dependence on a physical body (*rūpa*) and in conjunction with its constellation of concomitants (*nāma*); conversely, only when consciousness is present can a compound of material elements function as a sentient body and the mental concomitants participate in cognition. Occasionally the texts speak of the “descent of consciousness” (*viññānaṣṣa avakkanti*)

serving as a condition for name-and-form (II 91,14–15); this means that the arrival of the current of consciousness from the past existence into the new one is the necessary condition for the arising of a new psychophysical organism at conception. Sometimes too the texts speak of the descent of name-and-form (*nāmarūpaṣṣa avakkanti*, II 66,12, 90,19, 101,13); this denotes the beginning of sentient life when the current of consciousness, arriving from the previous existence, becomes established under the fresh conditions.

#### NIBBĀNA, PARINIBBĀNA

As is well known, *nibbāna* literally means the extinction of a fire. In popular works on Buddhism, *nibbāna* plain and simple is often taken to signify Nibbāna as experienced in life, *parinibbāna* Nibbāna attained at death. This is a misinterpretation. Long ago E.J. Thomas pointed out (possibly on the basis of a suggestion by E. Kuhn) that the prefix *pari-* converts a verb from the expression of a state into the expression of the achievement of an action, so that the corresponding noun *nibbāna* becomes the state of release, *parinibbāna* the attaining of that state.<sup>11</sup> The distinction does not really work very well for the verb, as we find both *parinibbāyati* and *nibbāyati* used to designate the act of attaining release, but it appears to be fairly tenable in regard to the nouns. (In verse, however, we do sometimes find *nibbāna* used to denote the event, for example in the line *pajjotass’ eva nibbānaṃ* at v. 612c.) Words related to both *nibbāna* and *parinibbāna* designate both the attaining of release during life through the experience of full enlightenment, and the attaining of final release from conditioned existence through the breakup of the physical body of death. Thus, for instance, the verb *parinibbāyati* is commonly used to describe how a bhikkhu achieves release while alive (e.g., at II 82,20; III 54,3; IV 23,8–9, etc.) and also to indicate the passing away of the Buddha or an arahant (e.g., at I 158,23; V 161,25).

The past participle forms, *nibbuta* and *parinibbuta*, are from a different verbal root than the nouns *nibbāna* and *parinibbāna*. The former is from *nir + vr*, the latter from *nir + vā*. The noun appropriate to the participles is *nibbuti*, which occasionally occurs in the texts as a synonym for *nibbāna* but with a function that is

more evocative (of tranquillity, complete rest, utter peace) than systematic. (It seems no prefixed noun *parinibbuti* is attested to in Pāli.) At an early time the two verb forms were conflated, so that the participle *parinibbuta* became the standard adjective used to denote one who has undergone *parinibbāna*. Like the verb, the participle is used in apposition to both the living Buddha or arahant (I 1,21, 187,8) and the deceased one (I 122,13, 158,24). Possibly, however, *parinibbuta* is used in relation to the living arahant only in verse, while in prose its technical use is confined to one who has expired. In sutta usage, even when the noun *parinibbāna* denotes the passing away of an arahant (particularly of the Buddha), it does not mean “Nibbāna after death.” It is, rather, the *event* of passing away undergone by one who has already attained Nibbāna during life.

The suttas distinguish between two elements of Nibbāna: the Nibbāna element with residue (*sa-upādisesa-nibbānadhātu*) and the Nibbāna element without residue (*anupādisesa-nibbānadhātu*)—the residue (*upādisesa*) being the compound of the five aggregates produced by prior craving and kamma (It 38–39). The former is the extinction of lust, hatred, and delusion attained by the arahant while alive; the latter is the remainderless cessation of all conditioned existence that occurs with the arahant’s death. In the commentaries the two elements of Nibbāna are respectively called *kilesaparinibbāna*, the quenching of defilements at the attainment of arahantship, and *khandha-parinibbāna*, the quenching of the continuum of aggregates with the arahant’s demise. Though the commentaries treat the two Nibbāna elements and the two kinds of *parinibbāna* as interchangeable and synonymous, in sutta usage it may be preferable to see the two kinds of *parinibbāna* as the events which give access to the two corresponding Nibbāna elements. *Parinibbāna*, then, is the act of quenching; *nibbāna*, the state of quenchedness.

To explain the philology of a term is not to settle the question of its interpretation. What exactly is to be made of the various explanations of Nibbāna given in the Nikāyas has been a subject of debate since the early days of Buddhism, with the ground divided between those who regard it as the mere extinction of defilements and cessation of existence and those who understand it as a transcendental (*lokuttara*) ontological reality. In SN some suttas explain Nibbāna as the destruction of lust, hatred,

and delusion, which emphasizes the experiential psychological dimension; elsewhere it is called the unconditioned, which seems to place the stress on ontological transcendence. The Theravāda commentators regard Nibbāna as an unconditioned element.<sup>12</sup> They hold that when Nibbāna is called the destruction of the defilements (of lust, hatred, and delusion, etc.) and the cessation of the five aggregates, this requires interpretation. Nibbāna itself, as an existent, is unborn, unmade, unbecome, unconditioned (see Ud 80–81). It is in dependence on this element (*taṃ āgamma*), by arriving at it, that there takes place the destruction of the defilements and release from conditioned existence. Nibbāna itself, however, is not reducible to these two events, which are, in their actual occurrence, conditioned events happening in time. On this interpretation, the two Nibbāna elements are seen as stages in the full actualization of the unconditioned Nibbāna, not simply as two discrete events.

In the present work I leave *nibbāna* untranslated, for the term is too rich in evocative meaning and too defiant of conceptual specification to be satisfactorily captured by any proposed English equivalent. I translate *parinibbāna* as “final Nibbāna,” since the noun form usually means the passing away of an arahant (or the Buddha), final release from conditioned existence; sometimes, however, its meaning is ambiguous, as in the statement “the Dhamma [is] taught by the Blessed One for the sake of final Nibbāna without clinging (*anupādāparinibbānattham*)” (IV 48,78), which can mean either Nibbāna during life or the full cessation of existence.

The verb *parinibbāyati* perhaps could have been incorporated into English with “nibbanize,” which would be truest to the Pāli, but this would be too much at variance with current conventions. Thus when the verb refers to the demise of the Buddha or an arahant, I render it “attains final Nibbāna,” but when it designates the extinguishing of defilements by one who attains enlightenment, I render it simply “attains Nibbāna.” We also find a personal noun form, *parinibbāyi*, which I render “an attainer of Nibbāna,” as it can be construed in either sense. In prose the past participle *parinibbuta*, used as a doctrinal term, always occurs with reference to a deceased arahant and so it is translated “has attained final Nibbāna.” In verse, it can take on either meaning; when it describes a living arahant (or the

Buddha) I translate it more freely as “fully quenched.” The unprefix form *nibbuta* does not always carry the same technical implications as *parinibbuta*, but can mean simply “peaceful, satisfied, at ease,” without necessarily establishing that the one so described has attained Nibbāna.<sup>13</sup> At I 24,11 and II 279,8 it has this implication; at I 236,21 it seems to mean simply peaceful; at III 43, in the compound *tadaṅganibbuta*, it definitely does not imply Nibbāna, for the point there is that the monk has only approximated to the real attainment of the goal. Cognates of *parinibbāna* appear in colloquial speech with a non-doctrinal sense; for example, both *parinibbāyati* and *parinibbuta* are used to describe the taming of a horse (at MN I 446,8-10). But even here they seem to be used with a “loaded meaning,” since the horse simile is introduced to draw a comparison with a monk who attains arahantship.

#### OTHER CHANGES

In MLDB I rendered *vitakka* and *vicāra* respectively as “applied thought” and “sustained thought.” In this translation they become “thought” and “examination.” The latter is surely closer to the actual meaning of *vicāra*. When *vitakka* is translated as “thought,” however, a word of caution is necessary. In common usage, *vitakka* corresponds so closely to our “thought” that no other rendering seems feasible; for example, in *kāmavitakka*, sensual thought, or its opposite, *nekkhamavitakka*, thought of renunciation. When, however, *vitakka* and *vicāra* occur as constituents of the first jhāna, they do not exercise the function of discursive thinking characteristic of ordinary consciousness. Here, rather, *vitakka* is the mental factor with the function of applying the mind to the object, and *vicāra* the factor with the function of examining the object nondiscursively in order to anchor the mind in the object.

*Bhava*, in MLDB, was translated “being.” In seeking an alternative, I had first experimented with “becoming,” but when the shortcomings in this choice were pointed out to me I decided to return to “existence,” used in my earlier translations. *Bhava*, however, is not “existence” in the sense of the most universal ontological category, that which is shared by everything from the dishes in the kitchen sink to the numbers in a mathematical

equation. Existence in the latter sense is covered by the verb *atthi* and the abstract noun *atthitā*. *Bhava* is concrete sentient existence in one of the three realms of existence posited by Buddhist cosmology, a span of life beginning with conception and ending in death. In the formula of dependent origination it is understood to mean both (i) the active side of life that produces rebirth into a particular mode of sentient existence, in other words rebirth-producing kamma; and (ii) the mode of sentient existence that results from such activity.

*Sakkāya* is a term for the five aggregates as a collective whole (III 159,10-13). The word is derived from *sat* + *kāya*, and literally means “the existing body,” the assemblage of existent phenomena that serve as the objective basis of clinging. Most translators render it “personality,” a practice I followed in MLDB (departing from Ven. Ñāṇamoli, who rendered it, too literally in my view, “embodiment”). But since, under the influence of modern psychology, the word “personality” has taken on connotations quite foreign to what is implied by *sakkāya*, I now translate it as “identity” (a suggestion made to me by Ven. Thanissaro Bhikkhu). *Sakkāya-ditṭhi* accordingly becomes “identity view,” the view of a self existing either behind or among the five aggregates.

*Nibbidā*, in MLDB, was translated “disenchantment.” However, the word or its cognates is sometimes used in ways which suggest that something stronger is intended. Hence I now translate the noun as “revulsion” and the corresponding verb *nibbindati* as “to experience revulsion.” What is intended by this is not a reaction of emotional disgust, accompanied by horror and aversion, but a calm inward turning away from all conditioned existence as comprised in the five aggregates, the six sense bases, and the first noble truth. Revulsion arises from knowledge and vision of things as they really are (*yathābhūtañāḍassana*), and naturally leads to dispassion (*virāga*) and liberation (*vimutti*; on the sequence, see 12:23).

## NOTES TO GENERAL INTRODUCTION

- 1 The Burmese textual tradition of SN, followed by the Pali Text Society edition, counts fifty-six saṃyuttas, but the Sinhalese tradition counts fifty-four. The difference comes about because the Sinhalese tradition treats the Abhisamayasaṃyutta (our 13) as a subchapter of the Nidāna-saṃyutta (12), and the Vedanāsaṃyutta (our 36) as a subchapter of the Saḷāyatana-saṃyutta (35). Neither of these allocations seems justifiable, as these minor saṃyuttas have no explicit thematic connection with the topics of the larger saṃyuttas into which the Sinhalese tradition has incorporated them.
- 2 I use “Vagga” to refer to the major parts, and “vagga” to refer to the subchapters. Since the Oriental scripts in which the texts are preserved do not have distinct capital and lower case letters, they use the same word for both without orthographic differentiation.
- 3 Buddhaghosa’s figure is given at Sp I 18,9–10, Sv I 23,16–17, and Spk I 2,25–26.
- 4 Norman makes this point in *Pāli Literature*, p. 31.
- 5 For the arrangement of the Chinese Saṃyuktāgama I rely on Anesaki, “The Four Buddhist Āgamas in Chinese.”
- 6 “Categories of Sutta in the Pāli Nikāyas.” See especially pp. 71–84.
- 7 The twelve chapters of the *Vibhaṅga* with counterparts in SN are as follows: (1) Khandhavibhaṅga (= SN 22); (2) Āyatana- (= 35); (3) Dhātu- (= 14); (4) Sacca- (= 56); (5) Indriya- (= 48); (6) Paṭicca-samuppāda- (= 12); (7) Satipaṭṭhāna- (= 47); (8) Sammappadhāna- (= 49); (9) Iddhipāda- (= 51); (10) Bojjhaṅga- (= 46); (11) Magga- (= 45); (12) Jhāna- (= 53).
- 8 My references here are all to SN (by saṃyutta and sutta). To find the parallels, use Concordance 2 (B), pp. 1984–85.
- 9 What follows partly overlaps with MLDB, pp. 52–58, but as my handling of certain terms differs from that of the earlier work, a full discussion is justified.
- 10 Norman takes a similar approach to his translation of *dhamma* in EV I. See his discussion of the word at EV I, n. to 2 (p. 118).

- 11 *History of Buddhist Thought*, p. 121, n. 4.
- 12 This is clearly maintained in the debate on Nibbāna recorded at Vism 507–9 (Ppn 16:67–74). See too the long extract from the *Paramatthamañjūsā*, Dhammapāla’s commentary on Vism, translated by Nāṇamoli at Ppn pp. 825–26, n. 18.
- 13 For a play on the two senses of *nibbuta*, see the Bodhisatta’s reflections before his great renunciation at Ja I 60–61.

Part I  
The Book with Verses  
(*Sagāthāvagga*)

# Contents

Introduction 69

## Chapter I

### 1 *Devatāsaṃyutta*

Connected Discourses with Devatās

#### I. A Reed

- 1 (1) Crossing the Flood 89
- 2 (2) Emancipation 90
- 3 (3) Reaching 90
- 4 (4) Time Flies By 91
- 5 (5) How Many Must One Cut? 91
- 6 (6) Awake 91
- 7 (7) Not Penetrated 92
- 8 (8) Utterly Muddled 92
- 9 (9) One Prone to Conceit 93
- 10 (10) Forest 93

#### II. Nandana

- 11 (1) Nandana 94
- 12 (2) Delight 94
- 13 (3) None Equal to That for a Son 95
- 14 (4) The Khattiya 95
- 15 (5) Murmuring 95
- 16 (6) Drowsiness and Lethargy 96
- 17 (7) Difficult to Practise 96
- 18 (8) A Sense of Shame 96
- 19 (9) A Little Hut 97
- 20 (10) Samiddhi 97

## III. A Sword

- 21 (1) A Sword 100
- 22 (2) It Touches 101
- 23 (3) Tangle 101
- 24 (4) Reining in the Mind 101
- 25 (5) The Arahant 102
- 26 (6) Sources of Light 102
- 27 (7) Streams 103
- 28 (8) Those of Great Wealth 103
- 29 (9) Four Wheels 104
- 30 (10) Antelope Calves 104

## IV. The Satullapa Host

- 31 (1) With the Good 104
- 32 (2) Stinginess 106
- 33 (3) Good 108
- 34 (4) There Are No 110
- 35 (5) Faultfinders 112
- 36 (6) Faith 114
- 37 (7) Concourse 115
- 38 (8) The Stone Splinter 116
- 39 (9) Pajjunna's Daughter (1) 118
- 40 (10) Pajjunna's Daughter (2) 119

## V. Ablaze

- 41 (1) Ablaze 119
- 42 (2) Giving What? 120
- 43 (3) Food 121
- 44 (4) One Root 121
- 45 (5) Perfect 121
- 46 (6) Nymphs 122
- 47 (7) Planters of Groves 122
- 48 (8) Jeta's Grove 123
- 49 (9) Stingy 123
- 50 (10) Ghaṭikāra 125

## VI. Old Age

- 51 (1) Old Age 127
- 52 (2) Undecaying 127
- 53 (3) The Friend 127

- 54 (4) Support 128
- 55 (5) Produces (1) 128
- 56 (6) Produces (2) 128
- 57 (7) Produces (3) 129
- 58 (8) The Deviant Path 129
- 59 (9) Partner 129
- 60 (10) Poetry 130

## VII. Weighed Down

- 61 (1) Name 130
- 62 (2) Mind 130
- 63 (3) Craving 131
- 64 (4) Fetter 131
- 65 (5) Bondage 131
- 66 (6) Afflicted 131
- 67 (7) Ensnared 132
- 68 (8) Shut In 132
- 69 (9) Desire 132
- 70 (10) World 133

## VIII. Having Slain

- 71 (1) Having Slain 133
- 72 (2) Chariot 133
- 73 (3) Treasure 134
- 74 (4) Rain 134
- 75 (5) Afraid 135
- 76 (6) Does Not Decay 135
- 77 (7) Sovereignty 136
- 78 (8) Love 136
- 79 (9) Provisions for a Journey 137
- 80 (10) Source of Light 137
- 81 (11) Without Conflict 138

## Chapter II

2 *Devaputtasaṅgīyutta*

## Connected Discourses with Young Devas

## I. The First Subchapter (Suriya)

- 1 (1) Kassapa (1) 139
- 2 (2) Kassapa (2) 140

- 3 (3) Māgha 140
- 4 (4) Māgadha 140
- 5 (5) Dāmali 141
- 6 (6) Kāmada 142
- 7 (7) Pañcālacaṇḍa 142
- 8 (8) Tāyana 143
- 9 (9) Candimā 144
- 10 (10) Suriya 145

## II. Anāthapiṇḍika

- 11 (1) Candimasa 146
- 12 (2) Veṇhu 147
- 13 (3) Dighalaṭṭhi 147
- 14 (4) Nandana 147
- 15 (5) Candana 148
- 16 (6) Vasudatta 149
- 17 (7) Subrahmā 149
- 18 (8) Kakudha 149
- 19 (9) Uttara 150
- 20 (10) Anāthapiṇḍika 151

## III. Various Sectarrians

- 21 (1) Siva 152
- 22 (2) Khema 153
- 23 (3) Seri 154
- 24 (4) Ghaṭikāra 156
- 25 (5) Jantu 156
- 26 (6) Rohitassa 157
- 27 (7) Nanda 158
- 28 (8) Nandivisāla 159
- 29 (9) Susima 159
- 30 (10) Various Sectarrians 161

## Chapter III

3 *Kosalasamyutta*

## Connected Discourses with the Kosalan

## I. The First Subchapter (Bondage)

- 1 (1) Young 164
- 2 (2) A Person 166

- 3 (3) Aging and Death 167
- 4 (4) Dear 167
- 5 (5) Self-Protected 169
- 6 (6) Few 169
- 7 (7) The Judgement Hall 170
- 8 (8) Mallikā 170
- 9 (9) Sacrifice 171
- 10 (10) Bondage 172

## II. The Second Subchapter (Childless)

- 11 (1) Seven Jaṭilas 173
- 12 (2) Five Kings 175
- 13 (3) A Bucket Measure of Food 176
- 14 (4) Battle (1) 177
- 15 (5) Battle (2) 178
- 16 (6) Daughter 179
- 17 (7) Diligence (1) 179
- 18 (8) Diligence (2) 180
- 19 (9) Childless (1) 182
- 20 (10) Childless (2) 183

## III. The Third Subchapter (The Kosalan Pentad)

- 21 (1) Persons 185
- 22 (2) Grandmother 188
- 23 (3) World 189
- 24 (4) Archery 190
- 25 (5) The Simile of the Mountain 192

## Chapter IV

4 *Mārasamyutta*

## Connected Discourses with Māra

## I. The First Subchapter (Life Span)

- 1 (1) Austere Practice 195
- 2 (2) The King Elephant 196
- 3 (3) Beautiful 196
- 4 (4) Māra's Snare (1) 197
- 5 (5) Māra's Snare (2) 198
- 6 (6) Serpent 199
- 7 (7) Sleep 199

- 8 (8) He Delights 200
- 9 (9) Life Span (1) 201
- 10 (10) Life Span (2) 201

## II. The Second Subchapter (Rulership)

- 11 (1) The Boulder 202
- 12 (2) Lion 202
- 13 (3) The Splinter 203
- 14 (4) Suitable 204
- 15 (5) Mental 205
- 16 (6) Almsbowls 205
- 17 (7) Six Bases for Contact 206
- 18 (8) Alms 207
- 19 (9) The Farmer 208
- 20 (10) Rulership 209

## III. The Third Subchapter (The Māra Pentad)

- 21 (1) A Number 210
- 22 (2) Samiddhi 211
- 23 (3) Godhika 212
- 24 (4) Seven Years of Pursuit 215
- 25 (5) Māra's Daughters 217

## Chapter V

5 *Bhikkhunisaṃyutta*

## Connected Discourses with Bhikkhunis

- 1 Āḷavikā 221
- 2 Somā 222
- 3 Gotami 223
- 4 Vijayā 224
- 5 Uppalavaṇṇā 225
- 6 Cālā 226
- 7 Upacālā 227
- 8 Sisupacālā 227
- 9 Selā 228
- 10 Vajirā 229

## Chapter VI

6 *Brahmasaṃyutta*

## Connected Discourses with Brahmās

## I. The First Subchapter (The Request)

- 1 (1) Brahmā's Request 231
- 2 (2) Reverence 233
- 3 (3) Brahmadeva 235
- 4 (4) Brahmā Baka 237
- 5 (5) A Certain Brahmā (Another View) 239
- 6 (6) A Brahmā World (Negligence) 242
- 7 (7) Kokālika (1) 243
- 8 (8) Tissaka 243
- 9 (9) Brahmā Tudu 244
- 10 (10) Kokālika (2) 245

## II. The Second Subchapter (Brahmā Pentad)

- 11 (1) Sanaṅkumāra 247
- 12 (2) Devadatta 247
- 13 (3) Andhakavinda 248
- 14 (4) Aruṇavati 249
- 15 (5) Final Nibbāna 251

## Chapter VII

7 *Brāhmaṇasaṃyutta*

## Connected Discourses with Brahmins

## I. The Arahants

- 1 (1) Dhanañjani 254
- 2 (2) Abuse 255
- 3 (3) Asurindaka 257
- 4 (4) Bilaṅgika 258
- 5 (5) Ahimsaka 258
- 6 (6) Tangle 259
- 7 (7) Suddhika 260
- 8 (8) Aggika 260
- 9 (9) Sundarika 262
- 10 (10) Many Daughters 264

## II. The Lay Followers

- 11 (1) Kasi Bhāradvāja 266
- 12 (2) Udaya 268
- 13 (3) Devahita 269
- 14 (4) The Affluent One 271
- 15 (5) Mānatthaddha 272
- 16 (6) Paccaṇika 274
- 17 (7) Navakammika 272
- 18 (8) The Wood Gatherers 275
- 19 (9) The Mother Supporter 277
- 20 (10) The Mendicant 277
- 21 (11) Saṅgārava 278
- 22 (12) Khomadussa 279

## Chapter VIII

8 *Vaṅgisasamyutta*

## Connected Discourses with Vaṅgīsa

- 1 Renounced 280
- 2 Discontent 281
- 3 Well Behaved 282
- 4 Ānanda 283
- 5 Well Spoken 284
- 6 Sāriputta 285
- 7 Pavāraṇā 286
- 8 Over a Thousand 288
- 9 Koṇḍañña 290
- 10 Moggallāna 291
- 11 Gaggarā 292
- 12 Vaṅgīsa 292

## Chapter IX

9 *Vanasamyutta*

## Connected Discourses in the Woods

- 1 Seclusion 294
- 2 Rousing 295
- 3 Kassapagotta 296
- 4 A Number 296
- 5 Ānanda 297

- 6 Anuruddha 297
- 7 Nāgadatta 298
- 8 Family Mistress 299
- 9 Vajjian Prince (or Vesāli) 300
- 10 Reciting 300
- 11 Unwholesome Thoughts 301
- 12 Noon 301
- 13 Loose in Sense Faculties 302
- 14 The Thief of Scent 303

## Chapter X

10 *Yakkhasamyutta*

## Connected Discourses with Yakkhas

- 1 Indaka 305
- 2 Sakkaṇāmaka 305
- 3 Sūciloma 306
- 4 Maṇibhadda 307
- 5 Sānu 308
- 6 Piyaṅkara 309
- 7 Punabbasu 310
- 8 Sudatta 311
- 9 Sukkā (1) 313
- 10 Sukkā (2) 313
- 11 Cīrā 314
- 12 Āḷavaka 314

## Chapter XI

11 *Sakkasamyutta*

## Connected Discourses with Sakka

## I. The First Subchapter (Suvira)

- 1 (1) Suvira 317
- 2 (2) Susima 318
- 3 (3) The Crest of the Standard 319
- 4 (4) Vepacitti (or Patience) 321
- 5 (5) Victory by Well-Spoken Counsel 323
- 6 (6) The Bird Nests 325
- 7 (7) One Should Not Transgress 325
- 8 (8) Verocana, Lord of the Asuras 326

- 9 (9) Seers in a Forest 327  
 10 (10) Seers by the Ocean 327

## II. The Second Subchapter (The Seven Vows)

- 11 (1) Vows 329  
 12 (2) Sakka's Names 329  
 13 (3) Mahāli 330  
 14 (4) Poor 331  
 15 (5) A Delightful Place 332  
 16 (6) Bestowing Alms 332  
 17 (7) Veneration of the Buddha 333  
 18 (8) The Worship of Householders (or Sakka's  
 Worship (1)) 333  
 19 (9) The Worship of the Teacher (or Sakka's  
 Worship (2)) 335  
 20 (10) The Worship of the Saṅgha (or Sakka's  
 Worship (3)) 336

## III. The Third Subchapter (Sakka Pentad)

- 21 (1) Having Slain 337  
 22 (2) Ugly 338  
 23 (3) Magic 339  
 24 (4) Transgression 339  
 25 (5) Nonanger 340

Notes 341

## Introduction

The *Sagāthāvagga* is so called because all the suttas in this book contain verses, at least one, usually more. The Vagga is divided into eleven saṃyuttas containing a total of 271 suttas. Most of these saṃyuttas are subdivided into several vaggas, usually of ten suttas each. In four saṃyuttas (3, 4, 6, 11), the last vagga contains only five suttas, half the standard number, and these are therefore called "pentads" (*pañcaka*). Four saṃyuttas are not divided into separate vaggas (5, 8, 9, 10), and thus may be considered as made up of a single vagga. I have numbered the suttas consecutively within each saṃyutta starting from 1, with the number within the vagga given in parenthesis. The recent PTS edition of the *Sagāthāvagga* (Ee2) numbers the suttas consecutively through the entire collection, from 1 to 271.

The number of verses varies from edition to edition, depending on differences in readings and on alternative ways of grouping *pādas* or lines into stanzas; for a sequence of twelve *pādas* might be divided into either two stanzas of six lines each or three stanzas of four lines each. Ee2 is the only one that numbers the verses, and this edition has 945; of these I have not included three (vv. 70, 138, 815), for reasons explained in the notes (nn. 53, 96, 573). Many of the verses occur several times within the Saṃyutta Nikāya, usually within the *Sagāthāvagga*, occasionally elsewhere, as can be seen from Concordance 1 (A). The verses also have extensive parallels elsewhere in the Pāli Canon. A large number are shared by such texts as the Thera- and Therīgāthās, the Suttanipāta, the Dhammapada, and the Jātakas, as well as by the other Nikāyas. They are also quoted in paracanonical texts such as the *Milindapañha*, the *Peṭakopadesa*, and

the *Nettipakaraṇa*. A significant number have parallels in the vast corpus of non-Pāli Indian Buddhist literature, such as the Patna and Gāndhārī Dharmapadas, the *Udānavarga*, the *Mahāvastu*, and even the much later *Yogācārabhūmi*. All these “external” parallels are shown in Concordance 1 (B). Doubtlessly some of the verses were not original to the suttas in our collection but belonged to the vast, free floating mass of Buddhist didactic verse which the compilers of the texts pinned down to specific contexts by providing them with narrative settings such as those found in the *Sagāthāvagga*.

Of the eleven *saṃyuttas* in this *Vagga*, eight revolve around encounters between the Buddha (or his disciples) and beings from other planes of existence. Since we will repeatedly run across beings from nonhuman planes in the other *Vaggas* too, a short summary of the Buddhist picture of the sentient universe will help us to identify them and to understand their place in early Buddhist cosmology. (See Table 3, which gives a visual representation of this cosmology.)

TABLE 3

The Thirty-One Planes of Existence according to  
Traditional Theravāda Cosmology  
(see CMA 5:3–7)

*The Formless Realm* (4 planes)

- (31) Base of neither-perception-nor-nonperception
- (30) Base of nothingness
- (29) Base of infinity of consciousness
- (28) Base of infinity of space

*The Form Realm* (16 planes)

*Fourth jhāna plane: Five Pure Abodes*

- (27) Akaniṭṭha realm
- (26) Clear-sighted realm
- (25) Beautiful realm
- (24) Serene realm
- (23) Durable realm

*Ordinary fourth jhāna plane*

- (22) Nonperceptient beings
- (21) Devas of great fruit

*Third jhāna plane*

- (20) Devas of steady aura
- (19) Devas of measureless aura
- (18) Devas of minor aura

*Second jhāna plane*

- (17) Devas of streaming radiance
- (16) Devas of measureless radiance
- (15) Devas of minor radiance

*First jhāna plane*

- (14) Mahābrahmā realm
- (13) Brahmā’s ministers
- (12) Brahmā’s assembly

*The Sense-Sphere Realm* (11 planes)

*Seven good destinations*

- Six sense-sphere heavenly realms
- (11) Paranimmitavasavatti devas
- (10) Nimmānarati devas
- (9) Tusita devas
- (8) Yāma devas
- (7) Tāvatiṃsa devas
- (6) Four Great Kings

Human realm

- (5) Human realm

*Four bad destinations*

- (4) Host of asuras
- (3) Domain of ghosts
- (2) Animal realm
- (1) Hell realms

The early Buddhist texts envisage a universe with three principal tiers subdivided into numerous planes. The lowest tier is the

sense-sphere realm (*kāmadhātu*), so called because the driving force within this realm is sensual desire. The sense-sphere realm (in the oldest cosmology) contains ten planes: the hells (*niraya*), planes of extreme torment; the animal realm (*tiracchānayoṇi*); the domain of *petas* or ghosts (*pettivisaya*), shade-like spirits subject to various kinds of misery; the human realm (*manussaloka*); and six sense-sphere heavens (*sagga*) inhabited by the *devas*, celestial beings who enjoy far greater happiness, beauty, power, and glory than we know in the human realm. Later tradition adds the *asuravisaya*, the domain of titans or antigods, to the bad destinations, though in the Nikāyas they are depicted as occupying a region adjacent to the Tāvātimsa heaven, from which they often launch invasions against the *devas*.

Above the sense-sphere realm is the form realm (*rūpadhātu*), where gross material form has vanished and only the subtler kinds of form remain. The realm is divided into four main tiers with several planes in each. The inhabitants of these planes are also *devas*, though to distinguish them from the gods of the sensuous heavens they are usually called *brahmās*. The life spans in the various brahmā planes increase exponentially, being far longer than those in the sensuous heavens, and sensual desire has largely abated. The prevalent mode of experience here is meditative rather than sensory, as these planes are the ontological counterparts of the four *jhānas* or meditative absorptions. They include the five "Pure Abodes" (*suddhāvāsa*), spheres of rebirth accessible only to nonreturners.

Beyond the form realm lies an even more exalted sphere of existence called the formless realm (*arūpadhātu*). The beings in this realm consist solely of mind, without a material basis, as physical form is here entirely absent. The four planes that make up this realm, successively more subtle, are the ontological counterparts of the four *ārūppas* or formless meditative attainments, after which they are named: the base of the infinity of space, the base of the infinity of consciousness, the base of nothingness, and the base of neither-perception-nor-nonperception.

The suttas often compress this elaborate cosmology into a simpler scheme of five destinations (*pañcagati*): the hells, the animal realm, the domain of ghosts, the human realm, and the deva world. The last includes all the many deva planes of the three realms. The first three are called the plane of misery (*apāya-*

*bhūmi*), the nether world (*vinipāta*), or the bad destinations (*dug-gati*); the human realm and the deva planes are collectively called the good destinations (*sugati*). Rebirth into the plane of misery is the fruit of unwholesome kamma, rebirth into the good destinations the fruit of wholesome kamma. Beyond all realms and planes of existence is the unconditioned, Nibbāna, the final goal of the Buddha's teaching.

#### 1. DEVATĀSAMĪYUTTA

*Devatā* is an abstract noun based on *deva*, but in the Nikāyas it is invariably used to denote particular celestial beings, just as the English word "deity," originally an abstract noun meaning the divine nature, is normally used to denote the supreme God of theistic religions or an individual god or goddess of polytheistic faiths. Though the word is feminine, the gender comes from the abstract suffix *-tā* and does not necessarily mean the devatās are female. The texts rarely indicate their sex, though it seems they can be of either sex and perhaps sometimes beyond sexual differentiation.

For Buddhism the *devas* are not immortal gods exercising a creative role in the cosmic process. They are simply elevated beings, blissful and luminous, who had previously dwelt in the human world but had been reborn in the celestial planes as the fruit of their meritorious deeds. With rare exceptions they are just as much in bondage to delusion and desire as human beings, and they equally stand in need of guidance from the Enlightened One. The Buddha is the "teacher of *devas* and humans" (*satthā devamanussānaṃ*), and though squarely established in the human world he towers above the most exalted deities by reason of his supreme wisdom and perfect purity.

The *devas* usually come to visit the Buddha in the deep stillness of the night, while the rest of the world lies immersed in sleep. The *Devatāsamiyutta* gives us a record of their conversations. Sometimes the *devas* come to recite verses in praise of the Master, sometimes to ask questions, sometimes to request instruction, sometimes to win approval of their views, sometimes even to challenge or taunt him. On approaching they almost always bow down to him in homage, for the Buddha is their spiritual and moral superior. Not to bow down to him, as

some devas do (see 1:35), is provocative, a deliberate withholding of due respect.

Each of the four Nikāyas opens with a sutta of deep significance. Though the first sutta of SN is very short, it is rich in implications. In this case a devatā comes to the Buddha to ask how he “crossed the flood,” that is, how he attained deliverance, and in his reply the Buddha points to the “middle way” as the key to his attainment. This answer conveys the essential spirit of the Dhamma, which avoids all extremes in views, attitudes, and conduct. The commentary draws out the ramifications of the Buddha’s statement with a list of seven extremes, philosophical and practical, transcended by the middle way.

The following suttas in this saṃyutta cover a wide spectrum of subjects without any particular logic in their sequence. They range from the simple to the profound, from the commonplace to the sublime, from the humorous to the stern. The exchanges discuss such ethical practices as giving, service to others, and noninjury; the difficulties of renunciation and the life of meditation; the call for earnest effort; the sorrows of human existence and the need for deliverance. There are also suttas on the bliss and equanimity of the arahant, and a few which touch on his transcendental stature. In most suttas the prose portion serves no other function than to establish a framework for the conversation, which eventually falls away leaving only an exchange of verses with the speakers’ identities understood. But we occasionally find brief stories, such as that of the female devatā who tried to seduce the bhikkhu Samiddhi (1:20), or of the “faultfinding devas” who accused the Buddha of hypocrisy (1:35), or of the visit paid to the Buddha by a group of devas when his foot was injured by a stone splinter (1:38).

Usually the personal identity of the devatā is not revealed. An exception is the pair of suttas where the two Kokanadā sisters, daughters of the weather god Pajjunna, visit the Buddha and praise him and his Dhamma (1:39–40). Sometimes verses spoken by an anonymous deity recur elsewhere with the identity specified; for example, v. 22 reappears as v. 461, ascribed to Māra the Evil One; vv. 156–59 reappear as vv. 312–15, ascribed to Anātha-piṇḍika, the celestial reincarnation of the great philanthropist. It is also rare for the suttas to assign the devas to particular realms, but there are exceptions, such as those on the “extolling of the

good” host of devas (*satullapakāyikā devā*; 1:31–34, etc.) and the one on the devas of the Pure Abodes (*suddhāvāsakāyikā devā*; 1:37). The commentary, cited in the notes, often provides more background information.

When the devatā does not ask a question but voices an opinion, a contrast is usually established between the viewpoint of the deity, generally valid from within his or her limited horizons, and the viewpoint of the Buddha, who sees things far beyond the ken of the devas (see, e.g., vv. 3–6). Sometimes a group of devas express their opinions, which the Buddha surpasses with his own more profound contribution (vv. 78–84, 95–101). In several suttas the verses are not spoken in the context of a conversation but express the personal views of the deva, which the Buddha tacitly endorses (vv. 136–40), and two verses are simple paeans of praise to the Blessed One (vv. 147, 148). Beginning with v. 183, the suttas assume a standard format, with the devas posing a series of riddles which the Buddha answers to their satisfaction. A memorable example of this is the riddle about the type of killing that the Buddha approves of, to which the answer is the killing of anger (vv. 223–24). In one sutta we find a gentle touch of humour: a devatā has asked the Buddha a series of questions, apparently mundane in intent, but before the Blessed One can reply another devatā breaks in and gives his own answers, which remain at the mundane level. Then the Buddha replies, lifting the dialogue to the transcendent plane (vv. 229–31). Because of its varied content and the piquancy of its verses, within the Theravāda tradition, at least in Sri Lanka, the Devatāsaṃyutta is extremely popular as a source of texts to be drawn upon for sermons.

## 2. DEVAPUTTASAṂYUTTA

The *devaputtas*, or “sons of the devas,” are young devas newly arisen in their respective heavenly planes; *devaduhitās*, “daughters of the devas,” are also mentioned in the commentary but none appear in this saṃyutta. The commentary says these beings are reborn spontaneously in the laps of the devas. While the devatās in the preceding saṃyutta remain mostly anonymous, the young devas are always identified by name, and it is surprising to find that several of them—or at least their verses—

have already appeared in the *Devatāsaṃyutta* (see 2:3, 4, 16, 19, 20, 21, 24, 27). This suggests that the dividing line between the two classes of deities is not a hard and fast one, just as the dividing line between an adult and an adolescent is not hard and fast. A relatively large proportion of the verses in this chapter focus on the monastic training, substantially more than in the *Devatāsaṃyutta*. The texts themselves do not drop any hints as to why this should be so; at least there are none that are readily visible.

Several suttas raise points of special interest from a doctrinal perspective. We meet, for example, the young deva Dāmali who thought that the arahant must still “strive without weariness,” until the Buddha told him that the arahant had completed his task and need not strive further (2:5). The commentary says this sutta is almost unique in that the Buddha here does *not* speak in praise of effort. Again, we meet Tāyana, whose verses on exertion are applauded by the Blessed One and, the next morning, are commended by him to the monks (2:8). The two suttas on the capture of the moon god Candimā and the sun god Suriya include verses that must have functioned as charms for terminating lunar and solar eclipses (2:9, 10); in Sri Lanka they are included in the *Maha Pirit Pota*, “The Great Book of Protection,” made up of suttas and other chants recited for spiritual and physical protection. We also meet Subrahmā, whose single verse is one of the pithiest expressions in world literature of the anguish at the heart of the human condition (2:17). The story of Rohitassa, who tried to reach the end of the world by travelling, elicits from the Buddha a momentous reply about where the world and its end are ultimately to be found (2:26). In this *saṃyutta* we also meet two young devas named Veṅhu and Siva (at 2:12 and 2:21), who may be early prototypes of the Indian gods Viṣṇu and Śiva (the Sanskrit forms of their names); our text, however, apparently dates from a period before they became the chief deities of theistic devotional Hinduism. The last sutta in the chapter (2:30) introduces us to a group of young devas who were formerly disciples of the Buddha’s rivals on the Indian scene, Pūraṇa Kassapa, Makkhali Gosāla, and Nigaṇṭha Nātaputta, teachers whose views had been unequivocally rejected by the Buddha. It is thus perplexing that their disciples should have been reborn in heaven, especially when the first two teachers propagated such doctrines as moral anarchism and

fatalism. But the conclusion reached in the sutta is that such teachers were as far from the stature of true holy men as the jackal is from the lion.

### 3. KOSALASAMYUTTA

This chapter introduces us to King Pasenadi of Kosala. According to the Buddhist texts, Pasenadi was deeply devoted to the Buddha and often sought his counsel, though there is no record of him reaching any stage of awakening (and thus medieval Sri Lankan tradition holds that he was a bodhisatta, who does not attain enlightenment so that he might continue fulfilling the perfect virtues that culminate in Buddhahood). Pasenadi had been led to the Buddha by his wife, Queen Mallikā, whose devotion to the Master he had previously resented. The story of how Mallikā convinced him of the Buddha’s wisdom is related in MN No. 87; MN No. 89 gives us a moving account of the king’s last meeting with the Master when they were both in their eightieth year. The first sutta of the *Kosalasaṃyutta* apparently records Pasenadi’s first meeting with the Blessed One, after his confidence had been aroused by Mallikā’s ruse. Here the Buddha is described as young, and when the king questions the claim that such a youthful ascetic can be perfectly enlightened, the Buddha replies with a series of verses that dispels the king’s doubts and inspires him to go for refuge.

Unlike the first two *saṃyuttas*, the present one employs substantial prose backgrounds to the verses, and often the stanzas merely restate metrically the moral of the Buddha’s discourse. Though the topics discussed are not especially profound, they are almost all relevant to the busy lay person faced with the difficult challenge of living a moral life in the world. Especially noteworthy is the stress they lay on the need to adhere unflinchingly to the path of rectitude amidst the world’s temptations. Several suttas (3:4, 5) show how easy it is to fall away from righteous standards, especially in an age like the Buddha’s when, as in our own time, stiff competition for wealth, position, and power was driving hallowed ethical values out of circulation. The remedy against temptation is diligence (*appamāda*), and when the Buddha extols diligence to the king the word does not mean, as it does in a monastic context, constant devotion to

meditation, but persistence in the performance of meritorious deeds. For a man like Pasenadi, a happy rebirth rather than Nibbāna is the immediate goal.

The king's conversation with Mallikā, in which they both admit they cherish themselves more than anyone else (3:8), elicits from the Buddha a verse which gives an ethical slant to a metaphysical thesis found in the *Bṛhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣad*, also occurring in a conversation between husband and wife, that of all things the self is the most precious. This raises the interesting question whether the close correspondence between the two is sheer coincidence (not impossible) or the result of a deliberate reworking by the Buddha of the old *Upaniṣad*. On another occasion we see the king display lack of acumen in his assessment of ascetics (3:11)—perhaps a hint that his commitment to the Dhamma was not unwavering—and the Buddha's response offers astute counsel on how to judge a person's character.

In this *saṃyutta* we even find, from the Master's golden lips, enlightened advice for losing weight (3:12), while two other suttas provide an historical perspective on the conflict between Kosala and Magadha, with reflections on war and peace (3:14–15). Of timely interest is the Buddha's verse explaining to the king that a woman can turn out better than a man (3:16). Elsewhere the Buddha rejects the idea, propagated by the brahmins, that birth is an important criterion of spiritual worth, stressing instead that the true marks of spiritual nobility are ethical purity and wisdom (3:24).

A theme that recurs throughout this *saṃyutta* is the inevitability of death and the inexorable operation of the law of kamma, which ensures that good and bad actions meet with due recompense. Beings pass from bright states to dark ones and from dark states to bright ones depending on their actions (3:21). All that we take with us when we die are our good and bad deeds, and thus we should be sure to accumulate merits, for in the next world these are "the support for living beings" (3:4, 20, 22). Among several texts on the inevitability of death, the most memorable is the last sutta in the chapter (3:25), with its startling parable of the mountains advancing from all quarters, crushing everything in their way.

#### 4. MĀRASAMYUTTA

Māra is the Evil One of Buddhism, the Tempter and Lord of Sensuality bent on distracting aspirants from the path to liberation and keeping them trapped in the cycle of repeated birth and death. Sometimes the texts use the word "Māra" in a metaphorical sense, as representing the inward psychological causes of bondage such as craving and lust (22:63–65) and the external things to which we become bound, particularly the five aggregates themselves (23:11–12). But it is evident that the thought world of the suttas does not conceive Māra only as a personification of humankind's moral frailty, but sees him as a real evil deity out to frustrate the efforts of those intent on winning the ultimate goal. The proof of this lies in his pursuit of the Buddha and the arahants *after* their enlightenment, which would not be credible if he were conceived of merely as a psychological projection.

The *Mārasaṃyutta* opens in the vicinity of the Bodhi Tree soon after the Buddha has attained the supreme enlightenment. Here Māra challenges the Blessed One's claim to have reached the goal. He taunts him for abandoning the path of self-mortification (4:1), tries to frighten him by assuming horrific shapes (4:2), and seeks to break his equanimity by displaying beautiful and hideous forms (4:3). For the Buddha to triumph in these contests he need only call Māra's bluff, to announce that he knows the adversary before him is none other than the Evil One. Then Māra must disappear, frustrated and mournful.

Māra also appears as the cynic who denies that mortals can attain perfect purity (4:4, 15). On several occasions he tries to confound the monks while they are listening to the Buddha speak, but each time the Buddha calls his number (4:16, 17, 19). On another occasion Māra tries to tempt the Master with the lure of worldly power, but the Buddha staunchly rejects this (4:20). Especially impressive is the *Godhika Sutta* (4:23), where the bhikkhu Godhika, afflicted with an illness that obstructs his meditative progress, plans to take his own life. Māra presents himself before the Buddha, pleading with him to discourage his disciple from such folly, but the Master extols devotion to the goal even at the cost of life. At the end of the sutta Māra is searching vainly for the rebirth-consciousness of Godhika,

unaware that the monk had attained Nibbāna and expired “with consciousness unestablished.”

The last two suttas in this *saṃyutta* take us back to the site of the enlightenment. Here we see first Māra and then Māra’s three daughters—*Taṇhā*, *Aratī*, and *Ragā* (Craving, Discontent, and Lusting)—trying to find a point of vulnerability in the newly enlightened Buddha, but their efforts are in vain and they must depart disappointed (4:24, 25).

#### 5. BHIKKHUNĪSAṂYUTTA

The *Bhikkhunisāṃyutta* is a compilation of ten short suttas in mixed prose and verse, undivided into *vaggas*. The protagonists are all *bhikkhunis*, Buddhist nuns. Though several of its thirty-seven verses have parallels in the *Therīgāthā* (mentioned in the notes and Concordance 1 (B)), a substantial number are unique to this collection, while often the variations in roughly parallel versions are themselves of intrinsic interest. At least one nun in the *Bhikkhunisāṃyutta*, *Vajirā*, does not appear at all in the *Therīgāthā*, while the case of another nun, *Selā*, is problematic. A comparison between the two collections also brings to light some noteworthy differences in the ascription of authorship. Since SN and the *Therīgāthā* were evidently transmitted by different lines of reciters, it was only too easy for verses to break off from their original narrative setting and merge with a different background story connecting them to a different author.

All the ten suttas are constructed according to the same pattern, a direct confrontation between Māra and an individual nun. This structure probably accounts for the placement of the *Bhikkhunisāṃyutta* immediately after the *Mārasāṃyutta*. Each sutta of this collection begins with a nun going off by herself to pass the day in solitary meditation. Then Māra approaches her with a challenge—a provocative question or a taunt—intending to make her fall away from concentration. What Māra has failed to realize is that each of these nuns is an arahant who has seen so deeply into the truth of the Dhamma that she is utterly inaccessible to his wiles. Far from being flustered by Māra’s challenge, the nun promptly guesses her adversary’s identity and meets his challenge with a sharp retort.

In a dialogue that brings together the Lord of Sensuality with

a solitary nun one might expect each of Māra’s overtures to be aimed at sexual seduction. This, however, is so only in several suttas. The actual themes of the discourses vary widely and expose us to a broad range of perspectives on the attitudes and insights of the renunciant life. The contrast between the allurements and misery of sensual pleasures is the theme of 5:1, 4, and 5. In all three cases the nuns sharply rebuke Māra with verses that reveal their utter indifference to his solicitations.

Māra’s dialogue with *Somā* (5:2) voices the ancient Indian prejudice that women are endowed with “mere two-fingered wisdom” and thus cannot attain Nibbāna. *Somā*’s rejoinder is a forceful reminder that enlightenment does not depend on gender but on the mind’s capacity for concentration and wisdom, qualities accessible to any human being who earnestly seeks to penetrate the truth. In 5:3, Māra approaches *Kisāgotamī*, the heroine of the well-known parable of the mustard seed, trying to arouse her maternal instincts to beget another son. His challenge thus touches on sensuality only indirectly, his primary appeal being aimed at the feminine desire for children.

The last two suttas are philosophical masterpieces, compressing into a few tight stanzas insights of enormous depth and wide implications. When Māra challenges *Selā* with a question on the origins of personal existence, she replies with a masterly poem that condenses the whole teaching of dependent origination into three four-line stanzas adorned with an illuminating simile (5:9). He poses a similar problem to *Vajirā*, who answers with a stunning exposition of the teaching of nonself, illustrating the composite nature of personal identity with the famous simile of the chariot (5:10).

Though set against a mythological background in an ancient world whose customs and norms seem so remote from our own, these poems of the ancient nuns still speak to us today through their sheer simplicity and uncompromising honesty. They need no ornamentation or artifice to convey their message, for they are sufficient in themselves to startle us with the clarity of unadorned truth.

#### 6. BRAHMASAṂYUTTA

*Brahmā* was the supreme deity of early Brahmanism, conceived

as the creator of the universe and venerated by the brahmins with sacrifices and rituals. Occasionally this conception of Brahmā persists in the Buddhist canon, though as a target of criticism and satire rather than as an article of faith. In such contexts the word “brahmā” is used as a proper name, often augmented to Mahābrahmā, “Brahmā the Great.” The Buddha reinterpreted the idea of brahmā and transformed the single, all-powerful deity of the brahmins into a class of exalted gods dwelling in the form realm (*rūpadhātu*) far above the sense-sphere heavens. Their abode is referred to as “the brahmā world,” of which there are many, of varying dimensions and degrees of hegemony. Within their realm the brahmās dwell in companies, and Mahābrahmā (or sometimes a brahmā of a more personal name) is seen as the ruler of that company, complete with ministers and assembly. Like all sentient beings, the brahmās are impermanent, still tied to the round of rebirth, though sometimes they forget this and imagine themselves immortal.

The path to rebirth in the brahmā world is mastery over the jhānas, each of which is ontologically attuned to a particular level of the form realm (see Table 3). Sometimes the Buddha mentions the four “divine abodes” (*brahmavihāra*) as the means to rebirth in the brahmā world. These are the “immeasurable” meditations on lovingkindness, compassion, altruistic joy, and equanimity (*mettā, karuṇā, muditā, upekkhā*).

The Nikāyas offer an ambivalent evaluation of the brahmās, as can be seen from the present saṃyutta. On the one hand, certain brahmās are depicted as valiant protectors of the Buddha’s dispensation and devoted followers of the Master. But precisely because of their longevity and elevated stature in the cosmic hierarchy, the brahmās are prone to delusion and conceit; indeed, they sometimes imagine they are all-powerful creators and rulers of the universe. Perhaps this dual evaluation reflects the Buddha’s ambivalent attitude towards the brahmins: admiration for the ancient spiritual ideals of the brahmin life (as preserved in the expressions *brahmacariya* and *brahmavihāra*) coupled with rejection of the pretensions of the contemporary brahmins to superiority based on birth and lineage.

The most eminent of the brahmās devoted to the Buddha is Brahmā Sahampati, who appears several times in SN. Soon after

the enlightenment he descends from his divine abode and reappears before the Blessed One to beseech him to teach the Dhamma to the world (6:1). He applauds the Buddha’s reverence for the Dhamma (6:2), extols an arahant bhikkhu on alms round (6:3), reproaches the evil Devadatta (6:12), and shows up again at the Buddha’s parinibbāna, where he recites a verse of eulogy (6:15). He will also appear in other saṃyuttas (at 11:17; 22:80; 47:18, 43; and 48:57).

Brahmās of the deluded type are epitomized by Brahmā Baka, who imagined himself eternal and had to be divested of this illusion by the Master (6:4). On another occasion, an unnamed brahmā imagined he was superior to the arahants, and the Buddha and four great disciples visited his realm to make him alter his views (6:5). We also witness a contest between a negligent brahmā, stiff with pride, and two colleagues of his, devotees of the Buddha, who sweep away his illusions (6:6). The penultimate sutta shows a disciple of the past Buddha Sikhi awing a whole assembly of proud brahmās with his display of psychic powers (6:14). This saṃyutta also relates the sad story of the monk Kokālika, a cohort of Devadatta, who tried to defame the chief disciples Sāriputta and Moggallāna and had to reap the kammic result as a rebirth in hell (6:9–10). The last sutta in this collection, included here only because of Brahmā Sahampati’s single verse, is a parallel of the death scene in the long Mahāparinibbāna Sutta of the Dīgha Nikāya.

## 7. BRĀHMAṆASAMYUTTA

This saṃyutta, recording the Buddha’s conversations with brahmins, contains two vaggas, each with a different unifying theme. In the first all the brahmins who come to the Buddha, often angry (7:1–4) or disdainful (7:7–9), are so deeply stirred by his words that they ask for ordination into the Saṅgha and “not long afterwards” attain arahantship. These suttas display the Buddha as the incarnation of patience and peace, capable of working, in those who would attack him, the miracle of transformation simply by his unshakable equanimity and impeccable wisdom. In this vagga we also see how the Buddha assessed the brahmin claim to superior status based on birth. He here interprets the word “brahmin” by way of its original meaning, as a

holy man, and on this basis redefines the true brahmin as the arahant. The three Vedas which the brahmins revered and diligently studied are replaced by the three *vijjās* or true knowledges possessed by the arahant: knowledge of past births, of the laws of kammic retribution, and of the destruction of the taints (7:8). The last sutta adds a touch of humour, still recognizable today, by depicting the contrast between the oppressive cares of the household life and the untrammelled freedom of the life of renunciation (7:10).

In the second vagga the brahmins come to challenge the Buddha in still different ways, and again the Buddha rises to the occasion with his inexhaustible wit and wisdom. In this vagga, however, though the Buddha inspires in his antagonists a newly won faith, the brahmin converts do not become monks but declare themselves lay followers "who have gone for refuge for life."

#### 8. VAṄĪSASAMĪYUTTA

The bhikkhu Vaṅḡisa was declared by the Buddha the foremost disciple of those gifted with inspirational speech (*paṭibhānavantānaṃ*, at AN I 24,21). This title accrued to him on account of his skill in composing spontaneous verse. His verses make up the longest chapter in the Theragāthā, whose seventy-one verses (Th 1209–79) closely correspond with those in the present saṃyutta but lack the prose frameworks. Another poem by Vaṅḡisa, found at Sn II, 12, is not included in the present compilation but does have a counterpart in the Theragāthā.

The verses of Vaṅḡisa are not mere metrical aphorisms (as are so many verses in this collection) but skilfully wrought poetic compositions that can well claim an honoured place in early Indian poetry. They also reveal, with unabashed honesty, the trials and temptations which their author faced in his career as a monk. Having an aesthetic bent of character and a natural appreciation of sensuous beauty, Vaṅḡisa must have gone through a difficult struggle in his early days as a monk adjusting to the strict discipline required of a bhikkhu, with its training in sense restraint and vigilant control of the mind. The early suttas in this chapter (8:1–4) speak of his battle against sensual lust, his susceptibility to the charms of the opposite sex, and his firm determination not to succumb but to continue bravely along the

path laid down by his Master. They also tell of his proclivity to pride, no doubt based on his natural talent as a poet, and of his endeavour to subdue this flaw of character. Later in his monastic career, apparently after he gained a greater degree of self-mastery, he often extolled the Buddha in verse, and on one occasion the Blessed One requested him to compose extemporaneous verses (8:8). In other poems he praises the great disciples Sāriputta, Moggallāna, and Koṇḍañña (8:6, 9, 10). The last poem in the saṃyutta, partly autobiographical, concludes with a declaration that the author has become an arahant equipped with the three true knowledges and other spiritual powers (8:12).

#### 9. VANASAMĪYUTTA

This saṃyutta consists of fourteen suttas most of which are constructed according to a stereotyped pattern. A bhikkhu is living alone in a woodland thicket, where he should be meditating ardently, but human weakness gets the better of him and causes him to swerve from his religious duties. Then a devatā dwelling in the thicket takes compassion on him and chides him in verse, seeking to reawaken his sense of urgency. Apparently these devatās are not celestial beings, like those we meet in the Devatāsamīyutta, but dryads or fairies, and they seem to be feminine. On a few occasions the devatā errs in her assessment of the bhikkhu's behaviour. Thus in 9:2 the devatā comes to reproach the bhikkhu for taking a nap, unaware he has already attained arahantship, and in 9:8 for associating too closely with a woman, again unaware the bhikkhu is an arahant (according to the commentary). In 9:6, a devatā from the Tāvatiṃsa heaven tries to persuade the Venerable Anuruddha to aspire for rebirth in her realm, but he declares that he has ended the process of rebirth and will never take another existence. The last sutta in the chapter (9:14) also occurs in the Jātakas, interestingly with the Bodhisatta in the role played here by the bhikkhu.

#### 10. YAKKHASAMĪYUTTA

The yakkhas are fierce spirits inhabiting remote areas such as forests, hills, and abandoned caves. They are depicted as of hideous mien and wrathful temperament, but when given offer-

ings and shown respect they become benign and may protect people rather than harm them. Many of the shrines that dotted the North Indian countryside were built to honour the yakkhas and secure their favours. Though living in misery they have the potential for awakening and can attain the paths and fruits of the spiritual life.

The suttas in this chapter cover a wide range of topics. What unites them is not so much the content of the verses but their propagational function in showing the Buddha as the invincible sage who, by his skilful means, can tame and transform even the most violent and fearsome ogres, such as Sūciloma (10:3) and Ālavaka (10:12). The saṃyutta also includes two charming tales of female yakkhas, famished spirits haunting the outskirts of Jeta's Grove, who are so deeply moved by the Buddha's sermons and the chanting of the monks that they turn over a new leaf and become pious lay devotees (10:6, 7). In this saṃyutta too we find the story of Anāthapiṇḍika's first meeting with the Buddha, which was abetted by friendly advice from a benevolent yakkha (10:8). In three suttas the yakkhas speak verses in praise of bhikkhunis (10:9–11).

#### 11. SAKKASAMYUTTA

In the early Buddhist pantheon, Sakka is the ruler of the devas in the Tāvatiṃsa heaven and also a follower of the Buddha. A long conversation between him and the Buddha, culminating in his attainment of stream-entry, is told in the Sakkapañha Sutta (DN No. 20). This saṃyutta does not report the Buddha's own encounters with Sakka, but gives (in the Buddha's words) accounts of Sakka's deeds and conversations. The suttas are thus presented as fables, but fables which always embody a moral message. The saṃyutta also includes the famous Dhajagga Sutta (11:3), in which the Buddha commends to the monks recollection of the Three Jewels—the Buddha, the Dhamma, and the Saṅgha—as an antidote to fear.

In Buddhist legend the Tāvatiṃsa devas are perpetually being attacked by the asuras, the titans, beings of great physical prowess and violent ambition who seek to conquer them and take control of their domain. The Sakkasaṃyutta repeatedly pits Sakka in struggle against the leaders of the asuras, Vepacitti and

Verocana. The two sides can be read as symbolizing alternative political philosophies. The asura leaders favour rule by force and retaliation against enemies; they rationalize aggression and extol the ethic of "might makes right." Sakka, in contrast, stands for rule by righteousness, patience towards aggressors, and the compassionate treatment of wrongdoers (11:4, 5, 8). Sakka and the devas honour sages and holy men, the asuras scorn them, and thus the sages help the devas but curse the asuras (11:9, 10).

In this saṃyutta Sakka appears as the ideal lay devotee. He earned his place as ruler of the devas, while he was still a human being, by fulfilling seven vows which embody the standards of the virtuous householder (11:11). His understanding of the Buddha's excellence is inferior to Brahmā Sahampati's (11:17), but in three suttas he eloquently proclaims the reasons for his devotion to the Buddha, the Saṅgha, and even devout householders (11:18–20). In the last three suttas, the Buddha holds up Sakka's patience and forgiveness as a model for the bhikkhus (11:23–25).

*Homage to the Blessed One,  
the Arahant, the Perfectly Enlightened One*

Chapter I

1 *Devatāsaṃyutta*

Connected Discourses with Devatās

I. A REED

1 (1) *Crossing the Flood*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvattī in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. Then, when the night had advanced, a certain devatā of stunning beauty, illuminating the entire Jeta's Grove, approached the Blessed One. Having approached, he paid homage to the Blessed One, stood to one side, and said to him:

"How, dear sir, did you cross the flood?"<sup>1</sup>

"By not halting, friend, and by not straining I crossed the flood."<sup>2</sup>

"But how is it, dear sir, that by not halting and by not straining you crossed the flood?"

"When I came to a standstill, friend, then I sank; but when I struggled, then I got swept away. It is in this way, friend, that by not halting and by not straining I crossed the flood."<sup>3</sup> <2>

[The devatā:]

- 1 "After a long time at last I see  
A brahmin who is fully quenched,  
Who by not halting, not straining,  
Has crossed over attachment to the world."<sup>4</sup>

This is what that devatā said.<sup>5</sup> The Teacher approved. Then that devatā, thinking, “The Teacher has approved of me,” paid homage to the Blessed One and, keeping him on the right, disappeared right there. [2]

### 2 (2) *Emancipation*

<3> At Sāvatti. Then, when the night had advanced, a certain devatā of stunning beauty, illuminating the entire Jeta’s Grove, approached the Blessed One. Having approached, he paid homage to the Blessed One, stood to one side, and said to him:

“Do you know, dear sir, emancipation, release, seclusion for beings?”<sup>6</sup>

“I know, friend, emancipation, release, seclusion for beings.”

“But in what way, dear sir, do you know emancipation, release, seclusion for beings?”

[The Blessed One:]

- 2 “By the utter destruction of delight in existence,<sup>7</sup>  
By the extinction of perception and consciousness,  
By the cessation and appeasement of feelings: <4>  
It is thus, friend, that I know for beings—  
Emancipation, release, seclusion.”<sup>8</sup>

### 3 (3) *Reaching*

At Sāvatti. Standing to one side, that devatā recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:

- 3 “Life is swept along, short is the life span;  
No shelters exist for one who has reached old age.  
Seeing clearly this danger in death,  
One should do deeds of merit that bring happiness.”<sup>9</sup>

[The Blessed One:]

- 4 “Life is swept along, short is the life span;  
No shelters exist for one who has reached old age.  
Seeing clearly this danger in death,  
A seeker of peace should drop the world’s bait.”<sup>10</sup> [3] <5>

### 4 (4) *Time Flies By*

At Sāvatti. Standing to one side, that devatā recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:

- 5 “Time flies by, the nights swiftly pass;  
The stages of life successively desert us.<sup>11</sup>  
Seeing clearly this danger in death,  
One should do deeds of merit that bring happiness.”

[The Blessed One:]

- 6 “Time flies by, the nights swiftly pass;  
The stages of life successively desert us.  
Seeing clearly this danger in death,  
A seeker of peace should drop the world’s bait.”

### 5 (5) *How Many Must One Cut?*

At Sāvatti. Standing to one side, that devatā recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:

- 7 “How many must one cut, how many abandon,  
And how many further must one develop?  
When a bhikkhu has surmounted how many ties  
Is he called a crosser of the flood?”

[The Blessed One:] <6>

- 8 “One must cut off five, abandon five,  
And must develop a further five.  
A bhikkhu who has surmounted five ties  
Is called a crosser of the flood.”<sup>12</sup>

### 6 (6) *Awake*

At Sāvatti. Standing to one side, that devatā recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:

- 9 “How many are asleep when [others] are awake?  
How many are awake when [others] sleep?”

By how many does one gather dust?  
By how many is one purified?"

[The Blessed One:]

- 10 "Five are asleep when [others] are awake;  
Five are awake when [others] sleep.  
By five things one gathers dust,  
By five things one is purified."<sup>13</sup> [4] <7>

7 (7) *Not Penetrated*

At Sāvattḥi. Standing to one side, that devatā recited this verse  
in the presence of the Blessed One:

- 11 "Those who have not penetrated things,  
Who may be led into others' doctrines,  
Fast asleep, they have not yet awakened:  
It is time for them to awaken."<sup>14</sup>

[The Blessed One:]

- 12 "Those who have penetrated things well,  
Who cannot be led into others' doctrines,  
Those awakened ones, having rightly known,  
Fare evenly amidst the uneven."<sup>15</sup>

8 (8) *Utterly Muddled*

At Sāvattḥi. Standing to one side, that devatā recited this verse  
in the presence of the Blessed One:

- 13 "Those who are utterly muddled about things,  
Who may be led into others' doctrines, <8>  
Fast asleep, they have not yet awakened:  
It is time for them to awaken."

[The Blessed One:]

- 14 "Those who aren't muddled about things,  
Who cannot be led into others' doctrines,  
Those awakened ones, having rightly known,  
Fare evenly amidst the uneven."

9 (9) *One Prone to Conceit*

At Sāvattḥi. Standing to one side, that devatā recited this verse  
in the presence of the Blessed One:

- 15 "There is no taming here for one fond of conceit,  
Nor is there sagehood for the unconcentrated:  
Though dwelling alone in the forest, heedless,  
One cannot cross beyond the realm of Death."<sup>16</sup>

[The Blessed One:]

- 16 "Having abandoned conceit, well concentrated,  
With lofty mind, everywhere released: <9>  
While dwelling alone in the forest, diligent,  
One can cross beyond the realm of Death."<sup>17</sup> [5]

10 (10) *Forest*

At Sāvattḥi. Standing to one side, that devatā recited this verse  
in the presence of the Blessed One:

- 17 "Those who dwell deep in the forest,  
Peaceful, leading the holy life,  
Eating but a single meal a day:  
Why is their complexion so serene?"<sup>18</sup>

[The Blessed One:]

- 18 "They do not sorrow over the past,  
Nor do they hanker for the future.  
They maintain themselves with what is present:  
Hence their complexion is so serene.

- 19 "Through hankering for the future,  
Through sorrowing over the past,  
Fools dry up and wither away  
Like a green reed cut down."

&lt;10&gt;

## II. NANDANA

11 (1) *Nandana*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvattī in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. There the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Bhikkhus!"

"Venerable sir!" those bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

"Once in the past, bhikkhus, a certain devatā of the Tāvatiṃsa host was revelling in Nandana Grove, <11> supplied and endowed with the five cords of celestial sensual pleasure, accompanied by a retinue of celestial nymphs. On that occasion he spoke this verse:

- 20 "They do not know bliss  
Who have not seen Nandana,  
The abode of the glorious male devas  
Belonging to the host of Thirty."<sup>19</sup> [6]

"When this was said, bhikkhus, a certain devatā replied to that devatā in verse:

- 21 "Don't you know, you fool,  
That maxim of the arahants?  
Impermanent are all formations;  
Their nature is to arise and vanish.  
Having arisen, they cease:  
Their appeasement is blissful."<sup>20</sup>

12 (2) *Delight*

At Sāvattī. Standing to one side, that devatā recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One: <12>

- 22 "One who has sons delights in sons,  
One with cattle delights in cattle.  
Acquisitions truly are a man's delight;  
Without acquisitions one does not delight."<sup>21</sup>

[The Blessed One:]

- 23 "One who has sons sorrows over sons,  
One with cattle sorrows over cattle.  
Acquisitions truly are a man's sorrows;  
Without acquisitions one does not sorrow."

13 (3) *None Equal to That for a Son*

At Sāvattī. Standing to one side, that devatā spoke this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:

- 24 "There is no affection like that for a son,  
No wealth equal to cattle,  
There is no light like the sun,  
Among the waters the ocean is supreme."<sup>22</sup>

[The Blessed One:]

- 25 "There is no affection like that for oneself,  
No wealth equal to grain,  
There is no light like wisdom,  
Among the waters the rain is supreme." <13>

14 (4) *The Khattiya*

- 26 "The khattiya is the best of bipeds,  
The ox, the best of quadrupeds;  
A maiden is the best of wives,  
The first born, the best of sons."<sup>23</sup>
- 27 "The Buddha is the best of bipeds,  
A steed, the best of quadrupeds;  
An obedient woman is the best of wives,  
A dutiful boy, the best of sons." [7]

15 (5) *Murmuring*

- 28 "When the noon hour sets in  
And the birds have settled down, <14>  
The mighty forest itself murmurs:  
How fearful that appears to me!"<sup>24</sup>

29 "When the noon hour sets in  
And the birds have settled down,  
The mighty forest itself murmurs:  
How delightful that appears to me!"

16 (6) *Drowsiness and Lethargy*

30 "Drowsiness, lethargy, lazy stretching, <15>  
Discontent, torpor after meals:  
Because of this, here among beings,  
The noble path does not appear."

31 "Drowsiness, lethargy, lazy stretching,  
Discontent, torpor after meals:  
When one dispels this with energy,  
The noble path is cleared."<sup>25</sup>

17 (7) *Difficult to Practise*

32 "The ascetic life is hard to practise  
And hard for the inept to endure,  
For many are the obstructions there  
In which the fool founders."

33 "How many days can one practise the ascetic life  
If one does not rein in one's mind?  
One would founder with each step  
Under the control of one's intentions."<sup>26</sup>

34 "Drawing in the mind's thoughts  
As a tortoise draws its limbs into its shell, <16>  
Independent, not harassing others, fully quenched,  
A bhikkhu would not blame anyone."<sup>27</sup>

18 (8) *A Sense of Shame*

35 "Is there a person somewhere in the world  
Who is restrained by a sense of shame,  
One who draws back from blame  
As a good horse does from the whip?"<sup>28</sup>

36 "Few are those restrained by a sense of shame  
Who fare always mindful;  
Few, having reached the end of suffering,  
Fare evenly amidst the uneven." [8] <17>

19 (9) *A Little Hut*

37 "Don't you have a little hut?  
Don't you have a little nest?  
Don't you have any lines extended?  
Are you free from bondage?"

38 "Surely I have no little hut,  
Surely I have no little nest,  
Surely I have no lines extended,  
Surely I'm free from bondage."<sup>29</sup>

39 "What do you think I call a little hut?  
What do you think I call a little nest?  
What do you think I call lines extended?  
What do you think I call bondage?"<sup>30</sup>

40 "It's a mother that you call a little hut,  
A wife that you call a little nest, <18>  
Sons that you call lines extended,  
Craving that you tell me is bondage."

41 "It's good that you have no little hut,  
Good that you have no little nest,  
Good that you have no lines extended,  
Good that you are free from bondage."

20 (10) *Samiddhi*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha in the Hot Springs Park. Then the Venerable Samiddhi, having risen at the first flush of dawn, went to the hot springs to bathe. Having bathed in the hot springs and come back out, he stood in one robe drying his limbs.

Then, when the night had advanced, a certain devatā of stunning beauty, illuminating the entire hot springs, approached the Venerable Samiddhi. Having approached, she stood in the air and addressed the Venerable Samiddhi in verse:<sup>31</sup> <19>

42 “Without having enjoyed you seek alms, bhikkhu,  
You don’t seek alms after you’ve enjoyed.  
First enjoy, bhikkhu, then seek alms:  
Don’t let the time pass you by!” [9]

43 “I do not know what the time might be;  
The time is hidden and cannot be seen.  
Hence, without enjoying, I seek alms:  
Don’t let the time pass me by!”<sup>32</sup>

Then that devatā alighted on the earth and said to the Venerable Samiddhi: “You have gone forth while young, bhikkhu, a lad with black hair, endowed with the blessing of youth, in the prime of life, without having dallied with sensual pleasures. Enjoy human sensual pleasures, bhikkhu; do not abandon what is directly visible in order to pursue what takes time.”

“I have not abandoned what is directly visible, friend, in order to pursue what takes time. I have abandoned what takes time in order to pursue what is directly visible. <20> For the Blessed One, friend, has stated that sensual pleasures are time-consuming, full of suffering, full of despair, and the danger in them is still greater, while this Dhamma is directly visible, immediate, inviting one to come and see, applicable, to be personally experienced by the wise.”<sup>33</sup>

“But how is it, bhikkhu, that the Blessed One has stated that sensual pleasures are time-consuming, full of suffering, full of despair, and the danger in them is still greater? How is it that this Dhamma is directly visible, immediate, inviting one to come and see, applicable, to be personally experienced by the wise?”

“I am newly ordained, friend, not long gone forth, just recently come to this Dhamma and Discipline. I cannot explain it in detail. But that Blessed One, the Arahant, the Perfectly Enlightened One, is dwelling at Rājagaha in the Hot Springs Park. Approach that Blessed One and ask him about this matter.

As he explains it to you, so you should remember it.”

“It isn’t easy for us to approach that Blessed One, bhikkhu, as he is surrounded by other devatās of great influence.<sup>34</sup> If you would approach him <21> and ask him about this matter, we will come along too in order to hear the Dhamma.”

“Very well, friend,” the Venerable Samiddhi replied. Then he approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, [10] and reported his entire discussion with that devatā, [11] <22–23> (*verses 44–45, included in the report, repeat verses 42–43*) adding: “If that devatā’s statement is true, venerable sir, then that devatā should be close by.”

When this was said, that devatā said to the Venerable Samiddhi: “Ask, bhikkhu! Ask, bhikkhu! For I have arrived.”

Then the Blessed One addressed that devatā in verse:

46 “Beings who perceive what can be expressed  
Become established in what can be expressed. <24>  
Not fully understanding what can be expressed,  
They come under the yoke of Death.”<sup>35</sup>

47 “But having fully understood what can be expressed,  
One does not conceive ‘one who expresses.’  
For that does not exist for him  
By which one could describe him.”<sup>36</sup>

“If you understand, spirit, speak up.”

“I do not understand in detail, venerable sir, the meaning of what was stated in brief by the Blessed One. Please, venerable sir, let the Blessed One explain it to me in such a way that I might understand in detail the meaning of what he stated in brief.” [12]

[The Blessed One:]

48 “One who conceives ‘I am equal, better, or worse,’  
Might on that account engage in disputes.  
But one not shaken in the three discriminations  
Does not think, ‘I am equal or better.’<sup>37</sup> <25>

“If you understand, spirit, speak up.”

“In this case too, venerable sir, I do not understand in detail ...

let the Blessed One explain it to me in such a way that I might understand in detail the meaning of what he stated in brief."

[The Blessed One:]

49 "He abandoned reckoning, did not assume conceit;<sup>38</sup>  
He cut off craving here for name-and-form.  
Though devas and humans search for him  
Here and beyond, in the heavens and all abodes,  
They do not find the one whose knots are cut,  
The one untroubled, free of longing.

"If you understand, spirit, speak up."

"I understand in detail, venerable sir, the meaning of what was stated in brief by the Blessed One thus: <26>

50 "One should do no evil in all the world,  
Not by speech, mind, or body.  
Having abandoned sense pleasures,  
Mindful and clearly comprehending,  
One should not pursue a course  
That is painful and harmful."<sup>39</sup>

[13] <27>

### III. A SWORD

21 (1) *A Sword*

At Sāvattḥi. Standing to one side, that devatā recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:

51 "As if smitten by a sword,  
As if his head were on fire,  
A bhikkhu should wander mindfully  
To abandon sensual lust."

[The Blessed One:]

52 "As if smitten by a sword,  
As if his head were on fire,  
A bhikkhu should wander mindfully  
To abandon identity view."<sup>40</sup>

22 (2) *It Touches* <28>

53 "It does not touch one who does not touch,  
But then will touch the one who touches.  
Therefore it touches the one who touches,  
The one who wrongs an innocent man."<sup>41</sup>

54 "If one wrongs an innocent man,  
A pure person without blemish,  
The evil falls back on the fool himself  
Like fine dust thrown against the wind."<sup>42</sup>

23 (3) *Tangle*

55 "A tangle inside, a tangle outside,  
This generation is entangled in a tangle.  
I ask you this, O Gotama,  
Who can disentangle this tangle?"<sup>43</sup> <29>

56 "A man established on virtue, wise,  
Developing the mind and wisdom,  
A bhikkhu ardent and discreet:  
He can disentangle this tangle."<sup>44</sup>

57 "Those for whom lust and hatred  
Along with ignorance have been expunged,  
The arahants with taints destroyed:  
For them the tangle is disentangled."<sup>45</sup>

58 "Where name-and-form ceases,  
Stops without remainder,  
And also impingement and perception of form:  
It is here this tangle is cut."<sup>46</sup> [14]

24 (4) *Reining in the Mind*

59 "From whatever one reins in the mind,  
From that no suffering comes to one. <30>  
Should one rein in the mind from everything,  
One is freed from all suffering."

60 "One need not rein in the mind from everything  
When the mind has come under control.  
From whatever it is that evil comes,  
From this one should rein in the mind."<sup>47</sup>

25 (5) *The Arahant*

61 "If a bhikkhu is an arahant,  
Consummate, with taints destroyed,  
One who bears his final body,  
Would he still say, 'I speak'?  
And would he say, 'They speak to me?'"<sup>48</sup>

62 "If a bhikkhu is an arahant, <31>  
Consummate, with taints destroyed,  
One who bears his final body,  
He might still say, 'I speak,'  
And he might say, 'They speak to me.'  
Skilful, knowing the world's parlance,  
He uses such terms as mere expressions."<sup>49</sup>

63 "When a bhikkhu is an arahant,  
Consummate, with taints destroyed,  
One who bears his final body,  
Is it because he has come upon conceit  
That he would say, 'I speak,'  
That he would say, 'They speak to me?'"<sup>50</sup>

64 "No knots exist for one with conceit abandoned;  
For him all knots of conceit are consumed.  
Though the wise one has transcended the conceived, [15]  
He still might say, 'I speak,' <32>  
He might say too, 'They speak to me.'  
Skilful, knowing the world's parlance,  
He uses such terms as mere expressions."<sup>51</sup>

26 (6) *Sources of Light*

65 "How many sources of light are in the world  
By means of which the world is illumined?

We have come to ask the Blessed One this:  
How are we to understand it?"

66 "There are four sources of light in the world;  
A fifth one is not found here.  
The sun shines by day,  
The moon glows at night,

67 And fire flares up here and there  
Both by day and at night.  
But the Buddha is the best of those that shine: <33>  
He is the light unsurpassed."

27 (7) *Streams*

68 "From where do the streams turn back?  
Where does the round no longer revolve?  
Where does name-and-form cease,  
Stop without remainder?"

69 "Where water, earth, fire, and air,  
Do not gain a footing:  
It is from here that the streams turn back,  
Here that the round no longer revolves;  
Here name-and-form ceases,  
Stops without remainder."<sup>52</sup>

28 (8) *Those of Great Wealth* <34>

71<sup>53</sup> "Those of great wealth and property,  
Even khattiyas who rule the country,  
Look at each other with greedy eyes,  
Insatiable in sensual pleasures.

72 Among these who have become so avid,  
Flowing along in the stream of existence,  
Who here have abandoned craving?  
Who in the world are no longer avid?"<sup>54</sup>

73 "Having left their homes and gone forth,  
Having left their dear sons and cattle,  
Having left behind lust and hatred, <35>

Having expunged ignorance—  
The arahants with taints destroyed  
Are those in the world no longer avid.” [16]

29 (9) *Four Wheels*

- 74 “Having four wheels and nine doors,  
Filled up and bound with greed,  
Born from a bog, O great hero!  
How does one escape from it?”<sup>55</sup>
- 75 “Having cut the thong and the strap,  
Having cut off evil desire and greed,  
Having drawn out craving with its root:  
Thus one escapes from it.”<sup>56</sup>

30 (10) *Antelope Calves* <36>

- 76 “Having approached you, we ask a question  
Of the slender hero with antelope calves,  
Greedless, subsisting on little food,  
Wandering alone like a lion or nāga,  
Without concern for sensual pleasures:  
How is one released from suffering?”<sup>57</sup>
- 77 “Five cords of sensual pleasure in the world,  
With mind declared to be the sixth:  
Having expunged desire here,  
One is thus released from suffering.”<sup>58</sup>

&lt;37&gt;

## IV. THE SATULLAPA HOST

31 (1) *With the Good*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvattī in Jeta’s Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika’s Park. Then, when the night had advanced, a number of devatās belonging to the Satullapa host, of stunning beauty, illuminating the entire Jeta’s Grove, approached the Blessed One.<sup>59</sup> Having

approached, they paid homage to the Blessed One and stood to one side. [17]

Then one devatā, standing to one side, recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:

- 78 “One should associate only with the good; <38>  
With the good one should foster intimacy.  
Having learnt the true Dhamma of the good,  
One becomes better, never worse.”

Then five other devatās in turn recited their verses in the presence of the Blessed One:

- 79 “One should associate only with the good;  
With the good one should foster intimacy.  
Having learnt the true Dhamma of the good,  
Wisdom is gained, but not from another.”<sup>60</sup>
- 80 “One should associate only with the good;  
With the good one should foster intimacy.  
Having learnt the true Dhamma of the good, <39>  
One does not sorrow in the midst of sorrow.”
- 81 “One should associate only with the good;  
With the good one should foster intimacy.  
Having learnt the true Dhamma of the good,  
One shines amidst one’s relations.”
- 82 “One should associate only with the good;  
With the good one should foster intimacy.  
Having learnt the true Dhamma of the good,  
Beings fare on to a good destination.”
- 83 “One should associate only with the good;  
With the good one should foster intimacy.  
Having learnt the true Dhamma of the good,  
Beings abide comfortably.”<sup>61</sup>

Then another devatā said to the Blessed One: “Which one, Blessed One, has spoken well?”

“You have all spoken well in a way.<sup>62</sup> But listen to me too: [18]

- 84 “One should associate only with the good;  
With the good one should foster intimacy.  
Having learnt the true Dhamma of the good,  
One is released from all suffering.”

This is what the Blessed One said. Elated, those devatās paid homage to the Blessed One and, keeping him on the right, they disappeared right there.

### 32 (2) *Stinginess*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvatti in Jeta’s Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika’s Park. Then, when the night had advanced, a number of devatās belonging to the Satullapa host, of stunning beauty, illuminating the entire Jeta’s Grove, approached the Blessed One. Having approached, they paid homage to the Blessed One and stood to one side.

Then one devatā, standing to one side, recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:

- 85 “Through stinginess and negligence  
A gift is not given.  
One who knows, desiring merit, <40>  
Should surely give a gift.”

Then another devatā recited these verses in the presence of the Blessed One:

- 86 “That which the miser fears when he does not give  
Is the very danger that comes to the nongiver.  
The hunger and thirst that the miser fears  
Afflict that fool in this world and the next.
- 87 “Therefore, having removed stinginess,  
The conqueror of the stain should give a gift.<sup>63</sup>  
Deeds of merit are the support for living beings  
[When they arise] in the other world.”

Then another devatā recited these verses in the presence of the Blessed One:

- 88 “They do not die among the dead  
Who, like fellow travellers on the road,  
Provide though they have but a little:  
This is an ancient principle.<sup>64</sup> <41>
- 89 “Some provide from the little they have,  
Others who are affluent don’t like to give.  
An offering given from what little one has  
Is worth a thousand times its value.” [19]

Then another devatā recited these verses in the presence of the Blessed One:

- 90 “The bad do not emulate the good,  
Who give what is hard to give  
And do deeds hard to do:  
The Dhamma of the good is hard to follow.
- 91 “Therefore their destination after death  
Differs for the good and the bad:  
The bad go to hell,  
The good are bound for heaven.”

Then another devatā said to the Blessed One: “Which one, Blessed One, has spoken well?”

“You have all spoken well in a way. But listen to me too: <42>

- 92 “If one practises the Dhamma  
Though getting on by gleaning,  
If while one supports one’s wife  
One gives from the little one has,  
Then a hundred thousand offerings  
Of those who sacrifice a thousand  
Are not worth even a fraction  
[Of the gift] of one like him.”<sup>65</sup>

Then another devatā addressed the Blessed One in verse:

- 93 “Why does their sacrifice, vast and grand,  
Not share the value of the righteous one’s gift?  
Why are a hundred thousand offerings  
Of those who sacrifice a thousand  
Not worth even a fraction  
[Of the gift] of one like him?”

Then the Blessed One answered that devatā in verse:

- 94 “Since they give while settled in unrighteousness,  
Having slain and killed, causing sorrow,  
Their offering—tearful, fraught with violence—  
Shares not the value of the righteous one’s gift. <43>  
That is why a hundred thousand offerings  
Of those who sacrifice a thousand  
Are not worth even a fraction  
[Of the gift] of one like him.” [20]

### 33 (3) *Good*

At Sāvattihī. Then, when the night had advanced, a number of devatās belonging to the Satullapa host, of stunning beauty, illuminating the entire Jeta’s Grove, approached the Blessed One. Having approached, they paid homage to the Blessed One and stood to one side.

Then one devatā, standing to one side, uttered this inspired utterance in the presence of the Blessed One:

“Good is giving, dear sir!

- 95 “Through stinginess and negligence  
A gift is not given.  
One who knows, desiring merit,  
Should surely give a gift.”

Then another devatā uttered this inspired utterance in the presence of the Blessed One:

“Good is giving, dear sir!

And further:

Even when there’s little, giving is good. <44>

- 96 “Some provide from what little they have,  
Others who are affluent don’t like to give.  
An offering given from what little one has  
Is worth a thousand times its value.”

Then another devatā uttered this inspired utterance in the presence of the Blessed One:

“Good is giving, dear sir!

Even when there’s little, giving is good.

And further:

When done with faith too, giving is good.

- 97 “Giving and warfare are similar, they say:  
A few good ones conquer many.  
If one with faith gives even a little,  
He thereby becomes happy in the other world.”<sup>66</sup>

Then another devatā uttered this inspired utterance in the presence of the Blessed One:

“Good is giving, dear sir!

Even when there’s little, giving is good. [21]

When done with faith too, giving is good.

And further:

The gift of a righteous gain is also good. <45>

- 98 “When he gives a gift of a righteous gain  
Obtained by exertion and energy,  
Having passed over Yama’s Vetaraṇi River,  
That mortal arrives at celestial states.”<sup>67</sup>

Then another devatā uttered this inspired utterance in the presence of the Blessed One:

“Good is giving, dear sir!

Even when there’s little, giving is good.

When done with faith too, giving is good;  
The gift of a righteous gain is also good.  
And further:  
Giving discriminately too is good.<sup>68</sup>

- 99 “Giving discriminately is praised by the Fortunate One—  
To those worthy of offerings  
Here in the world of the living,  
What is given to them bears great fruit  
Like seeds sown in a fertile field.”

Then another devatā uttered this inspired utterance in the presence of the Blessed One:

“Good is giving, dear sir!  
Even when there’s little, giving is good.  
When done with faith too, giving is good;  
The gift of a righteous gain is also good.  
Giving with discretion too is good. <46>  
And further:  
Restraint towards living beings is also good.

- 100 “One who fares harming no living beings  
Does no evil from fear of others’ censure.  
In that they praise the timid, not the brave,  
For out of fear the good do no evil.”

Then another devatā said to the Blessed One: [22] “Which one, Blessed One, has spoken well?”

“You have all spoken well in a way. But listen to me too:

- 101 “Surely giving is praised in many ways,  
But the path of Dhamma surpasses giving.  
For in the past and even long ago,  
The good and wise ones attained Nibbāna.”<sup>69</sup>

34 (4) *There Are No* <47>

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvatti in Jeta’s Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika’s Park. Then, when the night had

advanced, a number of devatās belonging to the Satullapa host, of stunning beauty, illuminating the entire Jeta’s Grove, approached the Blessed One. Having approached, they paid homage to the Blessed One and stood to one side.

Then one devatā, standing to one side, recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:

- 102 “There are among humans  
No permanent sensual pleasures;  
Here there are just desirable things.  
When a person is bound to these,  
Heedless in their midst,  
From Death’s realm he does not reach  
The state of no-more-coming-back.”<sup>70</sup>

[Another devatā:] “Misery is born of desire; suffering is born of desire. By the removal of desire, misery is removed; by the removal of misery, suffering is removed.”<sup>71</sup>

[The Blessed One:]

- 103 “They are not sense pleasures, the world’s pretty things:  
Man’s sensuality is the intention of lust. <48>  
The pretty things remain as they are in the world  
But the wise remove the desire for them.”<sup>72</sup> [23]
- 104 “One should discard anger, cast off conceit,  
Transcend all the fetters.  
No sufferings torment one who has nothing,  
Who does not adhere to name-and-form.”<sup>73</sup>
- 105 “He abandoned reckoning, did not assume conceit;  
He cut off craving here for name-and-form.  
Though devas and humans search for him  
Here and beyond, in the heavens and all abodes,  
They do not find the one whose knots are cut,  
The one untroubled, free of longing.”
- 106 “If devas and humans have not seen  
The one thus liberated here or beyond,”  
[said the Venerable Mogharāja],

"Are they to be praised who venerate him,  
The best of men, faring for the good of humans?"<sup>74</sup> <49>

- 107 "Those bhikkhus too become worthy of praise,  
[Mogharāja," said the Blessed One,  
"Who venerate him, the one thus liberated.  
But having known Dhamma and abandoned doubt,  
Those bhikkhus become even surmounters of ties."<sup>75</sup>

### 35 (5) *Faultfinders*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvatti in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. Then, when the night had advanced, a number of "faultfinding" devatās, of stunning beauty, illuminating the entire Jeta's Grove, approached the Blessed One and stood in the air.<sup>76</sup> [24]

Then one devatā, standing in the air, recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:

- 108 "If one shows oneself in one way  
While actually being otherwise,  
What one enjoys is obtained by theft  
Like the gains of a cheating gambler."<sup>77</sup>

[Another devatā:] <50>

- 109 "One should speak as one would act;  
Don't speak as one wouldn't act.  
The wise clearly discern the person  
Who does not practise what he preaches."

[The Blessed One:]

- 110 "Not by mere speech nor solely by listening  
Can one advance on this firm path of practice  
By which the wise ones, the meditators,  
Are released from the bondage of Māra.
- 111 "Truly, the wise do not pretend,  
For they have understood the way of the world.  
By final knowledge the wise are quenched:  
They have crossed over attachment to the world."

Then those devatās, having alighted on the earth, prostrated themselves with their heads at the Blessed One's feet and said to the Blessed One: <51> "A transgression overcame us, venerable sir, being so foolish, so stupid, so unskilful that we imagined we could assail the Blessed One. Let the Blessed One pardon us for our transgression seen as such for the sake of restraint in the future."

Then the Blessed One displayed a smile.<sup>78</sup> Those devatās, finding fault to an even greater extent, then rose up into the air. One devatā recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:

- 112 "If one does not grant pardon  
To those who confess transgression,  
Angry at heart, intent on hate,  
One strongly harbours enmity."

[The Blessed One:] <52>

- 113 "If there was no transgression,  
If here there was no going astray,  
And if enmities were appeased,  
Then one would be faultless here."<sup>79</sup>

[A devatā:]

- 114 "For whom are there no transgressions?  
For whom is there no going astray?  
Who has not fallen into confusion?  
And who is the wise one, ever mindful?" [25]

[The Blessed One:]

- 115 "The Tathāgata, the Enlightened One,  
Full of compassion for all beings:  
For him there are no transgressions,  
For him there is no going astray;  
He has not fallen into confusion,  
And he is the wise one, ever mindful.
- 116 "If one does not grant pardon  
To those who confess transgression, <53>  
Angry at heart, intent on hate,  
One strongly harbours enmity."

In that enmity I do not delight,  
Thus I pardon your transgression."

## 36 (6) Faith

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvatti in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. Then, when the night had advanced, a number of devatās belonging to the Satullapa host, of stunning beauty, illuminating the entire Jeta's Grove, approached the Blessed One. Having approached, they paid homage to the Blessed One and stood to one side.

Then one devatā, standing to one side, recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:

117 "Faith is a person's partner;  
If lack of faith does not persist,  
Fame and renown thereby come to him, <54>  
And he goes to heaven on leaving the body."

Then another devatā recited these verses in the presence of the Blessed One:<sup>80</sup>

118 "One should discard anger, cast off conceit,  
Transcend all the fetters.  
No ties torment one who has nothing,  
Who does not adhere to name-and-form."<sup>81</sup>

[Another devatā:]

119 "Foolish people devoid of wisdom  
Devote themselves to negligence.  
But the wise man guards diligence  
As his foremost treasure.

120 "Do not yield to negligence,  
Don't be intimate with sensual delight.  
For the diligent ones, meditating,  
Attain supreme happiness." [26]

## 37 (7) Concourse &lt;55&gt;

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling among the Sakyans at Kapilavattu in the Great Wood together with a great Saṅgha of bhikkhus, with five hundred bhikkhus all of whom were arahants.<sup>82</sup> And the devatās from ten world systems had for the most part assembled in order to see the Blessed One and the Bhikkhu Saṅgha. Then the thought occurred to four devatās of the host from the Pure Abodes:<sup>83</sup> "This Blessed One is dwelling among the Sakyans at Kapilavattu in the Great Wood together with a great Saṅgha of bhikkhus, with five hundred bhikkhus all of whom are arahants. And the devatās from ten world systems have for the most part assembled in order to see the Blessed One and the Bhikkhu Saṅgha. Let us also approach the Blessed One and, in his presence, each speak our own verse."

Then, just as quickly as a strong man might extend his drawn-in arm or draw in his extended arm, those devatās disappeared from among the devas of the Pure Abodes <56> and reappeared before the Blessed One. Then those devatās paid homage to the Blessed One and stood to one side. Standing to one side, one devatā recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:

121 "A great concourse takes place in the woods,  
The deva hosts have assembled.  
We have come to this Dhamma concourse  
To see the invincible Saṅgha."

Then another devatā recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:

122 "The bhikkhus there are concentrated;  
They have straightened their own minds.  
Like a charioteer who holds the reins,  
The wise ones guard their faculties." [27]

Then another devatā recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:

123 "Having cut through barrenness, cut the cross-bar,

Having uprooted Indra's pillar, unstirred,  
They wander about pure and stainless,  
Young nāgas well tamed by the One with Vision."<sup>84</sup> <57>

Then another devatā recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:

124 "Those who have gone to the Buddha for refuge  
Will not go to the plane of misery.  
On discarding the human body,  
They will fill the hosts of devas."<sup>85</sup>

### 38 (8) *The Stone Splinter*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha in the Maddakucchi Deer Park. Now on that occasion the Blessed One's foot had been cut by a stone splinter.<sup>86</sup> Severe pains assailed the Blessed One—bodily feelings that were painful, racking, sharp, piercing, harrowing, disagreeable. But the Blessed One endured them, mindful and clearly comprehending, without becoming distressed. Then the Blessed One had his outer robe folded in four, and he lay down on his right side in the lion posture with one leg overlapping the other, mindful and clearly comprehending. <58>

Then, when the night had advanced, seven hundred devatās belonging to the Satullapa host, of stunning beauty, illuminating the entire Maddakucchi Deer Park, approached the Blessed One. Having approached, they paid homage to the Blessed One and stood to one side.

Then one devatā, standing to one side, uttered this inspired utterance in the presence of the Blessed One: [28] "The ascetic Gotama is indeed a nāga, sir! And when bodily feelings have arisen that are painful, racking, sharp, piercing, harrowing, disagreeable, through his nāga-like manner he endures them, mindful and clearly comprehending, without becoming distressed."<sup>87</sup>

Then another devatā uttered this inspired utterance in the presence of the Blessed One: "The ascetic Gotama is indeed a lion, sir! And when bodily feelings have arisen that are painful, racking, sharp, piercing, harrowing, disagreeable, through his

leonine manner he endures them, mindful and clearly comprehending, without becoming distressed."

Then another devatā uttered this inspired utterance in the presence of the Blessed One: "The ascetic Gotama is indeed a thoroughbred, sir! And when bodily feelings have arisen that are painful ... disagreeable, through his thoroughbred manner he endures them, mindful and clearly comprehending, without becoming distressed."

Then another devatā uttered this inspired utterance in the presence of the Blessed One: "The ascetic Gotama is indeed a chief bull, sir! <59> And when bodily feelings have arisen that are painful ... disagreeable, through his chief bull's manner he endures them, mindful and clearly comprehending, without becoming distressed."

Then another devatā uttered this inspired utterance in the presence of the Blessed One: "The ascetic Gotama is indeed a beast of burden, sir! And when bodily feelings have arisen that are painful ... disagreeable, through his beast-of-burden's manner he endures them, mindful and clearly comprehending, without becoming distressed."

Then another devatā uttered this inspired utterance in the presence of the Blessed One: "The ascetic Gotama is indeed tamed, sir! And when bodily feelings have arisen that are painful, racking, sharp, piercing, harrowing, disagreeable, through his tamed manner he endures them, mindful and clearly comprehending, without becoming distressed."

Then another devatā uttered this inspired utterance in the presence of the Blessed One: "See his concentration well developed and his mind well liberated—not bent forward and not bent back, and not blocked and checked by forceful suppression!<sup>88</sup> If anyone would think such a one could be violated—such a nāga of a man, such a lion of a man, [29] such a thoroughbred of a man, <60> such a chief bull of a man, such a beast of burden of a man, such a tamed man—what is that due to apart from lack of vision?"

125 Though brahmins learned in the five Vedas  
Practise austerities for a hundred years,  
Their minds are not rightly liberated:  
Those of low nature do not reach the far shore.<sup>89</sup>

- 126 They founder in craving, bound to vows and rules,  
Practising rough austerity for a hundred years,  
But their minds are not rightly liberated:  
Those of low nature do not reach the far shore.
- 127 There is no taming here for one fond of conceit,  
Nor is there sagehood for the unconcentrated:  
Though dwelling alone in the forest, heedless, <61>  
One cannot cross beyond the realm of Death.
- 128 Having abandoned conceit, well concentrated,  
With lofty mind, everywhere released:  
While dwelling alone in the forest, diligent,  
One can cross beyond the realm of Death.

39 (9) *Pajjunna's Daughter (1)*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Vesāli in the Great Wood in the Hall with the Peaked Roof. Then, when the night had advanced, Kokanadā, Pajjunna's daughter, of stunning beauty, illuminating the entire Great Wood, approached the Blessed One.<sup>90</sup> Having approached, she paid homage to the Blessed One, stood to one side, and recited these verses in the presence of the Blessed One:<sup>91</sup>

- 129 "I worship the Buddha, the best of beings,  
Dwelling in the woods at Vesāli. [30] <62>  
Kokanadā am I,  
Kokanadā, Pajjunna's daughter.<sup>92</sup>
- 130 "Earlier I had only heard that the Dhamma  
Has been realized by the One with Vision;  
But now I know it as a witness  
While the Sage, the Fortunate One, teaches.
- 131 "Those ignorant people who go about  
Criticizing the noble Dhamma  
Pass on to the terrible Roruva hell  
And experience suffering for a long time.<sup>93</sup>

- 132 "But those who have peace and acquiescence  
In regard to the noble Dhamma,  
On discarding the human body,  
Will fill the host of devas."<sup>94</sup>

40 (10) *Pajjunna's Daughter (2) <63>*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Vesāli in the Great Wood, in the Hall with the Peaked Roof. Then, when the night had advanced, Cūḷa-kokanadā, Pajjunna's [younger] daughter, of stunning beauty, illuminating the entire Great Wood, approached the Blessed One. Having approached, she paid homage to the Blessed One, stood to one side, and recited these verses in the presence of the Blessed One:

- 133 "Here came Kokanadā, Pajjunna's daughter,  
Beautiful as the gleam of lightning.  
Venerating the Buddha and the Dhamma,  
She spoke these verses full of meaning. [31]
- 134 "Though the Dhamma is of such a nature  
That I might analyse it in many ways,  
I will state its meaning briefly  
To the extent I have learnt it by heart.<sup>95</sup>
- 135 "One should do no evil in all the world, <64>  
Not by speech, mind, or body.  
Having abandoned sense pleasures,  
Mindful and clearly comprehending,  
One should not pursue a course  
That is painful and harmful."

## V. ABLAZE

41 (1) *Ablaze*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvatti in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. Then, when the night had advanced, a certain devatā of stun-

ning beauty, illuminating the entire Jeta's Grove, approached the Blessed One. <65> Having approached, he paid homage to the Blessed One, stood to one side, and recited these verses in the presence of the Blessed One:

136 "When one's house is ablaze  
The vessel taken out  
Is the one that is useful,  
Not the one left burnt inside.

137 "So when the world is ablaze  
With [the fires of] aging and death,  
One should take out [one's wealth] by giving:  
What is given is well salvaged. [32] <66>

139<sup>96</sup> "What is given yields pleasant fruit,  
But not so what is not given.  
Thieves take it away, or kings,  
It gets burnt by fire or is lost.

140 "Then in the end one leaves the body  
Along with one's possessions.  
Having understood this, the wise person  
Should enjoy himself but also give.  
Having given and enjoyed as fits his means,  
Blameless he goes to the heavenly state."

42 (2) *Giving What?*

[A devatā:]

141 "Giving what does one give strength?  
Giving what does one give beauty?  
Giving what does one give ease?  
Giving what does one give sight?  
Who is the giver of all?  
Being asked, please explain to me." <67>

[The Blessed One:]

142 "Giving food, one gives strength;  
Giving clothes, one gives beauty;

Giving a vehicle, one gives ease;  
Giving a lamp, one gives sight.

143 "The one who gives a residence  
Is the giver of all.  
But the one who teaches the Dhamma  
Is the giver of the Deathless."

43 (3) *Food*

144 "They always take delight in food,  
Both devas and human beings.  
So what sort of spirit could it be  
That does not take delight in food?"<sup>97</sup>

145 "When they give out of faith  
With a heart of confidence,  
Food accrues to [the giver] himself  
Both in this world and the next. <68>

146 "Therefore, having removed stinginess,  
The conqueror of the stain should give a gift.  
Merits are the support for living beings  
[When they arise] in the other world."

44 (4) *One Root*

[A devatā:]

147 "The seer has crossed over the abyss  
With its one root, two whirlpools,  
Three stains, five extensions,  
An ocean with twelve eddies."<sup>98</sup> [33]

45 (5) *Perfect*

[A devatā:]

148 "Behold him of perfect name,  
The seer of the subtle goal,  
The giver of wisdom, unattached  
To the lair of sensual pleasures. <69>

Behold the wise one, all-knowing,  
The great seer treading the noble path."<sup>99</sup>

46 (6) *Nymphs*

- 149 "Resounding with a host of nymphs,  
Haunted by a host of demons!  
This grove is to be called 'Deluding':  
How does one escape from it?"<sup>100</sup>
- 150 "'The straight way' that path is called,  
And 'fearless' is its destination.  
The chariot is called 'unrattling,'  
Fitted with wheels of wholesome states.
- 151 "The sense of shame is its leaning board,  
Mindfulness its upholstery;  
I call the Dhamma the charioteer,  
With right view running out in front."<sup>101</sup> <70>
- 152 "One who has such a vehicle—  
Whether a woman or a man—  
Has, by means of this vehicle,  
Drawn close to Nibbāna."<sup>102</sup>

47 (7) *Planters of Groves*

- 153 "For whom does merit always increase,  
Both by day and by night?  
Who are the people going to heaven,  
Established in Dhamma, endowed with virtue?"
- 154 "Those who set up a park or a grove,  
The people who construct a bridge,  
A place to drink and a well,  
Those who give a residence:<sup>103</sup>
- 155 "For them merit always increases,  
Both by day and by night;

Those are the people going to heaven,  
Established in Dhamma, endowed with virtue." <71>

48 (8) *Jeta's Grove*

- [The devatā Anāthapiṇḍika:]
- 156 "This indeed is that Jeta's Grove,  
The resort of the Order of seers,  
Dwelt in by the Dhamma King,  
A place that gives me joy.<sup>104</sup> [34]
- 157 "Action, knowledge, righteousness,  
Virtue, an excellent life:  
By this are mortals purified,  
Not by clan or wealth.
- 158 "Therefore a person who is wise,  
Out of regard for his own good,  
Should carefully examine the Dhamma:  
Thus he is purified in it.
- 159 "Sāriputta truly is endowed with wisdom,  
With virtue and with inner peace.  
Even a bhikkhu who has gone beyond  
At best can only equal him."<sup>105</sup> <72>

49 (9) *Stingy*

- [A devatā:]
- 160 "Those who are stingy here in the world,  
Niggardly folk, revilers,  
People who create obstacles  
For others engaged in giving alms:
- 161 What kind of result do they reap?  
What kind of future destiny?  
We've come to ask the Blessed One this:  
How are we to understand it?"

[The Blessed One:]

- 162 "Those who are stingy here in the world,

Niggardly folk, revilers,  
 People who create obstacles  
 For others engaged in giving alms:  
 They might be reborn in hell,  
 In the animal realm or Yama's world.<sup>106</sup>

163 "If they come back to the human state  
 They are born in a poor family <73>  
 Where clothes, food, pleasures, and sport  
 Are obtained only with difficulty.

164 "Whatever the fools may expect from others,  
 Even that they do not obtain.  
 This is the result in this very life;  
 And in the future a bad destination."

[A devatā:]

165 "We understand thus what you have said;  
 We ask, O Gotama, another question:  
 Those here who, on gaining the human state,  
 Are amiable and generous,  
 Confident in the Buddha and the Dhamma  
 And deeply respectful towards the Saṅgha:  
 166 What kind of result do they reap?  
 What kind of future destiny?  
 We've come to ask the Blessed One this:  
 How are we to understand it?" <74>

[The Blessed One:]

167 "Those here who, on gaining the human state,  
 Are amiable and generous,  
 Confident in the Buddha and the Dhamma  
 And deeply respectful towards the Saṅgha,  
 These brighten up the heavens  
 Where they've been reborn.<sup>107</sup> [35]

168 "If they come back to the human state  
 They are reborn in a rich family  
 Where clothes, food, pleasures, and sport  
 Are obtained without difficulty.

169 "They rejoice like the devas who control  
 The goods amassed by others.<sup>108</sup>  
 This is the result in this very life;  
 And in the future a good destination." <75>

50 (10) *Ghaṭikāra*

[The devatā Ghaṭikāra:]

170 "Seven bhikkhus reborn in Avihā  
 Have been fully liberated.  
 With lust and hatred utterly destroyed,  
 They have crossed over attachment to the world."<sup>109</sup>

[The Blessed One:]

171 "And who are those who crossed the swamp,  
 The realm of Death so hard to cross?  
 Who, having left the human body,  
 Have overcome the celestial bond?"<sup>110</sup>

[Ghaṭikāra:]

172 "Upaka and Palagaṇḍa,  
 With Pukkusāti—these are three.  
 Then Bhaddiya and Bhaddadeva,  
 And Bāhudanti and Piṅgiya.  
 These, having left the human body,  
 Have overcome the celestial bond."<sup>111</sup>

[The Blessed One:] <76>

173 "Good is the word you speak of them,  
 Of those who have abandoned Māra's snares.  
 Whose Dhamma was it that they understood  
 Whereby they cut through the bondage of existence?"<sup>112</sup>

[Ghaṭikāra:]

174 "It was not apart from the Blessed One!  
 It was not apart from your Teaching!  
 By having understood your Dhamma  
 They cut through the bondage of existence.

175 "Where name-and-form ceases,  
Stops without remainder:  
By understanding that Dhamma here  
They cut through the bondage of existence."<sup>113</sup>

[The Blessed One:]

176 "Deep is the speech you utter,  
Hard to understand, very hard to grasp.  
Having understood whose Dhamma  
Do you utter such speech?" <77>

[Ghaṭikāra:]

177 "In the past I was the potter,  
Ghaṭikāra in Vehaḷiṅga.  
I supported my mother and father then  
As a lay follower of the Buddha Kassapa. [36]

178 "I abstained from sexual intercourse,  
I was celibate, free from carnal ties.  
I was your fellow villager,  
In the past I was your friend.

179 "I am the one who knows  
These seven liberated bhikkhus,  
Who with lust and hatred utterly destroyed  
Have crossed over attachment to the world."

[The Blessed One:]

180 "Just so it was at that time,  
As you say, O Bhaggava:<sup>114</sup>  
In the past you were the potter, <78>  
Ghaṭikāra in Vehaḷiṅga.  
You supported your mother and father then  
As a lay follower of the Buddha Kassapa.

181 "You abstained from sexual intercourse,  
You were celibate, free from carnal ties.  
You were my fellow villager,  
In the past you were my friend."

182 Such was the meeting that took place  
Between those friends from the past,  
Both now inwardly developed,  
Bearers of their final bodies.<sup>115</sup>

<79>

VI. OLD AGE

51 (1) *Old Age*

[A devatā:]

183 "What is good until old age?  
What is good when established?  
What is the precious gem of humans?  
What is hard for thieves to steal?"

[The Blessed One:]

184 "Virtue is good until old age;  
Faith is good when established;  
Wisdom is the precious gem of humans;  
Merit is hard for thieves to steal."

52 (2) *Undecaying* <80>

185 "What is good by not decaying?  
What is good when made secure?  
What is the precious gem of humans?  
What cannot be stolen by thieves?"<sup>116</sup> [37]

186 "Virtue is good by not decaying;  
Faith is good when made secure;  
Wisdom is the precious gem of humans;  
Merit cannot be stolen by thieves."

53 (3) *The Friend*

187 "What is the friend of one on a journey?  
What is the friend in one's own home?  
What is the friend of one in need?  
What is the friend in the future life?"<sup>117</sup>

188 "A caravan is the friend of one on a journey; <81>  
 A mother is the friend in one's own home;  
 A comrade when the need arises  
 Is one's friend again and again.  
 The deeds of merit one has done—  
 That is the friend in the future life."

54 (4) *Support*

189 "What is the support of human beings?  
 What is the best companion here?  
 The creatures who dwell on the earth—  
 By what do they sustain their life?"

190 "Sons are the support of human beings,  
 A wife the best companion;  
 The creatures who dwell on the earth  
 Sustain their life by rain."<sup>118</sup> <82>

55 (5) *Produces (1)*

191 "What is it that produces a person?  
 What does he have that runs around?  
 What enters upon saṃsāra?  
 What is his greatest fear?" <83>

192 "It is craving that produces a person;  
 His mind is what runs around;  
 A being enters upon saṃsāra;  
 Suffering is his greatest fear."

56 (6) *Produces (2)*

193 "What is it that produces a person?  
 What does he have that runs around?  
 What enters upon saṃsāra?  
 From what is he not yet freed?"

194 "Craving is what produces a person;  
 His mind is what runs around;

A being enters upon saṃsāra;  
 He is not freed from suffering." [38]

57 (7) *Produces (3)*

195 "What is it that produces a person?  
 What does he have that runs around?  
 What enters upon saṃsāra?  
 What determines his destiny?"

196 "Craving is what produces a person;  
 His mind is what runs around;  
 A being enters upon saṃsāra;  
 Kamma determines his destiny."

58 (8) *The Deviant Path*

197 "What is declared the deviant path?  
 What undergoes destruction night and day? <84>  
 What is the stain of the holy life?  
 What is the bath without water?"

198 "Lust is declared the deviant path;  
 Life undergoes destruction night and day;  
 Women are the stain of the holy life:  
 Here menfolk are enmeshed.  
 Austerity and the holy life—  
 That is the bath without water."<sup>119</sup>

59 (9) *Partner*

199 "What is a person's partner?  
 What is it that instructs him?  
 Taking delight in what is a mortal  
 Released from all suffering?"

200 "Faith is a person's partner,  
 And wisdom is what instructs him. <85>  
 Taking delight in Nibbāna, a mortal  
 Is released from all suffering."

60 (10) *Poetry*

201 "What is the scaffolding of verses?  
What constitutes their phrasing?  
On what base do verses rest?  
What is the abode of verses?"

202 "Metre is the scaffolding of verses;  
Syllables constitute their phrasing;  
Verses rest on a base of names;  
The poet is the abode of verses."<sup>120</sup>

[39] <86> VII. WEIGHED DOWN

61 (1) *Name*

203 "What has weighed down everything?  
What is most extensive?  
What is the one thing that has  
All under its control?"

204 "Name has weighed down everything;  
Nothing is more extensive than name. <87>  
Name is the one thing that has  
All under its control."<sup>121</sup>

62 (2) *Mind*

205 "By what is the world led around?  
By what is it dragged here and there?  
What is the one thing that has  
All under its control?"

206 "The world is led around by mind;  
By mind it's dragged here and there.  
Mind is the one thing that has  
All under its control."<sup>122</sup>

63 (3) *Craving*

207 "By what is the world led around?  
By what is it dragged here and there? <88>  
What is the one thing that has  
All under its control?"

208 "The world is led around by craving;  
By craving it is dragged here and there.  
Craving is the one thing that has  
All under its control."

64 (4) *Fetter*

209 "By what is the world tightly fettered?  
What is its means of travelling about?  
What is it that one must forsake  
In order to say, 'Nibbāna'?"

210 "The world is tightly fettered by delight;  
Thought is its means of travelling about.  
Craving is what one must forsake  
In order to say, 'Nibbāna.'"<sup>123</sup> <89>

65 (5) *Bondage*

211 "By what is the world held in bondage?  
What is its means of travelling about?  
What is it that one must forsake  
To cut off all bondage?" [40]

212 "The world is held in bondage by delight;  
Thought is its means of travelling about.  
Craving is what one must forsake  
To cut off all bondage."

66 (6) *Afflicted*

213 "By what is the world afflicted?  
By what is it enveloped?"

By what dart has it been wounded?  
With what is it always burning?"<sup>124</sup> <90>

- 214 "The world is afflicted with death,  
Enveloped by old age;  
Wounded by the dart of craving,  
It is always burning with desire."

67 (7) *Ensnared*

- 215 "By what is the world ensnared?  
By what is it enveloped?  
By what is the world shut in?  
On what is the world established?"

- 216 "The world is ensnared by craving;  
It is enveloped by old age;  
The world is shut in by death;  
The world is established on suffering."<sup>125</sup> <91>

68 (8) *Shut In*

- 217 "By what is the world shut in?  
On what is the world established?  
By what is the world ensnared?  
By what is it enveloped?"

- 218 "The world is shut in by death;  
The world is established on suffering;  
The world is ensnared by craving;  
It is enveloped by old age."

69 (9) *Desire*

- 219 "By what is the world bound?  
By the removal of what is it freed?  
What is it that one must forsake  
To cut off all bondage?"

- 220 "By desire is the world bound;

By the removal of desire it is freed.  
Desire is what one must forsake <92>  
To cut off all bondage." [41]

70 (10) *World*

- 221 "In what has the world arisen?  
In what does it form intimacy?  
By clinging to what is the world  
Harassed in regard to what?"

- 222 "In six has the world arisen;  
In six it forms intimacy;  
By clinging to six the world  
Is harassed in regard to six."<sup>126</sup>

&lt;93&gt;

## VIII. HAVING SLAIN

71 (1) *Having Slain*

At Sāvatti. Standing to one side, that devatā addressed the Blessed One in verse:

- 223 "Having slain what does one sleep soundly?  
Having slain what does one not sorrow?  
What is the one thing, O Gotama,  
Whose killing you approve?"<sup>127</sup>

[The Blessed One:]

- 224 "Having slain anger, one sleeps soundly;  
Having slain anger, one does not sorrow;  
The killing of anger, O devatā,  
With its poisoned root and honeyed tip:  
This is the killing the noble ones praise,  
For having slain that, one does not sorrow."<sup>128</sup>

72 (2) *Chariot*

- 225 "What is the token of a chariot?  
What, the token of a fire?"

What is the token of a country?  
What, the token of a woman?"<sup>129</sup> [42] <94>

- 226 "A standard is the token of a chariot;  
Smoke, the token of a fire;  
The king is a country's token;  
A husband, the token of a woman."

73 (3) *Treasure*

- 227 "What here is a man's best treasure?  
What practised well brings happiness?  
What is really the sweetest of tastes?  
How lives the one whom they say lives best?"
- 228 "Faith is here a man's best treasure;  
Dhamma practised well brings happiness;  
Truth is really the sweetest of tastes; <95>  
One living by wisdom they say lives best."<sup>130</sup>

74 (4) *Rain*

[A devatā:]

- 229 "What is the best of things that rise up?  
What excels among things that fall down?  
What is the best of things that go forth?  
Who is the most excellent of speakers?"

[Another devatā:]

- 230 "A seed is the best of things that rise up;  
Rain excels among things that fall down;  
Cattle are the best of things that go forth;  
A son is the most excellent of speakers."<sup>131</sup>

[The Blessed One:]

- 231 "Knowledge is the best of things that rise up;  
Ignorance excels among things that fall down;  
The Saṅgha is the best of things that go forth;  
The most excellent of speakers is the Buddha."<sup>132</sup>

75 (5) *Afraid* <96>

- 232 "Why are so many people here afraid  
When the path has been taught with many bases?<sup>133</sup>  
I ask you, O Gotama, broad of wisdom:  
On what should one take a stand  
To have no fear of the other world?"
- 233 "Having directed speech and mind rightly,  
Doing no evil deeds with the body,  
Dwelling at home with ample food and drink, [43]  
Faithful, gentle, generous, amiable:  
When one stands on these four things,  
Standing firmly on the Dhamma,  
One need not fear the other world."<sup>134</sup>

76 (6) *Does Not Decay*

- 234 "What decays, what does not decay?  
What is declared the deviant path? <97>  
What is the impediment to [wholesome] states?  
What undergoes destruction night and day?  
What is the stain of the holy life?  
What is the bath without water?"
- 235 "How many fissures are there in the world  
Wherein the mind does not stand firm?  
We've come to ask the Blessed One this:  
How are we to understand it?"
- 236 "The physical form of mortals decays,  
Their name and clan does not decay.  
Lust is declared the deviant path,  
Greed the impediment to [wholesome] states.
- 237 "Life undergoes destruction night and day;  
Women are the stain of the holy life:  
Here's where menfolk are enmeshed.  
Austerity and the holy life—  
That is the bath without water. <98>

238 "There are six fissures in the world  
Wherein the mind does not stand firm:  
Laziness and negligence,  
Indolence, lack of self-control,  
Drowsiness and lethargy—  
Avoid these fissures completely."<sup>135</sup>

77 (7) *Sovereignty*

239 "What is sovereignty in the world?  
What ranks as the best of goods?  
What in the world is a rusty sword?  
What in the world is considered a plague?

240 "Whom do they arrest when he takes away?  
And who, when he takes away, is dear?  
In whom do the wise take delight  
When he returns again and again?" <99>

241 "Mastery is sovereignty in the world;<sup>136</sup>  
A woman ranks as the best of goods;  
In the world anger is a rusty sword;  
Thieves in the world are considered a plague.<sup>137</sup>

242 "They arrest a thief when he takes away,  
But an ascetic who takes away is dear.  
The wise take delight in an ascetic  
When he returns again and again." [44]

78 (8) *Love*

243 "What should he not give who loves the good?  
What should a mortal not relinquish?  
What should one release when it's good,  
But not release when it's bad?"

244 "A person should not give himself away; <100>  
He should not relinquish himself.<sup>138</sup>  
One should release speech that is good,  
But not speech that is bad."

79 (9) *Provisions for a Journey*

245 "What secures provisions for a journey?  
What is the abode of wealth?  
What drags a person around?  
What in the world is hard to discard?  
By what are many beings bound  
Like birds caught in a snare?"

246 "Faith secures provisions for a journey;  
Fortune is the abode of wealth;  
Desire drags a person around;  
Desire is hard to discard in the world.  
By desire many beings are bound <101>  
Like birds caught in a snare."

80 (10) *Source of Light*

247 "What is the source of light in the world?  
What in the world is the wakeful one?  
What are [the colleagues] of those living by work?  
What is one's course of movement?"

248 "What nurtures both the slack and active  
Just as a mother nurtures her child?  
The creatures who dwell on the earth—  
By what do they sustain their life?"

249 "Wisdom is the source of light in the world;  
Mindfulness, in the world, is the wakeful one;  
Cattle are [the colleagues] of those living by work; <102>  
One's course of movement is the furrow.<sup>139</sup>

250 "Rain nurtures both the slack and active  
Just as a mother nurtures her child.  
Those creatures who dwell on the earth  
Sustain their life by rain."

81 (11) *Without Conflict*

- 251 "Who here in the world are placid?  
Whose mode of life is not squandered?  
Who here fully understand desire?  
Who enjoy perpetual freedom? [45]
- 252 "Whom do parents and brothers worship  
When he stands firmly established?  
Who is the one of humble birth  
That even khattiyas here salute?" <103>
- 253 "Ascetics are placid in the world;  
The ascetic life is not squandered;  
Ascetics fully understand desire;  
They enjoy perpetual freedom.
- 254 "Parents and brothers worship an ascetic  
When he stands firmly established.<sup>140</sup>  
Though an ascetic be of humble birth  
Even khattiyas here salute him."

[46] <104>

Chapter II

2 *Devaputtasamyutta*  
Connected Discourses  
with Young Devas

I. THE FIRST SUBCHAPTER  
(SURIYA)

1 (1) *Kassapa (1)*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvatti in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. Then, when the night had advanced, the young deva Kassapa, of stunning beauty, illuminating the entire Jeta's Grove, approached the Blessed One.<sup>141</sup> Having approached, he paid homage to the Blessed One, stood to one side, and said to the Blessed One:

"The Blessed One has revealed the bhikkhu but not the instruction to the bhikkhu."<sup>142</sup>

"Well then, Kassapa, clear up this point yourself."<sup>143</sup>

- 255 "He should train in well-spoken counsel,  
And in the exercise of an ascetic,  
In a solitary seat, alone,  
And in the calming of the mind."<sup>144</sup> <105>

This is what the young deva Kassapa said. The Teacher approved. Then the young deva Kassapa, thinking, "The Teacher has approved of me," paid homage to the Blessed One and, keeping him on the right, he disappeared right there.

2 (2) *Kassapa* (2)

At Sāvatti. Standing to one side, the young deva Kassapa recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:

- 256 "A bhikkhu should be a meditator,  
One who is liberated in mind,  
If he desires the heart's attainment,  
Bent on that as his advantage.  
Having known the world's rise and fall,  
Let him be lofty in mind and unattached."<sup>145</sup> [47]

3 (3) *Māgha*

At Sāvatti. Then, when the night had advanced, the young deva Māgha, of stunning beauty, illuminating the entire Jeta's Grove, approached the Blessed One. Having approached, he paid homage to the Blessed One, stood to one side, <106> and addressed the Blessed One in verse:<sup>146</sup>

- 257 "Having slain what does one sleep soundly?  
Having slain what does one not sorrow?  
What is the one thing, O Gotama,  
Whose killing you approve?"
- 258 "Having slain anger, one sleeps soundly;  
Having slain anger, one does not sorrow;  
The killing of anger, O Vatrabhū,  
With its poisoned root and honeyed tip:  
This is the killing the noble ones praise,  
For having slain that, one does not sorrow."

4 (4) *Māgadha*

At Sāvatti. Standing to one side, the young deva Māgadha addressed the Blessed One in verse:

- 259 "How many sources of light are in the world  
By means of which the world is illumined? <107>

We've come to ask the Blessed One this:  
How are we to understand it?"

- 260 "There are four sources of light in the world;  
A fifth one is not found here.  
The sun shines by day,  
The moon glows at night,  
261 And fire flares up here and there  
Both by day and at night.  
But the Buddha is the best of those that shine:  
He is the light unsurpassed."

5 (5) *Dāmali*

At Sāvatti. Then, when the night had advanced, the young deva Dāmali, of stunning beauty, illuminating the entire Jeta's Grove, approached the Blessed One. Having approached, he paid homage to the Blessed One, stood to one side, and recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:

- 262 "This should be done by the brahmin:  
Striving without weariness, <108>  
That by his abandoning of sensual desires  
He does not yearn for existence."<sup>147</sup>
- 263 "For the brahmin there is no task to be done,  
[O Dāmali," said the Blessed One],  
"For the brahmin has done what should be done.  
While he has not gained a footing in the river, [48]  
A man will strain with all his limbs;  
But a footing gained, standing on the ground,  
He need not strain for he has gone beyond.
- 264 "This is a simile for the brahmin, O Dāmali,  
For the taintless one, the discreet meditator.  
Having reached the end of birth and death,  
He need not strain for he has gone beyond."<sup>148</sup> <109>

6 (6) *Kāmada*

At Sāvatti. Standing to one side, the young deva Kāmada said to the Blessed One:

"Hard to do, Blessed One! Very hard to do, Blessed One!"<sup>149</sup>

265 "They do even what is hard to do,  
[O Kāmada," said the Blessed One,]  
"The trainees endowed with virtue, steadfast.  
For one who has entered the homeless life  
Contentment brings along happiness."

"That is hard to gain, Blessed One, namely, contentment."

266 "They gain even what is hard to gain,  
[O Kāmada," said the Blessed One,]  
"Who delight in calming the mind,  
Whose minds, day and night,  
Take delight in development."

"That is hard to concentrate, Blessed One, namely, the mind."

267 "They concentrate even what is hard to concentrate,  
[O Kāmada," said the Blessed One,]  
"Who delight in calming the faculties.  
Having cut through the net of Death,  
The noble ones, O Kāmada, go their way."

"The path is impassable and uneven, Blessed One."<sup>150</sup> <110>

268 "Though the path is impassable and uneven,  
The noble ones walk it, Kāmada.  
The ignoble ones fall down head first,  
Right there on the uneven path,  
But the path of the noble ones is even,  
For the noble are even amidst the uneven."

7 (7) *Pañcālacaṇḍa*

At Sāvatti. Standing to one side, the young deva Pañcālacaṇḍa recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:

269 "The one of broad wisdom has indeed found  
The opening in the midst of confinement,  
The Buddha who discovered jhāna,  
The withdrawn chief bull, the sage."<sup>151</sup>

270 "Even in the midst of confinement they find it,  
[O Pañcālacaṇḍa," said the Blessed One,] <111>  
"The Dhamma for the attainment of Nibbāna—  
Those who have acquired mindfulness,  
Those perfectly well concentrated."<sup>152</sup> [49]

8 (8) *Tāyana*

At Sāvatti. Then, when the night had advanced, the young deva Tāyana, formerly the founder of a religious sect, of stunning beauty, illuminating the entire Jeta's Grove, approached the Blessed One.<sup>153</sup> Having approached, he paid homage to the Blessed One, stood to one side, and recited these verses in the presence of the Blessed One:

271 "Having exerted oneself, cut the stream!  
Dispel sensual desires, O brahmin!  
Without having abandoned sensual desires,  
A sage does not reach unity."<sup>154</sup>

272 "If one would do what should be done,  
One should firmly exert oneself. <112>  
For a slack wanderer's life  
Only scatters more dust.

273 "Better left undone is the misdeed,  
A deed that later brings repentance.  
Better done is the good deed  
Which when done is not repented.

274 "As *kusa*-grass, wrongly grasped,  
Only cuts one's hand,  
So the ascetic life, wrongly taken up,  
Drags one down to hell.

275 "Any deed that is slackly done,  
Any corrupted vow,  
A holy life that breeds suspicion,  
Does not yield great fruit."<sup>155</sup>

This is what the young deva Tāyana said. Having said this, he paid homage to the Blessed One and, keeping him on the right, he disappeared right there.

Then, when the night had passed, the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Bhikkhus, last night, when the night had advanced, the young deva Tāyana, formerly the founder of a religious sect ... <113> ... approached me ... and in my presence recited these verses:

276–80 "Having exerted oneself, cut the stream!... [50] ...  
Does not yield great fruit.'

"This is what the young deva Tāyana said. Having said this, he paid homage to me and, keeping me on the right, he disappeared right there. Learn Tāyana's verses, bhikkhus. Master <114> Tāyana's verses, bhikkhus. Remember Tāyana's verses, bhikkhus. Tāyana's verses are beneficial, bhikkhus, they pertain to the fundamentals of the holy life."

#### 9 (9) *Candimā*

At Sāvattḥi. Now on that occasion the young deva Candimā had been seized by Rāhu, lord of the asuras.<sup>156</sup> Then, recollecting the Blessed One, the young deva Candimā on that occasion recited this verse:

281 "Let homage be to you, the Buddha!  
O hero, you are everywhere released.  
I have fallen into captivity,  
So please be my refuge."

Then, referring to the young deva Candimā, the Blessed One addressed Rāhu, lord of the asuras, in verse:

282 "Candimā has gone for refuge  
To the Tathāgata, the Arahant.  
Release Candimā, O Rāhu,  
Buddhas have compassion for the world."

Then Rāhu, lord of the asuras, released the young deva Candimā and hurriedly approached Vepacitti, lord of the asuras.<sup>157</sup> Having approached, shocked and terrified, he stood to one side. <115> Then, as he stood there, Vepacitti, lord of the asuras, addressed him in verse:

283 "Why, Rāhu, did you come in a hurry?  
Why did you release Candimā?  
Having come as if in shock,  
Why do you stand there frightened?"

284 "My head would have split in seven parts,  
While living I would have found no ease,  
If, when chanted over by the Buddha's verse,  
I had not let go of Candimā." [51]

#### 10 (10) *Suriya*

At Sāvattḥi. Now on that occasion the young deva Suriya had been seized by Rāhu, lord of the asuras.<sup>158</sup> Then, recollecting the Blessed One, the young deva Suriya on that occasion recited this verse:

285 "Let homage be to you, the Buddha!  
O hero, you are everywhere released.  
I have fallen into captivity,  
So please be my refuge." <116>

Then, referring to the young deva Suriya, the Blessed One addressed Rāhu, lord of the asuras, in verse:

286 "Suriya has gone for refuge  
To the Tathāgata, the Arahant.  
Release Suriya, O Rāhu,  
Buddhas have compassion for the world."

287 "While moving across the sky, O Rāhu,  
Do not swallow the radiant one,  
The maker of light in darkness,  
The disk of fiery might in the gloom.  
Rāhu, release my child Suriya."<sup>159</sup>

Then Rāhu, lord of the asuras, released the young deva Suriya and hurriedly approached Vepacitti, lord of the asuras. Having approached, shocked and terrified, he stood to one side. Then, as he stood there, Vepacitti, lord of the asuras, addressed him in verse:

288 "Why, Rāhu, did you come in a hurry?  
Why did you release Suriya?  
Having come as if in shock, <117>  
Why do you stand there frightened?"

289 "My head would have split in seven parts,  
While living I would have found no ease,  
If, when chanted over by the Buddha's verses,  
I had not let go of Suriya."

## II. ANĀTHAPIṆḌIKA

### 11 (1) *Candimasa*

At Sāvatti. Then, when the night had advanced, the young deva Candimasa, of stunning beauty, illuminating the entire Jeta's Grove, [52] approached the Blessed One. Having approached, he paid homage to the Blessed One, stood to one side, <118> and recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:

290 "They will surely reach to safety  
Like deer in a mosquito-free marsh,  
Who, having attained the jhānas,  
Are unified, discreet, mindful."<sup>160</sup>

[The Blessed One:]

291 "They will surely reach the far shore  
Like a fish when the net is cut,

Who, having attained the jhānas,  
Are diligent, with flaws discarded."<sup>161</sup>

### 12 (2) *Veṇhu*

At Sāvatti. Standing to one side, the young deva Veṇhu recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:<sup>162</sup>

292 "Happy indeed are those human beings  
Attending on the Fortunate One,  
Applying themselves to Gotama's Teaching,  
Who train in it with diligence."<sup>163</sup> <119>

293 "When the course of teaching is proclaimed by me,  
[O Veṇhu," said the Blessed One,]  
"Those meditators who train therein,  
Being diligent at the proper time,  
Will not come under Death's control."

### 13 (3) *Dighalaṭṭhi*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary. Then, when the night had advanced, the young deva Dighalaṭṭhi, of stunning beauty, illuminating the entire Bamboo Grove, approached the Blessed One. Having approached, he paid homage to the Blessed One, stood to one side, and recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:

294 "A bhikkhu should be a meditator,  
One who is liberated in mind,  
If he desires the heart's attainment,  
Bent on that as his advantage.  
Having known the world's rise and fall, <120>  
Let him be lofty in mind and unattached."

### 14 (4) *Nandana*

Standing to one side, the young deva Nandana addressed the Blessed One in verse:

- 295 "I ask you, Gotama, broad of wisdom—  
Unobstructed is the Blessed One's knowledge and vision:  
[53]  
What is he like whom they call virtuous?  
What is he like whom they call wise?  
What is he like who has passed beyond suffering?  
What is he like whom the devatās worship?"
- 296 "One virtuous, wise, of developed mind,  
Concentrated, mindful, enjoying jhāna,  
For whom all sorrows are gone, abandoned,  
A taint-destroyer bearing his final body:
- 297 It is such a one that they call virtuous, <121>  
Such a one that they call wise,  
Such a one has passed beyond suffering,  
Such a one the devatās worship."

15 (5) *Candana*

Standing to one side, the young deva Candana addressed the Blessed One in verse:

- 298 "Who here crosses over the flood,  
Unwearying by day and night?  
Who does not sink in the deep,  
Without support, without a hold?"<sup>164</sup>
- 299 "One always perfect in virtue,  
Endowed with wisdom, well concentrated,  
One energetic and resolute  
Crosses the flood so hard to cross.
- 300 "One who desists from sensual perception,  
Who has overcome the fetter of form, <122>  
Who has destroyed delight in existence—  
He does not sink in the deep."<sup>165</sup>

16 (6) *Vasudatta*

Standing to one side, the young deva Vasudatta recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:

- 301 "As if smitten by a sword,  
As if his head were on fire,  
A bhikkhu should wander mindfully  
To abandon sensual lust."
- 302 "As if smitten by a sword,  
As if his head were on fire,  
A bhikkhu should wander mindfully  
To abandon identity view."

17 (7) *Subrahmā*

<123> Standing to one side, the young deva Subrahmā addressed the Blessed One in verse:<sup>166</sup>

- 303 "Always frightened is this mind,  
The mind is always agitated [54]  
About unarisen problems  
And about arisen ones.  
If there exists release from fear,  
Being asked, please declare it to me."<sup>167</sup>
- 304 "Not apart from enlightenment and austerity,  
Not apart from restraint of the sense faculties,  
Not apart from relinquishing all,  
Do I see any safety for living beings."<sup>168</sup>

This is what the Blessed One said.... He [the young deva] disappeared right there.

18 (8) *Kakudha*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāketa in the Añjana Grove, the Deer Park. Then, when the night had advanced, the young deva Kakudha, <124>

of stunning beauty, illuminating the entire Añjana Grove, approached the Blessed One. Having approached, he paid homage to the Blessed One, stood to one side, and said to him:

"Do you delight, ascetic?"

"Having gained what, friend?"

"Then, ascetic, do you sorrow?"

"What has been lost, friend?"

"Then, ascetic, do you neither delight nor sorrow?"

"Yes, friend."

305 "I hope that you're untroubled, bhikkhu.  
I hope no delight is found in you.  
I hope that when you sit all alone  
Discontent doesn't spread over you."<sup>169</sup>

306 "Truly, I'm untroubled, spirit,  
Yet no delight is found in me.  
And when I'm sitting all alone <125>  
Discontent doesn't spread over me."

307 "How are you untroubled, bhikkhu?  
How is no delight found in you?  
How come, when you sit all alone,  
Discontent doesn't spread over you?"

308 "Delight comes to one who is miserable,  
Misery to one filled with delight.  
As a bhikkhu undelighted, untroubled:  
That's how you should know me, friend."

309 "After a long time at last I see  
A brahmin who is fully quenched,  
A bhikkhu undelighted, untroubled,  
Who has crossed over attachment to the world."<sup>170</sup>

#### 19 (9) *Uttara*

Setting at Rājagaha. Standing to one side, the young deva Uttara recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One: [55] <126>

310 "Life is swept along, short is the life span;  
No shelters exist for one who has reached old age.  
Seeing clearly this danger in death,  
One should do deeds of merit that bring happiness."

311 "Life is swept along, short is the life span;  
No shelters exist for one who has reached old age.  
Seeing clearly this danger in death,  
A seeker of peace should drop the world's bait."

#### 20 (10) *Anāthapiṇḍika*

Standing to one side, the young deva Anāthapiṇḍika recited these verses in the presence of the Blessed One:

312 "This indeed is that Jeta's Grove,  
The resort of the Order of seers,  
Dwelt in by the Dhamma King,  
A place that gives me joy.

313 "Action, knowledge, righteousness,  
Virtue, an excellent life:  
By this are mortals purified, <127>  
Not by clan or wealth.

314 "Therefore a person who is wise,  
Out of regard for his own good, [56]  
Should carefully examine the Dhamma:  
Thus he is purified in it.

315 "Sāriputta truly is endowed with wisdom,  
With virtue and with inner peace.  
Even a bhikkhu who has gone beyond  
At best can only equal him."

This is what the young deva Anāthapiṇḍika said. Having said this, he paid homage to the Blessed One and, keeping him on the right, he disappeared right there.

Then, when the night had passed, the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Bhikkhus, last night, when the night had

advanced, a certain young deva ... approached me ... and in my presence recited these verses:

316–19 “This indeed is that Jeta’s Grove, ... <128>  
At best can only equal him.’

“This is what that young deva said. Having said this, he paid homage to me and, keeping me on the right, he disappeared right there.”

When this was said, the Venerable Ānanda said to the Blessed One: “Venerable sir, that young deva must surely have been Anāthapiṇḍika. For Anāthapiṇḍika the householder had full confidence in the Venerable Sāriputta.”

“Good, good, Ānanda! You have drawn the right inference by reasoning.<sup>171</sup> For that young deva, Ānanda, was Anāthapiṇḍika.”

<129>

### III. VARIOUS SECTARIANS

21 (1) *Siva*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvatti in Jeta’s Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika’s Park. Then, when the night had advanced, the young deva Siva, of stunning beauty, illuminating the entire Jeta’s Grove, approached the Blessed One. Having approached, he paid homage to the Blessed One, stood to one side, and recited these verses in the presence of the Blessed One:<sup>172</sup>

- 320 “One should associate only with the good;  
With the good one should foster intimacy.  
Having learnt the true Dhamma of the good,  
One becomes better, never worse. <130>
- 321 “One should associate only with the good;  
With the good one should foster intimacy.  
Having learnt the true Dhamma of the good,  
Wisdom is gained, but not from another.
- 322 “One should associate only with the good;  
With the good one should foster intimacy.

Having learnt the true Dhamma of the good,  
One does not sorrow in the midst of sorrow.

- 323 “One should associate only with the good;  
With the good one should foster intimacy. [57]  
Having learnt the true Dhamma of the good,  
One shines amidst one’s relations.
- 324 “One should associate only with the good;  
With the good one should foster intimacy.  
Having learnt the true Dhamma of the good,  
Beings fare on to a good destination.
- 325 “One should associate only with the good;  
With the good one should foster intimacy.  
Having learnt the true Dhamma of the good,  
Beings abide comfortably.” <131>

Then the Blessed One replied to the young deva Siva in verse:

- 326 “One should associate only with the good;  
With the good one should foster intimacy.  
Having learnt the true Dhamma of the good,  
One is released from all suffering.”

22 (2) *Khema*

Standing to one side, the young deva Khema recited these verses in the presence of the Blessed One:

- 327 “Foolish people devoid of wisdom  
Behave like enemies towards themselves.  
They go about doing evil deeds  
Which yield only bitter fruit.
- 328 “That deed is not well performed  
Which, having been done, is then repented,  
The result of which one experiences  
Weeping with a tearful face.



that I did for such a long time, <137> such that I could say: 'There is just so much merit,' or 'There is just so much result of merit,' or 'For just so long am I to dwell in heaven.' It is wonderful, venerable sir! It is amazing, venerable sir! How well this was stated by the Blessed One:

338 "When they give out of faith  
With a heart of confidence,  
Food accrues to [the giver] himself  
Both in this world and the next.

339 "Therefore, having removed stinginess,  
The conqueror of the stain should give a gift.  
Deeds of merit are the support for living beings  
[When they arise] in the other world." [60]

#### 24 (4) *Ghaṭikāra*

Standing to one side, the young deva *Ghaṭikāra* recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:...

340–52 "Seven bhikkhus reborn in *Avihā*  
Have been fully liberated...."  
... (*verses 340–52 = verses 170–82, in 1:50*) <138–41>...  
Both now inwardly developed,  
Bearers of their final bodies. [61]

#### 25 (5) *Jantu*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion a number of bhikkhus were dwelling among the Kosalans in a little forest hut on a slope of the Himalayas—restless, puffed up, personally vain, rough-tongued, rambling in their talk, muddle-minded, without clear comprehension, unconcentrated, scatter-brained, loose in their sense faculties.<sup>176</sup>

Then, on the *Uposatha* day of the fifteenth, the young deva *Jantu* approached those bhikkhus and addressed them in verses:<sup>177</sup>

353 "In the past the bhikkhus lived happily,  
The disciples of Gotama.

Without wishes they sought their alms,  
Without wishes they used their lodgings.  
Having known the world's impermanence,  
They made an end to suffering.

354 "But now like headmen in a village  
They make themselves hard to maintain.  
They eat and eat and then lie down, <142>  
Infatuated in others' homes.<sup>178</sup>

355 "Having reverently saluted the Saṅgha,  
I here speak only about some:  
They are rejected, without protector,  
Become just like the dead.<sup>179</sup>

356 "My statement is made with reference  
To those who dwell in negligence.  
As for those who dwell in diligence,  
To them I humbly pay homage."

#### 26 (6) *Rohitassa*

At *Sāvatti*. Standing to one side, the young deva *Rohitassa* said to the Blessed One:

"Is it possible, venerable sir, by travelling to know or to see or to reach the end of the world, where one is not born, does not age, does not die, does not pass away, and is not reborn?" <143>

"As to that end of the world, friend, where one is not born, does not age, does not die, does not pass away, and is not reborn—I say that it cannot be known, seen, or reached by travelling."<sup>180</sup>

"It is wonderful, venerable sir! It is amazing, venerable sir! How well this was stated by the Blessed One: 'As to that end of the world, friend, ... I say that it cannot be known, seen, or reached by travelling.'

"Once in the past, venerable sir, I was a seer named *Rohitassa*, son of *Bhoja*, possessed of spiritual power, able to travel through the sky. [62] My speed was such, venerable sir, that I could move just as swiftly as a firm-bowed archer—trained, skilful, practised, experienced—could easily shoot past the shadow of a

palmyra tree with a light arrow.<sup>181</sup> My stride was such, venerable sir, that it seemed to reach from the eastern ocean to the western ocean. Then, venerable sir, the wish arose in me: 'I will reach the end of the world by travelling.' <144> Possessing such speed and such a stride, and having a life span of a hundred years, living for a hundred years, I travelled for a hundred years, without pausing except to eat, drink, take meals and snacks, to defecate and urinate, to sleep and dispel fatigue; yet I died along the way without having reached the end of the world.

"It is wonderful, venerable sir! It is amazing, venerable sir! How well this was stated by the Blessed One: 'As to that end of the world, friend, where one is not born, does not age, does not die, does not pass away, and is not reborn—I say that it cannot be known, seen, or reached by travelling.'"

"However, friend, I say that without having reached the end of the world there is no making an end to suffering. It is, friend, in just this <145> fathom-high carcass endowed with perception and mind that I make known the world, the origin of the world, the cessation of the world, and the way leading to the cessation of the world.<sup>182</sup>

357 "The world's end can never be reached  
By means of travelling [through the world],  
Yet without reaching the world's end  
There is no release from suffering.

358 "Therefore, truly, the world-knower, the wise one,  
Gone to the world's end, fulfiller of the holy life,  
Having known the world's end, at peace,  
Longs not for this world or another."

#### 27 (7) *Nanda*

Standing to one side, the young deva Nanda recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:

359 "Time flies by, the nights swiftly pass;  
The stages of life successively desert us.

Seeing clearly this danger in death,  
One should do deeds of merit that bring happiness."

360 "Time flies by, the nights swiftly pass;  
The stages of life successively desert us. [63]  
Seeing clearly this danger in death,  
A seeker of peace should drop the world's bait." <146>

#### 28 (8) *Nandivisāla*

Standing to one side, the young deva Nandivisāla addressed the Blessed One in verse:

361 "Having four wheels and nine doors,  
Filled up and bound with greed,  
Born from a bog, O great hero!  
How does one escape from it?"

362 "Having cut the thong and the strap,  
Having cut off evil desire and greed,  
Having drawn out craving with its root:  
Thus one escapes from it."

#### 29 (9) *Susima*

<147> At Sāvattī. Then the Venerable Ānanda approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, and sat down to one side. The Blessed One then said to him: "Do you too, Ānanda, approve of Sāriputta?"<sup>183</sup>

"Indeed, venerable sir, who would not approve of the Venerable Sāriputta, unless he were foolish, full of hatred, deluded, or mentally deranged? The Venerable Sāriputta, venerable sir, is wise, one of great wisdom, of wide wisdom, of joyous wisdom, of swift wisdom, of sharp wisdom, of penetrative wisdom.<sup>184</sup> The Venerable Sāriputta, venerable sir, has few wishes; he is content, secluded, aloof, energetic. The Venerable Sāriputta, venerable sir, is one who gives advice, one who accepts advice, a reprover, one who censures evil. Indeed, venerable sir, who would not approve of the Venerable Sāriputta, unless he were foolish, full of hatred, deluded, or mentally deranged?" [64]

"So it is, Ānanda, so it is! Indeed, Ānanda, who would not approve of Sāriputta, unless he were foolish, full of hatred, deluded, or mentally deranged? Sāriputta, Ānanda, is wise ... (as above) <148>... unless he were mentally deranged?"

Then, while this praise of the Venerable Sāriputta was being spoken, the young deva Susima, accompanied by a great assembly of young devas, approached the Blessed One.<sup>185</sup> Having approached, he paid homage to the Blessed One, stood to one side, and said to him: "So it is, Blessed One! So it is, Fortunate One! Indeed, venerable sir, who would not approve of the Venerable Sāriputta ... (all as above) <149>... unless he were mentally deranged? In my case too, venerable sir, no matter what assembly of young devas I have approached, I have often heard this same report: 'The Venerable Sāriputta is wise ... one who censures evil. Indeed, who would not approve of the Venerable Sāriputta, unless he were foolish, full of hatred, deluded, or mentally deranged?'"

Then, while this praise of the Venerable Sāriputta was being spoken, the young devas in Susima's assembly—elated, gladdened, full of rapture and joy—displayed diverse lustrous colours.<sup>186</sup> Just as a beryl gem—beautiful, of fine quality, eight-faceted, of excellent workmanship—when placed on a brocade cloth, shines and beams and radiates, <150> so too the young devas in Susima's assembly [65] ... displayed diverse lustrous colours.

And just as an ornament of finest gold—very skilfully bur-nished in a furnace by an adroit goldsmith—when placed on a brocade cloth, shines and beams and radiates, so too the young devas in Susima's assembly ... displayed diverse lustrous colours.

And just as, when the night is fading, the morning star shines and beams and radiates, so too the young devas in Susima's assembly ... displayed diverse lustrous colours.<sup>187</sup>

And just as in the autumn, when the sky is clear and cloud-less, the sun, ascending in the sky, <151> dispels all darkness from space as it shines and beams and radiates,<sup>188</sup> so too the young devas in Susima's assembly—elated, gladdened, full of rapture and joy—displayed diverse lustrous colours.

Then, with reference to the Venerable Sāriputta, the young deva Susima recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:

363 "He is widely known to be a wise man,  
Sāriputta, who is free of anger;  
Of few wishes, gentle, tamed,  
The seer adorned by the Teacher's praise."

Then the Blessed One, with reference to the Venerable Sāri-putta, replied to the young deva Susima in verse:

364 "He is widely known to be a wise man,  
Sāriputta, who is free of anger;  
Of few wishes, gentle, tamed,  
Developed, well tamed, he awaits the time."<sup>189</sup>

### 30 (10) *Various Sectarrians*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary. Then, when the night had advanced, a number <152> of young devas, disciples of various sectarian teachers—Asama and Sahali and Niṅka and Ākoṭaka and Vetambari and Mānava-gāmiya—of stunning beauty, [66] illuminating the entire Bamboo Grove, approached the Blessed One. Having approached, they paid homage to the Blessed One and stood to one side.<sup>190</sup>

Then, standing to one side, the young deva Asama spoke this verse referring to Pūraṇa Kassapa in the presence of the Blessed One:

365 "In injuring and killing here,  
In beating and extortion,  
Kassapa did not recognize evil  
Nor see any merit for oneself.  
He indeed taught what is worthy of trust:  
That teacher deserves esteem."<sup>191</sup>

Then the young deva Sahali spoke this verse referring to Makkhali Gosāla in the presence of the Blessed One:<sup>192</sup>

366 "By austerity and scrupulousness <153>  
He attained complete self-restraint.

He abandoned contentious talk with people,  
Refrained from falsehood, a speaker of truth.  
Surely such a one does no evil."<sup>193</sup>

Then the young deva Niṅka spoke this verse referring to  
Nigaṅṭha Nātaputta in the presence of the Blessed One:

367 "A scrupulous discerning bhikkhu,  
Well restrained by the four controls,  
Explaining what is seen and heard:  
Surely, he could not be a sinner."<sup>194</sup>

Then the young deva Ākoṭaka spoke this verse referring to  
various sectarian teachers in the presence of the Blessed One:

368 "Pakudhaka Kāṭiyāna and the Nigaṅṭha,  
Along with Makkhali and Pūraṇa:  
Teachers of companies, attained to ascetic stature:  
They were surely not far from superior men."<sup>195</sup> <154>

Then the young deva Vetambari replied to the young deva  
Ākoṭaka in verse:

369 "Even by howling along the wretched jackal  
Remains a vile beast, never the lion's peer.  
So though he be the teacher of a group,  
The naked ascetic, speaker of falsehood,  
Arousing suspicion by his conduct,  
Bears no resemblance to superior men."<sup>196</sup> [67]

Then Māra the Evil One took possession of the young deva  
Vetambari and recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed  
One:<sup>197</sup>

370 "Those engaged in austerity and scrupulousness,  
Those protecting their solitude,  
And those who have settled on form,  
Delighting in the world of devas: <155>  
Indeed, these mortals instruct rightly  
In regard to the other world."

Then the Blessed One, having understood, "This is Māra the  
Evil One," replied to Māra the Evil One in verse:

371 "Whatever forms exist here or beyond,  
And those of luminous beauty in the sky,  
All these, indeed, you praise, Namuci,  
Like bait thrown out for catching fish."<sup>198</sup>

Then, in the Blessed One's presence, the young deva Māṇava-  
gāmiya recited these verses referring to the Blessed One:

372 "Vipula is called the best of mountains  
Among the hills of Rājagaha,  
Seta, the best of snow-clad mountains,  
The sun, the best of travellers in the sky.

373 "The ocean is the best body of water,  
The moon, the best of nocturnal lights, <156>  
But in this world together with its devas  
The Buddha is declared supreme."

[68] &lt;157&gt;

## Chapter III

3 *Kosalasamyutta*

## Connected Discourses with the Kosalan

I. THE FIRST SUBCHAPTER  
(BONDAGE)1 (1) *Young*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvatti in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. Then King Pasenadi of Kosala approached the Blessed One and exchanged greetings with him. When they had concluded their greetings and cordial talk, he sat down to one side and said to the Blessed One: "Does Master Gotama too claim, 'I have awakened to the unsurpassed perfect enlightenment'?"<sup>199</sup>

"If, great king, one speaking rightly could say of anyone, 'He has awakened to the unsurpassed perfect enlightenment,' it is of me that one might rightly say this. For I, great king, have awakened to the unsurpassed perfect enlightenment."

"Master Gotama, even those ascetics and brahmins who are the heads of orders and companies, the teachers of companies, well known and famous founders of sects considered by the multitude to be holy men—that is, Pūraṇa Kassapa, Makkhali Gosāla, <158> Nigaṇṭha Nātaputta, Saṅjaya Belaṭṭhiputta, Pakudha Kaccāyana, Ajita Kesakambali—even these, when I asked them whether they had awakened to the unsurpassed perfect enlightenment, did not claim to have done so.<sup>200</sup> So why then should Master Gotama [make such a claim] when he is so young in years and has newly gone forth?" [69]

"There are four things, great king, that should not be despised and disparaged as 'young.'<sup>201</sup> What four? A khattiya, great king should not be despised and disparaged as 'young'; a snake

should not be despised and disparaged as 'young'; a fire should not be despised and disparaged as 'young'; and a bhikkhu should not be despised and disparaged as 'young.' These are the four." <159>

This is what the Blessed One said. Having said this, the Fortunate One, the Teacher, further said this:

- 374 "One should not despise as 'young'  
A khattiya of noble birth,  
A high-born prince of glorious fame:  
A man should not disparage him.
- 375 For it may happen that this lord of men,  
This khattiya, shall gain the throne,  
And in his anger thrash one harshly  
With a royal punishment.  
Therefore guarding one's own life,  
One should avoid him.
- 376 "One should not despise as 'young'  
A serpent one may see by chance  
In the village or a forest:  
A man should not disparage it.
- 377 For as that fierce snake glides along,  
Manifesting in diverse shapes,<sup>202</sup>  
It may attack and bite the fool, <160>  
Whether a man or a woman.  
Therefore guarding one's own life,  
One should avoid it.
- 378 "One should not despise as 'young'  
A blazing fire that devours much,  
A conflagration with blackened trail:  
A man should not disparage it.
- 379 For if it gains a stock of fuel,  
Having become a conflagration,  
It may attack and burn the fool,  
Whether a man or a woman.  
Therefore guarding one's own life,  
One should avoid it.

- 380 "When a fire burns down a forest—  
That conflagration with blackened trail—  
The shoots there spring to life once more  
As the days and nights pass by.
- 381 But if a bhikkhu of perfect virtue <161>  
Burns one with [his virtue's] fire,  
One does not gain sons and cattle,  
Nor do one's heirs acquire wealth.  
Childless and heirless they become,  
Like stumps of palmyra trees.<sup>203</sup> [70]
- 382 "Therefore a person who is wise,  
Out of regard for his own good,  
Should always treat these properly:  
A fierce serpent and a blazing fire,  
A famous khattiya,  
And a bhikkhu of perfect virtue."

When this was said, King Pasenadi of Kosala said to the Blessed One: "Magnificent, venerable sir! Magnificent, venerable sir! The Dhamma has been made clear in many ways by the Blessed One, as though he were turning upright what had been turned upside down, revealing what was hidden, showing the way to one who was lost, or holding up a lamp in the dark for those with eyesight to see forms. I go for refuge to the Blessed One, and to the Dhamma, and to the Bhikkhu Saṅgha. From today let the Blessed One remember me as a lay follower who has gone for refuge for life." <162>

### 2 (2) A Person

At Sāvattī. Then King Pasenadi of Kosala approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and said to him:

"Venerable sir, how many things are there which, when they arise within a person, arise for his harm, suffering, and discomfort?"

"There are, great king, three things which, when they arise within a person, arise for his harm, suffering, and discomfort. What are the three? Greed, hatred, and delusion. These are the

three things which, when they arise within a person, arise for his harm, suffering, and discomfort.

- 383 "Greed, hatred, and delusion,  
Arisen from within oneself,  
Injure the person of evil mind <163>  
As its own fruit destroys the reed."<sup>204</sup> [71]

### 3 (3) Aging and Death

At Sāvattī. Sitting to one side, King Pasenadi of Kosala said to the Blessed One: "Venerable sir, for one who has taken birth, is there anything other [to expect] than aging and death?"<sup>205</sup>

"For one who has taken birth, great king, there is nothing other [to expect] than aging and death. Even in the case of those affluent khattiyas—rich, with great wealth and property, with abundant gold and silver, abundant treasures and commodities, abundant wealth and grain—because they have taken birth, there is nothing other [to expect] than aging and death. Even in the case of those affluent brahmins ... affluent householders—rich ... with abundant wealth and grain—because they have taken birth, there is nothing other [to expect] than aging and death. Even in the case of those bhikkhus who are arahants, whose taints are destroyed, who have lived the holy life, done what had to be done, laid down the burden, <164> reached their own goal, utterly destroyed the fetters of existence, and are completely liberated through final knowledge: even for them this body is subject to breaking up, subject to being laid down."<sup>206</sup>

- 384 "The beautiful chariots of kings wear out,  
This body too undergoes decay.  
But the Dhamma of the good does not decay:  
So the good proclaim along with the good."<sup>207</sup>

### 4 (4) Dear

At Sāvattī. Sitting to one side, King Pasenadi of Kosala said to the Blessed One: "Here, venerable sir, while I was alone in seclusion, a reflection arose in my mind thus: 'Who now treat themselves as dear, and who treat themselves as a foe?' Then,

venerable sir, it occurred to me: 'Those who engage in misconduct of body, speech, and mind treat themselves as a foe. Even though they may say, "We regard ourselves as dear," still they treat themselves as a foe. For what reason? [72] Because of their own accord they act towards themselves in the same way that a foe might act towards a foe; therefore they treat themselves as a foe. <165> But those who engage in good conduct of body, speech, and mind treat themselves as dear. Even though they may say, "We regard ourselves as a foe," still they treat themselves as dear. For what reason? Because of their own accord they act towards themselves in the same way that a dear person might act towards one who is dear; therefore they treat themselves as dear."

"So it is, great king! So it is, great king!"

(The Buddha then repeats the entire statement of King Pasenadi and adds the following verses:)

- 385 "If one regards oneself as dear  
One should not yoke oneself to evil,  
For happiness is not easily gained  
By one who does a wrongful deed. <166>
- 386 "When one is seized by the End-maker  
As one discards the human state,  
What can one call truly one's own?  
What does one take when one goes?  
What follows one along  
Like a shadow that never departs?<sup>208</sup>
- 387 "Both the merits and the evil  
That a mortal does right here:  
This is what is truly one's own,  
This one takes when one goes;  
This is what follows one along  
Like a shadow that never departs.
- 388 "Therefore one should do what is good  
As a collection for the future life.  
Merits are the support for living beings  
[When they arise] in the other world."

5 (5) *Self-Protected*

<167> At Sāvatti. Sitting to one side, King Pasenadi of Kosala said to the Blessed One: "Here, venerable sir, while I was alone in seclusion, a reflection arose in my mind thus: 'Who now protect themselves and who leave themselves unprotected?' Then, venerable sir, it occurred to me: 'Those who engage in misconduct of body, speech, and mind leave themselves unprotected. Even though a company of elephant troops may protect them, or a company of cavalry, or a company of chariot troops, [73] or a company of infantry, still they leave themselves unprotected. For what reason? Because that protection is external, not internal; therefore they leave themselves unprotected. But those who engage in good conduct of body, speech, and mind protect themselves. Even though no company of elephant troops protects them, nor a company of cavalry, nor a company of charioteers, nor a company of infantry, still they protect themselves. For what reason? Because that protection is internal, not external; therefore they protect themselves.'"

"So it is, great king! So it is, great king!"

(The Buddha then repeats the entire statement of King Pasenadi and adds the following verse:.) <168>

- 389 "Good is restraint with the body,  
Restraint by speech is also good;  
Good is restraint with the mind,  
Restraint everywhere is good.  
Conscientious, everywhere restrained,  
One is said to be protected."

6 (6) *Few*

At Sāvatti. Sitting to one side, King Pasenadi of Kosala said to the Blessed One: "Here, venerable sir, while I was alone in seclusion, a reflection arose in my mind thus: 'Few are those people in the world who, <169> when they obtain superior possessions, do not become intoxicated and negligent, yield to greed for sensual pleasures, and mistreat other beings. Far more numerous are those people in the world who, when they obtain superior possessions, become intoxicated and negligent, [74] yield to greed for sensual pleasures, and mistreat other beings.'"

“So it is, great king! So it is, great king!”

(*The Buddha then repeats the entire statement of King Pasenadi and adds the following verse:*)

390 “Enamoured with their pleasures and wealth,  
Greedy, dazed by sensual pleasures,  
They do not realize they have gone too far  
Like deer that enter the trap laid out.  
Afterwards the bitter fruit is theirs,  
For bad indeed is the result.”<sup>209</sup> <170>

#### 7 (7) *The Judgement Hall*

At Sāvattī. Sitting to one side, King Pasenadi of Kosala said to the Blessed One: “Here, venerable sir, when I am sitting in the judgement hall,<sup>210</sup> I see even affluent khattiyas, affluent brahmins, and affluent householders—rich, with great wealth and property, with abundant gold and silver, abundant treasures and commodities, abundant wealth and grain—speaking deliberate lies for the sake of sensual pleasures, with sensual pleasures as the cause, on account of sensual pleasures. Then, venerable sir, it occurs to me: ‘I’ve had enough now with the judgement hall! Now it is Good Face who will be known by his judgements.’”<sup>211</sup>

“So it is, great king! So it is, great king! Even affluent khattiyas, affluent brahmins, and affluent householders ... speak deliberate lies for the sake of sensual pleasures, with sensual pleasures as the cause, on account of sensual pleasures. That will lead to their harm and suffering for a long time to come.

391 “Enamoured with their pleasures and wealth,  
Greedy, dazed by sensual pleasures,  
They do not realize they have gone too far  
Like fish that enter the net spread out.  
Afterwards the bitter fruit is theirs, <171>  
For bad indeed is the result.” [75]

#### 8 (8) *Mallikā*

At Sāvattī. Now on that occasion King Pasenadi of Kosala had gone together with Queen Mallikā to the upper terrace of the

palace. Then King Pasenadi of Kosala said to Queen Mallikā: “Is there, Mallikā, anyone more dear to you than yourself?”<sup>212</sup>

“There is no one, great king, more dear to me than myself. But is there anyone, great king, more dear to you than yourself?”

“For me too, Mallikā, there is no one more dear than myself.”

Then King Pasenadi of Kosala descended from the palace and approached the Blessed One. Having approached, he paid homage to the Blessed One, sat down to one side, and related to the Blessed One his conversation with Queen Mallikā. Then the Blessed One, having understood the meaning of this, on that occasion recited this verse: <172>

392 “Having traversed all quarters with the mind,  
One finds none anywhere dearer than oneself.  
Likewise, each person holds himself most dear;  
Hence one who loves himself should not harm others.”

#### 9 (9) *Sacrifice*

At Sāvattī. Now on that occasion a great sacrifice had been set up for King Pasenadi of Kosala. Five hundred bulls, five hundred bullocks, five hundred heifers, [76] five hundred goats, and five hundred rams had been led to the pillar for the sacrifice. And his slaves, servants, and workers, spurred on by punishment and fear, were busy making the preparations, wailing with tearful faces.<sup>213</sup>

Then, in the morning, a number of bhikkhus dressed and, taking their bowls and robes, entered Sāvattī for alms. When they had walked for alms in Sāvattī and had returned from their alms round, after the meal they approached the Blessed One, <173> paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and said: “Here, venerable sir, a great sacrifice has been set up for King Pasenadi of Kosala. Five hundred bulls ... have been led to the pillar for the sacrifice. And his slaves ... are busy making preparations, wailing with tearful faces.”

Then the Blessed One, having understood the meaning of this, on that occasion recited these verses:

393 “The horse sacrifice, human sacrifice,  
*Sammāpāsa, vājapeyya, niraggala:*

These great sacrifices, fraught with violence,  
Do not bring great fruit.<sup>214</sup>

394 "The great seers of right conduct  
Do not attend that sacrifice  
Where goats, sheep, and cattle  
Of various kinds are slain. <174>

395 "But when sacrifices free from violence  
Are always offered by family custom,<sup>215</sup>  
Where no goats, sheep, or cattle  
Of various kinds are slain:  
The great seers of right conduct  
Attend a sacrifice like this.

396 "The wise person should offer this,  
A sacrifice bringing great fruit.  
For one who makes such sacrifice  
It is indeed better, never worse.  
Such a sacrifice is truly vast  
And the devatās too are pleased."

#### 10 (10) *Bondage*

Now on that occasion a great mass of people had been put in bondage by King Pasenadi of Kosala—some with ropes, some with clogs, some with chains.<sup>216</sup> [77] <175> Then, in the morning, a number of bhikkhus dressed ... and said to the Blessed One: "Here, venerable sir, a great mass of people have been put in bondage by King Pasenadi of Kosala, some with ropes, some with clogs, some with chains."

Then the Blessed One, having understood the meaning of this, on that occasion recited these verses:

397 "That bond, the wise say, is not strong  
Made of iron, wood, or rope;  
But infatuation with jewellery and earrings,  
Anxious concern for wives and children—  
398 This, the wise say, is the strong bond,  
Degrading, supple, hard to escape.

But even this they cut and wander forth, <176>  
Unconcerned, having abandoned sensual pleasures."<sup>217</sup>

#### II. THE SECOND SUBCHAPTER (CHILDLESS)

##### 11 (1) *Seven Jaṭilas*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvatti in the Eastern Park in the Mansion of Migāra's Mother.<sup>218</sup> Now on that occasion, in the evening, the Blessed One had emerged from seclusion and was sitting by the outer gateway. Then King Pasenadi of Kosala approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, and sat down to one side. [78] <177>

Now on that occasion seven jaṭilas, seven nigaṇṭhas, seven naked ascetics, seven one-robed ascetics, and seven wanderers—with hairy armpits, long fingernails and long body hairs, carrying their bundles of requisites—passed by not far from the Blessed One.<sup>219</sup> Then King Pasenadi of Kosala rose from his seat, arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, knelt down with his right knee on the ground, and, raising his joined hands in reverential salutation towards the seven jaṭilas, seven nigaṇṭhas, seven naked ascetics, seven one-robed ascetics, and seven wanderers, he announced his name three times: "I am the king, venerable sirs, Pasenadi of Kosala!... I am the king, venerable sirs, Pasenadi of Kosala!"

Then, not long after those seven jaṭilas ... <178> ... and seven wanderers had departed, King Pasenadi of Kosala approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and said to the Blessed One: "Those, venerable sir, are to be included among the men in the world who are arahants or who have entered upon the path to arahantship."<sup>220</sup>

"Great king, being a layman who enjoys sensual pleasures, dwelling in a home crowded with children, enjoying the use of Kāsian sandalwood, wearing garlands, scents, and unguents, receiving gold and silver, it is difficult for you to know: 'These are arahants or these have entered upon the path to arahantship.'

"It is by living together with someone, great king, that his virtue is to be known, and that after a long time, not after a short

time; by one who is attentive, not by one who is inattentive; by one who is wise, not by a dullard.

"It is by dealing with someone, great king, that his honesty is to be known, and that after a long time, not after a short time; by one who is attentive, not by one who is inattentive; by one who is wise, not by a dullard. <179>

"It is in adversities, great king, that a person's fortitude is to be known, and that after a long time, not after a short time; by one who is attentive, not by one who is inattentive; by one who is wise, not by a dullard. [79]

"It is by discussion with someone, great king, that his wisdom is to be known, and that after a long time, not after a short time; by one who is attentive, not by one who is inattentive; by one who is wise, not by a dullard."<sup>221</sup>

"It is wonderful, venerable sir! It is amazing, venerable sir! How well this has been stated by the Blessed One: 'Great king, being a layman ... it is difficult for you to know ... (as above) <180> ... by one who is wise, not by a dullard.'

"These, venerable sir, are my spies, undercover agents, coming back after spying out the country.<sup>222</sup> First information is gathered by them and afterwards I will make them disclose it.<sup>223</sup> Now, venerable sir, when they have washed off the dust and dirt and are freshly bathed and groomed, with their hair and beards trimmed, clad in white garments, they will enjoy themselves supplied and endowed with the five cords of sensual pleasure."

Then the Blessed One, having understood the meaning of this, on that occasion recited these verses: <181>

399 "A man is not easily known by outward form  
Nor should one trust a quick appraisal,  
For in the guise of the well controlled  
Uncontrolled men move in this world.

400 "Like a counterfeit earring made of clay,  
Like a bronze half-pence coated with gold,  
Some move about in disguise:  
Inwardly impure, outwardly beautiful."

12 (2) *Five Kings*

At Sāvatti. Now on that occasion five kings headed by King Pasenadi were enjoying themselves supplied and endowed with the five cords of sensual pleasure when this conversation arose among them: "What is the chief of sensual pleasures?"<sup>224</sup>

Some among them said: "Forms are the chief of sensual pleasures." Some said: "Sounds are the chief." Some: "Odours are the chief." Some: "Tastes are the chief." Some: [80] "Tactile objects are the chief."<sup>225</sup> <182>

Since those kings were unable to convince one another, King Pasenadi of Kosala said to them: "Come, dear sirs, let us approach the Blessed One and question him about this matter. As the Blessed One answers us, so we should remember it."

"All right, dear sir," those kings replied. Then those five kings, headed by King Pasenadi, approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, and sat down to one side. King Pasenadi then reported their entire discussion to the Blessed One, asking: "What now, venerable sir, is the chief of sensual pleasures?" <183>

"Great king, I say that what is chief among the five cords of sensual pleasure is determined by whatever is most agreeable.<sup>226</sup> Those same forms that are agreeable to one person, great king, are disagreeable to another. When one is pleased and completely satisfied with certain forms, then one does not yearn for any other form higher or more sublime than those forms. For him those forms are then supreme; for him those forms are unsurpassed.

"Those same sounds ... Those same odours ... Those same tastes ... <184> ... Those same tactile objects that are agreeable to one person, great king, are disagreeable to another. [81] When one is pleased and completely satisfied with certain tactile objects, then one does not yearn for any other tactile object higher or more sublime than those tactile objects. For him those tactile objects are then supreme; for him those tactile objects are unsurpassed."

Now on that occasion the lay follower Candanaṅgalika was sitting in that assembly. Then the lay follower Candanaṅgalika rose from his seat, arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, and, raising his joined hands in reverential salutation towards

the Blessed One, said to him: "An inspiration has come to me, Blessed One! An inspiration has come to me, Fortunate One!"

"Then express your inspiration, Candanaṅgalika," the Blessed One said.<sup>227</sup>

Then the lay follower Candanaṅgalika, in the presence of the Blessed One, extolled him with an appropriate verse:

401 "As the fragrant red lotus Kokanada  
Blooms in the morning, its fragrance unspent,  
Behold Aṅgīrasa, the Radiant One,  
Like the sun beaming in the sky."<sup>228</sup>

Then those five kings bestowed five upper robes upon the lay follower Candanaṅgalika. But the lay follower Candanaṅgalika <185> bestowed those five upper robes upon the Blessed One.

### 13 (3) A Bucket Measure of Food

At Sāvatti. Now on that occasion King Pasenadi of Kosala had eaten a bucket measure of rice and curries.<sup>229</sup> Then, while still full, huffing and puffing, the king approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, and sat down to one side.

Then the Blessed One, having understood that King Pasenadi was full and was huffing and puffing, on that occasion recited this verse:

402 "When a man is always mindful,  
Knowing moderation in the food he eats,  
His ailments then diminish:  
He ages slowly, guarding his life." [82] <186>

Now on that occasion the brahmin youth Sudassana was standing behind King Pasenadi of Kosala. The king then addressed him thus: "Come now, dear Sudassana, learn this verse from the Blessed One and recite it to me whenever I am taking my meal. I will then present you daily with a hundred *kaḥāṇaṇas* as a perpetual grant."<sup>230</sup>

"Yes, sire," the brahmin youth Sudassana replied. Having learned this verse from the Blessed One, whenever King Pasenadi was taking his meal the brahmin youth Sudassana recited:

403 "When a man is always mindful ... <187>  
He ages slowly, guarding his life."

Then King Pasenadi of Kosala gradually reduced his intake of food to at most a pint-pot measure of boiled rice.<sup>231</sup> At a later time, when his body had become quite slim, King Pasenadi of Kosala stroked his limbs with his hand and on that occasion uttered this inspired utterance: "The Blessed One showed compassion towards me in regard to both kinds of good—the good pertaining to the present life and that pertaining to the future life."<sup>232</sup>

### 14 (4) Battle (1)

At Sāvatti. Then King Ajātasattu of Magadha, the Videhan son, mobilized a four-division army and marched in the direction of Kāsi against King Pasenadi of Kosala.<sup>233</sup> King Pasenadi heard this report, mobilized a four-division army, and launched a counter-march in the direction of Kāsi against King Ajātasattu. [83] Then King Ajātasattu of Magadha and King Pasenadi of Kosala fought a battle. In that <188> battle King Ajātasattu defeated King Pasenadi, and King Pasenadi, defeated, retreated to his own capital of Sāvatti.

Then, in the morning, a number of bhikkhus dressed and, taking their bowls and robes, entered Sāvatti for alms. When they had walked for alms in Sāvatti and had returned from their alms round, after the meal they approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and reported what had happened. <189> [The Blessed One said:]

"Bhikkhus, King Ajātasattu of Magadha has evil friends, evil companions, evil comrades. King Pasenadi of Kosala has good friends, good companions, good comrades. Yet for this day, bhikkhus, King Pasenadi, having been defeated, will sleep badly tonight."<sup>234</sup>

404 "Victory breeds enmity,  
The defeated one sleeps badly.  
The peaceful one sleeps at ease,  
Having abandoned victory and defeat."<sup>235</sup> <190>

15 (5) *Battle (2)*[84] (*Opening as in §14:*)

In that battle King Pasenadi defeated King Ajātasattu and captured him alive. Then it occurred to King Pasenadi: "Although this King Ajātasattu of Magadha has transgressed against me while I have not transgressed against him, still, he is my nephew. Let me now confiscate all his elephant troops, all his cavalry, all his chariot troops, <191> and all his infantry, and let him go with nothing but his life."

Then King Pasenadi confiscated all King Ajātasattu's elephant troops, all his cavalry, all his chariot troops, and all his infantry, and let him go with nothing but his life.

Then, in the morning, a number of bhikkhus dressed and, taking their bowls and robes, entered Sāvatti for alms. When they had walked for alms in Sāvatti and had returned from their alms round, after the meal they approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and reported what had happened. [85] <192>

Then the Blessed One, having understood the meaning of this, on that occasion recited these verses:

405 "A man will go on plundering  
So long as it serves his ends, <193>  
But when others plunder him,  
The plunderer is plundered.<sup>236</sup>

406 "The fool thinks fortune is on his side  
So long as his evil does not ripen,  
But when the evil ripens  
The fool incurs suffering.

407 "The killer begets a killer,  
One who conquers, a conqueror.  
The abuser begets abuse,  
The reviler, one who reviles.  
Thus by the unfolding of kamma  
The plunderer is plundered."<sup>237</sup> [86]

16 (6) *Daughter*

At Sāvatti. Then King Pasenadi of Kosala approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, and sat down to one side. Then a certain man approached King Pasenadi <194> and informed him in a whisper: "Sire, Queen Mallikā has given birth to a daughter." When this was said, King Pasenadi was displeased.<sup>238</sup> Then the Blessed One, having understood that King Pasenadi was displeased, on that occasion recited these verses:

408 "A woman, O lord of the people,  
May turn out better than a man:  
She may be wise and virtuous,  
A devoted wife, revering her mother-in-law.<sup>239</sup>

409 "The son to whom she gives birth  
May become a hero, O lord of the land.  
The son of such a blessed woman  
May even rule the realm."<sup>240</sup> <195>

17 (7) *Diligence (1)*

At Sāvatti. Sitting to one side, King Pasenadi of Kosala said to the Blessed One: "Is there, venerable sir, one thing which secures both kinds of good, the good pertaining to the present life and that pertaining to the future life?"

"There is one thing, great king, which secures both kinds of good, the good pertaining to the present life and that pertaining to the future life."

"But what, venerable sir, is that one thing?"

"Diligence, great king. Just as the footprints of all living beings that walk fit into the footprint of the elephant, and the elephant's footprint is declared to be their chief by reason of its size, so diligence is the one <196> thing which secures both kinds of good, [87] the good pertaining to the present life and that pertaining to the future life.<sup>241</sup>

410 "For one who desires long life and health,  
Beauty, heaven, and noble birth,  
[A variety of] lofty delights

Following in succession,  
The wise praise diligence  
In doing deeds of merit.

- 411 “The wise person who is diligent  
Secures both kinds of good:  
The good visible in this very life  
And the good of the future life.  
The steadfast one, by attaining the good,  
Is called a person of wisdom.”<sup>242</sup>

18 (8) *Diligence* (2)

At Sāvatti. Sitting to one side, King Pasenadi of Kosala said to the Blessed One: <197> “Here, venerable sir, while I was alone in seclusion, the following reflection arose in my mind: ‘The Dhamma has been well expounded by the Blessed One, and that is for one with good friends, good companions, good comrades, not for one with bad friends, bad companions, bad comrades.’”<sup>243</sup>

“So it is, great king! So it is, great king! The Dhamma has been well expounded by me, and that is for one with good friends, good companions, good comrades, not for one with bad friends, bad companions, bad comrades.

“On one occasion, great king, I was living among the Sakyans, where there is a town of the Sakyans named Nāgaraka.<sup>244</sup> Then the bhikkhu Ānanda approached me, paid homage to me, sat down to one side, and said: ‘Venerable sir, this is half of the holy life, that is, good friendship, good companionship, good comradeship.’

“When this was said, great king, I told the bhikkhu Ānanda: ‘Not so, Ānanda! Not so, Ānanda! <198> This is the entire holy life, Ānanda, that is, good friendship, [88] good companionship, good comradeship. When a bhikkhu has a good friend, a good companion, a good comrade, it is to be expected that he will develop and cultivate the Noble Eightfold Path. And how, Ānanda, does a bhikkhu who has a good friend, a good companion, a good comrade, develop and cultivate the Noble Eightfold Path? Here, Ānanda, a bhikkhu develops right view, which is based upon seclusion, dispassion, and cessation, maturing in release. He develops right intention ... right speech

... right action ... right livelihood ... right effort ... right mindfulness ... right concentration, which is based upon seclusion, dispassion, and cessation, maturing in release. It is in this way, Ānanda, that a bhikkhu who has a good friend, a good companion, a good comrade, develops and cultivates the Noble Eightfold Path.

“By the following method too, Ānanda, it may be understood how the entire holy life is good friendship, good companionship, good comradeship: <199> by relying upon me as a good friend, Ānanda, beings subject to birth are freed from birth; beings subject to aging are freed from aging; beings subject to illness are freed from illness; beings subject to death are freed from death; beings subject to sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair are freed from sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair. By this method, Ānanda, it may be understood how the entire holy life is good friendship, good companionship, good comradeship.’

“Therefore, great king, you should train yourself thus: ‘I will be one who has good friends, good companions, good comrades.’ It is in such a way that you should train yourself.

“When, great king, you have good friends, good companions, good comrades, [89] you should dwell with one thing for support: diligence in wholesome states.

“When, great king, you are dwelling diligently, with diligence for support, your retinue of harem women will think thus: ‘The king dwells diligently, with diligence for support. Come now, let us also dwell diligently, with diligence for support.’ <200>

“When, great king, you are dwelling diligently, with diligence for support, your retinue of khattiya vassals will think thus ... your troops will think thus ... your subjects in town and countryside will think thus: ‘The king dwells diligently, with diligence for support. Come now, let us also dwell diligently, with diligence for support.’

“When, great king, you are dwelling diligently, with diligence for support, you yourself will be guarded and protected, your retinue of harem women will be guarded and protected, your treasury and storehouse will be guarded and protected.

- 412 “For one who desires lofty riches  
Following in succession,

The wise praise diligence  
In doing deeds of merit.

- 413 "The wise person who is diligent <201>  
Secures both kinds of good:  
The good visible in this very life  
And the good of the future life.  
The steadfast one, by attaining the good,  
Is called a person of wisdom."

19 (9) *Childless* (1)

At Sāvatti. Then King Pasenadi of Kosala approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, and sat down to one side. The Blessed One then said to him: "Where are you coming from, great king, in the middle of the day?"

"Here, venerable sir, a financier householder in Sāvatti has died. I have come after conveying his heirless fortune to the palace, as he died intestate.<sup>245</sup> There were eighty lakhs of gold, [90] not to speak of silver, and yet, venerable sir, that financier householder's meals were like this: he ate red rice along with sour gruel. His clothes were like this: he wore a three-piece hempen garment. His vehicle was like this: <202> he went about in a dilapidated little cart with a leaf awning."<sup>246</sup>

"So it is, great king! So it is, great king! When an inferior man gains abundant wealth, he does not make himself happy and pleased, nor does he make his mother and father happy and pleased, nor his wife and children, nor his slaves, workers, and servants, nor his friends and colleagues; nor does he establish an offering for ascetics and brahmins, one leading upwards, of heavenly fruit, resulting in happiness, conducive to heaven. Because his wealth is not being used properly, kings take it away, or thieves take it away, or fire burns it, or water carries it away, or unloved heirs take it. Such being the case, great king, that wealth, not being used properly, goes to waste, not to utilization.

"Suppose, great king, in a place uninhabited by human beings, there was a lotus pond with clear, cool, sweet, clean water, with good fords, <203> delightful; but no people would take that water, or drink it, or bathe in it, or use it for any purpose. In such a case, great king, that water, not being used properly,

would go to waste, not to utilization. So too, great king, when an inferior man gains abundant wealth ... that wealth, not being used properly, goes to waste, not to utilization.

"But, great king, when a superior man gains abundant wealth, he makes himself happy and pleased, and he makes his mother and father happy and pleased, and his wife and children, and his slaves, workers, and servants, and his friends and colleagues; <204> and he establishes an offering for ascetics and brahmins, one leading upwards, of heavenly fruit, resulting in happiness, conducive to heaven. Because his wealth is being used properly, [91] kings do not take it away, thieves do not take it away, fire does not burn it, water does not carry it away, and unloved heirs do not take it. Such being the case, great king, that wealth, being used properly, goes to utilization, not to waste.

"Suppose, great king, not far from a village or a town, there was a lotus pond with clear, cool, sweet, clean water, with good fords, delightful; and people would take that water, and drink it, and bathe in it, and use it for their purposes. In such a case, great king, that water, being used properly, would go to utilization, not to waste. So too, great king, when a superior man gains abundant wealth ... <205> that wealth, being used properly, goes to utilization, not to waste.

- 414 "As cool water in a desolate place  
Evaporates without being drunk,  
So when a scoundrel acquires wealth  
He neither enjoys himself nor gives.
- 415 "But when the wise man obtains wealth  
He enjoys himself and does his duty.  
Having supported his kin, free from blame,  
That noble man goes to a heavenly state."

20 (10) *Childless* (2)

(As above, except that the amount is a hundred lakhs of gold, a lakh being equal to a hundred thousand:) [92] <206>

"So it is, great king! So it is, great king! Once in the past, great king, that financier householder provided a paccekabuddha named Tagarasikhi with almsfood. Having said, 'Give alms to

the ascetic,' he rose from his seat and departed. But after giving, he later felt regret and thought: 'It would have been better if the slaves or workers had eaten that almsfood!' Moreover, he murdered his brother's only son for the sake of his fortune.<sup>247</sup>

"Because that financier householder provided the paccekabuddha Tagarasikhī with almsfood, <207> as a result of that kamma he was reborn seven times in a good destination, in the heavenly world. As a residual result of that same kamma, he obtained the position of financier seven times in this same city of Sāvattthī. But because that financier householder later felt regret about giving, as a result of that kamma his mind did not incline to the enjoyment of excellent food, excellent clothing, and excellent vehicles, nor to the enjoyment of excellent items among the five cords of sensual pleasure. And because that financier householder murdered his brother's only son for the sake of his fortune, as a result of that kamma he was tormented in hell for many years, for many hundreds of years, for many thousands of years, for many hundreds of thousands of years. As a residual result of that same kamma, he has furnished the royal treasury with this seventh heirless fortune.

"The old merit of that financier householder has been utterly exhausted, <208> and he had not accumulated any fresh merit. But today, great king, the financier householder is being roasted in the Great Roruva Hell."<sup>248</sup>

"So, venerable sir, that financier householder has been reborn in the Great Roruva Hell?" [93]

"Yes, great king, that financier householder has been reborn in the Great Roruva Hell.

416 "Grain, wealth, silver, gold,  
Or whatever other possessions there are,  
Slaves, workers, messengers,  
And those who live as one's dependants:  
Without taking anything one must go,  
Everything must be left behind.

417 "But what one has done by body,  
Or by speech or mind:  
This is what is truly one's own,  
This one takes when one goes;

This is what follows one along  
Like a shadow that never departs.

418 "Therefore one should do what is good <209>  
As a collection for the future life.  
Merits are the support for living beings  
[When they arise] in the other world."

### III. THE THIRD SUBCHAPTER (THE KOSALAN PENTAD)

#### 21 (1) *Persons*

At Sāvattthī. Then King Pasenadi of Kosala approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, and sat down to one side. The Blessed One then said to him: <210>

"Great king, there are these four kinds of persons found existing in the world. What four? The one heading from darkness to darkness, the one heading from darkness to light, the one heading from light to darkness, the one heading from light to light.<sup>249</sup>

"And how, great king, is a person one heading from darkness to darkness? Here some person has been reborn in a low family—a family of caṇḍālas, bamboo workers, hunters, cartwrights, or flower-scavengers—a poor family in which there is little food and drink and which subsists with difficulty, [94] one where food and clothing are obtained with difficulty; and he is ugly, unsightly, deformed, chronically ill—purblind or cripple-handed or lame or paralyzed.<sup>250</sup> He is not one who gains food, drink, clothing, and vehicles; garlands, scents, and unguents; bedding, housing, and lighting. He engages in misconduct of body, speech, and mind. Having done so, with the breakup of the body, <211> after death, he is reborn in the plane of misery, in a bad destination, in the nether world, in hell.

"Suppose, great king, a man would go from darkness to darkness, or from gloom to gloom, or from stain to stain: this person, I say, is exactly similar. It is in this way, great king, that a person is one heading from darkness to darkness.

"And how, great king, is a person one heading from darkness to light? Here some person has been reborn in a low family ... one where food and clothing are obtained with difficulty; and he

is ugly ... or paralyzed. He is not one who gains food ... and lighting. He engages in good conduct of body, speech, and mind. Having done so, with the breakup of the body, after death, he is reborn in a good destination, in a heavenly world.

“Suppose, great king, a man would climb from the ground on to a palanquin, or from a palanquin on to horseback, <212> or from horseback to an elephant mount, or from an elephant mount to a mansion: this person, I say, is exactly similar. It is in this way, great king, that a person is one heading from darkness to light.

“And how, great king, is a person one heading from light to darkness? Here some person has been reborn in a high family—an affluent khattiya family, an affluent brahmin family, or an affluent householder family—one which is rich, with great wealth and property, [95] with abundant gold and silver, abundant treasures and commodities, abundant wealth and grain; and he is handsome, attractive, graceful, possessing supreme beauty of complexion. He is one who gains food, drink, clothing, and vehicles; garlands, scents, and unguents; bedding, housing, and lighting. He engages in misconduct of body, speech, and mind. Having done so, with the breakup of the body, after death, he is reborn in the plane of misery, in a bad destination, in the nether world, in hell.

“Suppose, great king, a man would descend from a mansion to an elephant mount, or from an elephant mount to horseback, or from horseback to a palanquin, or from a palanquin to the ground, or from the ground to underground darkness: this person, I say, is exactly similar. It is in this way, great king, that a person is one heading from light to darkness. <213>

“And how, great king, is a person one heading from light to light? Here some person has been reborn in a high family ... with abundant wealth and grain; and he is handsome, attractive, graceful, possessing supreme beauty of complexion. He is one who gains food ... and lighting. He engages in good conduct of body, speech, and mind. Having done so, with the breakup of the body, after death, he is reborn in a good destination, in a heavenly world.

“Suppose, great king, a man would cross over from palanquin to palanquin, or from horseback to horseback, or from elephant mount to elephant mount, or from mansion to mansion: this

person, I say, is exactly similar. It is in this way, great king, that a person is one heading from light to light. [96]

“These, great king, are the four kinds of persons found existing in the world.

(i)

- 419 “The person, O king, who is poor,  
Lacking in faith, stingy,  
Niggardly, with bad intentions,  
Wrong in views, disrespectful, <214>  
420 Who abuses and reviles ascetics,  
Brahmins, and other mendicants;  
A nihilist, a scoffer, who hinders  
Another giving food to beggars:  
421 When such a person dies, O king,  
He goes, lord of the people,  
To the terrible hell,  
Heading from darkness to darkness.

(ii)

- 422 “The person, O king, who is poor,  
Endowed with faith, generous,  
One who gives, with best intentions,  
A person with unscattered mind  
423 Who rises up and venerates ascetics,  
Brahmins, and other mendicants;  
One who trains in righteous conduct,  
Who hinders none giving food to beggars:  
424 When such a person dies, O king, <215>  
He goes, lord of the people,  
To the triple heaven,  
Heading from darkness to light.

(iii)

- 425 “The person, O king, who is rich,  
Lacking in faith, stingy,  
Niggardly, with bad intentions,  
Wrong in views, disrespectful,  
426 Who abuses and reviles ascetics,  
Brahmins, and other mendicants;

A nihilist, a scoffer, who hinders  
 Another giving food to beggars:  
 427 When such a person dies, O king,  
 He goes, lord of the people,  
 To the terrible hell,  
 Heading from light to darkness.

(iv)

428 "The person, O king, who is rich,  
 Endowed with faith, generous,  
 One who gives, with best intentions, <216>  
 A person with unscattered mind  
 429 Who rises up and venerates ascetics,  
 Brahmins, and other mendicants;  
 One who trains in righteous conduct,  
 Who hinders none giving food to beggars:  
 430 When such a person dies, O king,  
 He goes, lord of the people,  
 To the triple heaven,  
 Heading from light to light."

22 (2) *Grandmother*

At Sāvattḥi. Then, in the middle of the day, King Pasenadi of Kosala approached the Blessed One.... The Blessed One said to him as he was sitting to one side: [97] "Where are you coming from, great king, in the middle of the day?" <217>

"Venerable sir, my grandmother has died. She was old, aged, burdened with years, advanced in life, come to the last stage, 120 years from birth. Venerable sir, my grandmother was dear and beloved to me. If, venerable sir, by means of the elephant-gem I could have redeemed her from death, I would have given away even the elephant-gem so that she would not have died.<sup>251</sup> If by means of the horse-gem I could have redeemed her from death ... If by a prize village I could have redeemed her from death ... If by means of the country I could have redeemed her from death, I would have given away even the country so that she would not have died."

"All beings, great king, are subject to death, terminate in death, and cannot escape death."

"It is wonderful, venerable sir! It is amazing, venerable sir! How well this has been stated by the Blessed One: 'All beings, great king, are subject to death, terminate in death, and cannot escape death.'"

"So it is, great king! So it is, great king! All beings, great king, are subject to death, terminate in death, and cannot escape death. <218> Just as all the potter's vessels, whether unbaked or baked, are subject to a breakup, terminate in their breakup, and cannot escape their breakup, so all beings are subject to death, terminate in death, and cannot escape death.

431 "All beings will die,  
 For life ends in death.  
 They will fare according to their deeds,  
 Reaping the fruits of their merit and evil:  
 The doers of evil go to hell,  
 The doers of merit to a happy realm.

432 "Therefore one should do what is good  
 As a collection for the future life.  
 Merits are the support for living beings  
 [When they arise] in the other world." [98]

23 (3) *World*

At Sāvattḥi. Sitting to one side, King Pasenadi of Kosala said to the Blessed One: "Venerable sir, how many things are there in the world which, when they arise, arise for one's harm, suffering, and discomfort?"<sup>252</sup> <219>

"There are, great king, three things in the world which, when they arise, arise for one's harm, suffering, and discomfort. What are the three? Greed, hatred, and delusion. These are the three things in the world which, when they arise, arise for one's harm, suffering, and discomfort.

433 "Greed, hatred, and delusion,  
 Arisen from within oneself,  
 Injure the person of evil mind  
 As its own fruit destroys the reed."

24 (4) *Archery*

At Sāvattḥi. Sitting to one side, King Pasenadi of Kosala said to the Blessed One:

"Venerable sir, where should a gift be given?"<sup>253</sup>

"Wherever one's mind has confidence, great king."<sup>254</sup>

"But, venerable sir, where does what is given become of great fruit?" <220>

"This is one question, great king, 'Where should a gift be given?' and this another, 'Where does what is given become of great fruit?' What is given to one who is virtuous, great king, is of great fruit, not so what is given to an immoral person. Now then, great king, I will question you about this same point. Answer as you see fit. What do you think, great king? Suppose you are at war and a battle is about to take place. Then a khattiya youth would arrive, one who is untrained, unskilful, unpractised, [99] inexperienced, timid, petrified, frightened, quick to flee. Would you employ that man, and would you have any use for such a man?"

"Surely not, venerable sir." <221>

"Then a brahmin youth would arrive ... a vessa youth ... a sudda youth ... who is untrained ... quick to flee. Would you employ that man, and would you have any use for such a man?"

"Surely not, venerable sir."

"What do you think, great king? Suppose you are at war and a battle is about to take place. Then a khattiya youth would arrive, one who is trained, skilful, practised, experienced, brave, courageous, bold, ready to stand his place. Would you employ that man, and would you have any use for such a man?"

"Surely I would, venerable sir."

"Then a brahmin youth would arrive ... a vessa youth ... a sudda youth ... who is trained ... ready to stand his place. Would you employ that man, and would you have any use for such a man?" <222>

"Surely I would, venerable sir."

"So too, great king, when a person has gone forth from the household life into homelessness, no matter from what clan, if he has abandoned five factors and possesses five factors, then what is given to him is of great fruit. What five factors have been abandoned? Sensual desire has been abandoned; ill will

has been abandoned; sloth and torpor have been abandoned; restlessness and remorse have been abandoned; doubt has been abandoned. What five factors does he possess? He possesses the aggregate of virtue of one beyond training, the aggregate of concentration of one beyond training, the aggregate of wisdom of one beyond training, [100] the aggregate of liberation of one beyond training, the aggregate of the knowledge and vision of liberation of one beyond training. He possesses these five factors. Thus what is given to one who has abandoned five factors and who possesses five factors is of great fruit.<sup>255</sup> <223>

- 434 "As a king intent on waging war  
Would employ a youth skilled with the bow,  
One endowed with strength and vigour,  
But not the coward on account of his birth—
- 435 So even though he be of low birth,  
One should honour the person of noble conduct,  
The sagely man in whom are established  
The virtues of patience and gentleness.<sup>256</sup>
- 436 "One should build delightful hermitages  
And invite the learned to dwell in them;  
One should build water tanks in the forest  
And causeways over rough terrain.
- 437 "With a confident heart one should give  
To those of upright character:  
Give food and drink and things to eat,  
Clothing to wear and beds and seats.
- 438 "For as the rain-cloud, thundering, <224>  
Wreathed in lightning, with a hundred crests,  
Pours down its rain upon the earth,  
Flooding both the plain and valley—
- 439 So the wise man, faithful, learned,  
Having had a meal prepared,  
Satisfies with food and drink  
The mendicants who live on alms.  
Rejoicing, he distributes gifts,  
And proclaims, 'Give, give.'

440 "For that is his thundering  
Like the sky when it rains.  
That shower of merit, so vast,  
Will pour down on the giver."

25 (5) *The Simile of the Mountain*

At Sāvatti. Then, in the middle of the day, King Pasenadi of Kosala approached the Blessed One.... <225> The Blessed One said to him as he was sitting to one side: "Now where are you coming from, great king, in the middle of the day?"

"Just now, venerable sir, I have been engaged in those affairs of kingship typical for head-anointed khattiya kings, who are intoxicated with the intoxication of sovereignty, who are obsessed by greed for sensual pleasures, who have attained stable control in their country, and who rule having conquered a great sphere of territory on earth."<sup>257</sup>

"What do you think, great king? [101] Here, a man would come to you from the east, one who is trustworthy and reliable; having approached, he would tell you: 'For sure, great king, you should know this: I am coming from the east, and there I saw a great mountain high as the clouds coming this way, crushing all living beings. Do whatever you think should be done, great king.' Then a second man would come to you from the west ... Then a third man would come to you from the north ... <226> ... Then a fourth man would come to you from the south, one who is trustworthy and reliable; having approached, he would tell you: 'For sure, great king, you should know this: I am coming from the south, and there I saw a great mountain high as the clouds coming this way, crushing all living beings. Do whatever you think should be done, great king.' If, great king, such a great peril should arise, such a terrible destruction of human life, the human state being so difficult to obtain, what should be done?"

"If, venerable sir, such a great peril should arise, such a terrible destruction of human life, the human state being so difficult to obtain, what else should be done but to live by the Dhamma, to live righteously, and to do wholesome and meritorious deeds?"<sup>258</sup>

"I inform you, great king, I announce to you, great king: aging and death are rolling in on you. When aging and death are rolling in on you, great king, what should be done?"

"As aging and death are rolling in on me, venerable sir, what else should be done but to live by the Dhamma, to live righteously, and to do wholesome and meritorious deeds? <227>

"There are, venerable sir, elephant battles [fought by] head-anointed khattiya kings, who are intoxicated with the intoxication of sovereignty, who are obsessed by greed for sensual pleasures, who have attained stable control in their country, and who rule having conquered a great sphere of territory on earth; but there is no place for those elephant battles, no scope for them, when aging and death are rolling in.<sup>259</sup> There are, venerable sir, cavalry battles [fought by] head-anointed khattiya kings ... There are chariot battles ... infantry battles ... [102] but there is no place for those infantry battles, no scope for them, when aging and death are rolling in. In this royal court, venerable sir, there are counsellors who, when the enemies arrive, are capable of dividing them by subterfuge; but there is no place for those battles of subterfuge, no scope for them, when aging and death are rolling in. In this royal court, venerable sir, there exists abundant bullion and gold stored in vaults and depositories, and with such wealth we are capable of mollifying the enemies when they come; but there is no place for those battles of wealth, no scope for them, when aging and death are rolling in. As aging and death are rolling in on me, venerable sir, what else should be done but to live by the Dhamma, to live righteously, and to do wholesome and meritorious deeds?" <228>

"So it is, great king! So it is, great king! As aging and death are rolling in on you, what else should be done but to live by the Dhamma, to live righteously, and to do wholesome and meritorious deeds?"

This is what the Blessed One said. Having said this, the Fortunate One, the Teacher, further said this:

- 441 "Just as mountains of solid rock,  
Massive, reaching to the sky,  
Might draw together from all sides,  
Crushing all in the four quarters—  
So aging and death come  
Rolling over living beings—  
442 Khattiyas, brahmins, vessas, suddas,  
Caṇḍālas and scavengers:

They spare none along the way  
But come crushing everything.

443 "There's no ground there for elephant troops,  
For chariot troops and infantry.  
One can't defeat them by subterfuge,  
Or buy them off by means of wealth. <229>

444 "Therefore a person of wisdom here,  
Out of regard for his own good,  
Steadfast, should settle faith  
In the Buddha, Dhamma, and Saṅgha.

445 "When one conducts oneself by Dhamma  
With body, speech, and mind,  
They praise one here in the present life,  
And after death one rejoices in heaven." <230>

[103] <231>

Chapter IV

## 4 *Mārasamyutta*

### Connected Discourses with Māra

#### I. THE FIRST SUBCHAPTER (LIFE SPAN)

##### 1 (1) *Austere Practice*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Uruvelā on the bank of the river Nerañjarā at the foot of the Goatherd's Banyan Tree just after he had become fully enlightened.<sup>260</sup> Then, while the Blessed One was alone in seclusion, a reflection arose in his mind thus: "I am indeed freed from that gruelling asceticism! It is good indeed that I am freed from that useless gruelling asceticism! It is good that, steady and mindful, I have attained enlightenment!"<sup>261</sup>

Then Māra the Evil One, having known with his own mind the reflection in the Blessed One's mind, approached the Blessed One and addressed him in verse:

446 "Having deviated from the austere practice  
By which men purify themselves,  
Being impure, you think you're pure: <232>  
You have missed the path to purity."<sup>262</sup>

Then the Blessed One, having understood, "This is Māra the Evil One," replied to him in verses:

447 "Having known as useless any austerity  
Aimed at the immortal state,<sup>263</sup>  
That all such penances are futile  
Like oars and rudder on dry land,<sup>264</sup>

448 By developing the path to enlightenment—  
Virtue, concentration, and wisdom—  
I have attained supreme purity:  
You're defeated, End-maker!"<sup>265</sup>

Then Māra the Evil One, realizing, "The Blessed One knows me, the Fortunate One knows me," sad and disappointed, disappeared right there.

### 2 (2) *The King Elephant*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Uruvelā on the bank of the river Nerañjarā at the foot of the Goatherd's Banyan Tree just after he had become fully enlightened. [104] <233> Now on that occasion the Blessed One was sitting out in the open air in the thick darkness of the night while it was drizzling.<sup>266</sup>

Then Māra the Evil One, wishing to arouse fear, trepidation, and terror in the Blessed One, manifested himself in the form of a giant king elephant and approached the Blessed One. His head was like a huge block of steatite; his tusks were like pure silver; his trunk was like a huge plough pole.

Then the Blessed One, having understood, "This is Māra the Evil One," addressed him in verse:

449 "You've wandered through the long course  
Creating beautiful and hideous shapes.  
Enough, Evil One, with that trick of yours:  
You're defeated, End-maker!"<sup>267</sup>

Then Māra the Evil One, realizing, "The Blessed One knows me, the Fortunate One knows me," sad and disappointed, disappeared right there.

### 3 (3) *Beautiful*

<234> While dwelling at Uruvelā. Now on that occasion the Blessed One was sitting out in the open air in the thick darkness of the night while it was drizzling. Then Māra the Evil One, wishing to arouse fear, trepidation, and terror in the Blessed

One, approached the Blessed One and, not far from him, displayed diverse lustrous shapes, both beautiful and hideous. Then the Blessed One, having understood, "This is Māra the Evil One," addressed him in verses:

450 "You've wandered on through the long course  
Creating beautiful and hideous shapes.  
Enough, Evil One, with that trick of yours:  
You're defeated, End-maker!

451 "Those who are well restrained  
In body, speech, and mind,  
Do not come under Māra's control  
Nor become Māra's henchmen."<sup>268</sup>

Then Māra the Evil One ... disappeared right there. [105]

### 4 (4) *Māra's Snare (1)*

<235> Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Bārāṇasī in the Deer Park at Isipatana. There the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Bhikkhus!"<sup>269</sup>

"Venerable sir!" those bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

"Bhikkhus, by careful attention, by careful right striving, I have arrived at unsurpassed liberation, I have realized unsurpassed liberation. You too, bhikkhus, by careful attention, by careful right striving, must arrive at unsurpassed liberation, must realize unsurpassed liberation."<sup>270</sup>

Then Māra the Evil One approached the Blessed One and addressed him in verse:<sup>271</sup>

452 "You are bound by Māra's snare  
Both celestial and human;  
You are bound by Māra's bondage:  
You won't escape me, ascetic!"<sup>272</sup>

[The Blessed One:]

453 "I am freed from Māra's snare  
Both celestial and human;

I am freed from Māra's bondage: <236>  
You're defeated, End-maker!"

Then Māra the Evil One ... disappeared right there.

5 (5) *Māra's Snare* (2)

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Bārāṇasi in the Deer Park at Isipatana. There the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Bhikkhus!"

"Venerable sir!" those bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

"Bhikkhus, I am freed from all snares, both celestial and human. You too, bhikkhus, are freed from all snares, both celestial and human. Wander forth, O bhikkhus, for the welfare of the multitude, for the happiness of the multitude, out of compassion for the world, for the good, welfare, and happiness of devas and humans. Let not two go the same way. Teach, O bhikkhus, the Dhamma that is good in the beginning, good in the middle, good in the end, with the right meaning and phrasing. Reveal the perfectly complete and purified holy life. There are beings with little dust in their eyes who are falling away because they do not hear the Dhamma. [106] There will be those who will understand the Dhamma. I too, bhikkhus, will go to Senānigama in Uruvelā in order to teach the Dhamma."<sup>273</sup> <237>

Then Māra the Evil One approached the Blessed One and addressed him in verse:<sup>274</sup>

454 "You are bound by all the snares  
Both celestial and human;  
You are bound by the great bondage:  
You won't escape me, ascetic!"

[The Blessed One:]

455 "I am freed from all the snares  
Both celestial and human;  
I am freed from the great bondage:  
You're defeated, End-maker!"

6 (6) *Serpent*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary. Now on that occasion the Blessed One was sitting out in the open in the thick darkness of the night while it was drizzling. Then Māra the Evil One ... manifested himself in the form of a giant king serpent and approached the Blessed One. <238> Its body was like a huge boat made from a single tree trunk; its hood, like a large brewer's sieve; its eyes, like the large bronze dishes of Kosala; its tongue darting out from its mouth, like flashes of lightning emitted when the sky thunders; the sound of its breathing in and out, like the sound of a smith's bellows filling with air.

Then the Blessed One, having understood, "This is Māra the Evil One," addressed Māra the Evil One in verses:

456 "He who resorts to empty huts for lodging—  
He is the sage, self-controlled.  
He should live there, having relinquished all:  
That is proper for one like him."<sup>275</sup>

457 "Though many creatures crawl about,  
Many terrors, flies, serpents, [107] <239>  
The great sage gone to his empty hut  
Stirs not a hair because of them.

458 "Though the sky might split, the earth quake,  
And all creatures be stricken with terror,  
Though men brandish a dart at their breast,  
The enlightened take no shelter in acquisitions."<sup>276</sup>

Then Māra the Evil One ... disappeared right there.

7 (7) *Sleep*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary. Then, when the night was fading, the Blessed One, having spent much of the night walking back and forth in the open, washed his feet, entered his

dwelling, and lay down on his right side in the lion's posture, with one leg overlapping the other, mindful and clearly comprehending, having attended to the idea of rising.

Then Māra the Evil One approached the Blessed One and addressed him in verse: <240>

459 "What, you sleep? Why do you sleep?  
What's this, you sleep like a wretch?<sup>277</sup>  
Thinking 'The hut's empty' you sleep:  
What's this, you sleep when the sun has risen?"

[The Blessed One:]

460 "Within him craving no longer lurks,  
Entangling and binding, to lead him anywhere;  
With the destruction of all acquisitions  
The Awakened One sleeps:  
Why should this concern you, Māra?"<sup>278</sup>

Then Māra the Evil One ... disappeared right there.

#### 8 (8) *He Delights*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvattī in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park.

Then Māra the Evil One approached the Blessed One and recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:

461 "One who has sons delights in sons,  
One with cattle delights in cattle. [108] <241>  
Acquisitions truly are a man's delight;  
Without acquisitions one does not delight."

[The Blessed One:]

462 "One who has sons sorrows over sons,  
One with cattle sorrows over cattle.  
Acquisitions truly are a man's sorrow;  
Without acquisitions one does not sorrow."

Then Māra the Evil One ... disappeared right there.

#### 9 (9) *Life Span (1)*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary. There the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Bhikkhus!"

"Venerable sir!" those bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

"Bhikkhus, this life span of human beings is short. One has to go on to the future life. One should do what is wholesome and lead the holy life; for one who has taken birth there is no avoiding death. One who lives long, bhikkhus, lives a hundred years or a little longer."

Then Māra the Evil One approached the Blessed One and addressed him in verse:

463 "Long is the life span of human beings,  
The good man should not disdain it.  
One should live like a milk-sucking baby:  
Death has not made its arrival."<sup>279</sup> <242>

[The Blessed One:]

464 "Short is the life span of human beings,  
The good man should disdain it.  
One should live like one with head aflame:  
There is no avoiding Death's arrival."

Then Māra the Evil One ... disappeared right there.

#### 10 (10) *Life Span (2)*

(*Opening as in preceding sutta:*)

Then Māra the Evil One approached the Blessed One and addressed him in verse: [109]

465 "The days and nights do not fly by,  
Life does not come to a stop.  
The life span of mortals rolls along  
Like the chariot's felly round the hub."<sup>280</sup> <243>

[The Blessed One:]

466 "The days and nights go flying by,  
Life comes to a stop.  
The life span of mortals is depleted  
Like the water in rivulets."

Then Māra the Evil One ... disappeared right there.

II. THE SECOND SUBCHAPTER  
(RULERSHIP)

11 (1) *The Boulder*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha on Mount Vulture Peak. Now on that occasion the Blessed One was sitting out in the open in the thick darkness of the night while it was drizzling. <244> Then Māra the Evil One, wishing to arouse fear, trepidation, and terror in the Blessed One, shattered a number of huge boulders not far away from him.

Then the Blessed One, having understood, "This is Māra the Evil One," addressed Māra the Evil One in verse:

467 "Even if you make this Vulture Peak  
Quake all over in its entirety,  
The enlightened are not perturbed,  
For they are fully liberated."

Then Māra the Evil One, realizing, "The Blessed One knows me, the Fortunate One knows me," sad and disappointed, disappeared right there.

12 (2) *Lion*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvattthi in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. Now on that occasion the Blessed One was teaching the Dhamma while surrounded by a large assembly. [110]

Then it occurred to Māra the Evil One: "This ascetic Gotama is teaching the Dhamma while surrounded by a large assembly. <245> Let me approach the ascetic Gotama in order to confound them."<sup>281</sup>

Then Māra the Evil One approached the Blessed One and addressed him in verse:

468 "Why now do you roar like a lion,  
Confident in the assembly?  
For there is one who's a match for you,  
So why think yourself the victor?"

[The Blessed One:]

469 "The great heroes roar their lion's roar  
Confident in the assemblies—  
The Tathāgatas endowed with the powers  
Have crossed over attachment to the world."<sup>282</sup>

Then Māra the Evil One ... disappeared right there.

13 (3) *The Splinter*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha in the Maddakucchi Deer Park. Now on that occasion the Blessed One's foot had been cut by a stone splinter. Severe pains assailed the Blessed One—bodily feelings that were painful, racking, <246> sharp, piercing, harrowing, disagreeable. But the Blessed One endured them, mindful and clearly comprehending, without becoming distressed. Then the Blessed One had his outer robe folded in four, and he lay down on his right side in the lion posture with one leg overlapping the other, mindful and clearly comprehending.<sup>283</sup>

Then Māra the Evil One approached the Blessed One and addressed him in verse:

470 "Do you lie down in a daze or drunk on poetry?  
Don't you have sufficient goals to meet?  
Alone in a secluded lodging  
Why do you sleep with a drowsy face?"<sup>284</sup>

[The Blessed One:]

471 "I do not lie in a daze or drunk on poetry;  
Having reached the goal, I am rid of sorrow.  
Alone in a secluded lodging  
I lie down full of compassion for all beings.

472 "Even those with a dart stuck in the breast <247>  
Piercing their heart moment by moment—  
Even these here, stricken, get to sleep; [111]  
So why should I not get to sleep  
When my dart has been drawn out?<sup>285</sup>

473 "I do not lie awake in dread,  
Nor am I afraid to sleep.  
The nights and days do not afflict me,  
I see for myself no decline in the world.  
Therefore I can sleep in peace,  
Full of compassion for all beings."

Then Māra the Evil One ... disappeared right there.

#### 14 (4) *Suitable*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling among the Kosalans at the brahmin village of Ekasālā. Now on that occasion the Blessed One was teaching the Dhamma surrounded by a large assembly of laypeople.

Then it occurred to Māra the Evil One: "This ascetic Gotama is teaching the Dhamma while surrounded by a large assembly of laypeople. <248> Let me approach the ascetic Gotama in order to confound them."

Then Māra the Evil One approached the Blessed One and addressed him in verse:

474 "This is not suitable for you,  
That you instruct others.  
When so engaged don't get caught  
In attraction and repulsion."<sup>286</sup>

[The Blessed One:]

475 "Compassionate for their welfare,  
The Buddha instructs others.  
The Tathāgata is fully released  
From attraction and repulsion."

Then Māra the Evil One ... disappeared right there.

#### 15 (5) *Mental*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvattthi in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. Then Māra the Evil One approached the Blessed One and addressed him in verse:<sup>287</sup>

476 "There is a snare moving in the sky, <249>  
Something mental which moves about<sup>288</sup>  
By means of which I'll catch you yet:  
You won't escape me, ascetic!"

[The Blessed One:]

477 "Forms, sounds, tastes, odours,  
And delightful tactile objects—  
Desire for these has vanished in me:  
You're defeated, End-maker!"

Then Māra the Evil One ... disappeared right there. [112]

#### 16 (6) *Almsbowls*

At Sāvattthi. Now on that occasion the Blessed One was instructing, exhorting, inspiring, and gladdening the bhikkhus with a Dhamma talk concerning the five aggregates subject to clinging. And those bhikkhus were listening to the Dhamma with eager ears, attending to it as a matter of vital concern, applying their whole minds to it.

Then it occurred to Māra the Evil One: "This ascetic Gotama is instructing, exhorting, inspiring, and gladdening the bhikkhus ... <250> who are applying their whole minds to it. Let me approach the ascetic Gotama in order to confound them."

Now on that occasion a number of almsbowls had been put out in the open. Then Māra the Evil One manifested himself in the form of an ox and approached those almsbowls. Then one bhikkhu said to another: "Bhikkhu, bhikkhu! That ox may break the almsbowls." When this was said, the Blessed One said to that bhikkhu: "That is not an ox, bhikkhu. That is Māra the Evil One, who has come here in order to confound you."

Then the Blessed One, having understood, "This is Māra the Evil One," addressed Māra the Evil One in verses:

- 478 "Form, feeling, and perception,  
Consciousness, and formations—  
'I am not this, this isn't mine,'  
Thus one is detached from it."<sup>289</sup>
- 479 "Though they seek him everywhere,  
Māra and his army do not find him:  
The one thus detached, secure,  
Who has gone beyond all fetters."<sup>290</sup> <251>

Then Māra the Evil One ... disappeared right there.

#### 17 (7) *Six Bases for Contact*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Vesāli in the Great Wood in the Hall with the Peaked Roof. [113] Now on that occasion the Blessed One was instructing, exhorting, inspiring, and gladdening the bhikkhus with a Dhamma talk concerning the six bases for contact. And those bhikkhus were listening to the Dhamma with eager ears, attending to it as a matter of vital concern, applying their whole minds to it.

Then it occurred to Māra the Evil One: "This ascetic Gotama is instructing, exhorting, inspiring, and gladdening the bhikkhus ... who are applying their whole minds to it. Let me approach the ascetic Gotama in order to confound them."

Then Māra the Evil One approached the Blessed One and, not far from him, made a loud noise, frightful and terrifying, as though the earth were splitting open.<sup>291</sup> Then one bhikkhu said to another: "Bhikkhu, bhikkhu! It seems as though the earth is splitting open." When this was said, the Blessed One said to that bhikkhu: <252> "The earth is not splitting open, bhikkhu. That is Māra the Evil One, who has come here in order to confound you."

Then the Blessed One, having understood, "This is Māra the Evil One," addressed Māra the Evil One in verses:

- 480 "Forms, sounds, tastes, odours,  
Tactiles, and all mental objects:  
This is the terrible bait of the world  
With which the world is infatuated.
- 481 "But when he has transcended this,  
The mindful disciple of the Buddha  
Shines radiantly like the sun,  
Having surmounted Māra's realm."<sup>292</sup>

Then Māra the Evil One ... disappeared right there.

#### 18 (8) *Alms*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling among the Magadhans at the brahmin village of Pañcasālā. [114] Now on that occasion the gift-festival of the young people was being held at the brahmin village of Pañcasālā.<sup>293</sup> <253> Then, in the morning, the Blessed One dressed and, taking bowl and robe, entered Pañcasālā for alms. Now on that occasion Māra the Evil One had taken possession of the brahmin householders of Pañcasālā, [inciting in them the thought,] "Don't let the ascetic Gotama get alms."

Then the Blessed One left Pañcasālā with his bowl just as cleanly washed as it was when he entered it for alms. Then Māra the Evil One approached the Blessed One and said to him: "Maybe you got alms, ascetic?"

"Was it you, Evil One, who saw to it that I didn't get alms?"

"Then, venerable sir, let the Blessed One enter Pañcasālā a second time for alms. I will see to it that the Blessed One gets alms."<sup>294</sup>

[The Blessed One:]

- 482 "You have produced demerit, Māra,  
Having assailed the Tathāgata.  
Do you really think, O Evil One, <254>  
'My evil does not ripen'?
- 483 "Happily indeed we live,  
We who own nothing at all.

We shall dwell feeding on rapture  
Like the devas of Streaming Radiance."<sup>295</sup>

Then Māra the Evil One ... disappeared right there.

19 (9) *The Farmer*

At Sāvattthi. Now on that occasion the Blessed One was instructing, exhorting, inspiring, and gladdening the bhikkhus with a Dhamma talk concerning Nibbāna. And those bhikkhus were listening to the Dhamma with eager ears, attending to it as a matter of vital concern, applying their whole minds to it. [115]

Then it occurred to Māra the Evil One: "This ascetic Gotama is instructing, exhorting, inspiring, and gladdening the bhikkhus ... who are applying their whole minds to it. Let me approach the ascetic Gotama in order to confound them." Then Māra the Evil One manifested himself in the form of a farmer, carrying a large plough on his shoulder, <255> holding a long goad stick, his hair dishevelled, wearing hempen garments, his feet smeared with mud. He approached the Blessed One and said to him: "Maybe you've seen oxen, ascetic?"

"What are oxen to you, Evil One?"

"The eye is mine, ascetic, forms are mine, eye-contact and its base of consciousness are mine.<sup>296</sup> Where can you go, ascetic, to escape from me? The ear is mine, ascetic, sounds are mine ... The nose is mine, ascetic, odours are mine ... The tongue is mine, ascetic, tastes are mine ... The body is mine, ascetic, tactile objects are mine ... The mind is mine, ascetic, mental phenomena are mine, mind-contact and its base of consciousness are mine. Where can you go, ascetic, to escape from me?"

"The eye is yours, Evil One, forms are yours, eye-contact and its base of consciousness are yours; but, Evil One, where there is no eye, no forms, no eye-contact <256> and its base of consciousness—there is no place for you there, Evil One.<sup>297</sup> The ear is yours, Evil One, sounds are yours, ear-contact and its base of consciousness are yours; but, Evil One, where there is no ear, no sounds, no ear-contact and its base of consciousness—there is no place for you there, Evil One. The nose is yours, Evil One, odours are yours, nose-contact and its base of consciousness are yours; but, Evil One, where there is no nose, no odours, no nose-

contact and its base of consciousness—there is no place for you there, Evil One. [116] The tongue is yours, Evil One, tastes are yours, tongue-contact and its base of consciousness are yours; but, Evil One, where there is no tongue, no tastes, no tongue-contact and its base of consciousness—there is no place for you there, Evil One. The body is yours, Evil One, tactile objects are yours, body-contact and its base of consciousness are yours; but, Evil One, where there is no body, no tactile objects, no body-contact and its base of consciousness—there is no place for you there, Evil One. The mind is yours, Evil One, mental phenomena are yours, mind-contact and its base of consciousness are yours; but, Evil One, where there is no mind, no mental phenomena, no mind-contact and its base of consciousness—there is no place for you there, Evil One."

[Māra:]

484 "That of which they say 'It's mine,'  
And those who speak in terms of 'mine'—  
If your mind exists among these,  
You won't escape me, ascetic."

[The Blessed One:]

485 "That which they speak of is not mine,  
I'm not one of those who speak [of mine].  
You should know thus, O Evil One:  
Even my path you will not see."

Then Māra the Evil One ... disappeared right there. <257>

20 (10) *Rulership*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling among the Kosalans in a small forest hut in the Himalayan region. Then, when the Blessed One was alone in seclusion, a reflection arose in his mind thus: "Is it possible to exercise rulership righteously: without killing and without instigating others to kill, without confiscating and without instigating others to confiscate, without sorrowing and without causing sorrow?"<sup>298</sup>

Then Māra the Evil One, having known with his own mind the reflection in the Blessed One's mind, approached the Blessed

One and said to him: “Venerable sir, let the Blessed One exercise rulership righteously: without killing and without instigating others to kill, without confiscating and without instigating others to confiscate, without sorrowing and without instigating others to cause sorrow.”

“But what do you see, Evil One, that you speak thus to me?”  
<258>

“Venerable sir, the Blessed One has developed and cultivated the four bases for spiritual power, made them a vehicle, made them a basis, stabilized them, exercised himself in them, and fully perfected them. And, venerable sir, if the Blessed One wishes, he need only resolve that the Himalayas, the king of mountains, should become gold, and it would turn to gold.”<sup>299</sup>  
[117]

[The Blessed One:]

486 “If there were a mountain made of gold,  
Made entirely of solid gold,  
Not double this would suffice for one:  
Having known this, fare evenly.”<sup>300</sup>

487 “How could a person incline to sensual pleasures  
Who has seen the source whence suffering springs?  
Having known acquisition as a tie in the world,  
A person should train for its removal.”<sup>301</sup>

Then Māra the Evil One, realizing, “The Blessed One knows me, the Fortunate One knows me,” sad and disappointed, disappeared right there.

<259>

### III. THE THIRD SUBCHAPTER (THE MĀRA PENTAD)

21 (1) A Number

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling among the Sakyans at Silāvati. Now on that occasion a number of bhikkhus were dwelling not far from the Blessed One—diligent, ardent, and resolute. Then Māra the Evil One manifested himself in the form of a brahmin, with a large mat-

ted topknot, clad in an antelope hide, old, crooked like a roof bracket, wheezing, holding a staff of *udumbara* wood.<sup>302</sup> He approached those bhikkhus <260> and said to them: “You, sirs, have gone forth while young, lads with black hair, endowed with the blessing of youth, in the prime of life, without having dallied with sensual pleasures. Enjoy human sensual pleasures, sirs; do not abandon what is directly visible in order to pursue what takes time.”<sup>303</sup>

“We have not abandoned what is directly visible, brahmin, in order to pursue what takes time. We have abandoned what takes time in order to pursue what is directly visible. For the Blessed One, brahmin, has stated that sensual pleasures are time-consuming, full of suffering, full of despair, and the danger in them is still greater, while this Dhamma is directly visible, immediate, inviting one to come and see, applicable, to be personally experienced by the wise.” [118]

When this was said, Māra the Evil One shook his head, lolled his tongue, knit his brow into three furrows, and departed leaning on his staff.<sup>304</sup>

Then those bhikkhus approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and reported everything in full. <261> [The Blessed One said:] “That was not a brahmin, bhikkhus. That was Māra the Evil One, who had come in order to confound you.”

Then the Blessed One, having understood the meaning of this, on that occasion recited this verse: <262>

488 “How could a person incline to sensual pleasures  
Who has seen the source whence suffering springs?  
Having known acquisition as a tie in the world,  
A person should train for its removal.” [119]

22 (2) *Samiddhi*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling among the Sakyans at Silāvati. Now on that occasion the Venerable Samiddhi was dwelling not far from the Blessed One—diligent, ardent, and resolute.<sup>305</sup> Then, while the Venerable Samiddhi was alone in seclusion, a reflection arose in his mind thus: “It is indeed a gain for me, it is well gained by me, that my teacher is

the Arahant, the Perfectly Enlightened One! It is indeed a gain for me, it is well gained by me, that I have gone forth in this well-expounded Dhamma and Discipline! It is indeed a gain for me, it is well gained by me, that my companions in the holy life are virtuous, of good character!”

Then Māra the Evil One, having known with his own mind the reflection in the mind of the Venerable Samiddhi, approached him and, not far from him, made a loud noise, frightful and terrifying, <263> as though the earth were splitting open.<sup>306</sup>

Then the Venerable Samiddhi approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and reported what had happened. [The Blessed One said:] “That was not the earth splitting open, Samiddhi. That was Māra the Evil One, who had come in order to confound you. Go back, Samiddhi, and dwell diligent, ardent, and resolute.”

“Yes, venerable sir,” the Venerable Samiddhi replied. [120] Then he rose from his seat, paid homage to the Blessed One, and departed, keeping him on the right.

A second time, while the Venerable Samiddhi was alone in seclusion, a reflection arose in his mind ... And a second time Māra the Evil One ... <264> ... made a loud noise, frightful and terrifying, as though the earth were splitting open.

Then the Venerable Samiddhi, having understood, “This is Māra the Evil One,” addressed him in verse:

489 “I have gone forth out of faith  
From the home to the homeless life.  
My mindfulness and wisdom are mature,  
And my mind well concentrated.  
Conjure up whatever forms you wish,  
But you will never make me tremble.”<sup>307</sup>

Then Māra the Evil One, realizing, “The bhikkhu Samiddhi knows me,” sad and disappointed, disappeared right there.

### 23 (3) *Godhika*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary.

Now on that occasion the Venerable Godhika was dwelling on the Black Rock on the Isigili Slope. Then, while the Venerable Godhika was dwelling diligent, ardent, and resolute, <265> he reached temporary liberation of mind, but he fell away from that temporary liberation of mind.<sup>308</sup> A second time, while the Venerable Godhika was dwelling diligent, ardent, and resolute, he reached temporary liberation of mind, but he fell away from that temporary liberation of mind. A third time ... A fourth time ... [121] A fifth time ... A sixth time, while the Venerable Godhika was dwelling diligent, ardent, and resolute, he reached temporary liberation of mind, but he fell away from that temporary liberation of mind. A seventh time, while the Venerable Godhika was dwelling diligent, ardent, and resolute, he reached temporary liberation of mind.

Then it occurred to the Venerable Godhika: “Six times already I have fallen away from temporary liberation of mind. Let me use the knife.”<sup>309</sup> <266>

Then Māra the Evil One, having known with his own mind the reflection in the Venerable Godhika’s mind, approached the Blessed One and addressed him with these verses:<sup>310</sup>

490 “O great hero, great in wisdom,  
Blazing forth with power and glory!  
I worship your feet, One with Vision,  
Who has overcome all enmity and fear.

491 “O great hero who has vanquished death,  
Your disciple is longing for death.  
He intends [to take his own life]:  
Restrain him from this, O luminous one!

492 “How, O Blessed One, can your disciple—  
One delighting in the Teaching,  
A trainee seeking his mind’s ideal—  
Take his own life, O widely famed?”<sup>311</sup>

Now on that occasion the Venerable Godhika had just used the knife.<sup>312</sup> Then the Blessed One, having understood, “This is Māra the Evil One,” addressed him in verse:

493 "Such indeed is how the steadfast act:  
They are not attached to life. <267>  
Having drawn out craving with its root,  
Godhika has attained final Nibbāna."

Then the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Come, bhikkhus, let us go to the Black Rock on the Isigili Slope, where the clansman Godhika has used the knife."

"Yes, venerable sir," those bhikkhus replied. Then the Blessed One, together with a number of bhikkhus, went to the Black Rock on the Isigili Slope. The Blessed One saw in the distance the Venerable Godhika lying on the bed with his shoulder turned.<sup>313</sup> [122]

Now on that occasion a cloud of smoke, a swirl of darkness, was moving to the east, then to the west, to the north, to the south, upwards, downwards, and to the intermediate quarters. The Blessed One then addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Do you see, bhikkhus, that cloud of smoke, that swirl of darkness, moving to the east, then to the west, to the north, to the south, upwards, downwards, and to the intermediate quarters?"

"Yes, venerable sir."

"That, bhikkhus, is Māra the Evil One searching for the consciousness of the clansman Godhika, wondering: 'Where now <268> has the consciousness of the clansman Godhika been established?' However, bhikkhus, with consciousness unestablished, the clansman Godhika has attained final Nibbāna."<sup>314</sup>

Then Māra the Evil One, taking a lute of yellow *vilva*-wood, approached the Blessed One and addressed him in verse:

494 "Above, below, and across,  
In the four quarters and in between,  
I have been searching but do not find  
Where Godhika has gone."

[The Blessed One:]

495 "That steadfast man was resolute,  
A meditator always rejoicing in meditation,  
Applying himself day and night  
Without attachment even to life.

496 "Having conquered the army of Death,  
Not returning to renewed existence,  
Having drawn out craving with its root,  
Godhika has attained final Nibbāna." <269>

497 So much was he stricken with sorrow  
That his lute dropped from his armpit.  
Thereupon that disappointed spirit  
Disappeared right on the spot.<sup>315</sup>

#### 24 (4) *Seven Years of Pursuit*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Uruvelā on the bank of the river Nerañjarā at the foot of the Goatherd's Banyan Tree. Now on that occasion Māra the Evil One had been following the Blessed One for seven years, seeking to gain access to him but without success.<sup>316</sup> Then Māra the Evil One approached the Blessed One and addressed him in verse: [123]

498 "Is it because you are sunk in sorrow  
That you meditate in the woods?  
Because you've lost wealth or pine for it,  
Or committed some crime in the village?  
Why don't you make friends with people? <270>  
Why don't you form any intimate ties?"

[The Blessed One:]

499 "Having dug up entirely the root of sorrow,  
Guiltless, I meditate free from sorrow.  
Having cut off all greedy urge for existence,<sup>317</sup>  
I meditate taintless, O kinsman of the negligent!"

[Māra:]

500 "That of which they say 'It's mine,'  
And those who speak in terms of 'mine'—  
If your mind exists among these,  
You won't escape me, ascetic."

[The Blessed One:]

501 "That which they speak of is not mine,

I'm not one of those who speak [of mine].  
You should know thus, O Evil One:  
Even my path you will not see."

[Māra:]

502 "If you have discovered the path,  
The secure way leading to the Deathless, <271>  
Be off and walk that path alone;  
What's the point of instructing others?"

[The Blessed One:]

503 "Those people going to the far shore  
Ask what lies beyond Death's realm.  
When asked, I explain to them  
The truth without acquisitions."<sup>318</sup>

[Māra:] "Suppose, venerable sir, not far from a village or a town there was a lotus pond in which a crab was living.<sup>319</sup> Then a group of boys and girls would leave the village or town and go to the pond. They would pull the crab out from the water and set it down on high ground. Then, whenever that crab would extend one of its claws, those boys and girls would cut it off, break it, and smash it to bits with sticks and stones. Thus, when all its claws have been cut off, broken, and smashed to bits, that crab would be unable to return to that pond. <272> So too, venerable sir, all those distortions, manoeuvres, and contortions of mine have been cut off, [124] broken, and smashed to bits by the Blessed One. Now, venerable sir, I am unable to approach the Blessed One again seeking to gain access to him."

Then Māra the Evil One, in the presence of the Blessed One, recited these verses of disappointment:<sup>320</sup>

504 "There was a crow that walked around  
A stone that looked like a lump of fat.  
'Let's find something tender here,' [he thought,]  
'Perhaps there's something nice and tasty.'

505 But because he found nothing tasty there,  
The crow departed from that spot.

Just like the crow that attacked the stone,  
We leave Gotama disappointed." <273>

25 (5) *Māra's Daughters*

Then Māra the Evil One, having spoken these verses of disappointment in the presence of the Blessed One, went away from that spot and sat down cross-legged on the ground not far from the Blessed One, silent, dismayed, with his shoulders drooping, downcast, brooding, unable to speak, scratching the ground with a stick.<sup>321</sup>

Then Māra's daughters—Taṇhā, Arati, and Ragā—approached Māra the Evil One and addressed him in verse:<sup>322</sup>

506 "Why are you despondent, father?  
Who's the man for whom you grieve?  
We'll catch him with the snare of lust  
As they catch the forest elephant.  
We'll bind him tightly and bring him back,  
And he'll be under your control."<sup>323</sup>

[Māra:]

507 "The Arahant, the Fortunate One in the world,  
Is not easily drawn by means of lust.  
He has gone beyond Māra's realm:  
Therefore I sorrow so bitterly." <274>

Then Māra's daughters—Taṇhā, Arati, and Ragā—approached the Blessed One and said to him: "We serve at your feet, ascetic." But the Blessed One paid no attention, as he was liberated in the unsurpassed extinction of acquisitions.<sup>324</sup>

Then Māra's daughters—Taṇhā, Arati, and Ragā—went off to the side and took counsel: "Men's tastes are diverse. Suppose we each manifest ourselves in the form of a hundred maidens." [125] Then Māra's three daughters, each manifesting herself in the form of a hundred maidens, approached the Blessed One and said to him: "We serve at your feet, ascetic." But the Blessed One paid no attention, as he was liberated in the unsurpassed extinction of acquisitions.

Then Māra's daughters went off to the side and again took

counsel: "Men's tastes are diverse. Suppose we each manifest ourselves in the form of a hundred women who have never given birth." Then Māra's three daughters, each manifesting herself in the form of a hundred women who have never given birth ... in the form of a hundred women who have given birth once ... <275> ... in the form of a hundred women who have given birth twice ... in the form of a hundred women of middle age ... in the form of a hundred old women, approached the Blessed One and said to him: "We serve at your feet, ascetic." But the Blessed One paid no attention, as he was liberated in the unsurpassed extinction of acquisitions.

Then Māra's daughters—Taṇhā, Arati, and Ragā—went off to the side and said: "What our father told us is true:

508 "The Arahant, the Fortunate One in the world ...  
Therefore I sorrow so bitterly."

"If we had assailed with such tactics any ascetic or brahmin who was not devoid of lust, either his heart would have burst, or he would have vomited hot blood from his mouth, [126] or he would have gone mad or become mentally deranged; or else he would have dried up and withered away and become shrivelled, just as a green reed that has been mowed down would dry up and wither away and become shrivelled."

Then Māra's daughters—Taṇhā, Arati, and Ragā—approached the Blessed One and stood to one side. <276> Standing to one side, Māra's daughter Taṇhā addressed the Blessed One in verse:

509 "Is it because you are sunk in sorrow  
That you meditate in the woods?  
Because you have lost wealth or pine for it,  
Or committed some crime in the village?  
Why don't you make friends with people?  
Why don't you form any intimate ties?"

[The Blessed One:]

510 "Having conquered the army of the pleasant and agreeable,  
Meditating alone, I discovered bliss,  
The attainment of the goal, the peace of the heart.<sup>325</sup>

Therefore I don't make friends with people,  
Nor will I form any intimate ties."

Then Māra's daughter Arati addressed the Blessed One in verse: <277>

511 "How does a bhikkhu here often dwell  
That, five floods crossed, he here has crossed the sixth?  
How does he meditate so sensual perceptions  
Are kept at bay and fail to grip him?"<sup>326</sup>

[The Blessed One:]

512 "Tranquil in body, in mind well liberated,  
Not generating, mindful, homeless,  
Knowing Dhamma, meditating thought-free,  
He does not erupt, or drift, or stiffen."<sup>327</sup>

513 "When a bhikkhu here often dwells thus,  
With five floods crossed, he here has crossed the sixth.  
When he meditates thus, sensual perceptions  
Are kept at bay and fail to grip him." [127]

Then Māra's daughter Ragā addressed the Blessed One in verse: <278>

514 "He has cut off craving, faring with his group and order;  
Surely many other beings will cross.  
Alas, this homeless one will snatch many people  
And lead them away beyond the King of Death."<sup>328</sup>

[The Blessed One:]

515 "Truly the Tathāgatas, the great heroes,  
Lead by means of the true Dhamma.  
When they are leading by means of the Dhamma,  
What envy can there be in those who understand?"<sup>329</sup>

Then Māra's daughters—Taṇhā, Arati, and Ragā—approached Māra the Evil One. Māra saw them coming in the distance and addressed them in verses:<sup>330</sup>

- 516 “Fools! You tried to batter a mountain  
With the stalks of lotus flowers,  
To dig up a mountain with your nails,  
To chew iron with your teeth. <279>
- 517 “As if, having lifted a rock with your head,  
You sought a foothold in the abyss;  
As if you struck a stump with your breast,  
You part from Gotama disappointed.”
- 518 They had come to him glittering with beauty—  
Tanhā, Aratī, and Ragā—  
But the Teacher swept them away right there  
As the wind, a fallen cotton tuft. <280>

## 5 *Bhikkhunīsamyutta*

### Connected Discourses with Bhikkhunīs

#### 1 *Āḷavikā*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvattī in Jeta’s Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika’s Park.

Then, in the morning, the bhikkhunī Āḷavikā dressed and, taking bowl and robe, entered Sāvattī for alms.<sup>331</sup> When she had walked for alms in Sāvattī and had returned from her alms round, after her meal she went to the Blind Men’s Grove seeking seclusion.<sup>332</sup>

Then Māra the Evil One, desiring to arouse fear, trepidation, and terror in the bhikkhunī Āḷavikā, desiring to make her fall away from seclusion, approached her and addressed her in verse:

- 519 “There is no escape in the world,  
So what will you do with seclusion?  
Enjoy the delights of sensual pleasure:  
Don’t be remorseful later!”

Then it occurred to the bhikkhunī Āḷavikā: “Now who is it that recited the verse—a human being or a nonhuman being?” Then <282> it occurred to her: “This is Māra the Evil One, who has recited the verse desiring to arouse fear, trepidation, and terror in me, desiring to make me fall away from seclusion.”

Then the bhikkhunī Āḷavikā, having understood, “This is Māra the Evil One,” replied to him in verses:

- 520 “There is an escape in the world  
Which I have closely touched with wisdom.

O Evil One, kinsman of the negligent,  
You do not know that state.<sup>333</sup>

- 521 "Sensual pleasures are like swords and stakes;  
The aggregates like their chopping block.  
What you call sensual delight  
Has become for me nondelight."<sup>334</sup> [129]

Then Māra the Evil One, realizing, "The bhikkhuni Ālavikā knows me," sad and disappointed, disappeared right there. <283>

### 2 Somā

At Sāvatti. Then, in the morning, the bhikkhuni Somā dressed and, taking bowl and robe, entered Sāvatti for alms.<sup>335</sup> When she had walked for alms in Sāvatti and had returned from her alms round, after her meal she went to the Blind Men's Grove for the day's abiding. Having plunged into the Blind Men's Grove, she sat down at the foot of a tree for the day's abiding.

Then Māra the Evil One, desiring to arouse fear, trepidation, and terror in the bhikkhuni Somā, desiring to make her fall away from concentration, approached her and addressed her in verse:

- 522 "That state so hard to achieve  
Which is to be attained by the seers,  
Can't be attained by a woman  
With her two-fingered wisdom."<sup>336</sup>

Then it occurred to the bhikkhuni Somā: "Now who is this that recited the verse—a human being or a nonhuman being?" Then it occurred to her: "This is Māra the Evil One, who has recited the verse desiring to arouse fear, trepidation, and terror in me, desiring to make me fall away from concentration."

Then the bhikkhuni Somā, having understood, "This is Māra the Evil One," replied to him in verses: <284>

- 523 "What does womanhood matter at all  
When the mind is concentrated well,

When knowledge flows on steadily  
As one sees correctly into Dhamma.<sup>337</sup>

- 524 "One to whom it might occur,  
'I'm a woman' or 'I'm a man'  
Or 'I'm anything at all'—  
Is fit for Māra to address."<sup>338</sup>

Then Māra the Evil One, realizing, "The bhikkhuni Somā knows me," sad and disappointed, disappeared right there.

### 3 Gotamī

At Sāvatti. Then, in the morning, the bhikkhuni Kisāgotamī dressed and, taking bowl and robe, entered Sāvatti for alms.<sup>339</sup> When she had walked for alms in Sāvatti and had returned from her alms round, [130] after her meal she went to the Blind Men's Grove for the day's abiding. Having plunged into the Blind Men's Grove, she sat down at the foot of a tree for the day's abiding. <285>

Then Māra the Evil One, desiring to arouse fear, trepidation, and terror in the bhikkhuni Kisāgotamī, desiring to make her fall away from concentration, approached her and addressed her in verse:

- 525 "Why now, when your son is dead,  
Do you sit alone with tearful face?  
Having entered the woods all alone,  
Are you on the lookout for a man?"

Then it occurred to the bhikkhuni Kisāgotamī: "Now who is this that recited the verse—a human being or a nonhuman being?" Then it occurred to her: "This is Māra the Evil One, who has recited the verse desiring to arouse fear, trepidation, and terror in me, desiring to make me fall away from concentration."

Then the bhikkhuni Kisāgotamī, having understood, "This is Māra the Evil One," replied to him in verses:

- 526 "I've gotten past the death of sons;  
With this, the search for men has ended.

I do not sorrow, I do not weep,  
Nor do I fear you, friend.<sup>340</sup>

527 "Delight everywhere has been destroyed,  
The mass of darkness has been sundered. <286>  
Having conquered the army of Death,  
I dwell without defiling taints."<sup>341</sup>

Then Māra the Evil One, realizing, "The bhikkhuni Kisāgotami knows me," sad and disappointed, disappeared right there.

#### 4 Vijayā

At Sāvattī. Then, in the morning, the bhikkhuni Vijayā dressed ... she sat down at the foot of a tree for the day's abiding.<sup>342</sup>

Then Māra the Evil One, desiring to arouse fear, trepidation, and terror in the bhikkhuni Vijayā, desiring to make her fall away from concentration, approached her and addressed her in verse: [131]

528 "You are so young and beautiful,  
And I too am a youth in my prime.  
Come, noble lady, let us rejoice  
With the music of a fivefold ensemble."<sup>343</sup>

Then it occurred to the bhikkhuni Vijayā: "Now who is this...? This is Māra the Evil One ... desiring to make me fall away from concentration." <287>

Then the bhikkhuni Vijayā, having understood, "This is Māra the Evil One," replied to him in verses:

529 "Forms, sounds, tastes, odours,  
And delightful tactile objects—  
I offer them right back to you,  
For I, O Māra, do not need them.

530 "I am repelled and humiliated  
By this foul, putrid body,  
Subject to break up, fragile:  
I've uprooted sensual craving."<sup>344</sup>

531 "As to those beings who fare amidst form,  
And those who abide in the formless,  
And those peaceful attainments too:  
Everywhere darkness has been destroyed."<sup>345</sup>

Then Māra the Evil One, realizing "The bhikkhuni Vijayā knows me," sad and disappointed, disappeared right there.

#### 5 *Uppalavaṇṇā*

<288> At Sāvattī. Then, in the morning, the bhikkhuni Uppalavaṇṇā dressed ... she stood at the foot of a sal tree in full flower.<sup>346</sup>

Then Māra the Evil One, desiring to arouse fear, trepidation, and terror in the bhikkhuni Uppalavaṇṇā, desiring to make her fall away from concentration, approached her and addressed her in verse:

532 "Having gone to a sal tree with flowering top,  
You stand at its foot all alone, bhikkhuni.  
There is none whose beauty rivals yours:  
Foolish girl, aren't you afraid of rogues?"<sup>347</sup>

Then it occurred to the bhikkhuni Uppalavaṇṇā: [132] "Now who is this...? This is Māra the Evil One ... desiring to make me fall away from concentration." <289>

Then the bhikkhuni Uppalavaṇṇā, having understood, "This is Māra the Evil One," replied to him in verses:

533 "Though a hundred thousand rogues  
Just like you might come here,  
I stir not a hair, I feel no terror;  
Even alone, Māra, I don't fear you."<sup>348</sup>

534 "I can make myself disappear  
Or I can enter inside your belly.  
I can stand between your eyebrows  
Yet you won't catch a glimpse of me.

535 "I am the master of my mind,  
The bases of power are well developed;  
I am freed from all bondage,  
Therefore I don't fear you, friend."<sup>349</sup> <290>

Then Māra the Evil One, realizing, "The bhikkhuni Uppala-  
vaṇṇā knows me," sad and disappointed, disappeared right  
there.

6 *Cālā*

At Sāvatti. Then, in the morning, the bhikkhuni Cālā dressed  
... she sat down at the foot of a tree for the day's abiding.<sup>350</sup>

Then Māra the Evil One approached the bhikkhuni Cālā and  
said to her: "What don't you approve of, bhikkhuni?"

"I don't approve of birth, friend."

536 "Why don't you approve of birth?  
Once born, one enjoys sensual pleasures.  
Who now has persuaded you of this:  
'Bhikkhuni, don't approve of birth?'"

[The bhikkhuni Cālā:]

537 "For one who is born there is death;  
Once born, one encounters sufferings—  
Bondage, murder, affliction—  
Hence one shouldn't approve of birth."<sup>351</sup>

538 "The Buddha has taught the Dhamma, <291>  
The transcendence of birth;  
For the abandoning of all suffering  
He has settled me in the truth. [133]

539 "As to those beings who fare amidst form,  
And those who abide in the formless—  
Not having understood cessation,  
They come again to renewed existence."<sup>352</sup>

Then Māra the Evil One, realizing, "The bhikkhuni Cālā  
knows me," sad and disappointed, disappeared right there.

7 *Upacālā*

At Sāvatti. Then, in the morning, the bhikkhuni Upacālā  
dressed ... she sat down at the foot of a tree for the day's abiding.

Then Māra the Evil One approached the bhikkhuni Upacālā  
and said to her: "Where do you wish to be reborn, bhikkhuni?"

"I do not wish to be reborn anywhere, friend."

540 "There are Tāvatiṃsa and Yāma devas,  
And devatās of the Tusita realm,  
Devas who take delight in creating, <292>  
And devas who exercise control.  
Direct your mind there [to those realms]  
And you'll experience delight."<sup>353</sup>

[The bhikkhuni Upacālā:]

541 "There are Tāvatiṃsa and Yāma devas,  
And devatās of the Tusita realm,  
Devas who take delight in creating,  
And devas who exercise control.  
They are still bound by sensual bondage,  
They come again under Māra's control.

542 "All the world is on fire,  
All the world is burning,  
All the world is ablaze,  
All the world is quaking.

543 "That which does not quake or blaze,  
That to which worldlings do not resort,  
Where there is no place for Māra:  
That is where my mind delights."<sup>354</sup>

Then Māra the Evil One, realizing, "The bhikkhuni Upacālā  
knows me," sad and disappointed, disappeared right there.

8 *Sisupacālā*

<293> At Sāvatti. Then, in the morning, the bhikkhuni Sisupacālā  
dressed ... she sat down at the foot of a tree for the day's abiding.

Then Māra the Evil One approached the bhikkhuni Sisupacālā and said to her: “Whose creed do you approve of, bhikkhuni?”  
“I don’t approve of anyone’s creed, friend.”

544 “Under whom have you shaved your head?  
You do appear to be an ascetic,  
Yet you don’t approve of any creed,  
So why wander as if bewildered?”<sup>355</sup>

[The bhikkhuni Sisupacālā:]

545 “Outside here the followers of creeds  
Place their confidence in views.  
I don’t approve of their teachings;  
They are not skilled in the Dhamma. [134]

546 “But there’s one born in the Sakyan clan,  
The Enlightened One, without an equal, <294>  
Conqueror of all, Māra’s subduer,  
Who everywhere is undefeated,  
Everywhere freed and unattached,  
The One with Vision who sees all.

547 “Attained to the end of all kamma,  
Liberated in the extinction of acquisitions,  
That Blessed One is my Teacher:  
His is the teaching I approve.”<sup>356</sup>

Then Māra the Evil One, realizing, “The bhikkhuni Sisupacālā knows me,” sad and disappointed, disappeared right there.

### 9 Selā

At Sāvatti. Then, in the morning, the bhikkhuni Selā dressed ... she sat down at the foot of a tree for the day’s abiding.<sup>357</sup>

Then Māra the Evil One, desiring to arouse fear, trepidation, and terror in the bhikkhuni Selā, desiring to make her fall away from concentration, approached her and addressed her in verse:

548 “By whom has this puppet been created?  
Where is the maker of the puppet?

Where has the puppet arisen?  
Where does the puppet cease?”<sup>358</sup> <295>

Then it occurred to the bhikkhuni Selā: “Now who is this...? This is Māra the Evil One ... desiring to make me fall away from concentration.”

Then the bhikkhuni Selā, having understood, “This is Māra the Evil One,” replied to him in verses:

549 “This puppet is not made by itself,  
Nor is this misery made by another.  
It has come to be dependent on a cause;  
With the cause’s breakup it will cease.

550 “As when a seed is sown in a field  
It grows depending on a pair of factors:  
It requires both the soil’s nutrients  
And a steady supply of moisture:

551 “Just so the aggregates and elements,  
And these six bases of sensory contact,  
Have come to be dependent on a cause;  
With the cause’s breakup they will cease.”<sup>359</sup>

Then Māra the Evil One, realizing, “The bhikkhuni Selā knows me,” sad and disappointed, disappeared right there.

### 10 Vajirā

<296> At Sāvatti. Then, in the morning, the bhikkhuni Vajirā dressed and, taking bowl and robe, entered Sāvatti for alms.<sup>360</sup> When she had walked for alms in Sāvatti [135] and had returned from her alms round, after her meal she went to the Blind Men’s Grove for the day’s abiding. Having plunged into the Blind Men’s Grove, she sat down at the foot of a tree for the day’s abiding.

Then Māra the Evil One, desiring to arouse fear, trepidation, and terror in the bhikkhuni Vajirā, desiring to make her fall away from concentration, approached her and addressed her in verse:

- 552 "By whom has this being been created?  
Where is the maker of the being?  
Where has the being arisen?  
Where does the being cease?"

Then it occurred to the bhikkhuni Vajirā: "Now who is this that recited the verse—a human being or a nonhuman being?" Then it occurred to her: "This is Māra the Evil One, who has recited the verse desiring to arouse fear, trepidation, and terror in me, desiring to make me fall away from concentration."

Then the bhikkhuni Vajirā, having understood, "This is Māra the Evil One," replied to him in verses:

- 553 "Why now do you assume 'a being'?  
Māra, is that your speculative view? <297>  
This is a heap of sheer formations:  
Here no being is found.
- 554 "Just as, with an assemblage of parts,  
The word 'chariot' is used,  
So, when the aggregates exist,  
There is the convention 'a being.'
- 555 "It's only suffering that comes to be,  
Suffering that stands and falls away.  
Nothing but suffering comes to be,  
Nothing but suffering ceases."<sup>361</sup>

Then Māra the Evil One, realizing, "The bhikkhuni Vajirā knows me," sad and disappointed, disappeared right there.

6 *Brahmasaṃyutta*

## Connected Discourses with Brahmās

I. THE FIRST SUBCHAPTER  
(THE REQUEST)1 (1) *Brahmā's Request*

Thus have I heard.<sup>362</sup> On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Uruvelā on the bank of the river Nerañjarā at the foot of the Goatherd's Banyan Tree just after he had become fully enlightened. Then, while the Blessed One was alone in seclusion, a reflection arose in his mind thus: "This Dhamma that I have discovered is deep, hard to see, hard to understand, peaceful and sublime, not within the sphere of reasoning, subtle, to be experienced by the wise. But this generation delights in adhesion, takes delight in adhesion, rejoices in adhesion.<sup>363</sup> For such a generation this state is hard to see, that is, specific conditionality, dependent origination. And this state too is hard to see, that is, the stilling of all formations, <299> the relinquishment of all acquisitions, the destruction of craving, dispassion, cessation, Nibbāna.<sup>364</sup> If I were to teach the Dhamma and if others would not understand me, that would be wearisome for me, that would be troublesome."

Thereupon these astounding verses, not heard before in the past, occurred to the Blessed One:<sup>365</sup>

- 556 "Enough now with trying to teach  
What I found with so much hardship;  
This Dhamma is not easily understood  
By those oppressed by lust and hate.

557 "Those fired by lust, obscured by darkness,  
Will never see this abstruse Dhamma,  
Deep, hard to see, subtle,  
Going against the stream." [137]

As the Blessed One reflected thus, his mind inclined to living at ease, not to teaching the Dhamma.<sup>366</sup> <300>

Then Brahmā Sahampati, having known with his own mind the reflection in the Blessed One's mind, thought: "Alas, the world is lost! Alas, the world is to perish, in that the mind of the Tathāgata, the Arahant, the Perfectly Enlightened One, inclines to living at ease, not to teaching the Dhamma."<sup>367</sup> Then, just as quickly as a strong man might extend his drawn-in arm or draw in his extended arm, Brahmā Sahampati disappeared from the brahmā world and reappeared before the Blessed One. He arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, knelt down with his right knee on the ground, raised his joined hands in reverential salutation towards the Blessed One, and said to him: "Venerable sir, let the Blessed One teach the Dhamma; let the Fortunate One teach the Dhamma. There are beings with little dust in their eyes who are falling away because they do not hear the Dhamma. There will be those who will understand the Dhamma."

This is what Brahmā Sahampati said. Having said this, he further said this:

558 "In the past there appeared among the Magadhans  
An impure Dhamma devised by those still stained.  
Throw open this door to the Deathless! Let them hear  
<301>  
The Dhamma that the Stainless One discovered.<sup>368</sup>

559 "Just as one standing on a mountain peak  
Might see below the people all around,  
So, O wise one, universal eye,  
Ascend the palace made of the Dhamma.  
Being yourself free from sorrow, behold the people  
Submerged in sorrow, oppressed by birth and decay.

560 "Rise up, O hero, victor in battle!  
O caravan leader, debt-free one, wander in the world.

Teach the Dhamma, O Blessed One:  
There will be those who will understand."<sup>369</sup> [138]

Then the Blessed One, having understood Brahmā's request, out of compassion for beings surveyed the world with the eye of a Buddha.<sup>370</sup> As he did so, the Blessed One saw beings with little dust in their eyes and with much dust in their eyes, with keen faculties and with dull faculties, with good qualities and with bad qualities, easy to teach and difficult to teach, <302> and a few who dwelt seeing blame and fear in the other world.<sup>371</sup> Just as in a pond of blue or red or white lotuses, some lotuses might be born in the water, grow up in the water, and thrive while submerged in the water, without rising up from the water; some lotuses might be born in the water, grow up in the water, and stand at an even level with the water; some lotuses might be born in the water and grow up in the water, but would rise up from the water and stand without being soiled by the water—so too, surveying the world with the eye of a Buddha, the Blessed One saw beings with little dust in their eyes and with much dust in their eyes, with keen faculties and with dull faculties, with good qualities and with bad qualities, easy to teach and hard to teach, and a few who dwelt seeing blame and fear in the other world.

Having seen this, he answered Brahmā Sahampati in verse:  
<303>

561 "Open to them are the doors to the Deathless:  
Let those who have ears release faith.  
Foreseeing trouble, O Brahmā, I did not speak  
The refined, sublime Dhamma among human beings."

Then Brahmā Sahampati, thinking, "The Blessed One has given his consent [to my request] regarding the teaching of the Dhamma," paid homage to the Blessed One and disappeared right there.<sup>372</sup>

## 2 (2) *Reverence*

Thus have I heard.<sup>373</sup> On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Uruvelā on the bank of the river Nerañjarā at the

foot of the Goatherd's Banyan Tree just after he had become fully enlightened. [139] Then, while the Blessed One was alone in seclusion, a reflection arose in his mind thus: "One dwells in suffering if one is without reverence and deference. Now what ascetic or brahmin can I honour and respect and dwell in dependence on?"

Then it occurred to the Blessed One: "It would be for the sake of fulfilling an unfulfilled aggregate of virtue that I would honour, respect, and dwell in dependence on another ascetic or brahmin. However, in this world with its devas, Māra, and Brahmā, <304> in this generation with its ascetics and brahmins, its devas and humans, I do not see another ascetic or brahmin more perfect in virtue than myself, whom I could honour and respect and dwell in dependence on.

"It would be for the sake of fulfilling an unfulfilled aggregate of concentration that I would honour, respect, and dwell in dependence on another ascetic or brahmin. However ... I do not see another ascetic or brahmin more perfect in concentration than myself....

"It would be for the sake of fulfilling an unfulfilled aggregate of wisdom that I would honour, respect, and dwell in dependence on another ascetic or brahmin. However ... I do not see another ascetic or brahmin more perfect in wisdom than myself....

"It would be for the sake of fulfilling an unfulfilled aggregate of liberation that I would honour, respect, and dwell in dependence on another ascetic or brahmin. However ... I do not see another ascetic or brahmin more perfect in liberation than myself....

"It would be for the sake of fulfilling an unfulfilled aggregate of the knowledge and vision of liberation that I would honour, respect, and dwell in dependence on another ascetic or brahmin. However ... I do not see another ascetic or brahmin more perfect in the knowledge and vision of liberation than myself, whom I could honour and respect, and on whom I could dwell in dependence.<sup>374</sup> <305>

"Let me then honour, respect, and dwell in dependence on this very Dhamma to which I have fully awakened."

Then, having known with his own mind the reflection in the Blessed One's mind, just as quickly as a strong man might extend his drawn-in arm or draw in his extended arm, Brahmā

Sahampati disappeared from the brahmā world and reappeared before the Blessed One. He arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, raised his joined hands in reverential salutation towards the Blessed One, and said to him: [140] "So it is, Blessed One! So it is, Fortunate One! Venerable sir, those who were the Arahants, the Perfectly Enlightened Ones in the past—those Blessed Ones too honoured, respected, and dwelt in dependence just on the Dhamma itself. Those who will be the Arahants, the Perfectly Enlightened Ones in the future—those Blessed Ones too will honour, respect, and dwell in dependence just on the Dhamma itself. Let the Blessed One too, who is at present the Arahant, the Perfectly Enlightened One, honour, respect, and dwell in dependence just on the Dhamma itself."

This is what Brahmā Sahampati said. Having said this, he further said this: <306>

562 "The Buddhas of the past,  
The future Buddhas,  
And he who is the Buddha now,  
Removing the sorrow of many—

563 "All have dwelt, will dwell, and dwell,  
Deeply revering the true Dhamma:  
For the Buddhas  
This is a natural law.

564 "Therefore one desiring his own good,  
Aspiring for spiritual greatness,  
Should deeply revere the true Dhamma,  
Recollecting the Buddhas' Teaching."<sup>375</sup>

### 3 (3) *Brahmadeva*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvattī in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. Now on that occasion a certain brahmin lady had a son named Brahmadeva <307> who had gone forth from the household life into homelessness under the Blessed One.

Then, dwelling alone, withdrawn, diligent, ardent, and resolute, the Venerable Brahmadeva, by realizing it for himself

with direct knowledge, in this very life entered and dwelt in that unsurpassed goal of the holy life for the sake of which clansmen rightly go forth from the household life into homelessness. He directly knew: "Destroyed is birth, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more for this state of being." And the Venerable Brahmadeva became one of the arahants.<sup>376</sup>

Then, in the morning, the Venerable Brahmadeva dressed and, taking bowl and robe, entered Sāvattī for alms. Walking on continuous alms round in Sāvattī, he came to his own mother's residence.<sup>377</sup> [141] Now on that occasion the brahmin lady, the Venerable Brahmadeva's mother, had been offering a constant oblation to Brahmā.<sup>378</sup> Then it occurred to Brahmā Sahampati: "This brahmin lady, the Venerable Brahmadeva's mother, has been offering a constant oblation to Brahmā. Let me approach her and stir up a sense of urgency in her."

Then, <308> just as quickly as a strong man might extend his drawn-in arm or draw in his extended arm, Brahmā Sahampati disappeared from the brahmā world and reappeared in the residence of the Venerable Brahmadeva's mother. Then, standing in the air, Brahmā Sahampati addressed the brahmin lady in verse:

565 "Far from here, madam, is the brahmā world  
To which you offer a constant oblation.  
Brahmā does not eat such food, lady:  
So why mumble, not knowing the path to Brahmā?<sup>379</sup>

566 "This Brahmadeva, madam,  
Without acquisitions, has surpassed the devas.  
Owning nothing, nourishing no other,  
The bhikkhu has entered your house for alms.<sup>380</sup>

567 "Gift-worthy, knowledge-master, inwardly developed,  
<309>  
He deserves offerings from humans and devas.  
Having expelled all evil, unsullied,  
Cooled at heart, he comes seeking alms.

568 "For him there is nothing behind or in front—  
Peaceful, smokeless, untroubled, wishless;

He has laid down the rod towards frail and firm:  
Let him eat your oblation, the choicest alms.<sup>381</sup>

569 "Aloof from the crowd, with peaceful mind,  
Like a nāga he fares, tamed, unstirred.  
A bhikkhu of pure virtue, well liberated in mind:  
Let him eat your oblation, the choicest alms.<sup>382</sup>

570 "With confidence in him, free from wavering, [142]  
Present your offering to one who deserves it.  
Having seen a sage who has crossed the flood,  
O madam, make merit leading to future bliss."<sup>383</sup> <310>

571 With confidence in him, free from wavering,  
She presented her offering to one who deserved it.  
Having seen a sage who has crossed the flood,  
The lady made merit leading to future bliss.<sup>384</sup>

#### 4 (4) *Brahmā Baka*

Thus have I heard.<sup>385</sup> On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvattī in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. Now on that occasion the following evil speculative view had arisen in Brahmā Baka: "This is permanent, this is stable, this is eternal, this is complete, this is imperishable. Indeed, this is where one is not born, does not age, does not die, does not pass away, and is not reborn; and there is no other escape superior to this."<sup>386</sup>

Then, having known with his own mind the reflection in Brahmā Baka's mind, just as quickly as a strong man might extend his drawn-in arm or draw in his extended arm, the Blessed One disappeared from Jeta's Grove and reappeared in that brahmā world. <311> Brahmā Baka saw the Blessed One coming in the distance and said to him: "Come, dear sir! Welcome, dear sir! It has been a long time, dear sir, since you took the opportunity of coming here. Indeed, dear sir, this is permanent, this is stable, this is eternal, this is complete, this is imperishable. Indeed, this is where one is not born, does not age, does not die, does not pass away, and is not reborn; and there is no other escape superior to this."

When this was said, the Blessed One said to Brahmā Baka:

“Alas, sir, Brahmā Baka is immersed in ignorance! Alas, sir, Brahmā Baka is immersed in ignorance, in so far as he will say of what is actually impermanent that it is permanent; and will say of what is actually unstable that it is stable; and will say of what is actually noneternal that it is eternal; [143] and will say of what is actually incomplete that it is complete; and will say of what is actually perishable that it is imperishable; and with reference to [a realm] where one is born, ages, dies, passes away, and is reborn, will say thus: ‘Indeed, this is where one is not born, does not age, does not die, does not pass away, and is not reborn’; and when there is another escape superior to this, will say, ‘There is no other escape superior to this.’”

[Brahmā Baka:]

572 “We seventy-two, Gotama, were merit-makers; <312>  
Now we wield power, beyond birth and aging.  
This, knowledge-master, is our final attainment of Brahmā.  
Many are the people who yearn for us.”<sup>387</sup>

[The Blessed One:]

573 “The life span here is short, not long,  
Though you, Baka, imagine it is long.  
I know, O Brahmā, your life span to be  
A hundred thousand *nirabbudas*.”<sup>388</sup>

[Brahmā Baka:]

574 “O Blessed One, [you say]:  
‘I am the one of infinite vision  
Who has overcome birth, aging, and sorrow.’  
What was my ancient practice of vow and virtue?  
Tell me this so I might understand.”<sup>389</sup>

[The Blessed One:]

575 “You gave drink to many people  
Who were thirsty, afflicted by heat:  
That was your ancient practice of vow and virtue, <313>  
Which I recollect as if just waking up.”<sup>390</sup>

576 “When people were abducted at Antelope Bank,  
You released the captives being led away.

That was your ancient practice of vow and virtue,  
Which I recollect as if just waking up.

577 “When a ship was seized on the river Ganges  
By a fierce nāga longing for human flesh,  
You freed it forcefully by a valiant act:  
That was your ancient practice of vow and virtue,  
Which I recollect as if just waking up. [144]

578 “I was your apprentice named Kappa;  
You thought him intelligent and devout:  
That was your ancient practice of vow and virtue,  
Which I recollect as if just waking up.”<sup>391</sup>

[Brahmā Baka:] <314>

579 “Surely you know this life span of mine;  
The others too you know, thus you’re the Buddha.  
Thus this blazing majesty of yours  
Illumines even the brahmā world.”

#### 5 (5) *A Certain Brahmā (Another View)*

At Sāvatti. Now on that occasion the following evil speculative view had arisen in a certain brahmā: “There is no ascetic or brahmin who can come here.” Then, having known with his own mind the reflection in that brahmā’s mind, just as quickly as a strong man might extend his drawn-in arm or draw in his extended arm, the Blessed One disappeared from Jeta’s Grove and reappeared in that brahmā world. The Blessed One sat cross-legged in the air above that brahmā, having entered into meditation on the fire element.<sup>392</sup>

Then it occurred to the Venerable Mahāmoggallāna: “Where now is the Blessed One dwelling at present?” With the divine eye, which is purified and surpasses the human, the Venerable Mahāmoggallāna saw the Blessed One sitting cross-legged in the air above that brahmā, having entered into meditation on the fire element. Having seen this, <315> just as quickly as a strong man might extend his drawn-in arm or draw in his extended arm, the Venerable Mahāmoggallāna disappeared from Jeta’s Grove and reappeared in that brahmā world. Then

the Venerable Mahāmoggallāna stationed himself in the eastern quarter and sat cross-legged in the air above that brahmā—though lower than the Blessed One—having entered into meditation on the fire element.

Then it occurred to the Venerable Mahākassapa: “Where now is the Blessed One dwelling at present?” With the divine eye ... the Venerable Mahākassapa saw the Blessed One sitting cross-legged in the air above that brahmā.... Having seen this, ... [145] the Venerable Mahākassapa disappeared from Jeta’s Grove and reappeared in that brahmā world. Then the Venerable Mahākassapa stationed himself in the southern quarter and sat cross-legged in the air above that brahmā—though lower than the Blessed One—having entered into meditation on the fire element.

Then it occurred to the Venerable Mahākappina: “Where now is the Blessed One dwelling at present?” With the divine eye ... the Venerable Mahākappina saw the Blessed One sitting cross-legged in the air above that brahmā.... Having seen this, ... the Venerable Mahākappina disappeared from Jeta’s Grove and reappeared in that brahmā world. Then the Venerable Mahākappina stationed himself in the western quarter <316> and sat cross-legged in the air above that brahmā—though lower than the Blessed One—having entered into meditation on the fire element.

Then it occurred to the Venerable Anuruddha: “Where now is the Blessed One dwelling at present?” With the divine eye ... the Venerable Anuruddha saw the Blessed One sitting cross-legged in the air above that brahmā.... Having seen this, ... the Venerable Anuruddha disappeared from Jeta’s Grove and reappeared in that brahmā world. Then the Venerable Anuruddha stationed himself in the northern quarter and sat cross-legged in the air above that brahmā—though lower than the Blessed One—having entered into meditation on the fire element.

Then the Venerable Mahāmoggallāna addressed that brahmā in verse:

580 “Today, friend, do you still hold that view,  
The view that you formerly held?  
Do you see the radiance  
Surpassing that in the brahmā world?”<sup>393</sup> <317>

581 “I no longer hold that view, dear sir,  
The view that I formerly held.  
Indeed I see the radiance  
Surpassing that in the brahmā world.  
Today how could I maintain,  
‘I am permanent and eternal?’”<sup>394</sup>

Then, having stirred up a sense of urgency in that brahmā, just as quickly as a strong man might extend his drawn-in arm or draw in his extended arm, the Blessed One disappeared from that brahmā world and reappeared in Jeta’s Grove.

Then that brahmā addressed one member of his assembly thus: “Come now, dear sir, approach the Venerable Mahāmoggallāna and say to him: ‘Sir Moggallāna, are there any other disciples of the Blessed One that are as powerful [146] and mighty as Masters Moggallāna, Kassapa, Kappina, and Anuruddha?’”

“Yes, dear sir,” that member of Brahmā’s assembly replied. Then he approached the Venerable Mahāmoggallāna and asked him: “Sir Moggallāna, are there any other disciples of the Blessed One that are as powerful and mighty as Masters Moggallāna, Kassapa, Kappina, and Anuruddha?”

Then the Venerable Mahāmoggallāna addressed that member of Brahmā’s assembly in verse:

582 “Many are the disciples of the Buddha  
Who are arahants with taints destroyed,  
Triple-knowledge bearers with spiritual powers,  
Skilled in the course of others’ minds.”<sup>395</sup> <318>

Then that member of Brahmā’s assembly, having delighted and rejoiced in the Venerable Mahāmoggallāna’s statement, approached that brahmā and told him: “Dear sir, the Venerable Mahāmoggallāna speaks thus:

583 ““Many are the disciples of the Buddha ...  
Skilled in the course of others’ minds.””

This is what that member of Brahmā’s assembly said. Elated, that brahmā delighted in his statement.

6 (6) *A Brahmā World (Negligence)*

At Sāvattī. Now on that occasion the Blessed One had gone for his day's abiding and was in seclusion. Then the independent brahmās Subrahmā and Suddhāvāsa approached the Blessed One and stood one at each doorpost.<sup>396</sup> Then the independent brahmā Subrahmā said to the independent brahmā Suddhāvāsa: <319> "It is not the right time, dear sir, to visit the Blessed One. The Blessed One has gone for his day's abiding and is in seclusion. Such and such a brahmā world is rich and prosperous, and the brahmā there is dwelling in negligence. Come, dear sir, let us go to that brahmā world and stir up a sense of urgency in that brahmā." [147]

"Yes, dear sir," the independent brahmā Suddhāvāsa replied.

Then, just as quickly as a strong man might extend his drawn-in arm or draw in his extended arm, the independent brahmās Subrahmā and Suddhāvāsa disappeared in front of the Blessed One and reappeared in that brahmā world. That brahmā saw those brahmās coming in the distance and said to them: "Now where are you coming from, dear sirs?" <320>

"We have come, dear sir, from the presence of the Blessed One, the Arahant, the Perfectly Enlightened One. Dear sir, you should go to attend upon that Blessed One, the Arahant, the Perfectly Enlightened One."

When this was said, that brahmā refused to accept their advice. Having created a thousand transformations of himself, he said to the independent brahmā Subrahmā: <321> "Do you see, dear sir, how much power and might I have?"

"I see, dear sir, that you have so much power and might."

"But, dear sir, when I am so powerful and mighty, what other ascetic or brahmin should I go to attend upon?"

Then the independent brahmā Subrahmā, having created two thousand transformations of himself, said to that brahmā: "Do you see, dear sir, how much power and might I have?"

"I see, dear sir, that you have so much power and might."

"That Blessed One, dear sir, is still more powerful and mighty than both you and I. You should go, dear sir, to attend upon that Blessed One, the Arahant, the Perfectly Enlightened One."

Then that brahmā addressed the independent brahmā Subrahmā in verse: [148]

584 "Three [hundred] supaññas, four [hundred] geese,  
And five hundred falcons:  
This palace, O Brahmā, of the meditator shines  
Illuminating the northern quarter."<sup>397</sup>

[The independent brahmā Subrahmā:]

585 "Even though that palace of yours shines  
Illuminating the northern quarter, <322>  
Having seen form's flaw, its chronic trembling,  
The wise one takes no delight in form."<sup>398</sup>

Then the independent brahmās Subrahmā and Suddhāvāsa, having stirred up a sense of urgency in that brahmā, disappeared right there. And on a later occasion that brahmā went to attend upon the Blessed One, the Arahant, the Perfectly Enlightened One.

7 (7) *Kokālika (1)*

At Sāvattī. Now on that occasion the Blessed One had gone for his day's abiding and was in seclusion. Then the independent brahmās Subrahmā and Suddhāvāsa approached the Blessed One and stood one at each doorpost. Then, referring to the bhikkhu Kokālika, the independent brahmā Subrahmā recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:<sup>399</sup>

586 "What wise man here would seek to define  
An immeasurable one by taking his measure? <323>  
He who would measure an immeasurable one  
Must be, I think, an obstructed worldling."<sup>400</sup>

8 (8) *Tissaka*

At Sāvattī.... (*as above*) ... Then, referring to the bhikkhu Katamorakatissaka, the independent brahmā Suddhāvāsa recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:<sup>401</sup> [149]

587 "What wise man here would seek to define  
An immeasurable one by taking his measure?

He who would measure an immeasurable one  
Must be, I think, an obstructed moron."

9 (9) *Brahmā Tudu*

<324> At Sāvatti. Now on that occasion the bhikkhu Kokālika was sick, afflicted, gravely ill. Then, when the night had advanced, the independent brahmā Tudu, of stunning beauty, illuminating the entire Jeta's Grove, approached the bhikkhu Kokālika.<sup>402</sup> Having approached, he stood in the air and said to the bhikkhu Kokālika: "Place confidence in Sāriputta and Moggallāna, Kokālika. Sāriputta and Moggallāna are well behaved."

"Who are you, friend?"

"I am the independent brahmā Tudu."

"Didn't the Blessed One declare you to be a nonreturner, friend? Then why have you come back here? See how far you have transgressed."<sup>403</sup>

[Brahmā Tudu:]

588 "When a person has taken birth  
An axe is born inside his mouth  
With which the fool cuts himself  
Uttering defamatory speech. <325>

589 "He who praises one deserving blame,  
Or blames one deserving praise,  
Casts with his mouth an unlucky throw  
By which he finds no happiness.<sup>404</sup>

590 "Trifling is the unlucky throw  
That brings the loss of wealth at dice,  
[The loss] of all, oneself included;  
Worse by far—this unlucky throw  
Of harbouring hate against the fortunate ones.<sup>405</sup>

591 "For a hundred thousand nirabbudas  
And thirty-six more, and five *abbudas*,  
The maligner of noble ones goes to hell,  
Having set evil speech and mind against them."<sup>406</sup>

10 (10) *Kokālika* (2)

At Sāvatti.<sup>407</sup> Then the bhikkhu Kokālika approached the Blessed One, [150] <326> paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and said: "Venerable sir, Sāriputta and Moggallāna have evil wishes; they have come under the control of evil wishes."

When this was said, the Blessed One said to the bhikkhu Kokālika: "Do not speak thus, Kokālika! Do not speak thus, Kokālika! Place confidence in Sāriputta and Moggallāna, Kokālika. Sāriputta and Moggallāna are well behaved."

A second time the bhikkhu Kokālika said to the Blessed One: "Venerable sir, although the Blessed One has my faith and trust, all the same I say that Sāriputta and Moggallāna have evil wishes; they have come under the control of evil wishes." And a second time the Blessed One said to the bhikkhu Kokālika: "Do not speak thus, Kokālika!... Sāriputta and Moggallāna are well behaved."

A third time the bhikkhu Kokālika said to the Blessed One: "Venerable sir, although the Blessed One has my faith and trust, all the same I say that Sāriputta and Moggallāna have evil wishes; they have come under the control of evil wishes." And a third time the Blessed One said to the bhikkhu Kokālika: "Do not speak thus, Kokālika!... Sāriputta and Moggallāna are well behaved."

Then the bhikkhu Kokālika rose from his seat, paid homage to the Blessed One, and departed, keeping him on his right. Not long after the bhikkhu Kokālika had left, his entire body became covered with boils the size of mustard seeds. <327> These then grew to the size of mung beans; then to the size of chickpeas; then to the size of jujube stones; then to the size of unripe *beluva* fruits; then to the size of ripe *beluva* fruits. When they had grown to the size of ripe *beluva* fruits, they burst open, exuding pus and blood. Then, on account of that illness, the bhikkhu Kokālika died, [151] and because he had harboured animosity towards Sāriputta and Moggallāna, after his death he was reborn in the Paduma hell.<sup>408</sup>

Then, when the night had advanced, Brahmā Sahampati, of stunning beauty, illuminating the entire Jeta's Grove, approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, stood to one side, <328>

and said to him: "Venerable sir, the bhikkhu Kokālika has died, and because he harboured animosity towards Sāriputta and Moggallāna, after his death he has been reborn in the Paduma hell." This is what Brahmā Sahampati said. Having said this, he paid homage to the Blessed One and, keeping him on his right, he disappeared right there.

Then, when the night had passed, the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Bhikkhus, last night, when the night had advanced, Brahmā Sahampati approached me and said to me:... (as above) ... Having said this, he paid homage to me and, keeping me on his right, he disappeared right there."

When this was said, a certain bhikkhu said to the Blessed One: "Venerable sir, how long is the life span in the Paduma hell?"

"The life span in the Paduma hell is long, bhikkhu. It is not easy to count it and say it is so many years, or so many hundreds of years, or so many thousands of years, or so many hundreds of thousands of years." <329>

"Then is it possible to give a simile, venerable sir?" [152]

"It is possible, bhikkhu. Suppose, bhikkhu, there was a Kosalan cartload of twenty measures of sesamum seed. At the end of every hundred years a man would remove one seed from there. That Kosalan cartload of twenty measures of sesamum seed might by this effort be depleted and eliminated more quickly than a single Abbuda hell would go by. Twenty Abbuda hells are the equivalent of one Nirabbuda hell; twenty Nirabbuda hells are the equivalent of one Ababa hell; twenty Ababa hells are the equivalent of one Aṭaṭa hell; twenty Aṭaṭa hells are the equivalent of one Ahaha hell; twenty Ahaha hells are the equivalent of one Kumuda hell; twenty Kumuda hells are the equivalent of one Sogandhika hell; twenty Sogandhika hells are the equivalent of one Uppala hell; twenty Uppala hells are the equivalent of one Puṇḍarika hell; and twenty Puṇḍarika hells are the equivalent of one Paduma hell. Now, bhikkhu, the bhikkhu Kokālika has been reborn in the Paduma hell because he harboured animosity towards Sāriputta and Moggallāna."<sup>409</sup> <330>

This is what the Blessed One said. Having said this, the Fortunate One, the Teacher, further said this:

592-95 "When a person has taken birth  
... (verses = 588-91) ... [153] <331>  
Having set evil speech and mind against them."

## II. THE SECOND SUBCHAPTER (BRAHMĀ PENTAD)

### 11 (1) Sanaṅkumāra

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha on the bank of the river Sappini. Then, when the night had advanced, Brahmā Sanaṅkumāra, of stunning beauty, illuminating the entire bank of the river Sappini, approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, and stood to one side.<sup>410</sup> Standing to one side, he recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One: <332>

596 "The khattiya is the best among people  
For those whose standard is the clan,  
But one accomplished in knowledge and conduct  
Is best among devas and humans."

This is what Brahmā Sanaṅkumāra said. The Teacher approved. Then Brahmā Sanaṅkumāra, thinking, "The Teacher has approved of me," paid homage to the Blessed One and, keeping him on his right, he disappeared right there.

### 12 (2) Devadatta

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha on Mount Vulture Peak not long after Devadatta had left.<sup>411</sup> Then, when the night had advanced, Brahmā Sahampati, of stunning beauty, illuminating the entire Mount Vulture Peak, approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, and stood to one side. [154] Standing to one side, referring to Devadatta, he recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:

597 "As its own fruit brings destruction  
To the plantain, bamboo, and reed,  
As its embryo destroys the mule, <333>  
So do honours destroy the scoundrel."<sup>412</sup>

13 (3) *Andhakavinda*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling among the Magadhans at Andhakavinda. Now on that occasion the Blessed One was sitting out in the open in the thick darkness of the night while it was drizzling. Then, when the night had advanced, Brahmā Sahampati ... approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, and stood to one side. Standing to one side, he recited these verses in the presence of the Blessed One:

- 598 "One should resort to remote lodgings,  
Practise for release from the fetters.  
But if one does not find delight there,  
Guarded and mindful, dwell in the Saṅgha.<sup>413</sup> <334>
- 599 "Walking for alms from family to family,  
Faculties guarded, discreet, mindful,  
One should resort to remote lodgings,  
Freed from fear, liberated in the fearless.<sup>414</sup>
- 600 "Where terrible serpents glide,  
Where lightning flashes and the sky thunders,  
In the thick darkness of the night  
There sits a bhikkhu devoid of terror.<sup>415</sup>
- 601 "For this has actually been seen by me,  
It is not merely hearsay:  
Within a single holy life  
A thousand have left Death behind.<sup>416</sup>
- 602 "There are five hundred more trainees,  
And ten times a tenfold ten:  
All have entered the stream,  
Never returning to the animal realm.
- 603 "As for the other people who remain— <335>  
Who, to my mind, partake of merit—  
I cannot even number them  
From dread of speaking falsely."<sup>417</sup> [155]

14 (4) *Aruṇavati*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvattthī.... There the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Bhikkhus!"

"Venerable sir!" those bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

"Bhikkhus, once in the past there was a king name Aruṇavā whose capital was named Aruṇavati. The Blessed One Sikhī, the Arahant, the Perfectly Enlightened One, dwelt in dependence on the capital Aruṇavati.<sup>418</sup> The chief pair of disciples of the Blessed One Sikhī were named Abhibhū and Sambhava, an excellent pair. Then the Blessed One Sikhī addressed the bhikkhu Abhibhū: 'Come, <336> brahmin, let us go to a certain brahmā world until it is time for our meal.' – 'Yes, venerable sir,' the bhikkhu Abhibhū replied.

"Then, bhikkhus, just as quickly as a strong man might extend his drawn-in arm or draw in his extended arm, so the Blessed One Sikhī, the Arahant, the Perfectly Enlightened One, and the bhikkhu Abhibhū disappeared from the capital Aruṇavati and reappeared in that brahmā world. Then the Blessed One Sikhī addressed the bhikkhu Abhibhū thus: 'Give a Dhamma talk, brahmin, to Brahmā and to Brahmā's retinue and to Brahmā's assembly.' – 'Yes, venerable sir,' the bhikkhu Abhibhū replied. Then, by means of a Dhammā talk, he instructed, exhorted, inspired, and gladdened Brahmā and Brahmā's retinue and Brahmā's assembly. Thereupon Brahmā and Brahmā's retinue and [156] Brahmā's assembly found fault with this, grumbled, and complained about it, saying: 'It is wonderful indeed, sir! It is amazing indeed, sir! How <337> can a disciple teach the Dhamma in the very presence of the Teacher?'

"Then, bhikkhus, the Blessed One Sikhī addressed the bhikkhu Abhibhū thus: 'Brahmin, Brahmā and Brahmā's retinue and Brahmā's assembly deplore this, saying, "It is wonderful indeed, sir! It is amazing indeed, sir! How can a disciple teach the Dhamma in the very presence of the Teacher?" Well then, brahmin, stir up an even greater sense of urgency in Brahmā and in Brahmā's retinue and in Brahmā's assembly.' – 'Yes, venerable sir,' the bhikkhu Abhibhū replied. Then he taught the Dhamma with his body visible, and with his body invisible, and

with the lower half of his body visible and the upper half invisible, and with the upper half of his body visible and the lower half invisible.<sup>419</sup> Thereupon, bhikkhus, Brahmā and Brahmā's retinue and Brahmā's assembly were struck with wonder and amazement, saying: 'It is wonderful indeed, sir! It is amazing indeed, sir! How the ascetic has such great power and might!'

"Then, bhikkhus, the bhikkhu Abhibhū said to the Blessed One Sikhī, the Arahant, the Perfectly Enlightened One: 'I recall, venerable sir, having made such a statement as this in the midst of the Bhikkhu Saṅgha: <338> "Friends, while standing in the brahmā world I can make my voice heard throughout the thousandfold world system." – 'Now is the time for that, brahmin! Now is the time for that, brahmin! While standing in the brahmā world you should make your voice heard throughout the thousandfold world system.' – 'Yes, venerable sir,' the bhikkhu Abhibhū replied. Then, while standing in the brahmā world, he recited these verses:<sup>420</sup>

604 "Arouse your energy, strive on!  
Exert yourself in the Buddha's Teaching.  
Sweep away the army of Death  
As an elephant does a hut of reeds. [157]

605 "One who dwells diligently  
In this Dhamma and Discipline,  
Having abandoned the wandering on in birth,  
Will make an end to suffering.'

"Then, bhikkhus, having stirred up a sense of urgency in Brahmā and in Brahmā's retinue and in Brahmā's assembly, just as quickly as a strong man might extend his drawn-in arm or draw in his extended arm, the Blessed One Sikhī, the Arahant, the Perfectly Enlightened One, and the bhikkhu Abhibhū disappeared from that brahmā world and reappeared in the capital Aruṇavati. <339> Then the Blessed One Sikhī addressed the bhikkhus thus: 'Bhikkhus, did you hear the verses that the bhikkhu Abhibhū recited while he was standing in the brahmā world?' – 'We did, venerable sir.' – 'What were the verses that you heard, bhikkhus?' – 'We heard the verses of the bhikkhu Abhibhū thus:

606–7 "Arouse your energy, strive on!...  
Will make an end to suffering."

Such were the verses that we heard the bhikkhu Abhibhū recite while he was standing in the brahmā world.' – 'Good, good, bhikkhus! It is good that you heard the verses that the bhikkhu Abhibhū recited while he was standing in the brahmā world.'" <340>

This is what the Blessed One said. Elated, those bhikkhus delighted in the Blessed One's statement.

#### 15 (5) *Final Nibbāna*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Kusinārā in Upavattana, the sal tree grove of the Mallans, between the twin sal trees, on the occasion of his final Nibbāna.<sup>421</sup> Then the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Now [158] I address you, bhikkhus: Formations are bound to vanish. Strive to attain the goal by diligence." This was the last utterance of the Tathāgata.

Then the Blessed One attained the first jhāna. Having emerged from the first jhāna, he attained the second jhāna. Having emerged from the second jhāna, he attained the third jhāna. Having emerged from the third jhāna, he attained the fourth jhāna. Having emerged from the fourth jhāna, he attained the base of the infinity of space. Having emerged from the base of the infinity of space, he attained the base of the infinity of consciousness. Having emerged from the base of the infinity of consciousness, he attained the base of nothingness. Having emerged from the base of nothingness, he attained the base of neither-perception-nor-nonperception. Having emerged from the base of neither-perception-nor-nonperception, he attained the cessation of perception and feeling. <341>

Having emerged from the cessation of perception and feeling, he attained the base of neither-perception-nor-nonperception. Having emerged from the base of neither-perception-nor-nonperception, he attained the base of nothingness. Having emerged from the base of nothingness, he attained the base of the infinity of consciousness. Having emerged from the base of the infinity of consciousness, he attained the base of the infinity

of space. Having emerged from the base of the infinity of space, he attained the fourth jhāna. Having emerged from the fourth jhāna, he attained the third jhāna. Having emerged from the third jhāna, he attained the second jhāna. Having emerged from the second jhāna, he attained the first jhāna.

Having emerged from the first jhāna, he attained the second jhāna. Having emerged from the second jhāna, he attained the third jhāna. Having emerged from the third jhāna, he attained the fourth jhāna. Having emerged from the fourth jhāna, immediately after this the Blessed One attained final Nibbāna.<sup>422</sup>

When the Blessed One attained final Nibbāna, simultaneously with his final Nibbāna Brahmā Sahampati recited this verse:

608 "All beings in the world  
Will finally lay the body down,  
Since such a one as the Teacher,  
The peerless person in the world,  
The Tathāgata endowed with the powers,  
The Buddha, has attained final Nibbāna."<sup>423</sup> <342>

When the Blessed One attained final Nibbāna, simultaneously with his final Nibbāna Sakka, lord of the devas, recited this verse:

609 "Impermanent indeed are formations;  
Their nature is to arise and vanish.  
Having arisen, they cease:  
Their appeasement is blissful."<sup>424</sup>

When the Blessed One attained final Nibbāna, simultaneously with his final Nibbāna the Venerable Ānanda recited this verse:<sup>425</sup>

610 "Then there was terror,  
Then there was trepidation,  
When the one perfect in all excellent qualities,  
The Buddha, attained final Nibbāna." [159]

When the Blessed One attained final Nibbāna, simultaneously with his final Nibbāna the Venerable Anuruddha recited these verses:

611 "There was no more in-and-out breathing  
In the Stable One of steady mind  
When unstirred, bent on peace,  
The One with Vision attained final Nibbāna."<sup>426</sup>

612 "With unshrinking mind  
He endured the pain;  
Like the quenching of a lamp  
Was the deliverance of the mind."<sup>427</sup> <343>

[160] &lt;344&gt;

## Chapter VII

7 *Brāhmaṇasaṃyutta*

## Connected Discourses with Brahmins

## I. THE ARAHANTS

1 (1) *Dhanañjani*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary. Now on that occasion the wife of a certain brahmin of the Bhāradvāja clan, a brahmin lady named Dhanañjāni, had full confidence in the Buddha, the Dhamma, and the Saṅgha.<sup>428</sup> Once, while the brahmin lady Dhanañjāni was bringing the brahmin his meal, she stumbled, whereupon she uttered three times this inspired utterance: "Homage to the Blessed One, the Arahant, the Perfectly Enlightened One! Homage to the Blessed One, the Arahant, the Perfectly Enlightened One! Homage to the Blessed One, the Arahant, the Perfectly Enlightened One!"<sup>429</sup>

When this was said, the brahmin of the Bhāradvāja clan said to her: "For the slightest thing this wretched woman <345> spouts out praise of that shaveling ascetic! Now, wretched woman, I am going to refute the doctrine of that teacher of yours."<sup>430</sup>

"I do not see anyone, brahmin, in this world with its devas, Māra, and Brahmā, in this generation with its ascetics and brahmins, its devas and humans, who could refute the doctrine of the Blessed One, the Arahant, the Perfectly Enlightened One. But go, brahmin. When you have gone, you will understand."

Then the brahmin of the Bhāradvāja clan, angry and displeased, approached the Blessed One and exchanged greetings with him. When they had concluded their greetings and cordial talk, he sat down to one side [161] and addressed the Blessed One in verse:<sup>431</sup>

613 "Having slain what does one sleep soundly?  
Having slain what does one not sorrow? <346>  
What is the one thing, O Gotama,  
Whose killing you approve?"

[The Blessed One:]

614 "Having slain anger, one sleeps soundly;  
Having slain anger, one does not sorrow;  
The killing of anger, O brahmin,  
With its poisoned root and honeyed tip:  
This is the killing the noble ones praise,  
For having slain that, one does not sorrow."

When this was said, the brahmin of the Bhāradvāja clan said to the Blessed One: "Magnificent, Master Gotama! Magnificent, Master Gotama! The Dhamma has been made clear in many ways by Master Gotama, as though he were turning upright what had been turned upside down, revealing what was hidden, showing the way to one who was lost, or holding up a lamp in the dark for those with eyesight to see forms. I go for refuge to Master Gotama, and to the Dhamma, and to the Bhikkhu Saṅgha. May I receive the going forth under Master Gotama, may I receive the higher ordination?"

Then the brahmin of the Bhāradvāja clan received the going forth under the Blessed One, he received the higher ordination. And soon, not long after his higher ordination, dwelling alone, withdrawn, diligent, ardent, and resolute, the Venerable Bhāradvāja, by realizing it for himself with direct knowledge, in this very life entered and dwelt in that unsurpassed goal of the holy life for the sake of which clansmen rightly go forth from the household life into homelessness. <347> He directly knew: "Destroyed is birth, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more for this state of being."<sup>432</sup> And the Venerable Bhāradvāja became one of the arahants.

2 (2) *Abuse*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary. The brahmin

Akkosaka Bhāradvāja, Bhāradvāja the Abusive, heard:<sup>433</sup> "It is said that the brahmin of the Bhāradvāja clan has gone forth from the household life into homelessness under the ascetic Gotama." Angry and displeased, he approached the Blessed One and [162] abused and reviled him with rude, harsh words.

When he had finished speaking, the Blessed One said to him: "What do you think, brahmin? Do your friends and colleagues, kinsmen and relatives, as well as guests come to visit you?"

"Sometimes they come to visit, Master Gotama."

"Do you then offer them some food or a meal or a snack?"  
<348>

"Sometimes I do, Master Gotama."

"But if they do not accept it from you, then to whom does the food belong?"

"If they do not accept it from me, then the food still belongs to us."

"So too, brahmin, we—who do not abuse anyone, who do not scold anyone, who do not rail against anyone—refuse to accept from you the abuse and scolding and tirade you let loose at us. It still belongs to you, brahmin! It still belongs to you, brahmin!"

"Brahmin, one who abuses his own abuser, who scolds the one who scolds him, who rails against the one who rails at him—he is said to partake of the meal, to enter upon an exchange. But we do not partake of your meal; we do not enter upon an exchange. It still belongs to you, brahmin! It still belongs to you, brahmin!"

"The king and his retinue understand the ascetic Gotama to be an arahant, yet Master Gotama still gets angry."<sup>434</sup>

[The Blessed One:]

615 "How can anger arise in one who is angerless,  
In the tamed one of righteous living, <349>  
In one liberated by perfect knowledge,  
In the Stable One who abides in peace?<sup>435</sup>

616 "One who repays an angry man with anger  
Thereby makes things worse for himself.  
Not repaying an angry man with anger,  
One wins a battle hard to win.

617 "He practises for the welfare of both—  
His own and the other's—  
When, knowing that his foe is angry,  
He mindfully maintains his peace.

618 "When he achieves the cure of both—  
His own and the other's—  
The people who consider him a fool  
Are unskilled in the Dhamma."<sup>436</sup> [163]

When this was said, the brahmin Akkosaka Bhāradvāja said to the Blessed One: "Magnificent, Master Gotama! ... I go for refuge to Master Gotama, and to the Dhamma, and to the Bhikkhu Saṅgha. May I receive the going forth under Master Gotama, may I receive the higher ordination?"

Then the brahmin of the Bhāradvāja clan received the going forth under the Blessed One, he received the higher ordination. And soon, not long after his higher ordination, dwelling alone ... <350> ... the Venerable Bhāradvāja became one of the arahants.

### 3 (3) *Asurindaka*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary. The brahmin Asurindaka Bhāradvāja heard:<sup>437</sup> "It is said that the brahmin of the Bhāradvāja clan has gone forth from the household life into homelessness under the ascetic Gotama." Angry and displeased, he approached the Blessed One and abused and reviled him with rude, harsh words.

When he had finished speaking, the Blessed One remained silent. Then the brahmin Asurindaka Bhāradvāja said to the Blessed One: "You're beaten, ascetic! You're beaten, ascetic!"

[The Blessed One:]

619 "The fool thinks victory is won  
When, by speech, he bellows harshly;  
But for one who understands,  
Patient endurance is the true victory."<sup>438</sup>

620–22 “One who repays an angry man with anger  
 ... (*verses* = 616–18) ... <351>  
 Are unskilled in the Dhamma.” [164]

When this was said, the brahmin Asurindaka Bhāradvāja said to the Blessed One: “Magnificent, Master Gotama!...” And the Venerable Bhāradvāja became one of the arahants.

#### 4 (4) *Bilaṅgika*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary. The brahmin Bilaṅgika Bhāradvāja heard:<sup>439</sup> “It is said that the brahmin of the Bhāradvāja clan has gone forth from the household life into homelessness under the ascetic Gotama.” Angry and displeased, he approached the Blessed One and silently stood to one side.<sup>440</sup> <352>

Then the Blessed One, having known with his own mind the reflection in the brahmin Bilaṅgika Bhāradvāja’s mind, addressed him in verse:

623 “If one wrongs an innocent man,  
 A pure person without blemish,  
 The evil falls back on the fool himself  
 Like fine dust thrown against the wind.”

When this was said, the brahmin Bilaṅgika Bhāradvāja said to the Blessed One: “Magnificent, Master Gotama!...” And the Venerable Bhāradvāja became one of the arahants.

#### 5 (5) *Ahiṃsaka*

At Sāvattḥi. Then the brahmin Ahiṃsaka Bhāradvāja, Bhāradvāja the Harmless, approached the Blessed One and exchanged greetings with him.<sup>441</sup> When they had concluded their greetings and cordial talk, he sat down to one side [165] and said to the Blessed One: “I am Ahiṃsaka the Harmless, Master Gotama. I am Ahiṃsaka the Harmless, Master Gotama.”

[The Blessed One:] <353>

624 “If one were as one’s name implies  
 You would be a harmless one.  
 But it is one who does no harm at all  
 By body, speech, or mind,  
 Who really is a harmless one  
 As he does not harm others.”

When this was said, the brahmin Ahiṃsaka Bhāradvāja said to the Blessed One: “Magnificent, Master Gotama!...” And the Venerable Ahiṃsaka Bhāradvāja became one of the arahants.

#### 6 (6) *Tangle*

At Sāvattḥi. Then the brahmin Jaṭā Bhāradvāja, Bhāradvāja of the Tangle, approached the Blessed One and exchanged greetings with him. When they had concluded their greetings and cordial talk, he sat down to one side and addressed the Blessed One in verse:

625 “A tangle inside, a tangle outside,  
 This generation is entangled in a tangle.  
 I ask you this, O Gotāma,  
 Who can disentangle this tangle?” <354>

[The Blessed One:]

626 “A man established on virtue, wise,  
 Developing the mind and wisdom,  
 A bhikkhu ardent and discreet:  
 He can disentangle this tangle.

627 “Those for whom lust and hatred  
 Along with ignorance have been expunged,  
 The arahants with taints destroyed:  
 For them the tangle is disentangled.

628 “Where name-and-form ceases,  
 Stops without remainder,  
 And also impingement and perception of form:  
 It is here this tangle is cut.”

When this was said, the brahmin Jaṭā Bhāradvāja said to the Blessed One: "Magnificent, Master Gotama!..." And the Venerable Bhāradvāja became one of the arahants.

7 (7) *Suddhika*

At Sāvatti. Then the brahmin Suddhika Bhāradvāja approached the Blessed One <355> and exchanged greetings with him. When they had concluded their greetings and cordial talk, he sat down to one side [166] and recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:

629 "In the world no brahmin is ever purified  
Though he be virtuous and austere in practice;  
One accomplished in knowledge and conduct is purified,  
Not the others, the common folk."<sup>442</sup>

[The Blessed One:]

630 "Even though one mutters many chants,  
One does not become a brahmin by birth  
If one is rotten within and defiled,  
Supporting oneself by fraudulent means.

631 "Whether khattiya, brahmin, vessa, sudda,  
Caṇḍāla or scavenger,  
If one is energetic and resolute,  
Always firm in exertion,  
One attains the supreme purity:  
Know, O brahmin, that this is so." <356>

When this was said, the brahmin Suddhika Bhāradvāja said to the Blessed One: "Magnificent, Master Gotama!"... And the Venerable Bhāradvāja became one of the arahants.

8 (8) *Aggika*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary. Now on that occasion milk-rice with ghee had been set out for the brahmin Aggika Bhāradvāja, who had thought: "I will offer a fire sacrifice, I will perform the fire oblation."<sup>443</sup>

Then, in the morning, the Blessed One dressed and, taking bowl and robe, entered Rājagaha for alms. Walking for alms on uninterrupted alms round in Rājagaha, the Blessed One approached the residence of the brahmin Aggika Bhāradvāja and stood to one side. The brahmin Aggika Bhāradvāja saw the Blessed One standing for alms and addressed him in verse: <357>

632 "One endowed with the triple knowledge,  
Of proper birth, of ample learning,  
Accomplished in knowledge and conduct,  
Might partake of this milk-rice meal."<sup>444</sup>

[The Blessed One:]

633 "Even though one mutters many chants,  
One does not become a brahmin by birth  
If one is rotten within and defiled,  
With followers gained by fraudulent means. [167]

634 "One who has known his past abodes,  
Who sees heaven and the plane of woe,  
Who has reached the destruction of birth,  
A sage consummate in direct knowledge."<sup>445</sup>

635 "By means of these three kinds of knowledge  
One is a triple-knowledge brahmin.  
This one accomplished in knowledge and conduct  
Might partake of this milk-rice meal." <358>

[The brahmin Aggika Bhāradvāja:] "Let Master Gotama eat. The worthy is a brahmin."

[The Blessed One:]

636 "Food over which verses have been sung  
Is not fit to be eaten by me.  
This, brahmin, is not the principle  
Observed by those who see.  
The Enlightened Ones reject such food  
Over which verses have been sung.  
As such a principle exists, O brahmin,  
This is their rule of conduct.

637 "Serve with other food and drink  
The consummate one, the great seer  
With taints destroyed and remorse stilled,  
For he is the field for one seeking merit."<sup>446</sup>

When this was said, the brahmin Aggika Bhāradvāja said to the Blessed One: "Magnificent, Master Gotama!"... And the Venerable Aggika Bhāradvāja became one of the arahants.

### 9 (9) *Sundarika*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling among the Kosalans on the bank of the river Sundarika. Now on that occasion <359> the brahmin Sundarika Bhāradvāja was offering a fire sacrifice and performing the fire oblation on the bank of the river Sundarika. Then the brahmin Sundarika Bhāradvāja, having offered the fire sacrifice and performed the fire oblation, rose from his seat and surveyed the four quarters all around, wondering: "Who now might eat this sacrificial cake?"<sup>447</sup>

The brahmin Sundarika Bhāradvāja saw the Blessed One sitting at the foot of a tree with his head covered. Having seen him, he took the sacrificial cake in his left hand and the waterpot in his right hand and approached the Blessed One. When the Blessed One heard the sound of the brahmin's footsteps, he uncovered his head. Then the brahmin Sundarika Bhāradvāja, thinking, "This worthy is shaven-headed, [168] this worthy is a shaveling," wanted to turn back; <360> but it occurred to him: "Some brahmins here are also shaven-headed. Let me approach him and inquire about his birth."

Then the brahmin Sundarika Bhāradvāja approached the Blessed One and said to him: "What is the worthy one's birth?"

[The Blessed One:]

638 "Ask not of birth but ask of conduct:  
Fire is indeed produced from any wood.  
A resolute sage, though from low family,  
Is a thoroughbred restrained by a sense of shame."<sup>448</sup>

639 "The sacrificer should invoke this one:  
One tamed by truth, perfect by taming,

Who has reached the end of knowledge,  
A fulfiller of the holy life.  
Then he makes a timely oblation  
To one worthy of offerings."<sup>449</sup> <361>

[The brahmin Sundarika Bhāradvāja:]

640 "Surely my sacrifice is well performed  
As I have seen such a knowledge-master.  
Because I had not seen those like yourself  
Other people ate the sacrificial cake.

"Let Master Gotama eat. The worthy is a brahmin."

[The Blessed One:]

641-42 "Food over which verses have been sung  
... (*verses* = 636-37) ...  
For he is the field for one seeking merit." <362>

"Then, Master Gotama, should I give this sacrificial cake to someone else?"

"I do not see anyone, brahmin, in this world with its devas, Māra, and Brahmā, in this generation with its ascetics and brahmins, its devas and humans, who could ēāt and properly digest this sacrificial cake [169] except the Tathāgata or a disciple of the Tathāgata.<sup>450</sup> Therefore, brahmin, throw away the sacrificial cake in a place where there is sparse vegetation or dispose of it in water where there are no living beings."

Then the brahmin Sundarika Bhāradvāja disposed of that sacrificial cake in water where there were no living beings. When it was disposed of in the water, that sacrificial cake sizzled and hissed and gave off steam and smoke.<sup>451</sup> Just as a ploughshare, heated all day, sizzles and hisses and gives off steam and smoke if placed in water, so too that sacrificial cake, <363> when disposed of in the water, sizzled and hissed and gave off steam and smoke.

Then the brahmin Sundarika Bhāradvāja, shocked and terrified, approached the Blessed One and stood to one side. The Blessed One then addressed him with verses:

643 "When kindling wood, brahmin, do not imagine  
This external deed brings purity;

For experts say no purity is gained  
By one who seeks it outwardly.

644 "Having given up the fire made from wood,  
I kindle, O brahmin, the inner light alone.  
Always ablaze, my mind always concentrated,  
I am an arahant living the holy life.

645 "Conceit, O brahmin, is your shoulder-load, <364>  
Anger the smoke, false speech the ashes;  
The tongue is the ladle, the heart the altar,  
A well-tamed self is the light of a man.<sup>452</sup>

646 "The Dhamma is a lake with fords of virtue—  
Limpid, praised by the good to the good—  
Where the knowledge-masters go to bathe,  
And, dry-limbed, cross to the far shore.<sup>453</sup>

647 "Truth, Dhamma, restraint, the holy life,  
Attainment of Brahmā based on the middle: [170]  
Pay homage, O brahmin, to the upright ones;  
I call that person one impelled by Dhamma."<sup>454</sup>

When this was said, the brahmin Sundarika Bhāradvāja said to the Blessed One: "Magnificent, Master Gotama!"... And the Venerable Sundarika Bhāradvāja became one of the arahants. <365>

#### 10 (10) Many Daughters

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling among the Kosalans in a certain woodland thicket. Now on that occasion fourteen oxen belonging to a certain brahmin of the Bhāradvāja clan had gotten lost. Then the brahmin of the Bhāradvāja clan, while searching for those oxen, went to the woodland thicket where the Blessed One was staying. There he saw the Blessed One sitting with his legs folded crosswise, holding his body erect, having set up mindfulness in front of him. Having seen him, he approached the Blessed One and recited these verses in the presence of the Blessed One:

648 "Surely this ascetic does not have  
Fourteen oxen [that have gotten lost],  
Not seen now for the past six days:  
Hence this ascetic is happy.<sup>455</sup>

649 "Surely this ascetic does not have  
A field of blighted sesamum plants,  
Some with one leaf, some with two:  
Hence this ascetic is happy. <366>

650 "Surely this ascetic does not have  
Rats inside an empty barn  
Dancing around merrily:  
Hence this ascetic is happy.

651 "Surely this ascetic does not have  
A blanket that for seven months  
Has been covered with swarms of vermin:  
Hence this ascetic is happy.

652 "Surely this ascetic does not have  
Seven daughters left for widows,  
Some with one son, some with two:  
Hence this ascetic is happy.<sup>456</sup>

653 "Surely this ascetic does not have  
A tawny wife with pockmarked face  
Who wakes him up with a kick:  
Hence this ascetic is happy.

654 "Surely this ascetic does not have  
Creditors who call at dawn,  
Chiding him, 'Pay up! Pay up!': <367>  
Hence this ascetic is happy."

[The Blessed One:]

655 "Surely, brahmin, I do not have  
Fourteen oxen [that have gotten lost],  
Not seen now for the past six days:  
Hence, O brahmin, I am happy. [171]

- 656 "Surely, brahmin, I do not have  
A field of blighted sesamum plants,  
Some with one leaf, some with two:  
Hence, O brahmin, I am happy.
- 657 "Surely, brahmin, I do not have  
Rats inside an empty barn  
Dancing around merrily:  
Hence, O brahmin, I am happy.
- 658 "Surely, brahmin, I do not have  
A blanket that for seven months  
Has been covered with swarms of vermin:  
Hence, O brahmin, I am happy.
- 659 "Surely, brahmin, I do not have  
Seven daughters left for widows,  
Some with one son, some with two:  
Hence, O brahmin, I am happy. <368>
- 660 "Surely, brahmin, I do not have  
A tawny wife with pockmarked face  
Who wakes me up with a kick:  
Hence, O brahmin, I am happy.
- 661 "Surely, brahmin, I do not have  
Creditors who call at dawn,  
Chiding me, 'Pay up! Pay up!':  
Hence, O brahmin, I am happy."

When this was said, the brahmin of the Bhāradvāja clan said to the Blessed One: "Magnificent, Master Gotama!"... And the Venerable Bhāradvāja became one of the arahants.<sup>457</sup> <369>

## [172] II. THE LAY FOLLOWERS

11 (1) *Kasi Bhāradvāja*

Thus have I heard.<sup>458</sup> On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling among the Magadhans at Dakkhināgiri near the brahmin

village of Ekanāḷa. Now on that occasion the brahmin Kasi Bhāradvāja, Bhāradvāja the Ploughman, had five hundred ploughs fastened to their yokes at the time of sowing.<sup>459</sup> Then, in the morning, the Blessed One dressed and, taking bowl and robe, went to the place where the brahmin Kasi Bhāradvāja was at work.

Now on that occasion the brahmin Kasi Bhāradvāja's food distribution was taking place.<sup>460</sup> Then the Blessed One approached the place of the food distribution <370> and stood to one side. The brahmin Kasi Bhāradvāja saw the Blessed One standing for alms and said to him:

"Recluse, I plough and sow, and when I have ploughed and sown I eat. You too, ascetic, ought to plough and sow; then, when you have ploughed and sown, you will eat."

"I too, brahmin, plough and sow, and when I have ploughed and sown I eat."

"But we do not see Master Gotama's yoke or plough or ploughshare or goad or oxen; yet Master Gotama says, 'I too, brahmin, plough and sow, and when I have ploughed and sown I eat.'"

Then the brahmin Kasi Bhāradvāja addressed the Blessed One in verse: <371>

- 662 "You claim to be a man who works the plough,  
But I do not see your ploughing.  
If you're a ploughman, answer me:  
How should we understand your ploughing?"

[The Blessed One:]

- 663 "Faith is the seed, austerity the rain,  
Wisdom my yoke and plough;  
Shame is the pole, mind the yoke-tie,  
Mindfulness my ploughshare and goad.<sup>461</sup>
- 664 "Guarded in body, guarded in speech,  
Controlled in my appetite for food,  
I use truth as my weeding-hook,  
And gentleness as my unyoking.<sup>462</sup> [173]
- 665 "Energy is my beast of burden,  
Carrying me to security from bondage.

It goes ahead without stopping  
To where, having gone, one does not sorrow.<sup>463</sup>

666 "In such a way this ploughing is done  
Which has the Deathless as its fruit.  
Having finished this work of ploughing, <372>  
One is released from all suffering."

"Let Master Gotama eat! The worthy is a ploughman, since  
Master Gotama does ploughing that has even the Deathless as  
its fruit."

667–68 "Food over which verses have been sung  
... (*verses = 636–37*) ...  
For he is the field for one seeking merit."

When this was said, the brahmin Kasi Bhāradvāja said to the  
Blessed One: "Magnificent, Master Gotama! Magnificent, Master  
Gotama! The Dhamma has been made clear in many ways by  
Master Gotama, as though he were turning upright what had  
been turned upside down, revealing what was hidden, showing  
the way to one who was lost, or holding up a lamp in the dark  
for those with eyesight to see forms. <373> I go for refuge to  
Master Gotama, and to the Dhamma, and to the Bhikkhu  
Saṅgha. Let Master Gotama remember me as a lay follower who  
from today has gone for refuge for life."

#### 12 (2) *Udaya*

At Sāvatti. Then, in the morning, the Blessed One dressed and,  
taking bowl and robe, approached the residence of the brahmin  
Udaya. Then the brahmin Udaya filled the Blessed One's bowl  
with rice. A second time in the morning the Blessed One dressed  
and, taking bowl and robe, approached the residence of the  
brahmin Udaya.... A third time in the morning the Blessed One  
dressed and, taking bowl and robe, approached the residence of  
the brahmin Udaya.<sup>464</sup> Then a third time the brahmin Udaya  
filled the Blessed One's bowl with rice, [174] after which he said  
to the Blessed One: "This pesky ascetic Gotama keeps coming  
again and again."<sup>465</sup>

[The Blessed One:]

669 "Again and again, they sow the seed;  
Again and again, the sky-god sends down rain; <374>  
Again and again, ploughmen plough the field;  
Again and again, grain comes to the realm.

670 "Again and again, the mendicants beg;  
Again and again, the donors give;  
When donors have given again and again,  
Again and again they go to heaven.

671 "Again and again, the dairy folk draw milk;  
Again and again, the calf goes to its mother;  
Again and again, one wearies and trembles;  
Again and again, the dolt enters the womb;  
Again and again, one is born and dies;  
Again and again, they take one to the cemetery.

672 "But when one has obtained the path  
That leads to no more renewed existence,  
Having become broad in wisdom,  
One is not born again and again!"

When this was said, the brahmin Udaya said to the Blessed  
One: "Magnificent, Master Gotama! Magnificent, Master  
Gotama!... Let Master Gotama remember me as a lay follower  
who from today has gone for refuge for life." <375>

#### 13 (3) *Devahita*

At Sāvatti. Now on that occasion the Blessed One was afflicted  
by winds and the Venerable Upavāṇa was his attendant.<sup>466</sup> Then  
the Blessed One addressed the Venerable Upavāṇa thus: "Come  
now, Upavāṇa, find some hot water for me."

"Yes, venerable sir," the Venerable Upavāṇa replied. Then he  
dressed and, taking bowl and robe, went to the residence of the  
brahmin Devahita, where he stood silently to one side. The  
brahmin Devahita saw the Venerable Upavāṇa standing silently  
to one side and addressed him in verse: [175]

- 673 "Silent, the worthy one stands,  
Shaven-headed, clad in a stitched robe.  
What do you want, what do you seek,  
What have you come here to beg?"

[The Venerable Upavāṇa:]

- 674 "The Arahant, the Fortunate One in the world,  
The Sage, is afflicted with winds. <376>  
If there is any hot water, brahmin,  
Please give it for the Sage.
- 675 "He is worshipped by those worthy of worship,  
Honoured by those worthy of honour,  
Respected by those worthy of respect:  
It is to him that I wish to take it."

Then the brahmin Devahita ordered a man to bring a carrying pole with hot water and presented a bag of molasses to the Venerable Upavāṇa. Then the Venerable Upavāṇa approached the Blessed One. He had the Blessed One bathed with the hot water, and he mixed the molasses with hot water and offered it to him. Then the Blessed One's ailment subsided.

Then the brahmin Devahita approached the Blessed One and exchanged greetings with him, after which he sat down to one side and addressed the Blessed One in verse:

- 676 "Where should one give a proper gift? <377>  
Where does a gift bear great fruit?  
How, for one bestowing alms,  
Does an offering bring success—just how?"<sup>467</sup>

[The Blessed One:]

- 677 "One who has known his past abodes,  
Who sees heaven and the plane of woe,  
Who has reached the destruction of birth,  
A sage consummate in direct knowledge:  
678 Here one should give a proper gift,  
Here a gift bears great fruit.  
That's how, for one bestowing alms,  
An offering brings success—just so!"

When this was said, the brahmin Devahita said to the Blessed One: "Magnificent, Master Gotama! Magnificent, Master Gotama!... Let Master Gotama remember me as a lay follower who from today has gone for refuge for life."

#### 14 (4) *The Affluent One*

At Sāvatti.<sup>468</sup> Then a certain affluent brahmin, shabby, clad in a shabby cloak, [176] approached the Blessed One <378> and exchanged greetings with him. When they had concluded their greetings and cordial talk, he sat down to one side, and the Blessed One then said to him: "Why now, brahmin, are you so shabby, clad in a shabby cloak?"

"Here, Master Gotama, my four sons, instigated by their wives, have expelled me from the house."

"Well then, brahmin, learn these verses and recite them when the multitude has assembled in the meeting hall with your sons sitting together there:

- 679 "Those at whose birth I took delight  
And whose success I much desired,  
Being instigated by their wives,  
Chase me out as dogs chase swine.
- 680 "These evil fellows are indeed mean,  
Although they call me, 'Dad, dear Dad.'  
They're demons in the guise of sons <379>  
To abandon me when I've grown old.
- 681 "As an old horse of no more use  
Is led away from its fodder,  
So the old father of those boys  
Begs for alms at others' homes.
- 682 "Better for me is the staff I use  
Than those disobedient sons;  
For the staff drives off the wild bull  
And drives away the wild dog.
- 683 "In the dark it goes before me,

In the deep it gives me support.  
By the gracious power of the staff,  
If I stumble I still stand firm."

Then that affluent brahmin, having learned these verses in the presence of the Blessed One, recited them when the multitude had assembled in the meeting hall with his sons sitting together there:

684–88 "Those at whose birth I took delight ... <380>  
If I stumble I still stand firm." [177]

Then the sons led that affluent brahmin to their house, bathed him, and each gave him a pair of clothes. Then that affluent brahmin, having taken one pair of clothes, approached the Blessed One and exchanged greetings with him. <381> Then he sat down to one side and said to the Blessed One: "Master Gotama, we brahmins seek a teacher's fee for our teacher. Let Master Gotama accept a teacher's fee from me." The Blessed One accepted out of compassion.

Then that affluent brahmin said to the Blessed One: "Magnificent, Master Gotama! Magnificent, Master Gotama!... Let Master Gotama remember me as a lay follower who from today has gone for refuge for life."

#### 15 (5) *Mānatthaddha*

At Sāvatti. Now on that occasion a brahmin named Mānatthaddha, Stiff with Conceit, was residing at Sāvatti.<sup>469</sup> He did not pay homage to his mother or father, nor to his teacher or eldest brother. Now on that occasion the Blessed One was teaching the Dhamma surrounded by a large assembly. <382> Then it occurred to the brahmin Mānatthaddha: "This ascetic Gotama is teaching the Dhamma surrounded by a large assembly. Let me approach him. If the ascetic Gotama addresses me, then I will address him in turn. But if he does not address me, neither will I address him."

Then the brahmin Mānatthaddha approached the Blessed One and stood silently to one side, but the Blessed One did not address him. Then the brahmin Mānatthaddha, thinking, "This

ascetic Gotama doesn't know anything,"<sup>470</sup> wanted to turn back, [178] but the Blessed One, having known with his own mind the reflection in the brahmin's mind, addressed the brahmin Mānatthaddha in verse:

689 "The fostering of conceit is never good  
For one keen on his welfare, brahmin.  
You should instead foster that purpose  
Because of which you've come here."<sup>471</sup> <383>

Then the brahmin Mānatthaddha, thinking, "The ascetic Gotama knows my mind," prostrated himself right there with his head at the Blessed One's feet. He kissed the Blessed One's feet, stroked them with his hands, and announced his name thus: "I am Mānatthaddha, Master Gotama! I am Mānatthaddha, Master Gotama!"

Then that assembly was struck with amazement and the people said: "It is wonderful indeed, sir! It is amazing indeed, sir! This brahmin Mānatthaddha does not pay homage to his mother and father, nor to his teacher or eldest brother, yet he shows such supreme honour towards the ascetic Gotama."<sup>472</sup>

Then the Blessed One said to the brahmin Mānatthaddha: "Enough, brahmin! Get up and sit in your own seat, as your mind has confidence in me."

Then the brahmin Mānatthaddha sat down in his own seat and addressed the Blessed One in verse:

690 "Towards whom should one avoid conceit?  
Towards whom should one show reverence?  
To whom should one be ever respectful? <384>  
Whom is it proper to venerate deeply?"

[The Blessed One:]

691 "First one's own mother and father,  
Then one's eldest family brother,  
Then one's teacher as the fourth:  
Towards these one should avoid conceit;  
Towards these one should be reverential;  
These should be well respected;  
These it is good to venerate deeply.

692 "Having struck down conceit, humble,  
One should pay homage to the arahants,  
Those cool of heart, their tasks done,  
The taintless ones, unsurpassed."

When this was said, the brahmin Mānatthaddha said to the Blessed One: "Magnificent, Master Gotama! Magnificent, Master Gotama!... <385> Let Master Gotama remember me as a lay follower who from today has gone for refuge for life." [179]

16 (6) *Paccanika*

At Sāvatti. Now on that occasion a brahmin named Paccanikasāta, Relisher of Contradiction, was residing at Sāvatti. Then it occurred to the brahmin Paccanikasāta: "Let me approach the ascetic Gotama and contradict whatever he says."

Now on that occasion the Blessed One was walking back and forth in the open. Then the brahmin Paccanikasāta approached the Blessed One and said to him while he was walking back and forth: "Speak Dhamma, ascetic!"

[The Blessed One:]

693 "Well-spoken counsel is hard to understand  
By one who relishes contradiction,  
By one with a corrupt mind <386>  
Who is engrossed in aggression.

694 "But if one has removed aggression  
And the distrust of one's heart,  
If one has cast away aversion,  
One can understand well-spoken counsel."

When this was said, the brahmin Paccanikasāta said to the Blessed One: "Magnificent, Master Gotama! Magnificent, Master Gotama!... Let Master Gotama remember me as a lay follower who from today has gone for refuge for life."

17 (7) *Navakammika*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling among the

Kosalans in a certain woodland thicket. Now on that occasion the brahmin Navakammika Bhāradvāja was getting some work done in that woodland thicket.<sup>473</sup> The brahmin Navakammika Bhāradvāja saw the Blessed One sitting at the foot of a certain sal tree with his legs folded crosswise, holding his body erect, having set up mindfulness in front of him. Having seen him, he thought: <387> "I take delight in getting work done in this woodland thicket. What does this ascetic Gotama take delight in getting done?"

Then the brahmin Navakammika Bhāradvāja approached the Blessed One [180] and addressed him in verse:

695 "With what kind of work are you engaged  
Here in this sal woods, bhikkhu,  
By reason of which you find delight  
Alone in the forest, Gotama?"

[The Blessed One:]

696 "There is nothing in the woods I need to do;  
Cut down at the root, my woods is dried up.  
Woodless and dartless, discontent cast off,  
I find delight alone in the woods."<sup>474</sup> <388>

When this was said, the brahmin Navakammika Bhāradvāja said to the Blessed One: "Magnificent, Master Gotama! Magnificent, Master Gotama!... Let Master Gotama remember me as a lay follower who from today has gone for refuge for life."

18 (8) *The Wood Gatherers*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling among the Kosalans in a certain woodland thicket. Now on that occasion a number of brahmin boys, students of a certain brahmin of the Bhāradvāja clan, approached that woodland thicket while collecting firewood. Having approached, they saw the Blessed One sitting in that woodland thicket with his legs folded crosswise, holding his body erect, having set up mindfulness in front of him. Having seen him, they approached the brahmin of the Bhāradvāja clan and said to him: "See now, master, you should

know that in such and such a woodland thicket an ascetic is sitting with his legs folded crosswise, holding his body erect, having set up mindfulness in front of him."

Then the brahmin of the Bhāradvāja clan, together with those brahmin boys, went to that woodland thicket. He saw the Blessed One sitting there ... <389> ... having set up mindfulness in front of him. He then approached the Blessed One and addressed him in verse:

697 "Having entered the empty, desolate forest,  
Deep in the woods where many terrors lurk, [181]  
With a motionless body, steady, lovely,  
How you meditate, bhikkhu, so beautifully!<sup>475</sup>

698 "In the forest where no song or music sounds,  
A solitary sage has resorted to the woods!  
This strikes me as a wonder—that you dwell  
With joyful mind alone in the woods.

699 "I suppose you desire the supreme triple heaven,  
The company of the world's divine lord. <390>  
Therefore you resort to the desolate forest:  
You practise penance here for attaining Brahmā."<sup>476</sup>

[The Blessed One:]

700 "Whatever be the many desires and delights  
That are always attached to the manifold elements,  
The longings sprung from the root of unknowing:  
All I have demolished along with their root."<sup>477</sup>

701 "I am desireless, unattached, disengaged;  
My vision of all things has been purified.  
Having attained the auspicious—supreme enlightenment—  
Self-confident, brahmin, I meditate alone."<sup>478</sup>

When this was said, the brahmin of the Bhāradvāja clan said to the Blessed One: "Magnificent, Master Gotama! Magnificent, Master Gotama!... Let Master Gotama remember me as a lay follower who from today has gone for refuge for life."

### 19 (9) *The Mother Supporter*

<391> At Sāvattḥi. Then a brahmin who supported his mother approached the Blessed One ... and said to him: "Master Gotama, I seek almsfood righteously and thereby support my mother and father. In doing so, am I doing my duty?"

"For sure, brahmin, in doing so you are doing your duty. One who seeks almsfood righteously [182] and thereby supports his mother and father generates much merit.

702 "When a mortal righteously supports his parents,  
Because of this service to them  
The wise praise him here in this world,  
And after death he rejoices in heaven." <392>

When this was said, the brahmin who supported his mother said to the Blessed One: "Magnificent, Master Gotama! Magnificent, Master Gotama!... Let Master Gotama remember me as a lay follower who from today has gone for refuge for life."

### 20 (10) *The Mendicant*

At Sāvattḥi. Then a mendicant brahmin approached the Blessed One ... and said to him: "Master Gotama, I am a mendicant and you are a mendicant. What is the difference between us in this respect?"<sup>479</sup>

[The Blessed One:]

703 "It is not thus that one becomes a mendicant,  
Just because one begs others for alms.  
If one has taken up a domestic practice,  
One still has not become a bhikkhu."<sup>480</sup>

704 "But one here who leads the holy life,  
Having expelled merit and evil, <393>  
Who fares in the world with comprehension:  
He is truly called a bhikkhu."

When this was said, the mendicant brahmin said to the Blessed One: "Magnificent, Master Gotama! Magnificent, Master

Gotama!... Let Master Gotama remember me as a lay follower who from today has gone for refuge for life."

21 (11) *Saṅgārava*

At Sāvatti. Now on that occasion a brahmin named Saṅgārava was residing at Sāvatti. He was a practitioner of water-purification, one who believed in purification by water, who dwelt devoted to the practice of immersing himself in water at dusk and at dawn.

Then, in the morning, the Venerable Ānanda dressed and, taking bowl and robe, entered Sāvatti for alms. Having walked for alms in Sāvatti, when he had returned from his alms round, after his meal he approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, [183] and said to him:

"Here, venerable sir, a brahmin named Saṅgārava is residing at Sāvatti. He is a practitioner of water-purification ... devoted to the practice of immersing himself in water at dusk and at dawn. It would be good, venerable sir, if the Blessed One would approach the residence of the brahmin Saṅgārava <394> out of compassion." The Blessed One consented by silence.

Then, in the morning, the Blessed One dressed and, taking bowl and robe, approached the brahmin Saṅgārava's residence, where he sat down in the appointed seat. Then the brahmin Saṅgārava approached the Blessed One and exchanged greetings with him, after which he sat down to one side. The Blessed One then said to him: "Is it true, brahmin, that you are a practitioner of water-purification, one who believes in purification by water, devoted to the practice of immersing yourself in water at dusk and at dawn?"

"Yes, Master Gotama."

"Considering what benefit do you do this, brahmin?"

"Here, Master Gotama, whatever evil deed I have done during the day I wash away by bathing at dusk. Whatever evil deed I have done at night I wash away by bathing at dawn." <395>

[The Blessed One:]

705 "The Dhamma, brahmin, is a lake with fords of virtue—  
A limpid lake the good praise to the good—

Where the knowledge-masters go to bathe,  
And, dry-limbed, cross to the far shore."<sup>481</sup>

When this was said, the brahmin Saṅgārava said to the Blessed One: "Magnificent, Master Gotama! Magnificent, Master Gotama!... Let Master Gotama remember me as a lay follower who from today has gone for refuge for life." [184]

22 (12) *Khomadussa*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling among the Sakyans where there was a town of the Sakyans named Khomadussa.<sup>482</sup> Then the Blessed One dressed and, taking bowl and robe, entered Khomadussa for alms.

Now on that occasion the brahmin householders of Khomadussa had assembled in council on some business matter while it was drizzling. <396> Then the Blessed One approached the council. The brahmin householders of Khomadussa saw the Blessed One coming in the distance and said: "Who are these shaveling ascetics? Don't they know the rule of order?"<sup>483</sup>

Then the Blessed One addressed the brahmin householders of Khomadussa in verse:

706 "That is no council where the good are absent;  
They are not the good who don't speak Dhamma.  
But having abandoned lust, hate, and delusion,  
Those speaking on Dhamma are alone the good."

When this was said, the brahmin householders of Khomadussa said to the Blessed One: "Magnificent, Master Gotama! Magnificent, Master Gotama! The Dhamma has been made clear in many ways by Master Gotama, as though he were turning upright what had been turned upside down, revealing what was hidden, showing the way to one who was lost, or holding up a lamp in the dark for those with eyesight to see forms. We go for refuge to Master Gotama, and to the Dhamma, and to the Bhikkhu Saṅgha. Let Master Gotama remember us as lay followers who from today have gone for refuge for life." <397>

[185] &lt;398&gt;

## Chapter VIII

8 *Vaṅgīsaṃyutta*

## Connected Discourses with Vaṅgīsa

1 *Renounced*

Thus have I heard.<sup>484</sup> On one occasion the Venerable Vaṅgīsa was dwelling at Āḷavi at the Aggāḷava Shrine together with his preceptor, the Venerable Nigrodhakappa.<sup>485</sup> Now on that occasion the Venerable Vaṅgīsa, newly ordained, not long gone forth, had been left behind as a caretaker of the dwelling.

Then a number of women, beautifully adorned, approached the Aggāḷavaka Park in order to see the dwelling. When the Venerable Vaṅgīsa saw those women, dissatisfaction arose in him; lust infested his mind.<sup>486</sup> Then it occurred to him: "It is a loss for me indeed, it is no gain for me! It is a mishap for me indeed, it is not well gained by me, that dissatisfaction has arisen in me, that lust has infested my mind. How could anyone else dispel my dissatisfaction and arouse delight? <399> Let me dispel my own dissatisfaction and arouse delight by myself."

Then the Venerable Vaṅgīsa, having dispelled his own dissatisfaction and aroused delight by himself, on that occasion recited these verses:

707 "Alas, though I am one who has renounced,  
Gone from home into homelessness,  
These thoughts still run over me,  
Impudent thoughts from the Dark One.<sup>487</sup>

708 "Even if mighty youths, great archers,  
Trained men, masters of the bow,  
A thousand such men who do not flee  
Should surround me on all sides,<sup>488</sup>

709 And if women were to come here  
Still more numerous than this,  
They would never make me tremble  
For I stand firmly in the Dhamma.<sup>489</sup> [186]

710 "I have heard this as a witness <400>  
From the Buddha, Kinsman of the Sun:  
The path leading to Nibbāna—  
That is where my mind delights.<sup>490</sup>

711 "If, while I am dwelling thus,  
You approach me, Evil One,  
I will act in such a way, O Death,  
That you won't even see my path."<sup>491</sup>

2 *Discontent*

On one occasion the Venerable Vaṅgīsa was dwelling at Āḷavi at the Aggāḷava Shrine together with his preceptor, the Venerable Nigrodhakappa. Now on that occasion, when the Venerable Nigrodhakappa returned from his alms round, after his meal he would enter the dwelling and would come out either in the evening or on the following day.

Now on that occasion dissatisfaction had arisen in the Venerable Vaṅgīsa; lust had infested his mind. Then it occurred to the Venerable Vaṅgīsa: "It is a loss for me indeed, it is no gain for me! It is a mishap for me indeed, it is not well gained by me, that dissatisfaction has arisen in me, that lust has infested my mind. <401> How could anyone else dispel my dissatisfaction and arouse delight? Let me dispel my own dissatisfaction and arouse delight."

Then the Venerable Vaṅgīsa, having dispelled his own dissatisfaction and aroused delight, on that occasion recited these verses:

712 "Having abandoned discontent and delight  
And household thoughts entirely,  
One should not nurture lust towards anything;  
The lustless one, without delight—  
He is indeed a bhikkhu.<sup>492</sup>

- 713 "Whatever exists here on earth and in space,  
Comprised by form, included in the world—  
Everything impermanent decays;  
The sages fare having pierced this truth.<sup>493</sup> <402>
- 714 "People are tied to their acquisitions,  
To what is seen, heard, sensed, and felt;  
Dispel desire for this, be unstirred:  
They call him a sage  
Who clings to nothing here.<sup>494</sup> [187]
- 715 "Then those caught in the sixty,  
Led by their own thoughts—  
There are many such among the people  
Who have settled on wrong doctrine:  
One who would not join their faction anywhere,  
Nor utter corrupt speech—he is a bhikkhu.<sup>495</sup>
- 716 "Proficient, long trained in concentration,  
Honest, discreet, without longing,  
The sage has attained the peaceful state,  
Depending on which he bides his time  
Fully quenched within himself."<sup>496</sup> <403>

### 3 Well Behaved

On one occasion the Venerable Vaṅṅisa was living at Āḷavi at the Aggāḷava Shrine together with his preceptor, the Venerable Nigrodhakappa. Now on that occasion, the Venerable Vaṅṅisa, because of his own ingenuity, had been looking down at other well-behaved bhikkhus.<sup>497</sup> Then the thought occurred to the Venerable Vaṅṅisa: "It is a loss for me indeed, it is no gain for me! It is a mishap for me indeed, it is not well gained by me, that because of my ingenuity I look down upon other well-behaved bhikkhus."

Then the Venerable Vaṅṅisa, having aroused remorse in himself, on that occasion recited these verses:

- 717 "Abandon conceit, O Gotama,  
And leave the pathway of conceit entirely.

- Infatuated with the pathway of conceit,  
For a long time you've been remorseful.<sup>498</sup> <404>
- 718 "People smeared by denigration,  
Slain by conceit, fall into hell.  
People sorrow for a long time,  
Slain by conceit, reborn in hell.
- 719 "But a bhikkhu never sorrows at all,  
A path-knower practising rightly.  
He experiences acclaim and happiness;  
Truly they call him a seer of Dhamma.<sup>499</sup> [188]
- 720 "Therefore be pliant here and strenuous;  
Having abandoned the hindrances, be pure.  
Having entirely abandoned conceit,  
Be an end-maker by knowledge, peaceful."<sup>500</sup>

### 4 Ānanda

On one occasion the Venerable Ānanda was dwelling at Sāvatti in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. Then, in the morning, the Venerable Ānanda <405> dressed and, taking bowl and robe, entered Sāvatti for alms with the Venerable Vaṅṅisa as his companion. Now on that occasion dissatisfaction had arisen in the Venerable Vaṅṅisa; lust had infested his mind.<sup>501</sup> Then the Venerable Vaṅṅisa addressed the Venerable Ānanda in verse:

- 721 "I am burning with sensual lust,  
My mind is engulfed by fire.  
Please tell me how to extinguish it,  
Out of compassion, O Gotama."<sup>502</sup>

[The Venerable Ānanda:]

- 722 "It is through an inversion of perception  
That your mind is engulfed by fire.  
Turn away from the sign of beauty  
Provocative of sensual lust."<sup>503</sup>

- 723 "See formations as alien,  
As suffering, not as self.  
Extinguish the great fire of lust;  
Don't burn up again and again."<sup>504</sup>
- 724 "Develop the mind on foulness,  
One-pointed, well concentrated; <406>  
Apply your mindfulness to the body,  
Be engrossed in revulsion."<sup>505</sup>
- 725 "Develop meditation on the signless,  
And discard the tendency to conceit.  
Then, by breaking through conceit,  
You will be one who fares at peace."<sup>506</sup>

#### 5 Well Spoken

At Sāvattī.<sup>507</sup> There the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Bhikkhus!"

"Venerable sir!" those bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

"Bhikkhus, when speech possesses four factors, then it is well spoken, not badly spoken, and it is blameless, not blameworthy among the wise. What four? Here, bhikkhus, a bhikkhu speaks only what is well spoken, not what is badly spoken. He speaks only on the Dhamma, not on non-Dhamma. [189] He speaks only what is pleasant, not what is unpleasant. He speaks only what is true, not what is false. <407> When speech possesses these four factors, it is well spoken, not badly spoken, and it is blameless, not blameworthy among the wise."<sup>508</sup>

This is what the Blessed One said. Having said this, the Fortunate One, the Teacher, further said this:

- 726 "What is well spoken, the good say, is foremost;  
Second, speak Dhamma, not non-Dhamma;  
Third, speak what is pleasant, not unpleasant;  
Fourth, speak the truth, not falsehood."

Then the Venerable Vaṅgisa rose from his seat, arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, and, raising his joined hands in reverential salutation towards the Blessed One, said to him: "An

inspiration has come to me, Blessed One! An inspiration has come to me, Fortunate One!"<sup>509</sup>

The Blessed One said: "Then express your inspiration, Vaṅgisa."

Then the Venerable Vaṅgisa extolled the Blessed One to his face with suitable verses:

- 727 "One should utter only such speech  
By which one does not afflict oneself  
Nor cause harm to others:  
Such speech is truly well spoken. <408>
- 728 "One should utter only pleasant speech,  
Speech that is gladly welcomed.  
When it brings them nothing evil  
What one speaks is pleasant to others.
- 729 "Truth, indeed, is deathless speech:  
This is an ancient principle.  
The goal and the Dhamma, the good say,  
Are established upon truth."<sup>510</sup>
- 730 "The secure speech which the Buddha utters  
For the attainment of Nibbāna,  
For making an end to suffering  
Is truly the foremost speech."<sup>511</sup>

#### 6 Sāriputta

On one occasion the Venerable Sāriputta was dwelling at Sāvattī in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. Now on that occasion the Venerable Sāriputta was instructing, exhorting, inspiring, and gladdening the bhikkhus with a Dhamma talk, <409> [spoken] with speech that was polished, fluent, articulate, expressing well the meaning. And those bhikkhus were listening to the Dhamma with eager ears, attending to it as a matter of vital concern, directing their whole mind to it.

Then it occurred to the Venerable Vaṅgisa: [190] "This Venerable Sāriputta is instructing the bhikkhus with a Dhamma talk, [spoken] with speech that is polished, clear, articulate, expressing well the meaning. And those bhikkhus are listening

to the Dhamma with eager ears.... Let me extol the Venerable Sāriputta to his face with suitable verses."

Then the Venerable Vaṅgisa rose from his seat, arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, and, raising his joined hands in reverential salutation towards the Venerable Sāriputta, said to him: "An inspiration has come to me, friend Sāriputta! An inspiration has come to me, friend Sāriputta!"

"Then express your inspiration, friend Vaṅgisa."

Then the Venerable Vaṅgisa extolled the Venerable Sāriputta to his face with suitable verses:

731 "Deep in wisdom, intelligent,  
Skilled in the true path and the false,  
Sāriputta, of great wisdom,  
Teaches the Dhamma to the bhikkhus.

732 "He teaches briefly, <410>  
He speaks in detail.  
His voice, like that of a myna bird,  
Pours forth inspired discourse.<sup>512</sup>

733 "As he teaches them, they listen  
To his sweet utterance.  
Uplifted in mind, made joyful  
By his delightful voice,  
Sonorous and lovely,  
The bhikkhus incline their ears."

#### 7 *Pavāraṇā*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvatti in the Eastern Park in the Mansion of Migāra's Mother together with a great Saṅgha of bhikkhus, with five hundred bhikkhus, all of them arahants. Now on that occasion—the Uposatha day of the fifteenth—the Blessed One was sitting in the open surrounded by the Bhikkhu Saṅgha in order to hold the Pavāraṇā.<sup>513</sup> Then, having surveyed the silent Bhikkhu Saṅgha, the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Come now, <411> bhikkhus, let me invite you: Is there any deed of mine, either bodily or verbal, which you would censure?"

When this was said, the Venerable Sāriputta rose from his seat, arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, and, raising his joined hands in reverential salutation towards the Blessed One, said to him: "Venerable sir, there is no deed of the Blessed One, either bodily or verbal, that we censure. [191] For, venerable sir, the Blessed One is the originator of the path unarisen before, the producer of the path unproduced before, the declarer of the path undeclared before. He is the knower of the path, the discoverer of the path, the one skilled in the path. And his disciples now dwell following that path and become possessed of it afterwards.<sup>514</sup> And I, venerable sir, invite the Blessed One: Is there any deed of mine, either bodily or verbal, which the Blessed One would censure?"

"There is no deed of yours, Sāriputta, either bodily or verbal, that I censure. For you, Sāriputta, are wise, one of great wisdom, of wide wisdom, of joyous wisdom, of swift wisdom, <412> of sharp wisdom, of penetrative wisdom. Just as the eldest son of a wheel-turning monarch properly keeps in motion the wheel [of sovereignty] set in motion by his father, so do you, Sāriputta, properly keep in motion the Wheel of Dhamma set in motion by me."<sup>515</sup>

"If, venerable sir, the Blessed One does not censure any deed of mine, bodily or verbal, does he censure any deed, bodily or verbal, of these five hundred bhikkhus?"

"There is no deed, Sāriputta, bodily or verbal, of these five hundred bhikkhus that I censure. For of these five hundred bhikkhus, Sāriputta, sixty bhikkhus are triple-knowledge bearers, sixty bhikkhus are bearers of the six direct knowledges, sixty bhikkhus are liberated in both ways, while the rest are liberated by wisdom."<sup>516</sup>

Then the Venerable Vaṅgisa rose from his seat, arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, and, raising his joined hands in reverential salutation towards the Blessed One, said to him: "An inspiration has come to me, Blessed One! An inspiration has come to me, Fortunate One!"

The Blessed One said: "Then express your inspiration, Vaṅgisa." <413>

Then the Venerable Vaṅgisa extolled the Blessed One to his face with suitable verses:

- 734 "Five hundred bhikkhus have gathered today,  
The fifteenth day, for purification—  
Untroubled seers who have ended renewed existence,  
Who have cut off all fetters and bonds. [192]
- 735 "Just as a king, a wheel-turning monarch,  
Accompanied by his ministers,  
Travels all over this mighty earth  
Bounded by the deep dark ocean—
- 736 So they attend on the victor in battle,  
The unsurpassed caravan leader—  
The disciples bearing the triple knowledge,  
Who have left Death far behind.<sup>517</sup>
- 737 "All are true sons of the Blessed One,  
Here no worthless chaff is found.  
I worship the Kinsman of the Sun, <414>  
Destroyer of the dart of craving."

### 8 Over a Thousand

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvattī in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park, together with a great Saṅgha of bhikkhus, with 1,250 bhikkhus. Now on that occasion the Blessed One was instructing, exhorting, inspiring, and encouraging the bhikkhus with a Dhamma talk concerning Nibbāna. And those bhikkhus were listening to the Dhamma with eager ears, attending to it as a matter of vital concern, directing their whole mind to it.

Then it occurred to the Venerable Vaṅgisa: "This Blessed One is instructing the bhikkhus with a Dhamma talk concerning Nibbāna. And those bhikkhus are listening to the Dhamma with eager ears.... Let me extol the Blessed One to his face with suitable verses."

Then the Venerable Vaṅgisa rose from his seat, arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, and, raising his joined hands in reverential salutation towards the Blessed One, said to him: "An inspiration has come to me, Blessed One! An inspiration has come to me, Fortunate One!"

"Then express your inspiration, Vaṅgisa."

Then the Venerable Vaṅgisa extolled the Blessed One to his face with suitable verses: <415>

- 738 "Over a thousand bhikkhus here  
Attend upon the Fortunate One  
As he teaches the dust-free Dhamma,  
Nibbāna inaccessible to fear.<sup>518</sup>
- 739 "They listen to the stainless Dhamma  
Taught by the Perfectly Enlightened One.  
The Enlightened One indeed shines  
Honoured by the Bhikkhu Saṅgha.
- 740 "O Blessed One, your name is 'Nāga,'  
The best seer of the seers.  
Like a great cloud bearing rain  
You pour down on the disciples.<sup>519</sup> [193]
- 741 "Having emerged from his daytime abode  
From a desire to behold the Teacher,  
Your disciple Vaṅgisa, O great hero,  
Bows down in worship at your feet."

"Had you already thought out these verses, Vaṅgisa, or did they occur to you spontaneously?"<sup>520</sup> <416>

"I had not already thought out these verses, venerable sir; they occurred to me spontaneously."

"In that case, Vaṅgisa, let some more verses, not already thought out, occur to you."

"Yes, venerable sir," the Venerable Vaṅgisa replied. Then he extolled the Blessed One with some more verses that had not been previously thought out:

- 742 "Having overcome the deviant course of Māra's path,  
You fare having demolished barrenness of mind.  
Behold him, the releaser from bondage,  
Unattached, dissecting into parts.<sup>521</sup>
- 743 "For the sake of leading us across the flood  
You declared the path with its many aspects.

The seers of Dhamma stand immovable  
In that Deathless declared by you.<sup>522</sup> <417>

744 “The light-maker, having pierced right through,  
Saw the transcendence of all stations;  
Having known and realized it himself,  
He taught the chief matter to the five.<sup>523</sup>

745 “When the Dhamma has been so well taught,  
What negligence is there for those who understand it?  
Therefore, living diligent in the Blessed One’s Teaching,  
One should always reverently train in it.”

### 9 *Koṇḍañña*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary. Then the Venerable Aññā Koṇḍañña, after a very long absence, approached the Blessed One, prostrated himself with his head at the Blessed One’s feet, kissed the Blessed One’s feet, [194] stroked them with his hands, <418> and announced his name thus: “I am Koṇḍañña, Blessed One! I am Koṇḍañña, Fortunate One!”<sup>524</sup>

Then it occurred to the Venerable Vaṅgisa: “This Venerable Aññā Koṇḍañña, after a very long absence, has approached the Blessed One ... kisses the Blessed One’s feet, strokes them with his hands, and announces his name.... Let me extol the Venerable Aññā Koṇḍañña in the Blessed One’s presence with suitable verses.”

Then the Venerable Vaṅgisa rose from his seat, arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, and, raising his joined hands in reverential salutation towards the Blessed One, said to him: “An inspiration has come to me, Blessed One! An inspiration has come to me, Fortunate One!”

“Then express your inspiration, Vaṅgisa.”

Then the Venerable Vaṅgisa extolled the Venerable Aññā Koṇḍañña in the Blessed One’s presence with suitable verses:

746 “Enlightened in succession to the Buddha,  
The elder Koṇḍañña, of strong endeavour,

Is one who gains pleasant dwellings,  
One who often gains the seclusions.<sup>525</sup>

747 “Whatever may be attained by a disciple  
Who practises the Master’s Teaching,  
All that has been attained by him, <419>  
One who trained diligently.

748 “Of great might, a triple-knowledge man,  
Skilled in the course of others’ minds—  
Koṇḍañña, a true heir of the Buddha,  
Pays homage at the Teacher’s feet.”<sup>526</sup>

### 10 *Moggallāna*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha on the Black Rock on the Isigili Slope, together with a great Saṅgha of bhikkhus, with five hundred bhikkhus all of whom were arahants. Thereupon the Venerable Mahāmoggallāna searched their minds with his own mind [and saw that they were] released, without acquisitions.

Then it occurred to the Venerable Vaṅgisa: “The Blessed One is dwelling at Rājagaha on the Black Rock on the Isigili Slope.... Thereupon the Venerable Mahāmoggallāna has searched their minds with his own mind [and seen that they are] released, without acquisitions. Let me extol the Venerable Mahāmoggallāna in the Blessed One’s presence with suitable verses.” [195]

Then the Venerable Vaṅgisa rose from his seat, arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, and, raising his joined hands in reverential salutation towards the Blessed One, said to him: <420> “An inspiration has come to me, Blessed One! An inspiration has come to me, Fortunate One!”

“Then express your inspiration, Vaṅgisa.”

Then the Venerable Vaṅgisa extolled the Venerable Mahāmoggallāna in the Blessed One’s presence with suitable verses:

749 “While the sage is seated on the mountain slope,  
Gone to the far shore of suffering,  
His disciples sit in attendance on him,  
Triple-knowledge men who have left Death behind.

750 “Moggallāna, great in spiritual power,  
Encompassed their minds with his own,  
And searching [he came to see] their minds:  
Fully released, without acquisitions!

751 “Thus those perfect in many qualities  
Attend upon Gotama,  
The sage perfect in all respects,  
Gone to the far shore of suffering.”<sup>527</sup>

### 11 *Gaggarā*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Campā on the bank of the Gaggarā Lotus Pond together with a great Saṅgha of bhikkhus, with five hundred bhikkhus, seven hundred male lay followers, <421> seven hundred female lay followers, and many thousands of devatās. The Blessed One outshone them in beauty and glory.

Then it occurred to the Venerable Vaṅgisa: “This Blessed One is dwelling at Campā ... and many thousands of devatās. The Blessed One outshines them in beauty and glory. Let me extol the Blessed One to his face with suitable verses.”

Then the Venerable Vaṅgisa rose from his seat, arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, and, raising his joined hands in reverential salutation towards the Blessed One, said to him: “An inspiration has come to me, Blessed One! An inspiration has come to me, Fortunate One!”

“Then express your inspiration, Vaṅgisa.”

Then the Venerable Vaṅgisa extolled the Blessed One to his face with a suitable verse: [196]

752 “As the moon shines in a cloudless sky,  
As the sun shines devoid of stain,  
So you, Aṅgīrasa, O great sage,  
Outshine the whole world with your glory.”

### 12 *Vaṅgisa*

<422> On one occasion the Venerable Vaṅgisa was dwelling at Sāvattī in Jeta’s Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika’s Park. Now on that

occasion the Venerable Vaṅgisa had only recently attained arahantship and, while experiencing the happiness of liberation, on that occasion he recited these verses:<sup>528</sup>

753 “Drunk on poetry, I used to wander  
From village to village, town to town.  
Then I saw the Enlightened One  
And faith arose within me.”<sup>529</sup>

754 “He then taught me the Dhamma:  
Aggregates, sense bases, and elements.  
Having heard the Dhamma from him,  
I went forth into homelessness.

755 “Indeed, for the good of many,  
The sage attained enlightenment,  
For the bhikkhus and bhikkhunīs <423>  
Who have reached and seen the fixed course.”<sup>530</sup>

756 “Welcome indeed has it been for me,  
My coming into the Buddha’s presence.  
The three knowledges have been obtained,  
The Buddha’s Teaching has been done.

757 “I know now my past abodes,  
The divine eye is purified.  
A triple knowledge man, attained to spiritual powers,  
I am skilled in the course of others’ minds.”<sup>531</sup>

[197] &lt;424&gt;

## Chapter IX

9 *Vanasamyutta*

## Connected Discourses in the Woods

1 *Seclusion*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion a certain bhikkhu was dwelling among the Kosalans in a certain woodland thicket. Now on that occasion, while that bhikkhu had gone for his day's abiding, he kept on thinking evil unwholesome thoughts connected with the household life.

Then the devatā that inhabited that woodland thicket, having compassion for that bhikkhu, desiring his good, desiring to stir up a sense of urgency in him, approached him and addressed him in verses:

758 "Desiring seclusion you entered the woods,  
Yet your mind gushes outwardly.  
Remove, man, the desire for people;  
Then you'll be happy, devoid of lust.<sup>532</sup>

759 "You must abandon discontent, be mindful—  
Let us remind [you] of that [way] of the good. <425>  
Hard to cross, indeed, is the dusty abyss;  
Don't let sensual dust drag you down.<sup>533</sup>

760 "Just as a bird littered with soil  
With a shake flicks off the sticky dust,  
So a bhikkhu, strenuous and mindful,  
With a shake flicks off the sticky dust."

Then that bhikkhu, stirred up by that devatā, acquired a sense of urgency.

2 *Rousing*

On one occasion a certain bhikkhu was dwelling among the Kosalans in a certain woodland thicket. [198] Now on that occasion when that bhikkhu had gone for his day's abiding he fell asleep.<sup>534</sup> Then the devatā that inhabited that woodland thicket, having compassion for that bhikkhu, desiring his good, desiring to stir up a sense of urgency in him, approached him and addressed him in verses:

761 "Get up, bhikkhu, why lie down? <426>  
What need do you have for sleep?  
What slumber [can there be] for one afflicted,  
Stricken, pierced by the dart?

762 "Nurture in yourself that faith  
With which you left behind the home life  
And went forth into homelessness:  
Don't come under sloth's control."

[The bhikkhu:]<sup>535</sup>

763 "Sensual pleasures are impermanent, unstable,  
Though the dullard is enthralled with them.  
When he's free, detached among those bound,  
Why trouble one gone forth?

764 "When, by the removal of desire and lust  
And the transcendence of ignorance,  
That knowledge has been cleansed,  
Why trouble one gone forth?<sup>536</sup> <427>

765 "When, by breaking ignorance with knowledge  
And by destruction of the taints,  
He is sorrowless, beyond despair,  
Why trouble one gone forth?

766 "When he is energetic and resolute,  
Always firm in his exertion,  
Aspiring to attain Nibbāna,  
Why trouble one gone forth?"<sup>537</sup>

3 *Kassapagotta*

On one occasion the Venerable Kassapagotta was dwelling among the Kosalans in a certain woodland thicket. Now on that occasion, when he had gone for his day's abiding, the Venerable Kassapagotta exhorted a certain hunter.<sup>538</sup> Then the devatā that inhabited that woodland thicket, having compassion for the Venerable Kassapagotta, desiring his good, desiring to stir up a sense of urgency in him, approached him and addressed him in verses:

767 "The bhikkhu strikes me as a dolt <428>  
Who out of season exhorts a hunter  
Roaming in the rugged mountains  
With little wisdom, devoid of sense.

768 "He listens but does not understand,  
He looks but does not see;  
Though the Dhamma is being spoken,  
The fool does not grasp the meaning. [199]

769 "Even if you would bring ten lamps  
[Into his presence], Kassapa,  
Still he would not see forms,  
For he does not have eyes to see."

Then the Venerable Kassapagotta, stirred up by that devatā, acquired a sense of urgency.

4 *A Number*

On one occasion a number of bhikkhus were dwelling among the Kosalans in a certain woodland thicket. Then, when they had spent the rains there, after the three months had passed those bhikkhus set out on tour. <429> Then the devatā that inhabited that woodland thicket, not seeing those bhikkhus, lamenting, on that occasion recited this verse:

770 "Today discontent appears to me  
When I see here so many vacant seats.

Where have they gone, Gotama's disciples,  
Those splendid speakers rich in learning?"<sup>539</sup>

When this was said, another devatā replied in verse:

771 "They've gone to Magadha, gone to Kosala,  
And some are in the Vajjian land.  
Like deer that roam free from ties,  
The bhikkhus dwell without abode."<sup>540</sup>

5 *Ānanda*

On one occasion the Venerable Ānanda was dwelling among the Kosalans in a certain woodland thicket. Now on that occasion the Venerable Ānanda was excessively involved instructing lay people.<sup>541</sup> <430> Then the devatā that inhabited that woodland thicket, having compassion for the Venerable Ānanda, desiring his good, desiring to stir up a sense of urgency in him, approached him and addressed him in verse:

772 "Having entered the thicket at the foot of a tree,  
Having placed Nibbāna in your heart, [200]  
Meditate, Gotama, and don't be negligent!  
What will this hullabaloo do for you?"<sup>542</sup>

Then the Venerable Ānanda, stirred up by that deity, acquired a sense of urgency.

6 *Anuruddha*

On one occasion the Venerable Anuruddha was dwelling among the Kosalans in a certain woodland thicket. Then a certain devatā of the Tāvatiṃsa host named Jālinī, a former consort of the Venerable Anuruddha, approached him and addressed him in verse:<sup>543</sup>

773 "Direct your mind there [to that realm]  
Where you dwelt in the past  
Among the Tāvatiṃsa devas <431>  
For whom all desires are fulfilled.

9 *Vajjian Prince (or Vesāli)*

On one occasion a certain bhikkhu, a Vajjian prince, was dwelling at Vesāli in a certain woodland thicket. Now on that occasion an all-night festival was being held in Vesāli. [202] Then that bhikkhu, lamenting as he heard the clamour of instruments, gongs, and music coming from Vesāli,<sup>549</sup> on that occasion recited this verse:

783 "We dwell in the forest all alone  
Like a log rejected in the woods.  
On such a splendid night as this <435>  
Who is there worse off than us?"

Then the devatā that inhabited that woodland thicket, having compassion for that bhikkhu, desiring his good, desiring to stir up a sense of urgency in him, approached him and addressed him in verse:

784 "As you dwell in the forest all alone  
Like a log rejected in the woods,  
Many are those who envy you,  
As hell-beings envy those going to heaven."<sup>550</sup>

Then that bhikkhu, stirred up by that devatā, acquired a sense of urgency.

10 *Reciting*

On one occasion a certain bhikkhu was dwelling among the Kosalans in a certain woodland thicket. Now on that occasion that bhikkhu had been excessively engrossed in recitation, but on a later occasion he passed the time living at ease and keeping silent.<sup>551</sup> Then the devatā that inhabited that woodland thicket, no longer hearing that bhikkhu recite the Dhamma, <436> approached him and addressed him in verse:

785 "Bhikkhu, why don't you recite Dhamma-stanzas,  
Living in communion with other bhikkhus?"

Hearing the Dhamma, one gains confidence;  
In this very life [the reciter] gains praise."

[The bhikkhu:]

786 "In the past I was fond of Dhamma-stanzas  
So long as I had not achieved dispassion. [203]  
But from the time I achieved dispassion  
[I dwell in what] the good men call  
'The laying down by final knowledge  
Of whatever is seen, heard, or sensed.'"<sup>552</sup>

11 *Unwholesome Thoughts*

On one occasion a certain bhikkhu was dwelling among the Kosalans in a certain woodland thicket. Now on that occasion, when that bhikkhu had gone for the day's abiding, he kept on thinking evil unwholesome thoughts, that is, thoughts of sensuality, ill will, and harming. <437> Then the devatā that inhabited that woodland thicket, having compassion for that bhikkhu, desiring his good, desiring to stir up a sense of urgency in him, approached him and addressed him in verses:

787 "Because of attending carelessly,  
You, sir, are eaten by your thoughts.  
Having relinquished the careless way,  
You should reflect carefully."<sup>553</sup>

788 "By basing your thoughts on the Teacher,  
On Dhamma, Saṅgha, and your own virtues,  
You will surely attain to gladness,  
And rapture and happiness as well.  
Then when you are suffused with gladness,  
You'll make an end to suffering."

Then that bhikkhu, stirred up by that devatā, acquired a sense of urgency.

12 *Noon*

On one occasion a certain bhikkhu was dwelling among the

Kosalans in a certain woodland thicket. Then the devatā that inhabited that woodland thicket <438> approached that bhikkhu and recited this verse in his presence:

789 "When the noon hour sets in  
And the birds have settled down,  
The mighty forest itself murmurs:  
How fearful that appears to me!"

[The bhikkhu:]

790 "When the noon hour sets in  
And the birds have settled down,  
The mighty forest itself murmurs:  
How delightful that appears to me!"

### 13 *Loose in Sense Faculties*

On one occasion a number of bhikkhus were dwelling among the Kosalans in a certain woodland thicket. They were restless, puffed up, personally vain, rough-tongued, [204] rambling in their talk, muddle-minded, without clear comprehension, unconcentrated, scatter-brained, loose in their sense faculties. Then the devatā that inhabited that woodland thicket, having compassion for those bhikkhus, desiring their good, <439> desiring to stir up a sense of urgency in them, approached them and addressed them with verses:

791 "In the past the bhikkhus lived happily,  
The disciples of Gotama.  
Without wishes they sought their alms,  
Without wishes they used their lodgings.  
Having known the world's impermanence,  
They made an end to suffering.

792 "But now like headmen in a village  
They make themselves hard to maintain.  
They eat and eat and then lie down,  
Infatuated in others' homes.

793 "Having reverently saluted the Saṅgha,  
I here speak only about some:  
They are rejected, without protector,  
Become just like the dead.

794 "My statement is made with reference  
To those who dwell in negligence.  
As for those who dwell in diligence,  
To them I humbly pay homage."

Then those bhikkhus, stirred up by that devatā, acquired a sense of urgency. <440>

### 14 *The Thief of Scent*

On one occasion a certain bhikkhu was dwelling among the Kosalans in a certain woodland thicket. Now on that occasion, when he had returned from his alms round, after his meal that bhikkhu used to descend into a pond and sniff a red lotus. Then the devatā that inhabited that woodland thicket, having compassion for that bhikkhu, desiring his good, desiring to stir up a sense of urgency in him, approached him and addressed him in verse:<sup>554</sup>

795 "When you sniff this lotus flower,  
An item that has not been given,  
This is one factor of theft:  
You, dear sir, are a thief of scent."

[The bhikkhu:]

796 "I do not take, I do not damage,  
I sniff the lotus from afar;  
So for what reason do you say  
That I am a thief of scent?<sup>555</sup>

797 "One who digs up the lotus stalks,  
One who damages the flowers,  
One of such rough behaviour: <441>  
Why is he not spoken to?"<sup>556</sup> [205]

[The devatā:]

798 "When a person is rough and fierce,  
Badly soiled like a nursing cloth,  
I have nothing to say to him;  
But it's to you that I ought to speak.

799 "For a person without blemish,  
Always in quest of purity,  
Even a mere hair's tip of evil  
Appears as big as a cloud."

[The bhikkhu:]

800 "Surely, spirit, you understand me,  
And you have compassion for me.  
Please, O spirit, speak to me again,  
Whenever you see such a deed."

[The devatā:]

801 "We don't live with your support,  
Nor are we your hired servant.  
You, bhikkhu, should know for yourself <442>  
The way to a good destination."<sup>557</sup>

Then that bhikkhu, stirred by that devatā, acquired a sense of urgency.

[206] <443>

Chapter X

## 10 *Yakkhasamyutta*

### Connected Discourses with Yakkhas

#### 1 *Indaka*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha on Mount Inda's Peak, the haunt of the yakkha Indaka.<sup>558</sup> Then the yakkha Indaka approached the Blessed One and addressed him in verse:

802 "As the Buddhas say that form is not the soul,  
How then does one obtain this body?  
From where do one's bones and liver come?  
How is one begotten in the womb?"<sup>559</sup>

[The Blessed One:]

803 "First there is the *kalala*;  
From the *kalala* comes the *abbuda*;  
From the *abbuda* the *pesi* is produced;  
From the *pesi* the *ghana* arises;  
From the *ghana* emerge the limbs,  
The head-hair, body-hair, and nails. <444>  
804 And whatever food the mother eats—  
The meals and drink that she consumes—  
By this the being there is maintained,  
The person inside the mother's womb."<sup>560</sup>

#### 2 *Sakkanāmaka*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha on Mount Vulture Peak. Then the yakkha Sakkanāmaka approached the Blessed One and addressed him in verse:

805 "Having abandoned all the knots  
As one fully released,  
It isn't good for you, an ascetic,  
To be instructing others."<sup>561</sup>

[The Blessed One:]

806 "If, O Sakka, for some reason  
Intimacy with anyone should arise,  
The wise man ought not to stir his mind  
With compassion towards such a person.

807 "But if with a mind clear and pure  
He gives instructions to others,  
He does not become fettered <445>  
By his compassion and sympathy."<sup>562</sup> [207]

### 3 *Sūciloma*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Gayā at the Ṭaṅkita Bed, the haunt of the yakkha *Sūciloma*.<sup>563</sup> Now on that occasion the yakkha Khara and the yakkha *Sūciloma* were passing by not far from the Blessed One. Then the yakkha Khara said to the yakkha *Sūciloma*: "That is an ascetic."

"That is not an ascetic; that is a sham ascetic."<sup>564</sup> I'll soon find out whether he is an ascetic or a sham ascetic."

Then the yakkha *Sūciloma* approached the Blessed One and bent over the Blessed One. The Blessed One drew back. Then the yakkha *Sūciloma* said to the Blessed One: "Are you afraid of me, ascetic?"

"I'm not afraid of you, friend. It is just that your touch is evil."<sup>565</sup> <446>

"I'll ask you a question, ascetic. If you won't answer me, I'll drive you insane or I'll split your heart or I'll grab you by the feet and hurl you across the Ganges."

"I do not see anyone in this world, friend, with its devas, Māra, and Brahmā, in this generation with its ascetics and brahmins, its devas and humans, who could drive me insane or split my heart or grab me by the feet and hurl me across the Ganges. But ask whatever you want, friend."

808 "What is the source of lust and hatred?  
Whence spring discontent, delight, and terror?  
Having arisen from what do the mind's thoughts  
[Toss one around] as boys toss up a crow?"<sup>566</sup> <447>

[The Blessed One:]

809 "Lust and hatred have their source here;  
From this spring discontent, delight, and terror;  
Having arisen from this, the mind's thoughts  
[Toss one around] as boys toss up a crow."<sup>567</sup>

810 "Sprung from affection, arisen from oneself,  
Like the trunk-born shoots of the banyan tree;  
Manifold, clinging to sensual pleasures,  
Like a *māluvā* creeper stretched across the woods."<sup>568</sup> [208]

811 "Those who understand their source,  
They dispel it—listen, O yakkha!—  
They cross this flood so hard to cross,  
Uncrossed before, for no renewed existence."<sup>569</sup>

### 4 *Maṇibhadda*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling among the Magadhans at the Maṇimālaka Shrine, the haunt of the yakkha *Maṇibhadda*. Then the yakkha *Maṇibhadda* approached the Blessed One and in the Blessed One's presence recited this verse:

812 "It is always good for the mindful one,  
The mindful one thrives in happiness.  
It is better each day for the mindful one,  
And he is freed from enmity."<sup>570</sup>

[The Blessed One:] <448>

813 "It is always good for the mindful one,  
The mindful one thrives in happiness.  
It is better each day for the mindful one,  
But he is not freed from enmity.

- 814 "One whose mind all day and night  
Takes delight in harmlessness,  
Who has lovingkindness for all beings—  
For him there is enmity with none."<sup>571</sup>

5 *Sānu*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvattī in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. Now on that occasion a certain female lay follower had a son named Sānu who had been possessed by a yakkha.<sup>572</sup> Then that female lay follower, lamenting, on that occasion recited these verses:

- 816 "With those who lead the holy life,<sup>573</sup>  
Who observe the Uposatha days  
Complete in eight factors  
On the fourteenth or fifteenth,  
817 And on the eighths of the fortnight, <449>  
And during special periods,  
The yakkhas do not sport around:  
So I have heard from the arahants.  
But now today I see for myself  
The yakkhas sporting with Sānu."

[The yakkha that has entered Sānu:] [209]

- 818 "With those who lead the holy life,  
Who observe the Uposatha days  
Complete in eight factors  
On the fourteenth or fifteenth,  
819 And on the eighths of the fortnight,  
And during special periods,  
The yakkhas do not sport around:  
What you heard from the arahants is good.  
820 "When Sānu has awakened tell him  
This injunction of the yakkhas: <450>  
Do not do an evil deed  
Either openly or in secret.  
821 If you should do an evil deed,  
Or if you are doing one now,

You won't be free from suffering  
Though you fly up and flee."<sup>574</sup>

[Sānu:]<sup>575</sup>

- 822 "They weep, mother, for the dead  
Or for one living who isn't seen.  
When you see, mother, that I'm alive,  
Why, O mother, do you weep for me?"

[Sānu's mother:]

- 823 "They weep, O son, for the dead  
Or for one living who isn't seen;  
But when one returns to the home life  
After renouncing sensual pleasures,  
They weep for this one too, my son,  
For though alive he's really dead."<sup>576</sup>  
824 "Drawn out, my dear, from hot embers, <451>  
You wish to plunge into hot embers;  
Drawn out, my dear, from an inferno,  
You wish to plunge into an inferno."<sup>577</sup>  
825 "Run forward, good luck be with you!  
To whom could we voice our grief?  
Being an item rescued from the fire,  
You wish to be burnt again."<sup>578</sup>

6 *Piyaṅkara*

On one occasion the Venerable Anuruddha was dwelling at Sāvattī in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. Now on that occasion the Venerable Anuruddha, having risen at the first flush of dawn, was reciting stanzas of Dhamma. Then the female yakkha Piyaṅkara's Mother hushed her little child thus:<sup>579</sup>

- 826 "Do not make a sound, Piyaṅkara,  
A bhikkhu recites Dhamma-stanzas. <452>  
Having understood a Dhamma-stanza,  
We might practise for our welfare.

827 "Let us refrain from harming living beings,  
Let us not speak a deliberate lie,  
We should train ourselves in virtue:  
Perhaps we'll be freed from the goblin realm."

7 *Punabbasu*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvatti in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. [210] Now on that occasion the Blessed One was instructing, exhorting, inspiring, and glad-dening the bhikkhus with a Dhamma talk concerning Nibbāna. And those bhikkhus were listening to the Dhamma with eager ears, attending to it as a matter of vital concern, applying their whole mind to it. Then the female yakkha Punabbasu's Mother hushed her little children thus:<sup>580</sup>

828 "Be quiet, Uttarikā,  
Be quiet, Punabbasu! <453>  
I wish to listen to the Dhamma  
Of the Teacher, the Supreme Buddha.

829 "When the Blessed One speaks of Nibbāna,  
Release from all the knots,  
There has arisen within me  
Deep affection for this Dhamma.

830 "In the world one's own son is dear,  
In the world one's own husband is dear;  
But for me the quest for this Dhamma  
Has become even dearer than them.

831 "For neither one's own son nor husband,  
Though dear, can release one from suffering  
As listening to true Dhamma frees one  
From the suffering of living beings.<sup>581</sup>

832 "In this world steeped in suffering,  
Fettered by aging and death,  
I wish to listen to the Dhamma  
That he—the Buddha—fully awakened to,

For freedom from aging and death.  
So be quiet, Punabbasu!"<sup>582</sup> <454>

[Punabbasu:]

833 "Mother dear, I am not talking;  
This Uttarā is silent, too.  
Pay attention only to the Dhamma,  
For listening to true Dhamma is pleasant.  
Because we have not known true Dhamma  
We've been living miserably, mother.

834 "He is the maker of light  
For bewildered devas and humans;  
Enlightened, bearing his final body,  
The One with Vision teaches the Dhamma."

[Punabbasu's mother:]

835 "It is good that my son has become so wise,  
He whom I bore and nursed at my breast.  
My son loves the pure Dhamma  
Of the Supremely Enlightened One.

836 "Punabbasu, be happy!  
Today I have emerged at last. <455>  
Hear me too, O Uttarā:  
The noble truths are seen!"<sup>583</sup>

8 *Sudatta*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha in the Cool Grove. Now on that occasion the householder Anāthapiṇḍika had arrived in Rājagaha on some business.<sup>584</sup> He heard: "A Buddha, it is said, has arisen in the world!" He wanted to go and see the Blessed One immediately, [211] but it occurred to him: "It is not the right time to go and see the Blessed One today. I will go and see the Blessed One early tomorrow morning."

He lay down with his mindfulness directed to the Buddha, and during the night he got up three times thinking it was morning. Then the householder Anāthapiṇḍika approached the gate of the charnel ground. Nonhuman beings<sup>585</sup> opened the gate.

<456> Then, as the householder Anāthapiṇḍika was leaving the city, the light disappeared and darkness appeared. Fear, trepidation, and terror arose in him and he wanted to turn back. But the yakkha Sivaka, invisible, made the proclamation:<sup>585</sup>

837 "A hundred [thousand] elephants,  
A hundred [thousand] horses,  
A hundred [thousand] mule-drawn chariots,  
A hundred thousand maidens  
Adorned with jewellery and earrings,  
Are not worth a sixteenth part  
Of a single step forward."<sup>586</sup>

"Go forward, householder! Go forward, householder! Going forward is better for you, not turning back again."

Then the darkness disappeared and light appeared to the householder Anāthapiṇḍika, and the fear, trepidation, and terror that had arisen in him subsided.

A second time ... (*verse 838 is included in this repetition*) <457>  
... A third time the light disappeared and darkness appeared before the householder Anāthapiṇḍika. Fear, trepidation, and terror arose in him and he wanted to turn back. But a third time the yakkha Sivaka, invisible, made the proclamation:

839 "A hundred [thousand] elephants ...  
Of a single step forward.

"Go forward, householder! Go forward, householder! Going forward is better for you, not turning back again."

Then the darkness [212] disappeared and light appeared to the householder Anāthapiṇḍika, and the fear, trepidation, and terror that had arisen in him subsided.

Then the householder Anāthapiṇḍika approached the Blessed One in the Cool Grove. Now on that occasion the Blessed One, having risen at the first flush of dawn, was walking back and forth in the open. The Blessed One saw the householder Anāthapiṇḍika coming in the distance. He descended from the walkway, sat down in the seat that was prepared, and said to the householder Anāthapiṇḍika: "Come, Sudatta."<sup>587</sup>

Then the householder Anāthapiṇḍika, thinking, "The Blessed

One has addressed me by my name," [thrilled and elated],<sup>588</sup> prostrated himself right on the spot with his head at the Blessed One's feet <458> and said to him: "I hope, venerable sir, that the Blessed One slept well."

[The Blessed One:]

840 "Always indeed he sleeps well,  
The brahmin who is fully quenched,  
Who does not cling to sensual pleasures,  
Cool at heart, without acquisitions.

841 "Having cut off all attachments,  
Having removed care from the heart,  
The peaceful one sleeps well,  
Having attained peace of mind."<sup>589</sup>

#### 9 Sukkā (1)

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary. Now on that occasion the bhikkhuni Sukkā, surrounded by a large assembly, was teaching the Dhamma. Then a yakkha who had full confidence in the bhikkhuni Sukkā, going from street to street and from square to square in Rājagaha, on that occasion recited these verses:

842 "What has happened to these people in Rājagaha? <459>  
They sleep as if they've been drinking mead.  
Why don't they attend on Sukkā  
As she teaches the deathless state?"<sup>590</sup>

843 "But the wise, as it were, drink it up—  
That [Dhamma] irresistible,  
Ambrosial, nutritious—  
As travellers do a cloud."<sup>591</sup>

#### 10 Sukkā (2)

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary. [213] Now on that occasion a certain lay follower gave food to the bhikkhuni

Sukkā. Then a yakkha who had full confidence in the bhikkhuni Sukkā, going from street to street and from square to square in Rājagaha, on that occasion recited this verse:

844 "He has engendered much merit—  
Wise indeed is this lay follower,  
Who just gave food to Sukkā, <460>  
One released from all the knots."<sup>592</sup>

### 11 *Cirā*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary. Now on that occasion a certain lay follower gave a robe to the bhikkhuni Cirā. Then a yakkha who had full confidence in the bhikkhuni Cirā, going from street to street and from square to square in Rājagaha, on that occasion recited this verse:

845 "He has engendered much merit—  
Wise indeed is this lay follower,  
Who just gave a robe to Cirā,  
One released from all the bonds."

### 12 *Ālavaka*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Ālavī, the haunt of the yakkha Ālavaka.<sup>593</sup> Then the yakkha Ālavaka approached the Blessed One and said to him:

"Get out, ascetic!" <461>

"All right, friend," the Blessed One said, and he went out.<sup>594</sup>

"Come in, ascetic."

"All right, friend," the Blessed One said, and he went in.

A second time ... [214] A third time the yakkha Ālavaka said to the Blessed One: "Get out, ascetic!"

"All right, friend," the Blessed One said, and he went out.

"Come in, ascetic."

"All right, friend," the Blessed One said, and he went in.

A fourth time the yakkha Ālavaka said to the Blessed One: "Get out, ascetic."

"I won't go out, friend. Do whatever you have to do."

"I'll ask you a question, ascetic. If you won't answer me, I'll drive you insane or I'll split your heart or I'll grab you by the feet and hurl you across the Ganges."<sup>595</sup>

"I do not see anyone in this world, friend, with its devas, Māra, and Brahmā, in this generation with its ascetics and brahmins, its devas and humans, who could drive me insane or split my heart or grab me by the feet and hurl me across the Ganges. But ask whatever you want, friend."<sup>596</sup>

[Ālavaka:] <462>

846 "What here is a man's best treasure?  
What practised well brings happiness?  
What is really the sweetest of tastes?  
How lives the one who they say lives best?"

[The Blessed One:]

847 "Faith is here a man's best treasure;  
Dhamma practised well brings happiness;  
Truth is really the sweetest of tastes;  
One living by wisdom they say lives best."<sup>597</sup>

[Ālavaka:]

848 "How does one cross over the flood?  
How does one cross the rugged sea?  
How does one overcome suffering?  
How is one purified?"

[The Blessed One:]

849 "By faith one crosses over the flood,  
By diligence, the rugged sea.  
By energy one overcomes suffering,  
By wisdom one is purified."<sup>598</sup>

[Ālavaka:]

850 "How does one gain wisdom?<sup>599</sup>  
How does one find wealth? <463>  
How does one achieve acclaim?  
How bind friends to oneself?  
When passing from this world to the next,  
How does one not sorrow?"

[The Blessed One:]

- 851 "Placing faith in the Dhamma of the arahants  
For the attainment of Nibbāna,  
From desire to learn one gains wisdom  
If one is diligent and astute."<sup>600</sup>
- 852 "Doing what is proper, dutiful,  
One with initiative finds wealth. [215]  
By truthfulness one wins acclaim;  
Giving, one binds friends.  
That is how one does not sorrow  
When passing from this world to the next."<sup>601</sup>
- 853 "The faithful seeker of the household life  
In whom dwell these four qualities—  
Truth, Dhamma, steadfastness, generosity—  
Does not sorrow when he passes on. <464>
- 854 "Come now, ask others as well,  
The many ascetics and brahmins,  
Whether there is found here anything better  
Than truth, self-control, generosity, and patience."<sup>602</sup>
- [Āḷavaka:]
- 855 "Why now should I ask this question  
Of the many ascetics and brahmins?  
Today I have understood  
The good pertaining to the future life."<sup>603</sup>
- 856 "Indeed, for my sake the Buddha came  
To reside at Āḷavi.  
Today I have understood  
Where a gift bears great fruit.
- 857 "I myself will travel about  
From village to village, town to town,  
Paying homage to the Enlightened One  
And to the excellence of the Dhamma."<sup>604</sup> <465>

[216] <466>

Chapter XI

## 11 *Sakkasaṃyutta*

### Connected Discourses with Sakka

#### I. THE FIRST SUBCHAPTER (SUVĪRA)

##### 1 (1) *Suvira*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvatti in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. There the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Bhikkhus!"

"Venerable sir!" those bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

"Bhikkhus, once in the past the asuras marched against the devas.<sup>605</sup> Then Sakka, lord of the devas, addressed Suvira, a young deva, thus: 'Dear Suvira, these asuras are marching against the devas. Go, dear Suvira, launch a counter-march against the asuras.' – 'Yes, your lordship,' Suvira replied, but he became negligent.<sup>606</sup> A second time Sakka addressed Suvira ... <467> ... but a second time Suvira became negligent. A third time Sakka addressed Suvira ... but a third time Suvira became negligent. [217] Then, bhikkhus, Sakka addressed Suvira in verse:

- 858 "Where one need not toil and strive  
Yet still may attain to bliss:  
Go there, Suvira,  
And take me along with you.'

[Suvira:]

- 859 "That a lazy man who does not toil  
Nor attend to his duties

Might still have all desires fulfilled:  
Grant me that, Sakka, as a boon.<sup>607</sup> <468>

[Sakka:]

860 "Where a lazy man who does not toil  
Might achieve unending bliss:  
Go there, Suvira,  
And take me along with you.'

[Suvira:]

861 "The bliss, supreme deva, we might find  
Without doing work, O Sakka,  
The sorrowless state without despair:  
Grant me that, Sakka, as a boon.'

[Sakka:]

862 "If there exists any place anywhere  
Where without work one won't decline,  
That is indeed Nibbāna's path:  
Go there, Suvira,  
And take me along with you.<sup>608</sup>

"So, bhikkhus, if Sakka, lord of the devas, subsisting on the fruit of his own merit, <469> exercising supreme sovereignty and rulership over the Tāvatiṃsa devas, will be one who speaks in praise of initiative and energy, then how much more would it be fitting here for you,<sup>609</sup> who have gone forth in such a well-expounded Dhamma and Discipline, to toil, struggle, and strive for the attainment of the as-yet-unattained, for the achievement of the as-yet-unachieved, for the realization of the as-yet-unrealized."

## 2 (2) *Susima*

(This sutta is identical with the preceding one, except that a young deva is named *Susima*. Verses 863–67 = 858–62.) [218] <470–72>

## 3 (3) *The Crest of the Standard*

At Sāvatti. There the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Bhikkhus!"<sup>610</sup>

"Venerable sir!" those bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

"Bhikkhus, once in the past the devas and the asuras were arrayed for battle. Then Sakka, lord of the devas, addressed the Tāvatiṃsa devas thus: 'Dear sirs, when the devas are engaged in battle, [219] if fear or trepidation or terror should arise, on that occasion you should look up at the crest of my standard. For when you look up at the crest of my standard, whatever fear or trepidation or terror you may have will be abandoned.'<sup>611</sup>

"If you cannot look up at the crest of my standard, then you should look up at the crest of the deva-king Pajāpati's standard. For when you look up at the crest of his standard, whatever fear or trepidation or terror you may have will be abandoned.

"If you cannot look up at the crest of the deva-king Pajāpati's standard, then you should look up at the crest of the deva-king Varuṇa's standard.... If you cannot look up at the crest of the deva-king Varuṇa's standard, then you should look up at the crest of the deva-king Īsāna's standard.... For when you look up at the crest of his standard, whatever fear or trepidation or terror you may have will be abandoned.'<sup>612</sup> <473>

"Bhikkhus, for those who look up at the crest of the standard of Sakka, lord of the devas; or of Pajāpati, the deva-king; or of Varuṇa, the deva-king; or of Īsāna, the deva-king, whatever fear or trepidation or terror they may have may or may not be abandoned. For what reason? Because Sakka, lord of the devas, is not devoid of lust, not devoid of hatred, not devoid of delusion; he can be timid, petrified, frightened, quick to flee.

"But, bhikkhus, I say this: If you have gone to a forest or to the foot of a tree or to an empty hut, and fear or trepidation or terror should arise in you, on that occasion you should recollect me thus: 'The Blessed One is an arahant, perfectly enlightened, accomplished in true knowledge and conduct, fortunate, knower of the world, unsurpassed leader of persons to be tamed, teacher of devas and humans, the Enlightened One, the Blessed One.' For when you recollect me, bhikkhus, whatever fear or trepidation or terror you may have will be abandoned. [220]

"If you cannot recollect me, then you should recollect the Dhamma thus: 'The Dhamma is well expounded by the Blessed One, directly visible, immediate, inviting one to come and see, applicable, to be personally experienced by the wise.' For when you recollect the Dhamma, bhikkhus, whatever fear or trepidation or terror you may have will be abandoned.

"If you cannot recollect the Dhamma, then you should recollect the Saṅgha thus: 'The Saṅgha of the Blessed One's disciples is practising the good way, <474> practising the straight way, practising the true way, practising the proper way; that is, the four pairs of persons, the eight types of individuals—this Saṅgha of the Blessed One's disciples is worthy of gifts, worthy of hospitality, worthy of offerings, worthy of reverential salutation, the unsurpassed field of merit for the world.' For when you recollect the Saṅgha, bhikkhus, whatever fear or trepidation or terror you may have will be abandoned.

"For what reason? Because, bhikkhus, the Tathāgata, the Arahant, the Perfectly Enlightened One is devoid of lust, devoid of hatred, devoid of delusion; he is brave, courageous, bold, ready to stand his place."

This is what the Blessed One said. Having said this, the Fortunate One, the Teacher, further said this:

868 "In a forest, at the foot of a tree,  
Or in an empty hut, O bhikkhus,  
You should recollect the Buddha:  
No fear will then arise in you.

869 "But if you cannot recall the Buddha,  
Best in the world, the bull of men,  
Then you should recall the Dhamma,  
Emancipating, well expounded.

870 "But if you cannot recall the Dhamma,  
Emancipating, well expounded,  
Then you should recall the Saṅgha,  
The unsurpassed field of merit. <475>

871 "For those who thus recall the Buddha,  
The Dhamma, and the Saṅgha, bhikkhus,

No fear or trepidation will arise,  
Nor any grisly terror."

4 (4) *Vepacitti (or Patience)*

At Sāvatti. The Blessed One said this: [221]

"Once in the past, bhikkhus, the devas and the asuras were arrayed for battle. Then Vepacitti, lord of the asuras, addressed the asuras thus:<sup>613</sup> 'Dear sirs, in the impending battle between the devas and the asuras, <476> if the asuras win and the devas are defeated, bind Sakka, lord of the devas, by his four limbs and neck and bring him to me in the city of the asuras.' And Sakka, lord of the devas, addressed the Tāvatiṃsa devas thus: 'Dear sirs, in the impending battle between the devas and the asuras, if the devas win and the asuras are defeated, bind Vepacitti, lord of the asuras, by his four limbs and neck and bring him to me in the Sudhamma assembly hall.'

"In that battle, bhikkhus, the devas won and the asuras were defeated. Then the Tāvatiṃsa devas bound Vepacitti by his four limbs and neck and brought him to Sakka in the Sudhamma assembly hall.<sup>614</sup> When Sakka was entering and leaving the Sudhamma assembly hall, Vepacitti, bound by his four limbs and neck, abused and reviled him with rude, harsh words. Then, bhikkhus, Mātali the charioteer addressed Sakka, lord of the devas, in verse:

872 "'When face to face with Vepacitti  
Is it, Maghavā, from fear or weakness <477>  
That you endure him so patiently,  
Listening to his harsh words?'

[Sakka:]

873 "'It is neither through fear nor weakness  
That I am patient with Vepacitti.  
How can a wise person like me  
Engage in combat with a fool?'

[Mātali:]

874 "'Fools would vent their anger even more  
If no one would keep them in check.

Hence with drastic punishment  
The wise man should restrain the fool.<sup>615</sup>

[Sakka:]

875 "I myself think this alone  
Is the way to check the fool:  
When one knows one's foe is angry  
One mindfully maintains one's peace.'

[Mātali:]

876 "I see this fault, O Vāsava,  
In practising patient endurance:  
When the fool thinks of you thus,  
"He endures me out of fear," <478>  
The dolt will chase you even more  
As a bull does one who flees.' [222]

[Sakka:]

877 "Let it be whether or not he thinks,  
"He endures me out of fear,"  
Of goals that culminate in one's own good  
None is found better than patience.<sup>616</sup>

878 "When a person endowed with strength  
Patiently endures a weakling,  
They call that the supreme patience;  
The weakling must be patient always.<sup>617</sup>

879 "They call that strength no strength at all—  
The strength that is the strength of folly—  
But no one can reproach a person  
Who is strong because guarded by Dhamma.<sup>618</sup>

880 "One who repays an angry man with anger  
Thereby makes things worse for himself.  
Not repaying an angry man with anger, <479>  
One wins a battle hard to win.

881 "He practises for the welfare of both,  
His own and the other's,

When, knowing that his foe is angry,  
He mindfully maintains his peace.

882 "When he achieves the cure of both—  
His own and the other's—  
The people who consider him a fool  
Are unskilled in the Dhamma.'

"So, bhikkhus, if Sakka, lord of the devas, subsisting on the fruit of his own merit, exercising supreme sovereignty and rulership over the Tāvatiṃsa devas, will be one who speaks in praise of patience and gentleness, then how much more would it be fitting here for you, who have gone forth in such a well-expounded Dhamma and Discipline, to be patient and gentle."

5 (5) *Victory by Well-Spoken Counsel*

<480> At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, once in the past the devas and the asuras were arrayed for battle. Then Vepacitti, lord of the asuras, said to Sakka, lord of the devas: 'Lord of the devas, let there be victory by well-spoken counsel.' [And Sakka replied:] 'Vepacitti, let there be victory by well-spoken counsel.'

"Then, bhikkhus, the devas and the asuras appointed a panel of judges, saying: 'These will ascertain what has been well spoken and badly spoken by us.'

"Then Vepacitti, lord of the asuras, said to Sakka, lord of the devas: 'Speak a verse, lord of the devas.' When this was said, Sakka said to Vepacitti: 'You, Vepacitti, being the senior deva here, speak a verse.'<sup>619</sup> [223] When this was said, Vepacitti, lord of the asuras, recited this verse:<sup>620</sup>

883 "Fools would vent their anger even more  
If no one would keep them in check.  
Hence with drastic punishment  
The wise man should restrain the fool.'

"When, bhikkhus, Vepacitti, lord of the asuras, spoke this verse, the asuras applauded but the devas were silent. Then Vepacitti said to Sakka: 'Speak a verse, lord of the devas.' When this was said, Sakka, lord of the devas, recited this verse:

884 "I myself think this alone <481>  
Is the way to check the fool:  
When one knows one's foe is angry  
One mindfully maintains one's peace.'

"When, bhikkhus, Sakka, lord of the devas, spoke this verse, the devas applauded but the asuras were silent. Then Sakka said to Vepacitti: 'Speak a verse, Vepacitti.' When this was said, Vepacitti, lord of the asuras, recited this verse:

885 "I see this fault, O Vāsava,  
In practising patient endurance:  
When the fool thinks of you thus,  
"He endures me out of fear,"  
The dolt will chase you even more  
As a bull does one who flees.'

"When, bhikkhus, Vepacitti, lord of the asuras, spoke this verse, the asuras applauded but the devas were silent. Then Vepacitti said to Sakka: 'Speak a verse, lord of the devas.' When this was said, Sakka, lord of the devas, recited these verses:

886–891 "Let it be whether or not he thinks,  
... (verses = 877–82) ... [224] <482>  
Are unskilled in the Dhamma.'

"When, bhikkhus, these verses were spoken by Sakka, lord of the devas, the devas applauded but the asuras were silent. Then the panel of judges appointed by the devas and the asuras said this: 'The verses spoken by Vepacitti, lord of the asuras, are in the sphere of punishment and violence; hence [they entail] conflict, contention, and strife. But the verses spoken by Sakka, lord of the devas, <483> are in the sphere of nonpunishment and nonviolence; hence [they entail] freedom from conflict, freedom from contention, and freedom from strife. Sakka, lord of the devas, has won the victory by well-spoken counsel.'

"In this way, bhikkhus, Sakka, lord of the devas, won the victory by well-spoken counsel."

6 (6) *The Bird Nests*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, once in the past the devas and the asuras were arrayed for battle. In that battle the asuras won and the devas were defeated. In defeat the devas withdrew towards the north while the asuras pursued them. Then Sakka, lord of the devas, addressed his charioteer Mātali in verse:

892 "Avoid, O Mātali, with your chariot pole  
The bird nests in the silk-cotton woods;  
Let's surrender our lives to the asuras <484>  
Rather than make these birds nestless.'<sup>621</sup>

"Yes, your lordship,' Mātali the charioteer replied, and he turned back the chariot with its team of a thousand thoroughbreds.

"Then, bhikkhus, it occurred to the asuras: 'Now Sakka's chariot with its team of a thousand thoroughbreds has turned back. [225] The devas will engage in battle with the asuras for a second time.' Stricken by fear, they entered the city of the asuras. In this way, bhikkhus, Sakka, lord of the devas, won a victory by means of righteousness itself."

7 (7) *One Should Not Transgress*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, once in the past, when Sakka, lord of the devas, was alone in seclusion, the following reflection arose in his mind: 'Though someone may be my sworn enemy, I should not transgress even against him.'

"Then, bhikkhus, Vepacitti, lord of the asuras, <485> having known with his own mind the reflection in Sakka's mind, approached Sakka, lord of the devas. Sakka saw Vepacitti coming in the distance and said to him: 'Stop, Vepacitti, you're caught!'<sup>622</sup> – 'Dear sir, do not abandon the idea that just occurred to you.'<sup>623</sup> – 'Swear, Vepacitti, that you won't transgress against me.'

[Vepacitti:]

893 "Whatever evil comes to a liar,  
Whatever evil to a reviler of noble ones,

Whatever evil to a betrayer of friends,  
 Whatever evil to one without gratitude:  
 That same evil touches the one  
 Who transgresses against you, Sujā's husband."<sup>624</sup>

8 (8) *Verocana, Lord of the Asuras*

At Sāvatti in Jeta's Grove. Now on that occasion the Blessed One had gone for his day's abiding and was in seclusion. Then Sakka, <486> lord of the devas, and Verocana, lord of the asuras, approached the Blessed One and stood one at each door post. Then Verocana, lord of the asuras, recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:<sup>625</sup>

894 "A man should make an effort  
 Until his goal has been achieved.  
 Goals shine when achieved:  
 This is the word of Verocana." [226]

[Sakka:]

895 "A man should make an effort  
 Until his goal has been achieved.  
 Of goals that shine when achieved,  
 None is found better than patience."<sup>626</sup>

[Verocana:]

896 "All beings are bent on a goal  
 Here or there as fits the case,  
 But for all creatures association  
 Is supreme among enjoyments.  
 Goals shine when achieved:  
 This is the word of Verocana."<sup>627</sup> <487>

[Sakka:]

897 "All beings are bent upon a goal  
 Here or there as fits the case,  
 But for all creatures association  
 Is supreme among enjoyments.  
 Of goals that shine when achieved,  
 None is found better than patience."

9 (9) *Seers in a Forest*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, once in the past a number of seers who were virtuous and of good character had settled down in leaf huts in a tract of forest. Then Sakka, lord of the devas, and Vepacitti, lord of the asuras, approached those seers.

"Vepacitti, lord of the asuras, put on his boots, bound his sword on tightly, and, with a parasol borne aloft, entered the hermitage through the main gate; then, having turned his left side towards them,<sup>628</sup> he walked past those seers who were virtuous and of good character. But Sakka, lord of the devas, took off his boots, handed over his sword to others, <488> lowered his parasol, and entered the hermitage through an [ordinary] gate; then he stood on the lee side, raising his joined hands in reverential salutation, paying homage to those seers who were virtuous and of good character.

"Then, bhikkhus, those seers addressed Sakka in verse:

898 "'The odour of the seers long bound by their vows,  
 Emitted from their bodies, goes with the wind.  
 Turn away from here, O thousand-eyed god,  
 For the seers' odour is foul, O deva-king."<sup>629</sup>

[Sakka:]

899 "'Let the odour of the seers long bound by their vows,  
 Emitted from their bodies, go with the wind;  
 We yearn for this odour, O venerable sirs,  
 As for a garland of flowers on the head. [227]  
 The devas do not perceive it as repulsive."<sup>630</sup> <489>

10 (10) *Seers by the Ocean*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, once in the past a number of seers who were virtuous and of good character had settled down in leaf huts along the shore of the ocean. Now on that occasion the devas and the asuras were arrayed for a battle. Then it occurred to those seers who were virtuous and of good character: "The devas are righteous, the asuras unrighteous. There may be danger to us from the asuras. Let us approach Sambara, lord of the asuras, and ask him for a guarantee of safety."<sup>631</sup>

“Then, bhikkhus, just as quickly as a strong man might extend his drawn-in arm or draw in his extended arm, those seers who were virtuous and of good character disappeared from their leaf huts along the shore of the ocean and reappeared in the presence of Sambara, lord of the asuras. Then those seers addressed Sambara in verse:

900 “The seers who have come to Sambara  
Ask him for a guarantee of safety. <490>  
For you can give them what you wish,  
Whether it be danger or safety.”<sup>632</sup>

[Sambara:]

901 “I’ll grant no safety to the seers,  
For they are hated devotees of Sakka;  
Though you appeal to me for safety,  
I’ll give you only danger.’

[The seers:]

902 “Though we have asked for safety,  
You give us only danger.  
We receive this at your hands:  
May ceaseless danger come to you!

903 “Whatever sort of seed is sown,  
That is the sort of fruit one reaps:  
The doer of good reaps good;  
The doer of evil reaps evil.  
By you, dear, has the seed been sown;  
Thus you will experience the fruit.’

“Then, bhikkhus, having put a curse on Sambara, lord of the asuras, just as quickly as a strong man might extend his drawn-in arm <491> or draw in his extended arm, those seers who were virtuous and of good character disappeared from the presence of Sambara and reappeared in their leaf huts on the shore of the ocean. [228] But after being cursed by those seers who were virtuous and of good character, Sambara, lord of the asuras, was gripped by alarm three times in the course of the night.”<sup>633</sup> <492>

## II. THE SECOND SUBCHAPTER (THE SEVEN VOWS)

### 11 (1) *Vows*

At Sāvatti. “Bhikkhus, in the past, when Sakka, lord of the devas, was a human being, he adopted and undertook seven vows by the undertaking of which he achieved the status of Sakka.<sup>634</sup> What were the seven vows?

(1) “As long as I live may I support my parents.’

(2) “As long as I live may I respect the family elders.’

(3) “As long as I live may I speak gently.’

(4) “As long as I live may I not speak divisively.’

(5) “As long as I live may I dwell at home with a mind devoid of the stain of stinginess, freely generous, open-handed, delighting in relinquishment, devoted to charity,<sup>635</sup> delighting in giving and sharing.’

(6) “As long as I live may I speak the truth.’

(7) “As long as I live may I be free from anger, and if anger should arise in me may I dispel it quickly.’

“In the past, bhikkhus, when Sakka, lord of the devas, was a human being, he adopted and undertook these seven vows by the undertaking of which he achieved the status of Sakka. <493>

904 “When a person supports his parents,  
And respects the family elders;

When his speech is gentle and courteous,  
And he refrains from divisive words;

905 When he strives to remove meanness,  
Is truthful, and vanquishes anger,  
The Tāvatiṃsa devas call him  
Truly a superior person.” [229]

### 12 (2) *Sakka’s Names*

At Sāvatti in Jeta’s Grove. There the Blessed One said to the bhikkhus:

“Bhikkhus, in the past, when Sakka, lord of the devas, was a human being, he was a brahmin youth named Magha; therefore he is called Maghavā.<sup>636</sup>

“Bhikkhus, in the past, when Sakka, lord of the devas, was a human being, he gave gifts in city after city; therefore he is called Purindada, the Urban Giver.<sup>637</sup>

“Bhikkhus, in the past, when Sakka, lord of the devas, was a human being, he gave gifts considerately; therefore he is called Sakka.<sup>638</sup>

“Bhikkhus, in the past, when Sakka, lord of the devas, was a human being, <494> he gave a rest house; therefore he is called Vāsava.<sup>639</sup>

“Bhikkhus, Sakka, lord of the devas, thinks of a thousand matters in a moment; therefore he is called Sahassakkha, Thousand-eyed.<sup>640</sup>

“Bhikkhus, Sakka’s wife is the asura maiden named Sujā; therefore he is called Sujampati, Sujā’s husband.<sup>641</sup>

“Bhikkhus, Sakka, lord of the devas, exercises supreme sovereignty and rulership over the Tāvatiṃsa devas; therefore he is called lord of the devas.

“Bhikkhus, in the past, when Sakka, lord of the devas, was a human being, he adopted and undertook seven vows by the undertaking of which he achieved the status of Sakka....”

*(The remainder of this sutta is identical with the preceding one. Verses 906–7 = 904–5.) [230] <495>*

### 13 (3) Mahāli

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Vesāli in the Great Wood in the Hall with the Peaked Roof. Then Mahāli the Licchavi approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and said to him:

“Venerable sir, has the Blessed One seen Sakka, lord of the devas?”

“I have, Mahāli.”

“Surely, venerable sir, that must have been one who looked like Sakka, lord of the devas; for Sakka, lord of the devas, is difficult to see.”

“I know Sakka, Mahāli, and I know the qualities that make for Sakka, by the undertaking of which Sakka achieved the status of Sakka. <496>

“In the past, Mahāli, when Sakka, lord of the devas, was a human being, he was a brahmin youth named Magha. Therefore he is called Maghavā....”

*(Here follows the names of Sakka as in 11:12 and the seven vows as in 11:11, followed by verses 908–9 = 904–5.) [231] <497>*

### 14 (4) Poor

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary. There the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus thus: “Bhikkhus!”

“Venerable sir!” those bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

“Bhikkhus, once in the past in this same Rājagaha there was a poor man, a pauper, an indigent. He undertook faith, virtue, learning, generosity, and wisdom in the Dhamma and Discipline proclaimed by the Tathāgata. Having done so, with the breakup of the body, after death, [232] <498> he was reborn in a good destination, in a heavenly world, in the company of the Tāvatiṃsa devas, where he outshone the other devas in regard to beauty and glory.<sup>642</sup>

“Thereupon the Tāvatiṃsa devas found fault with this, grumbled, and complained about it, saying: ‘It is wonderful indeed, sir! It is amazing indeed, sir! For formerly, when this young deva was a human being, he was a poor man, a pauper, an indigent. Yet with the breakup of the body, after death, he has been reborn in a good destination, in a heavenly world, in the company of the Tāvatiṃsa devas, where he outshines the other devas in regard to beauty and glory.’

“Then, bhikkhus, Sakka, lord of the devas, addressed the Tāvatiṃsa devas thus: ‘Dear sirs, do not find fault with this young deva. Formerly, when this young deva was a human being, he undertook faith, virtue, learning, generosity, and wisdom in the Dhamma and Discipline proclaimed by the Tathāgata. Having done so, with the breakup of the body, after death, he has been reborn in a good destination, in a heavenly world, in the company of the Tāvatiṃsa devas, where he outshines the other devas in regard to beauty and glory.’

“Then, bhikkhus, instructing the Tāvatiṃsa devas,<sup>643</sup> Sakka, lord of the devas, on that occasion recited these verses: <499>

910 “When one has faith in the Tathāgata,  
Unshakable and well established,

And good conduct built on virtue,  
Dear to the noble ones and praised,<sup>644</sup>

911 "When one has confidence in the Saṅgha  
And one's view is straightened out,  
They say that one isn't poor;  
One's life is not lived in vain.

912 "Therefore the person of intelligence,  
Remembering the Buddha's Teaching,  
Should be devoted to faith and virtue,  
To confidence and vision of the Dhamma."

#### 15 (5) *A Delightful Place*

At Sāvattḥi in Jeta's Grove. Then Sakka, lord of the devas, approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, stood to one side, and said to him: "Venerable sir, what is a delightful place?" [233]

[The Blessed One:] <500>

913 "Shrines in parks and woodland shrines,  
Well-constructed lotus ponds:  
These are not worth a sixteenth part  
Of a delightful human being.

914 "Whether in a village or forest,  
In a valley or on the plain—  
Wherever the arahants dwell  
Is truly a delightful place."

#### 16 (6) *Bestowing Alms*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha on Mount Vulture Peak. Then Sakka, lord of the devas, approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, and stood to one side. Standing to one side, he addressed the Blessed One in verse:<sup>645</sup>

915 "For those people who bestow alms,  
For living beings in quest of merit,

Performing merit of the mundane type,  
Where does a gift bear great fruit?"<sup>646</sup>

[The Blessed One:] <501>

916 "The four practising the way  
And the four established in the fruit:  
This is the Saṅgha of upright conduct  
Endowed with wisdom and virtue."<sup>647</sup>

917 "For those people who bestow alms,  
For living beings in quest of merit,  
Performing merit of the mundane type,  
A gift to the Saṅgha bears great fruit."

#### 17 (7) *Veneration of the Buddha*

At Sāvattḥi in Jeta's Grove. Now on that occasion the Blessed One had gone for his day's abiding and was in seclusion. Then Sakka, lord of the devas, and Brahmā Sahampati approached the Blessed One and stood one at each doorpost. Then Sakka, lord of the devas, recited this verse in the presence of the Blessed One:

918 "Rise up, O hero, victor in battle!  
Your burden lowered, debt-free one, wander in the world.  
Your mind is fully liberated  
Like the moon on the fifteenth night."<sup>648</sup> [234]

[Brahmā Sahampati:] "It is not in such a way that the Tathāgatas are to be venerated, lord of the devas. The Tathāgatas are to be venerated thus:

919 "Rise up, O hero, victor in battle! <502>  
O caravan leader, debt-free one, wander in the world.  
Teach the Dhamma, O Blessed One:  
There will be those who will understand."<sup>649</sup>

#### 18 (8) *The Worship of Householders (or Sakka's Worship (1))*

At Sāvattḥi. There the Blessed One said this: "Bhikkhus, once in the past Sakka, lord of the devas, addressed his charioteer

Mātali thus: 'Harness the chariot with its team of a thousand thoroughbreds, friend Mātali. Let us go to the park grounds to see the beautiful scenery.' – 'Yes, your lordship,' Mātali the charioteer replied. Then he harnessed the chariot with its team of a thousand thoroughbreds and announced to Sakka, lord of the devas: 'The chariot has been harnessed, dear sir. You may come at your own convenience.'<sup>650</sup>

"Then, bhikkhus, Sakka, lord of the devas, descending from the Vejayanta Palace, raised his joined hands in reverential salutation, and worshipped the different quarters. Then Mātali the charioteer addressed Sakka in verse:

920 "These all humbly worship you—  
Those versed in the Triple Veda,  
All the khattiyas reigning on earth,  
The Four Great Kings and the glorious Thirty— <503>  
So who, O Sakka, is that spirit  
To whom you bow in worship?"<sup>651</sup>

[Sakka:]

921 "These all humbly worship me—  
Those versed in the Triple Veda,  
All the khattiyas reigning on earth,  
The Four Great Kings and the glorious Thirty—  
922 But I worship those endowed with virtue,  
Those long trained in concentration,  
Those who have properly gone forth  
With the holy life their destination.<sup>652</sup>  
923 "I worship as well, O Mātali,  
Those householders making merit,  
The lay followers possessed of virtue  
Who righteously maintain a wife.'

[Mātali:]

924 "Those whom you worship, my lord Sakka,  
Are indeed the best in the world.  
I too will worship them—  
Those whom you worship, Vāsava.' <504>

[The Blessed One:]

925 "Having given this explanation,  
Having worshipped the different quarters,  
The deva-king Maghavā, Sujā's husband,  
The chief, climbed into his chariot." [235]

19 (9) *The Worship of the Teacher (or Sakka's Worship (2))*

(As above down to:)

"Then, bhikkhus, Sakka, lord of the devas, descending from the Vejayanta Palace, raised his joined hands in reverential salutation and worshipped the Blessed One. Then Mātali the charioteer addressed Sakka, lord of the devas, in verse:

926 "Both devas and human beings  
Humbly worship you, Vāsava.  
So who, O Sakka, is that spirit  
To whom you bow in worship?"

[Sakka:] <505>

927 "The Perfectly Enlightened One here  
In this world with its devas,  
The Teacher of perfect name:  
He is the one whom I worship, Mātali.<sup>653</sup>

928 "Those for whom lust and hatred  
And ignorance have been expunged,  
The arahants with taints destroyed:  
These are the ones whom I worship, Mātali.

929 "The trainees who delight in dismantling,  
Who diligently pursue the training  
For the removal of lust and hatred,  
For transcending ignorance:  
These are the ones whom I worship, Mātali.'<sup>654</sup>

[Mātali:]

930 "Those whom you worship, my lord Sakka,  
Are indeed the best in the world.

I too will worship them—  
Those whom you worship, Vāsava.'

[The Blessed One:]

931 "Having given this explanation,  
Having worshipped the Blessed One,  
The deva-king Maghavā, Sujā's husband,  
The chief, climbed into his chariot." <506>

20 (10) *The Worship of the Saṅgha (or Sakka's Worship) (3)*

(As above down to:) [236]

"Then, bhikkhus, Sakka, lord of the devas, descending from the Vejayanta Palace, raised his joined hands in reverential salutation and worshipped the Saṅgha of bhikkhus. Then Mātali the charioteer addressed Sakka, lord of the devas, in verse:

932 "It is these that should worship you—  
The humans stuck in a putrid body,  
Those submerged inside a corpse,  
Afflicted with hunger and thirst.<sup>655</sup>  
933 Why then do you envy them,  
These who dwell homeless, Vāsava?  
Tell us about the seers' conduct;  
Let us hear what you have to say.'

[Sakka:] <507>

934 "This is why I envy them,<sup>656</sup>  
Those who dwell homeless, Mātali:  
Whatever village they depart from,  
They leave it without concern.  
935 "They do not keep their goods in storage,  
Neither in a pot nor in a box.  
Seeking what has been prepared by others,  
By this they live, firm in vows:  
Those wise ones who give good counsel,  
Maintaining silence, of even faring.<sup>657</sup>  
936 "While devas fight with asuras

And people fight with one another,  
Among those who fight, they do not fight;  
Among the violent, they are quenched;  
Among those who grasp, they do not grasp:  
These are the ones whom I worship, Mātali.'

[Mātali:]

937 "Those whom you worship, my lord Sakka,  
Are indeed the best in the world.  
I too will worship them—  
Those whom you worship, Vāsava.' <508>

[The Blessed One:]

938 "Having given this explanation,  
Having worshipped the Bhikkhu Saṅgha,  
The deva-king Maghavā, Sujā's husband,  
The chief, climbed into his chariot."

[237]

III. THE THIRD SUBCHAPTER  
(SAKKA PENTAD)

21 (1) *Having Slain*

At Sāvattḥi in Jeta's Grove. Then Sakka, lord of the devas, approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, and stood to one side. Standing to one side, Sakka, lord of the devas, addressed the Blessed One in verse:

939 "Having slain what does one sleep soundly?  
Having slain what does one not sorrow? <509>  
What is the one thing, O Gotama,  
Whose killing you approve?"

[The Blessed One:]

940 "Having slain anger, one sleeps soundly;  
Having slain anger, one does not sorrow;  
The killing of anger, O Vāsava,  
With its poisoned root and honeyed tip:  
This is the killing the noble ones praise,  
For having slain that, one does not sorrow."

22 (2) *Ugly*

At Sāvattī in Jeta's Grove. There the Blessed One said this: "Bhikkhus, once in the past a certain ugly deformed yakkha sat down on the seat of Sakka, lord of the devas.<sup>658</sup> Thereupon the Tāvatiṃsa devas found fault with this, grumbled, and complained about it, saying: 'It is wonderful indeed, sir! It is amazing indeed, sir! This ugly deformed yakkha has sat down on the seat of Sakka, lord of the devas!' <510> But to whatever extent the Tāvatiṃsa devas found fault with this, grumbled, and complained about it, to the same extent that yakkha became more and more handsome, more and more comely, more and more graceful.

"Then, bhikkhus, the Tāvatiṃsa devas approached Sakka and said to him: 'Here, dear sir, an ugly deformed yakkha has sat down on your seat.... But to whatever extent the devas found fault with this ... [238] that yakkha became more and more handsome, more and more comely, more and more graceful.' – 'That must be the anger-eating yakkha.'

"Then, bhikkhus, Sakka, lord of the devas, approached that anger-eating yakkha.<sup>659</sup> Having approached, he arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, knelt down with his right knee on the ground, and, raising his joined hands in reverential salutation towards that yakkha, <511> he announced his name three times: 'I, dear sir, am Sakka, lord of the devas! I, dear sir, am Sakka, lord of the devas!' To whatever extent Sakka announced his name, to the same extent that yakkha became uglier and uglier and more and more deformed until he disappeared right there.

"Then, bhikkhus, having sat down on his own seat, instructing the Tāvatiṃsa devas, Sakka, lord of the devas, on that occasion recited these verses:

941 "I am not one afflicted in mind,  
Nor easily drawn by anger's whirl.  
I never become angry for long,  
Nor does anger persist in me.<sup>660</sup>

942 "When I'm angry I don't speak harshly  
And I don't praise my virtues.

I keep myself well restrained <512>  
Out of regard for my own good."<sup>661</sup>

23 (3) *Magic*

At Sāvattī. The Blessed One said this: "Bhikkhus, once in the past Vepacitti, lord of the asuras, was sick, afflicted, gravely ill.<sup>662</sup> Then Sakka, lord of the devas, approached Vepacitti to inquire about his illness. Vepacitti saw Sakka coming in the distance and said to him: 'Cure me, lord of the devas.' – [239] 'Teach me, Vepacitti, the Sambari magic.'<sup>663</sup> – 'I won't teach it, dear sir, until I have asked the asuras for permission.'

"Then, bhikkhus, Vepacitti, lord of the asuras, asked the asuras: 'May I teach the Sambari magic to Sakka, lord of the devas?' – 'Do not teach him the Sambari magic, dear sir.'<sup>664</sup>

"Then, bhikkhus, Vepacitti, lord of the asuras, addressed Sakka, lord of the devas, in verse: <513>

943 "A magician—O Maghavā, Sakka,  
King of devas, Sujā's husband—  
Goes to the terrible hell,  
Like Sambara, for a hundred years."<sup>665</sup>

24 (4) *Transgression*

At Sāvattī. Now on that occasion two bhikkhus had a quarrel and one bhikkhu had transgressed against the other. Then the former bhikkhu confessed his transgression to the other bhikkhu, but the latter would not pardon him.<sup>666</sup>

Then a number of bhikkhus approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and reported to him what had happened. <514> [The Blessed One said:]

"Bhikkhus, there are two kinds of fools: one who does not see a transgression as a transgression; and one who, when another is confessing a transgression, does not pardon him in accordance with the Dhamma. These are the two kinds of fools.

"There are, bhikkhus, two kinds of wise people: one who sees a transgression as a transgression; and one who, when another is confessing a transgression, pardons him in accordance with the Dhamma. These are the two kinds of wise people.

“Once in the past, bhikkhus, Sakka, lord of the devas, instructing the Tāvatiṃsa devas in the Sudhamma assembly hall, on that occasion recited this verse: [240]

944 “Bring anger under your control;  
Do not let your friendships decay.  
Do not blame one who is blameless;  
Do not utter divisive speech.  
Like a mountain avalanche  
Anger crushes evil people.”<sup>667</sup>

25 (5) *Nonanger*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvattṭhi in Jeta’s Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika’s Park. There the Blessed One said this:

“Bhikkhus, once in the past Sakka, lord of the devas, instructing the Tāvatiṃsa devas in the Sudhamma assembly hall, on that occasion recited this verse: <515>

945 “Do not let anger overpower you;  
Do not become angry at those who are angry.  
Nonanger and harmless always dwell  
Within [the hearts of] the noble ones.  
Like a mountain avalanche  
Anger crushes evil people.”<sup>668</sup>

&lt;516&gt;

The Book with Verses is finished.

## Notes

1. *Devatāsaṃyutta*

1 *Mārīsa*, “dear sir,” is the term which the devas generally use to address the Buddha, eminent bhikkhus (see, e.g., 40:10; IV 270,16), and members of their own community (11:3; I 218,34); kings also use it to address one another (3:12; I 80,4). Spk explains it as a term of affection meaning “one without suffering” (*niddukkha*), but it is probably a Middle Indic form of Skt *madṛsa*.

The word “flood” (*ogha*) is used metaphorically, but here with technical overtones, to designate a doctrinal set of four floods (see 45:171), so called, according to Spk, “because they keep beings submerged within the round of existence and do not allow them to rise up to higher states and to Nibbāna.” The four (with definitions from Spk) are: (i) the flood of sensuality (*kāmogha*) = desire and lust for the five cords of sensual pleasure (agreeable forms, sounds, etc.—see 45:176); (ii) the flood of existence (*bhavogha*) = desire and lust for form-sphere existence and formless-sphere existence and attachment to *jhāna*; (iii) the flood of views (*diṭṭhogha*) = the sixty-two views (DN I 12–38); and (iv) the flood of ignorance (*avijjogha*) = lack of knowledge regarding the Four Noble Truths. Flood imagery is also used at vv. 298–300, 511–13, and 848–49.

2 *Appatiṭṭhaṃ khvāhaṃ āvuso anāyūhaṃ ogham atariṃ*. Spk: The Buddha’s reply is intended to be paradoxical, for one normally crosses a flood by halting in places that offer a foothold and by straining in places that must be crossed.

Spk glosses *appatiṭṭhaṃ* only with *appatiṭṭhahanto* (an alternative form of the present participle), but Spk-pṭ elaborates: “Not halting: not coming to a standstill on account of the defilements and so forth; the meaning is ‘not sinking’ (*appatiṭṭhahanto ti kilesādinam vasena asantiṭṭhanto, asamsidanto ti attho*).” The verb *patitiṭṭhati* usually means “to become established,” i.e., attached, principally on account of craving and other defilements: see below v. 46 and n. 35. Consciousness driven by craving is “established” (see 12:38–40, 12:64, 22:53–54), and when craving is removed it becomes “unestablished, unsupported.” The arahant expires “with consciousness unestablished” (*appatiṭṭhitena viññāṇena ... parinibbuto*; see 4:23 (I 122,12–13)). All these nuances resonate in the Buddha’s reply.

The verb *āyūhati* is rare in the Nikāyas, but see below v. 263df, v. 264d, and Sn 210d. It is an intensification of *ūhati* (augmented by *ā-* with *-y-* as liaison); the simple verb occurs at MN I 116,13–14, where it might be rendered “to be strained.” Its occurrence there ties up with the present context: a strained mind is far from concentration. In the later literature the noun form *āyūhana* acquires the technical sense of “accumulation,” with specific reference to kamma; in the formula of dependent origination (*paṭicca-samuppāda*), volitional formations (*saṅkhārā*) are said to have the function of *āyūhana*; see Paṭis I 52,14, 26; Vism 528,12 (Ppn 17:51), 579,31–580,4 (Ppn 17:292–93).

Spk: The Blessed One deliberately gave an obscure reply to the deva in order to humble him, for he was stiff with conceit yet imagined himself wise. Realizing that the deva would not be able to penetrate the teaching unless he first changed his attitude, the Buddha intended to perplex him and thereby curb his pride. At that point, humbled, the deva would ask for clarification and the Buddha would explain in such a way that he could understand.

- 3 The Buddha’s brief reply points to the middle way (*majjhimā paṭipadā*) in its most comprehensive range, both practical and philosophical. To make this implication clear Spk enumerates seven dyads: (i) “halting” by way of defilements, one sinks; “straining” by way of volitional formations, one gets swept away; (ii) by way of craving

and views, one sinks; by way of the other defilements, one gets swept away; (iii) by way of craving, one sinks; by way of views, one gets swept away; (iv) by way of the eternalist view, one sinks; by way of the annihilationist view, one gets swept away (see It 43,12–44,4); (v) by way of slackness one sinks, by way of restlessness one gets swept away; (vi) by way of devotion to sensual pleasures one sinks, by way of devotion to self-mortification one gets swept away; (vii) by way of all unwholesome volitional formations one sinks, by way of all mundane wholesome volitional formations one gets swept away. Nāṇananda suggests connecting the principle of “not halting, not straining” with each of the four floods: see SN-Anth 2:56–58.

- 4 Spk: The Buddha is called a *brahmin* in the sense of arahant (see Dhṃ 388, 396–423). He is *fully quenched* (*parinibbuto*) in that he is quenched through the quenching of defilements (*kilesanibbānena nibbutaṃ*). Craving is designated *attachment* (*visattikā*) because it clings and adheres to a variety of sense objects.
- 5 Spk: When the deva heard the Buddha’s reply he was established in the fruit of stream-entry.
- 6 *Sattānaṃ nimokkhaṃ pamokkhaṃ vivekaṃ*. Spk: “Emancipation (*nimokkha*) is the path, for beings are emancipated from the bondage of defilements by the path; release (*pamokkha*) is the fruit, for at the moment of the fruit beings have been released from the bondage of defilements; seclusion (*viveka*) is Nibbāna, for when they attain Nibbāna beings are separated from all suffering. Or, alternatively, all three are designations for Nibbāna: for having attained Nibbāna, beings are emancipated, released, separated from all suffering.” The actual wording of the verse seems to confirm the second alternative.
- 7 Spk glosses: *Nandibhavaparikkhayā ti nandimūlakassa kammabhavassa parikkhayena; nandiyā ca bhavassa cā ti pi vaṭṭati*; “By *delight-existence-destruction*: by the utter destruction of kamma-process existence rooted in delight; it is also proper to understand it as meaning ‘(the destruction) of delight and of existence.’” It would be more plausible, however, to construe this three-term *tappurisa* as an

inverted compound placed in irregular order probably owing to the exigencies of verse. This interpretation is confirmed by Pj II 469,14 and Dhp-a IV 192,7–8 in their gloss on the related *bahubbhi* compound *nandibhava-parikkhiṇaṃ* as *tisu bhavesu parikkhiṇataṇhaṃ*; “one who has destroyed craving for the three realms of existence.” See too below v. 300c and n. 165.

- 8 In this verse only the first two pādas conform to a recognizable metre (*Vatta*), which indicates that the verse is corrupt. Ee2 amends the third pāda and adds a line found only in a Lanna ms to arrive at a novel reading: *vedanānaṃ nirodhā ca/ upasanto carissati ti*. It then treats the last three pādas of the other editions as prose. This, however, alters the meaning of the verse in such a way that it no longer directly answers the question.

Spk: By the first method of explanation, *delight in existence* (*nandibhava*, or, following the gloss: “existence rooted in delight”), being the threefold activity of kammic formation (*tividhakammābhisaṅkhāra*—see 12:51), implies the aggregate of volitional formations (*sāṅkhārakkhandha*); *perception and consciousness* implies the two aggregates associated therewith; and by mentioning this, the feeling associated with those three aggregates is included. Thus, by way of the nonoccurrence of the four kammically active mental aggregates (*anupādiṇṇaka-arūpakkhandhā*), “*Nibbāna with residue*” (*sa-upādisesa-nibbāna*) is indicated. By the phrase *by the cessation and appeasement of feelings* (*vedanānaṃ nirodhā upasamā*), the kammically acquired (*upādiṇṇaka*) feeling is referred to, and by mentioning this the other three associated aggregates are implied; the aggregate of form is included as their physical basis and object. Thus, by way of the nonoccurrence of the five kammically acquired aggregates, “*Nibbāna without residue*” (*anupādisesa-nibbāna*) is indicated. By the second method (taking “*delight*” and “*existence*” as parallel terms), *delight* implies the aggregate of volitional formations; *existence*, the aggregate of form; and the other three aggregates are shown under their own names. *Nibbāna* is indicated as the nonoccurrence of these five aggregates. Thus the Blessed One concludes the teaching with *Nibbāna* itself.

On the two elements of *Nibbāna*, see the General Introduction, p. 50.

- 9 Spk: “Life is swept along” (*upaniyati jivitaṃ*) means: “(Life) is destroyed, it ceases; or it moves towards, i.e., gradually approaches, death” (*upaniyati ti parikkhiyati nirujjhati; upagacchati vā; anupubbena maraṇaṃ upeti ti attho*). “Short is the life span” (*appam āyu*): “The life span is limited in two ways: first, because it is said, ‘One who lives long lives for a hundred years or a little longer’ (see 4:9); and second, because in the ultimate sense the life-moment of beings is extremely limited, enduring for a mere act of consciousness.” Spk continues as at *Vism* 238 (Ppn 8:39).
- 10 Spk: This deva had been reborn into one of the brahmā worlds with a long life span. When he saw beings passing away and taking rebirth in realms with a short life span, he was moved to pity and urged them to do “deeds of merit” (*puññāni*)—to develop the form-sphere and formless-sphere *jhānas*—so that they would be reborn into the form and formless realms with a long life span. The Buddha’s verse is a rejoinder intended to show that the deva’s advice is still tied to the round of existence and does not lead to emancipation. The *peace* (*santi*) which the Buddha commends is *Nibbāna*.
- Spk explains two denotations of *lokāmisā*, literally “*caral things*”: (i) figuratively (*pariyāyena*), it denotes the entire round of existence with its three planes, the objective sphere of attachment, “the bait of the world”; (ii) literally (*nippariyāyena*), it signifies the four requisites (clothing, food, dwelling, and medicines), the material basis for survival. For the figurative use of *āmisā*, see v. 371d, v. 480, and 35:230; in the last text, however, the six sense objects are compared to baited hooks rather than to the bait itself.
- 11 *Vayogunā anupubbaṃ jahanti*. Spk: Youth deserts one who reaches middle age; both youth and middle age desert one who reaches old age; and at the time of death, all three stages desert us.
- 12 Spk: One must *cut off* (*chinde*) the five lower fetters (identity view, doubt, the distorted grasp of rules and vows, sensual desire, ill will). One must *abandon* (*jahe*) the five higher

fetters (lust for form, lust for the formless, conceit, restlessness, ignorance). In order to cut off and abandon these fetters one must *develop a further five* (*pañca cattari bhāvaye*), namely, the five spiritual faculties (faith, energy, mindfulness, concentration, wisdom). The *five ties* (*pañcasāṅgā*) are: lust, hatred, delusion, conceit, and views. A bhikkhu who has surmounted these five ties is called *a crosser of the flood* (*oghatinno*), that is, a crosser of the fourfold flood (see n. 1).

Strangely, although the verses refer to the five ties as if they are a standard doctrinal set, no pentad of *saṅgas* can be found as such in the Nikāyas; the five *saṅgas* are mentioned at Vibh 377,16–18.

- 13 Spk says, “When the five faculties are awake the five hindrances are asleep, and when the five hindrances are asleep the five faculties are awake,” but this seems redundant; the explanation would be more satisfactory if we take the first phrase to be stating that when the five faculties are asleep the five hindrances are awake, thus making more explicit the relationship of diametric opposition and mutual exclusion between the two pentads. Spk continues: “It is by the same five hindrances that *one gathers dust*, i.e., the dust of the defilements; and it is by the five faculties that *one is purified*.”
- 14 Spk identifies the *dhammā* of pāda a as the *catusacca-dhammā*, “the things (or teachings) of the four (noble) truths.” *Who may be led into others’ doctrines*: Spk: The doctrines of the other spiritual sects apart from the Buddha’s Teaching are called “others’ doctrines” (*paravādā*); specifically, the doctrines of the sixty-two views (DN I 12–38). Some tend to these doctrines of their own accord, some are led into them and adopt them through the influence of others.
- 15 *Those awakened ones* (*sambuddhā*). Spk: There are four kinds of awakened ones: omniscient Buddhas, paccekabuddhas, “four-truth awakened ones” (i.e., arahant disciples), and those awakened through learning. The first three types are indicated in the present context. They *fare evenly amidst the uneven*: they fare evenly amidst the uneven common domain of the world, or amidst the uneven community of sentient beings, or amidst the uneven multitude of defilements.

- 16 Spk: Here *taming* (*dama*) signifies the qualities pertaining to concentration. *Sagehood* (*mona*) is the knowledge of the four supramundane paths, so called because it experiences (*munāti ti monaṃ*); that is, it knows the four truths. The *realm of Death* (*maccudheyya*) is the round with its three planes, so called because it is the domain of Death; its *beyond or far shore* (*pāra*) is Nibbāna.
- 17 Spk sees this couplet as an implicit formulation of the threefold training: by the abandoning of conceit the higher virtue (*adhisila*) is implied; by *well concentrated* (*susamāhitatto*), the training in concentration or the higher mind (*adhicitta*); and by *lofty mind* (*sucetaso*), denoting a mind endowed with wisdom, the training in the higher wisdom (*adhipaññā*). To this we might add that the last phrase, *everywhere released* (*sabbadhi vippanutto*), points to the culmination of the threefold training in liberation (*vimutti*). See DN II 122,15–123,12.
- 18 Spk: This verse was spoken by an earth-bound deva who dwelt in that forest. Each day he would see the bhikkhus who inhabited the forest sitting in meditation after their meal. As they sat, their minds would become unified and serene, and the serenity of their minds would become manifest in their complexion (*vaṇṇa*). Puzzled that they could have such serene faces while living under these austere conditions, the deva came to the Buddha to inquire into the cause. The facial complexion (*mukhavaṇṇa*) or complexion of the skin (*chavivaṇṇa*) is understood to indicate success in meditation; see 21:3 (II 275,20–21), 28:1 (III 235,22); and Vin I 40,14, and 41,2.
- 19 *Tāvatiṃsa*, “the realm of the thirty-three,” is the third sense-sphere heaven. It is so named because thirty-three youths, headed by the youth Magha, had been reborn here as a result of their meritorious deeds. Magha himself became Sakka, ruler of the devas. Nandana is the Garden of Delight in Tāvatiṃsa, so called because it gives delight and joy to anyone who enters it. According to Spk, this deva had just taken rebirth into this heaven and, while wandering through the Nandana Grove, he spoke the verse as a spontaneous paean of joy over his celestial glory. Spk glosses *naradevānaṃ* with *devapurisānaṃ*, “deva-

males"; it is clearly not a *dvanda* compound. *Tidasa*, "the Thirty" (lit. "triple ten"), is a poetic epithet for Tāvatiṃsa.

- 20 Spk ascribes this rejoinder to a female deva who was a noble disciple (*ariyasāvika*). Thinking, "This foolish deva imagines his glory to be permanent and unchanging, unaware that it is subject to cutting off, perishing, and dissolution," she spoke her stanza in order to dispel his delusion. The "maxim of the arahants" is pronounced by the Buddha at 15:20 (II 193, also at DN II 199,6-7); the deva-king Sakka repeats it on the occasion of the Buddha's parinibbāna (see v. 609). The first line usually reads *aniccā vata saṅkhārā* rather than, as here, *aniccā sabbasaṅkhārā*. An identical exchange of verses occurs below at 9:6, with the goddess Jālini and the Venerable Anuruddha as speakers. The feminine vocative *bāle* in pāda b implies that the latter dialogue was the original provenance of the verse, or in any case that the first devatā is female.

Spk: *Formations* here are all formations of the three planes of existence (*sabbe tebhūmakasaṅkhārā*), which are impermanent in the sense that they become nonexistent after having come to be (*hutovā abhāvaṭṭhena aniccā*). *Their appeasement is blissful* (*tesaṃ vūpasamo sukho*): Nibbāna itself, called the appeasement of those formations, is blissful.

- 21 *Upadhi*, "acquisitions" (from *upa* + *dhā*, "to rest upon") means literally "that upon which something rests," i.e., the "foundations" or "paraphernalia" of existence. The word has both objective and subjective extensions. Objectively, it refers to the things acquired, i.e., one's assets and possessions; subjectively, to the act of appropriation rooted in craving. In many instances the two senses merge, and often both are intended. The word functions as a close counterpart of *upādāna*, "clinging," to which, however, it is not etymologically related. See in this connection 12:66 and II, n. 187, and Sn p. 141.

Spk (along with other commentaries) offers a fourfold classification of *upadhi*: (i) *kāmūpadhi*, acquisitions as sensual pleasures and material possessions; (ii) *khandhūpadhi*, the five aggregates; (iii) *kilesūpadhi*, defilements, which are the foundation for suffering in the realm of misery; and

(iv) *abhisāṅkhārūpadhi*, volitional formations, accumulations of kamma, which are the foundation for all suffering in saṃsāra. In the deva's verse *upadhi* is used in the first sense.

In his reply the Buddha turns the devatā's expression "one without acquisitions" (*nirupadhi*) on its head by using the term as a designation for the arahant, who is free from all four kinds of *upadhi* and thus completely free from suffering. The pair of verses recurs below at 4:8, with Māra as the interlocutor.

- 22 Spk: *There is no affection like that for oneself* because people, even if they discard their parents and neglect to care for their children, still care for themselves (see v. 392). *There is no wealth equal to grain* because people, when famished, will give away gold and silver and other assets in order to obtain grain. *There is no light like wisdom* because wisdom can illumine the ten-thousandfold world system and dispel the darkness concealing the three periods of time, which even the sun cannot do (see AN II 139-40). *Among the waters the rain is supreme* because if the rainfall were to be cut off even the great ocean would dry up, but when the rain continues to pour down the world becomes one mass of water even up to the Ābhassara deva world.
- 23 From this point on, wherever the text does not specify the identity of the speakers, it is implied that the first verse is spoken by a devatā and the reply by the Buddha.
- 24 In pāda b, Be and Se read *sannisivesu*, a word not encountered elsewhere, while Ee1 & 2, following SS, read *sannisinnesu*, which may be a "correction" of the original reading; the text available to the subcommentator evidently read *sannisivesu*. Spk glosses: *yathā phāsukatṭhānaṃ upagantvā sannisinnesu vissamānesu*. [Spk-pt: *parissamavinodanattam sabbaso sannisidantesu; d-kārassa hi v-kāraṃ katvā niddeso*.] The gist of this explanation is that at noon all the birds (and other animals), exhausted by the heat, are quietly resting in order to dispel their fatigue.

In pāda c the resolution of *saṇateva* is problematic. Spk glosses: *saṇati viya mahāviraṃ viya muccati*, "it seems to make a sound, it seems as if it releases a great roar." This implies that Spk divides the *sandhi* into *saṇate iva*. Ee2

apparently accepts this with its reading *saṇate va*. Following a suggestion of VĀT, I resolve it *saṇati eva*, taking the sense to be that the forest itself is emitting the sound. The verb *saṇati* means merely to make a sound, and is elsewhere used to describe a noisy creek (Sn 720–21), so here the sound might be more appropriately described as a murmur than as a roar. In pāda d the verb is *paṭibhāti*, glossed by Spk as *upaṭṭhāti*.

Spk: In the dry season, at high noon, when the animals and birds are all sitting quietly, a great sound arises from the depths of the forest as the wind blows through the trees, bamboo clusters, and hollows. At that moment an obtuse deva, unable to find a companion with whom to sit and converse amiably, uttered the first stanza. But when a bhikkhu has returned from his alms round and is sitting alone in a secluded forest abode attending to his meditation subject, abundant happiness arises (as is expressed in the rejoinder).

- 25 *Arati, tandi, vijambhikā*, and *bhattasammada* recur at 46:2 (V 64,31–32) and 46:51 (V 103,13–14). Formal definitions are at Vibh 352. Spk: The *noble path (ariyamagga)* is both the mundane and supramundane path. The clearing of the path comes about when one expels the mental corruptions by means of the path itself, with the energy (*virīya*) conascent with the path.

On the distinction between the mundane and supramundane paths, see the Introduction to Part V, pp.1490–92.

- 26 Spk explains *pade pade*, in pāda c, thus: “In each object (*ārammaṇe ārammaṇe*); for whenever a defilement arises in relation to any object, it is just there that one founders (*visidati*). But the phrase can also be interpreted by way of the modes of deportment (*iriyāpatha*); if a defilement arises while one is walking, (standing, sitting, or lying down), it is just there that one founders. *Intentions (saṅkappa)* should be understood here by way of the three wrong intentions, i.e., of sensuality, ill will, and harming.”
- 27 The simile of the tortoise is elaborated at 35:240, followed by the same verse. Spk: One is *independent (anissito)* of the dependencies of craving and views, and *fully quenched* by

the quenching of defilements (*kilesapariniḥhāna*). He would not reprove another person for defects in conduct, etc., from a desire to humiliate him, but he would speak out of compassion, with the idea of rehabilitating him, having set up in himself the five qualities (speaking at the right time, about a true matter, gently, in a beneficial way, with a mind of lovingkindness; see AN III 244,1–3).

- 28 Be and Se read the verb in pāda c as *apabodhati*, Ee1 as *appabodhati*, Ee2 as *appabodheti*. Apparently the latter readings arose on the supposition that the word is formed from *a + pabodh*. Spk’s gloss—*apaharanto bujjhati*, “who, pulling back, knows”—supports *apabodhati (apa + bodh)*. The Skt parallel at Uv 19:5 has a different pāda altogether, *sarvopāpam jahāty eṣa*. Though the verse includes no ostensible interrogative, Spk interprets it as posing a question. I take *koci* to be equivalent to *kvaci*, though Spk glosses it as a personal pronoun.

Spk: As a good thoroughbred who knows to pull back from the whip does not let it strike him, so a bhikkhu who is keen to avoid blame—who knows to pull back from it—does not let any genuine ground for abuse strike him. The deva asks: “Is there any such arahant?” But no one is wholly free from abuse on false grounds. The Buddha answers that such arahants, who avoid unwholesome states from a sense of shame, are few.

- 29 Spk: The deva refers to one’s mother as a “little hut” because one dwells in her womb for ten months; to a wife as a “little nest” because, after a hard day’s work, men resort to the company of women in the way that birds, after searching for food during the day, resort to their nests at night; to sons as “lines extended” (*santānakā*) because they extend the family lineage; and to craving as bondage. The Buddha replies as he does because he will never again dwell within a mother’s womb, or support a wife, or beget sons.
- 30 Spk: The deva asked these additional questions because he was astonished by the Buddha’s quick replies and wanted to find out if he had really grasped the meaning.

Although three eds. employ the singular *santānakaṃ* in

pāda c of this verse, SS and Ee2 have the plural *santānake*, which seems preferable for maintaining consistency with the other verses. *Kintāham* should be resolved *kin te ahaṃ*.

- 31 The opening portion of this sutta appears, with elaboration, in the prologue to the Samiddhi Jātaka (Ja No. 167), which includes the first pair of verses as well. MN No. 133 opens in a similar way, with Samiddhi as the protagonist. The bhikkhu Samiddhi was so named because his body was splendid (*samiddha*), handsome and lovely. Spk makes it clear that this is a female devatā (called a *devadhītā* in the Jātaka), an earth-deity (*bhummadevatā*) who resided in the grove. When she saw Samiddhi in the light of the early dawn, she fell in love with him and planned to seduce him. Samiddhi appears below at 4:22 and 35:65–68.
- 32 The verses revolve around a pun on the double meaning of *bhuñjati*, to eat food and to enjoy sense pleasures. The devatā is ostensibly telling Samiddhi to eat before going on alms round (i.e., to get his fill of sensual pleasures before taking to the monk's life), but Samiddhi insists he will not abandon the monk's life for the sake of sensual enjoyment.
- Spk: The devatā had spoken of *time* with reference to the time of youth, when one is able to enjoy sensual pleasures. In pādas ab of his reply Samiddhi speaks with reference to the time of death (*marañakāla*), which is *hidden* (*channa*) in that one never knows when it will arrive. In pāda d he refers to the time for practising the duty of an ascetic (*samañadhammakaraṇakāla*), as it is difficult for an old person to learn the Dhamma, practise austerities, dwell in the forest, and develop the meditative attainments. The *vo* in pāda a is a mere indeclinable (*nipātamatta*).
- 33 At 4:21 Māra offers the same advice to a group of young bhikkhus, who reply in words identical with those of Samiddhi. The Buddha's exposition of the dangers in sensual pleasures may be found at MN I 85–87, 364–67, 506–8, and elsewhere. Samiddhi's answer reiterates the standard verse of homage to the Dhamma, omitting only the first term ("well expounded"), which is not relevant here. Spk interprets the "immediate" or "timeless" (*akālika*) character of the Dhamma by way of the Abhidhamma doctrine

that the fruit (*phala*) arises in immediate succession to its respective path (*magga*), but this idea certainly seems too narrow for the present context, where the contrast is simply between the immediately beneficial Dhamma and "time-consuming" sensual pleasures. For more on *akālika*, see II, n. 103.

A few words are called for in explanation of my translation of *opanayika* as "applicable," which departs from the prevalent practice of rendering it "leading onward." CPD points out that "the context in which [the word] occurs shows clearly that it cannot have the active sense of 'leading to' ... but must rather be interpreted in a passive sense (gerundive) in accordance with the commentaries." To be sure, Vism 217,10–12 (Ppn 7:84) does allow for an active sense with its alternative derivation: *nibbānaṃ upaneti ti ariyamaggo upaneyyo ... opanayiko*, "it leads on to Nibbāna, thus the noble path is onward-leading ... so it is leading onwards"; this derivation, however, is almost surely proposed with "edifying" intent. Earlier in the same passage the word is glossed by the gerundive *upanetabba*, "to be brought near, to be applied," so I follow the derivation at Vism 217,3–9 (Ppn 7:83), which is probably correct etymologically: *bhāvanāvāsena attano citte upanayanam arahati ti opanayiko ... asaṅkhaṭo pana attano citta upanayanam arahati ti opanayiko; sacchikiriyāvasena alliyanaṃ arahati ti attho*; "The Dhamma (as noble path) is applicable because it deserves application within one's own mind by way of meditative development.... But the unconditioned Dhamma (i.e., Nibbāna) is applicable because it deserves application with one's own mind; that is, it deserves being resorted to by way of realization." While the word *opanayika* does not occur in any other context that allows us to draw inferences about its meaning, the cognate expression *att' ūpanāyiko* (at 55:7 (V 353,21, 26) and Vin III 91,33–34) clearly means "applicable to oneself." On the other hand, to indicate that the Dhamma conduces to Nibbāna the texts use another expression, *niyyānika upasamasamvattanika* (see, e.g., 55:25 (V 380,11) and MN I 67,13), which would not fit the contexts where the above formula appears.

- 34 Spk: "Each of the deva-kings has a retinue of a hundred or a thousand *koṭis* of devas. Placing themselves in grand positions, they see the Tathāgata. How can powerless female devas like us get a chance to see him?" A *koṭi* = 10,000,000.
- 35 Spk: *What can be expressed (akkheyya)* are the five aggregates, the objective sphere of linguistic reference (*not* the terms of expression themselves). *Beings who perceive what can be expressed (akkheyyasaññino sattā)*: When ordinary beings perceive the five aggregates, their perceptions are affected by the ideas of permanence, pleasure, and self, elsewhere called "distortions" (*vipallāsa*, AN II 52,4-8). These distorted perceptions then provoke the defilements, on account of which beings *become established in what can be expressed (akkheyyasmim patitthitā)*. Beings "become established in" the five aggregates in eight ways: by way of lust, hatred, delusion, views, the underlying tendencies, conceit, doubt, and restlessness (see n. 2).

It-a II 31-32, commenting on the same couplet at It 53, says that "beings who perceive what can be expressed" are those who perceive the five aggregates by way of a percept occurring in the mode of "I," "mine," "deva," "human," "woman," or "man," etc. That is, they perceive the five aggregates as a being or person, etc.

Spk suggests that this verse is stated in order to show how sensual pleasures are "time-consuming." [Spk-pṭ: *Kāmā* here denotes all phenomena of the three planes, called sensual pleasures because they are pleasurable (*kamanīyā*).] This suggestion seems confirmed by the last line: those who do not understand the five aggregates correctly "come under the yoke of Death"; they undergo repeated birth and death and hence remain caught in *saṃsāra*, the net of time.

- 36 Spk: One "fully understands what can be expressed" by way of the three kinds of full understanding: (i) by full understanding of the known (*ñātapariññā*) one understands the five aggregates in terms of their individual characteristics, etc.; (ii) by full understanding by scrutinization (*tiraṇapariññā*) one scrutinizes them in forty-two modes as impermanent, suffering, etc.; (iii) by full understanding as abandonment (*pahānapariññā*) one abandons

desire and lust for the aggregates by means of the supreme path. For a fuller discussion, see Vism 606-7 (Ppn 20:3-4) and Vism 611-13 (Ppn 20:18-19), based on Paṭis II 238-42, where, however, only forty modes are enumerated under (ii). The forty-two modes are at Vism 655,15-30 (Ppn 21:59), in connection with "discerning formations as void."

*One does not conceive "one who expresses" (akkhātaraṃ na maññati)*. Spk: The arahant does not conceive the speaker as an individual (*puggala*); that is, he no longer takes the five aggregates to be "mine," "I," and "my self."

*That does not exist for him (tāṃ hi tassa na hoti ti)*: In this couplet I follow SS in omitting, as an interpolation, the words *na tassa atthi*, included in all the printed eds. The Skt version too, cited at Ybhūs 2:2 (Enomoto, CSCS, p. 23), does not include such a phrase, but reads: *tad vai na vidyate tasya, vadeyur yena tam pare*, "That does not exist for him by which others might speak of him."

Spk explains that there exist no grounds for speaking of the arahant as lustful, or as hating, or as deluded. It would be more fitting, perhaps, to see this second couplet as referring to the arahant after his parinibbāna, when by casting off the five aggregates ("what can be expressed") he goes beyond the range of verbal expression (see Sn 1076). It should be noted that thematically these two verses closely correspond to the Mūlapariyāya Sutta (MN No. 1). Spk states that this verse discusses the "directly visible" ninefold supramundane Dhamma, i.e., the four paths, their fruits, and Nibbāna.

- 37 The "three discriminations" (*tayo vidhā*) are the three modes of conceit: the conceit "I am better" (*seyyo 'ham asmimāna*), the conceit "I am equal" (*sadiso 'ham asmimāna*), and the conceit "I am worse" (*hino 'ham asmimāna*). See 22:49 (III 48-49), 45:162, 46:41. At Vibh 389-90 it is shown that these three become ninefold in so far as each triad may be entertained by one who is truly better, truly equal, or truly worse. One "not shaken in the three discriminations" is the arahant, who alone has completely eradicated the fetter of conceit. Spk points out that the first couplet shows how sensual pleasures are time-consuming, while

the second couplet discusses the supramundane Dhamma.

- 38 The most common reading of this pāda is *pahāsi saṅkhaṃ na vimānam ajjhagā*, found in Be, Se, and Ee1 of v. 49, in Be and Ee1 of the parallel v. 105, and in the lemma in Spk (Be, Se) to v. 49. From his comments it is clear the commentator had a text with *vimāna*, which he explains as equivalent to *vividhamāna*: “He does not assume the three-fold conceit with its nine divisions” (*navabhedam tividhamānaṃ na upagato*). Spk’s alternative explanation, which takes *vimānaṃ* to be the mother’s womb, the destination of the rebirth process, seems too fanciful to be taken seriously. *Vimānadassi* occurs at Sn 887b in the sense of “contemptuous,” but this meaning of *vimāna* may be too narrow for the present context.

The verse may have originally read *na ca mānam* and this reading may have already been corrupted before the age of the commentaries, *c/v* confusion being not uncommon in Sinhala-script texts. The corruption would then have been preserved and perpetuated by the commentators. Despite the dominance of *na vimānam*, the reading *na ca mānam* is found in v. 105 of Se, in the lemma to v. 49 in four Sinhala mss of Spk (referred to in the notes to Spk (Se)), and in Thai eds. of SN and Spk. The Skt counterpart (quoted at Ybhūś 2:4; Enomoto, CSCS, p. 23) has *prahāya mānaṃ ca na saṅgam eti*, which corresponds more closely to the alternative reading of the Pāli. The original finite verb may have been the rare reduplicative perfect *ājā* (as in SS) or *āgā* (as in Ee2 and Thai eds.). See von Hinüber, “On the Perfect in Pāli,” *Selected Papers*, pp. 174–76.

Spk understands *pahāsi saṅkhaṃ* to mean that the arahant can no longer be described by such concepts as lustful, hating, or deluded, but the point is more likely to be that he has stopped forming *papañcasaññāsaṅkhā*, “ideas and notions arisen from mental proliferation” (see MN I 112,2–3). The Skt reading *saṅgam* may actually make better sense in this context. It seems that this phrase refers back to v. 47 and *na vimānam ajjhagā* back to v. 48. It is possible, too, that the lines describe the arahant after his parinibbāna, when he can no longer be reckoned by way of the five aggregates (see 44:1). Pādas cf seem to be

describing the arahant after his parinibbāna, though elsewhere he is also said to be unfindable here and now (e.g., at 22:86; III 118,35–36).

- 39 Spk explains the avoidance of evil in body, speech, and mind by way of the ten courses of wholesome kamma (see MN I 47,12–17, 287–288, etc.). The phrase *having abandoned sense pleasures* rejects the extreme of indulgence in sensual pleasures; *one should not pursue a course that is painful and harmful* rejects the extreme of self-mortification. Thus, Spk says, the verse points to the middle way that avoids the two extremes. The whole verse can also be construed positively in terms of the Noble Eightfold Path: doing no evil by body and speech implies right speech, right action, and right livelihood; “mindful” implies right effort, right mindfulness, and right concentration; “clearly comprehending” implies right view and right intention. Spk says that at the end of the Buddha’s discourse the devatā was established in the fruit of stream-entry and spoke this verse, “a great Dhamma teaching,” in order to show the eightfold path by which she had attained the fruit.
- 40 In pāda b, I read *ḍayhamāne va*, with Ee1 and SS, as against *ḍayhamāno va* in Be, Se, and Ee2. With *bhavarāga* in pāda c, these verses also appear as Th 39–40 and 1162–63. In the present form the pair of verses sets a problem in interpretation, for *kāmarāga*, sensual lust, is abandoned by the third path, while *sakkāyadiṭṭhi*, identity view, is abandoned by the first path, so the devatā appears to be advocating a higher attainment than the Buddha. This problem does not arise in the Th version, since *bhavarāga*, lust for existence, is abandoned by the fourth path, that of arahantship. Spk gives an ingenious solution: The deva spoke his verse with reference to the abandoning of sensual lust by way of suppression only (*vikkhambhanappahānam eva*), i.e., temporarily through the attainment of jhāna, while the Buddha recommended the attainment of stream-entry, which eliminates identity view by way of eradication (*samuccheda*) so that not even the subtle underlying tendency (*anusaya*) remains, thus ensuring full liberation in a maximum of seven more lives.
- 41 The verse poses a riddle which hinges on two connota-

tions of *phusati*, “to touch”: (i) to acquire a particular kamma, here the grave kamma of wronging an innocent person; and (ii) to reap the result of that kamma when it comes to maturity.

42 At Sn 662 this verse refers to Kokāliya’s calumny of Sāriputta and Moggallāna (see 6:10, which includes the story but not this verse). A different, and less credible, background story is told at Dhp-a III 31–33, commenting on Dhp 125; see BL 2:282–84. On the kammic result of harming innocents, see Dhp 137–40.

43 This verse and the next form the opening theme of Vism and are commented on at Vism 1–4 (Ppn 1:1–8); the explanation is incorporated into Spk. VĀT suggests that the words *antojaṭṭā bahijaṭṭā* should be taken as *bahubbihi* compounds in apposition to *pajā* (“having a tangle inside, having a tangle outside”), but I translate in accordance with Spk, which treats them as *tappurisa*.

Spk: *Tangle* (*jaṭṭā*) is a term for the network of craving, in the sense that it “laces together,” for it arises repeatedly up and down among the sense objects such as forms. There is *a tangle inside, a tangle outside*, because craving arises with respect to one’s own possessions and those of others; with respect to one’s own body and the bodies of others; and with respect to the internal and external sense bases.

44 The Buddha’s reply is a succinct statement of the threefold training, with *samādhi* referred to by the word *citta*. Spk says wisdom is mentioned three times in the verse: first as innate intelligence (“wise”); second, as insight-wisdom (*vipassanā-paññā*), the wisdom to be developed; and third, as “discretion,” the pragmatic wisdom that takes the lead in all tasks (*sabbakiccaparināyikā parihāriyapaññā*).

Spk: “Just as a man standing on the ground and taking up a well-sharpened knife might disentangle a great tangle of bamboos, so this bhikkhu ... standing on the ground of virtue and taking up, with the hand of practical intelligence exerted by the power of energy, the knife of insight-wisdom well sharpened on the stone of concentration, might disentangle, cut away, and demolish the entire tangle of craving that had overgrown his own mental continuum” (adapted from Ppn 1:7).

45 While the previous verse shows the trainee (*sekha*), who is capable of disentangling the tangle, this verse shows the arahant, the one beyond training (*asekha*), who has finished disentangling the tangle.

46 Spk says this verse is stated to show the opportunity (or region) for the disentangling of the tangle (*jaṭṭāya vijātanokāsa*). Here *name* (*nāma*) represents the four mental aggregates. Spk treats *impingement* (*paṭigha*) as metrical shorthand for perception of impingement (*paṭighasaññā*). According to Spk-pṭ, in pāda c we should read a compressed *dvanda* compound, *paṭigharūpasaññā* (“perceptions of impingement and of form”), the first part of which has been truncated, split off, and nasalized to fit the metre. Impingement being the impact of the five sense objects on the five sense bases, “perception of impingement” (*paṭighasaññā*) is defined as the fivefold sense perception (see Vibh 261,31–34 and Vism 329,22–24; Ppn 10:16). Perception of form (*rūpasaññā*) has a wider range, comprising as well the perceptions of form visualized in the jhānas [Spk-pṭ: perception of the form of the earth-*kasīna*, etc.]. Spk explains that the former implies sense-sphere existence, the latter form-sphere existence, and the two jointly imply formless-sphere existence, thus completing the three realms of existence.

*It is here that this tangle is cut.* Spk: The tangle is cut, in the sense that the round with its three planes is terminated; it is cut and ceases in dependence on Nibbāna.

47 Readings of pāda b differ. I follow Se and Ee2, *mano yatatam āgataṃ*, as against Be *na mano samyatattam āgataṃ*.

Spk: This deva held the view that one should rein in every state of mind; whether wholesome or not, whether mundane or supramundane, the mind should be reined in, not aroused. [Spk-pṭ: He believed that every state of mind brings suffering and that the unconscious state is better.] The Buddha spoke the rejoinder to show that a distinction should be made between the mind to be reined in and the mind to be developed. See 35:205 (IV 195,15–30), where the Buddha advises reining in the mind (*tato cittaṃ nivāraye*) from objects that arouse the defilements.

48 Spk: This deva, who dwelt in a forest grove, heard the

- forest bhikkhus using such expressions as “I eat, I sit, my bowl, my robe,” etc. Thinking, “I had imagined these bhikkhus to be arahants, but can arahants speak in ways that imply belief in a self?” he approached the Buddha and posed his question.
- 49 *Vohāramattena so vohareyya*. Spk: “Although arahants have abandoned talk that implies belief in a self, they do not violate conventional discourse by saying, ‘The aggregates eat, the aggregates sit, the aggregates’ bowl, the aggregates’ robe’; for no one would understand them.” See in this connection DN I 202,7-9: “Thus, Citta, there are these worldly expressions, worldly terms, worldly conventions, worldly concepts, which the Tathāgata uses without grasping them.”
- 50 Spk: At this point the deva thought that while arahants may not speak thus because they hold a view (of self), they might do so because they still have conceit (i.e., *asmimāna*, the conceit “I am”). Hence he asked the second question, and the Buddha’s reply indicates arahants have abandoned the ninefold conceit (see n. 37).
- 51 Spk resolves *mānaganthassa* in pāda b as *māno ca ganthā assa*, “for him conceit and knots,” in order to conform to the doctrinal tetrad of *gantha*, which does not include *māna*; see 45:174. It seems, however, that here *mānaganthā* should be understood in a looser sense, as *mānassa ganthā*. At It 4,16, in a sutta solely about *māna*, we find *mānaganthā* used as a *bahubbhihi* compound qualifying *pajā* (“a generation knotted by conceit”) and arahants described as *mānaganthābhibhuno* (“those who have overcome the knots of conceit”), which supports my rendering here. The readings of pāda c vary: Be has *maññatam*, Se *maññanam* (which is the gloss in Spk (Be)), Ee1 *yamatam*, Ee2 *ya matam* (= *yam matam*?). Spk explains that he has transcended the threefold conceiving due to craving, views, and conceit.
- 52 Spk: The question refers to the “streams” of *saṃsāra*, the answer to Nibbāna. Portions of the reply can be found at DN I 223,13-15 and Ud 9,4. On the stopping of the streams, see Sn 1034-37, and on the round not revolving see the expression *vaṭṭam ... natthi paññāpanāya* at 22:56-57 and 44:6 (IV 391,9).

- 53 Ee2 precedes this verse with another (v. 70) found only in two Lanna mss from northern Thailand. As that verse is not included in any other edition or known ms of SN, and hardly relates to the subject matter of the dialogue between the Buddha and the devatā, it clearly does not belong here; thus I have not translated it. My decision is further supported by the absence of any gloss on the verse in Spk and Spk-pt, which indicates it was not found in the texts available to the commentators. At Ee2, p. xvii, the editor argues that this verse must be “restored” to provide a question put by the deity, but he assumes that the sutta originally read the first word of v. 72d as *te* which was then changed to *ko* or *ke* by the textual tradition in order to supply a question. But since *ke* as a question makes perfectly good sense, both syntactically and semantically, there is no reason to suppose the original reading was *te* and thus no need to interpolate a new verse to supply the question.
- 54 Spk: “Among those who have become so avid (*ussukajātesu*): Among those who are engaged in various tasks, avid to produce unarisen forms, etc., and to enjoy those that have arisen.” In pāda c of the second verse I read *ke’ dha taṇhaṃ* with Be and Se, as against *gedhataṇhaṃ* (“greed and craving”) in Ee1 & 2, and *kodhataṇhaṃ* (“anger and craving”) in SS. In pāda d, Ee2 reads *te lokasmiṃ* as against *ke lokasmiṃ* in the other eds.
- Ussuka* (Skt *utsuka*) means anxiously desirous, zealous, or busily engaged in some pursuit. The corresponding noun is *ussukka*, which is sometimes found where the adjective would have been more appropriate. *Ussuka* is used in both a laudatory and reprobative sense. At 41:3 (IV 288,12 = 291,4, 302,7), it occurs in the commendatory sense, which I render “zealous.” See too MN I 324,27 and Vin I 49,19-50,8. The negative sense—of being greedy, ambitious, or “avid” (my preferred rendering)—is found here and at Dhp 199. The expression *appossukka*, lit. “having little zeal,” is used to describe one who refrains from busy activity. In SN we find this expression—which I generally render, loosely, “(living) at ease”—at 9:10 (I 202,22), 21:4 (II 277,12), 35:240 (IV 178,1, here “keeping still”), and

- 51:10 (V 262,18). The abstract noun *apossukkatā*, at 6:1 (I 137,1, 6), characterizes the Buddha's original inclination, just after his enlightenment, towards a life of quietude rather than towards the "busy work" of preaching the Dhamma. See too below n. 366 and n. 551.
- 55 Spk: The *four wheels* are the four modes of deportment (walking, standing, sitting, lying down). The *nine doors* are the nine "wound openings" (eyes, ears, nostrils, mouth, genitals, anus). It is *filled up* with impure body parts (head-hairs, etc.), and *bound with greed*, i.e., with craving. *How does one escape from it?*: How can there be emergence from such a body? How can there be freedom, release, a transcendence of it? Spk-pṭ adds: It is *born from a bog* (*pañkajāta*) because it is produced in the foul bog of the mother's womb. The Pāli expression could also have been rendered, "It is a bog," but I follow Spk-pṭ. This stark perspective on the body is elaborated at Sn I, 11, pp. 34-35.
- 56 In pāda a (= Dhṣ 398a), Ee1 *nandiṃ* should be amended to *naddhiṃ*. Spk explains that in the Dhṣ verse *varattā* is craving (*taṅhā*), but as craving is mentioned separately in our verse, *varattā* is glossed differently here.
- Spk: The *thong* (*naddhi*) is hostility (*upanāha*), i.e., strong anger; the *strap* (*varattā*) is the remaining defilements. *Desire and greed* refer to the same mental state spoken of in two senses: desire (*icchā*) is the preliminary weak stage, or the desire for what has not been obtained; greed (*lobha*) is the subsequent strong stage, or the holding to an acquired object. *Craving with its root*: with its root of ignorance.
- 57 This verse of inquiry occurs at Sn 165-66, though with an additional couplet and with a variant line in place of the actual question. The inquirers there are the two yakkhas, Hemavata and Sātāgira. The question (or rather, string of questions) is posed only at Sn 168 and the reply given at Sn 169; they are identical with the question and reply at vv. 221-22. It is only after receiving this reply that the yakkhas pose the present question, *kathaṃ dukkhā pamuccati?*, and the answer given is identical. Having antelope calves (*enijaṅgha*) is one of the thirty-two marks of a great man (see DN III 156,5-12; MN II 136,14). On *nāga*, see below n. 84.
- 58 Spk: *Here*: in this name-and-form (*nāmarūpa*). By mentioning the five cords of sensual pleasure, form is indicated [Spk-pṭ: because they have the pleasure, form is indicated [Spk-pṭ: because they have the nature of form]. By mind (*mano*), name (*nāma*), i.e., the four mental aggregates, is indicated. Thus the basis (of desire) here can be interpreted by way of the five aggregates, etc.
- 59 Spk explains that these devas were called *satullapakāyikā* ("belonging to the extolling-of-the-good group") because they had been reborn in heaven as a result of extolling the Dhamma of the good by way of undertaking it [Spk-pṭ: that is, the Dhamma of the good which consists of going for refuge, taking the precepts, etc.].
- The background story is as follows: Once a merchant ship with a crew of seven hundred men, while crossing the sea, was beset by a terrible storm. As the ship sank, the crew members, praying frantically to their gods, noticed one of their number sitting calmly, cross-legged "like a yogi," free from fear. They asked him how he could remain so calm, and he explained that as he had undertaken the Three Refuges and Five Precepts he had no reason for fear. They requested the same from him, and after dividing them into seven groups of a hundred each he gave each group in turn the refuges and precepts, completing the procedure just as the ship was swallowed up by the sea. As the fruit of this final deed of merit, all the men were immediately reborn in the Tāvatiṃsa heaven in a single group with their leader at the head. Recognizing that they had attained such fortune through their leader's kindness, they came to the Blessed One's presence to speak praise of him.
- 60 Spk: Just as oil is not to be obtained from sand, so wisdom is not gained *from another*, from the blind fool; but just as oil is obtained from sesamum seeds, so one gains wisdom by learning the Dhamma of the good and by following a wise person.
- 61 I take *sātataṃ* to be an accusative adverb from the abstract noun of *sāta*. Spk, however, takes it as an adverb from *satata*, "continually," which seems less satisfactory.
- 62 *Pariyāyena*. Spk glosses *kāraṇena*, "for a reason," which does not help much. I understand the purport to be that

their verses are only provisionally correct, acceptable from a mundane point of view. The Buddha's verse is definitive (*nippiyāyena*) because it points to the ultimate goal. See the contrast of *pariyāyena* and *nippiyāyena* at AN IV 449–54.

- 63 The stain (*mala*) is stinginess itself; see the stock description of the generous lay follower as one who “dwells at home with a mind rid of the stain of stinginess” (*vigatamalamaccherena cetasā agāraṃ ajjhāvasati*).
- 64 Spk: *Those do not die among the dead*: They do not die among those who are “dead” by the death consisting in miserliness. The goods of the miser are just like those of the dead, for neither distribute their belongings.
- 65 Spk: *If one practises the Dhamma*: if one practises the Dhamma by way of the ten courses of wholesome kamma. *Though getting on by gleaning* (*samuñjakam care*): one gets on “by gleaning” by cleaning up the threshing floor, etc., beating the straw, etc. *Of those who sacrifice a thousand*: Of those who sacrifice (offer alms) to a thousand bhikkhus or who offer alms purchased with a thousand pieces of money. This done a hundred thousand times is equivalent to alms given to ten *koṭis* of bhikkhus or worth ten *koṭis* of money (a *koṭi* = 10,000,000). *Are not worth even a fraction*: the word “fraction” (*kala*) can mean a sixteenth part, or a hundredth part, or a thousandth part; here a hundredth part is intended. If one divides into a hundred parts (the value of) a gift given by him, the gift of 10,000 *koṭis* given by the others is not worth one portion of that.

Though Spk speaks of alms offerings to bhikkhus, v. 94 just below implies that the animal sacrifices of the brahmins are what is being rejected.

- 66 Spk: “Faith” here means faith in kamma and its fruit. Just as in war a few heroic men conquer even many cowards, so one endowed with faith, etc., in giving even a small gift, crushes much stinginess and achieves abundant fruit.
- 67 Spk explains *dhammaladdhassa* as either wealth righteously gained, or a person who has gained righteousness, i.e., a noble disciple. The former alternative makes better sense; see AN II 68,13–20. Yama is the god of the nether world; Vetaraṇi is the Buddhist equivalent of the river Styx (see

Sn 674 and Pj II 482,4–6). Spk says that Vetaraṇi is mentioned only as “the heading of the teaching,” i.e., as an example; he has actually passed over all thirty-one great hells.

- 68 *Viceyyadānaṃ*. The expression is an absolute syntactical compound; see Norman, “Syntactical Compounds in Middle Indo-Aryan,” in *Collected Papers*, 4:218–19.

Spk: A gift given after making discrimination. There are two kinds of discrimination: (i) regarding the offering, i.e., one puts aside inferior items and gives only superior items; and (ii) regarding the recipient, i.e., one leaves aside those defective in morality or the followers of the ninety-five heretical creeds (*pāsaṇḍa*, the non-Buddhist sects; see n. 355) and gives to those endowed with such qualities as virtue, etc., who have gone forth in the Buddha's dispensation.

- 69 In pāda a, I read *addhā hi* with Ee2 and SS (also at Ja III 472,29), as against *saddhā hi* in Be and Ee1 and *saddhābhi* in Se. Spk glosses *dhammapadaṃ va* in pāda b thus: *nibbānasaṅkhātāṃ dhammapadam eva*, “just the state of Dhamma known as Nibbāna.” Usually *dhammapada* is a stanza or saying of Dhamma (as at vv. 785–86, 826), which is also plausible in this context, but I prefer to take it as a metrical contraction of *dhammapaṭipadā*, the practice-path of Dhamma, a sense attested to at Sn 88, which explicitly equates *dhammapada* with *magga*. The point the Buddha is then making is that the practice of Dhamma (by the Noble Eightfold Path aimed at Nibbāna) is better than the practice of giving aimed at a heavenly rebirth.

The fuller gloss on the verse at Ja III 474 supports the above interpretation: “Although giving is definitely (*ekamsen' eva*, apparently the gloss on *addhā hi*) praised in many ways, a *dhammapada*—a portion of Dhamma (*dhamma-koṭṭhāsa*) consisting in serenity and insight and in Nibbāna—is even better than giving. Why so? Because in the past (*pubb' eva*)—that is, in this aeon, Kassapa Buddha and so on—and even earlier (*pubbatar' eva*), that is, Vessabhū Buddha and so on (in earlier aeons), the good, the superior persons (*sappurisā*), endowed with wisdom, developed serenity and insight and attained Nibbāna.”

- 70 In pāda d, we should adopt the reading of the agent noun

*āgantā* in Be, Se, and Ee2, as against *āgantvā* in Ee1, which leaves the sentence with an unresolved absolutive clause. We find *āgantā* used in the sense of *āgāmi*, and *anāgantā* used synonymously with *anāgāmi* (in relation to *itthattaṃ*, “this state of being”) at AN I 63,30–64,18.

Spk: They do not come from *Death’s realm*, that is, from the round of existence with its three planes, to Nibbāna, which is *the state of no-more-coming-back* (*apunāgamana*), so called because beings do not return from Nibbāna. One who is heedless and bound to sensual pleasures cannot attain that.

- 71 The identity of the speaker of this passage is difficult to determine from the text. I follow Ee2 in taking it to be another devatā. Though most editions break the lines up as if they were verse, there is no recognizable metre and it seems likely they are intended as prose. Ee2 does not number it as a verse.

Spk says that misery (*agha*) in the first line is the suffering of the five aggregates, and suffering (*dukkha*) in the second line is synonymous with it. The fourth line is paraphrased: “By the removal of the five aggregates the suffering of the round is removed.”

- 72 In pāda b the unusual compound *saṅkapparāga* is glossed by Spk as *saṅkappitarāga*, “intended lust.” Mp III 407,5 glosses: *saṅkappavasena uppannarāgo*, “lust arisen by way of intention (or thought).” Spk-pṭ adds: *subhādivasena saṅkappitavatthumhi rāgo*, “lust in regard to an object thought about as beautiful, etc.” The key to the expression, however, is probably DhP 339d (= Th 760d), where we find *saṅkappā rāganissitā*, “intentions based on lust.” Spk sums up the purport of the verse thus: “Here the identification of sensuality with the sensual object is rejected; it is the sensual defilement that is called sensuality.”

*Dhira* allows of two derivations, one meaning “wise,” the other “firm, steadfast”; see PED and MW, s.v. *dhira*. I have usually translated it as “wise,” following the commentarial gloss *pañḍita*, but elsewhere (e.g., at vv. 411e, 413e, 493a, 495a) I have taken advantage of the word’s ambivalence to render it “steadfast.” The word has elevated overtones and seems to be used solely in verse.

- 73 *Akiñcana* in pāda c is a common epithet of the arahant. Spk explains it as devoid of the “something” (or impediments) of lust, hatred, and delusion (see 41:7; IV 297,18–19 = MN I 298,14–15).

- 74 Spk: Mogharāja was an elder skilled in the sequential structure of discourses (*anusandhikusala*). [Spk-pṭ: He was one of the sixteen pupils of the brahmin Bāvāri; see Sn 1116–19.] Having observed that the meaning of the last verse had not gone in sequence, he spoke thus to connect it in sequence (perhaps by drawing out its implications?). Spk points out that although all arahants can be described as “the best of men, faring for the good of humans” (*narut-tamaṃ atthacaraṃ narānaṃ*), the elder used this expression with specific reference to the Buddha (*dasabalaṃ sandhāy’eva*). Spk paraphrases his statement as an interrogative (*te kiṃ paṃsiyā udāhu apasamsiyā*), which I follow, but it might also be read as a simple declaration which is first confirmed and then improved upon by the Buddha.

- 75 Spk explains *bhikkhū* in pāda a (and presumably in pāda d too) as a vocative addressed to Mogharāja; but as the latter is also addressed by name it seems preferable to take the word in both instances as a nominative plural. In both Be and Se the word is clearly plural. The Buddha thus confirms that those who venerate him are praiseworthy, but steers the inquirer beyond mere devotion by adding that those who understand the truth and abandon doubt (by attaining the path of stream-entry) are even more praiseworthy; for they will eventually become “surmounters of ties” (*saṅgātigā*), i.e., arahants.

- 76 Spk: There is no separate deva world named “the fault-finders” (*ujjhānasaññino*). This name was given to these devas by the redactors of the texts because they arrived in order to find fault with the Tathāgata for his “misuse” of the four requisites. They had thought: “The ascetic Gotama praises contentment with simple requisites to the bhikkhus, but he himself lives luxuriously. Daily he teaches the Dhamma to the multitude. His speech goes in one direction, his deeds in another.” The fact that they address the Buddha while they are still hovering in the air is already indicative of disrespect.

- 77 Spk defines *kitavā* as a fowler (*sākuṇika*) and explains: "As a fowler conceals himself behind branches and foliage and kills the fowl that come near, thereby supporting his wife, so the swindler conceals himself behind a rag-robe and cheats the multitude with clever talk. All the use he makes of the four requisites (robes, food, lodging, and medicines) is use by theft. The deva utters this verse with reference to the Blessed One." The same explanation of *kitavā* is given at Dh-p-a III 375 (to Dh-p 252). However, at Ja VI 228,19 the word occurs in a context that clearly shows it means a gambler; it is glossed by *akkhadhutta*, a dice-gambler, and I translate accordingly here. See Palihawadana, "From Gambler to Camouflage: The Strange Semantic Metamorphosis of Pāli *Kitavā*."
- 78 Spk: Why did the Buddha display a smile? It is said that those devas did not apologize in a way that accorded with the Buddha's true nature (*sabhāvena*); they acted as if there were no difference between the Tathāgata, the supreme person in the world, and ordinary worldly people. The Blessed One smiled with the intention: "When discussion arises from this, I will show the power of a Buddha and thereafter I will pardon them."
- 79 In pāda d, I follow Se in reading *tenidha*, as against *kenidha* in Be and Ee1 and *ko nidha* in Ee2. Neither Spk nor Spk-pṭ offers any help with the meaning of the verse. I translate *kusala* here in accordance with Spk-pṭ's gloss, *anavajja*. At KS 1:35 this verse has been overlooked.
- 80 This line is missing only in Ee1, which gives the impression that the following verses are spoken by the same deva (and so C.Rh.D has translated them).
- 81 This verse is identical with v. 104 except that in pāda d *saṅgā* replaces *dukkhā*. On the five ties, see n. 12.
- 82 This sutta reproduces the opening of the Mahāsamaya Sutta (DN No. 20). The background story, related in detail in Spk (as well as in Sv II 672–77 on DN No. 20), begins when the Buddha intervened to prevent a war between the Sakyans and Koliyans, his paternal and maternal kinsmen, over the waters of the river Rohiṇi. After he mediated a peaceful resolution of their conflict, 250 youths from each community went forth under him as monks. After a

- period of exertion, they all attained arahantship on the same day, the full-moon day of the month of Jeṭṭhamūla (May-June). When the sutta opens, on the same night, they have all assembled in the Master's presence in order to announce their attainments. The word *samaya* in the title means, not "occasion," but meeting or "concourse"; Spk glosses *mahāsamaya* in v. 121 as *mahāsamūha*, "great assembly."
- 83 The Pure Abodes (*suddhāvāsā*) are five planes in the form realm into which only nonreturners can be reborn: Aviha, Atappa, Sudassa, Sudassi, and Akaniṭṭha. Here they attain final deliverance without ever returning from that realm. All the inhabitants are thus either nonreturners or arahants.
- 84 In pāda a, I read *khilaṃ* with Se and Ee1 & 2, as against *khilam* in Be. As *indakhilam* appears in pāda b, *khilam* would be redundant in pāda a. The two words are unrelated: *khila* is a wasteland, both literally and figuratively; *khila*, a stake or pillar, of which a particular kind, the *indakhila*, is planted in front of a city gate or at the entrance to a house as an auspicious symbol. Spk defines all three terms—*khila*, *paligha*, and *indakhila*—in the same way, as lust, hatred, and delusion. At 45:166 these three are called *khila*, but at MN I 139,19–22 *paligha* is identified with ignorance (*avijjā*). A set of five *cetokhila* is mentioned at MN I 101,9–27.
- These bhikkhus are *unstirred* (*anejā*) by the stirring (or commotion, *ejā*) of craving (see 35:90). *Nāga* is a word used to designate various types of powerful beings, particularly a class of semi-divine dragons, but it also can denote cobras and bull elephants and is used as a metaphor for the arahant; see MN I 145,5–7. In relation to the arahant the dominant sense is that of the bull elephant (see Dh-p chap. 23), but because the latter expression would, in English, seem demeaning rather than complimentary I have left *nāga* untranslated. Spk explains the word by way of "edifying etymology" thus: *chandādihi na gacchanti ti nāgā; tena tena maggena pahine kilese na āgacchanti ti nāgā; nānappakāraṃ āgum na karonti ti nāgā*; "nāgas, because they do not go along by way of desire and so forth; nāgas,

because they do not return to the defilements abandoned by the successive paths; *nāgas*, because they do not commit the various kinds of crime." Spk calls this a brief account and refers the reader to Nidd I 201–2 for a full explanation. See too Sn 522, which offers a similar etymology.

The "One with Vision" (*cakkhumā*) is the Buddha, so called because he possesses the "five eyes" (see n. 370).

85 Spk: This verse refers to those who have gone for refuge by the definitive going for refuge (*nibbematika-saraṇagamana*). Spk-p†: By this the supramundane going for refuge is meant (i.e., by the minimal attainment of stream-entry). But those who go for refuge to the Buddha by the mundane going for refuge (i.e., without a noble attainment) will not go to the plane of misery; and if there are other suitable conditions, on leaving the human body they will fill up the hosts of devas.

86 The Buddha's foot had been injured when his evil cousin Devadatta tried to murder him by hurling a boulder at him on Mount Vulture Peak. The boulder was deflected, but a splinter that broke off from it cut the Buddha's foot and drew blood. The full story of Devadatta's evil schemes is related at Vin II 184–203; see too Nāṇamoli, *Life of the Buddha*, chap. 13. This same incident forms the background to 4:13 below. According to Spk, the seven hundred devas who came to see the Blessed One included all the devas of the Satullapa host.

87 Spk: He is called a *nāga* on account of his strength (see n. 84); a *lion* (*siha*) on account of his fearlessness; a *thoroughbred* (*ājāniya*) on account of his familiarity with what he has learned (?*byattapariyāyāthena*), or because he knows what is the right means and the wrong means; a *chief bull* (*nisabha*) because he is without a rival; a *beast of burden* (*dhoraṇya*) because of bearing the burden; *tamed* (*danta*) because he is free from deviant conduct.

Spk glosses *nāgavatā* as *nāgabhāvena*. Geiger takes *nāgavatā* as the instrumental of the adjective *nāgavant* used adverbially in the sense of a comparison (GermTr, p. 93). However, I follow Norman's suggestion (in a personal communication) that *-vata* here may be the Pāli equivalent of Skt *-vrata*, in the sense of "sphere of action, function,

mode or manner of life, vow" (MW). Ee2, based on a Lanna commentary, emends the text to read *nāgo va tā ca pan' uppannā sārīrikā vedanā* (and similarly in the parallel passages that follow); see Ee2, p. xviii. But I am doubtful that the text would switch so suddenly from metaphor (in the previous sentence) to simile, and then back to metaphor below.

88 I read with Se: *Passa samādhiṃ subhāvitaṃ cittaṃ ca suvimuttaṃ na cābhīnataṃ na cāpanataṃ na ca sasaṅkhāraniggayhavāritavataṃ*. Be is identical except that the final word in the compound is read as *-gataṃ*; Ee1 *-cāritavataṃ* is clearly an error, rectified in PED, s.v. *vāritavata*. Ee2 reads as in Se, but with *niggayha* taken as un-compounded, which leaves *sasaṅkhāra* dangling. The same expression occurs elsewhere: at AN IV 428,9–10 the full formula is used to describe a *samādhi* called *aññāphala*, the fruit of final knowledge (or perhaps, "having final knowledge as its fruit"); *sasaṅkhāraniggayhavāritavata*, at AN I 254,34, describes a *samādhi* developed as the basis for the six *abhiññā* (probably the fourth *jhāna*); and at AN III 24,9, DN III 279,4, and Vibh 334,15, it characterizes a "right concentration of fivefold knowledge" (*pañcaññika samāṇā samādhi*). In the present context, it seems, the expression qualifies *cittaṃ*, mind, though the mind has these qualities by virtue of the *samādhi* in which it is absorbed. At AN IV 428,9–10 and elsewhere the phrase clearly qualifies the *samādhi*.

Spk (Se): The concentration is that of the fruit of arahantship (*arahattaphalasamādhi*). The mind is said to be *well liberated* (*suvimuttaṃ*) because it is liberated by the fruit. *Not bent forward and not bent back*: the mind accompanied by lust is said to be "bent forward" (*abhinataṃ*), that accompanied by hate to be "bent back" (*apanataṃ*). *Rejecting both, he speaks thus. Not blocked and checked by forceful suppression*: It is not blocked and checked, having suppressed the defilements forcefully, with effort; rather, it is checked because the defilements have been cut off. The meaning is that it is concentrated by the concentration of fruition (*na ca sasaṅkhāraniggayhavāritavatan ti na sasaṅkhārena sappayogena kilese niggaḥetvā vāritavataṃ*;

*kilesānaṃ pana chinnattā vataṃ, phalasaṃādhinā samāhitaṃ ti attho*). (N.B. While Spk (Be) reads *-gataṃ* in the lemma, it reads *-vataṃ* twice in the explanation.)

Spk-pt: This is not achieved, not fixed, forcefully, with effort, by way of abandoning in a particular respect or by way of abandoning through suppression as is the mundane-jhāna mind or insight; but rather (it is achieved) because the defilements have been completely cut off (*lokiyajjhānacittaṃ viya vipassanā viya ca saṅkhārena sap-payogena tadanāgappahāna-vikkhambhanappahānavasena ca vikkhambhetvā na adhigataṃ na ṭhapitaṃ, kiñcaraḥi kilesānaṃ sabbaso chinnatāya*).

The Pāli phrase is extremely difficult and the exact reading uncertain. Indeed, in the Central Asian Skt ms corresponding to DN III 279,4 (Waldschmidt, *Sanskrittexte aus den Turfanfunden* IV, p. 70, V.8 (3)), it is conspicuously absent. A Skt version in Śrāv-bh (p. 444,19-21) reads *vārivad dhṛtaṃ*, “maintained like water,” which seems to me unlikely to correspond to the original reading.

Ee1 puts a hiatus after *niggayha*, and Ee2 separates it off entirely; the other eds. integrate *niggayha* into the long compound. There is no way to determine, on the basis of grammar alone, which is correct. Each attempt to resolve the expression into its elements gives rise to its own special problems, and even the *aṭṭhakathās* and *ṭikās* offer conflicting explanations, e.g., Sv III 1060,11-13 and Vibh-a 421,13-15 take *niggayha* to be absolutive (as does Spk) and turn *vārīta* into the absolutive *vāretvā*; their respective *ṭikās*, Sv-pt III 284,24-27 (Be) and Vibh-mṭ 205,16-18 (Be), take *niggayha* as the gerundive *niggahetabba* and *vārīta* as the gerundive *vāretabba*. Since *niggayha* occurs elsewhere unambiguously as an absolutive (e.g., at MN III 118,4, interestingly, as here, without a direct object), while there seem to be no instances in canonical Pāli of the word occurring as a gerundive, the *aṭṭhakathās* are more likely to be right. Norman questions this interpretation on the ground that there is no other known instance in Pāli of an absolutive occurring as the second member of a compound (personal communication), but perhaps we should not rule out the possibility that we have such a construction here. I trans-

late, however, in compliance with natural English idiom rather than in strict conformity with the syntax of the Pāli.

Readings of the last part of the compound vary among the different traditions: in general *vāritavata* prevails in the Sinhalese tradition, *vāritagata* in the Burmese, with Burmese vv.ll. *vārivāvata* and *vārivāvata* also recorded. *Vārīta* here is a past participle of the causative *vāreti*, to block, to restrain. The terminal member of the compound could then be either *vata* or *gata*. *Gata* is clearly a past participle. *Vata* is more problematic. At KS 1:39, *vāritavataṃ* is rendered “having the habit of self-denial.” Apparently C.Rh.D understands *vata* as equivalent to Skt *vrata*. However, Spk’s gloss, *chinnattā vataṃ phalasaṃādhinā samāhitaṃ*, suggests that we have a past participle here, and I would propose that *vata* represents Skt *vrta*, which according to MW can mean “stopped, checked, held back.” I cannot cite other occurrences of the simple participle *vata* in Pāli, but prefixed forms are common enough: *saṃvuta*, *nibbuta*, *vivaṭa*, *āvata*, etc. Thus we would have here two past participles from the same root, one causative, the other simple, so that the compound *vārīta-vata* would mean “blocked and checked” (unfortunately two distinct English verbs are needed to capture the nuances). Although this construction is certainly unusual, it need not be rejected out of hand, as it may have been used for special emphasis. If the reading *gata* is accepted, *vāritagata* could mean “gone to (attained to) control,” with *varīta* taken as a noun of state. This certainly sounds more natural than *vāritavata*, but the prevalence of *vata* in the textual tradition lends strong support to its authenticity.

89 It is not clear who is speaking these stanzas, and the verses themselves have no evident connection to the preceding prose portion of the sutta. It is possible they were annexed to the prose text by the redactors of the canon.

I read pāda a as in Be, Se, and Ee2 thus: *pañcavedā satam samaṃ*. The mention of five Vedas is strange but Spk explains: *itihāsapañcamānaṃ vedānaṃ*, “the Vedas with the histories as a fifth.” Spk glosses *sataṃ samaṃ* as *vassasataṃ*; Geiger is certainly wrong in rejecting this explanation (GermTr, p. 41, n. 3). Spk also glosses *hinattarūpā* as *hinatta-*

- sabhāvā* and mentions a variant, *hinattharūpā*, glossed by Spk-pṭ as *hinatthajātikā parihinatthā*, “those of low goals, those who have fallen away from the goal.”
- 90 Pajjunna (Skt Parjanya) is the deva-king of rain clouds; originally a Vedic deity, Spk assigns him to the heaven of the Four Great Kings. He is mentioned at DN III 205,6. Nothing else is known about his two daughters, named after the red lotus (see v. 401a).
- 91 These four verses, in the old Āryā metre, have been reconstructed by Alsdorf, *Die Āryā-Strophen des Pali-Kanons*, p. 321.
- 92 Neither Spk nor Spk-pṭ offers help with the singular *sattassa* in pāda a, but I take this simply as a metrical adaptation of *sattānaṃ*. The line then expresses the same idea as 45:139 (V 41,23–42,2).
- 93 Spk: There are two Roruva hells: the Smokey Roruva (*dhūmaroruva*) and the Flaming Roruva (*jālaroruva*). The Smokey Roruva is a separate hell, but the Flaming Roruva is a name for the great hell Avici, called Roruva because when beings are roasted there they cry out again and again (*punappunaṃ ravam ravanti*). At 3:20 the Flaming Roruva is spoken of as the Great Roruva (*mahāroruva*).
- 94 Spk-pṭ glosses *khantiyā* in pāda b as *nāṇakhantiyā*, which implies that here the word does not bear its usual meaning of patience, but the special sense of “acquiescence” (in the Teaching). See the expression *dhammanijjhānakkhanti* at MN II 173,21–22.
- 95 *The Dhamma is of such a nature (tādiso dhammo)*. Spk: “For such is the nature of the Dhamma, O Blessed One, it has such a structure, such divisions, that it lends itself to analysis in many ways.” Spk-pṭ: “It is such that one who has penetrated the truths as they are, skilled in the meaning and the doctrine, might explain, teach, proclaim, establish, disclose, analyse, and elucidate it, bringing forth examples, reasons, and conclusions.”
- 96 Ee2, again on the testimony of the Lanna mss, precedes this verse with another one (v. 138) on the unpredictability of death, found also at Ja II 58. But if the verse were originally part of the text, Spk would surely have incorporated here the commentary on it found, with the verse itself, at

- Vism 236–37 (Ppn 8:29–34). Since there are strong reasons against the inclusion of the verse, I have passed over it in this translation.
- 97 *Yakkha* in pāda c is glossed by Spk-pṭ as *satta*. Although *ko* is an interrogative, it seems that the sentence is declarative in force. The verse may be echoing the Taittiriya Upaniṣad, II.2, III.2, 7–10.
- 98 Spk explains the riddle thus: The ocean (*samudda*) or abyss (*pātāla*) is craving, called an ocean because it is unfillable and an abyss because it gives no foothold. Its one root (*ekamūla*) is ignorance; the two whirlpools (*dvirāvaṭṭa*) are the views of eternalism and annihilationism. [Spk-pṭ: Craving for existence revolves by way of the eternalist view; craving for extermination by way of the annihilationist view.] The three stains (*timala*) are lust, hatred, and delusion; the five extensions (*pañcapatthara*), the five cords of sensual pleasure; and the twelve eddies (*dvādasāvaṭṭa*), the six internal and external sense bases.
- Ñāṇananda proposes an alternative interpretation of some of these terms: with reference to 36:4, he takes the abyss to be painful feeling, and with reference to 35:228, the ocean to be the six sense faculties. The two whirlpools are pleasant and painful feeling; the one root, contact. For details see SN-Anth 2:63–66.
- 99 Spk: *Of perfect name (anomanāma)*: of undefective name, of complete name, because he (the Buddha) possesses all excellent qualities (see too v. 927c and n. 653). *The seer of the subtle goal* (or “meanings”: *nipuṇatthadassim*): because he sees the fine, recondite meanings such as the diversity of aggregates, etc. He is *the giver of wisdom (paññādadam)* by teaching the path of practice for the achievement of wisdom. *Treading the noble path (ariye pathe kamamānaṃ)*: the present tense is used with reference to the past, for the Blessed One *had gone* along the noble path on the site of the great enlightenment; he is not going along it now.
- I question Spk’s explanation of *nipuṇattha*, which seems to refer to *attha* in the sense of the goal, i.e., Nibbāna.
- 100 Spk relates the background story: In his previous life this deva had been an overzealous bhikkhu who had neglected sleep and food in order to attend to his meditation subject.

Because of his excessive zeal, he died of a wind ailment and was immediately reborn in the Tāvatiṃsa heaven amidst a retinue of celestial nymphs (*accharā*). The change occurred so quickly that he did not even know he had expired and thought he was still a bhikkhu. The nymphs tried to seduce him, but he rejected their amorous advances and tried to resume his meditation practice. Finally, when the nymphs brought him a mirror, he realized he had been reborn as a deva, but he thought: "I did not practise the work of an ascetic in order to take rebirth here, but to attain the supreme goal of arahantship." Then, with his virtue still intact, surrounded by the retinue of nymphs, he went to the Buddha and spoke the first verse.

The verse revolves around a word play between Nandana, the garden of delight, and Mohana, the garden of delusion. The garden was "resounding with a host of nymphs" because the nymphs were singing and playing musical instruments. Spk paraphrases the question by way of its intent: "Teach me insight meditation, which is the basis for arahantship."

- 101 Spk: The eightfold path is called *the straight way* (*ujuko maggo*) because it is devoid of crookedness of bodily conduct, etc. The destination, Nibbāna, is said to be *fearless* (*abhaya*) because there is nothing to fear in that and because there is no fear for one who has attained it. Unlike an actual chariot, which rattles or whines when its axle is not lubricated or when it is mounted by too many people, the eightfold path does not rattle or whine (*na kūjati na viravati*) even when mounted simultaneously by 84,000 beings. The chariot itself is also the eightfold path, and its *wheels of wholesome states* (*dhammacakka*) are bodily and mental energy. The "Dhamma" that is called *the charioteer* is the supramundane path, with the *right view* of insight (*vipassanā-sammādiṭṭhi*) *running out in front* (*purejava*). For just as the king's servants first clear the path before the king comes out, so the right view of insight clears the way by contemplating the aggregates, etc., as impermanent, etc., and then the right view of the path (*magga-sammādiṭṭhi*) arises fully understanding the round of existence.

In v. 150c I read *akūjano* with Be and Ee2, as against *aku-*

*jano* in Se and Ee1. Geiger derives *akujano* from *kujati*, "to be crooked" (GermTr, p. 51, n. 3), but see Ja VI 252,20, where the "chariot of the body" is described as *vācāsañña-makūjano*, "not rattling by restraint of speech," which supports the reading and rendering adopted here. The extended simile should be compared with that of the *brahmayāna*, the divine vehicle, at 45:4; see too the extended chariot simile at Ja VI 252–53.

- 102 Spk: Having completed the discourse (the verse), the Buddha taught the Four Noble Truths, and at the end of that discourse the deva was established in the fruit of stream-entry; the other beings present attained the fruits that accorded with their own supporting conditions.
- 103 Spk explains all these as gifts to the Saṅgha. Parks (*ārāma*) are distinguished by planted flowering trees and fruit trees, while groves (*vana*) are clusters of wild trees. *Papa* is glossed as a shed for giving drinking water.
- 104 These verses were spoken by Anāthapiṇḍika, chief patron of the Buddha, after he was reborn in the Tusita heaven. They recur below, with prose text, at 2:20.
- 105 Anāthapiṇḍika had been especially devoted to Sāriputta, who delivered a moving sermon to him while he was on his deathbed: see MN No. 143, which also includes the same account of the great patron's posthumous visit to Jeta's Grove.
- Spk: *At best can only equal him* (*etāvaparamo siyā*): There is no bhikkhu, not even one who has attained Nibbāna, who surpasses the Elder Sāriputta (*na therena uttaritaro nāma atthi*).
- 106 "Yama's world" (*yamaloka*) here evidently refers to the *pettivisaya*, the domain of ghosts. Yama is the Lord of Death; see MN III 179–86, AN I 138–42.
- 107 I read with Se and Ee1 *ete sagge pakāsenti*, as against Be *ete saggā pakāsanti*, "these heavens shine," and Ee2 *ete sagge pakāsanti*, "these shine in heaven." I take *sagge* as accusative plural rather than locative singular, which is also plausible.
- 108 Spk-pt: Because they are endowed with happiness they are like the devas who exercise control over the goods created by others. The comparison is with the devas of the *paranimmitavasavatti* realm, the sixth sense-sphere heaven.
- 109 The deva Ghatikāra had been a potter during the dispen-

sation of the Buddha Kassapa, who had a monastic seat at Vehaliṅga, the potter's home town. At that time the future Buddha Gotama was his closest friend, the brahmin youth Jotipāla. Although Jotipāla went forth as a bhikkhu under the Buddha Kassapa, Ghaṭikāra had to remain in the household life to support his blind, aged parents. He was the Buddha's chief supporter and had attained the stage of nonreturner. Highlights from the story, related in MN No. 81, appear in the verses to follow here.

Avihā is one of the Pure Abodes (see n. 83). Spk says that the seven bhikkhus were liberated by the liberation of the fruit of arahantship, which they attained immediately after taking rebirth into the Avihā brahmā world.

- 110 In pāda a, I read *pañkam* with Be and Ee1 as against *saṅgam* ("tie") in Se and Ee2. Spk states that the abandoning of the human body implies the eradication of the five lower fetters and the celestial bond (*dibbayoga*) signifies the five higher fetters.
- 111 I follow the spelling of the names in Se. Upaka is the former Ājivaka ascetic whom the newly enlightened Buddha met while en route to Isipatana (MN I 170,33–171,20). Later, after an unhappy marriage, he entered the Saṅgha: see DPPN 1:386. The story of Pukkusāti is related in MN No. 140 and Ps V 33–63; see too DPPN 2:214–16. Piṅgiya here may be identical with the pupil of Bāvari whose verses occur at Sn 1131–49, though this remains uncertain. The identity of the other bhikkhus cannot be established.
- 112 I read pāda a with Be and Se *kusalī bhāsasi tesam*. Spk: *Kusalan ti idaṃ vacanaṃ imassa atthi ti kusali; tesam therānaṃ tvam kusalam anavaṃjam bhāsasi*.
- 113 On "where name-and-form ceases" see above n. 46. Spk paraphrases the next to last line: "Those elders (did so) having understood that Dhamma here in your dispensation."
- 114 Bhaggava was the potter's name, possibly a clan name.
- 115 Spk says that the concluding verse was added by the redactors of the texts. The statement that both were inwardly developed (*bhāvitattānaṃ*) and were bearing their final bodies (*sarirantimadhāriṇaṃ*) implies that after his rebirth in the Pure Abodes, Ghaṭikāra too had become an arahant.

- 116 Se and Ee2 read *corehi 'hāriyaṃ*, Be *corehyahāriyaṃ*. Both are orthographical attempts to salvage a text that appears to assert the exact opposite of the meaning required. Without such editorial moulding *corehi hāriyaṃ* (the reading of Ee1) would mean, "What is it that thieves should bear away?" —the rendering used at KS 1:51. Spk offers no help.
- 117 Reading in pāda a (in the next verse too) *pavasato* with Be, Se, and Ee2, as against *pathavato* in Ee1.
- 118 Spk: Sons are the support (*vatthu*) of human beings because they care for their parents in old age. A wife is the best companion because one can confide to her one's most personal secrets.
- 119 Spk: *The deviant path (uppatha) is a nonpath (amagga) for going to heaven and Nibbāna. Undergoes destruction day and night (rattindivakkhaya): it is destroyed by the days and nights or during the days and nights. Women are the stain of the holy life: by washing off an external stain one can become clean, but if one is defiled by the stain of women it is not possible to make oneself pure. Austerity (tapa) is a name for restraint, the ascetic practices (dhutaṅgagūṇa), energy, and extreme asceticism (dukkarakārika); all these except extreme asceticism (i.e., self-mortification) are practices that burn up the defilements. The holy life (brahmācariya) is abstinence from sexual intercourse.*  
On "the bath without water" see vv. 646, 705. To appreciate this expression one must remember that for the brahmins in the Buddha's time (as for many Hindus today) ritual bathing was a way to wash away one's sins. The Buddha replaced this with the "internal bath" of the mind; see 7:21 below and MN I 39,1–2, 280,18–20.
- 120 Spk: *Metre is the scaffolding of verses (chando nidānaṃ gāthānaṃ): Metres, beginning with the gāyatti, are the scaffolding of verses; for one beginning the preliminary verses first considers, "In which metre should it be?" Syllables constitute their phrasing (akkharā tāsaṃ viyañjanaṃ): For syllables make up words, and words make up a verse, and a verse reveals the meaning. Verses rest on a base of names: One composing a verse composes it by relying on some name such as "the ocean" or "the earth." The poet is the abode where verses dwell: The abode (āsaya) of verses is their*

- support (*patitthā*); verses come forth from the poet, and thus he is their support.
- 121 In pāda a, I read *addhabhavi* with Be and Ee1 & 2, as against *anvabhavi* in Se. *Addhabhavi* is aorist of *adhibhavati*, to overcome, to overpower; see CPD, s.v. *addhabhavati*. Spk: There is no living being or entity that is free from a name, whether the name be natural or fabricated. Even a tree or stone with no known name is still called "the nameless one."
- 122 The verb in pāda b is passive. Spk to v. 246 glosses the active *parikassati* as *parikaḍḍhati*, to drag around. Spk: Those who come under the control of the mind are subjected to total obsession. Spk-pt: The sutta speaks of those who have not fully understood reality. But those who have fully understood the aggregates and abandoned the defilements do not come under control of the mind; rather, it is the mind that comes under their control.
- 123 Spk glosses *vicāraṇa* in pāda b by *pādāni*, feet, explaining that the singular should be understood as a plural. In doctrinal contexts the cognate *vicāra* means examination, and is regularly coupled with *vitakka* to describe the thought process, e.g., in the formula for the first jhāna. Here, however, the point seems to be that thought can travel over vast distances without physical locomotion.
- 124 I read with Be, Se, Ee1, and Spk (Be) *kissa dhūpāyito*, as against *kissā dhūmāyito* in Ee2, SS, and Spk (Se). The verse is also at Th 448 with *dhūpāyito*. Norman (at EV I, n. to 448) contends this word means "perfumed" or "obscured (by smoke)," but Spk glosses as *āditto*; see too v. 542, where *padhūpito* must mean "burning."
- 125 Spk: The world is *ensnared by craving* (*taṇhāya uḍḍito*) because the eye, caught with the rope of craving, is ensnared on the peg of forms; so too with the ear and sounds, etc. *The world is shut in by death* (*maccunā pihito*): Even though the kamma done in the last life is only one mind-moment away, beings do not know it because they are shut off from it, as if by a mountain, by the strong pains occurring at the time of death.
- 126 See above n. 57. Following a suggestion of VĀT, I take *upādāya* in pāda c to be an absolutive with the literal

- meaning "clinging," completed by the finite verb *vihaññati* in pāda d; *loko* in v. 221c thus becomes a mere metrical filler. Spk, however, has adopted an alternative solution, supplying a suppressed finite verb and interpreting *upādāya* in the extended sense of "depending on" thus: *tāni yeva ca upādāya āgamma paṭicca pavattati*; "It occurs dependent on, contingent on, in dependence on them." Pj II 210,27-28, commenting on Sn 168, takes a similar approach, though with a different finite verb.
- The Hemavata Sutta itself, however, suggests that *upādāya* should be taken in the literal sense of "clinging to." For after the Buddha has replied at Sn 169 with an answer identical to that in the present sutta, at Sn 170 the *yakkha* asks: *Katamaṃ taṃ upādānaṃ yattha loko vihaññati?*, "What is that clinging wherein the world is harassed?"—a question which surely refers back to that same *upādāya*.
- Spk: The "six" in the question should be understood by way of the six internal sense bases, but it may also be interpreted by way of the six internal and external bases. For the world *has arisen* in the six internal bases, *forms intimacy* with the six external bases, and *by clinging to* (or depending on) the six internal bases, *it is harassed* in the six external bases.
- The verse offers a solution to the problem posed below at 2:26, on how the world exists and arises in this very body endowed with perception and mind. On the origination of the world in the six internal bases, see 12:44 (= 35:107). Norman discusses the verses from a philological angle at GD, pp. 181-82, n. to 168.
- 127 Se, Ee2 *jhatvā* is certainly the correct reading, *chetvā* in Be and Ee1 a normalization. The gloss in Spk, *vadhivā*, supports *jhatvā*, and G-Dhp 288-89 has *javva*, the Gāndhāri Prakrit counterpart. See Brough, *Gāndhāri Dharmapada*, pp. 164, 265-66. *Jhatvā* is also found in the SS reading of v. 94b.
- 128 Spk: Anger has a *poisoned root* (*visamūla*) because it results in suffering. It has a *honeyed tip* (*madhuragga*) because pleasure arises when one returns anger with anger, abuse with abuse, or a blow with a blow.
- 129 Spk: A token is that by which something is discerned

(*paññāyati etenā ti paññānaṃ*). A standard is the token of a chariot because a chariot, seen from a distance, is identified by its standard as belonging to such and such a kind. A married woman, even the daughter of a universal monarch, is identified as Mrs. So-and-So; hence a husband is the token of a woman. On the standard (*dhaja*) as the token of a chariot, see 11:2 and n. 611.

- 130 SS record a v.l. *sādhutaram* in pāda c, but Spk's gloss *madhutaram* indicates that the reading available to the commentator here was *sādutaram*. However, Spk recognizes the same v.l. in connection with the identical vv. 846–47. See n. 597.

Spk: A householder who lives by wisdom (*paññājīvi*) is one who becomes established in the Five Precepts and offers regular almsfood, etc.; one gone forth who lives by wisdom uses his requisites with proper reflection, takes up a meditation subject, sets up insight, and attains the noble paths and fruits.

- 131 Spk: The former deva had asked the Buddha these questions, but the second deva interrupted, saying, "Why ask the Buddha? I'll answer you," and then offered his own ideas. But the first deva rebuked him for intruding and again addressed the questions to the Buddha.

Spk: Seed of the seven kinds of grain is *the best of things that rise up* because, when seed rises, food becomes plentiful and the country is secure. Rain from a rain cloud *excels among things that fall down* for this ensures a plentiful crop. Cattle are *the best of things that go forth*, that walk about on foot, because they produce the five kinds of dairy products (milk, curd, butter, ghee, and cream-of-ghee) by which people sustain their health. A son is *the most excellent of speakers* because he does not say anything harmful to his parents in the royal court, etc.

It should be noted that *pavajamānānaṃ* in pāda c is the present participle of *pavajati* or *pabbajati*, which, in a religious context, signifies the act of leaving the household life to become a monk (*pabbajā*). Hence the Buddha's reply in the next verse.

- 132 Spk: *Knowledge (vijjā)* is the knowledge of the four paths; *ignorance (avijjā)* is the great ignorance at the root of the

round. *The Saṅgha* is the best of things that go forth because it is a rich field of merit. *The Buddha* is the best of speakers because his teaching of the Dhamma helps release many hundred thousands of beings from bondage.

- 133 *Maggo c' anekāyatanappavutto*. Spk: He says, "The path is explained by many methods (*kāraṇehi*), by way of the thirty-eight meditation objects. Such being the case, why have these people become frightened and grasped hold of the sixty-two views?" The thirty-eight meditation objects (*aṭṭhatimsārammaṇa*) are identical with the classical forty *kammaṭṭhāna* (e.g., in *Vism*) except that the list of *kaṣiṇas* is drawn from the *Nikāyas* (e.g., MN II 14,29–15,2), in which the last two (the space *kaṣiṇa* and the consciousness *kaṣiṇa*) are the same as the first two formless attainments (*āruppa*) and hence are not reckoned twice. In the *Vism* system these two are replaced by the limited space *kaṣiṇa* and the light *kaṣiṇa*, which brings the number up to forty.
- 134 The last line should be read with Be, Se, and Ee2 as *dhamme ṭhito paralokaṃ na bhāye*. Ee1 omits *dhamme ṭhito*, apparently by oversight. Spk interprets "rightly directed speech and mind" and "doing no evil deeds with the body" as the preliminary factors of purification, and takes the four qualities mentioned in pāda d to be the "four things" on which one should stand. But it also suggests another interpretation: right bodily, verbal, and mental conduct are the first three things, and the four qualities in pāda d taken together are the fourth. The first alternative sounds more plausible.
- 135 The Pāli terms for the six fissures (*chiddāni*) are: *ālassa*, *pamāda*, *anuṭṭhāna*, *asaṃyama*, *niddā*, *tandi*. Spk-pt: These six things are called fissures because they do not give an opportunity for wholesome states of mind to occur.
- 136 Spk: A woman is called *the best of goods* because a woman is an article that should not be given away (*avissajjaniya-baṇḍattā*); or else she is so called because all bodhisattas and wheel-turning monarchs are conceived in a mother's womb. Spk-pt: Even the most precious jewel is not called "the best of goods" because it still falls into the category of things that might be given away; but a woman who has not abandoned the family customs should not be relin-

quished to anyone, and hence she is called the best of goods. Further, a woman is the best of goods because she is a mine for the best of gems, that is, because (her body) is the place for the birth of the human thoroughbreds (i.e., Buddhas and arahants).

- 137 *Abbuda* ("plague") is glossed by Spk as *vināsakāraṇa*, a cause of destruction. The word also occurs in v. 591 as an extremely high number, in 6:10 as the name of a hell, and at v. 803 as a stage in the development of the fetus.
- 138 Spk: One should not give oneself away by becoming the slave of another, but an exception is made of all bodhisattas. So too, except for all bodhisattas, one should not relinquish oneself to lions and tigers, etc.
- 139 I interpret pāda c, in both the question and the reply, with the aid of Spk, which paraphrases only the reply: *Gāvo kamme sajiṅṅānaṃ ti kammena saha jīvaṅṅānaṃ gāvo va kamme kammasahāyā kammadutiyaṅṅā nāma honti*; "For those who live together with work, cattle are called the work-companions, the work-partners, in work; for the work of ploughing, etc., is accomplished along with a team of cattle."  
In pāda d, *sitassa* (Ee2: *sita 'ssa*) should be resolved *sitaṃ assa*. Spk takes *assa* to refer to "the mass of beings" (or of people: *sattakāyassa*) and explains *iriyāpatha*, "the course of movement" (or "mode of deportment"), as the means of livelihood (*jīvitavutti*); it glosses *sita* (furrow) with *naṅṅala* (plough). The purport is that the activity of ploughing is the essential means for sustaining human life.
- 140 Spk: Firmly established in virtue.

## 2. *Devaputtasamyutta*

- 141 *Devaputta* means literally "son of the devas," but since devas are depicted as arising in their celestial abodes by way of spontaneous birth, I translate the compound simply as "young deva."  
Spk: They are reborn in the laps (*aṅka*) of devas. The males are called sons of the devas (*devaputtā*); the females, daughters of the devas (*devadhitaro*). When they are not known by name it is said, "a certain devatā" (as in the preceding *samyutta*); but those who are known by name are

referred to as "a son of the devas named So-and-So" (as here). Spk-pt: This last statement is made only as a generalization, for the identity of several devatās is known.

- 142 Spk: When the Buddha taught the Abhidhamma in the Tāvātimsa heaven during the seventh rains retreat after his enlightenment, this young deva heard him give a description of the bhikkhu (as at Vibh 245–46), but did not hear his instruction to the bhikkhu, his exhortation to the bhikkhu, "Think in this way, not in that way; attend in this way, not in that way; abandon this, enter and dwell in that" (as at DN I 214,18–21). He speaks with reference to this.
- 143 *Taññev' ettha paṭibhātu*. Lit. "Let it occur to you yourself in regard to this." Throughout this work I have rendered this peculiar Pāli idiom, and its variants, in ways that best accord with natural English diction.
- 144 *Well-spoken counsel (subhāsita)*. Spk interprets this to mean that one should train oneself in just the fourfold good conduct of speech (see below 8:5; also MN I 288,1–22), (and in talk) concerning the Four Noble Truths, the ten suitable topics of discussion (see MN III 113,25–31), and the thirty-seven aids to enlightenment. It seems to me more likely the purport is that one should train in accordance with good counsel.  
Spk offers two interpretations of *samaṅṅupāsana* in pāda b: (i) that which is to be attended to by an ascetic, namely, one of the thirty-eight meditation subjects (see n. 133); and (ii) attending upon an ascetic, i.e., serving learned bhikkhus in order to increase one's wisdom. The first seems more plausible. The *calming of the mind (cittūpasama)*, is the training by way of the eight meditative attainments (*aṅṅhasamāpatti*).
- 145 In pāda b, I read *ce* with Be, Se, and Ee2, as against *ca* in Ee1. I construe the convoluted syntax of this verse in accordance with Spk. Spk explains that he should be *liberated in mind (vimuttacitto)* through (temporary) liberation by devotion to the meditation subject [Spk-pt: liberation by insight and jhāna, which are temporary types of liberation, since at this point he has not yet attained arahantship, the final liberation of mind]. *The heart's attain-*

- ment (*hadayassānupatti*) is arahantship, which is also the advantage (*ānisamsa*) on which he should be bent.
- 146 Spk: Māgha is a name for Sakka, who asks the same set of questions below and receives the same reply (at vv. 939–40). It is a derivative of the name Magha, by which he was known during his life as a human being. He is called Vatrabhū because he attained rulership among the devas by overcoming others with his conduct (*vattena aññe abhivhavati*), or because he overcame the asura named Vatra. Neither of these names is mentioned among Sakka's names at 11:12.
- 147 By "brahmin" he refers to the arahant. Spk: This young deva believed that there was no end to the arahant's duties and that the arahant must continue striving even after reaching arahantship. The Buddha spoke the rejoinder to correct him. The Buddha's verse is unique (*asaṅkiṇṇā*) in the Tipiṭaka, for nowhere else does the Buddha criticize the arousing of energy, but here he speaks thus to show that there is a conclusion to the arahant's duty.
- 148 On the verb *āyūhati*, encountered in 1:1, see n. 2. To have gone beyond (*pāragata*) is to have attained Nibbāna.
- 149 Spk: This young deva, it is said, had been a meditator in a previous life, but he had thick defilements and thus could suppress them only with much effort. Though he did the work of an ascetic, because his supporting conditions were weak he passed away and took rebirth in the deva world without having reached the plane of the noble ones. He came to the Blessed One's presence to proclaim the difficulty of the ascetic life.
- 150 Spk: Although the noble path is neither impassable nor uneven (*duggamo visamo*), this is said because there are many impediments in the preliminary portion of the path.
- 151 At AN IV 449–51 the Venerable Ānanda gives a detailed explanation of the verse. Readings of the aorists in pādas b and c differ among the various eds., but without affecting the meaning. Spk explains that there are two kinds of confinement (*sambādha*): confinement by the five hindrances and confinement by the five cords of sensual pleasure, the former being intended here. The opening

- (*okāsa*) is a name for jhāna. In the analysis given by Ānanda, however, confinement and the opening are explained sequentially: first the five cords of sensual pleasure are called confinement and the first jhāna the opening; then *vitakka-vicāra* are confinement and the second jhāna the opening; and so on, culminating in the destruction of the *āsavas* as the final opening.
- The withdrawn chief bull (*paṭilīnāsabhō*): The Buddha was called a chief bull at 1:38. At AN II 41,29–32 a bhikkhu is said to be *paṭilīna*, "withdrawn," when he has abandoned the conceit "I am."
- 152 The "Dhamma for the attainment of Nibbāna" (*dhammaṃ nibbānapattiyā*) is presumably the Noble Eightfold Path. Spk-pṭ: This young deva had been an obtainer of the first jhāna in a previous existence. He spoke his verse to extol the Blessed One for obtaining the bliss of jhāna. The Buddha's reply is intended to show that the first form-sphere jhāna is a mere fragment of the infinite and immeasurable qualities of a Buddha. By *mindfulness* (*sati*) he refers to the mindfulness of insight and of the noble path. *Well concentrated* (*susamāhita*) signifies both mundane and supramundane concentration.
- 153 Spk explains "religious sect" (*tittha*) as the sixty-two views (of the Brahmajāla Sutta, DN No. 1). If he founded a sect based on one of these views, how could he have been reborn in heaven? Because he affirmed the doctrine of kamma and did many virtuous deeds. When he was reborn in heaven, he recognized the emancipating quality of the Buddha's dispensation and came into the Master's presence in order to recite verses in praise of energy conformable with the dispensation.
- 154 In pāda a, *parakkamma* is an absolutive, not an imperative, and hence in sense should precede *chinda sotam*. *Parakkama*, the corresponding noun, is the third member of a set of three terms denoting successive stages in the development of energy: *ārambhadhātu*, *nikkamadhātu*, *parakkamadhātu*; at 46:2, 46:51 they have been translated "the element of arousal, the element of endeavour, the element of exertion."
- 155 Spk explains *saṅkassaram* in pāda c as *saṅkāya saritam*,

- “remembered with suspicion”: “It is subject to such doubt and suspicion, ‘He must have done this, he must have done that.’”
- 156 Candimā is a deva dwelling in the mansion of the moon; the word itself usually simply means the moon. Obviously his seizure by Rāhu represents the lunar eclipse.
- 157 Although both Rāhu and Vepacitti are described as “lords of the asuras” (*asurinda*), it seems that Vepacitti is the overlord and Rāhu a subordinate. Vepacitti is the perennial antagonist of Sakka, lord of the devas, as seen at 11:4, 11:5, 11:23, and 35:248.
- 158 Suriya (usually meaning simply the sun) is the deva dwelling in the mansion of the sun. Here the solar eclipse is being represented. Spk, after impressing us with Rāhu’s physical dimensions, offers some interesting insights into ancient Buddhist views about eclipses: When Rāhu sees the sun and moon shining brightly, he becomes jealous and enters their orbital paths, where he stands with mouth agape. It then seems as if the lunar and solar mansions have been plunged into the great hell, and the devas in those mansions all cry out simultaneously in terror. While Rāhu can cover the mansions with his hands, jaw, and tongue, and can even stuff his cheeks with them, he is unable to obstruct their motion. If he did make such an attempt they would split his head and come through the other side or pull him along and push him down [Spk-pt: because their motion is determined by the law of kamma and is extremely hard for anyone to stop directly].
- 159 *Pajam mama*. Spk: It is said that on the day the Buddha spoke the Mahāsamaya Sutta (DN No. 20) the two young devas Candimā and Suriya attained the fruit of stream-entry. Hence the Blessed One says “my child,” meaning “he is my (spiritual) son.” C.Rh.D’s conjecture (at KS 1:72, n. 2) that the Buddha speaks thus with reference to his own (legendary) solar descent seems unlikely.
- 160 Spk glosses *kacche va* in pāda b by *kacche viya*, “like an armpit” [Spk-pt: in the sense of a cramped place]. Spk: *Kaccha* (used metaphorically) means either a cramped mountain pass (*pabbatakaccha*) or a constriction in a river (*nadikaccha*).
- 161 Spk: *With flaws discarded (raṇañjahā)*: with defilements discarded (*kilesañjahā*). In MLDB, in the translation of MN No. 139, *araṇa* is rendered “nonconflict” or “without conflict,” and *sa-raṇa* “with conflict.” However, while in both Pāli and Sanskrit *raṇa* can mean battle or conflict, the Pāli commentators consistently gloss it with *raja-kilesa*, “dust, defilement.” Thus Ps V 32 has *sa-raṇo ti saraḷo sakilesa, araṇo ti araḷo nikkilesa*. See too v. 585c and n. 398.
- 162 I adopt Se and Ee2 *Veṇhu* over Be and Ee1 *Veṇḍu*; the reading *Veṇṇu* in SS may, however, be the historical form. The name is the Pāli equivalent of Skt Viṣṇu; perhaps this young deva is a prototype of the Hindu deity.
- 163 The reading of pāda c is uncertain: Be and Se read *yuñjaṃ* (a modified plural participle?), Ee1 & 2 *yuñja*, and SS *yajja*. VĀT suggests an absolutive *yujja*.
- 164 The question and the reply are found, with several differences, at Sn 173–75. I read pāda a with Se, Ee2, and Sn 173 *ko sū ’dha*, as against *katham su* in Be and Ee1; the Skt cited at Ybhūs 10:1 has *ka etam oghaṃ tarati* (Enomoto, CSCS, p. 52). Spk explains pāda c of the question: below it is *without support (appatiṭṭhe)*, above it is *without a hold (anālambe in text, anālabane in gloss)*. The Pāli words *patiṭṭhā* and *ālabana* (or *ārammaṇa*) have doctrinally important nuances; see n. 2 above and 12:38–40 and 22:53–54.
- 165 In pāda c, I read with Ee1 and SS *nandibhavaparikkhiṇo*, as against Be, Se, and Ee2 *nandirāgaparikkhiṇo* (in both text and Spk). Spk’s gloss on *nandirāga* here (*tayo kammābhisankhārā*) corresponds so closely to its gloss on *nandibhava* in v. 2 (see n. 8) that we might well suppose the original text available to the commentator read *-bhava-* rather than *-rāga-*. Sn 175 also reads *-bhava-*, as does the version of the verse cited at Nett 146,22.
- Spk: By the mention of *sensual perception (kāmasaññā)* the five lower fetters are implied; by *the fetter of form (rūpa-samyojana)*, the five higher fetters; by *delight in existence*, the three kinds of kammic volitional formations (demeritorious, meritorious, imperturbable—see 12:51). Thus one who has abandoned the ten fetters and the three kinds of kammic formations *does not sink in the deep*, in the great flood. Or else: *sensual perception* implies sense-sphere

existence; the *fetter of form*, form-sphere existence; and formless-sphere existence is implied by the former two. *Delight in existence* denotes the three kinds of kammic formations. Thus one who does not generate the three kinds of volitional formations regarding the three realms of existence *does not sink in the deep*.

- 166 Spk: This young deva had been playing in the Nandana Grove together with his retinue of a thousand nymphs. Five hundred nymphs had climbed up a tree and were singing and throwing down flowers when they suddenly expired and were immediately reborn in the Avīci hell. When the young deva realized they were missing and discovered they had been reborn in hell, he examined his own vital force and saw that he himself and the other five hundred nymphs were due to die in seven days and to take rebirth in hell. Hence, in utter fear, he came to the Buddha seeking consolation.

The story (along with the verses) is also related in the two commentaries to the Satipaṭṭhāna Sutta (Sv III 750,3-27; Ps I 235,16-236,3). Despite the commentaries, however, I prefer to regard the young deva's question as an expression of the deep anxiety perpetually at the core of the human (and celestial) situation.

- 167 In pāda c, I read *kicchesu* with Be, Se, and Ee2, as against *kiccesu* (duties) in Ee1 and certain SS. *Kicchesu* is better supported by the comment in Spk: *imesu uppannānuppannesu dukkhesu*, "these sufferings both arisen and unarisen."
- 168 I read pāda a with Be: *nāññatra bojjhā tapasā*. The reading *bojjhaṅga-tapasā*, in Se and Ee1 & 2, may have crept into the text from the commentarial paraphrase in Spk, which is most intelligible in the Be reading: *Nāññatra bojjhā tapasā ti bojjhāṅgabhāvanāñ ca tapogūṇāñ ca aññatra muñcivā sotthim na passāmi*. Spk-pṭ lends further support to this reading by glossing *bojjhā* with *bodhito* and explaining it as an ablative. The Skt version cited at Ybhūs 5:2 has *jñānatapasō* (Enomoto, CSCS, p. 8).

Spk: Even though the development of the enlightenment factors is mentioned first and restraint of the sense faculties afterwards, sense restraint should be understood first. For when this is mentioned, the fourfold purification

of virtue is implied (see Vism 15,29-16,16; Ppn 1:42). Established on this, a bhikkhu undertakes the ascetic practices, here called austerity (*tapa*), enters a forest, and by developing a meditation subject he develops the enlightenment factors together with insight. Then the noble path arises in him with Nibbāna as its object; the latter is what is meant by *relinquishing all* (*sabbanissagga*). [Spk-pṭ: For here everything comprised in formations is relinquished.] Thus the Blessed One turned the discourse into one on the Four Noble Truths, at the end of which the young deva was established in the fruit of stream-entry.

Spk-pṭ: Though here only his own attainment of distinction is mentioned, it should be understood that the five hundred nymphs were also established in the fruit of stream-entry; for that is said in the commentary to the Mahāsatipaṭṭhāna Sutta.

Neither Spk nor Spk-pṭ comments on the single prose line that follows the verse (in Be: *idam avoca, pa, tatth' eva antaradhāyi ti*). Perhaps the young deva had acquired such a compelling sense of urgency that he quickly returned to the deva world to practise in accordance with the Buddha's instructions. The Skt version has an additional verse, which reads in translation:

After a long time at last I see  
A brahmin who is fully quenched,  
Who has gone beyond all enmity and fear  
(*sarvavairabhayātitaṃ*),  
Who has crossed over attachment to the world.

(Ybhūs 5:3; Enomoto, CSCS, p. 8)

- 169 The texts show variations between *anagho*, *anigho*, and *aniggho* in pāda a of vv. 305-7. Ee2 uses *anigho* throughout.
- 170 The verse differs from v. 1 in pāda c only.
- 171 *Yāvatakaṃ kho Ānanda takkāya pattabbaṃ anuppattaṃ taṃ tayā*. Lit., "Whatever can be reached by reasoning, Ānanda, that you have arrived at." Spk: The Buddha had spoken about the visit of the young deva without disclosing his name in order to show the great might of the Elder Ānanda's inferential intelligence.

- 172 Spk does not comment on the name of this young deva, who may be an early prototype of the Hindu god Śiva.
- 173 I follow Se, which adds a terminal *ti* after the third verse and ascribes the next three verses to the Buddha. No change of speaker is indicated in Be or Ee1.
- 174 Vv. 330–31 are quoted at Mil 66–67. In v. 330c I read with Be, Se, and Ee2 *sākaṭikacintāya; mantā* in pāda d must be the nominative of the agent noun *mantar*. In v. 331a I follow Se and Ee1 & 2, which read *pantham*, as against Be *maṭṭham*; Mil (Ee and Se) reads *nāma* (a corruption?). Spk glosses pāda d: *akkhachinno va jhāyati ti akkhachinno avajhāyati*, which suggests that *va* is not the emphatic indeclinable but a verbal prefix. Spk, however, takes the *va* in v. 332d to represent *viya*. On *maccumukha* (in v. 332c) as “the mouth of Death” rather than “the face of Death,” see Ja IV 271,7, Ja V 479,29, and Vism 233,21–22 (Ppṇ 8:20).
- 175 Spk: *koci* = *katthaci*. *Koci* in this sense is probably a contraction of *kvaci*.
- 176 Spk: *Restless (uddhatā)*: of a restless temperament because of perceiving what is unallowable and blameworthy as allowable and blameless (according to the Vinaya), and the converse. *Puffed up (unnaḷā)*: full of hollow conceit like an erect (pithless) reed. *Personally vain (capalā)*: by adorning their bowls and robes, etc. *Mukharā = mukhakarā* (“mouth-rough”): of rough speech. *Rambling in their talk (vikiṇṇavācā)*: of uncontrolled speech, chattering away pointlessly all day long. *Muddle-minded (muṭṭhassatino)*: with lost mindfulness, devoid of mindfulness, forgetful of whatever they have done. *Without clear comprehension (asampajānā)*: without wisdom. *Unconcentrated (asamāhitā)*: devoid of access and absorption concentration, like a ship cast about by a fierce current. *Scatter-brained (vibbhantacittā, lit. “with wandering minds”)*: like foolish deer on a road. *Loose in their sense faculties (pākatindriyā)*: with open faculties due to lack of restraint, just as when they were laymen.
- 177 Spk: The young deva realized that his exhortation would not be effective if he approached each monk individually, and thus he approached them when they had assembled for the Uposatha day observance (see n. 513).

- 178 Spk: Through infatuation by defilements [Spk-pṭ: by craving], they are infatuated with the daughters-in-law, etc., in the homes of others.
- 179 In pāda b, I read *vadāmahaṃ*, with Be, Se, and Ee2, as against Ee1 *vandāmahaṃ*. Ee1 has the former reading in the parallel v. 794b.  
Spk: As dead bodies, thrown into the charnel ground, are eaten by various predators and even their relatives do not protect them or guard them, so such men are *rejected, without protector*, in that they do not get any instruction or advice from their preceptors and teachers. They are just like the dead.
- 180 Spk: Rohitassa posed his question about the end of the world with reference to the stellar world-sphere (*cakka-vāla-loka*), but the Blessed One answered with reference to the world of formations (*saṅkhāra-loka*).
- 181 This stock description of the archer is also at 20:6 (II 265,27–266,2). Spk: *Daḷhadhammo = daḷhadhanu*; possessed of a bow of the maximum size (*uttamappamāṇena dhanunā samannāgato*). A plural *daḷhadhammino* occurs below at v. 708b. At EV I, n. to 1210, Norman proposes that this form must have been borrowed from a dialect where *-nv-* > *-mm-* instead of *-nn-*. MW lists two Skt words meaning “with firm bows,” *dr̥ḍhadhanvan* and *dr̥ḍhadhanvin*. We might assume it is the former that appears in Pāli as *daḷhadhamma*, the latter as *daḷhadhammin*; see too n. 488. A similar development affected the homonym *dhanvan* (= desert); see n. 264.
- 182 Spk glosses *loka* with *dukkhasacca* and each of the other terms by way of the other three noble truths. Thus the Buddha shows: “I do not make known these four truths in external things like grass and wood, but right here in this body composed of the four great elements.”  
This pithy utterance of the Buddha, which may well be the most profound proposition in the history of human thought, is elucidated at 35:116 by the Venerable Ānanda, who explains that in the Noble One’s Discipline “the world” is “that in the world by which one is a perceiver and conceiver of the world,” i.e., the six sense bases. From Ānanda’s explanation we can draw out the following

implications: The world with which the Buddha's teaching is principally concerned is "the world of experience," and even the objective world is of interest only to the extent that it serves as the necessary external condition for experience. The world is identified with the six sense bases because the latter are the necessary internal condition for experience and thus for the presence of a world. As long as the six sense bases persist, a world will always be spread out before us as the objective range of perception and cognition. Thus one cannot reach the end of the world by travelling, for wherever one goes one inevitably brings along the six sense bases, which necessarily disclose a world extended on all sides. Nevertheless, by reversing the direction of the search it is possible to reach the end of the world. For if the world ultimately stems from the six sense bases, then by bringing an end to the sense bases it is possible to arrive at the end of the world.

Now the six sense bases are themselves conditioned, having arisen from a chain of conditions rooted in one's own ignorance and craving (see 12:44 = 35:107). Thus by removing ignorance and craving the re-arising of the six sense bases can be prevented, and therewith the manifestation of the world is terminated. This end of the world cannot be reached by travelling, but it can be arrived at by cultivating the Noble Eightfold Path. Perfect development of the path brings about the eradication of ignorance and craving, and with their removal the underlying ground is removed for the renewed emergence of the six senses, and therewith for the reappearance of a world. For a long philosophical commentary on this sutta by Ñāṇananda, see SN-Anth 2:70-85.

- 183 Spk: The Buddha asked this question because he wanted to speak praise of the Elder Sāriputta. He chose to address Ānanda because the two monks were close friends and had deep admiration for each other's virtues, and he knew Ānanda would answer in an appropriate way.
- 184 These words of praise are spoken by the Buddha himself of Sāriputta at MN III 25,6-10. Spk explains: *Wise (paṇḍita)* designates one who possesses the four kinds of skilfulness (*kosalla*)—in the elements, in the sense bases, in dependent

origination, and in what is possible and impossible (MN III 62,4-6).

- The next series of definitions, which continues for several pages, is drawn from Paṭi II 190-202. Here I give only extracts: One is of *great wisdom (mahāpañña)* when one has great virtue, concentration, wisdom, liberation, etc., great dwellings and meditative attainments, great development of the thirty-seven aids to enlightenment, great paths and fruits, great direct knowledges, and attainment of Nibbāna, the great ultimate goal. One is of *wide wisdom (pūthupañña)* when one's knowledge occurs regarding the diverse aggregates, elements, sense bases, etc. (Apparently Paṭi takes Pāli *pūthu* to be from Vedic *pr̥thak*, "distinct," but *pr̥thu*, "wide," is more likely the original sense.) One is of *joyous wisdom (hāsapañña)* when one fulfils all the steps of training full of joy, inspiration, delight, and gladness. One is of *swift wisdom (javanapañña)* when one swiftly understands all the five aggregates as impermanent, suffering, and nonself. One is of *sharp wisdom (tikkhapañña)* when one quickly cuts off all defilements and realizes the four paths and fruits in one sitting. One is of *penetrative wisdom (nibbedhikapañña)* when, full of disgust and revulsion towards all formations, one penetrates and splits apart the mass of greed, hatred, and delusion that had not been penetrated earlier. These terms, and other types of wisdom, are enumerated at 55:62-74.
- 185 Spk: When the Tathāgata and the Elder Ānanda had praised the Elder Sāriputta thus, the devas in 10,000 world systems rose up and praised him with the same sixteen terms. Then the young deva Susima, who had formerly (as a human being) been a pupil of Sāriputta, decided to approach the Blessed One with his own retinue and recite the same praise of his preceptor.
- Spk does not say whether this Susima is identical with the protagonist of 12:70. A young deva of this name is also mentioned at 11:2 as a subordinate of Sakka.
- 186 Spk: Elsewhere *uccāvaca* means: *ucca* = excellent (*paṇita*) + *avaca* = inferior (*hina*). But here it means diverse (*nānāvidhā*), in apposition to *vaṇṇanibhā*. For the blue young devas in the assembly became exceptionally blue, and so

- too the yellow, red, and white young devas became exceptionally yellow, red, and white. To illustrate this the four similes are given.
- 187 Be and Ee2 include here the phrase *saradasamaye viddhe vigatavalāhake deve*, but as this seems to be an interpolation based on the following paragraph I have followed Se and Ee1, which omit it.
- 188 The simile recurs at 22:102 and 45:147. Spk glosses *nabham abhussakkamāno* (as in Be) with *ākāsaṃ abhilaṅghanto* and says this shows the “tender time of the sun” [Spk-pt: the time when it is neither too low nor too high]. The verb *abhussakkati* comes from the root *sakk*, and has no relation to the adjective *sukka* as Geiger supposes.
- 189 I read pāda d with SS thus: *kālaṃ kaṅkhati bhāvito sudanto*. This reading is suggested by VĀT, who writes: “The third word has been removed by Be and Se, no doubt in the belief that it is a Śloka pāda (failing, however, to regularize the cadence). But if one takes it as an Aupacchandāsaka pāda there is no need to remove anything. Confirmation is got from Sn 516, the alteration of *sa danto* to *sudanto* being appropriate for the different contexts.”
- Spk does not offer help with the reading but explains the sense: “He awaits the time of his parinibbāna. For the arahant does not delight in death or yearn for life; he yearns for the time like a worker standing awaiting his day’s wage.” Spk then quotes Th 1003, which may account for the replacement of *bhāvito* by *bhatiko* in Ee1. To obtain a Śloka line, Ee2 retains *bhāvito* but deletes *sudanto*.
- 190 Spk: “These young devas were proponents of kamma; therefore they performed meritorious deeds and were reborn in heaven. Thinking that they had been reborn there on account of their confidence in their respective teachers, they came to the Buddha in order to recite verses in praise of those teachers.” Both Pūraṇa Kassapa and Makkhali Gosāla advocated doctrines that were opposed to the Buddhist teaching on kamma; their teachings are classified among the views that normally lead to a bad rebirth.
- 191 The verse is a concise statement of Pūraṇa Kassapa’s doctrine of nonaction (*akiriyavāda*), for which see DN I 52,22–53,4

- and 24:6 (in the latter source no ascription of the view to a teacher is made). A detailed account of the teachings of the six “heretical teachers” (of whom four are mentioned here and all six just below at 3:1) can be found in the Sāmaññaphala Sutta, DN No. 2; for a translation with commentary, see Bodhi, *The Discourse on the Fruits of Reclusheship*, esp. pp. 6–9, 19–26, 69–86. Spk paraphrases: “In declaring that there is no result of evil or merit, he taught to beings what is trustworthy as the foundation, the support; therefore he deserves esteem, veneration, worship.”
- 192 Makkhali Gosāla was the founder and leader of the sect of ascetics known as the Ājivikas. For his doctrine of non-causality (*ahetukavāda*), also called “purification by wandering on” (*samsārasuddhi*), see DN I 53,25–54,21 and 24:7. A full account of his life and teachings can be found in Basham, *History and Doctrines of the Ājivikas*.
- 193 The verse alludes to Makkhali’s style of ascetic practice but, strangely, makes no mention of his doctrines. Spk explains his austerity (*tapa*) as bodily mortification and his scrupulousness (*jigucchā*) as the loathing of evil [Spk-pt: the undertaking of the vow of nudity, etc., in the belief that this is the way to eliminate evil]. This explanation shows that Spk regards *tapojigucchā* here as a collective *dvanda* compound, “austerity and scrupulousness,” and so I have rendered it. Sv III 834,37, however, commenting on DN III 40,13–52,22 (where the Buddha gives a long disquisition on how *tapojigucchā* is imperfect and perfect (*aparipunnā*, *paripunnā*)), explains the compound as a *tap-purisa* meaning “scrupulousness by austerity”: *Tapojigucchā ti viriyena pāpajigucchā pāpavivajjanā*; “Austerity-scrupulousness: scrupulousness in regard to evil, the avoidance of evil, by means of energy.” *Tapassi* and *jegucchi* (the corresponding nouns of personal reference) are used to designate separate factors of the Bodhisatta’s “fourfold holy life” practised before his enlightenment at MN I 77,23–27 and 78,32–36. See too Basham, pp. 109–15, for a description of Ājivika asceticism.
- 194 Nigaṇṭha Nātaputta is identical with Mahāvira, the historical progenitor of Jainism. His discipline of restraint by the

four controls (*cātuyāmasaṃvara*) is described at DN I 57,25–27 and MN I 377,1–2. At MLDB, p. 482, the formula is translated: “(he is) curbed by all curbs, clamped by all curbs, cleansed by all curbs, and claimed by all curbs.” It is questionable whether either the text or its commentary (Sv I 168–69, Ps III 58–59) represents a genuine Jaina tradition.

- 195 Pakudhaka Kātiyāna is an alternative spelling of Pakudha Kaccāyana, whose doctrine of the seven bodies (*sattakāya*) is described at DN I 56,21–57,34 and at 24:8. Spk says that the statement that “they were not far from superior men” means, in effect, that they were superior men (*sappurisa*), i.e., ariyans or noble ones.
- 196 In pāda a, Be and Se read *sahācaritena*; Ee1 reads *sagāravēna*, corrected in Ee2 to *sahāravēna*, “along with (his) howling.” Spk-pṭ supports this: “By merely making a howl along with the roar of the lion; that is, the jackal (is not the lion’s equal) merely by making a jackal’s howl at the same time that the lion makes its lion’s roar.” The jackal and the lion form a classical pair of opposites in ancient Indian literature; see Ja Nos. 143 and 335, where a jackal does himself to death trying to emulate the lion’s prowess in hunting, and especially Ja No. 172, where a jackal shames a group of young lions to silence by trying to imitate their roar.
- 197 Spk: Māra thought, “He has spoken dispraise of the other teachers. I will make him speak praise of them through his own mouth.”
- 198 *Namuci* is a name of Māra, which Spk-pṭ (to 4:1) explains as meaning “he does not free” (*na mucī*): *vaṭṭadukkhato aparimuttapaccayattā namuci*; “He is called Namuci because he does not let one get free from the suffering of the round.” Spk paraphrases the Buddha’s remark: “Just as a fisherman throws out bait at the end of a hook for the purpose of catching fish, so, by praising these forms, you throw them out in order to catch living beings.” See 35:230.

### 3. *Kosalasaṃyutta*

- 199 King Pasenadi was to become one of the Buddha’s most

devoted lay followers, though the texts never say that he attained any of the stages of sanctity. This sutta, it seems, records his first personal encounter with the Buddha. His cordial (as distinct from reverential) manner of greeting the Blessed One indicates that he has not yet acknowledged the Buddha as his master.

- 200 These are the six sectarian teachers (*cha satthāro*) or “ford makers” (*tiṭṭhakārā*), of whom four are mentioned in 2:30. Of the two not mentioned above, Saṅjaya Belaṭṭhiputta was a sceptic (DN I 58,23–59,7) and Ajita Kesakambali a materialist (DN I 55,15–56,31).
- 201 Spk: *Na uññātabbā = na avajānitabbā; na paribhotabbā = na paribhavitabbā*. Spk distinguishes between “to despise” and “to disparage” with respect to each of the four things mentioned by the Buddha. For example: One *despises* a young prince if, when one meets him, one does not yield way or remove one’s cloak or rise up from one’s seat, etc. One *disparages* him if one says such things as, “This prince has a big neck (Se: big ears) and a big belly. How will he be able to exercise rulership?”
- 202 *Uccāvacehi vaṇṇehi*. This line reflects the belief, widespread in Indian mythology, that serpents can change their appearance at will. As Spk testifies: “A serpent glides along in whatever form it finds prey, even in the form of a squirrel.” See Vin I 86–87, where a nāga serpent assumes the form of a young man in order to receive ordination as a monk.
- 203 The grim consequences of despising and disparaging a virtuous bhikkhu do not come to pass because he harbours vindictive intentions, but as natural fruits of the offensive deeds. Spk explains that a bhikkhu who retaliates when provoked is incapable of harming anyone with “(his virtue’s) fire” (*tejasā*); the transgressor is burned only when the bhikkhu bears up patiently. In this respect the bhikkhu contrasts with the archetypal Indian figure of the maligned holy man who deliberately inflicts a curse on his enemies (see below 11:10).
- 204 *Tacasāraṃ va sam phalaṃ*. Spk: As its own fruit injures, destroys, the bamboo or reed, so do they injure, destroy, him.  
The reed family is called *tacasāra* because its bark is hard

- like heartwood. *Sam* here is the reflexive pronominal adjective, glossed *attano*. See EV I, n. to 659, EV II, n. to 136, and n. 657 below. Compare the present verse with v. 597.
- 205 *Atthi nu kho bhante jātassa aññatra jarāmarañā*. Spk: He asks, "Is there anyone who is free from aging and death?"
- 206 When speaking of the arahant, the Buddha does not describe his destiny as viewed from the outside, i.e., as aging and death, but in terms of the arahant's own experience, as a mere breaking up and discarding of the body.
- 207 *Santo have sabbhi pavedayanti*. Spk offers three interpretations, of which only the first, which I follow, sounds plausible: "The good, together with the good, declare: 'The Dhamma of the good does not decay.' The Dhamma of the good is Nibbāna; since that does not decay they call it unaging, deathless." The verse = Dhp 151, on which Dhp-a III 123,2-5 comments: "*The ninefold Dhamma of the good—of the Buddhas, etc.—does not decay, does not undergo destruction. So the good—the Buddhas, etc.—proclaim this, declare it, along with the good, with the wise.*" The ninefold supramundane Dhamma is the four paths, their fruits, and Nibbāna. Brough argues that *sabbhi* here must be understood to bear the sense of a dative, and he takes the point to be that "the doctrine does not wear out 'because good men teach it to other good men,' their disciples and successors" (p. 228, n. 160). I do not find his interpretation convincing, for the Dhamma-as-teaching must certainly decay, and only the supramundane Dhamma remains immune to aging and death.
- 208 "The End-maker" (*antaka*), in pāda a, is a personification of death; elsewhere (e.g., at v. 448) the word refers expressly to Māra.
- 209 Spk resolves *pacchāsaṃ*, in pāda c, into *pacchā tesam*. *Sam* is from *esam*, a genitive plural form of the third person pronoun; see Geiger, *Pāli Grammar*, §108.1. In pāda f, *hissa* = *hi ssa* < Skt *hi sma*. See EV I, nn. to 225, 705.
- 210 Be: *aṭṭakaraṇa*; Se and Ee1 & 2: *atthakaraṇa*. See CPD, s.v. *aṭṭa*, for hypotheses concerning the derivation. Spk-pt explains *aṭṭakaraṇa* as *vinicchayaṭṭhāna*, a place for making judgements (regarding litigation).
- 211 Spk: One day, when the king was sitting in the judgement hall, he saw his ministers accepting bribes and deciding cases in favour of their benefactors. He thought, "When they do such things right in front of me, the sovereign, what won't they do behind my back? Now it is General Viḍūḍabha who will be known through his own reign. Why should I sit in the same place with these bribe-eating liars?" The exact purport of this last sentence is obscure, and neither Spk nor Spk-pt sheds much light on it. *Bhadramukha*, "Good Face," is a term of affection (see MN II 53,27, 210,11 foll.; Ja II 261,14; Vism 92,21), which according to Spk and Spk-pt here refers to Viḍūḍabha, the king's son and commander-in-chief. However, the prologue to Ja No. 465 (Ja IV 148–50) relates that King Pasenadi's earlier commander-in-chief was a warrior named Bandhula, who assumed the role of judge when he learned that the official judges had become corrupt. Thus, despite the gloss, it is possible the king here uses the term with reference to Bandhula rather than his son.
- 212 Mallikā had been a poor flower girl whom King Pasenadi met by chance after a military defeat. He fell in love with her, married her, and appointed her his chief queen (see prologue to Ja No. 415).
- Spk: The king had asked her this question expecting her to say, "You are dearer to me than myself," and then to ask him the same question, to which he would have given the same reply, so that they would have strengthened their mutual love. But Mallikā, being wise and learned, answered with complete honesty (*sarasen' eva*) and the king too had to reply in the same way. The translation of *attā* as soul at KS 1:101 is misleading, despite the attempt at justification in the accompanying footnote. The sutta (inclusive of the verse) is at Ud 47, with the verse described as an "inspired utterance" (*udāna*).
- The conversation between King Pasenadi and Mallikā is strikingly reminiscent of the discussion between the sage Yājñavalkya and his wife Maitreyī recorded at Bṛhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣad II.4.5 (also at IV.5.6): "Verily, a husband is not dear, that you may love the husband; but that you may love the Self, therefore a husband is dear.

Verily, a wife is not dear, that you may love the wife; but that you may love the Self, therefore a wife is dear" (Muller, *The Upanishads*, 2:109–10, 182–83). It is conceivable that the Buddhist conversation is modelled after the Upaniṣad but with a different message. Whereas Yājñavalkya affirms a transcendent Self—the Ātman—which is "to be seen, to be heard, to be perceived, to be marked," the Buddha extracts an ethical maxim: since one loves oneself above all others, one should realize the same is true of others and treat them with kindness and respect.

- 213 Spk relates the background story, also found (in greater detail) at Dhp-a II 1–12; see BL 2:100–7 and Ja No. 314. In brief: The king had become infatuated with a married woman and planned to have her husband killed so that he could take his wife. One night, unable to sleep, he heard eerie cries of inexplicable origin. The next day, when he anxiously asked his brahmin chaplain to explain the meaning, the priest told him that the voices portended his imminent death, which he could avert only by performing a great sacrifice. When the king later inquired from the Buddha about the voices, the Buddha told him these were the cries of adulterers boiling in a cauldron in the great hell.
- 214 The sacrifices are also referred to at It 21,12–17, and their origin related at Sn 299–305. Spk explains that in the times of the ancient kings the first four sacrifices were actually the four bases of beneficence (*saṅgahavatthu*)—giving, pleasant speech, beneficent conduct, and equality of treatment—by means of which the kings conferred benefits on the world. But during the time of King Okkāka the brahmins reinterpreted the bases of beneficence (which they augmented to five) as bloody sacrifices involving slaughter and violence.
- In pāda c, I include *mahāyaññā*, found in Se and Ee2 but absent from Be and Ee1. Spk explains *mahārambhā* as *mahākiccā mahākaraṇiyā*, "great activities, great duties," which Spk-pṭ clarifies: *bahupasughātakammā*, "the action of slaughtering many animals."
- 215 *Yajanti anukulaṃ sadā*. Spk-pṭ explains *anukulaṃ* as *kulānugataṃ*, "what has come down in the family (as family tradition)." Spk: The regular meal offering that was

started by people earlier—this the people give in uninterrupted succession through the generations.

- 216 Spk relates, as the background story, an abridged version of the prologue to Ja No. 92. The verses appear, however, also at Dhp 345–46, the commentarial background story to which states merely that the king had ordered the criminals brought before him to be bound with fetters, ropes, and chains. See Dhp-a IV 53–55; BL 3:223–24. The same story is in the prologue to Ja No. 201.
- 217 Spk: It is *degrading* (*ohārīna*) because it drags one down to the four realms of misery; *supple* (*sithila*), because unlike iron bonds it does not constrict one's physical movement but holds one in bondage wherever one goes; *hard to escape* (*duppamuñca*), because one cannot break free from it except by supramundane knowledge.
- 218 The sutta is also at Ud 64–66, but with a different verse attached. The Eastern Park is the monastery built by Visākhā, the Buddha's chief female patron, who was called "Mother" by her father-in-law Migāra because she skilfully led him to the Dhamma.
- 219 The jaṭilas were matted hair ascetics; the nigaṅṭhas, the Jains, followers of Nātaputta.
- 220 All eds. of SN read this sentence as a declarative (*ye te bhante loke arahanto*), but Ud 65,22–23 (Ee) reads it as an interrogative (*ye nu keci kho bhante loke arahanto*).
- 221 This condensed fourfold statement is expanded upon at AN II 187–90.
- 222 *Ete bhante mama purisā carā* (Se: *cārā*) *ocarakā janapadaṃ ocaritvā āgacchanti*. Some SS read *corā* (= thieves) in place of *carā*, and the same v.l. appears in many eds. of Ud. Ud-a 333,18–24, commenting on the passage, explains why the king's spies can be considered thieves, which indicates that even Dhammapāla had accepted the Ud reading *corā*. Spk, however, treats *ocarakā* and *carā* as synonyms, glossing both as *heṭṭhacarakā*, "undercover agents," those who move below the surface (for the purpose of gathering intelligence). Spk-pṭ says: "The expression 'undercover agents'—which is what is meant by *carā*—refers to those who enter amidst (other groups) in order to investigate the secrets of others." The expression *carapurisā* occurs too

- at Dh-p-a I 193,1, Ja II 404,9-18, and Ja VI 469,12, in contexts where it can only mean spies.
- 223 Be and Ee1 & 2 read *osāpayissāmi*, Se *oyāyissāmi*. Texts of Ud and Ud-a record still more vv.ll., even up to nine; see Masefield, *The Udāna Commentary*, 2:918, n. 195. Neither Spk nor Spk-pt offers any help. Ud-a 333,25 glosses *paṭipajjissāmi karissāmi*, "I will enter upon it, I will act," which seems a learned way of admitting uncertainty. If we accept Norman's reasonable suggestion (at EV I, n. to 119) that we should recognize in Pāli a verb *oseti*, "to deposit" (< Skt \**avaśrayati*), *osāpeti* can then be understood as the causative form of this verb (< Skt \**avaśrāyati*, as pointed out by Norman in the same note). Here it is the first person future used metaphorically to mean "I will make them deposit the information with me." See too n. 542 and n. 657. Its absolutive, *osāpetvā*, occurs at Spk III 92,2, meaning "having put away."
- 224 Spk does not identify the other four kings. The fact that they are designated *rājā* does not necessarily imply they were rulers of independent states on a par with Pasenadi, though the mutual use of the address *mārisa* suggests they enjoyed parity of status with him.
- 225 The Pāli uses the plural *ekacce* with each assertion, but it is evident from the context that each assertion was made by only one king.
- 226 *Manāpapariyantam khvāham mahārāja pañcasu kāmāgūṇesu aggan ti vadāmi*. My rendering expands slightly on the compressed Pāli idiom. Spk glosses *manāpapariyantam* by *manāpanipphattim manāpakotikam*. Spk-pt: Whatever a person cherishes, being in his view the chief, is presented by him as the culmination, as the ultimate.
- 227 *Paṭibhāti maṃ bhagavā, paṭibhāti maṃ sugata*. The same verb *paṭibhāti* is used by both the interlocutor and the Buddha (by the latter, as the imperative *paṭibhātu*), but I have varied the rendering slightly in each case as befits the speaker's situation. This type of exchange occurs repeatedly at 8:5-11 below; 8:8 (I 193,3-4), which contrasts *ṭhānaso paṭibhanti* with *pubbe parivittakita*, "premeditated," indicates the exact nuance of the verb in such a context; see too n. 143. The lay follower Candanaṅgalika is not met

- elsewhere in the canon. Apparently he had been inspired because he had seen how the Buddha's glory surpassed that of the five kings.
- 228 Spk: *Kokanada* is a synonym for the red lotus (*paduma*). The Buddha is called *Āṅgīrasa* because rays issue from his body (*āṅgato rasmiyo nikkhamanti*). A parallel including the verse is at AN III 239-40. See too Vism 388,1-4 (Ppn 12:60) and Dh-p-a I 244 (BL 1:302), and cp. v. 752.
- On *Āṅgīrasa* Malalasekera remarks (DPPN 1:20): "It is, however, well known that, according to Vedic tradition, the Gautamas belong to the *Āṅgīrasa* tribe; the word, as applied to the Buddha, therefore is probably a patronymic."
- 229 Be: *doṇapākakuraṃ*; Se and Ee1: *doṇapākasudam*; Ee2: *doṇapākam sudam*. Spk: He ate rice cooked from a *doṇa* of rice grains along with suitable soups and curries.
- The *doṇa* is a measure of volume, perhaps a "bucket," obviously far more than the capacity of an ordinary person's stomach.
- 230 The *kahāpaṇa* was the standard currency unit of the period. See Singh, *Life in North-Eastern India*, pp. 255-57.
- 231 Spk says that the *nālika*, which I render pint-pot (after Burlingame), is the proper portion for a man; I could not find any source specifying the relation between *doṇa* and *nālika*. Spk explains that the Buddha had instructed Sudassana to recite the verse, not when the king began his meal, but when he approached the end. In this way each day the king gradually left aside the last portion of food until he reached the proper measure.
- A more elaborate version of the story is at Dh-p-a III 264-66, where it serves as the background to Dh-p 325; see BL 3:76-77. In this version the king's advisor is Prince Uttara rather than the brahmin youth Sudassana.
- 232 Spk: The good pertaining to the present life was the slimming of the body; the good pertaining to the future was virtue (*sīla*), one aspect of which is moderation in eating. See 3:17 below.
- 233 *Ajātasattu* was Pasenadi's nephew, son of his sister and King Bimbisāra, ruler of Magadha. While still a prince *Ajātasattu* was incited by Devadatta to usurp the throne

and have his father executed; soon afterwards his mother died of grief. War broke out when Pasenadi and Ajātasattu both laid claim to the prosperous village of Kāsi, situated between the two kingdoms, which Pasenadi's father, King Mahākosala, had given to his daughter when she married Bimbisāra (see prologue to Ja No. 239). The four divisions of the army are elephant troops, cavalry, chariot troops, and infantry, enumerated in the next sutta.

Spk explains the epithet *Vedehiputta*: "*Vedehi* means wise; he was so called because he was the son of a wise woman." This is almost certainly a fabrication. Videha was a country in north India, and the epithet suggests his ancestry was from that land. Since Ajātasattu's mother was from Kosala, Geiger surmises that it must have been his maternal grandmother who came from Videha (GermTr, p. 131, n. 3). See too II, n. 288.

- 234 Spk says Ajātasattu has evil friends such as Devadatta, Pasenadi has good friends such as Sāriputta. *Pāpamitta* and *kalyāṇamitta* are *bahubbihi* compounds meaning respectively "one with an evil friend" and "one with a good friend." They do not mean, as C.Rh.D translates at KS 1:112, "a friend of that which is wicked" and "a friend of that which is righteous"; nor do they mean "a friend of evil people" and "a friend of good people" (though this is entailed). The rare word *ajjatanā* (as in Se and Ee1; Be has normalized the difficult reading to *ajj'eva*) seems to mean "for today, for this day," with the implication that the situation will soon change.
- 235 Spk: *Jayaṃ veram pasavati ti jinanto veram pasavati, veripuggalam labhati*; "*The victorious one breeds enmity: one conquering breeds enmity, begets an inimical person.*" Spk thus interprets *jayaṃ* in pāda a as a nominative present participle functioning as subject. At EV II, n. to 26, Norman suggests it might be a *ṇamul* absolutive, i.e., a rare type of absolutive formed from the *-am* termination (see too EV I, n. to 22). While at v. 407 we do find *jayaṃ* as a participle, the word also occurs as a neuter nominative at v. 619c, and thus there should be no reason not to interpret it in the same way here. See the discussion in Brough, *Gāndhāri Dharmapada*, pp. 238–39, n. to 180.

- 236 I read pāda d with Be and Se: *so vilutto viluppati*, as against Ee1 & 2 *vilumpati*. Spk glosses the line, in its occurrence at v. 407f, with a passive verb: *so vilumpako vilumpiyati*. To preserve the logic of the verse it is really necessary to accept the passive verb and to understand the passive past participle as active in sense. The BHS version at Uv 9:9 is more intelligible, with an agent noun in place of the past participle: *so viloptā vilupyate*.
- 237 Spk glosses *kammavivaṭṭana*: "By the maturation of kamma, when the kamma of plundering yields its result." Spk-pṭ adds: "The kamma which has vanished matures when it gains an opportunity (to ripen) by meeting a condition (conducive to its ripening)."
- 238 Spk: He was displeased thinking, "I elevated Queen Mallikā from a poor family to the rank of queen. If she had given birth to a son she would have won great honour, but now she has lost that opportunity."  
This daughter was almost certainly the Princess Vajiri (see MN II 110,10–18), who was later married to King Ajātasattu of Magadha after the two kings were reconciled. Prince Viḍḍabha, the heir to the throne, was begotten from another wife of Pasenadi, Vāsabhā-khattiyā, a Sakyan lady of mixed descent who was passed off to Pasenadi as a pure-bred Sakyan princess. Viḍḍabha later usurped the throne and left his father to die in exile. When he learned that the Sakyans had deceived his father he massacred them and almost decimated the entire Saykan clan.
- 239 In pāda b, I follow Ee1 & 2 in reading *posā*, "than a man," though Be and Se, as well as Spk, read *posa*, which Spk glosses as the imperative *posehi*, "nourish (her)." Spk sees the comparison with a son implicit in *seyyā*: "Even a woman may be better than a dull, stupid son." In pāda d, *sassudevā* literally means "having (her) mother-in-law as a deva"; Spk adds father-in-law in the gloss.
- 240 In pāda b, it is uncertain from the text whether *disampati* is nominative or vocative, but I follow Spk, which glosses it with the vocative *disājeṭṭhaka*. With Be, Se, and Ee2, I read pāda c as *tādisā subhagiyā putto* and comply with Spk by translating *tādisā* as if it were a truncated genitive qualifying the woman. Ee1 reads *tādiso* in apposition to *putto*.

- 241 Spk explains *appamāda* as *kārāpaka-appamāda*, “activating diligence,” which Spk-pṭ says is diligence that motivates one to engage in the three bases of meritorious deeds (giving, virtue, and meditation). Spk: Diligence, though mundane, is still the chief even among the exalted and supra-mundane states (i.e., the *jhānas*, paths, and fruits) because it is the cause for their attainment.
- 242 In *pāda e*, *atthābhisamayā* is glossed by Spk with *atthapaṭilābhā*. The couplet is often quoted by the commentators, when commenting on the *ekam samayaṃ* formula, to illustrate *samaya* as meaning *paṭilābha*. I have tried to avoid the tautology of translating *dhiro paṇḍito ti vuccati* “the wise one is called a person of wisdom” by rendering *dhira* with its homonym, “steadfast”; see n. 72.
- 243 Spk: Although the Dhamma is well expounded for all, just as medicine is effective only for one who takes it so the Dhamma fulfils its purpose only for a compliant and faithful person having good friends, not for the other type.
- 244 The incident reported here, including the discourse on good friendship, is related at 45:2. The later version, however, does not include the line “beings subject to illness are freed from illness” (*vyādhidhammā sattā vyādhiyā parimuccanti*), found at I 88,23. Explanatory notes to the embedded discourse will be found below V, nn. 5–7.
- 245 The *seṭṭhi* were the wealthy money lenders in the large towns and cities of northern India. Originally guild masters, in time they came to function as private bankers and often played decisive roles in political affairs. Anātha-piṇḍika was said to be a *seṭṭhi*. See Singh, *Life in North-Eastern India*, pp. 249–51. Apparently when a wealthy man died intestate, the king was entitled to his fortune.
- 246 A lakh is a hundred thousand. Spk explains *kaṇājaka* as rice with the red powder from the husk (*sakuṇḍakabhatta*); *tipakkhavasana*, as a garment made by sewing together three pieces of cloth.
- 247 A *paccekabuddha* is one who attains enlightenment independently of a perfectly enlightened Buddha (*sammā sambuddha*), but unlike a perfectly enlightened Buddha does not establish a *sāsana*, a religious “dispensation.” They are said to arise only at times when a Buddha’s dispensation

- does not exist in the world. The story is elaborated in Spk and at Dhp-a IV 77–78; see BL 3:240. A version at Ja No. 390 does not mention the murder of the nephew or the rebirth in hell. A partly parallel story of abuse towards the *paccekabuddha* *Tagarasikhi* is related at Ud 50,14–19.
- 248 See n. 93.
- 249 The sutta without the similes and verses is at AN II 85–86; see too Pp 51,21–52,23. Spk: One is *in darkness* (*tamo*) because one is conjoined with darkness by being reborn in a low family, and one is *heading towards darkness* (*tamoparāyaṇa*) because one is approaching the darkness of hell. One is *in light* (*jōti*) because one is conjoined with light by being reborn in a high family, and one is *heading towards light* (*jotiparāyaṇa*) because one is approaching the light of a heavenly rebirth.
- 250 The *caṇḍālas* were the most despised of the outcasts; see Singh, *Life in North-Eastern India*, pp. 16–20. Spk glosses *venakula* as *viltvakārakula*, family of basket weavers; the two occupations are listed separately at Mil 331. *Rathakāra-kula* is glossed as *cammakārakula*, family of leather workers [Spk-pṭ: because the straps of carts are made of leather]; and *pukkusakula* as *pupphachaddakakula*, family of those who throw away wilted flowers. Perhaps the latter more generally included all sweepers and refuse removers.
- 251 Lit., “If by means of the elephant-gem I could have it, ‘Let my grandmother not die,’ I would have given away the elephant-gem, (thinking), ‘Let my grandmother not die.’”  
Spk: When his mother died his grandmother filled her place in bringing him up; hence he had such strong affection for her. The elephant-gem was an elephant worth 100,000 *kahāpaṇa*, decked with ornaments worth the same amount. The same explanation applies to the horse-gem and the prize village.
- 252 Cp. with 3:2. The verses are identical.
- 253 *Kattha nu kho bhante dānaṃ dātabbhaṃ*. I have translated in accordance with the Pāli idiom, though in English we would normally say, “To whom should a gift be given?” Spk relates the background story: When the Buddha began his ministry, great gains and honour accrued to him and the *Bhikkhu Saṅgha*, and thus the fortunes of the rival

sects declined. The rival teachers, intent on besmirching his reputation, told the householders that the ascetic Gotama was proclaiming that gifts should be given only to him and his disciples, not to other teachers and their disciples. When the king heard this he realized it was a malicious falsehood, and to convince the multitude of this he assembled the entire populace on a festival day and questioned the Buddha about the matter before the whole assembly.

- 254 Spk paraphrases: "One should give to whichever person one's mind has confidence in." When the Buddha spoke thus, the king announced to the crowd: "With one statement the sectarian teachers have been crushed." To clear up the ambiguity he next asked: "Lord, the mind may have confidence in anyone—in the Jains, the naked ascetics, the wanderers, etc.—but where does a gift produce great fruit?" What underlies the question is a basic premise of Indian ascetic spirituality, namely, that gifts given to renunciants generate "merit" (*puñña*), which in turn yields fruits (*phala*)—mundane and spiritual benefits—in proportion to the spiritual purity of the recipients. The mechanism that governs the relationship between giving and its fruits is the law of kamma. For a full disquisition on giving and its rewards, see MN No. 142.
- 255 The five factors abandoned are the five hindrances (*pañca nivarana*); the five factors possessed are the five aggregates of one beyond training (*pañca asekha*), the *asekha* being the arahant.
- 256 Spk equates patience (*khanti*) with forbearance (*adhivāsana*) and gentleness (*soracca*) with arahantship [Spk-pt: because only the arahant is exclusively gentle (*sorata*)]. DhS §1342 defines *soracca* as nontransgression by body, speech, and mind, and as complete restraint by virtue; but see n. 462.
- 257 Spk says that Pasenadi arrived after he had just finished impaling a band of criminals that he had arrested when they tried to ambush him and usurp the kingdom. The Buddha thought, "If I reprimand him for such a terrible deed, he will feel too dismayed to associate closely with me. Instead I will instruct him by an indirect method." I agree with C.Rh.D that the story does not fit well, and I

would add that it even detracts from the solemn dignity of the Buddha's discourse.

- 258 Spk explains *dharmacariyā* as the ten wholesome courses of kamma and says that *samacariyā*, righteous conduct, means the same.
- 259 *Natthi gati natthi visayo adhvattamāne jarāmarañe*. Spk glosses *gati* (= place of motion, "room") as *nippatti*, success [Spk-pt: "The point is that there is no success to be achieved by battle"]; *visaya* ("scope"), as *okāsa*, opportunity, or *samatthabhāva*, capability; "for it is not possible to ward off aging and death by these battles."

#### 4. *Mārasamyutta*

- 260 Spk assigns this sutta to the first week after the Buddha's enlightenment.
- 261 I translate the last sentence in accordance with the reading of Se and Ee1 & 2: *sādhu thito sato bodhiṃ samajjhagaṃ*. Be reads: *sādhu vatamhi mutto bodhiṃ samajjhagaṃ*. By *gruelling asceticism* (*dukkarakārikā*) the Buddha refers to the rigorous austerities he practised for six years before he discovered the "middle way" to enlightenment.
- 262 There is a delicate irony here in Māra the Tempter, usually the suave proponent of sensual indulgence, now recommending strict asceticism. This confirms the old maxim that the extremes are actually closer to each other than either is to the mean. I read pāda d with Se and Ee1 as *suddhimaggam aparaddho* as against Be and Ee2 *suddhimaggā aparaddho*.
- 263 I read with Be and Se *amaraṃ tapaṃ*, as against Ee1 & 2 *aparaṃ tapaṃ*. The expression, a split compound, occurs also at Th 219d. See CPD, s.v. *amaratapa*. Spk: Low austerity practised for the sake of immortality (*amarabhāvattāya kataṃ lukhatapaṃ*); that is, devotion to self-mortification (*attakilamathānuyogo*). Spk-pt: For the most part one is devoted to the practice of bodily mortification for the sake of immortality, and when that is pursued by those who accept kamma it may be for the sake of becoming a deva (believed to be immortal). See too Sn 249d.
- 264 *Piyārittaṃ va dhammani*. Spk: *Araññe thale piyārittaṃ viya*;

“like oars and rudder on high forest ground.” Spk-pt: *Dhammaṃ vuccati vaṇṇu; so idha dhamman ti vuttaṃ. Dhammani vaṇṇupadese ti attho*; “It is sand that is called ‘dhammaṃ’; that is what is meant here by ‘dhammaṃ.’ The meaning is: in a sandy place.” PED lists *dhammani* but does not explain the derivation; but see MW, s.v. *dhanvan*, where the meanings given include dry soil, shore, desert.

Spk: “This is meant: If a ship were placed on high ground, and were loaded with merchandise, and the crew would board it, take hold of the oars and rudder, and pull and push with all their might, for all their effort they would not be able to advance the ship even one or two inches; the effort would be useless, futile. So, having known austerities thus, I rejected them as futile.”

265 Virtue, concentration, and wisdom are the three divisions of the Noble Eightfold Path: virtue (*sīla*) includes right speech, action, and livelihood; concentration (*samādhi*), right effort, mindfulness, and concentration; and wisdom (*paññā*), right view and right intention. Māra is called the End-maker (*antaka*) because he binds beings to death.

266 *Devo ca ekam ekam phusāyati*. I understand this idiom (which recurs at 6:13 and 7:22) to mean that rain was falling drop by drop, not that it was falling continuously (the meaning ascribed to it by CPD). It would hardly seem sensible for the Buddha to sit out in the open if rain was falling heavily.

Spk: He was sitting there reviewing his practice of striving in order to provide a model for clansmen in the future, who would strive in emulation of the Teacher.

267 In pāda a we should read with Be, Se, and Ee2 *saṃsaraṃ* rather than Ee1 *saṃsāraṃ*. The “long course” (*diḥham addhānaṃ*) is *saṃsāra*. Spk: It is said that there is no form that Māra had not previously assumed in order to frighten the Blessed One.

268 *Na te mārassa paddhagū*. The last word is read here as in Ee2 and Sn 1095. Be and Se have *baddhagū*, Ee1 *paccagū*. PED conjectures that *paddhagu* may represent Skt \**prādhva-ga*, “those who accompany one on a journey,” that is, one’s servants. Spk glosses: “They do not become your disciples, pupils, apprentices” (*baddhacarā sissā antevāsikā*

*na honti*). The word *baddhacara* [Spk-pt: = *paṭibaddhacariya*] occurs at v. 578a.

269 This discourse is also at Vin I 22,24–36, set soon after the Buddha’s first rains residence at the Deer Park in Isipatana. The Buddha had already sent out his first sixty arahant disciples to spread the Dhamma. The present admonition, it seems, is addressed to the newly ordained bhikkhus who had come to the Buddha in response to the missionary work of the first disciples.

270 Spk: *Careful attention* (*yoniso manasikāra*) is attention that is the right means (*upāyamanasikāra*). *Careful right striving* (*yoniso sammappadhāna*) is energy that is the right means, energy that is the causal basis (*upāyaviriya kāraṇaviriya*). *Unsurpassed liberation* (*anuttaravimutti*) is liberation of the fruit of arahantship. On the role of careful attention, see 46:51. Right striving is the fourfold right effort; see 45:8, 49:1.

271 Spk: Māra approached and spoke, thinking: “He won’t be satisfied that he himself put forth energy and attained arahantship. Now he is eager to get others to attain it. Let me stop him!”

272 Spk: Māra’s snare (*mārapāsa*) is the snare of the defilements, that is, the celestial and human cords of sensual pleasure.

273 This is the Buddha’s famous injunction to his first sixty arahant disciples to go forth and spread the Dhamma. The passage also occurs at Vin I 20,36–21,16, in correct temporal sequence, preceding 4:4. Vv. 476–77 follow immediately, though here they are separated and assigned to an encounter in Sāvattī. A BHS parallel, including the verses, is at Mvu III 415–16; see Jones, 3:416–17.

Spk explains the threefold goodness of the Dhamma in various ways pertaining both to practice and doctrine. For example, virtue is the beginning; serenity, insight, and the path are the middle; the fruits and Nibbāna are the end; or the opening of a sutta is good, and so too the middle portion and the conclusion. When the Buddha went to Uruvelā he converted the thousand jaṭila ascetics, which culminated in the Fire Sermon (35:28).

274 Spk: Māra approached and spoke, thinking: “Like one directing a great war, the ascetic Gotama enjoins the sixty

men to teach the Dhamma. I am not pleased even if one should teach, let alone sixty. Let me stop him!"

- 275 I follow Spk in dividing *seyyā* and *so* and in taking *seyyā* to be dative in sense (Spk = *seyyatthāya*), and *so* a pronoun used in apposition to *muni* (Spk: *so buddhamuni*). I also follow Spk in taking *seyyā* to mean "lodging," though both C.Rh.D and Geiger interpret it as well-being. Spk explains *vossajja careyya tattha so* thus: "He should live having relinquished—that is, having abandoned—desire for and attachment to his individual existence (i.e., his body and life)."
- 276 Spk: *Upadhi* here is *khandhūpadhi*, "acquisitions as the aggregates"; see n. 21. In the last line the change of the subject from the singular to the plural is in the text. Spk: The enlightened do not resort to such a shelter because they have eradicated all fear.
- 277 Be, Se, and Ee2 read *dubbhago*; Ee1 *dubbhayo* (which may be a misprint); SS *dubbhato*. Spk: Like one dead and unconscious (*mato viya visaññi viya ca*). Spk-pt: A wretch is one who is luckless, whose fortune has been broken; he is similar to the dead and the unconscious.
- 278 Spk: Craving is said to be *entangling* (*jālini*) because it spreads net-like over the three realms of existence. It is called *binding* (*visattikā*) because it latches on to sense objects such as forms. It *leads anywhere* [Spk-pt: within the three realms of existence]. The *acquisitions* that are all destroyed are the aggregates, defilements, volitional formations, and cords of sensual pleasure (see n. 21). *Why should this concern you, Māra?*: "Māra, why do you go about finding fault with this and that like small flies unable to settle on hot porridge?"
- This sutta might be compared with 4:13 and 9:2, which have a similar theme. I have translated Buddha here as "Awakened One" to highlight the contrast with sleep, but it is uncertain whether such a tension of ideas was intended in the original. On the description of craving as "entangling and binding," see AN II 211–13.
- 279 Spk paraphrases: "The good man should live like a baby who, after drinking milk, might lie down on a blanket and fall asleep, unconcerned whether life is long or short."

- 280 The point may be that as the felly revolves around the stable hub, so the changing forms of life revolve around the stable soul or life-principle. The verse seems to be alluding to a simile in the *Bṛhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣad* II.5.15: "And as all spokes are contained in the axle and in the felly of a wheel, all beings, and all those selves (of the earth, water, etc.), are contained in that Self" (Muller, *The Upanishads*, 2:116). See too *Chāndogya Upaniṣad* VII.15.1 (*The Upanishads*, 1:120).
- 281 *Vicakkhukammāya*, lit. "for making eyeless." Spk: Out of a desire to destroy the wisdom-eye of the people in the assembly. He is unable to destroy the Buddha's wisdom-eye, but he could do so for the people in the assembly by manifesting a frightening sight or noise.
- 282 Spk: *In the assemblies*: in the eight assemblies (see MN I 72,18–20). *Endowed with the powers*: endowed with the ten powers of a Tathāgata (see MN I 69–71). At MN I 69,31–34, the Buddha says that, endowed with the ten Tathāgata powers, he roars his lion's roar in the assemblies.
- 283 See 1:38 and n. 86.
- 284 Spk paraphrases *kāveyyamatto* in pāda a thus: "Do you lie down thinking up a poem like a poet, who lies down intoxicated with the composing of poetry?" The expression recurs at v. 753a. *Sampacurā*, glossed by *bahuvo*, is at AN II 59,12 and 61,10, also in apposition to *atthā*.
- 285 *Muhum muhum*, in pāda b, is not in PED, and Spk and Spk-pt are silent, but see MW, s.v. *muhur*. The expression occurs at Th 125d, glossed by Th-a II 7,13–14 as *abhikkhaṇaṃ*, and at Th 1129b, glossed by Th-a III 158,8–9 as *abhiṇhato*. Both glosses mean "often," but here it seems the more literal sense of "moment by moment" or "constantly" is implied. The dart (*salla*) is elsewhere identified with craving; see vv. 214c, 737c. At 35:90 (IV 64,33–34) it is said that the dart is the state of being stirred (*ejā sallam*), *ejā* being a synonym for *taṇhā*; and the Tathāgata, who is unstirred by craving, dwells with the dart removed (*vitassallo*). See too MN II 260,17: *Sallan ti kho Sunakkhatta taṇhāy' etaṃ adhivacanaṃ*.
- 286 Spk: *Attraction and repulsion* (*anurodha-virodha*): attachment and aversion (*rāga-paṭigha*). For when someone gives a

- Dhamma talk, some people express appreciation, and towards them attachment arises; but others listen disrespectfully, and towards them aversion arises. Thus a speaker on the Dhamma becomes caught in attraction and repulsion. But because the Tathāgata is compassionate for others, he is free from attraction and repulsion.
- 287 At Vin I 21 this exchange of verses is set in the Deer Park at Isipatana and immediately follows the pair of verses at 4:5. A BHS parallel is at Mvu III 416–17, but the first couplet is equivalent to v. 77ab.
- 288 *Antalikkhacaro pāso yo yaṃ carati mānaso*. Spk states: “The snare is the snare of lust (*rāgapāsa*), which binds even those who move in the sky (i.e., by psychic power).” It is more likely *antalikkhacaro* is intended to suggest the incorporeal nature of lust, which can propel the mind across vast distances; see vv. 210b, 211b.
- 289 *Vedayitaṃ* in pāda a and *saṅkhataṃ* in pāda b are merely metrical adaptations of *vedanā* and *saṅkhārā*, the second and fourth aggregates.
- 290 Spk: *Though they seek him everywhere*—in all realms of existence, modes of origin, destinations, stations of consciousness, and abodes of beings—they do not find him, do not see him. See v. 49 (= v. 105), 4:23 (I 122,1–13), 22:87 (III 124,1–13), and MN I 140,3–7. It seems that both the living arahant and the arahant after his parinibbāna are intended.
- 291 Se and Ee1 & 2: *udriyati*; Be: *undriyati*. PED explains as a passive form from *ud* + *dṛṇoti*. See MW, s.v. *dṛi* > pass. *diriyate*. Spk: *Ayaṃ mahāpaṭhavi paṭapaṭasaddaṃ kurumānā viya ahoṣi*; “This great earth seemed to be making a crackling sound.” Spk-pt: *Undriyati ti viparivattati*; “‘Is splitting open’ means: is turning over.” The word recurs at 4:22 (I 119,17 foll.). On the evolution of the word in Pāli, see von Hinüber, “Remarks on the Critical Pāli Dictionary (II),” in *Selected Papers*, pp. 152–55.
- 292 On *lokāmisa*, “the bait of the world,” see n. 10. Spk explains *māradheyya*, “Māra’s realm,” as the round of existence with its three realms, which is the place for Māra to stand. The more usual expression is *maccudheyya*, “the realm of Death,” as at v. 16d; the two are effectively synonymous. See too v. 102d and n. 70.

- 293 Se and Ee1 & 2 have *kumārakānaṃ* as against Be *kumārīkānaṃ*, “of the young girls.” Spk explains that on this day—“a kind of St. Valentine’s Day” (KS 1:143, n. 1)—the young girls send presents to their sweethearts among the boys, and the boys send ornaments to the girls, even a garland of flowers if they can give nothing else.
- 294 Spk: Five hundred maidens were about to offer festival cakes to the Buddha, and the Buddha would have given them a discourse at the conclusion of which they would have been established in the fruit of stream-entry; but Māra, wishing to prevent this outcome, took possession of the girls. The expression *yathā dhōtena pattena*, “with a bowl just as cleanly washed as when he entered,” is a euphemistic way of saying that the bowl was empty.  
Spk: Māra made a false promise when he offered “to see to it” that the Buddha would get alms. He actually wanted the Buddha to expose himself to ridicule by the village boys (for coming for alms a second time after leaving with an empty bowl).
- 295 Spk explains *kiñcana*, in pāda b, as “the various kinds of defilements such as the ‘something’ (called) lust, etc.” On the use of *kiñcana* to denote defilements, see 41:7 (IV 297,18–19). The devas of Streaming Radiance (*devā ābhassarā*) inhabit the highest plane corresponding to the second jhāna, located in the form realm. They are said to subsist on rapture (*pitibhakkhā*) because they are sustained by the nourishment of the jhāna. The verse occurs at DhP 200, the story at DhP-a 257–58; see BL 3:72–73. In the sequel to the verse, omitted in BL, the five hundred girls hear the Buddha’s verse and become established in the fruit of stream-entry.
- 296 I follow Spk, which resolves *cakkhusamphassaviññāṇāyatana* thus: *cakkhuvīññāṇena sampayutto cakkhusamphasso pi viññāṇāyatanaṃ pi*; “eye-contact associated with eye-consciousness and also the base of consciousness.” Spk says that “eye-contact” implies all the mental phenomena associated with consciousness; “the base of consciousness,” all types of consciousness that have arisen in the eye door beginning with the advertent consciousness (*āvajjanacitta*). The same method applies to the ear door, etc. But in the

mind door, “mind” (*mano*) is the *bhavaṅgacitta* together with adverting; “mental phenomena” are the mental objects (*ārammaṇadhammā*); “mind-contact,” the contact associated with *bhavaṅga* and adverting; and “the base of consciousness,” the *javanacitta* and *tadārammaṇacitta*, i.e., the “impulsion” and “registration” consciousness. For an account of these types of consciousness (fundamental to the Pāli Abhidhamma), see CMA 3:8.

Māra’s reply, and the Buddha’s rejoinder, hinge on the practice of using Pāli words for cattle metaphorically to signify the sense faculties. See GD, pp. 141–42, n. to 26–27.

- 297 Here the Buddha is obviously referring to Nibbāna. Cp. 35:117 on the cessation of the six sense bases.
- 298 A slightly more elaborate version of the incident, including the verses, is recorded at Dhp-a IV 31–33; see BL 3:213–14. Spk: “The Buddha reflected thus with compassion, having seen people afflicted with punishments in realms ruled by unrighteous kings.”
- 299 At 51:10 (V 259,18–20 = DN II 103,23–26) it is said that one who has mastery over the four bases for spiritual power could, if he so desired, live on for an aeon or for the remainder of an aeon. Māra has made this appeal to the Buddha, not out of respect for his leadership ability, but because he wants to tempt him with lust for power and thereby keep him under his own control. It is interesting that the sutta does not offer an answer to the question whether righteous governance is possible, and this ambiguity pervades the Pāli Canon as a whole. While some texts admit that righteous rulers do arise (the “wheel-turning monarchs”), the general consensus is that the exercise of rulership usually involves the use of violence and thus is hard to reconcile with perfect observance of the precepts. For an insightful discussion of the ambiguity, see Collins, *Nirvana and Other Buddhist Felicities*, pp. 419–36, 448–70.
- 300 In pāda c, Be and Se read *dvittāva*, though the orthography in Ee1 & 2, *dvittā va*, is preferable. Spk: “Let alone one mountain, even as much as double (*dvikkhattum pi tāva*) a large golden mountain would not suffice for one person.” BHS parallels to this verse read *vittam*, treasure, in place of *dvittā* (see Concordance 1 (B)).

- 301 Spk: “Suffering has its source in the five cords of sensual pleasure; that is ‘the source whence it springs’ (*yato-nidānam*). When a person has seen this thus, for what reason should he incline to those sensual pleasures which are the source of suffering?” *Upadhi* in pāda c is glossed by Spk as *kāmaguṇa-upadhi*; see n. 21. In place of *saṅgo*, tie, the BHS versions read *śalyam* (Pāli: *sallam*), dart.

Spk-pt: The source of suffering is craving, and the source of craving is the five cords of sensual pleasure. Therefore it is said that the five cords of sensual pleasure—the condition for craving—are the source of suffering. When one who has fully understood reality has seen suffering as it really is with the eye of wisdom, and seen the cords of sensual pleasure to be its source, there is no reason for him to incline to sensual pleasures.

- 302 Spk: “The staff of *udumbara* wood, slightly crooked, was for the sake of showing that he was of few wishes (*appiccha-bhāva*, an ascetic virtue).” In the Vedic sacrifices, *udumbara* wood was used for all kinds of ritual purposes; the sacrificial post, ladle, and amulets were made of this wood (Macdonell and Keith, *Vedic Index*, s.v. *udumbara*).
- 303 See 1:20. Here Māra appears as a proponent of the brahmanical idea that renunciation (*sannyāsa*) must be postponed until after one has enjoyed a full married life. On how young bhikkhus, lads “in the prime of life, who have not dallied with sensual pleasures,” can live the holy life without being overcome by sensual desire, see 35:127.
- 304 This is a gesture of frustration. *Daṇḍapāṇi* the Sakyan is described in the same terms at MN I 109,1–2.
- 305 Samiddhi has already appeared at 1:20.
- 306 As at 4:17; see n. 291.
- 307 The verse = Th 46, Samiddhi’s sole stanza. I understand *buddhā* in pāda b to be simply a variant spelling of *vuddhā* (the reading at Th 46), though Spk glosses *buddhā* here as *ñātā*, to which Spk-pt adds: *Tā ariyamaggena jānanasamathanabhāvena avabuddhā*; “They have been comprehended by the noble path through its capacity for knowledge.”
- 308 The story of Godhika is told at Dhp-a I 431–33; see BL 2:90–91. Spk explains *sāmayikā cetovimutti*, “temporary liberation of mind,” as the mundane meditative attain-

ments (*lokiya-samāpatti*), i.e., the jhānas and formless attainments, so called because at the moments of absorption the mind is liberated from the opposing states and is resolved upon its object. He fell away from this liberation of mind on account of illness. Being disposed to chronic illness due to winds, bile, and phlegm (the “three humours” of traditional Indian medicine), he could not fulfil the states conducive to concentration. Each time he entered upon an attainment, he soon fell away from it.

- 309 *Satthaṃ āhareyyaṃ*. A euphemistic expression for suicide; see 22:87 (III 123,10,26), 35:87 (IV 57,6), and 54:9 (V 320,24-25). Spk: He reflected thus: “Since the destination after death of one who has fallen away from jhāna is uncertain, while one who has not fallen away is certain of rebirth in the brahmā world, let me use the knife.” On the Buddha’s own attitude towards suicide, see 35:87 (IV 60,1-5).
- 310 Spk: Māra thought: “This ascetic desires to use the knife. This indicates that he is unconcerned with body and life, and such a one is capable of attaining arahantship. If I try to forbid him he will not desist, but if the Teacher forbids him he will.” Therefore, pretending to be concerned for the elder’s welfare, he approached the Blessed One.
- 311 Spk: *Jane sutā ti jane vissuta*; lit. “heard among the people = famed among the people,” i.e., widely famed. There is a delicious irony, in the above three verses, in the way Māra—who usually addresses the Buddha discourteously as “ascetic”—here showers him with glowing epithets.
- 312 Spk: The elder, thinking, “What is the use of living?” lay down and slit his jugular vein with a knife. Painful feelings arose. He suppressed them, comprehended the pains (with insight), set up mindfulness, explored his meditation subject, and attained arahantship as a “same-header” (*samasīsi*; see Pp 13,25-27, commented on at Pp-a 186-87). He was a *jivitasamasīsi*, one who attains the destruction of defilements and the end of life simultaneously. (Another kind of *samasīsi* recovers from a grave illness at the same time that he attains arahantship.)
- 313 Spk: *Vivattakkhandhan ti parivattakkhandhaṃ*; “with his

shoulder turned” means with twisted shoulder. He had been lying on his back when he took the knife, but because he was accustomed to lying on his right side, he had turned his head towards the right and had so remained.

- 314 *Appatitthena ca bhikkhave viññāṇena Godhiko kulaputto parinibbuto*. Spk: Māra was searching for his rebirth-consciousness (*paṭisandhicitta*), but Godhika had passed away with rebirth-consciousness unestablished; the meaning is: because it was unestablished (*appatitthitakāraṇā*: or, with unestablished cause).

Spk-pt: *Appatitthena* is an instrumental used as an indication of modality (*itthambhūtalakkhaṇa*). The meaning is: with (consciousness) not subject to arising (*anuppattidhammena*); for if there were an arising, consciousness would be called “established.” But when the commentator says, “because it was unestablished,” what is meant is that the cause for the nonestablishment of consciousness was precisely the cause for his parinibbāna (*yadeva tassa viññāṇassa appatitthānakāraṇaṃ tadeva parinibbānakāraṇaṃ*).

A similar case of suicide is reported of the bhikkhu Vakkali at 22:87. When the monk is said to attain final Nibbāna with consciousness unestablished, this should not be understood to mean that after death consciousness survives in an “unestablished” condition (a thesis argued by Harvey, *The Selfless Mind*, pp. 208-210); for enough texts make it plain that with the passing away of the arahant consciousness too ceases and no longer exists (see, e.g., 12:51).

- 315 The verse (which must have been added by the redactors) occurs at Sn 449, where, however, it follows the verses that correspond to vv. 504-5. In the verse Māra is spoken of as *yakkha*.
- 316 Spk explains the seven years of pursuit as the Buddha’s six years (of striving) before the enlightenment and the first year after. However, the next sutta, which apparently follows in immediate temporal sequence, is the temptation by Māra’s daughters, which other sources clearly place right after the enlightenment (see n. 322). The present sutta seems to confirm this by locating the dialogue

with Māra at the foot of the Goatherd's Banyan Tree, in the vicinity of the Bodhi Tree. The commentaries generally assign the Buddha's stay under this tree to the fifth week after the enlightenment (see Ja I 78,9-11).

*Seeking to gain access (otārāpekkho)*. Spk: He thought: "If I see anything improper (*ananucchavikaṃ*) in the ascetic Gotama's conduct through the body door, etc., I will reprove him." But he could not find even a dust mote (of misconduct) to be washed away. On *otāra* (= *vivara*, Spk) see 35:240 (IV 178,13-16, 33), 35:243 (IV 185,11-15; 186,27-30), 47:6 (V 147,17-18, 27-28), 47:7 (V 149,7, 16).

- 317 Spk: *Bhavalobhajappan ti bhavalobhasaṅkhātāṃ taṅhaṃ*; "The greedy urge for existence is craving consisting in greed for existence."
- 318 I read *pāda d* with Be, Se, and Ee2: *yaṃ saccaṃ taṃ nirūpadhiṃ* (Ee1: *yaṃ sabbantaṃ nirūpadhiṃ*). Nibbāna, the supreme truth (*paramasacca*), is often described as *sabbupadhipaṭinissagga*, "the relinquishing of all acquisitions," and here as *nirūpadhi*. See n. 21.
- 319 The same simile occurs in a very different context at MN I 234,7-18.
- 320 *Nibbejanīyā gāthā*. Spk glosses *nibbejanīyā* as *ukkaṅṭhanīyā* (dissatisfaction) but does not explain the derivation. It is likely the word is related to *nibbidā*, though employed in a different sense; see MW, s.v. *nirvid*.
- 321 This passage, as far as "unable to speak," is the stock description of the defeated contestant; also at MN I 132,28-30, 234,1-2, 258,28-30. Se and Ee1 make this paragraph the last of the preceding sutta, but I follow Be and Ee2. As the two suttas form a single narrative, the division between them is arbitrary.
- 322 Their names mean craving, discontent, and lusting. Spk explains that they saw their father in a despondent mood and approached to find out the reason. The story of the Buddha's encounter with Māra's daughters is also recorded at Ja I 78-79 and Dhp-a III 195-98; see BL 3:33-34. There it is clearly set in the fifth week after the enlightenment. The BHS parallel at Mvu III 281-86 is also assigned to this period; see Jones, 3:269-74.
- 323 Spk's explanation shows that there is more to the simile

than meets the eye: "They capture an elephant and lead him out of the forest by sending a female decoy, who entices him by displaying her feminine wiles."

- 324 On the idiom *pāde te samaṇa paricārema*, Geiger remarks: "In courteous speech one uses *pādā*, feet, for the person. The meaning is: 'We want to be at your command like slave-women'" (GermTr, p. 193, n. 5). A sexual innuendo is unmistakable. Spk, strangely, does not offer any explanation here of *anuttare upadhisāṅkhaye vimutto*, but see n. 356.
- 325 Spk glosses *senāṃ* as *kilesasenāṃ*, "the army of defilements," and paraphrases: "Having conquered the army of the pleasant and agreeable, meditating alone, I discovered the bliss of arahantship, which is called 'the attainment of the goal, the peace of the heart' (*atthassa pattiṃ hadayassa santim*)."  
Mahākaccāna provides a long commentary on this verse at AN V 47,3-48,4. On *piyarūpaṃ sātārūpaṃ*, "the pleasant and agreeable," see 12:66 (II 109-12), DN II 308-11.
- 326 Both the BHS version of these verses (at Mvu III 283-84) and the Skt (cited at Ybhūś 4:1-3; Enomoto, CSCS, pp. 25-26) have the present tense *tarati* in *pāda b*, as against the aorist *atari* in the Pāli; while the present makes better sense, I translate following the Pāli.  
Spk: *Five floods crossed (pañcoghatinṇo)*: one who has crossed the flood of defilements in the five sense doors. *The sixth*: he has crossed the sixth flood of defilements, that pertaining to the mind door. Or alternatively: by the mention of five floods, the five lower fetters are meant; by the sixth, the five higher fetters.
- 327 Spk: *Tranquil in body (passaddhikāyo)*: this comes about with the tranquillizing of the in-and-out breathing by the fourth jhāna (see AN II 41,21-28). *In mind well liberated (suvimuttacitto)*: well liberated by the liberation of the fruit of arahantship. *Not generating (asaṅkharāno)*: not generating the three types of volitional formations (see 12:51; also n. 165). *Meditating thought-free* in the fourth jhāna. *He does not erupt, etc.*: He does not erupt (*na kuppati*) because of hatred, or drift (*sarati*) because of lust, or stiffen (*na thino*) because of delusion. Or alternatively: by the first term the

hindrance of ill will is intended; by the second, the hindrance of sensual desire; by the third, the remaining hindrances (see 46:2).

328 In pāda a, I read *acchejji* with Se, an aorist of *chindati*, to cut. The finite verb seems to me preferable to the absolutive *acchejja* of Be and Ee1 & 2; the variant *acchecchi* suggested by PED may also be acceptable. This verb should be distinguished from *acchejja* (or *acchijja*, Ee1) in pāda d, an absolutive of *acchindati*, to rob, to snatch away. The Be and Ee1 reading of pāda a may have arisen through a confusion of the two forms.

I read pāda b: *addhā tarissanti bahū ca sattā*. Be, Ee2, and SS read the last word as *saddhā*, but the gloss in Spk supports *sattā*: *addhā aññe pi bahujanā ekamsena tarissanti*. The BHT version of Mvu is too different to be of help and may be corrupt, but Jones (at 3:273, n. 4) suggests replacing *raktā* with *sattvā*, which would then support the reading I have adopted. *Tarissanti* is certainly preferable to the v.l. *carissanti*, found in Be, Se, and Ee1.

329 The verse occurs in a different context at Vin I 43,27–28. I follow Be and Se in reading, in pāda c, the active *nayamānānaṃ*, the prevalent reading of Vin. Ee1 & 2, on the basis of SS, read the passive *niyamānānaṃ/niyyamānānaṃ*. BHS versions at Uv 21:8 and Mvu III 90 also have the active form, while the Prakrit at G-Dhp 267 is ambiguous.

330 In the BHS version vv. 516–17 are ascribed to the Buddha. The concluding verse was apparently added by the redactors.

#### 5. Bhikkhunisaṃyutta

331 Thi does not ascribe any verses to a bhikkhuni named Āḷavikā, but two of the verses in this sutta are to be found among Selā's verses: v. 519 = Thi 57 and v. 521 = Thi 58. Thi-a 60 confirms the identity of the two bhikkhunis, explaining that Selā was called Āḷavikā because she was the daughter of the king of Āḷavaka. She heard the Buddha preach and became a lay follower. Later she took ordination as a nun and attained arahantship. See Pruitt, *Commentary on the Verses of the Theris*, pp. 83–87.

332 Spk explains the origin of the name: After the parinibbāna of the Buddha Kassapa a lay disciple named Yasodhara, while bringing money to build the cetiya for the relics, was ambushed there and blinded by five hundred thieves. Because Yasodhara was a noble disciple, the thieves straightaway lost their own vision as an immediate kammic result. They continued to dwell there and thus it became known as the Blind Men's Grove. Bhikkhus and bhikkhunis went there for seclusion. It was about three kilometres south of Sāvatti and was protected by royal guards.

333 Strangely, this verse, the appropriate response to Māra's taunt, is not found in Thi. Spk: The *escape* (*nissaraṇa*) is Nibbāna. *With wisdom* (*paññā*): with reviewing knowledge. Spk-pt: The intention is: "How much more, then, with the knowledge of the path and fruit?"

334 In pāda b, *khandhāsaṃ* should be resolved *khandhā esaṃ*. Spk glosses *khandhā tesaṃ*. See above n. 209 and EV II, n. to 58.

335 Thi-a 64 identifies her as the daughter of King Bimbisāra's chaplain. Two verses here = Thi 60–61, also ascribed to Somā, but the third verse differs in the two sources. For the background, see *Commentary on the Verses*, pp. 87–90.

336 Spk: *That state* (*thāna*): arahantship. *With her two-fingered wisdom* (*dvaṅgulapaññāya*): with limited wisdom (*paritta-paññāya*); or else this is said of women because they cut the thread while holding the cotton ball between two fingers. Spk-pt and Thi-a 65 offer a different explanation: "From the age of seven on they are always testing whether the rice is cooked by taking grains out from the pot and pressing them between two fingers. Therefore they are said to have 'two-fingered wisdom.'" It should be noted that it is Māra who voices this ancient bias. See too Mvu III 391,19, where we find *dvaṅgulaprajñāye strimātrāye*.

337 Spk: *When knowledge flows on steadily* (*ñānamhi vattamānamhi*): while the knowledge of the attainment of fruition is occurring (*phalasaṃpattiñāne pavattamāne*). *As one sees correctly into Dhamma* (*sammā dhammaṃ vipassato*): seeing into the Dhamma of the four truths, or into the five aggregates that form the object of insight in the preliminary phase of practice.

Spk-pt: By mentioning the occurrence of the knowledge of fruition attainment, the commentator shows that she has been dwelling in nondelusion regarding the four truths (*catūsu saccesu asammohavihāro*). Seeing into (*vipasantassa*; or, "seeing with insight"): for one seeing distinctly by the penetration of nondelusion; for one seeing into the five aggregates themselves in the preliminary portion (of the practice) prior to the breakthrough to the truths (*asammohapaṭivedhato visesena passantassa khandhapañcakam eva saccābhisamayato pubbhāge vipasantassa*).

Spk explains in terms of the knowledge of fruition attainment because Somā, being already an arahant, would have been dwelling in the concentration of fruition. In elucidating *vipasantassa*, Spk-pt, in the first clause, connects the word with the realization of the Four Noble Truths on the occasion of the supramundane path; in the second, it takes the word as signifying *vipassanā* in the technical sense of the preparatory work of insight meditation that leads to the path and fruition.

- 338 Spk says one entertains such thoughts on account of craving, conceit, and views. In pāda c, I read with Ee1 & 2 *asmiti*, as against Be and Se *aññasmim*. Strangely, though it delivers the coup de grace to Māra, this verse is without a parallel in Thi.
- 339 Spk recapitulates the popular story of her search for the mustard seeds to bring her dead son back to life, told in greater detail at Dhp-a II 270–75; see BL 2:257–60 and *Commentary on the Verses*, pp. 222–24. Her verses at Thi 213–23 do not correspond to the verses here.
- 340 Pādas ab read: *Accantaṃ mataputtāmi/Purisā etadantikā*. A pun seems to be intended between two senses of being "past the death of sons." I translate in accordance with the paraphrase of Spk: "I have 'gotten past the death of sons' as one for whom the death of a son is over and done with. Now I will never again undergo the death of a son.... The ending of the death of sons is itself the ending of men. Now it is impossible for me to seek a man." *Etadantikā* occurs too at Thi 138b.
- 341 The first couplet is common in Thi, found at vv. 59, 142, 195, 203, 235, etc. Spk elaborates: "The delight of craving

has been destroyed for me in regard to all the aggregates, sense bases, elements, kinds of existence, modes of origin, destinations, stations, and abodes. The mass of ignorance has been broken up by knowledge."

- 342 Thi-a 156 says that in lay life she had been a friend of Khemā, the chief consort of King Bimbisāra. When she heard that Khemā had gone forth under the Buddha, she visited her and was so inspired by their conversation that she too decided to take ordination. Khemā became her preceptor. See *Commentary on the Verses*, pp. 204–6. Her verses are at Thi 169–74. While the verses here are not among them, interestingly vv. 528 and 530 (with minor differences) are found among *Khemā's* verses, Thi 139 and 140.
- 343 Spk enumerates the five instruments: *ātata*, *vitata*, *ātata-vitata*, *susira*, *ghana*. Spk-pt explains *ātata* as an instrument with one surface covered by skin, such as a kettle drum (*kumbha*); *vitata*, an instrument with two surfaces covered with skins, such as the *bheri* and *mudīṅga* drums; *ātata-vitata*, an instrument with a head covered with skin and bound with strings, such as a lute (*viṇā*); *susira*, wind instruments, include flutes, conches, and horns; and *ghana* is the class of percussion instruments (excluding drums), such as cymbals, tambourines, and gongs.
- 344 Though three eds. read in pāda c *bhindanena*, Ee2 and SS have *bhindarena*, which perhaps points to an historical reading *bhidurena*. The Thi counterpart, v. 140, has *āturena*, but Thi 35a contains the phrase *bhiduro kāyo*. Both *bhindana* and *bhidura* are glossed identically in their respective commentaries as *bhijjanasabhāva*, "subject to breaking up."
- 345 Spk: Pāda a refers to the form realm, pāda b to the formless realm, and pāda c to the eight mundane meditative attainments. By the mention of the two higher realms, the sensory realm is also implied. Hence she says, "everywhere the darkness of ignorance has been dispelled."
- 346 She was the foremost among the bhikkhunis in the exercise of supernormal powers (*iddhi*), to which she testifies in vv. 534–35. Her verses are at Thi 224–35. Vv. 532–35 correspond to Thi 230–33, but with significant differences. Thi 234 is identical with v. 521 here ascribed to Ālavikā.

- 347 Pāda c: *Na c' atthi te dutiyā vaṇṇadhātu*. I translate freely in accordance with the gloss of Spk: "There is no second beauty element like your beauty element; there is no other bhikkhunī similar to you." A pun on the bhikkhunī's name is probably intended. Se and Ee1 & 2 include an additional pāda between pādas c and d, *idh' āgatā tādisikā bhaveyyum*, absent in Be and Thi 230. This seems to me a scribal error, as it is identical with pāda b of the next verse, where it fits.
- 348 Spk explains pādas ab as if they meant: "Though a hundred thousand rogues might come here, they would be treated just like you in that they would get no intimacy or affection." I translate, however, in accordance with the apparent sense, which also can claim support from the gloss of Thi-a on Thi 231.
- 349 The *iddhipādā*, "bases for spiritual power," are the supporting conditions for the exercise of the *iddhi* or super-normal powers described in the previous verse. See 51:11.
- 350 Cālā, Upacālā, and Sisupacālā—whose verses appear in 5:6–8 respectively—were the younger sisters of Sāriputta, in descending order of age. Their verses are at Thi 182–88, 189–95, and 196–203. However, not only is the correspondence between the two collections fragmentary, but the ascriptions of authorship also differ. Cālā's v. 537 corresponds to Thi 191, and v. 538 is reflected obscurely in Thi 192, both of which are there ascribed to Upacālā. Upacālā's vv. 540–43 correspond to Thi 197, 198, 200, and 201, there ascribed to Sisupacālā. And Sisupacālā's vv. 544–46 correspond to Thi 183–85, but there are ascribed to Cālā.
- 351 In pāda b I read *phussati* with Be, Se, and Ee2, as against Ee1 *passati*.
- 352 On pādas ab, see n. 345.
- 353 This verse alludes to five of the six sense-sphere heavens. Only the lowest plane, the heaven of the Four Great Kings, is not mentioned.
- 354 In pāda a, I read *ajalitam* with Se. Be *apajjalitam*, though hypermetrical, gives the same sense. Ee1 & 2 *acalitam*, apparently derived from SS, would mean "unshaken."
- 355 *Pāsaṇḍa*, in pāda c, refers to the "heretical" systems out-

- side the Buddha's dispensation. I render it, inadequately, as "creed." Spk explains the word derivation by way of "folk etymology": "They are called *pāsaṇḍas* because they lay out a snare (Be: *pāsaṃ denti*; Se: *pāsaṃ odḍenti*); the meaning is that they throw out the snare of views among the minds of beings. But the Buddha's dispensation frees one from the snare, so it is not called a *pāsaṇḍa*; the *pāsaṇḍas* are found only outside the dispensation." MW defines *pāsaṇḍa* as "a heretic ... anyone who falsely assumes the characteristics of an orthodox Hindu, a Jaina, a Buddhist, etc.; a false doctrine, heresy."
- 356 Spk explains *vimutto upadhisaṅkhaye* in pāda d thus: "He is liberated into Nibbāna, known as the extinction of acquisitions, as object." The expression is also at MN I 454,3–4 and II 260,22–23. Spk-pṭ defines "the end of all kamma" (*sabba-kammakkhaya*) as arahantship and "the extinction of acquisitions" as Nibbāna. See too 4:25 and n. 324.
- 357 There is no way to determine whether this bhikkhunī is identical with Āḷavikā; see n. 331. The verses do not appear in Thi.
- 358 Spk: Both *puppet (bimba)* here, and *misery (agha)* at v. 549b, refer to individual existence (*attabhāva*), in the latter case because individual existence is a foundation for suffering.
- The philosophers of the Buddha's time were divided on the question whether suffering is created by oneself (*attakata*) or by another (*parakata*). The former was the position of the eternalists, who held there is a permanent self which transmigrates from life to life reaping the fruits of its own deeds. The latter was the position of the annihilationists, who held that a being is annihilated at death and nothing survives, so that one's share of suffering and happiness is due entirely to external conditions. See the debates recorded at 12:17, 18, 24, 25.
- 359 One key to the interpretation of Selā's reply is AN I 223–24, where it is said that kamma is the field, consciousness the seed, and craving the moisture, for the production of future renewed existence. The cause (*hetu*), then, is the kammically formative consciousness accompanied by ignorance and craving. When that dissolves through the elimination of ignorance and craving, there is no production

of aggregates, elements, and sense bases in a future life. The imagery of seeds and vegetation recurs at 22:54, which also helps to illuminate these verses.

360 Spk provides no personal identification, and no verses in her name have come down in Thī.

361 The simile of the chariot is elaborated at Mil 27–28, which quotes the previous verse. Vism 593,18–19 (Ppn 18:28) also quotes these two verses to confirm that “there is no being apart from name-and-form.” Vv. 553–54 are quoted at Abhidh-k-bh pp. 465–66, ascribed to the arahant nun Śailā (= Selā); see Enomoto, CSCS, p. 42.

In v. 555 *suffering* signifies the inherent unsatisfactoriness of the five aggregates (*pañcakkhandhadukkha*), which is identical with the *heap of sheer formations* (*suddhasaṅkhārapuñja*) in v. 553c. See too 12:15: “What arises is only suffering arising, what ceases is only suffering ceasing.”

#### 6. *Brahmasamyutta*

362 The incident is also recorded at Vin I 4–7 and MN I 167–169, and at DN II 36–40 with the Buddha Vipassi and Mahābrahmā as the speakers. Spk assigns the incident to the eighth week after the enlightenment. A BHS parallel at Mvu III 314–19, considerably more ornate, records several variant traditions of the encounter, more or less corresponding with the Pāli version; see Jones, 3:302–9.

363 Spk explains *ālaya* objectively as the five cords of sensual pleasure, called “adhesions” because it is these to which beings adhere; and again, subjectively, as the 108 mental examinations driven by craving (*taṇhāvicaritāni*; see AN II 212,8–213,2), since it is these that adhere to their objects.

364 Spk: All these terms are synonyms for Nibbāna. For contingent upon that (*taṇ āgamma*), all the vacillations of formations become still and calm down; all acquisitions are relinquished; all cravings are destroyed; all lustful defilements fade away; and all suffering ceases. Spk-pt: *Contingent upon that*: in dependence upon that, because it is the object condition for the noble path.

365 The exact meaning of *anacchariyā* is uncertain. Spk (along with other commentaries) offers only a verbal resolution, which is hardly a semantic solution: *Anacchariyā ti anuacchariyā* (“repeatedly (or according to) *acchariyā*”). Most translators render it “spontaneously,” apparently taking the stem to be *acchara* = “moment”; but the commentators seem to understand the stem to be *acchariya* = “wonderful.”

Spk-pt proposes an additional etymology which entails the same meaning: *Vuddhipattā vā acchariyā anacchariyā; vuddhi-attho pi hi a-kāro hoti yathā asekkhā dhammā ti*; “Or non-wonderful is the wonderful that has increased, for the syllable *a* (the negative prefix) also signifies what has increased, as in ‘qualities of a non-trainee’ (i.e., of an arahant, ‘one beyond training’).” Though the derivation is problematic, from lack of an alternative I conform to current practice and use “astounding” as the intensification.

Spk-pt says: “The verses have the quality of ‘astoundingness’ because they indicate that after having fulfilled the perfections (*pārami*) for four incalculables and 100,000 aeons for the sake of sharing the Dhamma with the world and its devas, now that he has achieved kingship of the Dhamma he wishes to live at ease. It is this ‘astoundingness’ that is intensified [by the negative prefix *an-*].”

Von Hinüber contends that *anacchariyā* represents Skt \**an-akṣar-ikā* (see “*Anacchariyā pubbe assutapubbā*,” in *Selected Papers*, pp. 17–24), but his argument rests on the assumption that *pubbe assutapubbā* would be a redundancy and therefore *pubbe* must be taken in apposition to the preceding *anacchariyā*. This assumption, however, is contradicted by DN I 184,27–29, where we find *pubbe ... suta-pubbā* as one block. Interestingly, no corresponding word is to be found in the Mvu and Lalitavistara versions of the same incident.

366 Spk: *Living at ease* (*appossukkatā*, lit. “little zeal”) means lack of desire to teach. But why did his mind so incline after he had made the aspiration to Buddhahood, fulfilled the perfections, and attained omniscience? Because as he reflected, the density of the defilements of beings and the profundity of the Dhamma became manifest to him. Also,

he knew that if he inclined to living at ease, Brahmā would request him to teach, and since beings esteem Brahmā, this would instill in them a desire to hear the Dhamma. On *ussukka*, see n. 54.

- 367 Brahmā Sahampati appears in dramatic roles at key points in the Buddha's ministry and also utters the first verse at his parinibbāna (v. 608 below). See 48:57 for his own account of how he become a prominent deity in the brahmā world. His other appearances in SN are at: 6:2, 3, 10, 12, 13; 11:17; 22:80; 47:18, 43. In the Mvu version the deity who arrives is referred to simply as Mahābrahmā, without a personal name. He comes accompanied by many other gods including Sakka.

In this chapter (and elsewhere in this translation), I use "Brahmā" when the word is part of a proper name and "brahmā" when it refers more generally to a being or class of beings. Sometimes there is no hard and fast boundary between the two.

- 368 Spk identifies the door to the Deathless (*amatassa dvāra*) with the noble path, "the door to the deathless Nibbāna." Although the text here uses the singular *dvāra*, just below it has the plural *dvārā*.
- 369 I translate pāda c in accordance with the reading in Be, Se, and Ee2, *desassu bhagavā dhammaṃ*, found consistently in the Sinhalese texts. Ee1 *desetu* (found also in the DN and Vin parallels) seems to be a normalization influenced by the preceding prose passage. The verse is recited again by Brahmā Sahampati at v. 919. The Buddha is called the "unsurpassed caravan leader" at v. 736b; see n. 517.
- 370 Spk: The eye of a Buddha (*buddhacakkhu*) is a name for the knowledge of the degrees of maturity in the faculties of beings (*indriyaparopariyattañāṇa*) and the knowledge of the dispositions and underlying tendencies of beings (*āsayaṇusayañāṇa*). The knowledge of omniscience is called the universal eye (*samantacakkhu*, at v. 559d). The knowledge of the three lower paths is called the Dhamma eye (or "vision of Dhamma," *dhammacakkhu*). Together with the divine eye (*dibbacakkhu*: see 6:5, 12:70) and the fleshly eye (*maṃsacakkhu*), these make up the "five eyes" of a Buddha.

- 371 *Paralokavajjabhayadassāvino*. At MLDB, p. 261, the ambiguous compound is rendered "seeing fear in blame and in the other world." This agrees well enough with the commentaries, which resolve it: *paralokaṇ c' eva vajjaṇ ca bhaya-to passanti*. At Dh 317–18, however, *bhaya* and *vajja* are treated as parallel terms, which suggests that the compound should be resolved: *paraloke vajjaṇ c' eva bhayaṇ ca passanti*.
- 372 *Katāvakāso kho 'mhi bhagavatā dhammadesanāya*. Ee1 *bhagavato* here must be an error. At MLDB, p. 262, in accordance with prevalent practice this phrase was rendered, "I have created the opportunity for the Blessed One to teach the Dhamma." CPD (s.v. *katāvakāsa*) remarks that this construal "is both grammatically impossible and contextually unlikely." The rendering here, based on a suggestion of VĀT, uses the active voice in place of an awkward passive construction imitative of the Pāli.
- 373 Spk assigns this sutta to the fifth week after the enlightenment. The sutta is also at AN II 20–21 with an additional paragraph.
- 374 Spk: The first four qualities—virtue, etc.—are both mundane and supramundane. The knowledge and vision of liberation is mundane only, for this is reviewing knowledge (*pac-cavekkhaṇañāṇa*). On this last term, see n. 376 just below.
- 375 In pāda a, Se and Ee1 read *atthakāmena*, also at AN II 21,23, as against Be and Ee2 *attakāmena*, also at AN IV 91,1. Spk glosses *abhikaṅkhatā* in pāda c as *patthayamānena*. *Saraṃ* in pāda d is probably a truncated instrumental, glossed by Spk as *sarantena*; Norman, however, suggests it could be a *ṇamul* absolutive (see n. 235 above and EV II, n. to 26).
- 376 This is the stock canonical description of the attainment of arahantship. The sentence beginning "He directly knew," according to Spk, shows "the plane of reviewing" (*pac-cavekkhaṇabhūmi*).

The commentaries propose two ways of interpreting *nāparaṃ itthattāya*, depending on whether the last word is taken as dative or ablative. Spk: "Now there is no development of the path again done 'for this state' (*itthabhāvāya* = *itthattāya* as dative), that is, for the state of the sixteen tasks or for the destruction of the defilements. (The 'sixteen

tasks' are the four tasks of the path—full understanding, abandonment, realization, and development (as at 56:11; V 422,3–30)—taken in conjunction with each of the four supramundane paths.) Or alternatively: *itthattāya* = *itthabhāvato* (the ablative, 'beyond thisness'). Now there is no further continuum of aggregates beyond this present continuum of aggregates. These five aggregates stand fully understood like a tree cut down at the root."

I take *itthattāya* as a dative meaning "for this state of being," i.e., for existence in *any* state of being, so that the phrase conveys the same sense as the alternative "roar of liberation," *natthi dāni punabbhavo*, "Now there is no renewed existence" (see 22:27 (III 29,30), etc.). Elsewhere (e.g., at DN I 17,33; MN II 130,16 foll.; AN I 63,30–64,18) *itthatta* signifies the human state (or perhaps the entire sensory realm) as contrasted with higher states of being. As the stem form *itthatta* is clearly neuter, it is difficult to accept the commentarial explanation of *itthattāya* as an ablative.

- 377 Walking on continuous alms round (*sapadānaṃ piṇḍāya caramāno*) is the ascetic practice of going for alms to each house along the route, without discriminating between those who regularly give and those who do not; see *Vism* 60,19–24 (Ppn 2:6), 67–68 (Ppn 2:31).
- 378 *Āhutiṃ niccaṃ paggaṇhāti*. From the detailed description in Spk, this seems to have been an elaborate ceremony in which sweetened milk-rice was offered to Brahmā with accompanying invocations.
- 379 Spk: "The path to Brahmā (*brahmapatha*) is a name for the four wholesome jhānas; the resultant jhānas are called their path of living (*jīvitapatha*). Ignorant of this path, why do you mumble and mutter? For the brahmās subsist on the rapturous jhānas; they do not eat curdled milk flavoured with herbs and seeds." Usually the four *brahma-vihāras* are called the path to the company of Brahmā, as at DN I 250,32–251,21 and MN II 207,14–208,8.
- 380 Spk explains *nirūpadhika* in pāda b as one devoid of the *upadhi* of defilements, volitional formations, and sensual pleasures. Spk-pt: The *upadhi* of the aggregates is not mentioned because the aggregates still exist. *Has surpassed the*

*devas* (*atidevapatto*). Spk: He has attained the state of a deva beyond the devas, the state of a brahmā beyond the brahmās. (There is an evident pun here on the bhikkhu's name.) On *akiñcana*, "owning nothing," see n. 73. *Nourishing no other* (*anaññāposi*). Spk: This is said because he does not maintain a wife and children, or because he will not maintain another body after the present one.

- 381 Spk: What is *behind* (*pacchā*) is the past, what is *in front* (*purattham*) is the future. He has nothing behind or in front because he is devoid of desire and lust for past and future aggregates. He is *smokeless* (*vidhūmo*) with the vanishing of the smoke of anger. On the "front-behind" dichotomy, see Dh 348, 421; Sn 949; Th 537.
- 382 Spk explains *visenibhūto* in pāda a as "disarmed, without the army of defilements" (*kilesasenāya viseno jāto*). Here, however, I follow Norman's suggestion (at GD, pp. 307–8, n. to 793) that *viseni* corresponds to BHS *viśreṇi*, meaning "without association." At Uv 11:12, we find *visenikṛtvā* (translated into Tibetan by an expression meaning "free from the crowd").
- 383 On *oghatinṇaṃ* see n. 2.
- 384 Spk: This verse was added by the redactors.
- 385 The prose opening of this sutta is identical with that of MN No. 49, except that the latter is set at Ukkaṭṭha. The episode and verses make up the Brahmā Baka Jātaka (Ja No. 405). This brahmā's name means "crane," in Indian tradition regarded as a bird of cunning and deceit.
- 386 Spk glosses *kevalaṃ* as *akaṇḍaṃ sakalaṃ*, "unbroken, whole," and explains the background thus: In an earlier human birth this brahmā had developed the jhānas and was reborn in the Vehapphala brahmā world, a fourth jhāna plane with a life span of five hundred aeons. Thereafter he was reborn in the Subhakiṇha brahmā world, a third jhāna plane with a life span of sixty-four aeons. Next he was reborn in the Ābhassara brahmā world, a second jhāna plane with a life span of eight aeons. Then he was reborn in the first jhāna plane with a life span of one aeon. At first he knew his own past kamma and planes of rebirth, but as time passed he forgot both and adopted an eternalist view.

387 Pāda a reads: *Dvāsattati Gotama puññakammā*. I translate in accordance with the paraphrase of Spk: "Master Gotama, we seventy-two men of meritorious kamma [Spk-pt: i.e., doers of meritorious deeds] have been reborn here through that meritorious kamma (*bho Gotama mayam dvāsattati janā puññakammā* [Spk-pt: *puññakārino*] *tena puññakammena idha nibbattā*)." Neither Spk nor Spk-pt offers any further clue as to what the seventy-two refers to. I read pāda c with Ee2 as having *brahmapatti* rather than *brahmupatti* or *brahmupapatti* as in the other eds.

Spk glosses *abhijappanti* in pāda d with *patthenti pihenti*, "yearn for, desire." Ja III 359,25-29 employs three verbs: "Many people, with their hands joined in reverence, worship us, yearn for us, desire us (*namassanti patthenti pihayanti*), saying, 'He is the Lord Brahmā, Mahābrahmā,' and so forth. They wish, 'Oh, that we too might become thus.'"

388 For *nirabbuda*, see n. 409. Spk says that this is the extent of the life span that remains.

389 I follow Spk in ascribing the statement "I am the one of infinite vision ..." to the Buddha. If the text is read without the commentary, the words would have to be attributed to Baka. The request that follows, however, seems to confirm Spk's interpretation.

Spk glosses: *Vatasilavattan ti vuccati silam eva* ("It is virtue alone that is referred to as 'practice of vow and virtue'"). Spk-pt: "It is a vow (*vatabhūtaṃ*) because it is formally undertaken, and a practice of virtue (*silavattaṃ*) because it is practised by way of virtuous conduct, but the two terms actually refer to one thing; thus the commentary says, 'It is virtue alone.'"

390 Spk relates detailed stories behind each of the incidents referred to in vv. 575-77. See too DPPN, 2:259-60. Malalasekera errs, however, in stating that all the incidents occurred during his incarnation as Kesava. It seems Spk ascribes v. 578 alone to the life as Kesava.

391 This verse refers to the Kesava Jātaka (Ja No. 346; see too Dh-p-a I 342-44). In pāda a, *baddhacara* is glossed by Spk as *antevāsika*; see n. 268. I read the verb in pāda b with Be as *amaññi* (or *amañña* in Ee2) as against *amaññiṃ* = "I

thought" in Se and Ee1. Though Spk takes the line to mean that Kappa thought thus of his teacher, I follow the Jātaka, in which the teacher Kesava esteems his pupil Kappa as intelligent and devout while Kesava himself appears almost maudlin.

392 Spk: He did the preparatory work on the fire-*kaṣiṇa*, emerged from the basic *jhāna*, and made a determination: "Let flames come forth from my body." By the power of his determination, flames came out from his entire body.

393 I translate pādas cd in accordance with Spk's paraphrase: "Do you see the radiance, the aura, of the Buddha, the Blessed One, surpassing the other auras of the brahmā's bodies, mansions, and ornaments in this brahmā world?"

394 According to Spk, this brahmā had held two views: first, the view that no ascetics could come to his world; and second, an eternalist view. The first was abandoned when he saw the Buddha and his disciples arrive in his realm. Thereafter the Buddha gave him a discourse at the conclusion of which he was established in the fruit of stream-entry, and thus, through the path of stream-entry, he abandoned his eternalist view.

395 The three knowledges implied by "triple-knowledge bearers" (*tevijjā*) are: the knowledge of the recollection of past abodes, the divine eye (also called the knowledge of the passing away and rebirth of beings), and the knowledge of the destruction of the taints. Together with spiritual powers (*iddhi*) and the capacity for reading others' minds, these make five of the six *abhiññās* or direct knowledges. Spk says that the sixth, the divine ear, is also implied.

396 Spk-pt: A *paccekabrahmā* is a brahmā who moves about alone, without a retinue. Spk: They stood outside the door like sentries.

397 Spk says that *satā* in pāda b should also be connected with *tayo* and *caturo* in pāda a; the numbers can be interpreted by way of either individual figures (*rūpa*) or rows (*panti*). The *supaṇṇa* is identical with the *garuḍa*, the giant eagle of Indian mythology; see 30:1. Spk explains *byagghinisā* as beasts similar to tigers (*byagghasadisā*), but the word occurs at Ja VI 538,9 in a list of birds; it is there glossed as *senā*, a hawk or falcon. It seems that all these figures are

illusory creations of the brahmā's meditative power. Spk: "He shows, "This is the splendour of the palace belonging to me, the meditator.""

- 398 Pāda c reads: *rūpe raṇaṃ disvā sadā pavedhitam*. Spk: *Having seen form's flaw*—the fault (*dosa*) consisting in birth, aging, and dissolution; having seen *its chronic trembling*—that form is always trembling, shaken, stricken by cold, etc. *The wise one* is the Teacher (the Buddha).

While the deity is proud of the forms—the figures that ornament his palace—Subrahmā reproves him by taking up "form" in its technical sense, as the first of the five aggregates, and then exposing its dangers.

- 399 The story of Kokālika is related below at 6:10.
- 400 Spk: The *immeasurable one* (*appameyyaṃ*) is the arahant; one takes his measure by determining, "He has this much virtue, this much concentration, this much wisdom." Spk-pt: The states that make for measurement (*pamāṇakara*) are lust, hatred, and delusion, and with their removal it is impossible "to measure" the arahant by way of lust, etc. In this connection see 41:7 (IV 297,11-14 = MN I 298,8-11).
- 401 In Be and Ee1 & 2 the monk's name is spelt "-modaka-." He was one of the renegades who joined Devadatta in his plot to create a schism in the Saṅgha. Spk explains *akissava*, in pāda d, as *nippañña*, *kissava* being equivalent to *pañña*. Spk-pt derives *kissava*, perhaps by "folk etymology," from "that by which one hears what" (*kinti suṇāti etāyā ti*), i.e., learns what is wholesome and unwholesome, etc.
- 402 In Be the deity's name is Turu. Spk explains that in his previous birth he had been Kokālika's preceptor; he passed away as a nonreturner and had been reborn in the brahmā world. He heard about Kokālika's attempt to malign Sāriputta and Moggallāna and came to advise him to abandon this misguided behaviour.
- 403 Since the Buddha had declared Tudu a nonreturner, Kokālika reproves him for reappearing in the human world. A nonreturning brahmā does not, of course, take rebirth into the human world, but he may manifest himself to humans. Spk paraphrases: "He does not see the boil on his own forehead, yet he thinks he should reproach me for a pimple the size of a mustard seed." Tudu then real-

ized the wretch was incorrigible and spoke the following verses.

- 404 In v. 589 I have translated pāda c a little freely in order to make more apparent the connection with v. 590. Literally it should be rendered: "The fool collects a disaster with his mouth." *Kali* means both the losing throw at dice and a disaster.
- 405 Spk paraphrases pādas a-c: "This misfortune is trifling, that is, the loss of wealth at dice along with all that one owns too, including oneself." Spk glosses *sugatesu*, "fortunate ones," in pāda e as *sammaggatesu puggalesu*, "persons who have rightly attained"; thus here the term refers more widely to all arahants, not only to the Buddha. The verse is also at Uv 8:4, minus pāda c (which Norman considers a later addition), and at P-Dhp 301, which includes pāda c but with *saddhammam pi* in place of SN's *sabbassā pi*. For a theory regarding the historical evolution of the verse, see GD, p. 268, n. to 659.
- 406 The relationship of the figures here will be clarified in n. 409.
- 407 This sutta is also at Sn III, 10 (pp. 123-31), with the name spelt Kokāliya. The prose portions are identical, but Sn 661-78 gives detailed descriptions of the torments in hell not included here. AN V 170-74 combines 6:9 and 6:10. The background to Kokālika's animosity towards the two chief disciples is related in the prologue to Ja No. 480; see too Dhp-a IV 90-93; BL 3:247-49.
- 408 Spk: The Paduma hell is not a separate hell realm but a particular place in the great Avici hell where the duration of the torment is measured by *paduma* units. The same applies to the Abbuda hell, etc., mentioned below.
- 409 Spk explains the scale for measuring time as follows: one *koṭi* = ten million years; a *koṭi* of *koṭis* = one *pakoṭi*; a *koṭi* of *pakoṭis* = one *koṭipakoṭi*; a *koṭi* of *koṭipakoṭis* = one *nahuta*; a *koṭi* of *nahutas* = one *ninnahuta*; a *koṭi* of *ninnahutas* = one *abbuda*; twenty *abbudas* = one *nirabbuda*.
- 410 Spk: When he was the youth Pañcasikha he developed *jhāna* and was reborn in the brahmā world. Because he retained the appearance of a youth they knew him as Kumāra, but because of his great age he was called

- Sanañkumāra, “Forever Youthful.” He makes a dramatic appearance at DN II 210–19. At MN I 358,28–29 Ānanda utters the verse after he has given a detailed analysis of the two terms knowledge (*vijjā*) and conduct (*carāṇa*).
- 411 Spk says this took place not long after Devadatta had created a schism and had gone from the Bamboo Grove to Gayā’s Head; see Vin II 199. In the Vin version, however, the Buddha pronounces this verse, not after Devadatta creates a schism, but when he wins the patronage of the parricide King Ajātasattu; see Vin II 188.
- 412 The similes are elaborated at 17:35, followed by the same verse. Cp. v. 383.
- 413 In pāda b, *-vipamokkhā* can be understood as a truncated dative (Spk = *-vipamokkhatthāya*).
- 414 Spk: Though one has entered into the midst of the Saṅgha, one should not dwell there socializing with one’s lay supporters. Having made the mind proficient, having suffused it with joy and contentment, one should again resort to a remote lodging. Pāda d is explained: “Freed from the fear of saṃsāra, one should dwell liberated in (*vimutto*)—that is, resolved upon (*adhimutto hutvā*)—the fearless, Nibbāna.”
- 415 Spk: By this he explains: “Blessed One, just as you are now sitting without attending to the fearful objects situated there, or to the serpents, or to the lightning and thunder, just so do bhikkhus sit when they are intent on striving.”
- 416 Spk explains *itihitaṃ* in pāda b as if it meant deduced by reasoning or logic or inferred from scripture (*idaṃ itiha itihā ti na takkaḥetu vā nayahetu vā piṭakasampadānena vā ahaṃ vadāmi*). The use of the expression elsewhere, however, indicates that it is specifically connected with oral tradition, e.g., at MN I 520,4: *so anussavena itihitihaparamparāya piṭakasampadāya dhammaṃ deseti*; “he teaches a doctrine by oral tradition, by transmission of hearsay, by what has come down in scriptures.” See too MN II 169,12.
- In pāda d, the *thousand who have left Death behind* (*sahasam maccuhāyinaṃ*) are the arahants.
- 417 I interpret the numbers in v. 602 with the aid of Spk, even though this leads to the unlikely conclusion that the number of stream-enterers is not significantly higher than the number of arahants (cp. 55:5, V 406,11–30). I read pāda b with Be, Se, and Ee2 as *dasā ca dasadhā dasa* rather than with Ee1 *dasā ca dasadhā satam*. Though the latter gives a ten times higher figure, it does not agree with the commentary, which glosses: *dasadhā dasā ti satam*. It is not clear to me whether the “five hundred more trainees” (*bhiyyo pañcasatā sekkhā*) means that there are fifteen hundred trainees between the arahant and stream-enterer stages plus an additional thousand stream-enterers, or fifteen hundred trainees who are stream-enterers. V. 603 is also at DN II 218,6–9, uttered by Brahmā Sanañkumāra after he has said that twenty-four hundred thousand (*not* twenty-four hundred, as Walshe has it at LDB, p. 299) Magadhan followers had passed away as stream-enterers and once-returners. According to Spk-pṭ, “the other people who partake of merit” (*itarā pajā puññabhāgā*) are those who have partaken of merit aimed at the ending of the round (but who, presumably, have not yet reached any path or fruit).
- 418 Sikhī was the fifth Buddha of antiquity counting back from Gotama. He arose thirty-one aeons ago (see DN II 2,14–16).
- 419 For a more detailed account of Abhibhū’s power of transformation (*vikubbanā-iddhi*) see Paṭis II 210,14–30.
- 420 This incident is referred to elsewhere by Ānanda, and in response the Buddha describes the structure of the world system (AN I 227–28). There the Buddha claims that he himself is capable of making his voice heard throughout a three-thousand great thousandfold world system.
- Spk: The elder first asked himself what kind of Dhamma discourse would be pleasing and agreeable to everyone, and he then realized that all devas and humans praise manly effort. Thus he taught a discourse concerning energy (*virīya-paṭisamyutta*). The two verses are ascribed to an Abhibhūta Thera at Th 256–57; perhaps the similarity of names has resulted from a garbled transmission. See Horner’s trans. of Mil, *Milinda’s Questions*, 2:51, n. 5, for ascriptions of the first verse in Pāli and Skt Buddhist literature.
- 421 This sutta corresponds to the portion of the Mahāpari-

nibbāna Sutta that reports the actual passing away of the Buddha (DN II 156,1–157,19). A few discrepancies between the two versions are noticeable. The omission of the attainment of cessation of perception and feeling, noted by C.Rh.D, seems to be peculiar to Ee1; the passage is in Be, Se, and Ee2 as well as in the lemma of Spk. All four eds., however, omit Ānanda's assertion that the Blessed One (while still in cessation) has attained parinibbāna and Anuruddha's correction. The SN version also omits the earthquake and thundering, mentioned at DN II 156,35–37.

- 422 Spk: Here there are two kinds of “immediately after” (*samanantarā*): immediately after *jhāna* and immediately after reviewing. In the former case one emerges from the fourth *jhāna*, descends into the *bhavaṅga*, and attains parinibbāna. In the latter case, one emerges from the fourth *jhāna*, reviews the *jhāna* factors again, then descends into the *bhavaṅga*, and attains parinibbāna. In the case of the Blessed One, the parinibbāna occurred in the second way. But all beings whatsoever, from Buddhas down to ants and termites, pass away with a kammically indeterminate *bhavaṅga* consciousness.
- 423 On Brahmā Sahampati, see n. 367. The powers (*bala*) are the ten Tathāgata's powers, enumerated at MN I 69–71.
- 424 At v. 21, we have the same verse with a reading *sabbasaṅkhārā* in place of *vata saṅkhārā* in pāda a. See n. 20.
- 425 In the DN version Anuruddha's verses precede Ānanda's.
- 426 VĀT remarks: “The absence of in-and-out breathing (in pāda a) refers to the state in the fourth *jhāna*, where breathing ceases, from which the Buddha passed away. This is not the ordinary cessation of breathing that sets in when anyone dies. The verse states something remarkable: that already *before* ‘dying’ there was no breathing.” On “the Stable One” (*tādi*), see below n. 435. On the ceasing of the breath in the fourth *jhāna*, see 36:11 (IV 217,8–9).
- Spk: *Bent on peace* (*santiṃ ārabha*): bent upon, depending upon, leaning towards Nibbāna without residue. *The One with Vision*—he with the five eyes—attained final Nibbāna through the full quenching of the aggregates (*khandhaparinibbāna*). On the five eyes, see n. 370; on the two kinds of parinibbāna, see General Introduction, p. 50.

At DN II 157,13 this pāda reads: *yaṃ kālam akari muni*; “when the Sage passed away.”

- 427 Pādas cd read: *Pajjotasseva nibbānaṃ/Vimokkho cetaso ahū*. The word *nibbāna* is used here in its literal sense but with doctrinal overtones that fit the context. Spk: His deliverance, not obstructed by anything, his approaching the completely indescribable state (*sabbaso apaññatti-bhāvūpagamo*), resembled the quenching of a lamp. Anuruddha's verses on the Buddha's parinibbāna in Th include an additional verse, Th 907.

### 7. *Brāhmaṇasaṃyutta*

- 428 The story related here is also at Dhp-a IV,161–63; see BL 3:288–89. The opening is similar to that of MN No. 100 (II 209,21 foll.), which concerns a brahmin lady of the same name, there spelt Dhānañjāni.
- Spk: The Dhānañjāni clan was reputed to be the highest clan of brahmins. They believed that while other brahmins had been born from Brahmā's mouth, they themselves had issued from the top of his head. This woman was a noble disciple, a stream-enterer, but her husband was staunchly opposed to the Buddha's dispensation and would block his ears whenever she spoke in praise of the Triple Gem.
- 429 Spk: The brahmin had invited five hundred fellow brahmins to a banquet. The previous day he had pleaded with his wife not to disgrace him by praising the Buddha before his peers. When she stumbled over a stack of firewood while serving food to the brahmins, she knelt down and paid homage to the Buddha. Scandalized by this, the brahmins reviled her husband and walked out without even finishing their meal.
- 430 *Vasali*, here rendered “wretched woman,” is a term of severe contempt, used by the brahmins to address outcasts.
- 431 The verses have already appeared at 1:71 and 2:3, with different narrative settings. This illustrates once again how the “floating mass” of didactic verses could be freely drawn upon to suit different pedagogical requirements.
- Spk: He formulated his question with the following

- intent: "If he says, 'I approve of the killing of such and such,' then I'll call him a killer and challenge his claim to be an ascetic; but if he says he doesn't approve of any killing, I'll say, 'Then you don't desire the killing of lust, etc., so why do you wander about as an ascetic?' Thus the ascetic Gotama will be caught on the horns of this dilemma, unable either to swallow it or to cough it up." He greeted the Buddha cordially in order to hide his anger.
- 432 See n. 376.
- 433 I give the sobriquet both in Pāli and in English. Spk, which identifies him as the younger brother of the first Bhāradvāja brahmin, says that the epithet was added by the redactors of the canon because he came abusing (*akkosanto*) the Tathāgata with five hundred verses.
- 434 Spk: He had heard that seers (*isi*) inflict a curse when they become angry, so when the Buddha said, "It still belongs to you, brahmin!" he was frightened, thinking, "The ascetic Gotama, it seems, is putting a curse on me." Therefore he spoke thus.
- 435 I have translated *tādi* as "the Stable One" in accordance with the commentarial gloss, *tādilakkhaṇaṃ pattassa*, which alludes to the explanation of *tādi* at Nidd I 114–16: "The arahant is *tādi* because he is 'stable' (*tādi*) in the face of gain and loss, etc.; he is *tādi* because he has given up all defilements, etc.; he is *tādi* because he has crossed the four floods, etc.; he is *tādi* because his mind is free from all defilements; and he is *tādi* as a description of him in terms of his qualities" (condensed). A similar but slightly different definition of *tādi* in relation to the Buddha occurs at Nidd I 459–61.
- 436 Be and Ee1 & 2 read pāda a: *ubhinnaṃ tikicchantaṇaṃ*, which Spk (Be) includes in the lemma and glosses *ubhinnaṃ tikicchantaṃ*, adding: "Or the latter is itself the reading." In Se and Spk (Se) the readings are exactly the reverse. As the sense requires an accusative singular, the reading *ubhinnaṃ tikicchantaṃ taṃ*, found at Th 444a, offends against neither grammar nor metre. Ee2 has adopted this reading for the exact parallel v. 882 below, but strangely reverts to *ubhinnaṃ tikicchantaṇaṃ* in the third parallel, v. 891.
- 437 He was the youngest of the Bhāradvāja brothers.
- 438 Spk: "For one who understands the excellence of endurance, this victory—patient endurance—is his alone (*yā titikkhā vijānato adhvāsānāya guṇaṃ vijānantassa titikkhā adhvāsānā, ayaṃ tassa vijānato va jayo*)." Note that neuter *jayaṃ* is here nominative.
- 439 Spk: He was another of the Bhāradvāja brothers. The name Bilaṅgika was assigned to him by the redactors because he became rich by selling delicious congee (*kañjika*, a synonym for *bilaṅga*).
- 440 Spk: He was so angry his three brothers had been ordained as monks that he could not speak.
- 441 Spk says that the name Ahimsaka may have been assigned to him by the redactors because he "asked a question" (i.e., made an assertion) about harmlessness; or, alternatively, Ahimsaka may have been his given name. From his opening statement and the Buddha's reply the second alternative seems more likely.
- 442 Spk-pt explains the *sila* referred to in pāda b as *pañcavidhaniyama*, an obvious allusion to the second limb of Patañjali's Yoga system.  
Spk: By knowledge (*vijjā*) he means the Three Vedas, by conduct (*carāṇa*) the conduct of one's clan (*gottacarāṇa*; Spk-pt: the clan itself, called conduct).  
As *vijjācarāṇasampanna* is one of the nine chief epithets of the Buddha and is also used to describe the arahant (see v. 596), the second couplet, if read apart from the commentarial explanation, expresses the Buddhist rather than the brahmanical point of view. See too the Buddha's argument with the brahmin youth Ambaṭṭha at DN I 99,19–100,16.
- 443 A brahmin of this name is encountered in the Vasala Sutta (Sn I, 7; p. 21), but he seems to be a different person. According to Spk, this brahmin was given the sobriquet "Aggika" because he tended the sacred fire.
- 444 Spk: He speaks of one endowed "with the triple knowledge" (*tihi vijjāhi*) with reference to the Three Vedas. By "proper birth" (*jātimā*) he means one of pure birth through seven generations.
- 445 The Buddha's reply refers to the *tevijjā* of his own system

of training: pāda a, to knowledge of the recollection of past abodes; pāda b, to the divine eye, i.e., the knowledge of the passing away and rebirth of beings; and pāda c, to the knowledge of the destruction of the taints.

- 446 Spk paraphrases the idea behind vv. 636–37 thus: “Though I stood for such a long time waiting for alms, you would not give me even a spoonful; but now, after I have revealed all the Buddha-qualities to you as though spreading out sesamum seeds on a mat, (you wish to give). This food has been gained, as it were, by chanting a song; therefore, because it has been ‘chanted over with verses’ (*gāthābhigita*) it is not fit to be eaten by me. As such a principle exists (*dhamme sati*), out of regard for the Dhamma, established on the Dhamma, the Buddhas sustain their life. This is their rule of conduct; this is their way of livelihood (*esā vutti ayaṃ ājivo*). Such food is to be discarded and only what is righteously gained is to be eaten.”

The Buddha’s practice is discussed at Mil 228–32. CPD (s.v. *abhigita*) suggests that the reason the Buddha rejects such food is because it has been “spoken over with mantras”—by the brahmin while chanting the sacrificial hymns—but to me it is doubtful the Buddha would reject food for such a reason. Further, according to MW, *gāthā* is not used with reference to the verses of the Vedas, and thus here the word more likely refers to the Buddha’s own verses.

Spk does not comment on *kevalinaṃ*, “the consummate one,” in pāda a, but Pj II 153,9–10 (to Sn 82) says: *Kevalinan ti sabbagaṇaparipuṇṇaṃ sabbayogavisāmyuttaṃ vā*; “a consummate one is one complete in all excellent qualities or one detached from all bonds.” Spk II 276,32–277,1 (to SN III 59,34) explains: *Kevalino ti sakalino katasabbakiccā*; “the consummate ones are entire, they have completed all their tasks.” For a further selection of relevant passages, see GD, p. 161, n. to 82. For reflections on the implications of the term, see Nāṇananda, SN-Anth 2:100–1.

Spk explains *kukkuccavūpasantaṃ* thus: *hatthakukkuccā-dīnaṃ vasena vūpasantakukkuccaṃ*; “one in whom remorse has been stilled by the stilling of fidgety behaviour with

the hands, etc.” Here *kukkucca* is understood in the literal sense of “bad activity” or “fidgety behaviour” rather than in the extended sense of remorse or worry, one of the five hindrances.

- 447 Spk: This was his thought: “The portion of milk-rice placed in the fire has been eaten by Mahābrahmā. If this remainder is given to a brahmin, one born from the mouth of Brahmā, my father and son would be pleased and I will clear the path to the brahmā world.” See Deussen, *Sixty Upaniṣads of the Veda*, 1:148: “The residue (*ucchiṣṭam*) of the offering, i.e., what remains in the ladle, in the saucepan, or vessel, is to be eaten only by a brāhmaṇa, not in his own house; no kṣatriya or vaiśya is to eat it.” This explains why the brahmin, just below, is so concerned about the Buddha’s caste.
- 448 *Fire is indeed produced from any wood (kaṭṭhā have jāyati jātavedo)*. Spk: This is the purport: “It is not the case that only fire produced from a pure type of wood, such as sal-tree logs, can perform the work of fire, but not fire produced from the wood of a dog’s trough, etc. Rather, by reason of its flame, etc., fire produced from any kind of wood can do the work of fire. So you should not think that only one born in a brahmin family is worthy of offerings, but not one born in a caṇḍāla family, etc. Whether from a low family or a high family, an arahant sage is a thoroughbred—resolute, restrained by a sense of shame.” See in this connection the arguments at MN II 129–30, 151–53.
- 449 Spk explains *one who has reached the end of knowledge (vedāntagū)* in pāda b thus: “one gone to the end of the four path knowledges, or one gone to the end of defilements by the four path knowledges” (*catunnaṃ magga-vedānaṃ antaṃ, catūhi vā maggavedehi kilesānaṃ antaṃ gato*). Evidently, the Buddha is here deliberately using brahmanical terminology in order to adjust the Dhamma to the mental disposition of the brahmin.
- 450 Spk: Why does he say this? It is said that when the brahmin presented the food to the Buddha, the devas from the four world-regions, etc., suffused the food with nutritive essence (*ojā*) produced by their celestial power. Thus it

became extremely subtle. It was too subtle for the coarse digestive systems of ordinary human beings to digest properly; yet, because the food had a base of coarse material food, it was too coarse for the devas to digest. Even dry-insight arahants could not digest it. Only arahants who obtain the eight meditative attainments could digest it by the power of their attainment, while the Blessed One could digest it by his own natural digestive power.

451 Spk: This did not occur through the power of the food itself but through the Buddha's power. The Buddha had made such a determination so that the brahmin would be favourably disposed to hear the Dhamma.

452 *Khāribhāra*, "shoulder-load," is a carrying device commonly used in South Asia, consisting of two trays at each end of a pole borne across the shoulder.

Spk: "Conceit, O brahmin, is your shoulder-load: When a shoulder-load is being carried, with each step the weight of the load brings the trays into contact with the ground; similarly, though conceit props one up on account of birth, clan, family, etc., it causes envy to arise and thereby pulls one down to the four realms of misery. *Anger the smoke*: because the fire of knowledge does not shine when defiled by the smoke of anger. *False speech the ashes*: because the fire of knowledge does not burn when covered by false speech. *The tongue is the ladle*: my [the Buddha's] tongue is a ladle offering the Dhamma sacrifice. *The heart the altar*: the hearts of beings are the altar, the fireplace, for my offering of the Dhamma sacrifice. *The self (attā) is the mind.*"

453 Spk: "Just as, after you have worshipped the fire, you enter the Sundarikā River and wash the ashes, soot, and sweat from your body, so for me the Dhamma of the eightfold path is the lake where I bathe thousands of living beings. The lake is limpid (*anāvila*) because, unlike your river which becomes muddy when four or five bathe in it at the same time, the lake of the Dhamma remains limpid and clear even when hundreds of thousands enter it to bathe." On "the bath without water," see v. 198ef and n. 119.

454 Spk suggests several alternative schemes by which the

three terms in pāda a—*sacca*, *dhamma*, and *saṃyama*—can be correlated with the eightfold path: e.g., *sacca* = right speech; *saṃyama* = right action and right livelihood; *dhamma* = the other five factors. Spk explains *brahmacariya* as if it were equivalent to the entire eightfold path (*magga-brahmacariya*), but it seems more likely that here the term was originally intended in the specific sense of celibacy, to be understood as a fourth item alongside the preceding three and not as an umbrella term comprising them.

In pāda b, *the attainment of Brahmā (brahmapatti)*: the attainment of the best (*seṭṭhapatti*). *Based on the middle (majjhesitā)*: avoiding the extremes of eternalism and annihilationism. [Spk-pt: That is, based on the development of the middle way by avoiding all extremes such as sluggishness and restlessness, of which the pair eternalism and annihilationism is merely one instance.]

In pāda c, *the upright ones (ujjubhūtesu)*: the arahants. Spk explains that the *sat* here represents *tvam*, the *-t-* being a mere conjunct consonant (*padasandhi*). Though not as common as its use to convey a first person meaning, the third person demonstrative pronoun is occasionally used with a second person sense.

455 In pāda c, *ajjasatṭhim na dissanti* is glossed by Spk, "they are not seen for six days from today," indicating that *satṭhi* here is an alternative form of *chatṭha*, sixth. Spk-pt: *Ajjasatṭhim* is an accusative used to indicate a continuing passage of time (*accantasamyoge c' etaṃ upayogavacanam*).

456 Spk: As long as the brahmin was affluent, even though his daughters were widows, their parents-in-law allowed them to stay in their husbands' homes. But when he became poor their parents-in-law sent them to their father's home. Then, when he would take his meals, their children would put their hands in his plate and he would not find sufficient room for his own hand.

457 Spk appends a story which relates how the Buddha took the brahmin (after his novice ordination) to King Pasenadi. The king repaid his debts, provided for the welfare of his daughters, and placed his wife in the position of his own grandmother, thereby removing the obstacles to his higher ordination as a bhikkhu.

- 458 This sutta is also found at Sn I, 4 (pp. 12–16), but the prose portion adds the wonder of the sizzling cake described in 7:9. It also has the brahmin request ordination as a bhikkhu and attain arahantship. It must have been a common subject for sermons, as the commentary to it is long and elaborate. It is also included in the *Maha Pirit Pota*, “The Great Book of Protection,” the standard collection of protective suttas used in Sri Lanka.
- 459 Spk: He was called thus because he earned his living by ploughing. This occasion was not an ordinary work day but a special festival which marked the inception of the light-soil sowing (*paṃsuvappa*). Spk gives a detailed account of the preparations and the festival activities.
- 460 Spk: At the food distribution (*parivesanā*) five hundred ploughmen had taken silver vessels, etc., and were sitting while the food was being distributed to them. Then the Buddha arrived and stood in a high place within range of the brahmin, close enough so that they could easily converse.
- 461 Spk: Why did the Blessed One begin with faith? Because this brahmin was reputed to be intelligent (*paññavā*) but was deficient in faith. Thus a talk on faith would be helpful to him. Why is faith called the seed (*saddhā bijaṃ*)? Because it is the foundation of all wholesome qualities. When a seed is planted in the ground, it becomes established by its root and sends up a sprout. Through the root it absorbs the soil’s nutrients and water, and it grows through the stalk in order to yield the grain. Coming to growth and maturity, it finally produces a head bearing many rice grains. So faith becomes established with the root of virtue and sends up the sprout of serenity and insight. Absorbing the nutrients of serenity and insight through the root of virtue, it grows through the stalk of the noble path to yield the crop of the noble fruits. Finally, after coming to growth through six stages of purification, and producing the sap of purification by knowledge and vision, it culminates in the fruit of arahantship bearing many discriminating knowledges and direct knowledges (*anekapaṭisambhidābhīññā*). Therefore it is said, “Faith is the seed.”
- On austerity (*tapā*), see n. 119. Spk: Here sense restraint

- is intended. Wisdom (*paññā*) is insight together with path-wisdom. Just as the brahmin has a yoke and plough, so the Blessed One has the twofold insight and (path-)wisdom.
- Spk devotes several pages to the analogy between path factors and ploughing implements. I adopt the renderings of ploughing terms from GD, p. 9.
- 462 Spk: In some places gentleness (*soracca*) denotes bodily and verbal nontransgression, but this is not intended here. Here the fruit of arahantship is intended, for that is called *soracca* (the abstract noun of *su + rata*) because it finds delight in the good Nibbāna (*sūndare nibbāne ratattā*). What he is saying is this: “By attaining arahantship at the foot of the Bodhi Tree, I am released, and never again must I come under the yoke.”
- 463 Spk explains *yogakkhema* as Nibbāna “because it is secure from the bonds” (*yogehi khemattā*). The four bonds are identical with the four floods, on which see n. 1. For a discussion of the literary history of *yogakkhema*, see EV I, n. to 32.
- To where, having gone, one does not sorrow (*yattha gantvā na socati*). Spk: It goes to the unconditioned state known as Nibbāna, which is the extraction of all the darts of sorrow.
- 464 Spk explains that the phrases “a second time” and “a third time” mean the next day and the day after that. Although the text itself conveys the impression that the Buddha went to the same house for alms three times on the same morning, this would be contrary to proper monastic etiquette, so Spk must be reliable on this point.
- 465 *Pakaṭṭhaka* < Skt *prakarṣaka*, “harasser, disquieter,” from *prakṛṣ*, to trouble, to disturb (SED). Spk glosses with *rasagiddha*, “greedy for tastes.” Spk-pt explains: “He is dragged forward by craving for tastes” (*rasataṇhāya pakaṭṭho*).
- 466 That is, he was afflicted by an illness arisen from the wind humour, one of the three bodily humours according to the ancient Indian system of ayurvedic medicine; on wind as one of the eight causes of illness, see 36:21.
- Spk: The Buddha was prone to occasional gastric ailments as a consequence of his six years of ascetic practices before his enlightenment.
- 467 For a full analysis of the two questions, see 3:24 and

nn. 253, 254. I take *kathaṃ* in pāda d here, and *evaṃ* in v. 678d, to be mere metrical fillers.

- 468 A much more elaborate version of the same encounter is found at Dhp-a IV 7–15, where it forms the background story to Dhp 324; see BL 3:201–5. The story is incorporated into Spk.
- 469 Th-a II 179–80 relates exactly the same story about the elder Jenta (Th 423–28), the son of the king of Kosala’s chaplain. In his youth he was stiff with conceit (*mānatthaddha*, used as a description, not a name), but was humbled by the Buddha with exactly the same exchange of verses as is related here. He became a stream-enterer on hearing the Buddha’s verses, went forth as a bhikkhu, and attained arahantship.
- 470 Spk: He thought, “When a brahmin of high birth like myself has arrived, this ascetic does not show me any special courtesy; therefore he does not know anything.”
- 471 In pāda a, it seems better to read *mānabrūhanā*, with Se and Ee2, as against *mānaṃ brāhmaṇa* in Be and Ee1. The version at Th-a reads *brāhmaṇa* in all three eds. available to me.
- 472 *Evarūpaṃ paramanipaccākāraṃ karoti*. The expression occurs at MN II 120,6, referring to the same kind of action (shown by King Pasenadi towards the Buddha); see too 48:58, which discusses the reason an arahant shows “supreme honour” towards the Buddha and his teaching.
- 473 Spk: He was called Navakammika (“New Works”) because he earned his living by felling timber in the forest, seasoning the wood for construction work, and selling it in the city.
- 474 In pāda b, *ucchinnamūlaṃ* appears often in a stock formula describing the arahant’s liberation from defilements (e.g., 12:35 (II 62,20–63,11); 22:3 (III 10,27, 33); 35:104 (IV 85,9, 14); 54:12 (V 327,26–328,6)); thus the allusion, already obvious, is made explicit by Spk: “The woods of defilements is cut down at its root.” In pāda b, I follow the SS reading *visukkhāṃ*, “dried up,” also adopted by Ee2, over Be and Se *visūkāṃ* and Ee1 *visukāṃ*.
- Spk glosses *nibbanatho* in pāda c with *nikkilesavano*. This involves a pun difficult to reproduce in translation. Literally, *vanatha* means a woods, but the word is often

- used to signify, metaphorically, “the woods of defilements,” particularly craving. Here I have translated *nibbanatha* as “woodless” to preserve the pun. At v. 712, however, where the literal meaning has little bearing on the verse as a whole, I have rendered *nibbanatha* by way of its metaphorical meaning. Analogous puns on *vana* and *vanatha* are at 14:16 (see too II, n. 245), and also at Dhp 283–84 and 344 (which, incidentally, answer Norman’s puzzling observation at EV I, n. to 338, that the canon seems not to include any example of a pun on the double meaning of *vanatha* to match the puns upon *vana*). The Buddha is “dartless” (*visallo*) because he has extracted the dart of craving (see v. 214c).
- 475 In the third line I supply “body” in deference to Spk, which explains the instrumentals as qualifying the body (*kāyavisesanāni*). Spk glosses *sucārurūpaṃ* with *atisundaraṃ*.
- 476 Spk: *The world’s divine lord (lokādhipati)* is Mahābrahmā, *the supreme triple heaven (tidivāṃ anuttaraṃ)* is said with reference to the brahmā world. I translate pādas cd as an assertion based on the v.l. *tasmā* found in some SS and adopted by Ee2 rather than as a question signalled by *kasmā*, the reading in Be, Se, and Ee1.
- 477 Spk explains desires (*kaṅkhā*), delights (*abhinandanā*), and longings (*pajappitā*) as modes of craving (*tanhā*). *The root of unknowing (aññāṇamūla)* is ignorance (*avijjā*). A parallel to this verse is at Nett 24 and Peṭ 17, but with pāda a reading *āsā pihā ca abhinandanā ca*.
- 478 In pāda a, I read *asito* with Be, Se, and Ee2, as against Ee1 *apiho*, “without envy.” Spk takes “my purified vision of all things” to be an allusion to the knowledge of omniscience. In pāda c, it glosses *sivaṃ* with *seṭṭhaṃ*, and *sambodhim anuttaraṃ* with *arahatta*.
- 479 “Mendicant” is a rendering of *bhikkhaka*, which is of course related to *bhikkhu*, a fully ordained Buddhist monk.
- 480 Ee1 *bhikkhavo* in pāda b should be amended to *bhikkhate*. Spk explains *vissaṃ dhammaṃ* in the next pāda as *dug-gandhaṃ akusaladhammaṃ*, “a foul smelling unwholesome state,” assuming that *vissa* < Skt *visra*, raw meat. Spk-pt adds: “It produces a putrid smell, thus it is *vissa*, i.e., foul smelling” (*virūpaṃ gandhaṃ pasavati ti visso duggandho*).

Dhp-a III 393,2 (commenting on the verse at Dhp 266) says: “*Vissa* is an uneven doctrine (*visamaṃ dhammaṃ*); or else, a putrid-smelling state of bodily action, etc. (*vissagandhaṃ vā kāyakammādikaṃ dhammaṃ*), having undertaken which one is not called a bhikkhu.” As Brough points out, however, the original Pāli term is probably derived from Vedic *veśman*, domestic (*Gāndhāri Dharmapada*, pp. 191–92, n. to 67). *Vesma* occurs in Pāli at Ja V 84,17. Uv 32:18, the Skt parallel to the present verse, has *veśmāṃ dharmāṃ*.

In the next verse, in pāda b, I read *brahmacariyavā*, with Se and SS, as against *brahmacariyaṃ* in the other eds. The latter does not seem to fit into the syntax, as it is neither subject nor object of the verb. Since the Buddha here defines a bhikkhu as one who has expelled both merit and evil (*puññaṃ ca pāpaṃ ca bāhitvā*), this means he is equating the real monk solely with the arahant.

481 See n. 453.

482 The name Khomadussa means “linen cloth.” Spk says that the town was given this name because of the prevalence of linen there. From what follows it seems the town was a brahmin enclave in the predominantly khattiya Sakyan republic. In the irate reaction of the brahmins to the Buddha’s arrival on the scene we can detect a note of hostility rooted in caste prejudice.

483 My rendering is not strictly literal but is intended to convey the sense of indignation. Spk: The “rule of order” (*sabhādhammaṃ*, lit. “rule of the council”) was that late-comers should enter through a side entrance so as not to disturb those comfortably settled in their seats. But the Buddha entered from the front, so the brahmins spoke scornfully.

The Buddha picks up on the the word *dhamma*, in the sense of rule, and speaks with reference to the true doctrine. There is also a pun on *sabhā* as council (or meeting hall) and *santo* as the good ones. According to Spk, the Buddha had caused the rain to fall by an act of will to give himself a reason for entering the meeting hall. A clearer example of rain created by psychic power is at 41:4.

### 8. *Vaṅgisaṃyutta*

484 His verses are at Th 1209–79. Vv. 707–57 are parallel to Th 1209–62, but with variant readings and major differences especially in the verses corresponding to vv. 753–57. The verses are collected and translated in Ireland, *Vaṅgisa: An Early Buddhist Poet*. For the resolution of philological problems posed by these verses I have relied largely upon Norman’s notes in EV I.

485 *Cetiya*s are memorial shrines, similar to stūpas, originally made from mounds of earth. ~

Spk: Before the Buddhas arise the shrines such as Aggālava and Gotamaka are the haunts of yakkhas and nāgas, etc., but when Buddhas arise people drive the spirits away and build monasteries there.

486 I translate *anabhirati* as “dissatisfaction,” and the nearly synonymous *arati* as “discontent.” Although the meanings of the two words overlap, *arati* is often glossed in the commentaries as discontent with remote lodgings and with meditation (*pantasenāsanesu c’ eva bhāvanāya ca ukkanthitaṃ*: Spk I 264,29–31 [to 7:17]) or discontent with the Buddha’s Teaching (*sāsane aratiṃ*: Spk I 269,23–24 [to 8:2]). *Anabhirati* usually implies distress caused by sensual passion, often inducing a wish to give up the celibate life and return to the enjoyment of sensual pleasures. In the expression *sabbaloke anabhiratasaññā*, “the perception of nondelight in the entire world,” *anabhirata* is used in a positive sense as the designation for a particular topic of insight meditation (see AN V 111,3–7). The delight (*abhirati*) that Vaṅgisa will arouse in himself is, of course, delight in the holy life, not the unwholesome delight in the five sense objects, a mode of craving.

487 *From the Dark One (kaṇhato)*. Spk: “From the dark faction, the faction of Māra.” Māra is addressed as Kaṇha in the refrain of the verses at MN I 337–38.

488 Spk explains *uggaputtā* in pāda a as the powerful and royal sons of aristocrats (*uggatānaṃ puttā mahesakkhā rājāññabhūtā*). CPD, s.v. *ugga*, says they are members of the *ugga* caste, a mixed caste sprung from a kṣatriya father and a śūdrā mother. Members of this caste, it seems,

served as police, guards, and professional soldiers. Spk glosses *dalhadhammino* as “those of firm bows bearing a teacher’s bow of the maximum size” (*dalhadhanuno uttamapamānaṃ ācariyadhanuṃ dhārayamānā*); see n. 181 above, II, n. 365, and EV I, n. to 1210. With Spk, I take *apalāyinaṃ* as a metrically shortened genitive plural used in apposition to *sahassaṃ*, not as an accusative singular. Spk paraphrases pāda d: *te samantā sarehi parikireyyuṃ*; “they might surround (me) with arrows on all sides.” Although Spk-pt glosses *parikireyyuṃ* with *vijjheyuṃ*, “they might shoot,” the use of the expression *samantā parikirimsu* at Ja VI 592,11-15 clearly shows that *parikireyyuṃ* does not imply shooting. (The wrong spelling *parikaraṃsu* in Ee of Ja should be corrected to *parikirimsu* as in Be: Ja II 372, vv. 2431-35.) The commentary (Ja VI 589,5) glosses the word with *parivārayimsu*, “to accompany (as members of a retinue).”

- 489 I read pāda d with Ee1 as *dhamme s’ amhi patitthito* and take *s’ amhi* to be a conjunct of *so amhi*, with *so* functioning as the first person pronoun, a common enough form in Pāli. Ee2 supports this with its reading *dhamme so amhi patitthito*. The whole expression *dhamme s’ amhi patitthito* would then be a nominative periphrastic construction, with the word order inverted in compliance with the metre. Th 1211 can also support this interpretation if read, as Norman suggests, as *dhamme svamhi*. Be and Se, however, have the accusative *patitthitaṃ*, apparently in apposition to *maṃ* in pāda c. Commenting on the basis of this reading, Spk explains *dhamme samhi* as meaning *sake sāsanaḍḍhamme*, “in my own Dhamma teaching,” with *samhi* understood as the locative singular of *sa* < Skt *sva*. While this interpretation at first sight seems strained, we do find *sehi dhammehi* at Sn 298, glossed by Pj II 319,16 as *sakehi cārittehi*. This shows that the reading accepted by Spk is feasible, though less plausible than the alternative.

Spk connects the simile with this verse thus: “If a thousand archers were to shoot arrows all around, a trained person might take a staff and knock down all the arrows in flight before they strike him, bringing them to his feet. One archer cannot shoot more than one arrow at a time, but these women each shoot five arrows at a time, by way

of form and the other sense objects. If more than a thousand of these were to shoot in such a way, still they would not be able to shake me.”

- 490 Spk explains *maggam* in pāda c as a transformation of case (*liṅgavipallāsa*). Spk: “This statement refers to insight (*vipassanā*); for that is the preliminary phase of the path leading to Nibbāna. His mind delights in his own tender insight called the path leading to Nibbāna.”
- 491 Spk: “I will so act that you will not even see the path I have gone along among the realms of existence, modes of origin, etc.” See vv. 49 (= 105), 479, 494.
- 492 Spk: *Discontent and delight (aratiṅ ca ratiṅ ca)*: discontent with the dispensation [Spk-pt: dissatisfaction with the fulfilment of virtue and the development of serenity and insight] and delight in the cords of sensual pleasure. *Household thoughts (gehasitaṅ ca vitakkaṃ)*: having abandoned in all ways evil thoughts connected with “the household,” i.e., with the five cords of sensual pleasure.
- The next couplet plays upon the double meaning of *vanatha*; see n. 474. Spk glosses *vanathaṃ* as *kilesamahāvanam*, “the great woods of defilements,” and *nibbanatho* as *nikkilesavano*, “without the woods of defilements.” The last word in pāda d is read *arato* in Be, Se, and Ee2, but in Ee1 as *anato*, “uninclined.” Spk (both Be and Se) reads *arato* in the lemma and glosses *taṅhāratirahito*, “devoid of delight on account of craving,” but *anato* and *nati* would also fit the lemma and gloss respectively, as *nati* too is a synonym for *taṅhā*. The reading at Th 1214 is *avanatho*, which expresses virtually the same idea as *nibbanatho*.

- 493 *Kiñci* should be brought into pāda b (as at Th 1215) and connected semantically with *yam* in pāda a. Spk explains *jagatogadham* in pāda b as what exists *within* the earth, e.g., in the realm of the nāgas, but I take the expression in a wider sense, supported by Th-a III 190,4-5, which glosses: “Whatever is mundane, conditioned, included in the three realms of existence.” “Everything impermanent decays (*parijiyati sabbam aniccaṃ*)”—this, says Spk, was “the elder’s great insight” (*mahāvīpassanā*).

- 494 Spk identifies the *upadhi* in pāda a as the “acquisitions” of the aggregates, defilements, and volitional formations; see

n. 21. No explanation is given for the exclusion of “acquisitions as sensual pleasures” (*kāmūpadhi*) which the context seems to allow, indeed even to require. In commenting on pāda b, Spk says *paṭigha*, “the sensed,” comprises odour and taste, while *muta*, “the felt,” denotes the tactile object. Th-a III 190,15-20 inverts the explanation: *paṭigha* is glossed as *phoṭṭhabba*, and *muta* as *gandha-rasa*. The familiar tetrad is *diṭṭha*, *suta*, *muta*, and *viññāta* (see 35:95; IV 73,4-7); the commentaries explain *muta* as comprising odour, taste, and the tactile object, and *viññāta* as mental objects. Norman translates *muta* as thought (its original sense), implying that this tetrad corresponds to the more familiar one, with *paṭigha* assuming the usual role of *muta* and the latter serving in place of *viññāta*. In deference to Spk and Th-a, I prefer to translate the present tetrad in a way that comprises only the five external sense bases and thus as signifying the five cords of sensual pleasure.

495 The readings of pāda ab vary among the different eds. I prefer that of Ee2: *Atha saṭṭhisitā savitakkā/Puthū janatāya adhammaniviṭṭhā*. The metre is irregular Vegavati.

The verse is obscure and evidently challenged the ingenuity of the commentators. Spk paraphrases: “Then many unrighteous thoughts attached to the six sense objects have settled upon the people” (*atha cha ārammaṇanissitā puthū adhammavitakkā janatāya nivīṭṭhā*). This explanation is flawed in two respects: (i) it construes the subject as *vitakkā*, thoughts, when the Pāli reads *savitakkā*, a *bahubbihi* compound denoting persons with thoughts; if we take *sa* here to represent Skt *sva* rather than *saha*, *savitakkā* means those who are led by (or full of) their *own* thoughts; (ii) it explains *saṭṭhi* as *cha*, six, when it properly means sixty. Th-a III 190,28-31 mentions the opinion held by some commentators that *saṭṭhisitā* is an allusion to the sixty-two views of the Brahmajāla Sutta, and the verse does in fact echo the closing simile of that sutta (DN I 45,25-27): “Just as all large sea creatures are caught in the fisherman’s net, so all these speculative thinkers are trapped within this net of sixty-two cases; here they are *caught* whenever they emerge” (*te imeh’ eva dvāsaṭṭhiyā vatthūhi antojālikatā ettha sitā va ummujjamānā ummujjanti*).

In pāda c, *vaggagatassa* should be resolved *vaggagato assa*. Spk takes the line to mean that one should not join the faction of defilements (*kilesavagga*), but I understand it literally. In fact, at Sn 371b we find *vaggagatesu na vaggasāri dhiro*, “Among those who are factious, the wise one does not follow a faction.” Pj II 365,20-24 explains this by reference to the sixty-two speculative views, thus linking it to the present verse. See in this connection GD, p. 217, n. to 371.

Pāda d reads *no pana duṭṭhullabhāni sa bhikkhu*, which Spk-pṭ explains as an injunction not to speak words connected with sensuality (*kāmapaṭisamyuttakathā*). Th 1217 reads here *duṭṭhullagāhi*, “one should not grasp what is corrupt,” which Th-a explains as referring to the grasping of corrupt views.

496 Spk identifies “the peaceful state” (of pāda c) with Nibbāna and paraphrases pāda d thus: “Fully quenched by the full quenching of defilements in dependence on Nibbāna, he awaits the time of his parinibbāna [Spk-pṭ: the time of the Nibbāna element without residue]” (*nibbānaṃ paṭicca kilesaparinibbānena parinibbuto parinibbānakālaṃ [anupādisesanibbānakālaṃ] āgaceti*).

497 Spk states that he prided himself on his learning; however, *paṭibhāna* is used to mean skill in verbal expression and thus probably refers here specifically to Vaṅgīsa’s poetic talent.

498 *Asesaṃ* should be moved from pāda c into pāda b. Spk explains “pathway of conceit” (*mānapathaṃ*) as the object of conceit and the states coexistent with conceit, but it may be just a metaphorical expression for conduct governed by conceit. Spk says he addressed himself as “Gotama” (the Buddha’s clan name) because he is a disciple of the Buddha Gotama, but this is hard to accept; see v. 721 just below where Ānanda is so addressed because he actually was a member of the Gotama clan. I do not know of any other instance of monks addressing themselves (or others) as “Gotama” simply on the ground that they are disciples of the Buddha Gotama.

In the next verse we should twice read *mānahatā* in place of Ee1 *mānatā*. Th-a glosses *mānena hataguṇā*, “with good qualities destroyed by conceit.”

499 Spk explains *maggajino* in pāda b as a “path-conqueror,” i.e., “one who has conquered defilements by the path,” but I follow Norman’s suggestion (at GD, p. 164, n. to 84) that the word is a variant of *maggaññu* (< Skt *mārgajña*), formed by resolution with an epenthetic (*svarabhakti*) vowel rather than by assimilation.

500 Th-a glosses *akhilo* in pāda a with *pañcacetokhilarahito*, “devoid of the five kinds of mental barrenness,” with reference to MN I 101,9–27. The five are doubt and perplexity about the Buddha, Dhamma, Saṅgha, and training, and anger towards one’s co-religionists. This seems preferable to interpreting the word by way of the three *khila*—greed, hatred, and delusion (see n. 84)—as the five *cetokhila* are said to be obstacles to “ardour, exertion, persistence, and striving” and their elimination is thus a prerequisite for strenuous effort.

In pāda d, *vijjāyantakaro* is a syntactical compound, here with the first member an instrumental or ablative; see n. 68. The verse lacks a finite verb, but Th-a says that the verse was spoken by way of self-admonition, and I have therefore supplied imperatives to convey this effect. The verse can be seen as describing a progression: “First be rid of the five obstacles to striving, then be strenuous. By effort abandon the five hindrances and attain purity of mind through concentration. On this basis, develop insight into nonself and abandon conceit. Thereby you will eradicate the taints by knowledge, make an end to suffering, and dwell in the peace of Nibbāna.”

501 Spk: Once, when the Venerable Ānanda was invited to the royal palace to teach the Dhamma to the womenfolk, he brought along Vaṅgisa, then newly ordained, as his companion. When Vaṅgisa saw the women, beautifully attired in their best ornaments, lust infested his mind, and at the first opportunity he revealed his distress to Ānanda. *Vism* 38 (Ppn 1:103), which cites the verses (though in a different sequence), relates that Vaṅgisa had become overpowered by lust when he caught sight of a woman on his alms round soon after going forth. A Skt version of the same story, with the verses, is cited in Enomoto, *CSCS*, pp. 44–45.

502 He addresses Ānanda as “Gotama” because Ānanda was a member of the Gotama clan. Here there is surely a word play on *nibbāpana* (and on *nibbāpehi* in v. 723c) as meaning both the extinguishing of a fire and the attainment of Nibbāna.

503 Vv. 722 and 724–25, though spoken by Ānanda, are included among Vaṅgisa’s verses as Th 1224–26. The “inversion of perception” (*saññāya vipariyesā*) is fourfold: perceiving permanence, happiness, selfhood, and beauty in what is actually impermanent, suffering, nonself, and foul; see AN II 52,4–7.

504 The verse is not found in Th proper, but occurs in the text of Th cited in ThA, though without comment. The idea expressed in pādas ab is at Th 1160–61, ascribed to Mahāmoggallāna.

505 At Sn II, 11 (pp. 58–59) both this verse and the next are included in the Buddha’s advice to his son Rāhula. The meditation on foulness (*asubha*) is the contemplation of the parts of the body, as at 51:20 (V 278,6–14), or the cemetery meditations, as at 46:57–61.

506 The signless (*animitta*), according to Spk, is insight (*vipassanā*), so called because it strips away the “signs” of permanence, etc.

507 The entire sutta is at Sn III, 3 (pp. 78–79).

508 The Buddha’s statement seems partly redundant by making well spoken (*subhāsita*) one among four factors of well-spoken speech. Spk proposes a solution by first defining well-spoken speech in the wider sense as speech that brings benefit, and by then correlating the four factors of well-spoken speech with the four aspects of right speech—being truthful, conducive to harmony, gentle, and meaningful. Well-spoken speech in the narrower sense is identified with speech that promotes harmony. At AN III 243,27–244,6 well-spoken speech is defined by way of five different factors all external to itself: it is spoken at the proper time, is truthful, gently stated, beneficial, and spoken with a mind of lovingkindness.

509 See n. 227.

510 Spk: “‘Truth, indeed, is deathless speech’ (*saccaṃ ve amatā vācā*) means that the Buddha’s speech is similar to the

Deathless because of its goodness (*sādhubhāvena*, Be; or its sweetness, if we read *sādubhāvena* with Se and Ee); or it is deathless because it is a condition for attaining Nibbāna the Deathless." The former explanation indicates that the text is playing upon the two meanings of *amata*, "deathless" (= Nibbāna) and "ambrosia," in Vedic mythology the drink of the immortal gods.

Spk remarks on pādas cd: "Being established in truth they were established in the goal (or the good) of oneself and others; being established in the goal (the good), they were established in the Dhamma. Or else, *sacca* is to be taken as an adjective (= true) qualifying the goal and the Dhamma."

Spk's explanation presupposes that the three nouns—*sacce*, *atthe*, and *dhamme*—are proper locatives and *āhu* an aorist of *honti* (= *ahū*). Based on the work of Lüders, Norman suggests (at EV I, n. to 1229) that *atthe* and *dhamme* were originally nominatives in an Eastern dialect that had the nominative singular in *-e*, and were then mistaken for locatives in the process of "translation" into Pāli. I follow Norman in my rendering of the line. In the BHS version (Uv 8:14) the translation went in the opposite direction: into *satyaṃ* as a nominative and *arthe* and *dharṃe* as locatives.

511 Spk-pt: "Since the Buddha speaks for the sake of security (*khemāya*), his speech is 'secure,' as it is the cause for the arising of security. Thus it is the foremost speech."

512 Spk paraphrases pāda c as if it contained an implicit verb *hoti* and treats pāda d as an independent sentence with *paṭibhānaṃ* as subject. It seems more fitting, however, to take *nigghoso* in pāda c as the subject of *udirayi* and *paṭibhānaṃ* as its object, and I translate accordingly. Spk explains the simile: "The elder's sweet voice, as he teaches the Dhamma, is like the voice of a myna bird when, having tasted a sweet ripe mango, it strikes up a breeze with its wings and emits a sweet sound." Spk glosses the verb with *uṭṭhahati*, and paraphrases with an intransitive sense: "Inspired discourse rises up (from him) endlessly, like waves from the ocean." This implies that Spk reads *udiy-**yati*, the Be reading of Th 1232.

513 The Uposatha is the Buddhist "observance day," held in accordance with the phases of the moon. The major Uposathas occur on the full-moon and new-moon days, the fifteenth of the fortnight (except six times per year—two for each of the three seasons of the Indian calendar—when the Uposatha falls on the new-moon day of a shorter, fourteen-day fortnight). On these days the bhikkhus normally gather to recite the Pātimokkha, the code of monastic rules. At the end of the annual rains residence (*vassāvāsa*), however, the recital of the rules is replaced by a ceremony called the Pavāraṇā, the Invitation, at which each bhikkhu in order of seniority invites (*pavāreti*) the other bhikkhus in his fraternity to point out any misconduct on his part.

514 On the Buddha as the originator of the path, see 22:58.

515 The eulogy of Sāriputta is at 2:29; see too n. 184. The wheel-turning monarch (*rājā cakkavatti*) is the ideal world-ruler of Buddhist tradition; see DN III 59–63 and MN III 172–77.

516 On the triple knowledge (*tevijjā*) and the six direct knowledges (*chalabhiññā*), see n. 395. Those liberated in both ways (*ubhatobhāgavimutta*) are arahants who attain arahantship along with mastery over the formless meditative attainments. Those liberated by wisdom (*paññāvimutta*) are arahants who attain the goal without mastering the formless meditations; for formal definitions see MN I 477,25–478,1, and 12:70 (II 123,26–124,2).

517 On the wheel-turning monarch see n. 515. Spk explains that the Buddha is *the victor in battle* (*vijitasāṅgāmaṃ*) because he has won the battle against lust, hatred, and delusion, and because he has triumphed over the army of Māra. He is *the caravan leader* (*satthāvāha*) because he leads beings across the desert of saṃsāra on the chariot of the Noble Eightfold Path.

518 Spk: Nibbāna is called "inaccessible to fear" (*akutobhayaṃ*, lit. "no fear from anywhere") because there is no fear from any quarter *in* Nibbāna, or because there is no fear from any quarter *for one who has attained* Nibbāna. More typically, *akutobhaya* is used as a personal epithet of the Buddha or an arahant, as at Dh 196, Th 289, and Thi 333; see EV I,

- n. to 289. Even in the present case we cannot be certain that the expression is not used in apposition to the Buddha rather than to Nibbāna, as both are accusative singulars, but I follow Spk.
- 519 On *nāga* see n. 84. Spk explains the ambiguous expression *isinam isisattamo* as “the seventh seer of the seers beginning with Vipassi,” referring to the lineage of the seven Buddhas. Spk-pṭ offers, besides this explanation, an alternative based on *sattama* as the superlative of *sant*: “He is the best, the highest, the supreme (*sattamo uttaro* [sic: read *uttamo?*] *seṭṭho*) of seers including paccekabuddhas, Buddhist disciples, and outside seers.” I agree with Norman that this second alternative is more likely to be correct; see EV I, n. to 1240.
- 520 The contrast is between *pubbe parivitakkita* and *ṭhānaso paṭibhanti*. Spk explains that the Buddha asked this question because other bhikkhus had been criticizing Vaṅgisa, thinking that he neglected study and meditation and passed all his time composing verses. The Master wanted to make them recognize the excellence of his spontaneous ingenuity (*paṭibhānasampatti*).
- 521 Spk: *The deviant course of Māra’s path (ummaggapatham Mārassa)* refers to the emergence of the hundreds of defilements, called a path because they are the path into the round of existence.
- On barrenness of mind (*khila*) see n. 500. In pāda d, I read *asitam bhāgaso pavibhajjam*, with Se and Ee1 & 2. Be reads *pavibhajam*. Spk glosses as *vibhajantam*, an accusative present participle, but Norman suggests *pavibhajjam* may be an absolutive with *-m* added, and Spk mentions a v.l. *pavibhajja*, a clear absolutive. Spk paraphrases: “who analyses the Dhamma by way of such groups as the establishments of mindfulness,” etc. The explanation sounds contrived, but it is difficult to determine the original meaning.
- 522 In pāda c, Be reads *tasmim ce* in text, while Ee2 has *tasmim ca*, which Spk (Be) reads in the lemma (but not in the text); the latter is the reading at Th 1243. Norman, on metrical grounds, suggests amending the latter to *tamhi ca* or *tasmim[ṃ] ca*. Se and Ee1 have *tasmim te*, which Spk (Se) has

in the lemma. Spk glosses with *tasmim tena akkhāte amate* (Be and Se concur). Since here the aorist *akkhāsi* can be taken as either second person or third person, I translate on the supposition that the second person is intended, which is consistent with *carasi* in the previous verse. Th 1242 has *carati*, which justifies the translation of the parallel verse in that work as a third person. I also take *te* to be the enclitic for *tayā* rather than *tena*. I understand the clause to be a true locative rather than a locative absolute and take “the Deathless” here to be a contraction of “the path to the Deathless,” alluded to in pāda b. This has the support of Spk-pṭ, which says: *amate akkhāte ti amatāvahe dhamme desite*, “In that Deathless declared’ means in that Dhamma taught (by you) which brings the Deathless.”

- 523 [He] saw the transcendence of all stations (*sabbaṭṭhitinam atikkamam addasa*). Spk: “He saw Nibbāna, the transcendence of all the standpoints of views and of all the stations of consciousness.” Six standpoints of views (*ditṭhiṭṭhāna*) are mentioned at MN I 135,27–136,2; eight at Paṭi I 138,14–26. Four stations of consciousness (*viññānaṭṭhiti*) are at DN III 228,6–13, seven at DN III 253,9–20; see too 22:54.

Spk: *The chief matter (agga)* is the supreme Dhamma; or if the v.l. *agge* is adopted, the meaning is: at the beginning, first of all. *The five (dasaddhānam*, lit. “half of ten”) are the bhikkhus of the group of five (i.e., the first five disciples). Thus the meaning is: He taught the chief Dhamma to the five bhikkhus, or he taught the five bhikkhus at the beginning (of his ministry).

- 524 The elder’s first name is spelled *Aññāsi* in Be and Ee1; here I follow Se and Ee2. He was one of the first five disciples and the very first to obtain comprehension of the Dhamma; it was for this reason that he was given the name “*Aññā*” (or “*Aññāsi*”), which means “understanding” (or “understood”). See 56:11 (V 424,8–11). According to Spk, the “very long absence” was twelve years, during which he dwelt on the bank of the Mandākini Lotus Pond in the Chaddanta Forest in the Himalayas, a dwelling place favoured by paccekabuddhas. He was fond of seclusion and thus rarely joined the community.
- 525 *Enlightened in succession to the Buddha (buddhānubuddho)*

Spk: First the Teacher awakened to the Four Noble Truths and after him the Elder Koṇḍañña awakened to them. The pleasant dwellings (*sukhavihārā*) are the “pleasant dwellings in this present life” (*diṭṭhadhammasukhavihārā*), i.e., the jhānas and fruition attainment; the seclusions (*vivekā*) are the three seclusions (of *body* through physical solitude, of *mind* through jhāna, and *seclusion from the acquisitions* by destruction of all defilements). *Buddhānubuddhasāvokā* is used in a more general sense in 16:5 (II 203,7) with reference to the old generation of enlightened monks.

- 526 In pāda c we should read *buddhadāyādo* with Be, Se, and Ee2, as against Ee1 *buddhasāvoko*. Spk states that although only four *abhiññās* are mentioned, the elder possessed all six. He had come to take leave of the Buddha as he realized the time for his parinibbāna was approaching. After this meeting he returned to the Himalayas and passed away in his hut. The elephants were the first to mourn his death and honoured him by escorting his body in procession across the Himalayas. Then the devas built a casket for the body and passed it up through the various celestial realms so the devas and brahmās could pay final homage to him, after which the casket was returned to earth for the cremation. The remains were brought to the Buddha, who placed them in a cetiya, “and even today, it is said, that cetiya still stands.”
- 527 In all eds. of SN and Th 1251 the text here reads *sabbaṅgasampannaṃ* in pāda a and *anekākārasampannaṃ* in pāda c, both accusative singulars set in apposition to the Buddha. This reading is doubtlessly ancient, for it is commented on as such by both Spk and Th-a. It is puzzling, however, that after having been described as “perfect in all respects” the Buddha should then be described as “perfect in many qualities”—almost as if his excellence is being diminished. I have accepted VĀT’s ingenious solution to this problem: amending the compound in pāda c to a nominative plural, *anekākārasampannā*, which then becomes a description, altogether apt, of the triple-knowledge arahants attending on the Buddha. These are the subject of *payirūpāsanti*, while *Gotamaṃ* remains the object,

still qualified as *sabbaṅgasampannaṃ*. Note that at Th 1158c *anekākārasampanne* is used with reference to Sāriputta on the occasion of his parinibbāna; significantly, that verse mirrors v. 610 (SN I 158 = DN II 157), recited at the Buddha’s parinibbāna, extolling the Master as *sabbākāra-varūpete*, “perfect in all excellent qualities.”

- 528 Vv. 753–57 are considerably more compressed than the partly parallel verses at Th 1253–67. For a concise comparison of the two versions, see Ireland, *Vaṅgisa*, pp. 7–8.
- 529 *Kāveyyamattā*, “drunk on poetry,” occurs at v. 470a. Spk relates here the story of Vaṅgisa’s first meeting with the Buddha, also found at Dh-p-a IV 226–28; see BL 3:334–36. According to this story, Vaṅgisa had been a wandering brahmin who earned his living by tapping the skulls of dead men and declaring their place of rebirth. When he met the Buddha, the Master presented him with several skulls, including the skull of an arahant. Vaṅgisa could guess correctly the rebirth of the deceased owners of the other skulls, but when he came to the arahant he was baffled. He entered the Saṅgha for the purpose of learning how to determine an arahant’s realm of rebirth, but soon thereafter discarded this aim when he realized the holy life was lived for a nobler purpose.
- 530 If this verse seems narrowly monastic in focus, its counterpart Th 1256–57 corrects the imbalance by mentioning all four classes of disciples:

Indeed, for the good of many  
The Tathāgatas arise,  
For the women and men  
Who practise their teaching.

For their sake indeed  
The sage attained enlightenment,  
For the bhikkhus and bhikkhunīs  
Who have reached and seen the fixed course.

Pāda d reads: *ye niyāmagataddasā*. Spk glosses: *ye niyāmagatā c’ eva niyāmadasā ca*; “who have reached the fixed course and seen the fixed course.” Spk-pt: “The

bhikkhus and bhikkhunīs who are noble disciples of the Buddha have ‘reached the fixed course’ by abiding in the fruit and have ‘seen the fixed course’ by abiding in the path.” *Niyāma* here no doubt represents *sammattaniyāma*, “the fixed course of rightness,” i.e., the supramundane path; see 25:1–10 and III, n. 268.

- 531 Spk: Although the divine ear is not mentioned it should be included. Thus he was a great disciple who had attained the six *abhiññās*.

### 9. *Vanasamyutta*

- 532 In pāda c, since *vinayassu* is a middle voice, second person imperative, *jano*, though nominative, may function as a vocative lengthened to fit the metre. Spk seems to support this with its gloss: *tvam jano aññasmim jane chandarāgam vinayassu*; “you, a person, remove desire and lust for other people.” The sentiment of this verse is echoed by Th 149–50.

- 533 I read pādas ab with Ee1: *Aratiṃ pajahāsi so sato/Bhavāsi sataṃ taṃ sārāyāma*. Norman understands the metre as irregular Vaitāliya (personal communication). Be has the same but without the *so* in pāda a. The *so* is probably a third person demonstrative used with a second person verb, a construction already encountered at v. 647c; see n. 454. VĀT prefers a reading found among SS, *Aratiṃ pajahāsi sato bhavāsi/Bhavataṃ sataṃ taṃ sārāyāma*, but since Spk and Spk-pṭ do not comment on *bhavataṃ* it seems this word was not in the texts available to the commentators; Ee2 reads as above but omits *bhavataṃ*. The verbs *pajahāsi* and *bhavāsi*, which Spk glosses with the imperatives *pajaha* and *bhava*, conform to the criteria of the subjunctive, rare and archaic in Pāli (see Geiger, *Pāli Grammar*, §123). Se reads the last verb as *sādayāma*, but *sārāyāma* in the other eds. makes better sense as the subjunctive causative of *sarati*, to remember > to remind (see Geiger, *Pāli Grammar*, §126).

Pāda b is particularly obscure and the commentators seem to have been unsure how to handle it. Spk offers two alternative interpretations of *sataṃ taṃ sārāyāma*: “Let

us also remind you, a mindful one, a wise one [Spk-pṭ: to dispel worldly thoughts whenever they arise]; or, ‘Let us remind you of the Dhamma of the good ones [Spk-pṭ: of the Dhamma of the good persons for the removal of defilements]’ (*satimantam paṇḍitam taṃ mayam pi [yathā-uppannam vitakkaṃ vinodanāya] sārāyāma, sataṃ vā dhammam [sappurisānam kilesavigamanadhammam] mayam taṃ sārāyāma*).” I have bypassed both alternatives and adopted VĀT’s suggestion that “you” is implicit and *taṃ* is “that,” representing the way of the good. In pāda c we should read *duttaro* over Ee1 *duruttamo*.

- 534 Spk: It is said that this bhikkhu was an arahant. After returning from a distant alms round he was fatigued and lay down to rest, but he did not actually fall asleep (even though the text says he did!). Thinking that he was lethargic and was neglecting his meditation practice, the devatā came to reprove him.
- 535 Spk is unsure whether to ascribe the verses that follow to the devatā or to the bhikkhu and therefore proposes two alternative interpretations. All four printed eds. indicate a change of voice before this verse, and thus I translate on the assumption that the bhikkhu is the speaker. Further, Spk takes the implicit subject of *tape* to be *divāsoppam*, and explains the sense, “Why should sleeping by day trouble an arahant bhikkhu?”; but as the optative *tape* can be either second or third person singular, it seems more fitting to take the implicit subject to be the devatā, addressed by the elder in the second person, “Why (should you) trouble...?”
- 536 Spk: “That knowledge” (*taṃ ñāṇam*) is the knowledge of the Four Noble Truths. In pāda a of the next verse I read *bhetvā* with Se and Ee1 & 2, as against *chetvā* in Be.
- 537 It seems that while the preceding two verses describe the arahant, this verse describes the *sekha*, the trainee, who is still striving to attain Nibbāna.
- 538 Spk glosses *cheta* with *migaluddaka*, a deer-hunter. He had gone out that morning to hunt and was pursuing a deer when he came upon the elder meditating in the woods. The elder set about teaching him the Dhamma, but though

the hunter looked with his eyes and listened with his ears, his mind still ran in pursuit of the deer.

- 539 Geiger has caught the sense: "It seemed to the devatā that discontent with the monastic life had overcome the bhikkhus and they had given it up" (GermTr, p. 311, n. 2). On *arati* see n. 486.
- 540 Spk: Just as deer, wandering in the foothills or woodland thickets, wander wherever they find pleasant pastureland and dangers are absent, and have no attachment to their parents' property or a family heirloom, so the homeless bhikkhus, without fixed abode, wander wherever they can easily find suitable climate, food, companionship, lodgings, and Dhamma-teachings, and have no attachment to the property of their teacher and preceptor or to a family heirloom.
- 541 Spk: This sutta takes place shortly after the Buddha's parinibbāna. The Venerable Mahākassapa had enjoined Ānanda to attain arahantship before the first Buddhist council convened, scheduled to begin during the rains retreat. Ānanda had gone to the Kosala country and entered a forest abode to meditate, but when the people found out he was there they continually came to him lamenting over the demise of the Master. Thus Ānanda constantly had to instruct them in the law of impermanence. The devatā, aware that the council could succeed only if Ānanda attended as an arahant, came to incite him to resume his meditation.
- 542 At Th 119 the verse is ascribed to one Vajjiputtaka Thera but is not found among Ānanda's own verses in Th.  
All four eds. read pāda b: *Nibbānaṃ hadayasmiṃ opiya*. At Th 119 the last word is read *osiya*, and we should adopt this reading here. I take it as absolutive of the verb *oseti* proposed by Norman at EV I, n. to 119; see too n. 223 above. Spk supports this with its gloss *pakkhipitvā*, "having placed." Spk explains that one deposits Nibbāna in one's heart by way of function (*kiccato*) and by way of object (*ārammanato*): by way of function when one arouses energy with the thought, "I will attain Nibbāna"; by way of object when one sits absorbed in a meditative attainment having Nibbāna as its object (i.e., in *phalasamāpatti*, the attainment of fruition).

In pāda d, *biḷibiḷikā* is explained by Spk-pṭ as purposeless activity (*atthavirahitā pavattā kiriyā*). The devatā refers thus to Ānanda's talk with the lay people because it does not conduce to his attainment of the goal of the holy life.

- 543 Her name Jālini, "Ensnarer," is used as an epithet for *taṇhā* at v. 460a; see too n. 278 and AN II 211,31. According to Spk, she had been his chief consort in their immediately preceding existence in the Tāvatiṃsa heaven.
- 544 Spk: They are not *duggata* in the sense that they live in a miserable realm (*duggati*), for they dwell in a fortunate realm enjoying their success. They are miserable because of their conduct, for when they expire they might be reborn even in hell.

In pāda b, *sakkāya*, "identity," is the compound of the five aggregates of clinging, which are all suffering (*dukkha*) because of their impermanence. Spk explains that the celestial maidens are "established in identity" (*sakkāyasmim patitṭhitā*) for eight reasons: because of lust, hatred, delusion, views, the underlying tendencies, conceit, doubt, and restlessness. These are the same as the eight ways beings are "established in what can be expressed"; see n. 35. On *sakkāya* see 22:105, and on the devas being included in *sakkāya*, 22:78 (III 85,26–28).

In pāda d, Be, Se, and Ee2 read *devakaññāhi patṭhitā*, "desired by celestial maidens," and Ee1 *devakaññābhipattikā*. Since *p/s* confusion is not uncommon in the texts (see EV I, n. to 49), we can infer that the original reading is the one found in SS, *devakaññābhisattikā*, the reading also preferred by CPD. *Abhisattika* is an adjective formed from the past participle of *abhisajjati*, "to be attached to." I am thankful to VĀT for pointing this out to me.

- 545 He is not identified in Spk, and DPPN records nothing about him except what is found in the present sutta.
- 546 I follow the reading of this verse and the next proposed by Alsdorf (in *Die Āryā-Strophen des Pali-Kanons*, pp. 319–20), but with modifications suggested by VĀT (namely, changing Alsdorf's long vocative Nāgadattā to the nominative, and the four long vocatives in the second verse to accusatives, as in the printed eds.):

*Kāle pavissa gāmaṃ/Nāgadatto divā ca āgantoā  
ativelacāri samsattho/gahaṭṭhehi samānasukhadukkho.  
Bhāyāmi Nāgadattaṃ/suppagabbhaṃ kulesu vinibaddhaṃ,  
mā h' eva maccurañño/balavato antakassa vasam esi!*

“Entering the village too early and returning too late in the day” and “associating closely with lay people and monks in a worldly way” are two of five factors said to lead to a bhikkhu’s falling away from the higher training (AN III 116,27–117,7). The meaning of the compound *samānasukhadukkha* is explained at 22:3 (III 11,5–6), though the compound itself does not occur there. The same compound is used at DN III 187,11–15 in a positive sense as a characteristic of a true friend.

- 547 Spk: He had received a meditation subject from the Buddha and entered a woodland thicket. The next day a family gave him alms and offered to provide him with regular support. Thereby he attained arahantship and continued to dwell in the same place enjoying the bliss of fruition attainment. The devatā (a female) was not aware of the elder’s attainment and thought he had formed an intimate relationship with the mistress of the family. Therefore she came in order to reproach him. Neither Spk nor Spk-pt comments on the rare expression *kulagharāṇi*.
- 548 The antelope (*vātamiḡa*, lit. “wind-deer”) is the subject of Ja No. 14. Spk: As an antelope in the woods becomes frightened by the sound of the wind rustling the leaves, so is it with one frightened by sounds (i.e., by rumours). The practice (*vata*) of one who is fickle-minded (*lahucitta*, lit. “light-minded”) does not succeed; but this elder, being an arahant, was one with a successful practice.
- 549 An expanded version of this sutta is found at Dh-p-a III 460–62; see BL 3:182–83.  
Spk: The clamour (*nigghosasadda*) of instruments (*turiya*; Spk-pt: of drums, conch shells, cymbals, lutes, etc.); of gongs (*tālita*; Spk-pt: of things that are struck in rhythm); and of music (*vādita*; Spk-pt: of lutes, flutes, horns, etc.). See too n. 343.
- 550 Spk: “Many are those who yearn for your state—a forest-dwelling elder clad in rag-robles, subsisting on almsfood,

going on uninterrupted alms round, with few wishes, content, etc.” Spk glosses *saggagāminam* as “those going to heaven and those (already) gone there.”

- 551 *Apposukko tunhībūto saṅkasāyati*. The expression occurs also at 21:4 (II 277,12) and 35:240 (IV 178,1–2); see above n. 54. Spk: He attained arahantship and reflected, “I have attained the goal for the sake of which I did the recitation, so why continue with it?” Then he passed the time in the bliss of fruition attainment.
- 552 The five-pāda verse is unusual. The sense requires that in pāda b we read *na samāgamimha*; though the printed eds. do not include *na*, the suggested reading is found in Burmese mss referred to in the notes of Ee1 & 2. Spk explains *virāgena*, dispassion, as the noble path. In pāda d, *aññāyanikkhepanam* is a syntactical compound; see n. 68. Spk takes *aññāya* as absolutive (= *jānitvā*), but it could also be instrumental.
- 553 In pāda a, I read the verb as *khajjasi* with Be, Se, and Ee2, as against Ee1 *majjasi*, “intoxicated with.” Careless attention (*ayoniso manasikāra*) is traditionally explained as attending to things as permanent, pleasurable, self, and beautiful; careful attention (*yoniso manasikāra*), as attending to their true characteristics—impermanence, suffering, nonself, and foulness.
- 554 An identical story, including the verses, is at Ja No. 392 (III 307–10), with the Bodhisatta in the role of the bhikkhu.  
Spk: When she saw the bhikkhu sniff the lotus, the devatā thought: “Having received a meditation subject from the Buddha and entered the forest to meditate, this bhikkhu is instead meditating on the scent of flowers. If his craving for scent increases it will destroy his welfare. Let me draw near and reproach him.”
- 555 Spk: *Vañṇena* (in pāda c): *kāraṇena*. See PED, s.v. *vaṇṇa* (11), and v. 806a below.
- 556 All four eds. read, in pāda c, *ākhiṇṇakammanto*, which Spk glosses *aparissuddhakammanto*, “of impure deed.” But SS read *akhiṇa-*, *ākhiṇa-*, and *akkhīṇa-*, which is acknowledged by Spk as a v.l. and glossed *kakkhaḷakammanto*, “of rough deed.” Spk (Be) reads *akhiṇakammanto*, Spk (Se) *akkhīṇakammanto*, which represents more correctly initial *ā* + *kh*.

That this reading is to be preferred to *ākiṇṇa-* is confirmed by v. 798a, where *ākhiṇṇaluddo* would certainly make much better sense than the given reading *ākiṇṇaluddho*. See Norman, "Two Pāli Etymologies," *Collected Papers*, 2:78–79.

- 557 In pāda b we should read *bhatakāmhase*, as in Be, Se, and Ee2. Spk: The devatā, it is said, thought: "This bhikkhu might become negligent, thinking he has a deity looking after his welfare. I won't accept his proposal."

#### 10. *Yakkhasamyutta*

- 558 Spk: This was the yakkha who dwelt on Inda's Peak. Sometimes a peak is named after a yakkha, sometimes a yakkha after a peak.
- 559 Spk glosses *sajjati* in pāda d with *laggati tiṭṭhati*, "sticks, persists," apparently taking *sajjati* as equivalent to Skt *sajyate* (see MW, s.v. *sañj* (2)). But the word may be a passive representing Skt *srjyati* for which MW (s.v. *srj*) lists as meanings "to create, procreate, beget, produce." I translate on the assumption that this is the original derivation. See too PED, s.v. *sajati* (1).
- Spk says that this yakkha was a personalist (*puggalavādi*) who held the view that a being is produced in the womb at a single stroke (*ekappahāren' eva satto mātukucchismim nibhattati*). The Buddha's answer is intended to refute the yakkha's belief by showing that a being develops gradually (*anupubbena pana vaḍḍhati*).
- 560 The Pāli terms refer to the different stages in the formation of the embryo. Spk: The *kalala* is the size of a drop of oil placed on the tip of a thread made from three strands of wool. After a week *from the kalala comes the abbuda*, which is the colour of meat-washing water. After another week, *from the abbuda the pesi is produced*, which is similar to molten tin [Spk-pt: in shape, but in colour it is pink]. After still another week, *from the pesi the ghana arises*, which has the shape of a chicken egg. In the fifth week, *from the ghana emerge the limbs*: five pimples appear, the rudiments of the arms, legs, and head. But the head-hairs, body-hairs, and nails are not produced until the forty-second week.
- 561 Spk: This yakkha, it is said, belonged to Māra's faction

- (*mārapakkhika-yakkha*). His verse parallels Māra's reproach to the Buddha at v. 474, and the Buddha's reply echoes v. 475. Spk-pt explains the purport to be that the wise man's compassion and sympathy are not tainted by worldly affection.
- 562 Spk glosses *vaṇṇena* with *kāraṇena* (as in v. 796c; see n. 555), and Spk-pt glosses *yena kena ci* with *gahaṭṭhena vā pabbajitena vā*, "with a householder or one gone forth," thus separating it from *vaṇṇena* and treating it as an expression of personal reference. The purport of the Buddha's verses is that a wise man should not take to instructing others if he is at risk of becoming attached, but he may do so out of compassion when his mind is purified and his sympathy is not tainted by worldly affection.
- 563 This sutta is also at Sn II, 5 (pp. 47–49) and commented on at Pj II 301–5. The name of this yakkha means "Needle-hair"; he was called thus because his body was covered with needle-like hairs. According to Spk, he had been a bhikkhu under the Buddha Kassapa but was unable to attain any distinction. During the time of the Buddha Gotama he was reborn as a yakkha in the rubbish dump at the entrance to Gayā village. The Buddha saw that he had the potential for attaining the path of stream-entry and went to his haunt in order to teach him. His haunt, the Ṭaṅkita Bed, was made of a stone slab mounted on four other stones.
- 564 Spk: He spoke thus thinking, "One who gets frightened and flees when he sees me is a sham ascetic (*samaṇaka*); one who does not get frightened and flee is an ascetic (*samaṇa*). This one, having seen me, will get frightened and flee."
- 565 Spk: The yakkha assumed a frightful manifestation, opened his mouth wide, and raised his needle-like hairs all over his body. His touch is "evil" (*pāpaka*) and should be avoided like excrement, fire, or a poisonous snake. When the Buddha said this, Sūciloma became angry and spoke as follows.
- 566 In all eds. of SN, and most eds. of Sn, as well as their respective commentaries, vv. 808d, 809d read: *Kumārakā dhaṅkam iv' ossajanti*. A v.l. *vaṅkam* (in place of *dhaṅkam*) is

found in several mss of Sn (vv. 270–71) and has been incorporated into Sn (Ee1). *Dhaṅkam* (< Skt *dvāṅksam*) was certainly the reading known to the commentators, for both Spk and Pj II 303,22 foll. gloss the word with *kākam*, crow, which they would not have done if *vaṅkam* was the reading. Spk glosses *ossajanti* with *kipanti*, and explains the simile: “Little boys bind a crow by its feet with a long cord, tie one end of the cord around their fingers, and release the crow. After the crow has gone some distance, it falls down again at their feet.”

Spk paraphrases the question thus: “Whence do evil thoughts rise up and toss the mind?” (*pāpavitakkā kuto samuṭṭhāya cittaṃ ossajanti*). This seems to separate *mano* and *vitakkā* and to treat *mano* as accusative. I prefer to retain *manovitakkā* as a compound (as is clearly the case at v. 34b) and to see the object of *ossajanti* as merely implicit, namely, *oneself*, the very source from which the thoughts arise, as v. 810a asserts with the expression *attasambhūtā*.

Norman, who also accepts *dhaṅkam*, discusses the problem at GD, p. 200, n. to 270–71. For an alternative rendering based on the reading *vaṅkam*, see Ñāṇananda, SN-Anth 2:13, 89–90. The Skt version cited at Ybhūs 11.1 reads *kumārakā dhātrim ivāśrayante*, “as little boys depend on a wet-nurse” (Enomoto, CSCS, p. 59).

567 *Itonidānā*. Spk: “This individual existence (*attabhāva*) is their source; they have sprung up from this individual existence. As boys at play toss up a crow, so do evil thoughts rise up from this individual existence and toss the mind [Spk-pt: by not giving an opening for wholesome states of mind to occur].”

Spk-pt: In the application of the simile, the evil thoughts are like the boys at play; this world of our individual existence is like the world in which the boys have arisen; the mind is like the crow; and the fetter (*saṃyojana*) which follows one to a distance is like the long thread tied around the crow’s feet.

568 *Like the trunk-born shoots of the banyan tree (nigrodhasseva khandhajā)*. The banyan tree, and other related species of fig trees, “develop from their branches aerial roots that may reach the ground and thicken into ‘pillar-roots’ or

subsidiary trunks. The continually expanding system of new trunks, all connected through the branches, may support a crown up to 2,000 feet in circumference” (Emeneau, “The Strangling Figs in Sanskrit Literature,” p. 346). Emeneau quotes Milton’s *Paradise Lost*, IX, 1100–11, “the *locus classicus* on these trees in English literature”:

The Figtree ... spreads her Armes  
Braunching so broad and long, that in the ground  
The bended Twigs take root, and Daughters grow  
About the Mother Tree, a Pillard shade  
High overarch’t, and echoing Walks between....

*Like a māluvā creeper stretched across the woods (māluvā va vitatā vane)*. Spk: “When the *māluvā* creeper grows by supporting itself against a particular tree, it weaves itself around that tree again and again and spreads over it from bottom to top and from top to bottom, so that it stands suspended and stretched out. In a similar way the manifold defilements of sensual desire cling to the objects of sensual desire, or the manifold beings cling to the objects of sensual desire on account of those defilements of sensual desire.” The point, rather, seems to be that sensual desire spreads from object to object just as the creeper stretches itself out in the woods by spreading from tree to tree. For more on the *māluvā* creeper, see MN I 306–7, AN I 202,32–34 and 204,23–205,4, and Dh 162, 334.

569 Spk paraphrases: “Those who understand their source of this individual existence *dispel it*, that is, with the truth of the path, they dispel the truth of the origin (= craving), which is the source of the truth of suffering that consists in this individual existence. By driving away the truth of the origin, *they cross this hard-to-cross flood* of defilements, *uncrossed before* in this beginningless *saṃsāra* even in a dream, *for no renewed existence*, for the sake of the truth of cessation (= Nibbāna), which is called ‘no renewed existence’ (*apunabbhavāya*). Thus with this verse the Master reveals the Four Noble Truths, bringing the discourse to its climax in arahantship. At its conclusion, Sūciloma was established in the fruit of stream-entry. And since stream-

enterers do not live on in monstrous bodies, simultaneously with his attainment his needle-hairs all fell out and he obtained the appearance of an earth-deity (*bhumma-devatāparihāra*)."

- 570 Spk glosses *sukham edhati* in pāda a as *sukham paṭilabhati*, "obtains happiness." CPD points out (s.v. *edhati*) that this interpretation is probably a misunderstanding stemming from the supposition that *sukham* is a direct object of the verb rather than an adverbial accusative. The original meaning appears in the commentarial gloss on the expression *sukhedhito* as *sukhasamvaddhito*. See too EV I, n. to 475.

Spk glosses *suve seyyo* in pāda c as *suve suve seyyo, niccam eva seyyo*; "It is better morrow upon morrow, it is always better."

- 571 Spk: *Ahiṃsāya*, "in harmlessness," means "in compassion and in the preliminary stage of compassion" [Spk-pt: that is, the access to the first *jhāna* produced by the meditation on compassion]. *Mettaṃ so*, "who has lovingkindness," means "he (so) develops lovingkindness (*mettaṃ*) and the preliminary stage of lovingkindness." [Spk-pt: He (so) is the person developing meditation on compassion.]

Evidently Spk and Spk-pt take *so* in pāda c to be the demonstrative counterpart of *yassa* in pāda a, with an implicit transitive verb *bhāveti* understood. While the exact meaning of *mettaṃ so* (or *mettaṃso*) is problematic, I prefer to take pāda c as an additional relative clause, the relatives being resolved only in pāda d by the clearly demonstrative *tassa*. Spk offers an alternative interpretation of *mettaṃso* as a compound of *mettā* and *aṃsa*, glossed as *koṭṭhāsa*, "portion": *mettā aṃso etassā ti mettaṃso*; "one for whom lovingkindness is a portion (of his character) is *mettaṃso*." Mp IV 71,9 glosses *mettaṃso*: *mettāyamānacitta-koṭṭhāso hutvā*; "having become one for whom a loving mind is a portion"; see too It-a I 95,13-15. Brough remarks that *mitrisa* (in G-Dhp 198) "appears to have been interpreted by the Prakrit translator as equivalent to [Skt] *maitri asya*" (*Gāndhārī Dharmapada*, p. 242, n. 198).

Spk-pt: Because of his own hating mind someone might nurture enmity even towards an arahant who lacks meditation on lovingkindness and compassion. But no one

could nurture enmity towards one who is endowed with liberation of mind through lovingkindness and compassion. So powerful is the meditation on the divine abodes (*evaṃ mahiddhikā brahmavihāra-bhāvanā*).

- 572 The background story, related in Spk, is also found at Dhp-a IV 18-25, which includes the verses as well; see BL 3:207-11. In brief: Sānu was a devout novice who, on reaching maturity, had become dissatisfied with the monk's life and had returned to his mother's house intending to disrobe. His mother, after pleading with him to reconsider his decision, went to prepare a meal for him, and just then a female *yakkha*—his mother from the previous life, who was also anxious to prevent him from disrobing—took possession of him and threw him down to the ground, where he lay quivering with rolling eyes and foaming mouth. When his present mother returned to the room, she found him in this condition.

- 573 I follow the reading in Be. Ee1 & Ee2 insert another verse here (v. 815 in Ee2), but since this verse seems to be the product of a scribal error I do not translate it. The Be reading is supported by the Dhp-a version. Se reads as in Be, but with *yā va* in place of *yā ca* in the second pāda of both the exclamation and the reply. In order to translate in accordance with natural English syntax, I have had to invert lines of the Pāli in a way which crosses over the division of verses in the Pāli text.

*The Uposatha complete in eight factors (aṭṭhasusamāgatam uposatham)*: On the Uposatha, see n. 513. Besides the two major Uposathas falling on the full-moon and new-moon days (respectively either the fourteenth or fifteenth, and the first, of the fortnight), minor Uposathas fall on the half-moon days, the eighths of the fortnight. Lay people observe the Uposatha by taking upon themselves the Eight Precepts (*aṭṭhaṅga-sila*), a stricter discipline than the Five Precepts of daily observance. These entail abstaining from: (1) taking life, (2) stealing, (3) all sexual activity, (4) false speech, (5) taking intoxicants, (6) eating past noon, (7) dancing, singing, listening to music, seeing improper shows, and using personal ornaments and cosmetics, and (8) using high and luxurious beds and seats. For more on

the Uposatha duties for the laity, see AN IV 248–62.

And during special periods (*pātihāriyapakkhañ ca*). Spk explains this as if it meant the days proximate to the Uposatha: “This is said with reference to those who undertake the Uposatha observances on the seventh and ninth of the fortnight too (in addition to the eighth), and who also undertake the practices on the days preceding and following the Uposatha on the fourteenth or fifteenth (the full-moon and new-moon observance days). Further, following the Pavāraṇā day (see n. 513) they observe the Uposatha duties continuously for a fortnight [Spk-pt: that is, during the waning fortnight].” Different explanations of the expression *pātihāriyapakkha* are given at Mp II 234 and Pj II 378.

- 574 Spk glosses *uppaccā pi* as *uppativā pi*, and paraphrases: “Even if you fly up like a bird and flee, there will still be no freedom for you.” The same verse is at Thi 247c–248b, Pv 236, Ud 51,17–18, Peṭ 44,20–21, and Nett 131,19–20. These versions (except Pv) read the absolutive as *upecca*, with a strange gloss *sañcicca* in their commentaries; Pv follows SN, but its commentary recognizes *upecca* as a v.l. A parallel is at Uv 9:4, with the absolutive *utplutya*. See von Hinüber, “On the Tradition of Pāli Texts in India, Ceylon, and Burma,” pp. 51–53.
- 575 At this point the yakkha has released Sānu and he has regained consciousness, unaware of what had just occurred.
- 576 See 20:10 (II 271,13–14): “For this is death in the Noble One’s Discipline: that one gives up the training and returns to the lower life.”
- 577 Spk: She says this to show the danger in household life; for household life is called “hot embers” (*kukkuḷā*) in the sense of being hot. *Kukkuḷā* is also at 22:136.
- 578 Spk paraphrases *kassa ujjhāpayāmase*, in pāda b, thus: “When you were intent on disrobing and had been possessed by the yakkha, to whom could we have voiced our grief (complained), to whom could we have appealed and reported this (*kassa mayaṃ ujjhāpayāma nijjhāpayāma ārocayāma*)?” On pāda cd: “When you went forth into the Buddha’s Teaching, drawn out from the household, you were like an item rescued from a blazing house. But now

you wish to be burnt again in the household life, which is like a great conflagration.” According to Spk, the yakkha’s intervention proved effective. After listening to his mother, Sānu gave up his idea of disrobing, received the higher ordination, mastered the Buddha’s teachings, and quickly attained arahantship. He became a great preacher who lived to the age of 120.

- 579 Spk: She had taken her son Piyaṅkara on her hip and was searching for food behind Jeta’s Grove when she heard the sweet sound of the elder’s recitation. The sound went straight to her heart and, transfixed, she stood there listening to the Dhamma, her interest in food gone. But her little son was too young to appreciate the recitation and kept complaining to his mother about his hunger.
- 580 Spk: She was carrying her daughter on her hip and leading her son by the hand. When she heard the Dhamma she stood transfixed, but her children clamoured for food.
- 581 Spk explains that *pāṇinaṃ* in pāda d may be understood as either a genitive plural or an accusative singular representing the plural (= *pāṇine*): *Pāṇinan ti yathā pāṇinaṃ dukkhā moceti. Ke moceti ti? Pāṇine ti āharitvā vattabbaṃ*.
- 582 I follow VĀT’s perspicacious suggestion that pāda d should be read: *yaṃ dhammaṃ abhisambudhā*, taking the verb as a root aorist (see Geiger, *Pāli Grammar*, §159, 161.1). Be and Ee2 read *abhisambudhaṃ*, Se and Ee1 *abhisambuddhaṃ*, accusative past participles which seem syntactically out of place. The accusative *yaṃ dhammaṃ* requires an active transitive verb, yet the only solution Spk can propose is to turn the passive accusative participle into a nominative with active force, a role it is ill-designed to play. Since verb forms from *abhisambudh* always refer to the Buddha, I have made explicit the verb’s subject, not mentioned as such in the text.
- 583 Spk: Having listened to the Buddha’s discourse, the yakkha and her son were established in the fruit of stream-entry. Though the daughter had good supporting conditions, she was too young to understand the discourse.
- 584 The story of Anāthapiṇḍika’s first meeting with the Buddha is told in greater detail at Vin II 154–59; see too

Nāṇamoli, *Life of the Buddha*, pp. 87–91. His given name was Sudatta, “Anāthapiṇḍika” being a nickname meaning “(giver) of alms to the helpless”; he was so called because of his generosity.

585 Spk: After the first watch of the night had passed he woke up thinking of the Buddha, full of confidence and joy so intense that light became manifest and drove away the darkness. Hence he thought it was already dawn and set out for the monastery, realizing his error only when he went outside. The same thing happened at the end of the middle watch.

From Spk’s account, it seems that the Cool Grove was located near the cremation ground (*sivathikā*) and thus Anāthapiṇḍika had to pass through the cemetery to reach the monastery. It was for this reason that he became frightened. The fluctuation in the intensity of the light, Spk says, reflects his inward battle between faith and fear.

586 Spk: The word *sahassa* (thousand), found only in conjunction with *kaññā*, should be conjoined with each of the preceding three terms as well. All this is “not worth a sixteenth part of a single step forward” because, when he arrives at the monastery, he will be established in the fruit of stream-entry.

587 Spk: While he was approaching, Anāthapiṇḍika wondered how he could determine for himself whether or not the Teacher was a genuine Buddha. He then resolved that if the Teacher was a Buddha he would address him by his given name, Sudatta, known only to himself.

588 The words in brackets render *haṭṭho udaggo*, found in Be only.

589 I prefer Se and Ee2 *cetaso* to Be and Ee1 *cetasā*. The parallel at AN I 138,3–6 also has *cetaso*. In the Vinaya version the Buddha next delivers a graduated sermon to Anāthapiṇḍika at the conclusion of which he attains stream-entry.

590 This verse and the next are found, with several variations, at Thi 54–55. Spk glosses *kiṃ me katā*, in pāda a, with *kiṃ ime katā*, *kiṃ karonti*, but I think it more likely that we have here a split *bahubbihi* compound *kiṃkatā*, and I translate accordingly.

Be reads pāda b: *madhupitā va seyare* (Se and Ee2: *seyyare*; Ee1 and Thi 54: *acchare*). Spk: They sleep as if they have been drinking sweet mead (Be: *gandhamadhupāna*; Se: *gaṇḍamadhupāna*); for it is said that one who drinks this is unable to lift up his head but just lies there unconscious. Spk-pt: *Gandhamadhu* is a particular type of honey that is extremely sweet and intoxicating.

Spk I 338,13–14 (to 11:1) mentions a drink called *gandhapāna* (in Be; *gaṇḍapāna* in Se and Ee), an intoxicating beverage (*surā*) used by the older generation of devas in the Tāvatiṃsa heaven but rejected by Sakka after he assumed rulership over that world. At Dhp-a I 272,9 the drink is called *dibbapāna*. MW lists *gandhapāna*, defined as a fragrant beverage. “*Madhu* denotes anything sweet used as food and especially drink, ‘mead,’ a sense often found in the Rigveda” (Macdonell and Keith, *Vedic Index*, s.v. *madhu*).

591 Spk explains *appaṭivāṇiyaṃ* (“irresistible”), in pāda a, thus: “Whereas ordinary food, even though very delicious, fails to give pleasure when one eats it again and again and becomes something to be rejected and removed, this Dhamma is different. The wise can listen to this Dhamma for a hundred or a thousand years without becoming satiated.” Spk glosses *asecanakam ojavam*, in pāda b, as *anāsītakaṃ ojavantaṃ*, “unadulterated, nourishing,” and explains that unlike material food, which becomes tasty by the addition of condiments, this Dhamma is sweet and nutritious by its own nature.

While Spk thus takes *asecanaka* to be derived from *siñcati*, to sprinkle, Brough maintains that the word is derived from a different root *sek*, meaning “to satiate.” He renders it “never causing surfeit” (*Gāndhāri Dharmapada*, p. 193, n. to 72). See too CPD, s.v. *asecanaka*, which quotes the traditional Skt explanation from the *Amarakośa*: *trypter nāsty anto yasya darśanāt*; “that the sight of which gives endless satisfaction.” In Pāli the word is used more in connection with the senses of smell and taste (e.g., at AN III 237,22 and 238,1). My rendering “ambrosial” is intended to suggest the same idea as the Skt definition, but more concisely so that it can also be incorporated into

the description of mindfulness of breathing at 54:9 (V 321,22 and 322,1,11).

Pāda d reads: *valāhakam iva panthagū* (in Be and Ee1; Se and Thi 55 end with *addhagū*). Spk: "Like travellers (*pathikā*) oppressed by the heat (who drink) the water released from within a cloud."

592 This verse and the next resemble Thi 111, which contains features of both. In pāda d, I prefer *vippamuttāya* in Se and SS, as against *vippamuttiyā* in Be and Ee1 & 2. At EV II, n. to 111, Norman suggests, on metrical grounds, inverting pādas c and d, but the resultant meaning seems to undermine the cogency of this suggestion.

593 This sutta, also found at Sn I, 10 (pp. 31–33), is included in the Sri Lankan *Maha Pirit Pota*. Spk relates the long background story, of which I sketch only the highlights:

One day King Ālavaka of Ālavī, while on a hunt, was captured by the ferocious yakkha Ālavaka, who threatened to eat him. The king could obtain release only by promising the demon that he would provide him daily with a human victim. First the king sent the criminals from the prison, but when there were no more prisoners he required every family to provide a child. All the families with children eventually fled to other lands and it became incumbent on the king to offer his own son, the Ālavaka prince. The Buddha, aware of the impending sacrifice, went to the yakkha's haunt on the day before the offering was to take place in order to convert the demon from his evil ways. At that time the yakkha was attending a meeting in the Himalayas, but the Buddha entered his cave, sat down on the yakkha's throne, and preached the Dhamma to his harem ladies. When the yakkha heard about this, he hastened back to Ālavī in a fury and demanded that the Blessed One leave.

594 Spk: The Buddha complied with the yakkha's demands three times because he knew that compliance was the most effective way to soften his mind. But when the yakkha thought to send the Buddha in and out all night long, the Master refused to obey.

595 Spk: It is said that when he was a child his parents had taught him eight questions and answers which they had

learnt from the Buddha Kassapa. As time passed he forgot the answers, but he had preserved the questions written in vermilion on a golden scroll, which he kept in his cave.  
596 *Api ca tvam āvuso puccha yad ākaṅkhasi*. Spk: With these words the Buddha extended to him the invitation of an Omniscient One (*sabbaññūpavāraṇaṃ pavāresi*), which cannot be extended by any paccekabuddhas, chief disciples, or great disciples.

597 Spk: *Faith* is a man's best treasure because it brings mundane and supramundane happiness as its result; it alleviates the suffering of birth and aging; it allays poverty with respect to excellent qualities; and it is the means of obtaining the gems of the enlightenment factors, etc. *Dhamma* here is the ten wholesome qualities, or giving, virtue, and meditation. This brings human happiness, celestial happiness, and in the end the happiness of Nibbāna. By *truth* here truthful speech is intended, with Nibbāna as the ultimate truth (*paramatthasacca*) and truth as abstinence (from falsehood; *viratisacca*) comprised within that. Of the various kinds of tastes, *truth is really the sweetest of tastes*, truth alone is the sweetest (*sādhutaram*). Or it is the best (*sādhutaram*), the supreme, the highest. For such tastes as that of roots, etc., nourish only the body and bring a defiled happiness, but the taste of truth nourishes the mind with serenity and insight and brings an undefiled happiness.

*One living by wisdom (paññājivim jīvitam)*: A householder lives by wisdom when he works at an honourable occupation, goes for refuge, gives alms, observes the precepts, and fulfils the Uposatha duties, etc. One gone forth as a monk lives by wisdom when he undertakes pure virtue and the superior practices beginning with purification of mind.

598 Spk distributes the four "floods" (*ogha*) over the four lines of the reply and sees each line as implying a particular path and fruit; on the four floods, see n. 1. Since the faith faculty is the basis for the four factors of stream-entry (see 55:1), the first line shows the stream-enterer, who has crossed the flood of views; the second line shows the once-returner, who by means of diligence has crossed the

flood of existence except for one more existence in the sense-sphere world; the third line shows the nonreturner, who has overcome the flood of sensuality, a mass of suffering; and the fourth line shows the path of arahantship, which includes the fully purified wisdom by means of which one crosses over the flood of ignorance.

This completes the eight questions that the yakkha had learnt from his parents. When the Buddha finished speaking, bringing his verse to a climax in arahantship, the yakkha was established in the fruit of stream-entry.

599 Spk: When the Buddha said, "By wisdom one is purified," the yakkha picked up on the word "wisdom" and, through his own ingenuity, asked a question of mixed mundane and supramundane significance.

600 In pāda c, I read *sussūsā* with Se and Ee1 & 2. Be reads *sussūsam* as does the lemma of Spk (Be), while the corresponding lemma in Spk (Se) has *sussūsā*. From the paraphrase (see below) *sussūsā* can be understood as a truncated instrumental (= *sussūsāya*). In Be, *sussūsam* seems to function as an accusative in apposition to *paññam*, perhaps as the first member of a split compound, i.e., "the wisdom (consisting in) the desire to learn."

Spk: The Blessed One shows here four causes for the gaining of wisdom. First one places *faith* in the Dhamma by which the arahants—Buddhas, paccekabuddhas, and disciples—attained Nibbāna. By so doing one gains the mundane and supramundane wisdom for the attainment of Nibbāna. But that does not come to pass merely by faith. When faith is born one approaches a teacher, lends an ear, and hears the Dhamma; thus one gains *a desire to learn* (*sussūsam*). When one lends an ear and listens from a desire to learn, one gains wisdom. But one must also be *diligent* (*appamatto*), in the sense of being constantly mindful, and *astute* (*vicakkhaṇa*), able to distinguish what is well spoken and badly spoken. Through *faith* one enters upon the practice that leads to gaining wisdom. Through *a desire to learn* (*sussūsāya*) one carefully listens to the means for acquiring wisdom; through *diligence* (*appamādena*) one does not forget what one has learnt; through *astuteness* (*vicakkhaṇatāya*) one expands upon what one has learnt. Or

else: through a desire to learn one lends an ear and listens to the Dhamma by which one gains wisdom; through diligence one bears in mind the Dhamma heard; by astuteness one examines the meaning and then gradually one realizes the ultimate truth.

601 Spk: *Dutiful* (*dhuravā*) means not neglecting one's responsibilities and implies mental energy; *one with initiative* (*uttāhātā*) implies physical energy. I here follow Be; in Se the last two lines come at the end of v. 850; in Ee1, at the end of both v. 849 and v. 850; in Sn, they are attached to neither verse.

602 The problem is to correlate the two tetrads mentioned in vv. 853–54. The difficulty arises not only on account of the replacement of *dhiti* by *khantiyā* in the second verse but also because of the variant readings of the second term. Perhaps the best reading is that in Se, which accords with Sn (Ee1) vv. 187–88: in v. 853, *saccaṃ dhammo dhiti cāgo*; in v. 854, *saccā damā cāgā khantiyā*. Spk (Be) and Spk (Se) differ over the second term: the former has *dammo* and *dammā*, the latter *dhammo* and *dhammā*. The explanations in Spk-pt establish beyond doubt that *dhammo* and *damā* were the respective readings known to Dhammapāla.

The four qualities mentioned at vv. 853–54 refer back to vv. 851–52. *Truth* corresponds to truthfulness in v. 852c (*sacca* in all three instances), while *generosity* (*cāga*) clearly corresponds to giving (*dadaṃ*) in v. 852d. Spk (Se) explains that Dhamma is spoken of (in v. 851c) under the name of wisdom gained through a desire to learn, on which Spk-pt comments: "Wisdom is called Dhamma because of bearing up and examining (*dhāraṇato upadhāraṇato*) entities in accordance with actuality." (As the verb *dhāreti* (> *dhāraṇa*) is the stock etymological explanation of *dhamma* in the commentaries, we can infer that the author of Spk-pt had a text that read *dhammo*.) *Steadfastness* (*dhiti*) is spoken of under the names dutifulness and initiative (in v. 852ab).

In its paraphrase of v. 854, Spk states: "Come now, ask the many ascetics and brahmins whether there is any greater means for winning acclaim *than truthfulness*; any greater means for gaining mundane and supramundane wisdom *than self-control* (I suggest reading *damā*, following

Spk-pt, which explains that wisdom is so designated because it controls (*dameti*) the defilements as well as body and speech, etc.); any greater means of binding friends *than generosity*; and any greater means for finding mundane and supramundane wealth *than patience*, which is identical with activated energy, (called patience) in the sense that it endures heavy burdens, and which is referred to by the names dutifulness and initiative."

Thus the correlations can be shown schematically as follows:

- (1) 852: truthfulness = 853 & 854: truth.
- (2) 851: wisdom = 853: Dhamma = 854: self-control.
- (3) 852: giving = 853 & 854: generosity.
- (4) 852: dutifulness, initiative = 853: steadfastness = 854: patience.

603 Although Spk explains *attho* in pāda d as the visible benefit (*diṭṭhadhammika*) and *samparāyiko* as the benefit in a future life, there seems to be no compelling reason not to take the two words at their face value as adjective and noun bearing a single significance, namely, the good pertaining to the future life.

604 Spk continues with the background story: Just as the yakkha finished speaking this verse, the sun rose and the king's men arrived bringing the prince as a sacrificial offering. They handed the infant to the yakkha, who presented him to the Buddha. The Master recited some verses of blessing over the boy and returned him to the king's men. When the prince reached maturity, he was known as Hatthaka Ālavaka, because he had been passed around from one person's hands (*hattha*) to another's. He attained the stage of non-returner and was one of the Buddha's foremost lay disciples, the chief of those who win followings through the four bases of beneficence (*saṅgahavatthu*; see AN I 26,7-9). The Buddha holds him up as a model for male lay followers at 17:23 and praises his virtues at AN IV 217-20.

### 11. *Sakkasaṃyutta*

605 The texts commonly depict the Tāvatiṃsa devas and the asuras as engaged in perpetual strife, the devas representing the forces of light, peace, and harmony, the asuras or "jealous titans" the forces of violence, conflict, and dissension; see too 35:248.

Spk explains that the devas are protected by five lines of defense: the nāgas, the supaṇṇas (n. 397), the kumbhaṇḍas (a kind of goblin), the yakkhas, and the Four Great Kings, the presiding deities of the lowest sense-sphere heaven. When the asuras penetrate these five lines, the Four Great Kings inform Sakka, who mounts his chariot and then either goes to the battlefield himself or commissions one of his sons to lead the devas into battle. On this occasion he wanted to send his son Suvīra.

606 Spk: Accompanied by his retinue of nymphs, he entered upon the great golden highway sixty *yojanas* wide and roamed around in the Nandana Grove playing (the game of) Constellation.

607 Spk: In pāda a, *alassassa* (in Se and Ee1; *alavassa* in Be & Ee2) should be resolved: *alaso assa*; in pāda c, *sabbakāmasamiddhassa* should be resolved: *sabbakāmehi samiddho assa*. In pāda d, I read *disā ti* with Be, Se, and Ee2, as against *disan ti* in Ee1.

Spk paraphrases pāda d thus: "O Sakka, supreme deva, show me that blessed, supreme, state (or) region, point it out to me, describe it" (*sakka devaseṭṭha taṃ me varaṃ uttamaṃ thānaṃ okāsaṃ disa ācikkha kathehi*). VĀT proposes that because pāda d includes no other noun for an adjective *varaṃ* to qualify, it would be better to take *varaṃ* itself as the noun meaning "a boon" and *disa* as meaning "to grant, to bestow." This meaning is attested to in PED, s.v. *disati*, but without references. I have followed VĀT's suggestion, though I cannot cite any other instances where *varaṃ* is used in relation to *disati*. It is usually governed by the verb *dadāti*, as at Vin I 278,23.

608 The verse is particularly obscure. Spk and Spk-pt offer little more than glosses, and a translator can do little better than take a shot in the dark. In pāda a, I regard *koci* as

equivalent to *kvaci* (see n. 175). I read the verb in pāda b with Ee1 & 2 as *jiyati*, as against *jivati* in Be and Se; the latter may have entered the text through a misunderstanding of the commentarial gloss.

Spk: "The place of living without doing work is the path of Nibbāna (*kammaṃ akatvā jivitaṭṭhānaṃ nāma nibbānassa maggo*)." Spk-pt: "The 'path of Nibbāna' is the path which serves as the means for attainment of Nibbāna." This is perplexing: since "work" (*kamma*) in the sense of exertion is certainly needed to attain Nibbāna, the purport may be that with the attainment of Nibbāna no more work is needed to attain it. The verse may also be playing upon two meanings of *kamma*, suggesting that one who attains Nibbāna does not create further *kamma*, volitional action ripening in rebirth.

- 609 The verb *sobhetha*, in this stock expression, has proved troublesome to previous translators. C.Rh.D renders it "do ye enhance his words" (at KS 1:281); Horner, based on PED, as "let your light shine forth" (in BD 4:249, 4:498, 5:227 = Vin I 187,23, I 349,7, II 162,15). Neither of these offerings captures the intended meaning. The verb—a middle voice, third person singular optative—always occurs in a context where the Buddha is speaking of a type of lay conduct that the bhikkhus, as renunciants, should be able to surpass. Hence the verb points to how one should act to make oneself shine, i.e., the mode of conduct that is fitting for one's station.
- 610 This sutta is a popular *paritta* or protective discourse, included in the *Maha Pirit Pota*. The Northern Buddhist tradition has preserved versions in Tibetan and Chinese, translated from the Skt, and Skt fragments also have been found. The various versions are discussed in detail by Skilling, *Mahā Sūtras* II, pp. 441–67.
- 611 Spk does not gloss the compound *dhajagga*, but it occurs at AN III 89,17 foll. and is explained at Mp III 267,18 as "the crests of standards raised up from the backs of elephants, horses, etc., or from chariots." Skilling discusses the Skt words *dhvaja* and *dhvajāgra* at length and concludes that "in its early form a *dhvaja* was a pole surmounted by an emblem, carried as a military or royal symbol" (*Mahā*

*Sūtras* II, p. 457). The emblem is the *dhvajāgra*, the "crest of the standard," though it seems that over time the two terms came to be used almost interchangeably. Since the standard often also bore a flag, the word *dhvaja* eventually was transferred to the flag; this understanding of the term seems to be implicit in Spk's remark (just below). *Dhaja* occurs at v. 226a.

Spk: "The crest of Sakka's standard is raised up from his chariot 250 *yojanas* high, and when it is struck by the wind it gives forth the sound of a five-piece orchestra. When the devas look up at it, they think, 'Our king has come and stands by his troops like a deeply planted pillar. Of whom need we be afraid?' Thus they have no fear."

- 612 Of these three deities, Spk says only that Pajāpati is of the same appearance and life span as Sakka and gets the second seat, while Varuṇa and Īsāna respectively get the third and fourth seats. According to MW, *Prajāpati* was originally "lord of creatures, creator, ... a supreme god above the Vedic deities." *Varuṇa* "is one of the oldest Vedic gods ... often regarded as the supreme deity." *Īsāna* is "one of the older names of Śiva-Rudra."
- 613 See n. 157. Spk here says that he is the oldest of all the asuras.
- 614 A similar incident is related at 35:248 (IV 201,18–202,4).
- 615 In pāda a, Be, Se, and Ee2 read *pabhijjeyyum*, Ee1 *pakuj-jheyum*. The latter is recognized by Spk as a v.l. The dialogue represents a contest between two opposing models of political leadership, with Mātali advocating the principle of despotic rule, Sakka the principle of benevolent rule. The despotic political philosophy seems more in keeping with the character of the asuras, and indeed in the following sutta Vepacitti himself proclaims the verses here ascribed to Mātali.
- 616 I translate pādas cd guided by Spk's paraphrase: "Among the goals (or goods) which culminate in one's own good, there is found no other goal (or good) better than patience" (*tesu saka-atthaparamesu atthesu khantito uttaritaro añño attho na vijjati*). Because of the discrepancy between the plural *sadatthaparamā atthā* in pāda c and the singular verb *vijjati* in pāda d, it seems necessary to read the nomi-

native clause in pāda a as doing service for a locative or genitive, as Spk suggests, with a singular subject implicit. The only alternative would be to amend pāda a to read singular *sadatthaparamo attho*, but no text has this reading. Cp. v. 854d above and v. 895d below. Nānamoli splits the two pādas syntactically and translates: "One's own good is the best of all, and there is none surpasses patience" (*The Guide*, p. 227), but this seems too free.

Note that Sakka speaks from the perspective of mundane ethical values rather than from the transcendent perspective of the Dhamma. From that perspective *sadattha* is identified with arahantship, which cannot be gained simply by patience.

- 617 C.Rh.D takes *niccaṃ khamati dubbalo* to mean that a weak person must always be tolerated (see KS 1:285), but *dubbalo*, as nominative, is clearly the subject of *khamati*, not its object. My translation conforms to Nānamoli's (in *Minor Readings and Illustrator*, p. 162), but was made independently. Nānamoli's note speaks for my interpretation as well: "The rendering here ... seeks to bring out that patience is a necessity rather than a virtue in the weak, but appears as a virtue in the forbearance of the strong. The verse is a difficult one."
- 618 Spk: *Dhammaguttassa*: to one who is protected by the Dhamma or to one who is protecting the Dhamma (*dhammena rakkhitassa dhammaṃ vā rakkhantassa*).
- 619 *Tumhe khvettha vepacitti pubbadevā*. Spk paraphrases: "Being the senior master long residing in the deva world, speak what has been transmitted to you." Spk-pt: Because he had arisen in this world earlier than Sakka and his retinue of devas, he is extolled as "the senior deva" (*pubbadevā*, lit. "former deva"). He addresses Vepacitti with plural forms as a sign of respect.
- Both Spk (to 11:1) and Dhp-a I 272-73 relate how Sakka ousted the old generation of devas and drove them out to the asura world; see BL 1:319.
- 620 The verses of Vepacitti are identical with those of Mātali in the preceding sutta, and Sakka's verses here are identical with his own verses above.
- 621 The same incident, set in a different context, is related at

Dhp-a I 279 (see BL 1:323-24) and in Ja No. 31 (I 202-3). Ja I 203 glosses *kulāvakā* as *supaṇṇapotakā*, baby supaṇṇa birds, but at v. 37b the word clearly means a nest and not its occupants.

Spk: As they headed towards the silk-cotton woods, the noise of the chariot, the horses, and the standard was like thunderbolts on all sides. The strong supaṇṇa birds in the forest fled, but those that were old, ill, and too young to fly were terrified and let loose a loud cry. Sakka asked, "What is that sound?" and Mātali told him. Sakka's heart was shaken by compassion and he spoke the verse.

- 622 Spk: As soon as Sakka said this, Vepacitti became as if bound by bonds on his four limbs and neck.
- 623 I read with Be: *tadeva tvaṃ mā pajahāsi*. Ee1 reads *pahāsi*, which gives the same sense, but Se and Ee2 have *mārisa pahāsi*, which yields the opposite meaning.
- 624 Spk: The verse refers to four great evils (*mahāpāpāni*) of the present aeon: (i) "the evil that comes to a liar": the evil of the king of Ceti, the first liar of the present aeon (see the Cetiya Jātaka, Ja No. 422); (ii) "to a reviler of noble ones": evil like that of Kokālika (see 6:10); (iii) "to a betrayer of friends": evil like that of the betrayer of the Great Being in the Mahākapi Jātaka (Ja No. 516); (iv) "to one without gratitude": the evil of an ingrate like Devadatta.
- In pāda e, I read *phusati* with Se and Ee1 & 2, as against *phusatu* in Be. "Sujā's husband" (*Sujampati*) is a name for Sakka; see 11:12 and n. 641.
- 625 Neither Spk nor Spk-pt offers any help in identifying Verocana. At DN II 259,11 mention is made of "a hundred sons of (the asura) Bali, all named Veroca" (*satañ ca baliputtānaṃ sabbe Verocanāmakā*), on which Sv II 689,26-27 comments: "They all bore the name of their uncle Rāhu." This might suggest that Verocana and Rāhu are identical, but there is no additional evidence for this.
- 626 Both C.Rh.D and Geiger translate pādas cd as if they were two independent sentences: "A purpose shines when perfected./Nothing forbearance doth excel." I go along with the paraphrase of Spk, which treats them as forming one sentence: "Among the goals (goods) that shine when achieved, there is no goal better than patience." I read

- pada c here (and in v. 894 just above) with Se and Ee2 as plural: *nipphanasobhino atthā*, as against the singular *nipphanasobhano attho* of Be and Ee1. Pāda d here is identical with v. 854d and v. 877d. See n. 616.
- 627 In pāda a, *sabbe sattā atthajātā* might also have been rendered, "All beings are beset by needs." Spk explains: "*Bent upon a goal* means engaged in a task (*atthajātā ti kiccajātā*); for there is no being at all, including dogs and jackals, that is not engaged in a task. Even walking to and fro can be called a task."
- Pādas cd read: *Samyogaparamā tveva/Sambhogā sabba-pāṇinam*. The exact meaning and relevance are obscure. Spk interprets the line with an example—bland food may be made savoury when combined with various condiments—which construes *samyoga* as meaning combination or preparation. This seems to me unlikely. At Ja IV 127,14–15 the couplet occurs in a context which implies that the meaning is association with other people; see too AN IV 57–58, where *samyoga* signifies contact or association between man and woman (sexual, but not necessarily coitus). I understand the syntax as parallel to that of Dh 203–4, that is, "enjoyments have association as supreme," rather than "through association enjoyments become supreme," the sense proposed by Spk.
- 628 *Apabyāmato karitvā* (or *apavyāmato karitvā*, in Ee1). CPD says *apavyāma* is a v.l. for *apasavya*. At Ud 50,18 the expression *apasavyāmato karitvā* occurs, which Ud-a 292,4 explains as turning the left side towards a holy person as a sign of disrespect.
- 629 Spk glosses *ciradikkhitānam* in pāda a as *cirasamādiṇṇavatānam*, "who have long undertaken vows." On "thousand-eyed" (*sahassanetta*) as an epithet of Sakka, see 11:12; though there the Pāli is *sahassakkha*, the meaning is the same. The seers say this because they subscribe to the common belief that the devas find the smell of human bodies repulsive—particularly ascetics who may not bathe frequently (see Mātali's argument at v. 932). Sakka's reply conveys the same point as Dh 54–56: the scent of virtue is supreme among all scents and pervades even the worlds of the devas.

630 Spk paraphrases: "The devas do not perceive anything repulsive in this odour of the virtuous ones; they perceive it as desirable, lovely, agreeable."

631 Spk: For the most part, it is said, the battles between the devas and the asuras take place behind the great ocean. Often the asuras are defeated, and when they are fleeing from the devas, as they pass the hermitages of seers, they destroy their halls and walkways, etc.; for they believe that the seers are partial to Sakka and give him the counsel that leads to their defeat. Since the seers can repair the damaged facilities only with difficulty, when they heard that a battle was about to take place they realized they needed a guarantee of safety.

The identity of Sambara is problematic. Spk identifies him with Vepacitti (see n. 633), but C.Rh.D points out (at KS 1:305, n. 4) that 11:23 suggests the two are distinct, Sambara having been Vepacitti's predecessor as lord of the asuras. MW states that Sambara is a demon often mentioned in the Ṛgveda; he was slain by Indra. For further discussion, see below n. 665.

632 Pāda c should be divided as in Be & Ee2: *Kāmaṅkaro hi te dātum*. Spk glosses *kāmaṅkaro* with *icchitakaro* and paraphrases: "If you want to give safety, you are able to give safety; if you want to give danger, you are able to give danger."

633 Spk: As soon as he fell asleep, he woke up howling as though he had been struck from all sides by a hundred spears. The other asuras came to inquire about his health and were still consoling him when dawn arrived. From then on his mind became sick and trembled (*cittaṃ vepati*); hence his other name, "Vepacitti," arose. *Vepati* is not in PED, but see MW, s.v. *vip* > *vepate*. Spk-pt glosses *vepati* with *kampati pavedhati*.

634 Spk glosses *samattāni* with *paripuṇṇāni* and *samādināni* with *gahitāni*. Evidently Spk assumes that *samatta* here is equivalent to Skt *samāpta*. But the participle *samatta* can represent either Skt *samāpta* or *samāta*, and from its placement before *samādināni* in the present passage, I take *samattāni* in the latter sense. Both *samatta* and *samādinna* are alternative past participle formations of *sam* + *ā* + *dā*.

- PED does not mention this derivation, but only that from Skt *samāpta* (and from Skt *samasta*, not relevant here). For the derivation from *samātta*, see Nidd I 289,16–18; for the derivation from *samāpta*, see Nidd I 65,9–11.
- 635 Although the form *yācayoga* prevails in the Pāli textual tradition, it is likely that the original compound was *yājayoga*, recognized as a v.l. at Vism 224,11–12 (Ppn 7:112). I translate on the basis of this reading, which means literally “devoted to sacrifice,” a brahmanical notion reinterpreted by the Buddha to mean self-sacrifice through the practice of charity (see vv. 395–96). Since charity (*yāja*) is directed to supplicants (*yācaka*), the variant *yācayoga* could have arisen through substitution of object for act; see GD, p. 241, n. to p. 87,2.
- 636 Spk (to 11:13) briefly relates how Sakka, in his existence as the brahmin youth Magha, went about performing deeds of merit at the head of a band of thirty-three friends. Having fulfilled his seven vows, he was reborn after death in the Tāvatiṃsa heaven along with his friends. Hence the name Tāvatiṃsa, “(heaven) of the thirty-three.” See Dhp-a I 265–72; BL 1:315–19. Ja No. 31 tells the same story with the Bodhisatta—the future Buddha Gotama—in the role of Magha and reborn as Sakka.
- 637 I read with Se and Ee1 & 2 *pure pure dānaṃ adāsi tasmā Purindado ti vuccati*. Be has *pure* only once. MW (s.v. *pur* > *puram*) gives *puramda* and *puramdara* as names of Indra; both mean “destroyer of strongholds.” This explanation, and the following three, depend on puns almost impossible to reproduce in English.
- 638 *Sakkaccaṃ dānaṃ adāsi tasmā Sakko ti vuccati*.
- 639 The story of the rest house (*āvasatha*) is at Dhp-a I 269–70; BL 1:317–18.
- 640 *Sahassam pi atthānaṃ muhuttana cinteti tasmā Sahassakkho ti vuccati*. Spk: Standing upon a single word propounded in regard to a thousand people or a thousand statements, he decides, “This one has need of this, that one has need of that.” Spk-pt: He has a thousand wisdom-eyes.
- 641 The story of how Sakka won the hand of Sujā, Vepacitti’s daughter, is told at Dhp-a I 278–79 (see BL 1:323), and Ja I 206.

- 642 Spk says that this pauper was the leper Suppabuddha, whose story is told at Ud 48–50 and, more elaborately with several variations, in Spk. According to the Spk version, in an earlier life he had been a king of Bārāṇasi who had spitefully reviled an aged paccekabuddha. As a kammic result he was reborn in hell and then, through the residue of the evil kamma, as a poor leper in Rājagaha. One day, on his begging rounds, he heard the Buddha preach and attained stream-entry. Shortly afterwards he was killed by a wild cow and was reborn in the Tāvatiṃsa heaven.
- 643 *Deve tāvatimse anunayamāno*. Spk does not gloss *anunayamāno*, but the same expression is at AN I 143,30, where *anunayamāno* is glossed by Mp II 123,19 (Be; the Ee and Se readings are corrupt) with *anubodhayamāno*, “making understand.” The participle also occurs in the form *anunenti* at Thi 514, where it is glossed by Thi-a 267,8–9 with *saññāpenti*, “convincing.”
- 644 Spk explains *faith* as faith arrived at via the path (*maggen’ āgatasaddhā*). *Good conduct built on virtue (silaṃ kalyāṇaṃ)* is the noble disciple’s “virtue dear to the noble ones” (*ariyakantasila*), one of the four factors of stream-entry (55:1), which the stream-enterer does not abandon even in a future existence.
- 645 Spk: Each year the people of Aṅga and Magadha used to assemble and offer a grand sacrifice of their best ghee, honey, molasses, etc., to Mahābrahmā. Out of compassion Sakka appeared before them in the guise of Mahābrahmā, led them to the Buddha, and asked him a question about the most fruitful type of sacrifice.
- 646 In pāda c, *opadhikaṃ puññaṃ*, which I render loosely as “merit of the mundane type,” is explained by Spk as merit that ripens in the acquisitions (*upadhivipākaṃ puññaṃ*), that is, good kamma that leads to rebirth. See the expression *puññabhāgiyā upadhivepakkā* at MN III 72,6 foll.
- 647 The four practising the way are those on the four paths—of stream-entry, once-returning, nonreturning, and arahantship. The four established in the fruit are those who, by developing the respective paths, have attained the four corresponding fruits. The past participle *samāhito* in pāda d

- might be understood to mean either “endowed with” or “concentrated,” the latter representing the *samādhi* division of the path. I have taken it in the former sense, following v. 265a, where *silasamāhitā* is glossed by Spk: *silena samāhitā samupetā*.
- 648 Spk: *Your burden lowered (pannabhāro)*: He has put down the burden of the aggregates, the defilements, and the volitional formations. The fifteenth of the bright lunar fortnight is the full-moon night.
- 649 The verse is identical with his entreaty at v. 560. Neither Spk nor Spk-pṭ explains why Brahmā Sahampati corrects Sakka. The reason may be that Sakka praises only those qualities of the Buddha that he shares with other arahants, while Brahmā addresses him in his role as *satthā*, the Teacher and Master of the dispensation. The same exchange of verses, between Śakra and Mahābrahmā, is recorded at Mvu III 315–16, but set at the Goatherd’s Banyan Tree in the period immediately following the Buddha’s enlightenment; see Jones, 3:304–5.
- 650 *Yassa dāni kālaṃ maññasi*. See Manné, “On a Departure Formula and its Translation.” The expression also occurs at 35:88 (IV 62,31), 35:243 (IV 183,15, 30), 44:1 (IV 379,29), 54:9 (V 321,16–17), and 55:6 (V 348,27); I have varied the rendering slightly to fit the context.
- 651 *Those versed in the Triple Veda* are the brahmins; *the Four Great Kings* are the four divine rulers of the lowest sense-sphere heaven; *the glorious Thirty* are the presiding devas of the Tāvātimsa heaven. The word rendered “spirit” is *yakkha*, used in a broad sense without specific reference to the demonic spirits.
- 652 *Brahmacariyaparāyaṇe*. Spk does not explain the exact sense, but I interpret it as a compressed way of saying “those living the holy life that has Nibbāna as its destination.” See 48:42 (V 218,21): *brahmacariyaṃ vussati nibbāna-parāyaṇaṃ*.
- 653 Spk explains *of perfect name (anomanāmaṃ)* in pāda c thus: “He is of perfect name on account of names that indicate all his excellent qualities, for he is not deficient in any excellent quality.” See v. 148a and n. 99.
- 654 The verse has five pādas. Pādas ab read: *ye rāgadosavinayā*

- avijjāsamattikkamā*, which Spk paraphrases: “by the transcendence of ignorance, the root of the round, which conceals the four truths” (*catusaccapaṭicchādikāya vaṭṭamūlaka-avijjāya samattikkamena*). The same lines appeared at v. 764ab, where, as referring to an arahant, they were appropriately translated as ablative in force. However, despite Spk’s paraphrase, this would not be suitable in relation to trainees (*sekha*), who have not yet fully removed the lust for existence or transcended all ignorance. I have therefore translated them as truncated datives.
- Dismantling (apacaya)* means the undoing of the process that sustains the round of existence. At 22:79 (III 89,22–24) it is said that the noble disciple in training is dismantling the five aggregates, while the arahant (III 90,11) abides having dismantled them (*apacinitvā ṭhito*). See too MN III 288,30.
- 655 *Stuck in a putrid body (pūtidehasayā)*. Spk: This is said because they stay within the putrid body of the mother (during the fetal stage) or because they are stuck within their own body.
- Those submerged inside a corpse*. I read this line as in Be (in both text and the lemma of Spk) as *nimuggā kuṇapamhete*, with the indirect object a locative singular. Se reads *kuṇapasmete*, using an alternative form of the locative singular. Ee1 & 2, however, and Spk (Se) in the lemma read the line with the locative plural *kuṇapesv ete*. Spk explains: “These are submerged for ten months in a corpse, namely, in the mother’s womb.” Despite this comment, it seems more likely that the reference is to the individual’s own living body.
- 656 Vv. 934–35 correspond in part to Thi 282–83. I take vv. 935–36 to be two verses of six pādas each (as in Se and Ee2) rather than three verses of four pādas each (as in Be).
- 657 I read pāda a differently from the four eds., *na te saṃ koṭṭhe osenti* (the reading at Thi 283; Ee2 correctly separates *te* and *saṃ* but has *openti*). Spk explains: *na te saṃ santakaṃ dhaññaṃ koṭṭhe pakkhipanti*; “they do not place their own goods, property, grain in storage.” *Saṃ* thus has the sense of “own goods”; see EV I, n. to 743 and EV II, n. to 283. The gloss on the verb, *pakkhipanti*, establishes that we

should read *osenti* rather than *openti*, the prevalent reading. Thi-a 208,21-22 glosses: *na openti na paṭisāmetvā thapenti tādisassa pariggahassa abhāvato*; "they do not deposit, do not pack up and put away, owing to the absence of any such possession." The corresponding verb at Mvu III 453 is *osaranti*, which Jones suggests might be amended to *osārenti*. Jones is also aware of the Pāli form *osāpenti*. See too nn. 223 and 542 above.

In pāda c, Thi 283 reads *pariniṭṭhitam* as does the text and lemma of Thi-a. Norman prefers the latter by comparison with a similar verse in a Jain text (see EV II, n. to 283), but the explanations in both Thi-a and Spk support *paraniṭṭhitam*, the reading in all eds. of SN. Spk: *Seeking what has been prepared by others (paraniṭṭhitam esānā): seeking out, searching out, by the practice of the alms round, food prepared by others, cooked in others' homes (paresaṃ niṭṭhitam paraghare pakkam bhikkhācāravattena esamānā gavesamānā; I take the genitive paresaṃ here in an instrumental sense, which the context implies).*

Spk explains pāda e: *Who give good counsel (sumantamantino): They utter well-spoken words, saying "We will recite the Dhamma, undertake an ascetic practice, enjoy the Deathless, do the work of an ascetic." Maintaining silence, of even faring (tuṅḥibhūtā samañcarā): Even though they might speak the Dhamma with a voice as loud as thunder through the three watches of the night, they are still said to be "maintaining silence, of even faring." Why so? Because they avoid all useless talk.*

- 658 Spk: He was a dwarf the colour of a burnt stump and with a pot belly. He sat down on Sakka's Yellowstone Throne (*paṇḍukambalasilā*; see Dhpa I 273,9-12; BL 1:320). It is said that he was actually a brahmā from the form realm. Having heard about Sakka's patience, he came in order to test him; for it is impossible for any malevolent spirit (*avaruddhaka-yakkha*) to infiltrate a place so well guarded.
- 659 Spk: Sakka had heard from the devas: "It is impossible to make that yakkha budge by harsh meāns, but if one assumes a humble manner and remains firm in patience, one can get him to leave." Thus he adopted this tactic.

- 660 Spk states that *su*, in pāda a, is a mere indeclinable (*nipātamattam*), and thus we should resolve the compound: *su upahatacitto 'mhi*. Spk-pt: Sakka speaks of his own nature thus, "Because of the presence in me of patience, love, and sympathy, I am not afflicted in mind against others."

Pāda b is read in Be and Se as *nāvattena suvānayo* (Ee1: *nāvaṭṭena suvānayo*; Ee2: *n' āvaṭṭe na suvānayo*). Spk: He states: "I am not easily drawn by anger's whirl; I am not easily brought under the control of anger." Pādas cd allude to the seventh of Sakka's vows (see 11:11). Spk explains that *vo* in pāda c is an indeclinable. *Suvānayo* is also at v. 507b, where lust (*rāga*) rather than anger is the lure.

- 661 I read pādas ab with Be and Ee1 & 2: *Kuddhāham pharusaṃ brūmi/Na ca dhammāni kittaye*. Se omits the *na* in pāda a, apparently out of concern for the metre, but the metre can be preserved with *na* if we assume resolution of the fourth syllable. Neither Spk nor Spk-pt offers any help with the meaning. VĀT proposes, "And I do not speak on Dhamma matters," but at Ja V 172,23 and 221,27 we find *satañ ca dhammāni sukittitāni*, "the well-proclaimed qualities of the good," which suggests that here too the rare neuter plural *dhammāni* refers to personal virtues, not to spiritual teachings.
- 662 Spk: He was afflicted with the illness that arose at the time he was cursed by the group of seers; see vv. 902-3.
- 663 *Sambarimāyā*. MW has two relevant listings: *śambaramāyā* = sorcery, magic; and *śambari* = jugglery, sorcery, illusion (as practised by the daitya Śambara).
- 664 Spk paraphrases: "Even without the Sambari magic Sakka oppresses us, but if he learns it we are lost. Don't destroy us for the sake of your own personal welfare."
- 665 As C.Rh.D points out (at KS 1:305, n. 4), in this verse Vepacitti makes a distinction between Sambara and himself. Even though Spk identifies the two, the commentator does not seem to be bothered by the discrepancy but paraphrases the verse: "Just as Sambara, lord of the asuras, a magician who practised magic, was tortured in hell for a hundred years, so one who applies his magic is tortured."

Spk-ṭ offers some further help with Sambara: “Sambara was the former head of the asuras, the originator (*ādi-purisa*) of the asura magic.”

Spk continues: “Was Sakka able to cure him of his anger? Yes, he was able. How? At that time, it is said, the group of seers was still living. Therefore Sakka would have brought him to them and made him apologize, and he would then have become healthy. But because of his perverse nature (*vañcitattā*) he did not comply but simply left.”

- 666 According to monastic discipline (Vin I 54), if one bhikkhu offends against another he should apologize, and the latter should accept his apology.
- 667 Spk offers alternative explanations of pāda b: *mā ca mittehi vo jarā*. “Here, *hi* is a mere indeclinable, and the sense is: ‘Do not let decay be produced in your friendliness (*tumhākaṃ mittadhamme jarā nāma mā nibbatti*).’ Or else *mittehi* is an instrumental used with a locative sense, that is: ‘Do not let decay be produced among your friends (*mittesu vo jarā mā nibbatti*).’ The meaning is: ‘Do not let deterioration be produced in your friendships.’” It is likely that *mittehi* here is a vestigial Eastern form of the locative plural; see Geiger, *Pāli Grammar*, §80.3.
- 668 Spk: *Nonanger* (*akkodha*) is lovingkindness (*mettā*) and the preliminary phase of lovingkindness; *harmlessness* (*avihimsā*) is compassion (*karuṇā*) and the preliminary phase of compassion.

Part II  
The Book of Causation  
(*Nidānavagga*)

# Contents

Introduction 515

Chapter I  
12 *Nidānasamyutta*  
Connected Discourses on Causation

I. The Buddhas

- 1 (1) Dependent Origination 533
- 2 (2) Analysis of Dependent Origination 534
- 3 (3) The Two Ways 536
- 4 (4) Vipassi 536
- 5 (5) Sikhi 536
- 6 (6) Vessabhū 537
- 7 (7) Kakusandha 537
- 8 (8) Koṇāgamana 537
- 9 (9) Kassapa 537
- 10 (10) Gotama the Great Sakyan Sage 537

II. Nutriment

- 11 (1) Nutriment 540
- 12 (2) Moliyaphagguna 541
- 13 (3) Ascetics and Brahmins (1) 542
- 14 (4) Ascetics and Brahmins (2) 543
- 15 (5) Kaccānagotta 544
- 16 (6) A Speaker on the Dhamma 545
- 17 (7) The Naked Ascetic Kassapa 545
- 18 (8) Timbaruka 548
- 19 (9) The Wise Man and the Fool 549
- 20 (10) Conditions 550

## III. The Ten Powers

- 21 (1) The Ten Powers (1) 552
- 22 (2) The Ten Powers (2) 553
- 23 (3) Proximate Cause 553
- 24 (4) Wanderers of Other Sects 556
- 25 (5) Bhūmija 559
- 26 (6) Upavāṇa 562
- 27 (7) Conditions 563
- 28 (8) Bhikkhu 564
- 29 (9) Ascetics and Brahmins (1) 565
- 30 (10) Ascetics and Brahmins (2) 565

## IV. The Kaḷāra Khattiya

- 31 (1) What Has Come to Be 566
- 32 (2) The Kaḷāra 567
- 33 (3) Cases of Knowledge (1) 571
- 34 (4) Cases of Knowledge (2) 572
- 35 (5) With Ignorance as Condition (1) 573
- 36 (6) With Ignorance as Condition (2) 575
- 37 (7) Not Yours 575
- 38 (8) Volition (1) 576
- 39 (9) Volition (2) 576
- 40 (10) Volition (3) 577

## V. The Householder

- 41 (1) Five Fearful Animosities (1) 578
- 42 (2) Five Fearful Animosities (2) 580
- 43 (3) Suffering 580
- 44 (4) The World 581
- 45 (5) At Nātika 582
- 46 (6) A Certain Brahmin 583
- 47 (7) Jāṇussoṇi 584
- 48 (8) A Cosmologist 584
- 49 (9) The Noble Disciple (1) 585
- 50 (10) The Noble Disciple (2) 586

## VI. Suffering (or The Tree)

- 51 (1) Thorough Investigation 586
- 52 (2) Clinging 589
- 53 (3) Fetters (1) 590

- 54 (4) Fetters (2) 590
- 55 (5) The Great Tree (1) 591
- 56 (6) The Great Tree (2) 591
- 57 (7) The Sapling 591
- 58 (8) Name-and-Form 592
- 59 (9) Consciousness 593
- 60 (10) Causation 593

## VII. The Great Subchapter

- 61 (1) Uninstructed (1) 595
- 62 (2) Uninstructed (2) 596
- 63 (3) Son's Flesh 597
- 64 (4) If There Is Lust 599
- 65 (5) The City 601
- 66 (6) Exploration 604
- 67 (7) The Sheaves of Reeds 607
- 68 (8) Kosambi 609
- 69 (9) The Surge 611
- 70 (10) Susima 612

## VIII. Ascetics and Brahmins

- 71 (1) Aging-and-Death 619
- 72 (2)–81 (11) Birth, Etc. 619

## IX. With Incorporated Repetition Series

- 82 (1) A Teacher 620
- 83 (2) Training 620
- 84 (3)–93 (12) Exertion, Etc. 620

## Chapter II

13 *Abhisamayasaṃyutta*

## Connected Discourses on the Breakthrough

- 1 The Fingernail 621
- 2 The Pond 621
- 3 Water at the Confluence (1) 622
- 4 Water at the Confluence (2) 622
- 5 The Earth (1) 623
- 6 The Earth (2) 623
- 7 The Ocean (1) 623

- 8 The Ocean (2) 624
- 9 The Mountain (1) 624
- 10 The Mountain (2) 625
- 11 The Mountain (3) 625

### Chapter III

#### 14 *Dhātusaṃyutta*

#### Connected Discourses on Elements

##### I. Diversity

- 1 (1) Diversity of Elements 627
- 2 (2) Diversity of Contacts 627
- 3 (3) Not Diversity of Contacts 628
- 4 (4) Diversity of Feelings (1) 628
- 5 (5) Diversity of Feelings (2) 629
- 6 (6) Diversity of External Elements 630
- 7 (7) Diversity of Perceptions 630
- 8 (8) Not Diversity of Quests 631
- 9 (9) Diversity of External Contacts (1) 632
- 10 (10) Diversity of External Contacts (2) 633

##### II. The Second Subchapter (Seven Elements)

- 11 (1) Seven Elements 634
- 12 (2) With a Source 635
- 13 (3) The Brick Hall 637
- 14 (4) Inferior Disposition 638
- 15 (5) Walking Back and Forth 638
- 16 (6) With Verses 640
- 17 (7) Lacking Faith 641
- 18 (8) Rooted in those Lacking Faith 641
- 19 (9) Rooted in the Shameless 641
- 20 (10) Rooted in those Unafraid of Wrongdoing 642
- 21 (11) Rooted in the Unlearned 642
- 22 (12) Rooted in the Lazy 643

##### III. Courses of Kamma

- 23 (1) Unconcentrated 643
- 24 (2) Immoral 643
- 25 (3) The Five Training Rules 644
- 26 (4) Seven Courses of Kamma 644

- 27 (5) Ten Courses of Kamma 644
- 28 (6) The Eightfold Path 645
- 29 (7) Ten Factors 645

##### IV. The Fourth Subchapter (The Four Elements)

- 30 (1) Four Elements 645
- 31 (2) Before My Enlightenment 645
- 32 (3) I Set Out 646
- 33 (4) If There Were No 647
- 34 (5) Exclusively Suffering 648
- 35 (6) Delight 648
- 36 (7) Arising 649
- 37 (8) Ascetics and Brahmins (1) 649
- 38 (9) Ascetics and Brahmins (2) 649
- 39 (10) Ascetics and Brahmins (3) 650

### Chapter IV

#### 15 *Anamataggasaṃyutta*

#### Connected Discourses on Without Discoverable Beginning

##### I. The First Subchapter (Grass and Wood)

- 1 (1) Grass and Wood 651
- 2 (2) The Earth 652
- 3 (3) Tears 652
- 4 (4) Mother's Milk 653
- 5 (5) The Mountain 654
- 6 (6) The Mustard Seed 654
- 7 (7) Disciples 655
- 8 (8) The River Ganges 655
- 9 (9) The Stick 656
- 10 (10) Person 656

##### II. The Second Subchapter (Unfortunate)

- 11 (1) Unfortunate 657
- 12 (2) Happy 658
- 13 (3) Thirty Bhikkhus 658
- 14 (4)–19 (9) Mother, Etc. 659
- 20 (10) Mount Vepulla 659

## Chapter V

16 *Kassapasamyutta*

## Connected Discourses with Kassapa

- 1 Content 662
- 2 Unafraid of Wrongdoing 663
- 3 Like the Moon 664
- 4 A Visitor of Families 665
- 5 Old 666
- 6 Exhortation (1) 667
- 7 Exhortation (2) 669
- 8 Exhortation (3) 670
- 9 Jhānas and Direct Knowledges 671
- 10 The Bhikkhunis' Quarters 674
- 11 The Robe 676
- 12 After Death 679
- 13 The Counterfeit of the True Dhamma 680

## Chapter VI

17 *Lābhasakkārasamyutta*

## Connected Discourses on Gains and Honour

## I. The First Subchapter (Dreadful)

- 1 (1) Dreadful 682
- 2 (2) The Hook 682
- 3 (3) The Turtle 683
- 4 (4) The Long-Haired Goat 683
- 5 (5) The Dung Beetle 684
- 6 (6) The Thunderbolt 684
- 7 (7) The Poisoned Dart 685
- 8 (8) The Jackal 685
- 9 (9) The Gale Winds 685
- 10 (10) With Verses 686

## II. The Second Subchapter (The Bowl)

- 11 (1) Golden Bowl 687
- 12 (2) Silver Bowl 687
- 13 (3)–20 (10) *Suvaṇṇanikkha*, Etc. 687

## III. The Third Subchapter (A Woman)

- 21 (1) A Woman 688
- 22 (2) The Most Beautiful Girl of the Land 688
- 23 (3) Only Son 688
- 24 (4) Only Daughter 689
- 25 (5) Ascetics and Brahmins (1) 689
- 26 (6) Ascetics and Brahmins (2) 689
- 27 (7) Ascetics and Brahmins (3) 690
- 28 (8) Skin 690
- 29 (9) The Rope 690
- 30 (10) The Bhikkhu 691

## IV. The Fourth Subchapter (Schism in the Saṅgha)

- 31 (1) Schism 691
- 32 (2) Wholesome Root 691
- 33 (3) Wholesome Nature 692
- 34 (4) Bright Nature 692
- 35 (5) Not Long After He Left 692
- 36 (6) Five Hundred Carts 692
- 37 (7)–43 (13) *Mother Sutta*, Etc. 693

## Chapter VII

18 *Rāhulasamyutta*

## Connected Discourses with Rāhula

## I. The First Subchapter

- 1 (1) The Eye, Etc. 694
- 2 (2) Forms, Etc. 695
- 3 (3) Consciousness 695
- 4 (4) Contact 695
- 5 (5) Feeling 695
- 6 (6) Perception 696
- 7 (7) Volition 696
- 8 (8) Craving 696
- 9 (9) Elements 697
- 10 (10) Aggregates 697

## II. The Second Subchapter

- 11 (1)–20 (10) *The Eye*, Etc. 697

- 21 (11) Underlying Tendency 698  
22 (12) Rid Of 698

## Chapter VIII

19 *Lakkhaṇasamyutta*

## Connected Discourses with Lakkhaṇa

## I. The First Subchapter

- 1 (1) The Skeleton 700  
2 (2) The Piece of Meat 701  
3 (3) The Lump of Meat 701  
4 (4) The Flayed Man 702  
5 (5) Sword Hairs 702  
6 (6) Spear Hairs 702  
7 (7) Arrow Hairs 702  
8 (8) Needle Hairs (1) 702  
9 (9) Needle Hairs (2) 702  
10 (10) Pot Testicles 703

## II. The Second Subchapter

- 11 (1) With Head Submerged 703  
12 (2) The Dung Eater 703  
13 (3) The Flayed Woman 703  
14 (4) The Ugly Woman 704  
15 (5) The Sweltering Woman 704  
16 (6) The Headless Trunk 704  
17 (7) The Evil Bhikkhu 704  
18 (8) The Evil Bhikkhuni 704  
19 (9)–21 (11) The Evil Probationary Nun, Etc. 705

## Chapter IX

20 *Opammasamyutta*

## Connected Discourses with Similes

- 1 The Roof Peak 706  
2 The Fingernail 706  
3 Families 707  
4 Pots of Food 707  
5 The Spear 707  
6 The Archers 708

- 7 The Drum Peg 708  
8 Blocks of Wood 709  
9 The Bull Elephant 710  
10 The Cat 711  
11 The Jackal (1) 712  
12 The Jackal (2) 712

## Chapter X

21 *Bhikkhusamyutta*

## Connected Discourses with Bhikkhus

- 1 Kolita 713  
2 Upatissa 714  
3 The Barrel 714  
4 The Newly Ordained Bhikkhu 716  
5 Sujāta 717  
6 Lakuṇṭaka Bhaddiya 718  
7 Visākha 718  
8 Nanda 719  
9 Tissa 720  
10 A Bhikkhu Named Elder 720  
11 Mahākappina 721  
12 Companions 722

Notes 725

## Introduction

The *Nidānavagga*, The Book of Causation, is named after its first saṃyutta, one of the deep royal saṃyuttas setting forth the radical philosophical vision of early Buddhism. The Vagga contains ten saṃyuttas, of which the first takes up almost half the volume. The other nine deal with less weighty topics, though it is possible the Dhātusaṃyutta, which is also devoted to first principles of Buddhist phenomenology, was intentionally included in the Vagga as a “junior partner” to the Nidānasāṃyutta. While this hypothesis must remain unconfirmable, what is beyond doubt is that with this Vagga we enter upon a very different terrain from that traversed in the Sagāthāvagga, a terrain where precise philosophical exposition takes priority over literary grace, inspirational charm, and moral edification.

Having used the expression “precise philosophical exposition,” however, I must at once qualify it in two respects. First, the word “philosophical” applies to the contents of these saṃyuttas only in the sense that they articulate a body of first principles which disclose the deep underlying structures of actuality, not in the sense that they set out to construct a systematic edifice of thought whose primary appeal is to the intellect. Their disclosures always take place within the framework laid out by the Four Noble Truths, which makes it clear that their primary intent is pragmatic, directed towards the cessation of suffering. They are expounded, not to delineate an intellectually satisfying system of ideas, but to make known those aspects of actuality, deep and hidden, that must be penetrated by wisdom to eradicate the ignorance at the bottom of existential suffering. The suttas are guidelines to seeing and understanding, signposts pointing to what one must see for oneself with direct insight. To regard their

themes as topics for intellectual entertainment and argumentation is to miss the point.

Second, when I use the word "exposition," this should not arouse expectations that the suttas are going to provide us with thorough, systematic, logically progressive treatises of the type we find in the history of Western philosophy. Far to the contrary, what we are presented with is a virtual mosaic of reconnaissance photographs laying bare a landscape that is strange but uncannily familiar. The landscape, ultimately, is our own personal experience, seen in depth and with microscopic precision. Each sutta shows up this landscape from a distinctive angle. Like any photo, the picture given by a single sutta is necessarily limited, taken from a single standpoint and with a narrow point of focus, but in its capacity for revelation it can be stark and powerful. To make sense of the multiple shots offered by the suttas, following one another with hardly a hair's breadth of logical order, we must reshuffle them many times, ponder them deeply, and investigate them closely with wisdom. To arrive at the total picture, or at least at a fuller picture than we possess when we approach the texts in a cursory way, we must consider the suttas in a given saṃyutta in their totality, compare them with parallel discourses in other saṃyuttas, and then try to fit them together, like the pieces in a jigsaw puzzle, into a coherent whole. This is about as far from systematic exposition as one can get, for the purpose is not to gratify the intellect with a fully articulated system but to awaken insight, and such an aim requires a methodology of its own.

### 12. *Nidānasamūyutta*

The *Nidānasamūyutta* collects into one chapter of nine vaggas ninety-three short suttas concerned with dependent origination (*paṭicca-samuppāda*). This chapter might have even been named the *Paṭicca-samuppādasamūyutta*, but the compilers of the canon must have considered such a title too unwieldy and settled upon a more concise designation for it. The word *nidāna* means cause or source, and is sometimes used in a chain of synonyms that includes *hetu*, *samudaya*, and *paccaya*, "cause, origin, condition" (see DN II 57,27 foll.). The word gives its name to the longest sutta in the *Nikāyas* on *paṭicca-samuppāda*, the *Mahānidāna Sutta* (DN No. 15).

Dependent origination is one of the central teachings of early Buddhism, so vital to the teaching as a whole that the Buddha is quoted elsewhere as saying, "One who sees dependent origination sees the Dhamma, and one who sees the Dhamma sees dependent origination" (MN I 190,37–191,2). The ultimate purpose of the teaching on dependent origination is to expose the conditions that sustain the round of rebirths, *saṃsāra*, so as to show what must be done to gain release from the round. Existence within *saṃsāra* is suffering and bondage (*dukkha*), and hence the ending of suffering requires deliverance from the round. To win deliverance is a matter of unravelling the causal pattern that underlies our bondage, a process that begins with understanding the causal pattern itself. It is dependent origination that defines this causal pattern.

Dependent origination is usually expounded in a sequence of twelve factors (*dvādasāṅga*) joined into a chain of eleven propositions. In the *Nidānasamūyutta* this formula is cited many times. It is expounded in two orders: by way of origination (called *anuloma* or forward sequence), and by way of cessation (called *paṭiloma* or reverse sequence). Sometimes the presentation proceeds from the first factor to the last, sometimes it begins at the end and traces the chain of conditions back to the first. Other suttas pick up the chain somewhere in the middle and work either backwards or forwards. We find the bare formula at 12:1, with formal definitions of the twelve factors in the "analysis of dependent origination" at 12:2. The whole formula in turn exemplifies an abstract structural principle of conditionality, "When this exists, that comes to be; with the arising of this, that arises. When this does not exist, that does not come to be; with the cessation of this, that ceases" (for references, see II, n. 14). This structural principle can be given different applications than those found in the formula of dependent origination, and indeed underlies almost every aspect of the Buddha's teaching, from his ideas about social reformation to his outline of the path to *Nibbāna*.

To hope to find in the *Nidānasamūyutta* a clear explanation of the sequence of conditions, as we might expect from a modern textbook on the subject, is to court disappointment. The formula preserved in the texts is stripped to the bone, perhaps serving as a mnemonic device, and it seems likely that the original expositions on the topic were fleshed out with elaborations that were

not recorded in the suttas but were transmitted orally within the lineage of teachers. Because the texts lack a clearcut explanation of the formula, modern interpreters of early Buddhism have sometimes devised capricious theories about its original meaning, theories which assume that the Buddhist tradition itself has muddled up the interpretation of this most basic Buddhist doctrine. To avoid the arbitrariness and wilfulness of personal opinion, it seems more prudent to rely on the method of explanation found in the Buddhist exegetical tradition, which despite minor differences in details is largely the same across the spectrum of early Buddhist schools. Here I will give only a concise summary of the interpretation offered by the Pāli tradition.

Because of (i) ignorance (*avijjā*), lack of direct knowledge of the Four Noble Truths, a person engages in volitional actions, wholesome and unwholesome activities of body, speech, and mind; these are (ii) the volitional formations (*saṅkhārā*), in other words, kamma. The volitional formations sustain consciousness from one life to the next and determine where it re-arises; in this way volitional formations condition (iii) consciousness (*viññāna*). Along with consciousness, beginning with the moment of conception, comes (iv) "name-and-form" (*nāmarūpa*), the sentient organism with its physical form (*rūpa*) and its sensitive and cognitive capacities (*nāma*). The sentient organism is equipped with (v) six sense bases (*saḷāyatana*), the five physical sense faculties and the mind as organ of cognition. The sense bases allow (vi) contact (*phassa*) to occur between consciousness and its objects, and contact conditions (vii) feeling (*vedanā*). Called into play by feeling, (viii) craving (*taṇhā*) arises, and when craving intensifies it gives rise to (ix) clinging (*upādāna*), tight attachment to the objects of desire through sensuality and wrong views. Impelled by one's attachments, one again engages in volitional actions pregnant with (x) a new existence (*bhava*). At death this potential for new existence is actualized in a new life beginning with (xi) birth (*jāti*) and ending in (xii) aging-and-death (*jarāmaraṇa*).

From this we can see that the traditional interpretation regards the twelve factors as spread out over a span of three lives, with ignorance and volitional formations pertaining to the past, birth and aging-and-death to the future, and the intermediate factors to the present. The segment from consciousness through feeling is the resultant phase of the present, the phase resulting from past

TABLE 4  
Dependent Origination  
according to the Pāli exegetical tradition

3 Periods	12 Factors	20 Modes and 4 Groups
past	1. ignorance 2. volitional formations	5 past causes: 1, 2, 8, 9, 10
present	3. consciousness 4. name-and-form 5. six sense bases 6. contact 7. feeling	5 present effects: 3, 4, 5, 6, 7
	8. craving 9. clinging 10. existence	5 present causes: 8, 9, 10, 1, 2
future	11. birth 12. aging-and-death	5 future effects: 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

*The two roots*

1. Ignorance (from past to present)
2. Craving (from present to future)

*The three connections*

1. Past causes with present effects (between 2 & 3)
2. Present effects with present causes (between 7 & 8)
3. Present causes with future effects (between 10 & 11)

*The three rounds*

1. The round of defilements: 1, 8, 9
2. The round of kamma: 2, 10 (part)
3. The round of results: 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 10 (part), 11, 12

ignorance and kamma; the segment from craving through active existence is the kammically creative phase of the present, leading to renewed existence in the future. Existence is distinguished into two phases: one, called kamma-existence (*kammabhava*), belongs

to the causal phase of the present; the other, called rebirth-existence (*upapattibhava*), belongs to the resultant phase of the future. The twelve factors are also distributed into three "rounds": the round of defilements (*kilesavaṭṭa*) includes ignorance, craving, and clinging; the round of action (*kammavaṭṭa*) includes volitional formations and kamma-existence; all the other factors belong to the round of results (*vipākavaṭṭa*). Defilements give rise to defiled actions, actions bring forth results, and results serve as the soil for more defilements. In this way the round of rebirths revolves without discernible beginning.

This method of dividing up the factors should not be misconstrued to mean that the past, present, and future factors are mutually exclusive. The distribution into three lives is only an expository device which, for the sake of concision, has to resort to abstraction and oversimplification. As many of the suttas in the *Nidānasamyutta* show, in their dynamic operation groups of factors separated in the formula inevitably become intertwined. Thus whenever there is ignorance, then craving and clinging invariably come along; and whenever there is craving and clinging, then ignorance stands behind them. We might regard the twelve factors as composed of two parallel series defining a single process, the conditioned regeneration of *saṃsāra* from within itself, but doing so from complementary angles. The first series treats ignorance as the root, and shows how ignorance leads to kammic activity (i.e., the volitional formations) and thence to a new existence consisting in the interplay of consciousness and name-and-form. The second series makes craving the root, and shows how craving leads to clinging and kammic activity (i.e., active existence) and thence to the production of a new existence that begins with birth and ends in aging and death. To join the two segments, the factors within name-and-form from which craving arises must be drawn out, and thus we get the three links—the six sense bases, contact, and feeling.

The three-life interpretation of dependent origination has sometimes been branded a commentarial invention on the ground that the suttas themselves do not divide the terms up into different lifetimes. However, while it is true that we do not find in the suttas an explicit distribution of the factors into three lives, close examination of the variants on the standard formula lend strong support to the three-life interpretation. One example is

12:19, where ignorance and craving are first assigned jointly to a past life, giving rise to a new life lived in a conscious body with its six sense bases; and then, in the case of the fool (but not the wise man), ignorance and craving again function as joint causes in the present life to bring about renewed birth and suffering in the future life. A close examination of other variants in this *saṃyutta* would also establish that the series of terms extends over several lives.

The opening *vagga* calls immediate attention to the importance of dependent origination with a string of suttas showing how the seven Buddhas of the past, ending in "our" Buddha Gotama, attained perfect enlightenment by awakening to dependent origination, the eye-opening discovery that ended their long search for the light of wisdom (12:4–10). Later the Buddha gives a more detailed account of his own awakening to dependent origination, where he illustrates his discovery of the Noble Eightfold Path with the beautiful parable of the ancient city (12:65). According to 12:20, the causal connections between the factors operate whether or not Buddhas arise: they are the persistent, stable, invariable laws of actuality. The task of a *Tathāgata* is to discover them, fathom them thoroughly, and then proclaim them to the world. The invariability of the causal law, and the regularity in the arising of Perfectly Enlightened Buddhas, are thus joined into a single order ultimately identical with the *Dhamma* itself.

Several suttas show that dependent origination served the Buddha as a "teaching by the middle" (*majjhena tathāgato dhammam deseti*), enabling him to steer clear of the two extreme views about the human condition that have polarized reflective thought through the centuries. One is the metaphysical thesis of eternalism (*sassatavāda*), which posits a permanent self as the underlying ground of personal existence, a self which, in classical Indian thought, transmigrates from one life to the next while retaining its individual identity. The other extreme is annihilationism (*ucchedavāda*), which holds that the individual can be reduced to the phenomenal personality and that at death, with the dissolution of the body, the person is entirely cut off and annihilated. Both extremes pose insuperable problems, for the one encourages an obstinate clinging to the conditions out of which suffering arises while the other threatens to undermine ethics and to make suffering inexplicable except as the product of

chance. Dependent origination offers a new perspective which rises above the extremes. The teaching shows individual existence to be constituted by a current of conditioned phenomena which is devoid of a metaphysical self, yet which continues from life to life as long as the causes that sustain it remain efficacious. Thereby dependent origination offers a meaningful explanation of the problem of suffering which avoids, on the one hand, the philosophical conundrums posed by the hypothesis of a permanent self, and on the other the dangers of ethical anarchy posed by annihilationism. As long as ignorance and craving remain, the round of rebirths continues on, kamma yields its pleasant and painful fruit, and the great mass of suffering accumulates. With their removal, and only with their removal, can a complete end be made to the whole round of saṃsāric suffering.

The most elegant exposition of dependent origination as the "middle teaching" is without doubt the famous Kaccānagotta Sutta (12:15), in which the Buddha holds up this principle as an alternative to the extremes of existence and nonexistence. Dependent origination provides the key for understanding the arising of suffering as well as pleasure and pain (12:17, 18; see too 12:24–26), and again for cutting through a variety of philosophical antinomies adopted by the thinkers of his era (12:46–48).

Though the twelve-factored formula of dependent origination is the most common expression of the doctrine, the *Nidāna-saṃyutta* introduces a number of little-known variants that help to illuminate the standard version. One is a ten-factored variant in which ignorance and volitional formations are omitted and consciousness and name-and-form become mutually dependent (12:65). This is illustrated by the simile of two sheaves of reeds which support each other and collapse when either is withdrawn (12:67). An interesting sequence of three texts (12:38–40) speaks about the conditions for "the maintenance of consciousness" (*viññāṇassa thitiyā*), that is, how consciousness passes on to a new existence. The causes are said to be the underlying tendencies, i.e., ignorance and craving, and "what one intends and plans," i.e., one's volitional activities. Once consciousness becomes established, the production of a new existence begins, thus showing that we can proceed directly from consciousness (the usual third factor) to existence (the usual tenth factor).

These variants make it plain that the sequence of factors should

not be regarded as a linear causal process in which each preceding factor gives rise to its successor through the simple exercise of efficient causality. The relationship among the factors is always one of complex conditionality rather than linear causation. The conditioning function can include such diverse relations as mutuality (when two factors mutually support each other), necessary antecedence (when one factor must be present for another to arise), distal efficiency (as when a remotely past volitional formation generates consciousness in a new life), etc. Moreover, by contemplating a number of variant texts side by side, we can see that at selected points in the series the links loop back in ways that reinforce the complexity of the process. Thus, while consciousness precedes the six sense bases in the usual formula, at 12:43 and 12:44 the six sense bases are shown to be conditions for consciousness. While consciousness normally precedes craving, 12:64 makes craving (with lust and delight) the condition for the continuation of consciousness and volitional formations the condition for existence.

The positive and negative sequences of dependent origination are expanded definitions of the second and third of the Four Noble Truths, as shown by the variant at 12:43. From the six internal and external sense bases, as we just saw, consciousness arises, and this is followed by contact, feeling, and craving, which is then declared to be the origin of suffering; when craving is abandoned, suffering stops. The next sutta, 12:44, employs a similar pattern to explain the origin and passing away of the world. This reveals dependent origination to be, not a remote and inaccessible metaphysical law, but a process perpetually underpinning our own everyday sensory experience, activated by our responses to the feelings arisen at the six sense bases. As the suttas 12:52–60 show, when attention to the objects of perception is driven by a thirst for gratification, craving is intensified, and this builds up another round of suffering. But when one learns to discern the danger in the objects of clinging, craving ceases, bringing the subsequent factors to a standstill.

In several suttas the formula for dependent origination is integrated with another doctrinal paradigm, that of the four nutriments (*āhāra*). These are the four strong supports for sentient existence, namely, edible food (for the body), contact (for feeling), mental volition (for the production of renewed existence), and

consciousness (for name-and-form). The ideas of nutrition and conditionality closely correspond, both implying the contingency and insubstantiality of all phenomena of existence. Hence it is natural for the formula of the four nutriments to be grafted on to an exposition of dependent origination. In 12:12, in relation to the nutriments, the Buddha repeatedly rejects questions that imply the presence of a substantial subject or agent behind the process of experience. The conditioning factors themselves constitute the ongoing flow of experience, with no need to posit a permanent self as the "someone" at the receiving end of feeling and perception, or at the instigating end of action. 12:63, entirely devoted to the four nutriments with no explicit mention made of dependent origination, introduces four thought-provoking similes to expose the dangers in the four nutriments and to inspire a sense of revulsion towards the whole process of nutrition. Because at least three of the four nutriments are internal to the sentient organism itself, the teaching of the four nutriments implies, at a very deep level, that sentient existence not only requires nutriment from outside but is itself a self-sustaining process of nutrition.

One variant in this *saṃyutta* stands in a class of its own. This is the short but pithy *Upanisā Sutta* (12:23), which shows that the same principle of conditionality that underlies the movement of *samsāra* also undergirds the path to liberation. Each stage of the path arises with its predecessor as a condition or proximate cause, all the way from the initial act of faith to the final knowledge of deliverance. This presentation of the doctrine has sometimes been called "transcendental dependent origination."

Since the round is propelled by craving, and craving is nurtured by ignorance, to break the forward movement of the series ignorance must be replaced by knowledge. With the removal of ignorance all the factors that flow from it—craving, clinging, and *kammic* activity—come to a halt, bringing to an end the round of rebirths with all its attendant suffering. From one angle, as is often shown in the *Nidānasamyutta*, ignorance means not knowing the dependently arisen phenomena, their origin, their cessation, and the way to their cessation (12:14, 49, etc.). Thus the ignorance at the head of the causal series, the ignorance which sustains the forward movement of dependent origination, is nothing other than ignorance about dependent origination itself. From this it follows that the knowledge needed to bring dependent origination to a

stop is just knowledge of how dependent origination works.

Several important suttas in the *Nidānasamyutta* make it clear that dependent origination is not merely an explanatory principle to be accepted on trust but an essential component of the knowledge needed to reach the end of suffering. Often the Buddha states that the connections among the factors are to be directly known, both by way of origination and by way of cessation. They are thus not merely aspects of theory but the content of intuitive insight. To gain this knowledge is to acquire the right view of a noble disciple who has personally seen the truth of the Dhamma and entered the path of a trainee (*sekha*), one bound to reach the Deathless in seven more lives at most, without ever falling away. Direct knowledge of dependent origination is not the unique mark of the arahant—a widespread misconception—but an achievement already reached by the stream-enterer on making "the breakthrough to the Dhamma" (*dhammābhisamaya*). The noble disciple's knowledge of dependent origination has two aspects: one is a direct perception of the relationships between each pair of factors in the present; the other, an inferential knowledge that this fixed order of phenomena holds invariably in the past and future, so that anyone who comprehends dependent origination must comprehend it in exactly the same way that the noble disciple has comprehended it (see 12:33–34). Once the stream-enterer gains this knowledge, attainment of the final goal is irrevocably assured, as is clear from 12:41 and from the paragraph concluding 12:27, 28, and 49–50.

Towards the end of this chapter, in 12:70 we read the story of the wanderer Susima, who entered the order as a "thief of Dhamma" intending to learn the Buddha's teaching to gain advantages for his own company of followers. On being subjected to a catechism by the Buddha on the five aggregates and dependent origination, he underwent a genuine change of heart and confessed his evil intentions. This sutta introduces a class of arahants described as "liberated by wisdom" (*paññāvīmutta*), who have won the final goal by understanding the Dhamma without gaining the supernormal powers or the formless meditations. The sutta also makes it clear that knowledge of the true nature of phenomena, i.e., of the five aggregates and dependent origination, precedes knowledge of Nibbāna.

The *Nidānasamyutta* closes with two *vaggas* cast as repetition

series. Vagga VIII applies the four-truth template of the “ascetics and brahmins” paradigm to each factor of the standard formula (excluding ignorance, implicitly included as the condition for volitional formations). Vagga IX is an “incorporated repetition series,” because each sutta incorporates all eleven factors along with their conditions into an abbreviated text. It is thus implied that each sutta could be “unpacked” by taking each factor with its condition as the subject of a separate sutta, so that the total number of suttas in the vagga would increase from twelve to 132.

### 13. *Abhisamayasaṃyutta*

This *saṃyutta* contains only eleven suttas without division into vaggas. Strangely, the Sinhala edition of SN and its commentary do not count it as a separate *saṃyutta* but treat it as a vagga within the *Nidānasaṃyutta*. This seems difficult to justify, as the suttas make no mention of dependent origination nor do they allude to the chain of causation. Perhaps the Sinhalese redactors included it in the *Nidānasaṃyutta* because the disciple’s breakthrough to stream-entry comes about through the realization of dependent origination. As an explanation, however, this seems inadequate when the suttas do not explicitly mention dependent origination.

The purpose of this *saṃyutta* is to extol the breakthrough to the Dhamma (*dhammābhisamaya*), also called the obtaining of the vision of the Dhamma (*dhammacakkhupaṭilābha*), the event that transforms a person into a noble disciple at the minimum level of stream-enterer. The stream-enterer is one who has obtained the transcendental path leading to Nibbāna and is bound to put an end to saṃsāric wandering after seven more lives at most, all lived in either the heavens or the human world. The first ten suttas are all moulded on the same pattern: the Buddha first contrasts two obviously incommensurate quantities and then compares this disparity with that between the amount of suffering the noble disciple has eliminated and the amount that still remains in the maximum span of seven lives. The last sutta differs in the terms of comparison: here the contrast is between the achievements of the non-Buddhist ascetics and the achievement of the noble disciple who has made the breakthrough, the latter being immensely greater than the former.

### 14. *Dhātusaṃyutta*

This *saṃyutta* consists of thirty-nine suttas, arranged into four vaggas, all concerned in some way with elements. The word “elements” (*dhātu*) is applied to several quite disparate groups of phenomena, and thus the suttas in this chapter fall into separate clusters with nothing in common but their concern with entities called elements. The four vaggas could not be neatly divided into decads each devoted to a different group of elements, for the number of suttas to be included in the middle two vaggas did not allow for this.

The first vagga deals with eighteen elements that make up one of the major models of phenomenological analysis used in the *Nikāyas*, often mentioned alongside the five aggregates and the six internal and external sense bases. The eighteen elements fall into six triads: sense faculties, objects, and corresponding types of consciousness. The denotations of the first five triads seem obvious enough, but unclarity surrounds the last, the triad of mind (*mano*), mental phenomena (*dhammā*), and mind-consciousness (*manoviññāṇa*). Strangely, the *Nikāyas* themselves do not explain the precise referents of these three elements or the nature of their relationship. This is first done in the *Abhidhamma Piṭaka*. In the developed systematic version of the *Abhidhamma*, the mind element is a simpler type of cognitive act than the mind-consciousness element, to which is assigned the more advanced cognitive operations. The mental phenomena element denotes not only objects of mind-consciousness, but also the mental factors that accompany consciousness, included in the aggregates of feeling, perception, and volitional formations (for details see n. 224).

This first vagga is divided into two “pentads” (*pañcaka*): an “internal pentad,” which takes the sense faculties as the point of departure; and an “external pentad,” which begins with the objects. The first sutta really belongs to neither set, as it merely enumerates the eighteen elements. The internal series, which starts with 14:2, shows how successive mental functions—first contact and then feeling—arise in dependence on their predecessors in a fixed order which cannot be inverted. In the external pentad the same mode of treatment is applied to the mental functions that relate more specifically to the objects; the chain here is

more complex and the internal relationships in need of explanation. The explanations offered by the commentary are intended to square apparent irregularities with patterns of relationship accepted as authoritative by the age of the commentators. It is an open question whether these explanations reflect the understanding of the elements held in the earliest phase of Buddhist thought.

The second vagga opens with three suttas on miscellaneous types of elements, not highly systematized. Then there follows a long series of suttas, 14:14–29, in which the word “element” is used in the sense of personal disposition. With respect to numerous contrasting qualities, good and bad, the point is made that people come together because of personal affinities rooted in these qualities. One memorable sutta in this group shows each of the Buddha’s leading disciples walking in the company of fellow monks who share his field of interest; even Devadatta, the miscreant in the Saṅgha, has his own entourage made up of those with evil wishes (14:15).

The fourth vagga focuses upon the four primary elements of physical form: earth, water, heat, and air. The suttas in this vagga are all moulded upon templates, including the gratification triad and the ascetics and brahmins series discussed in the General Introduction (see above, p. 38).

#### 15. *Anamataggasaṃyutta*

The *Anamataggasaṃyutta*, “On Without Discoverable Beginning,” is so called because its theme is the unbounded temporal extent of saṃsāra. The precise meaning of the phrase *anamatagga* is uncertain, the term itself differing in the texts of the early Buddhist schools, but the idea it is intended to suggest is conveyed well enough by the second sentence of the opening homily: that a first point of the round of rebirths cannot be discerned. The underlying purpose of this saṃyutta is to situate the Buddha’s teaching of liberation against its cosmic background by underscoring the immeasurable mass of suffering we have experienced while wandering from life to life in unbounded time, “hindered by ignorance and fettered by craving.”

In sutta after sutta the Buddha illustrates the vastness of saṃsāric suffering with awe-inspiring similes, always drawing the inevitable conclusion that we have experienced the suffering of

repeated birth and death long enough and it is time to strive for ultimate freedom. Four suttas illustrate, by means of memorable similes, the duration of a cosmic aeon (*kappa*), of which countless numbers have elapsed (15:5–8). Sutta 15:10 reinforces the point with its image of the heap of bones one person leaves behind in the course of a single aeon. Particularly stirring is the discourse to the thirty bhikkhus from Pāvā, on the frightful dangers of saṃsāra, a sutta powerful enough to bring all of them to the realization of arahantship right on the spot (15:13). The final sutta in the chapter gives us a retrospective overview of the epochs during which three past Buddhas lived, with some information about conditions of human life during their dispensations.

#### 16. *Kassapasāṃyutta*

Mahākassapa, Kassapa the Great, was named by the Buddha the most eminent disciple in the observance of the ascetic practices (AN I 23,20). Though he did not accompany the Master as regularly as many of the other close disciples did, the Buddha had the highest regard for Kassapa and often spoke in his praise. According to the *Cullavagga* (Vin II 284–85), after the Buddha’s parinibbāna Mahākassapa became the foster father of the newly orphaned Saṅgha and took the initiative in convening a council of elders to rehearse the Dhamma and Discipline. This was a necessary measure to preserve the Buddha’s dispensation for posterity.

This saṃyutta brings together thirteen suttas featuring the great disciple. Though they offer us glimpses into Mahākassapa’s role in the Saṅgha and a sharply sketched portrait of his personality, their underlying purpose is not so much to preserve biographical information as it is to hold up Mahākassapa as a role model for the monks to emulate. In the first sutta the Buddha extols him for his simplicity and frugality and enjoins the monks to imitate him in this respect (16:1). He dwells detached and equanimous, yet is also imbued with compassion, sympathy, and tender concern for householders (16:3, 4). He continues to observe the ascetic practices even in old age, for his own happiness and to set an example for future generations (16:5). The Buddha often asked Kassapa to exhort the bhikkhus, but on three occasions he refuses because the bhikkhus are no longer open to instruction (16:6–8). This introduces a theme that comes to a

crescendo in 16:13: the Buddha's dispensation is already starting to decline, and the cause is not external but internal, namely, corruption within the Saṅgha. In 16:9 the Buddha applauds Kassapa for his mastery over the meditative attainments and the direct knowledges, and in 16:10–11 we are given closeup shots of Kassapa's sometimes stressful relationship with Ānanda. Though his attitude towards the gentle Ānanda seems too stern, we must remember that it was through Kassapa's prodding that Ānanda put forth the effort to win arahantship before the First Buddhist Council. In 16:11 Kassapa relates the story of his first meeting with the Buddha, which culminated in an exchange of robes with the Master. This was an honour not bestowed on any other bhikkhu, and presaged Mahākassapa's future role as a leader of the Saṅgha.

#### 17. *Lābhasakkārasaṃyutta*

The life of a bhikkhu requires the renunciation of sensual pleasures and detachment from the normal round of satisfactions provided by family, livelihood, and an active role in civil society. Precisely because he has dedicated himself to a life of austerity and spiritual self-cultivation, the bhikkhu is liable to be regarded prematurely as a holy man and to be showered with gifts, honour, and praise, especially by pious but ingenuous lay devotees in quest of merit. For an unwary bhikkhu the gains and honour that may unexpectedly pour down on him can cast a spell more subtle and seductive even than the lure of the senses. The bhikkhu interprets the gain and honour as an index of his spiritual worth; the praises sung over his name can inflate his ego to dizzying heights. Thus from gain and honour there may arise conceit, self-exaltation, and contempt for others—all stumbling blocks along the path to the "unsurpassed security from bondage."

To protect the bhikkhus from losing sight of their goal, the Buddha often warned them about the dangers in gain, honour, and praise. The present saṃyutta collects forty-three suttas on this theme. The tone of the discourses is unusually grave: one attached to gain and honour is like a fish caught on a baited hook, like a turtle hit by a harpoon, like a goat caught in a thorny briar patch (17:2–4). Even a man who earlier would not tell a deliberate lie to save his life might later lie to win gain and hon-

our (17:19), and some would even sacrifice their mother for such rewards (17:37). But humour is not lacking: one text compares the monk revelling in his gain and honour to a dung beetle revelling in a heap of dung (17:5). The last vagga exhibits Devadatta as a notorious example of one who fell away from the spiritual life owing to hunger for gain, honour, and praise.

#### 18. *Rāhulasāmyutta*

Rāhula was the Buddha's son, born shortly before he left the household life to embark on his quest for enlightenment. When the Buddha returned to his native city of Kapilavatthu in the first year after the enlightenment, he had Rāhula ordained as a novice, and thereafter often gave him instruction. Three longer suttas to Rāhula are found in the Majjhima Nikāya (MN Nos. 61, 62, and 147, the latter identical with SN 35:121). The Rāhulasāmyutta collects twenty-two short texts arranged in two vaggas. The first ten explain the three characteristics in relation to ten groups of phenomena: the six internal sense bases; the six external sense bases; the six classes each of consciousness, contact, feeling, perception, volition, and craving; the six elements; and the five aggregates. They are addressed to Rāhula in response to a request for instruction. The first ten suttas of the second vagga show the Buddha speaking the same ten suttas to Rāhula, but this time on his own initiative. Two additional suttas give instructions on how to eradicate the sense of "I" and "mine" and the tendency to conceit.

#### 19. *Lakkhaṇasaṃyutta*

Although this saṃyutta is named after the elder Lakkhaṇa, his role is to serve as a foil for Mahāmoggallāna, the disciple who excelled in the exercise of psychic powers. Each sutta is constructed according to the same format, in which Moggallāna describes the sufferings of a *peta* or tormented spirit, whom he has seen with supernormal vision, and the Buddha confirms the truth of his vision, giving an explanation of the kammic cause that underlies such misery. Here, as in the printed editions of the Pāli text, the first sutta alone is given in full and thereafter only the variations are recorded. The last five suttas deliver a stern

message to miscreant monks and nuns, perhaps reflecting modes of misbehaviour that were becoming increasingly manifest in the Saṅgha.

#### 20. *Opammasaṃyutta*

This *saṃyutta* contains twelve suttas touching on miscellaneous topics mostly related to the training of the bhikkhus. Though the topics are diverse, each sutta incorporates an extended simile and it is on this basis that they are brought together into one *saṃyutta*. The themes that emerge include the rarity of human birth, the blessings of developing lovingkindness, the impermanence of life, and the need for constant diligence. In this collection we also find the Buddha's prophecy of how the Dhamma will decline when the bhikkhus neglect the deep suttas dealing with emptiness in favour of works composed by poets "with beautiful words and phrases."

#### 21. *Bhikkhusaṃyutta*

This *saṃyutta* collects twelve miscellaneous suttas spoken by or about individual bhikkhus. It is noteworthy that, apart from the first two texts, all the others contain verses, and this arouses suspicion that the *saṃyutta* originally belonged to the *Sagāthāvagga*. Indeed, in the Chinese translation of the *Saṃyuktāgama*, the *Bhikkhusaṃyutta* is found in the *Sagāthāvagga*, coming just before the *Bhikkhunisaṃyutta*. Perhaps at some point in the transmission of the Pāli version the redactors added two verseless suttas on *Moggallāna* and *Sāriputta*, and then, in consequence, had to transpose the whole *saṃyutta* from Part I to Part II. In the midst of the suttas on famous elders there is one addressed to an otherwise unknown bhikkhu named Elder (a fictitious name?) offering pithy instruction on the real meaning of solitude.

### [1] PART II: The Book of Causation (*Nidānavagga*)

*Homage to the Blessed One,  
the Arahant, the Perfectly Enlightened One*

#### Chapter I

### 12 *Nidānasam̐yutta*

## Connected Discourses on Causation

#### I. THE BUDDHAS

##### 1 (1) *Dependent Origination*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvattī in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. There the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Bhikkhus!"

"Venerable sir!" those bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

"Bhikkhus, I will teach you dependent origination. Listen to that and attend closely, I will speak." – "Yes, venerable sir," those bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

"And what, bhikkhus, is dependent origination? With ignorance as condition, volitional formations [come to be];<sup>1</sup> with volitional formations as condition, consciousness; with consciousness as condition, name-and-form; with name-and-form as condition, the six sense bases; with the six sense bases as condition, contact; with contact as condition, feeling; with feeling as condition, craving; with craving as condition, clinging; with clinging as condition, existence; with existence as condition, birth; with birth as condition, aging-and-death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair come to be. Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering. This, bhikkhus, is called dependent origination.

"But with the remainderless fading away and cessation of ignorance comes cessation of volitional formations; [2] with the cessation of volitional formations, cessation of consciousness; with the cessation of consciousness, cessation of name-and-form; with the cessation of name-and-form, cessation of the six sense bases; with the cessation of the six sense bases, cessation of contact; with the cessation of contact, cessation of feeling; with the cessation of feeling, cessation of craving; with the cessation of craving, cessation of clinging; with the cessation of clinging, cessation of existence; with the cessation of existence, cessation of birth; with the cessation of birth, aging-and-death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair cease. Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering."

This is what the Blessed One said. Elated, those bhikkhus delighted in the Blessed One's statement.

## 2 (2) *Analysis of Dependent Origination*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, I will teach you dependent origination and I will analyse it for you. Listen to that and attend closely, I will speak."

"Yes, venerable sir," those bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

"And what, bhikkhus, is dependent origination? With ignorance as condition, volitional formations [come to be]; with volitional formations, consciousness ... (*as in preceding sutta*) ... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering.

"And what, bhikkhus, is aging-and-death? The aging of the various beings in the various orders of beings, their growing old, brokenness of teeth, greyness of hair, wrinkling of skin, decline of vitality, degeneration of the faculties: this is called aging. [3] The passing away of the various beings from the various orders of beings, their perishing, breakup, disappearance, mortality, death, completion of time, the breakup of the aggregates, the laying down of the carcass: this is called death.<sup>2</sup> Thus this aging and this death are together called aging-and-death.

"And what, bhikkhus, is birth? The birth of the various beings into the various orders of beings, their being born, descent [into the womb], production, the manifestation of the aggregates, the obtaining of the sense bases. This is called birth.<sup>3</sup>

"And what, bhikkhus, is existence? There are these three kinds of existence: sense-sphere existence, form-sphere existence, formless-sphere existence. This is called existence.<sup>4</sup>

"And what, bhikkhus, is clinging? There are these four kinds of clinging: clinging to sensual pleasures, clinging to views, clinging to rules and vows, clinging to a doctrine of self. This is called clinging.<sup>5</sup>

"And what, bhikkhus, is craving? There are these six classes of craving: craving for forms, craving for sounds, craving for odours, craving for tastes, craving for tactile objects, craving for mental phenomena. This is called craving.

"And what, bhikkhus, is feeling? There are these six classes of feeling: feeling born of eye-contact, feeling born of ear-contact, feeling born of nose-contact, feeling born of tongue-contact, feeling born of body-contact, feeling born of mind-contact. This is called feeling.

"And what, bhikkhus, is contact? There are these six classes of contact: eye-contact, ear-contact, nose-contact, tongue-contact, body-contact, mind-contact. This is called contact.

"And what, bhikkhus, are the six sense bases? The eye base, the ear base, the nose base, the tongue base, the body base, the mind base. These are called the six sense bases.

"And what, bhikkhus, is name-and-form? Feeling, perception, volition, contact, attention: this is called name. The four [4] great elements and the form derived from the four great elements: this is called form. Thus this name and this form are together called name-and-form.<sup>6</sup>

"And what, bhikkhus, is consciousness? There are these six classes of consciousness: eye-consciousness, ear-consciousness, nose-consciousness, tongue-consciousness, body-consciousness, mind-consciousness. This is called consciousness.

"And what, bhikkhus, are the volitional formations? There are these three kinds of volitional formations: the bodily volitional formation, the verbal volitional formation, the mental volitional formation. These are called the volitional formations.<sup>7</sup>

"And what, bhikkhus, is ignorance? Not knowing suffering, not knowing the origin of suffering, not knowing the cessation of suffering, not knowing the way leading to the cessation of suffering. This is called ignorance.<sup>8</sup>

"Thus, bhikkhus, with ignorance as condition, volitional for-

mations [come to be]; with volitional formations as condition, consciousness.... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering. But with the remainderless fading away and cessation of ignorance comes cessation of volitional formations; with the cessation of volitional formations, cessation of consciousness.... Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering."<sup>9</sup>

3 (3) *The Two Ways*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, I will teach you the wrong way and the right way. Listen to that and attend closely, I will speak."

"Yes, venerable sir," those bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

"And what, bhikkhus, is the wrong way? With ignorance as condition, volitional formations [come to be]; with volitional formations as condition, consciousness.... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering. This, bhikkhus, is called the wrong way. [5]

"And what, bhikkhus, is the right way? With the remainderless fading away and cessation of ignorance comes cessation of volitional formations; with the cessation of volitional formations, cessation of consciousness.... Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering. This, bhikkhus, is called the right way."

4 (4) *Vipassī*

At Sāvatti.<sup>10</sup>

"Bhikkhus, before his enlightenment, while he was still a bodhisatta,<sup>11</sup> not yet fully enlightened, it occurred to Vipassī, the Blessed One, the Arahant, the Perfectly Enlightened One:<sup>12</sup> 'Alas, this world has fallen into trouble, in that it is born, ages, and dies, it passes away and is reborn, yet it does not understand the escape from this suffering [headed by] aging-and-death. When now will an escape be discerned from this suffering [headed by] aging-and-death?' ... [6-9] ...

"'Cessation, cessation'—thus, bhikkhus, in regard to things unheard before there arose in the Bodhisatta Vipassī vision, knowledge, wisdom, true knowledge, and light."

5 (5) *Sikhī*

6 (6) *Vessabhū*

7 (7) *Kakusandha*

8 (8) *Koṇāgamana*

9 (9) *Kassapa*

[10]

10 (10) *Gotama the Great Sakyan Sage*

## (i. Origination)

"Bhikkhus, before my enlightenment, while I was still a bodhisatta, not yet fully enlightened, it occurred to me: 'Alas, this world has fallen into trouble, in that it is born, ages, and dies, it passes away and is reborn, yet it does not understand the escape from this suffering [headed by] aging-and-death. When now will an escape be discerned from this suffering [headed by] aging-and-death?'

"Then, bhikkhus, it occurred to me: 'When what exists does aging-and-death come to be? By what is aging-and-death conditioned?' Then, bhikkhus, through careful attention, there took place in me a breakthrough by wisdom:<sup>13</sup> 'When there is birth, aging-and-death comes to be; aging-and-death has birth as its condition.'<sup>14</sup>

"Then, bhikkhus, it occurred to me: 'When what exists does birth come to be? By what is birth conditioned?' Then, bhikkhus, through careful attention, there took place in me a breakthrough by wisdom: 'When there is existence, birth comes to be; birth has existence as its condition.'

"Then, bhikkhus, it occurred to me: 'When what exists does existence come to be? By what is existence conditioned?' Then, bhikkhus, through careful attention, there took place in me a breakthrough by wisdom: 'When there is clinging, existence comes to be; existence has clinging as its condition.'

"Then, bhikkhus, it occurred to me: 'When what exists does clinging come to be? By what is clinging conditioned?' Then, bhikkhus, through careful attention, there took place in me a breakthrough by wisdom: 'When there is craving, clinging comes to be; clinging has craving as its condition.'

"Then, bhikkhus, it occurred to me: 'When what exists does craving come to be? By what is craving conditioned?' Then,

bhikkhus, through careful attention, there took place in me a breakthrough by wisdom: 'When there is feeling, craving comes to be; craving has feeling as its condition.'

"Then, bhikkhus, it occurred to me: 'When what exists does feeling come to be? By what is feeling conditioned?' Then, bhikkhus, through careful attention, there took place in me a breakthrough by wisdom: 'When there is contact, feeling comes to be; feeling has contact as its condition.'

"Then, bhikkhus, it occurred to me: 'When what exists does contact come to be? By what is contact conditioned?' Then, bhikkhus, through careful attention, there took place in me a breakthrough by wisdom: 'When there are the six sense bases, contact comes to be; contact has the six sense bases as its condition.'

"Then, bhikkhus, it occurred to me: 'When what exists do the six sense bases come to be? By what are the six sense bases conditioned?' Then, bhikkhus, through careful attention, there took place in me a breakthrough by wisdom: 'When there is name-and-form, the six sense bases come to be; the six sense bases have name-and-form as their condition.'

"Then, bhikkhus, it occurred to me: 'When what exists does name-and-form come to be? By what is name-and-form conditioned?' Then, bhikkhus, through careful attention, there took place in me a breakthrough by wisdom: 'When there is consciousness, name-and-form comes to be; name-and-form has consciousness as its condition.'

"Then, bhikkhus, it occurred to me: 'When what exists does consciousness come to be? By what is consciousness conditioned?' Then, bhikkhus, through careful attention, there took place in me a breakthrough by wisdom: 'When there are volitional formations, consciousness comes to be; consciousness has volitional formations as its condition.'<sup>15</sup>

"Then, bhikkhus, it occurred to me: 'When what exists do volitional formations come to be? By what are volitional formations conditioned?' Then, bhikkhus, through careful attention, there took place in me a breakthrough by wisdom: 'When there is ignorance, volitional formations come to be; volitional formations have ignorance as their condition.'

"Thus with ignorance as condition, volitional formations [come to be]; with volitional formations as condition, consciousness.... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering.

"'Origination, origination'—thus, bhikkhus, in regard to things unheard before there arose in me vision, knowledge, wisdom, true knowledge, and light.<sup>16</sup>

(ii. Cessation)

"Then, bhikkhus, it occurred to me: 'When what does not exist does aging-and-death not come to be? With the cessation of what does the cessation of aging-and-death come about?' Then, bhikkhus, through careful attention, there took place in me a breakthrough by wisdom: 'When there is no birth, aging-and-death does not come to be; with the cessation of birth comes cessation of aging-and-death.'

"Then, bhikkhus, it occurred to me: [11] 'When what does not exist does birth not come to be? By the cessation of what does the cessation of birth come about?' Then, bhikkhus, through careful attention, there took place in me a breakthrough by wisdom: 'When there is no existence, birth does not come to be; with the cessation of existence comes cessation of birth.'... 'When there is no clinging, existence does not come to be; with the cessation of clinging comes cessation of existence.'... 'When there is no craving, clinging does not come to be; with the cessation of craving comes cessation of clinging.'... 'When there is no feeling, craving does not come to be; with the cessation of feeling comes cessation of craving.'... 'When there is no contact, feeling does not come to be; with the cessation of contact comes cessation of feeling.'... 'When there are no six sense bases, contact does not come to be; with the cessation of the six sense bases comes cessation of contact.'... 'When there is no name-and-form, the six sense bases do not come to be; with the cessation of name-and-form comes cessation of the six sense bases.'... 'When there is no consciousness, name-and-form does not come to be; with the cessation of consciousness comes cessation of name-and-form.'... 'When there are no volitional formations, consciousness does not come to be; with the cessation of volitional formations comes cessation of consciousness.'... 'When there is no ignorance, volitional formations do not come to be; with the cessation of ignorance comes cessation of volitional formations.'

"Thus with the remainderless fading away and cessation of ignorance comes cessation of volitional formations; with the cessation of volitional formations, cessation of consciousness....

Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering.

“Cessation, cessation’—thus, bhikkhus, in regard to things unheard before there arose in me vision, knowledge, wisdom, true knowledge, and light.”

## II. NUTRIMENT

### 11 (1) *Nutriments*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvattī in Jeta’s Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika’s Park....

“Bhikkhus, there are these four kinds of nutriment for the maintenance of beings that have already come to be and for the assistance of those about to come to be.<sup>17</sup> What four? The nutriment edible food, gross or subtle; second, contact; third, mental volition; fourth, consciousness. These are the four kinds of nutriment for the maintenance of beings that have already come to be and for the assistance of those about to come to be.<sup>18</sup>

“Bhikkhus, these four kinds of nutriment have what as their source, [12] what as their origin, from what are they born and produced? These four kinds of nutriment have craving as their source, craving as their origin; they are born and produced from craving.<sup>19</sup>

“And this craving has what as its source, what as its origin, from what is it born and produced? This craving has feeling as its source, feeling as its origin; it is born and produced from feeling.

“And this feeling has what as its source...? Feeling has contact as its source.... And this contact has what as its source...? Contact has the six sense bases as its source.... And these six sense bases have what as their source...? The six sense bases have name-and-form as their source.... And this name-and-form has what as its source...? Name-and-form has consciousness as its source.... And this consciousness has what as its source...? Consciousness has volitional formations as its source.... And these volitional formations have what as their source, what as their origin, from what are they born and produced? Volitional formations have ignorance as their source, ignorance as their origin; they are born and produced from ignorance.

“Thus, bhikkhus, with ignorance as condition, volitional formations [come to be]; with volitional formations as condition,

consciousness.... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering. But with the remainderless fading away and cessation of ignorance comes cessation of volitional formations; with the cessation of volitional formations, cessation of consciousness.... Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering.”

### 12 (2) *Moliyaphagguna*

At Sāvattī. [13] “Bhikkhus, there are these four kinds of nutriment for the maintenance of beings that have already come to be and for the assistance of those about to come to be. What four? The nutriment edible food, gross or subtle; second, contact; third, mental volition; fourth, consciousness. These are the four kinds of nutriment for the maintenance of beings that have already come to be and for the assistance of those about to come to be.”<sup>20</sup>

When this was said, the Venerable Moliyaphagguna said to the Blessed One: “Venerable sir, who consumes the nutriment consciousness?”<sup>21</sup>

“Not a valid question,” the Blessed One replied. “I do not say, ‘One consumes.’<sup>22</sup> If I should say, ‘One consumes,’ in that case this would be a valid question: ‘Venerable sir, who consumes?’ But I do not speak thus. Since I do not speak thus, if one should ask me, ‘Venerable sir, for what is the nutriment consciousness [a condition]?’<sup>23</sup> this would be a valid question. To this the valid answer is: ‘The nutriment consciousness is a condition for the production of future renewed existence.<sup>24</sup> When that which has come into being exists, the six sense bases [come to be];<sup>25</sup> with the six sense bases as condition, contact.’”

“Venerable sir, who makes contact?”

“Not a valid question,” the Blessed One replied. “I do not say, ‘One makes contact.’ If I should say, ‘One makes contact,’ in that case this would be a valid question: ‘Venerable sir, who makes contact?’ But I do not speak thus. Since I do not speak thus, if one should ask me, ‘Venerable sir, with what as condition does contact [come to be]?’ this would be a valid question. To this the valid answer is: ‘With the six sense bases as condition, contact [comes to be]; with contact as condition, feeling.’”

“Venerable sir, who feels?”

“Not a valid question,” the Blessed One replied. “I do not say, ‘One feels.’ If I should say, ‘One feels,’ in that case this would be a

valid question: 'Venerable sir, who feels?' But I do not speak thus. Since I do not speak thus, if one should ask me, 'Venerable sir, with what as condition does feeling [come to be]?' this would be a valid question. To this the valid answer is: 'With contact as condition, feeling [comes to be]; with feeling as condition, craving.'"

"Venerable sir, who craves?"

"Not a valid question," the Blessed One replied. "I do not say, 'One craves.' [14] If I should say, 'One craves,' in that case this would be a valid question: 'Venerable sir, who craves?' But I do not speak thus. Since I do not speak thus, if one should ask me, 'Venerable sir, with what as condition does craving [come to be]?' this would be a valid question. To this the valid answer is: 'With feeling as condition, craving [comes to be]; with craving as condition, clinging; with clinging as condition, existence....<sup>26</sup> Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering.'

"But, Phagguna, with the remainderless fading away and cessation of the six bases for contact comes cessation of contact; with the cessation of contact, cessation of feeling; with the cessation of feeling, cessation of craving; with the cessation of craving, cessation of clinging; with the cessation of clinging, cessation of existence; with the cessation of existence, cessation of birth; with the cessation of birth, aging-and-death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair cease. Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering."

### 13 (3) *Ascetics and Brahmins* (1)

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, those ascetics or brahmins who do not understand aging-and-death, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation;<sup>27</sup> who do not understand birth ... existence ... clinging ... craving ... feeling ... contact ... the six sense bases ... name-and-form ... consciousness ... volitional formations, their origin, their cessation, and the way leading to their cessation: [15] these I do not consider to be ascetics among ascetics or brahmins among brahmins, and these venerable ones do not, by realizing it for themselves with direct knowledge, in this very life enter and dwell in the goal of asceticism or the goal of brahminhood.<sup>28</sup>

"But, bhikkhus, those ascetics and brahmins who understand aging-and-death, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to

its cessation; who understand birth ... volitional formations, their origin, their cessation, and the way leading to their cessation: these I consider to be ascetics among ascetics and brahmins among brahmins, and these venerable ones, by realizing it for themselves with direct knowledge, in this very life enter and dwell in the goal of asceticism and the goal of brahminhood."

### 14 (4) *Ascetics and Brahmins* (2)

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, as to those ascetics and brahmins who do not understand these things, the origin of these things, the cessation of these things, and the way leading to the cessation of these things: what are those things that they do not understand, whose origin they do not understand, whose cessation they do not understand, and the way leading to whose cessation they do not understand?

"They do not understand aging-and-death, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation. They do not understand birth ... existence ... clinging ... craving ... feeling ... contact ... the six sense bases ... name-and-form ... consciousness ... volitional formations, their origin, their cessation, and the way leading to their cessation. These are the things that they do not understand, whose origin they do not understand, [16] whose cessation they do not understand, and the way leading to whose cessation they do not understand.

"These I do not consider to be ascetics among ascetics or brahmins among brahmins, and these venerable ones do not, by realizing it for themselves with direct knowledge, in this very life enter and dwell in the goal of asceticism or the goal of brahminhood.

"But, bhikkhus, as to those ascetics and brahmins who understand these things, the origin of these things, the cessation of these things, and the way leading to the cessation of these things: what are those things that they understand, whose origin they understand, whose cessation they understand, and the way leading to whose cessation they understand?

"They understand aging-and-death, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation. They understand birth ... volitional formations, their origin, their cessation, and the way leading to their cessation. These are the things that they understand,

whose origin they understand, whose cessation they understand, and the way leading to whose cessation they understand.

"These I consider to be ascetics among ascetics and brahmins among brahmins, and these venerable ones, by realizing it for themselves with direct knowledge, in this very life enter and dwell in the goal of asceticism and the goal of brahminhood."

15 (5) *Kaccānagotta*

At Sāvattthi. [17] Then the Venerable Kaccānagotta approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and said to him: "Venerable sir, it is said, 'right view, right view.' In what way, venerable sir, is there right view?"

"This world, Kaccāna, for the most part depends upon a duality—upon the notion of existence and the notion of nonexistence.<sup>29</sup> But for one who sees the origin of the world as it really is with correct wisdom, there is no notion of nonexistence in regard to the world. And for one who sees the cessation of the world as it really is with correct wisdom, there is no notion of existence in regard to the world.<sup>30</sup>

"This world, Kaccāna, is for the most part shackled by engagement, clinging, and adherence.<sup>31</sup> But this one [with right view] does not become engaged and cling through that engagement and clinging, mental standpoint, adherence, underlying tendency; he does not take a stand about 'my self.'<sup>32</sup> He has no perplexity or doubt that what arises is only suffering arising, what ceases is only suffering ceasing. His knowledge about this is independent of others. It is in this way, Kaccāna, that there is right view.<sup>33</sup>

"'All exists': Kaccāna, this is one extreme. 'All does not exist': this is the second extreme. Without veering towards either of these extremes, the Tathāgata teaches the Dhamma by the middle: 'With ignorance as condition, volitional formations [come to be]; with volitional formations as condition, consciousness.... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering. But with the remainderless fading away and cessation of ignorance comes cessation of volitional formations; with the cessation of volitional formations, cessation of consciousness.... Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering.'" [18]

16 (6) *A Speaker on the Dhamma*

At Sāvattthi. Then a certain bhikkhu approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and said to him: "Venerable sir, it is said, 'a speaker on the Dhamma, a speaker on the Dhamma.' In what way, venerable sir, is one a speaker on the Dhamma?"

"Bhikkhu, if one teaches the Dhamma for the purpose of revulsion towards aging-and-death, for its fading away and cessation, one is fit to be called a bhikkhu who is a speaker on the Dhamma. If one is practising for the purpose of revulsion towards aging-and-death, for its fading away and cessation, one is fit to be called a bhikkhu who is practising in accordance with the Dhamma.<sup>34</sup> If, through revulsion towards aging-and-death, through its fading away and cessation, one is liberated by nonclinging, one is fit to be called a bhikkhu who has attained Nibbāna in this very life.<sup>35</sup>

"Bhikkhu, if one teaches the Dhamma for the purpose of revulsion towards birth ... for the purpose of revulsion towards ignorance, for its fading away and cessation, one is fit to be called a bhikkhu who is a speaker on the Dhamma. If one is practising for the purpose of revulsion towards ignorance, for its fading away and cessation, one is fit to be called a bhikkhu who is practising in accordance with the Dhamma. If, through revulsion towards ignorance, through its fading away and cessation, one is liberated by nonclinging, one is fit to be called a bhikkhu who has attained Nibbāna in this very life."

17 (7) *The Naked Ascetic Kassapa*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary. [19] Then, in the morning, the Blessed One dressed and, taking bowl and robe, entered Rājagaha for alms. The naked ascetic Kassapa saw the Blessed One coming in the distance. Having seen him, he approached the Blessed One and exchanged greetings with him. When they had concluded their greetings and cordial talk, he stood to one side and said to him: "We would like to ask Master Gotama about a certain point, if he would grant us the favour of answering our question."

"This is not the right time for a question, Kassapa. We have entered among the houses."<sup>36</sup>

A second time and a third time the naked ascetic Kassapa said to the Blessed One: "We would like to ask Master Gotama about a certain point, if he would grant us the favour of answering our question."

"This is not the right time for a question, Kassapa. We have entered among the houses."

Then the naked ascetic Kassapa said to the Blessed One: "We do not wish to ask Master Gotama much."

"Then ask what you want, Kassapa."

"How is it, Master Gotama: is suffering created by oneself?"

"Not so, Kassapa," the Blessed One said.

"Then, Master Gotama, is suffering created by another?"

"Not so, Kassapa," the Blessed One said.

"How is it then, Master Gotama: is suffering created both by oneself and by another?"

"Not so, Kassapa," the Blessed One said. [20]

"Then, Master Gotama, has suffering arisen fortuitously, being created neither by oneself nor by another?"<sup>37</sup>

"Not so, Kassapa," the Blessed One said.

"How is it then, Master Gotama: is there no suffering?"

"It is not that there is no suffering, Kassapa; there is suffering."

"Then is it that Master Gotama does not know and see suffering?"

"It is not that I do not know and see suffering, Kassapa. I know suffering, I see suffering."

"Whether you are asked: 'How is it, Master Gotama: is suffering created by oneself?' or 'Is it created by another?' or 'Is it created by both?' or 'Is it created by neither?' in each case you say: 'Not so, Kassapa.' When you are asked: 'How is it then, Master Gotama: is there no suffering?' you say: 'It is not that there is no suffering, Kassapa; there is suffering.' When asked: 'Then is it that Master Gotama does not know and see suffering?' you say: 'It is not that I do not know and see suffering, Kassapa. I know suffering, I see suffering.' Venerable sir, let the Blessed One explain suffering to me. Let the Blessed One teach me about suffering."<sup>38</sup>

"Kassapa, [if one thinks,] 'The one who acts is the same as the one who experiences [the result],' [then one asserts] with reference to one existing from the beginning: 'Suffering is created by

oneself.' When one asserts thus, this amounts to eternalism.<sup>39</sup> But, Kassapa, [if one thinks,] 'The one who acts is one, the one who experiences [the result] is another,' [then one asserts] with reference to one stricken by feeling: 'Suffering is created by another.' When one asserts thus, this amounts to annihilationism.<sup>40</sup> Without veering towards either of these extremes, the Tathāgata teaches the Dhamma by the middle:<sup>41</sup> 'With ignorance as condition, volitional formations [come to be]; with volitional formations as condition, consciousness.... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering. [21] But with the remainderless fading away and cessation of ignorance comes cessation of volitional formations; with the cessation of volitional formations, cessation of consciousness.... Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering.'"

When this was said, the naked ascetic Kassapa said to the Blessed One: "Magnificent, venerable sir! Magnificent, venerable sir! The Dhamma has been made clear in many ways by the Blessed One, as though he were turning upright what had been turned upside down, revealing what was hidden, showing the way to one who was lost, or holding up a lamp in the dark for those with eyesight to see forms. I go for refuge to the Blessed One, and to the Dhamma, and to the Bhikkhu Saṅgha. May I receive the going forth under the Blessed One, may I receive the higher ordination?"<sup>42</sup>

"Kassapa, one formerly belonging to another sect who desires the going forth and the higher ordination in this Dhamma and Discipline lives on probation for four months. At the end of the four months, if the bhikkhus are satisfied with him, they may if they wish give him the going forth and the higher ordination to the state of a bhikkhu. But individual differences are recognized by me."<sup>43</sup>

"If, venerable sir, one formerly belonging to another sect who desires the going forth and the higher ordination in this Dhamma and Discipline lives on probation for four months, and if at the end of the four months the bhikkhus, being satisfied with him, may if they wish give him the going forth and the higher ordination to the state of a bhikkhu, then I will live on probation for four years. At the end of the four years, if the bhikkhus are satisfied with me, let them if they wish give me the going forth and the higher ordination to the state of a bhikkhu."

Then the naked ascetic Kassapa received the going forth under the Blessed One, and he received the higher ordination. And soon, not long after his higher ordination, dwelling alone, withdrawn, diligent, ardent, and resolute, the Venerable Kassapa, [22] by realizing it for himself with direct knowledge, in this very life entered and dwelt in that unsurpassed goal of the holy life for the sake of which clansmen rightly go forth from the household life into homelessness. He directly knew: "Destroyed is birth, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more for this state of being." And the Venerable Kassapa became one of the arahants.<sup>44</sup>

### 18 (8) *Timbaruka*

At Sāvatti. Then the wanderer Timbaruka approached the Blessed One and exchanged greetings with him. When they had concluded their greetings and cordial talk, he sat down to one side and said to him: "How is it, Master Gotama: are pleasure and pain created by oneself?"<sup>45</sup>

"Not so, Timbaruka," the Blessed One said.

"Then, Master Gotama, are pleasure and pain created by another?"

"Not so, Timbaruka," the Blessed One said.

"How is it then, Master Gotama: are pleasure and pain created both by oneself and by another?"

"Not so, Timbaruka," the Blessed One said.

"Then, Master Gotama, have pleasure and pain arisen fortuitously, being created neither by oneself nor by another?"

"Not so, Timbaruka," the Blessed One said.

"How is it then, Master Gotama: is there no pleasure and pain?"

"It is not that there is no pleasure and pain, Timbaruka; there is pleasure and pain."

"Then is it that Master Gotama does not know and see pleasure and pain?"

"It is not that I do not know and see pleasure and pain, Timbaruka. I know pleasure and pain, I see pleasure and pain."

"Whether you are asked: 'How is it, Master Gotama: are pleasure and pain created by oneself?' or 'Are they created by another?' [23] or 'Are they created by both?' or 'Are they created by neither?' in each case you say: 'Not so, Timbaruka.' When you

are asked: 'How is it then, Master Gotama: is there no pleasure and pain?' you say: 'It is not that there is no pleasure and pain, Timbaruka; there is pleasure and pain.' When asked: 'Then is it that Master Gotama does not know and see pleasure and pain?' you say: 'It is not that I do not know and see pleasure and pain, Timbaruka. I know pleasure and pain, I see pleasure and pain.' Venerable sir, let the Blessed One explain pleasure and pain to me. Let the Blessed One teach me about pleasure and pain."

"Timbaruka, [if one thinks,] 'The feeling and the one who feels it are the same,' [then one asserts] with reference to one existing from the beginning: 'Pleasure and pain are created by oneself.' I do not speak thus.<sup>46</sup> But, Timbaruka, [if one thinks,] 'The feeling is one, the one who feels it is another,' [then one asserts] with reference to one stricken by feeling: 'Pleasure and pain are created by another.' Neither do I speak thus.<sup>47</sup> Without veering towards either of these extremes, the Tathāgata teaches the Dhamma by the middle: 'With ignorance as condition, volitional formations [come to be]; with volitional formations as condition, consciousness.... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering. But with the remainderless fading away and cessation of ignorance comes cessation of volitional formations; with the cessation of volitional formations, cessation of consciousness.... Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering.'"

When this was said, the naked ascetic Timbaruka said to the Blessed One: "Magnificent, Master Gotama!... I go for refuge to Master Gotama, and to the Dhamma, and to the Bhikkhu Saṅgha. From today let Master Gotama remember me as a lay follower who has gone for refuge for life."

### 19 (9) *The Wise Man and the Fool*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, for the fool, hindered by ignorance and fettered by craving, [24] this body has thereby originated. So there is this body and external name-and-form: thus this dyad. Dependent on the dyad there is contact. There are just six sense bases, contacted through which—or through a certain one among them—the fool experiences pleasure and pain.<sup>48</sup>

"Bhikkhus, for the wise man, hindered by ignorance and fettered by craving, this body has thereby originated. So there is this body and external name-and-form: thus this dyad. Dependent on

the dyad there is contact. There are just six sense bases, contacted through which—or through a certain one among them—the wise man experiences pleasure and pain. What, bhikkhus, is the distinction here, what is the disparity, what is the difference between the wise man and the fool?”

“Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One, guided by the Blessed One, take recourse in the Blessed One. It would be good if the Blessed One would clear up the meaning of this statement.<sup>49</sup> Having heard it from him, the bhikkhus will remember it.”

“Then listen and attend closely, bhikkhus, I will speak.”

“Yes, venerable sir,” the bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

“Bhikkhus, for the fool, hindered by ignorance and fettered by craving, this body has originated. For the fool that ignorance has not been abandoned and that craving has not been utterly destroyed. For what reason? Because the fool has not lived the holy life for the complete destruction of suffering. Therefore, with the breakup of the body, the fool fares on to [another] body. Faring on to [another] body, he is not freed from birth, aging, and death; not freed from sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair; not freed from suffering, I say.

“Bhikkhus, for the wise man, hindered by ignorance and fettered by craving, this body has originated. For the wise man that ignorance has been abandoned and that craving has been utterly destroyed. For what reason? Because the wise man has lived the holy life [25] for the complete destruction of suffering. Therefore, with the breakup of the body, the wise man does not fare on to [another] body. Not faring on to [another] body, he is freed from birth, aging, and death; freed from sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair; freed from suffering, I say.

“This, bhikkhus, is the distinction, the disparity, the difference between the wise man and the fool, that is, the living of the holy life.”<sup>50</sup>

#### 20 (10) Conditions

At Sāvattī. “Bhikkhus, I will teach you dependent origination and dependently arisen phenomena. Listen and attend closely, I will speak.”

“Yes, venerable sir,” those bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

“And what, bhikkhus, is dependent origination? ‘With birth as condition, aging-and-death [comes to be]’: whether there is an arising of Tathāgatas or no arising of Tathāgatas, that element still persists, the stableness of the Dhamma, the fixed course of the Dhamma, specific conditionality.<sup>51</sup> A Tathāgata awakens to this and breaks through to it.<sup>52</sup> Having done so, he explains it, teaches it, proclaims it, establishes it, discloses it, analyses it, elucidates it. And he says: ‘See! With birth as condition, bhikkhus, aging-and-death.’<sup>53</sup>

“‘With existence as condition, birth’ ... ‘With clinging as condition, existence’ ... ‘With craving as condition, clinging’ ... ‘With feeling as condition, craving’ ... ‘With contact as condition, feeling’ ... ‘With the six sense bases as condition, contact’ ... ‘With name-and-form as condition, the six sense bases’ ... ‘With consciousness as condition, name-and-form’ ... ‘With volitional formations as condition, consciousness’ ... ‘With ignorance as condition, volitional formations’: whether there is an arising of Tathāgatas or no arising of Tathāgatas, that element still persists, the stableness of the Dhamma, the fixed course of the Dhamma, specific conditionality. A Tathāgata awakens to this and [26] breaks through to it. Having done so, he explains it, teaches it, proclaims it, establishes it, discloses it, analyses it, elucidates it. And he says: ‘See! With ignorance as condition, bhikkhus, volitional formations.’

“Thus, bhikkhus, the actuality in this, the inerrancy, the not-otherwiseness, specific conditionality: this is called dependent origination.<sup>54</sup>

“And what, bhikkhus, are the dependently arisen phenomena? Aging-and-death, bhikkhus, is impermanent, conditioned, dependently arisen, subject to destruction, vanishing, fading away, and cessation. Birth is impermanent ... Existence is impermanent ... Clinging is impermanent ... Craving is impermanent ... Feeling is impermanent ... Contact is impermanent ... The six sense bases are impermanent ... Name-and-form is impermanent ... Consciousness is impermanent ... Volitional formations are impermanent ... Ignorance is impermanent, conditioned, dependently arisen, subject to destruction, vanishing, fading away, and cessation. These, bhikkhus, are called the dependently arisen phenomena.

"When, bhikkhus, a noble disciple has clearly seen with correct wisdom<sup>55</sup> as it really is this dependent origination and these dependently arisen phenomena, it is impossible that he will run back into the past, thinking: 'Did I exist in the past? Did I not exist in the past? What was I in the past? How was I in the past? Having been what, what did I become in the past?' Or that he will run forward into the future, thinking: 'Will I exist in the future? Will I not exist [27] in the future? What will I be in the future? How will I be in the future? Having been what, what will I become in the future?' Or that he will now be inwardly confused about the present thus: 'Do I exist? Do I not exist? What am I? How am I? This being—where has it come from, and where will it go?'<sup>56</sup>

"For what reason [is this impossible]? Because, bhikkhus, the noble disciple has clearly seen with correct wisdom as it really is this dependent origination and these dependently arisen phenomena."

### III. THE TEN POWERS

#### 21 (1) *The Ten Powers (1)*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, possessing the ten powers and the four grounds of self-confidence, the Tathāgata claims the place of the chief bull of the herd, roars his lion's roar in the assemblies, and sets rolling the Brahma-wheel thus:<sup>57</sup> [28] 'Such is form, such its origin, such its passing away; such is feeling, such its origin, such its passing away; such is perception, such its origin, such its passing away; such are volitional formations, such their origin, such their passing away; such is consciousness, such its origin, such its passing away.<sup>58</sup> Thus when this exists, that comes to be; with the arising of this, that arises. When this does not exist, that does not come to be; with the cessation of this, that ceases.<sup>59</sup> That is, with ignorance as condition, volitional formations [come to be]; with volitional formations as condition, consciousness.... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering. But with the remainderless fading away and cessation of ignorance comes cessation of volitional formations; with the cessation of volitional formations, cessation of consciousness.... Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering.'"

#### 22 (2) *The Ten Powers (2)*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, possessing the ten powers and the four grounds of self-confidence, the Tathāgata claims the place of the chief bull of the herd, roars his lion's roar in the assemblies, and sets rolling the Brahma-wheel thus: 'Such is form ... (*as in* §21) ... Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering.'

"Bhikkhus, the Dhamma has thus been well expounded by me, elucidated, disclosed, revealed, stripped of patchwork.<sup>60</sup> When, bhikkhus, the Dhamma has thus been well expounded by me, elucidated, disclosed, revealed, stripped of patchwork, this is enough for a clansman who has gone forth out of faith to arouse his energy thus: 'Willingly, let only my skin, sinews, and bones remain, and let the flesh and blood dry up in my body, but I will not relax my energy so long as I have not attained what can be attained by manly strength, by manly energy, by manly exertion.'<sup>61</sup> [29]

"Bhikkhus, the lazy person dwells in suffering, soiled by evil unwholesome states, and great is the personal good that he neglects.<sup>62</sup> But the energetic person dwells happily, secluded from evil unwholesome states, and great is the personal good that he achieves. It is not by the inferior that the supreme is attained; rather, it is by the supreme that the supreme is attained.<sup>63</sup> Bhikkhus, this holy life is a beverage of cream; the Teacher is present.<sup>64</sup> Therefore, bhikkhus, arouse your energy for the attainment of the as-yet-unattained, for the achievement of the as-yet-unachieved, for the realization of the as-yet-unrealized, [with the thought]: 'In such a way this going forth of ours will not be barren, but fruitful and fertile; and when we use the robes, alms-food, lodgings, and medicinal requisites [offered to us by others], these services they provide for us will be of great fruit and benefit to them.'<sup>65</sup> Thus, bhikkhus, should you train yourselves.

"Considering your own good, bhikkhus, it is enough to strive for the goal with diligence; considering the good of others, it is enough to strive for the goal with diligence; considering the good of both, it is enough to strive for the goal with diligence."<sup>66</sup>

#### 23 (3) *Proximate Cause*

At Sāvattī.<sup>67</sup> "Bhikkhus, I say that the destruction of the taints is

for one who knows and sees, not for one who does not know and does not see. For one who knows what, for one who sees what, does the destruction of the taints come about? 'Such is form, such its origin, such its passing away; such is feeling ... such is perception ... such are volitional formations ... such is consciousness, such its origin, such its passing away': it is for one who knows thus, for one who sees thus, that the destruction of the taints comes about. [30]

"I say, bhikkhus, that the knowledge of destruction in regard to destruction has a proximate cause; it does not lack a proximate cause. And what is the proximate cause for the knowledge of destruction? It should be said: liberation.<sup>68</sup>

"I say, bhikkhus, that liberation too has a proximate cause; it does not lack a proximate cause. And what is the proximate cause for liberation? It should be said: dispassion.

"I say, bhikkhus, that dispassion too has a proximate cause; it does not lack a proximate cause. And what is the proximate cause for dispassion? It should be said: revulsion.

"I say, bhikkhus, that revulsion too has a proximate cause; it does not lack a proximate cause. And what is the proximate cause for revulsion? It should be said: the knowledge and vision of things as they really are.

"I say, bhikkhus, that the knowledge and vision of things as they really are too has a proximate cause; it does not lack a proximate cause. And what is the proximate cause for the knowledge and vision of things as they really are? It should be said: concentration.

"I say, bhikkhus, that concentration too has a proximate cause; it does not lack a proximate cause. And what is the proximate cause for concentration? It should be said: happiness.

"I say, bhikkhus, that happiness too has a proximate cause; it does not lack a proximate cause. And what is the proximate cause for happiness? It should be said: tranquillity.

"I say, bhikkhus, that tranquillity too has a proximate cause; it does not lack a proximate cause. And what is the proximate cause for tranquillity? It should be said: rapture.

"I say, bhikkhus, that rapture too has a proximate cause; it does not lack a proximate cause. And what is the proximate cause for rapture? It should be said: gladness.

"I say, bhikkhus, that gladness too has a proximate cause; it

does not lack a proximate cause. And what is the proximate cause for gladness? It should be said: faith.

"I say, bhikkhus, that faith too has a proximate cause; it does not lack a proximate cause. [31] And what is the proximate cause for faith? It should be said: suffering.<sup>69</sup>

"I say, bhikkhus, that suffering too has a proximate cause; it does not lack a proximate cause. And what is the proximate cause for suffering? It should be said: birth.

"I say, bhikkhus, that birth too has a proximate cause; it does not lack a proximate cause. And what is the proximate cause for birth? It should be said: existence.

"I say, bhikkhus, that existence too has a proximate cause; it does not lack a proximate cause. And what is the proximate cause for existence? It should be said: clinging.

"I say, bhikkhus, that clinging too has a proximate cause; it does not lack a proximate cause. And what is the proximate cause for clinging? It should be said: craving.

"I say, bhikkhus, that craving too has a proximate cause; it does not lack a proximate cause. And what is the proximate cause for craving? It should be said: feeling.

"For feeling, it should be said: contact. For contact: the six sense bases. For the six sense bases: name-and-form. For name-and-form: consciousness. For consciousness: volitional formations.

"I say, bhikkhus, that volitional formations too have a proximate cause; they do not lack a proximate cause. And what is the proximate cause for volitional formations? It should be said: ignorance.

"Thus, bhikkhus, with ignorance as proximate cause, volitional formations [come to be]; with volitional formations as proximate cause, consciousness; with consciousness as proximate cause, name-and-form; with name-and-form as proximate cause, the six sense bases; with the six sense bases as proximate cause, contact; with contact as proximate cause, feeling; with feeling as proximate cause, craving; with craving as proximate cause, clinging; with clinging as proximate cause, existence; with existence as proximate cause, birth; with birth as proximate cause, suffering; with suffering as proximate cause, faith; with faith as proximate cause, gladness; with gladness as proximate cause, rapture; with rapture as proximate cause, tranquillity; with tranquillity as proximate cause, happiness; with happiness as proximate cause,

concentration; with concentration as proximate cause, the knowledge and vision of things as they really are; [32] with the knowledge and vision of things as they really are as proximate cause, revulsion; with revulsion as proximate cause, dispassion; with dispassion as proximate cause, liberation; with liberation as proximate cause, the knowledge of destruction.

“Just as, bhikkhus, when rain pours down in thick droplets on a mountain top, the water flows down along the slope and fills the cleft, gullies, and creeks; these being full fill up the pools; these being full fill up the lakes; these being full fill up the streams; these being full fill up the rivers; and these being full fill up the great ocean;<sup>70</sup> so too, with ignorance as proximate cause, volitional formations [come to be]; with volitional formations as proximate cause, consciousness ... with liberation as proximate cause, the knowledge of destruction.”

24 (4) *Wanderers of Other Sects*

At Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove.

(i)

Then, in the morning, the Venerable Sāriputta dressed and, taking bowl and robe, entered Rājagaha for alms. Then it occurred to him: “It is still too early to walk for alms in Rājagaha. Let me go to the park of the wanderers of other sects.”

Then the Venerable Sāriputta [33] went to the park of the wanderers of other sects. He exchanged greetings with those wanderers and, when they had concluded their greetings and cordial talk, he sat down to one side. The wanderers then said to him:

“Friend Sāriputta, some ascetics and brahmins, proponents of kamma, maintain that suffering is created by oneself; some ascetics and brahmins, proponents of kamma, maintain that suffering is created by another; some ascetics and brahmins, proponents of kamma, maintain that suffering is created both by oneself and by another; some ascetics and brahmins, proponents of kamma, maintain that suffering has arisen fortuitously, being created neither by oneself nor by another.<sup>71</sup> Now, friend Sāriputta, what does the ascetic Gotama say about this? What does he teach? How should we answer if we are to state what has been said by the ascetic Gotama and not misrepresent him with what is con-

trary to fact? And how should we explain in accordance with the Dhamma so that no reasonable consequence of our assertion would give ground for criticism?”<sup>72</sup>

“Friends, the Blessed One has said that suffering is dependently arisen. Dependent on what? Dependent on contact. If one were to speak thus one would be stating what has been said by the Blessed One and would not misrepresent him with what is contrary to fact; one would explain in accordance with the Dhamma, and no reasonable consequence of one’s assertion would give ground for criticism.

“Therein, friends, in the case of those ascetics and brahmins, proponents of kamma, who maintain that suffering is created by oneself, that is conditioned by contact.<sup>73</sup> Also, in the case of those ascetics and brahmins, proponents of kamma, who maintain that suffering is created by another, that too is conditioned by contact. Also, in the case of those ascetics and brahmins, proponents of kamma, who maintain that suffering is created both by oneself and by another, that too is conditioned by contact. [34] Also, in the case of those ascetics and brahmins, proponents of kamma, who maintain that suffering has arisen fortuitously, being created neither by oneself nor by another, that too is conditioned by contact.

“Therein, friends, in the case of those ascetics and brahmins, proponents of kamma, who maintain that suffering is created by oneself, it is impossible that they will experience [anything] without contact. Also, in the case of those ascetics and brahmins, proponents of kamma, who maintain that suffering is created by another, it is impossible that they will experience [anything] without contact. Also, in the case of those ascetics and brahmins, proponents of kamma, who maintain that suffering is created both by oneself and by another, it is impossible that they will experience [anything] without contact. Also, in the case of those ascetics and brahmins, proponents of kamma, who maintain that suffering has arisen fortuitously, being created neither by oneself nor by another, it is impossible that they will experience [anything] without contact.”

(ii)

The Venerable Ānanda heard this conversation between the Venerable Sāriputta and the wanderers of other sects. Then,

when he had walked for alms in Rājagaha and had returned from the alms round, after his meal he approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and reported to the Blessed One the entire conversation between the Venerable Sāriputta and those wanderers of other sects. [The Blessed One said:]

“Good, good, Ānanda! Anyone answering rightly would answer just as Sāriputta has done. I have said, Ānanda, that suffering is dependently arisen. Dependent on what? Dependent on contact. If one were to speak thus one would be stating what has been said by me and would not misrepresent me with what is contrary to fact; one would explain in accordance with the Dhamma, and no reasonable consequence of one’s assertion would give ground for criticism.

“Therein, Ānanda, in the case of those ascetics and brahmins, proponents of kamma, who maintain that suffering is created by oneself ... [35] ... and those who maintain that suffering has arisen fortuitously, being created neither by oneself nor by another, that too is conditioned by contact.

“Therein, Ānanda, in the case of those ascetics and brahmins, proponents of kamma, who maintain that suffering is created by oneself ... and those who maintain that suffering has arisen fortuitously, being created neither by oneself nor by another, it is impossible that they will experience [anything] without contact.

“On one occasion, Ānanda, I was dwelling right here in Rājagaha, in the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary. Then, in the morning, I dressed and, taking bowl and robe, I entered Rājagaha for alms. Then it occurred to me: ‘It is still too early to walk for alms in Rājagaha. Let me go to the park of the wanderers of other sects.’ Then I went to the park of the wanderers of other sects. I exchanged greetings with those wanderers and, when we had concluded our greetings and cordial talk, I sat down to one side. The wanderers then said to me as I was sitting to one side: ... *(the wanderers ask exactly the same question as they had asked Sāriputta and receive an identical reply)* [36] ... it is impossible that they will experience [anything] without contact.”

“It is wonderful, venerable sir! It is amazing, venerable sir! How the entire meaning can be stated by a single phrase! Can this same meaning be stated in detail in a way that is deep and deep in implications?”<sup>74</sup>

“Well then, Ānanda, clear up that same matter yourself.”

“Venerable sir, if they were to ask me: ‘Friend Ānanda, what is the source of aging-and-death, what is its origin, from what is it born and produced?’—being asked thus, I would answer thus: ‘Friends, aging-and-death has birth as its source, birth as its origin; it is born and produced from birth.’ Being asked thus, I would answer in such a way. [37]

“Venerable sir, if they were to ask me: ‘Friend Ānanda, what is the source of birth, what is its origin, from what is it born and produced?’—being asked thus, I would answer thus: ‘Friends, birth has existence as its source, existence as its origin; it is born and produced from existence.... Existence has clinging as its source ... Clinging has craving as its source ... Craving has feeling as its source ... Feeling has contact as its source ... Contact has the six sense bases as its source, the six sense bases as its origin; it is born and produced from the six sense bases. But with the remainderless fading away and cessation of the six bases for contact comes cessation of contact; with the cessation of contact, cessation of feeling; with the cessation of feeling, cessation of craving; with the cessation of craving, cessation of clinging; with the cessation of clinging, cessation of existence; with the cessation of existence, cessation of birth; with the cessation of birth, aging-and-death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair cease. Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering.’ Being asked thus, venerable sir, I would answer in such a way.”

25 (5) *Bhūmija*

At Sāvattī.

(i)

Then, in the evening, the Venerable Bhūmija emerged from seclusion and approached the Venerable Sāriputta.<sup>75</sup> [38] He exchanged greetings with the Venerable Sāriputta and, when they had concluded their greetings and cordial talk, he sat down to one side and said to him:

“Friend Sāriputta, some ascetics and brahmins, proponents of kamma, maintain that pleasure and pain are created by oneself; some ascetics and brahmins, proponents of kamma, maintain that pleasure and pain are created by another; some ascetics and

brahmins, proponents of kamma, maintain that pleasure and pain are created both by oneself and by another; some ascetics and brahmins, proponents of kamma, maintain that pleasure and pain have arisen fortuitously, being created neither by oneself nor by another.<sup>76</sup> Now, friend Sāriputta, what does the Blessed One say about this? What does he teach? How should we answer if we are to state what has been said by the Blessed One and not misrepresent him with what is contrary to fact? And how should we explain in accordance with the Dhamma so that no reasonable consequence of our assertion would give ground for criticism?"

"Friend, the Blessed One has said that pleasure and pain are dependently arisen. Dependent on what? Dependent on contact. If one were to speak thus one would be stating what has been said by the Blessed One and would not misrepresent him with what is contrary to fact; one would explain in accordance with the Dhamma, and no reasonable consequence of one's assertion would give ground for criticism.

"Therein, friend, in the case of those ascetics and brahmins, proponents of kamma, who maintain that pleasure and pain are created by oneself, and those who maintain that pleasure and pain are created by another, and those who maintain that pleasure and pain are created both by oneself and by another, and those who maintain that pleasure and pain have arisen fortuitously, being created neither by oneself nor by another—in each case that is conditioned by contact.

"Therein, friends, in the case of those ascetics and brahmins, proponents of kamma, who maintain that pleasure and pain are created by oneself, and those who maintain that pleasure and pain are created by another, and those who maintain that pleasure and pain are created both by oneself and by another, and those [39] who maintain that pleasure and pain have arisen fortuitously, being created neither by oneself nor by another—in each case it is impossible that they will experience [anything] without contact."

(ii)

The Venerable Ānanda heard this conversation between the Venerable Sāriputta and the Venerable Bhūmija. He then approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and reported to the Blessed One the entire conversation

between the Venerable Sāriputta and the Venerable Bhūmija. [The Blessed One said:]

"Good, good, Ānanda! Anyone answering rightly would answer just as Sāriputta has done. I have said, Ānanda, that pleasure and pain are dependently arisen. Dependent on what? Dependent on contact. If one were to speak thus one would be stating what has been said by me and would not misrepresent me with what is contrary to fact; one would explain in accordance with the Dhamma, and no reasonable consequence of one's assertion would give ground for criticism.

"Therein, Ānanda, in the case of those ascetics and brahmins, proponents of kamma, who maintain that pleasure and pain are created by oneself ... and those who maintain that pleasure and pain have arisen fortuitously ... in each case that is conditioned by contact.

"Therein, Ānanda, in the case of those ascetics and brahmins, proponents of kamma, who maintain that pleasure and pain are created by oneself ... and those who maintain that pleasure and pain have arisen fortuitously ... in each case it is impossible that they will experience [anything] without contact.

(iii)

"Ānanda, when there is the body, because of bodily volition pleasure and pain arise [40] internally; when there is speech, because of verbal volition pleasure and pain arise internally; when there is the mind, because of mental volition pleasure and pain arise internally—and with ignorance as condition.<sup>77</sup>

"Either on one's own initiative, Ānanda, one generates that bodily volitional formation conditioned by which pleasure and pain arise internally; or prompted by others one generates that bodily volitional formation conditioned by which pleasure and pain arise internally. Either deliberately, Ānanda, one generates that bodily volitional formation conditioned by which pleasure and pain arise internally; or undeliberately one generates that bodily volitional formation conditioned by which pleasure and pain arise internally.<sup>78</sup>

"Either on one's own initiative, Ānanda, one generates that verbal volitional formation conditioned by which pleasure and pain arise internally; or prompted by others one generates that verbal volitional formation conditioned by which pleasure and

pain arise internally. Either deliberately, Ānanda, one generates that verbal volitional formation conditioned by which pleasure and pain arise internally; or undeliberately one generates that verbal volitional formation conditioned by which pleasure and pain arise internally.

“Either on one’s own initiative, Ānanda, one generates that mental volitional formation<sup>79</sup> conditioned by which pleasure and pain arise internally; or prompted by others one generates that mental volitional formation conditioned by which pleasure and pain arise internally. Either deliberately, Ānanda, one generates that mental volitional formation conditioned by which pleasure and pain arise internally; or undeliberately one generates that mental volitional formation conditioned by which pleasure and pain arise internally.

“Ignorance is comprised within these states.<sup>80</sup> But with the remainderless fading away and cessation of ignorance that body does not exist conditioned by which that pleasure and pain arise internally; that speech does not exist conditioned by which that pleasure and pain arise internally; that mind does not exist conditioned by which [41] that pleasure and pain arise internally.<sup>81</sup> That field does not exist, that site does not exist, that base does not exist, that foundation does not exist conditioned by which that pleasure and pain arise internally.”<sup>82</sup>

### 26 (6) *Upavāṇa*

At Sāvattī. Then the Venerable Upavāṇa approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and said to him:<sup>83</sup>

“Venerable sir, some ascetics and brahmins maintain that suffering is created by oneself; some ascetics and brahmins maintain that suffering is created by another; some ascetics and brahmins maintain that suffering is created both by oneself and by another; some ascetics and brahmins maintain that suffering has arisen fortuitously, being created neither by oneself nor by another. Now, venerable sir, what does the Blessed One say about this? What does he teach? How should we answer if we are to state what has been said by the Blessed One and not misrepresent him with what is contrary to fact? And how should we explain in accordance with the Dhamma so that no reasonable consequence of our assertion would give ground for criticism?”

“Upavāṇa, I have said that suffering is dependently arisen. Dependent on what? Dependent on contact. If one were to speak thus one would be stating what has been said by me and would not misrepresent me with what is contrary to fact; one would explain in accordance with the Dhamma, and no reasonable consequence of one’s assertion would give ground for criticism.

“Therein, Upavāṇa, in the case of those ascetics and brahmins who maintain that suffering is created by oneself, and those who maintain that suffering is created by another, and those who maintain that suffering is created both by oneself and by another, and those who maintain that suffering has arisen fortuitously, being created neither by oneself nor by another—in each case that is conditioned by contact. [42]

“Therein, Upavāṇa, in the case of those ascetics and brahmins who maintain that suffering is created by oneself, and those who maintain that suffering is created by another, and those who maintain that suffering is created both by oneself and by another, and those who maintain that suffering has arisen fortuitously, being created neither by oneself nor by another—in each case it is impossible that they will experience [anything] without contact.”

### 27 (7) *Conditions*

At Sāvattī. “Bhikkhus, with ignorance as condition, volitional formations [come to be]; with volitional formations as condition, consciousness ... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering.

“And what, bhikkhus, is aging-and-death? The aging of the various beings ... (*as in* §2) ... thus this aging and this death are together called aging-and-death. With the arising of birth there is the arising of aging-and-death; with the cessation of birth there is the cessation of aging-and-death. Just this Noble Eightfold Path is the way leading to the cessation of aging-and-death; that is, right view, right intention, right speech, right action, right livelihood, right effort, right mindfulness, right concentration.

“And what, bhikkhus, is birth?... existence?... clinging?... [43] ... craving?... feeling?... contact?... the six sense bases?... name-and-form?... consciousness?... volitional formations? There are these three kinds of volitional formations: the bodily volitional formation, the verbal volitional formation, the mental volitional formation. With the arising of ignorance there is the arising of

volitional formations. With the cessation of ignorance there is the cessation of volitional formations. Just this Noble Eightfold Path is the way leading to the cessation of volitional formations; that is, right view ... right concentration.

“When, bhikkhus, a noble disciple thus understands the condition; thus understands the origin of the condition; thus understands the cessation of the condition; thus understands the way leading to the cessation of the condition,<sup>84</sup> he is then called a noble disciple who is accomplished in view, accomplished in vision, who has arrived at this true Dhamma, who sees this true Dhamma, who possesses a trainee’s knowledge, a trainee’s true knowledge, who has entered the stream of the Dhamma, a noble one with penetrative wisdom, one who stands squarely before the door to the Deathless.”<sup>85</sup>

#### 28 (8) *Bhikkhu*

At Sāvathī. “Herein, bhikkhus, a bhikkhu understands aging-and-death, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation. He understands birth ... existence ... clinging [44] ... craving ... feeling ... contact ... the six sense bases ... name-and-form ... consciousness ... volitional formations, their origin, their cessation, and the way leading to their cessation.

“And what, bhikkhus, is aging-and-death?... (as in preceding sutta) ... Just this Noble Eightfold Path is the way leading to the cessation of volitional formations; that is, right view ... right concentration.

“When, bhikkhus, a bhikkhu thus understands aging-and-death, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation; when he thus understands birth ... existence ... clinging ... craving ... feeling ... contact ... the six sense bases ... name-and-form ... [45] consciousness ... volitional formations, their origin, their cessation, and the way leading to their cessation, he is then called a bhikkhu who is accomplished in view, accomplished in vision, who has arrived at this true Dhamma, who sees this true Dhamma, who possesses a trainee’s knowledge, a trainee’s true knowledge, who has entered the stream of the Dhamma, a noble one with penetrative wisdom, one who stands squarely before the door to the Deathless.”

#### 29 (9) *Ascetics and Brahmins (1)*

At Sāvathī. “Bhikkhus, those ascetics or brahmins who do not fully understand aging-and-death, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation;<sup>86</sup> who do not fully understand birth ... existence ... clinging ... craving ... feeling ... contact ... the six sense bases ... name-and-form ... consciousness ... volitional formations, their origin, their cessation, and the way leading to their cessation: these I do not consider to be ascetics among ascetics or brahmins among brahmins, and these venerable ones do not, by realizing it for themselves with direct knowledge, in this very life enter and dwell in the goal of asceticism or the goal of brahminhood.

“But, bhikkhus, those ascetics and brahmins who fully understand aging-and-death, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation; who fully understand birth ... volitional formations, [46] their origin, their cessation, and the way leading to their cessation: these I consider to be ascetics among ascetics and brahmins among brahmins, and these venerable ones, by realizing it for themselves with direct knowledge, in this very life enter and dwell in the goal of asceticism and the goal of brahminhood.”

#### 30 (10) *Ascetics and Brahmins (2)*

At Sāvathī. “Bhikkhus, as to those ascetics or brahmins who do not understand aging-and-death, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation: it is impossible that they will abide having transcended aging-and-death. As to those ascetics and brahmins who do not understand birth ... existence ... clinging ... craving ... feeling ... contact ... the six sense bases ... name-and-form ... consciousness ... volitional formations, their origin, their cessation, and the way leading to their cessation: it is impossible that they will abide having transcended volitional formations.

“But, bhikkhus, as to those ascetics or brahmins who understand aging-and-death, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation: it is possible that they will abide having transcended aging-and-death. As to those ascetics and brahmins who understand birth ... volitional formations, their origin, their cessation, and the way leading to their cessation: it is possible that they will abide having transcended volitional formations.”

[47] IV. THE KAḶĀRA KHATTIYA

31 (1) *What Has Come to Be*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvattḥi... There the Blessed One addressed the Venerable Sāriputta thus: "Sāriputta, in 'The Questions of Ajita' of the Pārāyana it is said:<sup>87</sup>

"Those who have comprehended the Dhamma,  
And the manifold trainees here:  
Asked about their way of conduct,  
Being discreet, tell me, dear sir."<sup>88</sup>

How should the meaning of this, stated in brief, be understood in detail?"

When this was said, the Venerable Sāriputta was silent. A second time and a third time the Blessed One addressed the Venerable Sāriputta thus: "Sāriputta, in 'The Questions of Ajita' in the Pārāyana it is said ... [48] How should the meaning of this, stated in brief, be understood in detail?" A second time and a third time the Venerable Sāriputta was silent.<sup>89</sup>

"Sāriputta, do you see: 'This has come to be'? Sāriputta, do you see: 'This has come to be'?"

"Venerable sir, one sees as it really is with correct wisdom: 'This has come to be.' Having seen as it really is with correct wisdom: 'This has come to be,' one is practising for the purpose of revulsion towards what has come to be, for its fading away and cessation.<sup>90</sup> One sees as it really is with correct wisdom: 'Its origination occurs with that as nutriment.'<sup>91</sup> Having seen as it really is with correct wisdom: 'Its origination occurs with that as nutriment,' one is practising for the purpose of revulsion towards its origination through nutriment, for its fading away and cessation. One sees as it really is with correct wisdom: 'With the cessation of that nutriment, what has come to be is subject to cessation.' Having seen as it really is with correct wisdom: 'With the cessation of that nutriment, what has come to be is subject to cessation,' one is practising for the purpose of revulsion towards what is subject to cessation, for its fading away and cessation. It is in such a way that one is a trainee.

"And how, venerable sir, has one comprehended the

Dhamma? Venerable sir, one sees as it really is with correct wisdom: 'This has come to be.' Having seen as it really is with correct wisdom: 'This has come to be,' through revulsion towards what has come to be, through its fading away and cessation, one is liberated by nonclinging. One sees as it really is with correct wisdom: 'Its origination occurs with that as nutriment.' Having seen as it really is with correct wisdom: 'Its origination occurs with that as nutriment,' through revulsion towards its origination through nutriment, through its fading away and cessation, one is liberated by nonclinging. One sees as it really is with correct wisdom: 'With the cessation of that nutriment, what has come to be is subject to cessation.' Having seen as it really is with correct wisdom: 'With the cessation of that nutriment, what has come to be is subject to cessation,' through revulsion towards what is subject to cessation, through its fading away [49] and cessation, one is liberated by nonclinging.<sup>92</sup> It is in such a way that one has comprehended the Dhamma.

"Thus, venerable sir, when it is said in 'The Questions of Ajita' of the Pārāyana:

"Those who have comprehended the Dhamma,  
And the manifold trainees here:  
Asked about their way of conduct,  
Being discreet, tell me, dear sir.'—

it is in such a way that I understand in detail the meaning of this that was stated in brief."

"Good, good, Sāriputta!... (*the Buddha repeats here the entire statement of the Venerable Sāriputta*) [50] ... it is in such a way that the meaning of this, stated in brief, should be understood in detail."

32 (2) *The KaḶāra*

At Sāvattḥi.

(i)

Then the bhikkhu KaḶāra the Khattiya approached the Venerable Sāriputta and exchanged greetings with him. When they had concluded their greetings and cordial talk, he sat down to one

side and said to the Venerable Sāriputta: "Friend Sāriputta, the bhikkhu Moḷiyaphagga has abandoned the training and returned to the lower life."<sup>93</sup>

"Then surely that venerable did not find solace in this Dhamma and Discipline."

"Well then, has the Venerable Sāriputta attained solace in this Dhamma and Discipline?"

"I have no perplexity, friend."

"But as to the future, friend?"

"I have no doubt, friend."

Then the bhikkhu Kaḷāra the Khattiya rose from his seat and approached the Blessed One. Having approached, he paid homage to the Blessed One, sat down to one side, [51] and said to him: "Venerable sir, the Venerable Sāriputta has declared final knowledge thus: 'I understand: Destroyed is birth, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more for this state of being.'"<sup>94</sup>

Then the Blessed One addressed a certain bhikkhu thus: "Come, bhikkhu, tell Sāriputta in my name that the Teacher calls him."

"Yes, venerable sir," that bhikkhu replied, and he went to the Venerable Sāriputta and told him: "The Teacher calls you, friend Sāriputta."

"Yes, friend," the Venerable Sāriputta replied, and he approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, and sat down to one side. The Blessed One then said to him: "Is it true, Sāriputta, that you have declared final knowledge thus: 'I understand: Destroyed is birth, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more for this state of being'?"

"Venerable sir, I did not state the matter in those terms and phrases."

"In whatever way, Sāriputta, a clansman declares final knowledge, what he has declared should be understood as such."

"Venerable sir, didn't I too speak thus: 'Venerable sir, I did not state the matter in those terms and phrases'?"

"If, Sāriputta, they were to ask you:<sup>95</sup> 'Friend Sāriputta, how have you known, how have you seen, that you have declared final knowledge thus: 'I understand: Destroyed is birth, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more for this state of being'—being asked thus, how would you answer?"

"If they were to ask me this, venerable sir, [52] I would answer thus: 'With the destruction of the source from which birth originates, I have understood: "When [the cause] is destroyed, [the effect] is destroyed." Having understood this, I understand: Destroyed is birth, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more for this state of being.' Being asked thus, venerable sir, I would answer in such a way."<sup>96</sup>

"But, Sāriputta, if they were to ask you: 'But, friend Sāriputta, what is the source of birth, what is its origin, from what is it born and produced?'—being asked thus, how would you answer?"

"If they were to ask me this, venerable sir, I would answer thus: 'Birth, friends, has existence has its source, existence as its origin; it is born and produced from existence.' Being asked thus, venerable sir, I would answer in such a way."

"But, Sāriputta, if they were to ask you: 'But, friend Sāriputta, what is the source of existence...?'—being asked thus, how would you answer?"

"If they were to ask me this, venerable sir, I would answer thus: 'Existence, friends, has clinging as its source....'"

"But, Sāriputta, if they were to ask you: 'But, friend Sāriputta, what is the source of clinging...? What is the source of craving, what is its origin, from what is it born and produced?'—being asked thus, how would you answer?" [53]

"If they were to ask me this, venerable sir, I would answer thus: 'Craving, friends, has feeling as its source, feeling as its origin; it is born and produced from feeling.' Being asked thus, venerable sir, I would answer in such a way."

"But, Sāriputta, if they were to ask you: 'Friend Sāriputta, how have you known, how have you seen, that delight in feelings no longer remains present in you?'—being asked thus, how would you answer?"<sup>97</sup>

"If they were to ask me this, venerable sir, I would answer thus: 'Friends, there are these three feelings. What three? Pleasant feeling, painful feeling, neither-painful-nor-pleasant feeling. These three feelings, friends, are impermanent; whatever is impermanent is suffering. When this was understood, delight in feelings no longer remained present in me.' Being asked thus, venerable sir, I would answer in such a way."

"Good, good, Sāriputta! This is another method of explaining in brief that same point: 'Whatever is felt is included within suf-

fering.<sup>98</sup> But, Sāriputta, if they were to ask you: 'Friend Sāriputta, through what kind of deliverance have you declared final knowledge thus: "I understand: Destroyed is birth, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more for this state of being"'—being asked thus, how would you answer?"

"If they were to ask me this, venerable sir, I would answer thus: [54] 'Friends, through an internal deliverance, through the destruction of all clinging, I dwell mindfully in such a way that the taints do not flow within me and I do not despise myself.' Being asked thus, venerable sir, I would answer in such a way."<sup>99</sup>

"Good, good, Sāriputta! This is another method of explaining in brief that same point: 'I have no perplexity in regard to the taints spoken of by the Ascetic; I do not doubt that they have been abandoned by me.'"

This is what the Blessed One said. Having said this, the Sublime One rose from his seat and entered his dwelling.

## (ii)

Then, soon after the Blessed One had departed, the Venerable Sāriputta addressed the bhikkhus thus:

"Friends, the first question that the Blessed One asked me had not been previously considered by me:<sup>100</sup> thus I hesitated over it. But when the Blessed One approved of my answer, it occurred to me: 'If the Blessed One were to question me about this matter with various terms and with various methods for a whole day, for a whole day I would be able to answer him with various terms and with various methods. If he were to question me about this matter with various terms and with various methods for a whole night, for a day and night, [55] for two days and nights, for three, four, five, six, or seven days and nights—for seven days and nights I would be able to answer him with various terms and with various methods.'"

Then the bhikkhu Kaḷāra the Khattiya rose from his seat and approached the Blessed One. Having approached, he paid homage to the Blessed One, sat down to one side, and said to him: "Venerable sir, the Venerable Sāriputta has roared his lion's roar thus: 'Friends, the first question that the Blessed One asked me had not been previously considered by me: thus I hesitated over it. But when the Blessed One approved of my answer, it occurred

to me: "If the Blessed One were to question me about this matter for up to seven days and nights, [56] for up to seven days and nights I would be able to answer him with various terms and with various methods.'"

"Bhikkhu, the Venerable Sāriputta has thoroughly penetrated that element of the Dhamma by the thorough penetration of which, if I were to question him about that matter with various terms and with various methods for up to seven days and nights, for up to seven days and nights he would be able to answer me with various terms and with various methods."<sup>101</sup>

33 (3) *Cases of Knowledge* (1)

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, I will teach you forty-four cases of knowledge. Listen to that and attend closely, I will speak."

"Yes, venerable sir," those bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

"Bhikkhus, what are the forty-four cases of knowledge? [57] Knowledge of aging-and-death, knowledge of its origin, knowledge of its cessation, knowledge of the way leading to its cessation. Knowledge of birth ... Knowledge of existence ... Knowledge of clinging ... Knowledge of craving ... Knowledge of feeling ... Knowledge of contact ... Knowledge of the six sense bases ... Knowledge of name-and-form ... Knowledge of consciousness ... Knowledge of volitional formations, knowledge of their origin, knowledge of their cessation, knowledge of the way leading to their cessation. These, bhikkhus, are the forty-four cases of knowledge.

"And what, bhikkhus, is aging-and-death?... (*definition as in* §2) ... Thus this aging and this death are together called aging-and-death. With the arising of birth there is the arising of aging-and-death. With the cessation of birth there is the cessation of aging-and-death. This Noble Eightfold Path is the way leading to the cessation of aging-and-death; that is, right view ... right concentration.

"When, bhikkhus, a noble disciple thus understands aging-and-death, its origin, [58] its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation, this is his knowledge of the principle.<sup>102</sup> By means of this principle that is seen, understood, immediately attained, fathomed,<sup>103</sup> he applies the method to the past and to the future

thus: 'Whatever ascetics and brahmins in the past directly knew aging-and-death, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation, all these directly knew it in the very same way that I do now. Whatever ascetics and brahmins in the future will directly know aging-and-death, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation, all these will directly know it in the very same way that I do now.' This is his knowledge of entailment.<sup>104</sup>

"When, bhikkhus, a noble disciple has purified and cleansed these two kinds of knowledge—knowledge of the principle and knowledge of entailment—he is then called a noble disciple who is accomplished in view, accomplished in vision, who has arrived at this true Dhamma, who sees this true Dhamma, who possesses a trainee's knowledge, a trainee's true knowledge, who has entered the stream of the Dhamma, a noble one with penetrative wisdom, one who stands squarely before the door to the Deathless.

"And what, bhikkhus, is birth?... What are the volitional formations?... (*definitions as in §2*) [59] ... This Noble Eightfold Path is the way leading to the cessation of volitional formations; that is, right view ... right concentration.

"When, bhikkhus, a noble disciple thus understands volitional formations, their origin, their cessation, and the way leading to their cessation, this is his knowledge of the principle. By means of this principle that is seen, understood, immediately attained, fathomed, he applies the method to the past and to the future.... This is his knowledge of entailment.

"When, bhikkhus, a noble disciple has purified and cleansed these two kinds of knowledge—knowledge of the principle and knowledge of entailment—he is then called a noble disciple who is accomplished in view ... one who stands squarely before the door to the Deathless."

#### 34 (4) *Cases of Knowledge* (2)

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, I will teach you seventy-seven cases of knowledge. Listen to that and attend closely, I will speak." [60]

"Yes, venerable sir," those bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

"Bhikkhus, what are the seventy-seven cases of knowledge?"

The knowledge: 'Aging-and-death has birth as its condition.' The knowledge: 'When there is no birth, there is no aging-and-death.' The knowledge: 'In the past too aging-and-death had birth as its condition.' The knowledge: 'In the past too, had there been no birth, there would have been no aging-and-death.' The knowledge: 'In the future too aging-and-death will have birth as its condition.' The knowledge: 'In the future too, should there be no birth, there will be no aging-and-death.' The knowledge: 'That knowledge of the stability of the Dhamma is also subject to destruction, vanishing, fading away, and cessation.'<sup>105</sup>

"The knowledge: 'Birth has existence as its condition.' ... The knowledge: 'Volitional formations have ignorance as their condition.' The knowledge: 'When there is no ignorance, there are no volitional formations.' The knowledge: 'In the past too volitional formations had ignorance as their condition.' The knowledge: 'In the past too, had there been no ignorance, there would have been no volitional formations.' The knowledge: 'In the future too volitional formations will have ignorance as their condition.' The knowledge: 'In the future too, should there be no ignorance, there will be no volitional formations.' The knowledge: 'That knowledge of the stability of the Dhamma is also subject to destruction, vanishing, fading away, and cessation.'

"These, bhikkhus, are called the seventy-seven cases of knowledge."

#### 35 (5) *With Ignorance as Condition* (1)

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, with ignorance as condition, volitional formations [come to be]; with volitional formations as condition, consciousness.... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering."

When he had said this, a certain bhikkhu said to the Blessed One: "Venerable sir, what now is aging-and-death, and for whom is there this aging-and-death?"

"Not a valid question," the Blessed One replied.<sup>106</sup> [61] "Bhikkhu, whether one says, 'What now is aging-and-death, and for whom is there this aging-and-death?' or whether one says, 'Aging-and-death is one thing, the one for whom there is this aging-and-death is another'—both these assertions are identical in meaning; they differ only in the phrasing. If there is the view, 'The soul and the body are the same,' there is no living of the holy

life; and if there is the view, 'The soul is one thing, the body is another,' there is no living of the holy life.<sup>107</sup> Without veering towards either of these extremes, the Tathāgata teaches the Dhamma by the middle: 'With birth as condition, aging-and-death.'"

"Venerable sir, what now is birth, and for whom is there this birth?"

"Not a valid question," the Blessed One replied. "Bhikkhu, whether one says, 'What now is birth, and for whom is there this birth?' or whether one says, 'Birth is one thing, the one for whom there is this birth is another'—both these assertions are identical in meaning; they differ only in the phrasing.... Without veering towards either of these extremes, the Tathāgata teaches the Dhamma by the middle: 'With existence as condition, birth.'"

"Venerable sir, what now is existence, and for whom is there this existence?"

"Not a valid question," the Blessed One replied. "Bhikkhu, whether one says, 'What now is existence, and for whom is there this existence?' or whether one says, 'Existence is one thing, the one for whom there is this existence is another'—both these assertions are identical in meaning; they differ only in the phrasing.... Without veering towards either of these extremes, the Tathāgata teaches the Dhamma by the middle: 'With clinging as condition, existence.... With craving as condition, clinging.... With feeling as condition, craving.... With contact as condition, feeling.... With the six sense bases as condition, contact.... With name-and-form as condition, the six sense bases.... [62] With consciousness as condition, name-and-form.... With volitional formations as condition, consciousness.'"

"Venerable sir, what now are volitional formations, and for whom are there these volitional formations?"

"Not a valid question," the Blessed One replied. "Bhikkhu, whether one says, 'What now are volitional formations, and for whom are there these volitional formations?' or whether one says, 'Volitional formations are one thing, the one for whom there are these volitional formations is another'—both these assertions are identical in meaning; they differ only in the phrasing. If there is the view, 'The soul and the body are the same,' there is no living of the holy life; and if there is the view, 'The soul is one thing, the body is another,' there is no living of the

holy life. Without veering towards either of these extremes, the Tathāgata teaches the Dhamma by the middle: 'With ignorance as condition, volitional formations.'

"But with the remainderless fading away and cessation of ignorance, whatever kinds of contortions, manoeuvres, and vacillations there may be<sup>108</sup>—'What now is aging-and-death, and for whom is there this aging-and-death?' or 'Aging-and-death is one thing, the one for whom there is this aging-and-death is another,' or 'The soul and the body are the same,' or 'The soul is one thing, the body is another'—all these are abandoned, cut off at the root, made like a palm stump, obliterated so that they are no more subject to future arising.<sup>109</sup>

"With the remainderless fading away and cessation of ignorance, whatever kinds of contortions, manoeuvres, and vacillations there may be—'What now is birth, and for whom is there this birth?' ... [63] ... 'What now are volitional formations, and for whom are there these volitional formations?' or 'Volitional formations are one thing, the one for whom there are these volitional formations is another,' or 'The soul and the body are the same,' or 'The soul is one thing, the body is another'—all these are abandoned, cut off at the root, made like a palm stump, obliterated so that they are no more subject to future arising."

### 36 (6) *With Ignorance as Condition* (2)

*(This sutta is identical with the preceding one, differing only in that the bhikkhus are addressed collectively throughout, and there is no interlocutor who asks inappropriate questions. The Buddha simply cites the invalid types of assertions on his own.) [64]*

### 37 (7) *Not Yours*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, this body is not yours, nor does it belong to others.<sup>110</sup> [65] It is old kamma, to be seen as generated and fashioned by volition, as something to be felt.<sup>111</sup> Therein, bhikkhus, the instructed noble disciple attends carefully and closely to dependent origination itself thus: 'When this exists, that comes to be; with the arising of this, that arises. When this does not exist, that does not come to be; with the cessation of this, that ceases. That is, with ignorance as condition, volitional formations [come

to be]; with volitional formations as condition, consciousness.... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering. But with the remainderless fading away and cessation of ignorance comes cessation of volitional formations; with the cessation of volitional formations, cessation of consciousness.... Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering."

38 (8) *Volition (1)*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, what one intends, and what one plans, and whatever one has a tendency towards: this becomes a basis for the maintenance of consciousness. When there is a basis there is a support for the establishing of consciousness. When consciousness is established and has come to growth, there is the production of future renewed existence. When there is the production of future renewed existence, future birth, aging-and-death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair come to be. Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering."<sup>112</sup>

"If, bhikkhus, one does not intend, and one does not plan, but one still has a tendency towards something, this becomes a basis for the maintenance of consciousness. When there is a basis, there is a support for the establishing of consciousness.... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering."<sup>113</sup>

"But, bhikkhus, when one does not intend, and one does not plan, and one does not have a tendency towards anything, no basis exists for the maintenance of consciousness. [66] When there is no basis, there is no support for the establishing of consciousness. When consciousness is unestablished and does not come to growth, there is no production of future renewed existence. When there is no production of future renewed existence, future birth, aging-and-death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair cease. Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering."<sup>114</sup>

39 (9) *Volition (2)*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, what one intends, and what one plans, and whatever one has a tendency towards: this becomes a basis for the maintenance of consciousness. When there is a basis, there is a support for the establishing of consciousness. When con-

sciousness is established and has come to growth, there is a descent of name-and-form.<sup>115</sup> With name-and-form as condition, the six sense bases [come to be]; with the six sense bases as condition, contact; with contact as condition, feeling ... craving ... clinging ... existence ... birth; with birth as condition, aging-and-death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair come to be. Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering.

"If, bhikkhus, one does not intend, and one does not plan, but one still has a tendency towards something, this becomes a basis for the maintenance of consciousness. When there is a basis, there is a support for the establishing of consciousness. When consciousness is established and has come to growth, there is a descent of name-and-form. With name-and-form as condition, the six sense bases [come to be].... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering.

"But, bhikkhus, when one does not intend, and one does not plan, and one does not have a tendency towards anything, no basis exists for the maintenance of consciousness. When there is no basis, there is no support for the establishing of consciousness. When consciousness is unestablished and does not come to growth, there is no descent of name-and-form. With the cessation of name-and-form comes cessation of the six sense bases.... Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering."

40 (10) *Volition (3)*

At Sāvattī. [67] "Bhikkhus, what one intends, and what one plans, and whatever one has a tendency towards: this becomes a basis for the maintenance of consciousness. When there is a basis, there is a support for the establishing of consciousness. When consciousness is established and has come to growth, there is inclination. When there is inclination, there is coming and going. When there is coming and going, there is passing away and being reborn.<sup>116</sup> When there is passing away and being reborn, future birth, aging-and-death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair come to be. Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering.

"If, bhikkhus, one does not intend, and one does not plan, but one still has a tendency towards something, this becomes a basis for the maintenance of consciousness. When there is a basis, there

is a support for the establishing of consciousness.... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering.

"But, bhikkhus, when one does not intend, and one does not plan, and one does not have a tendency towards anything, no basis exists for the maintenance of consciousness. When there is no basis, there is no support for the establishing of consciousness. When consciousness is unestablished and does not come to growth, there is no inclination. When there is no inclination, there is no coming and going. When there is no coming and going, there is no passing away and being reborn. When there is no passing away and being reborn, future birth, aging-and-death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair cease. Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering."<sup>117</sup>

[68]

## V. THE HOUSEHOLDER

41 (1) *Five Fearful Animosities (1)*

At Sāvatti. Then the householder Anāthapiṇḍika approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, and sat down to one side. The Blessed One then said to him:

"Householder, when five fearful animosities have subsided in a noble disciple, and he possesses the four factors of stream-entry, and he has clearly seen and thoroughly penetrated with wisdom the noble method, if he wishes he could by himself declare of himself: 'I am one finished with hell, finished with the animal realm, finished with the domain of ghosts, finished with the plane of misery, the bad destinations, the nether world. I am a stream-enterer, no longer bound to the nether world, fixed in destiny, with enlightenment as my destination.'<sup>118</sup>

"What are the five fearful animosities that have subsided? Householder, one who destroys life engenders, on account of such behaviour, fearful animosity pertaining to the present life and fearful animosity pertaining to the future life, and he experiences mental pain and displeasure.<sup>119</sup> Thus for one who abstains from destroying life, this fearful animosity has subsided.

"One who takes what is not given ... [69] ... who engages in sexual misconduct ... who speaks falsely ... who indulges in wine, liquor, and intoxicants that are a basis for negligence engenders, on account of such behaviour, fearful animosity pertaining to the

present life and fearful animosity pertaining to the future life, and he experiences mental pain and displeasure. Thus for one who abstains from wine, liquor, and intoxicants that are a basis for negligence, this fearful animosity has subsided.

"These are the five fearful animosities that have subsided.

"What are the four factors of stream-entry that he possesses?<sup>120</sup> Here, householder, the noble disciple possesses confirmed confidence in the Buddha thus: 'The Blessed One is an arahant, perfectly enlightened, accomplished in true knowledge and conduct, fortunate, knower of the world, unsurpassed leader of persons to be tamed, teacher of devas and humans, the Enlightened One, the Blessed One.'

"He possesses confirmed confidence in the Dhamma thus: 'The Dhamma is well expounded by the Blessed One, directly visible, immediate, inviting one to come and see, applicable, to be personally experienced by the wise.'

"He possesses confirmed confidence in the Saṅgha thus: 'The Saṅgha of the Blessed One's disciples is practising the good way, practising the straight way, practising the true way, practising the proper way; that is, the four pairs of persons, the eight types of individuals—this [70] Saṅgha of the Blessed One's disciples is worthy of gifts, worthy of hospitality, worthy of offerings, worthy of reverential salutation, the unsurpassed field of merit for the world.'

"He possesses the virtues dear to the noble ones—unbroken, untorn, unblemished, unmottled, freeing, praised by the wise, ungrasped, leading to concentration.<sup>121</sup>

"These are the four factors of stream-entry that he possesses.

"And what is the noble method that he has clearly seen and thoroughly penetrated with wisdom?<sup>122</sup> Here, householder, the noble disciple attends closely and carefully to dependent origination itself thus: 'When this exists, that comes to be; with the arising of this, that arises. When this does not exist, that does not come to be; with the cessation of this, that ceases. That is, with ignorance as condition, volitional formations [come to be]; with volitional formations as condition, consciousness.... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering. But with the remainderless fading away and cessation of ignorance comes cessation of volitional formations; with the cessation of volitional formations, cessation of consciousness.... Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering.'

"This is the noble method that he has clearly seen and thoroughly penetrated with wisdom.

"When, householder, these five fearful animosities have subsided in a noble disciple, and he possesses these four factors of stream-entry, and he has clearly seen and thoroughly penetrated with wisdom this noble method, if he wishes he could by himself declare of himself: 'I am one finished with hell, finished with the animal realm, finished with the domain of ghosts, finished with the plane of misery, the bad destinations, the nether world. I am a stream-enterer, no longer bound to the nether world, fixed in destiny, with enlightenment as my destination.'"

#### 42 (2) *Five Fearful Animosities (2)*

(*This sutta is identical with the preceding one except that it is addressed to "a number of bhikkhus."*) [71]

#### 43 (3) *Suffering*

At Sāvatti. [72] "Bhikkhus, I will teach you the origin and the passing away of suffering. Listen to that and attend closely, I will speak."<sup>123</sup>

"Yes, venerable sir," the bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

"And what, bhikkhus, is the origin of suffering? In dependence on the eye and forms, eye-consciousness arises. The meeting of the three is contact. With contact as condition, feeling [comes to be]; with feeling as condition, craving. This is the origin of suffering.

"In dependence on the ear and sounds ... In dependence on the nose and odours ... In dependence on the tongue and tastes ... In dependence on the body and tactile objects ... In dependence on the mind and mental phenomena, mind-consciousness arises. The meeting of the three is contact. With contact as condition, feeling [comes to be]; with feeling as condition, craving. This is the origin of suffering.

"And what, bhikkhus, is the passing away of suffering? In dependence on the eye and forms, eye-consciousness arises. The meeting of the three is contact. With contact as condition, feeling [comes to be]; with feeling as condition, craving. But with the remainderless fading away and cessation of that same craving

comes cessation of clinging; with the cessation of clinging, cessation of existence; with the cessation of existence, cessation of birth; with the cessation of birth, aging-and-death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair cease. Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering. This is the passing away of suffering.

"In dependence on the ear and sounds ... In dependence on the mind and mental phenomena, mind-consciousness arises. The meeting of the three is contact. With contact as condition, feeling [comes to be]; with feeling as condition, craving. But with the remainderless fading away and cessation of that same craving comes cessation of clinging ... cessation of existence ... cessation of birth; with the cessation of birth, aging-and-death, [73] sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair cease. Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering. This is the passing away of suffering."

#### 44 (4) *The World*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, I will teach you the origin and the passing away of the world. Listen to that and attend closely, I will speak."<sup>124</sup>

"Yes, venerable sir," the bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

"And what, bhikkhus, is the origin of the world? In dependence on the eye and forms, eye-consciousness arises. The meeting of the three is contact. With contact as condition, feeling [comes to be]; with feeling as condition, craving; with craving as condition, clinging; with clinging as condition, existence; with existence as condition, birth; with birth as condition, aging-and-death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair come to be. This, bhikkhus, is the origin of the world.

"In dependence on the ear and sounds ... In dependence on the nose and odours ... In dependence on the tongue and tastes ... In dependence on the body and tactile objects ... In dependence on the mind and mental phenomena, mind-consciousness arises. The meeting of the three is contact. With contact as condition, feeling [comes to be]; with feeling as condition, craving; with craving as condition, clinging ... existence ... birth; with birth as condition, aging-and-death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and

despair come to be. This, bhikkhus, is the origin of the world.

“And what, bhikkhus, is the passing away of the world? In dependence on the eye and forms, eye-consciousness arises. The meeting of the three is contact. With contact as condition, feeling [comes to be]; with feeling as condition, craving. But with the remainderless fading away and cessation of that same craving comes cessation of clinging; with the cessation of clinging, cessation of existence; with the cessation of existence, cessation of birth; with the cessation of birth, aging-and-death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair cease. Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering. This, bhikkhus, is the passing away of the world.

“In dependence on the ear and sounds ... [74] ... In dependence on the mind and mental phenomena, mind-consciousness arises. The meeting of the three is contact. With contact as condition, feeling [comes to be]; with feeling as condition, craving. But with the remainderless fading away and cessation of that same craving comes cessation of clinging ... cessation of existence ... cessation of birth; with the cessation of birth, aging-and-death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair cease. Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering. This, bhikkhus, is the passing away of the world.”

#### 45 (5) *At Ñātika*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Ñātika in the Brick Hall. Then, while the Blessed One was alone in seclusion, he uttered this Dhamma exposition:<sup>125</sup>

“In dependence on the eye and forms, eye-consciousness arises. The meeting of the three is contact. With contact as condition, feeling [comes to be]; with feeling as condition, craving; with craving as condition, clinging.... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering.

“In dependence on the ear and sounds ... In dependence on the mind and mental phenomena, mind-consciousness arises. The meeting of the three is contact. With contact as condition, feeling [comes to be]; with feeling as condition, craving; with craving as condition, clinging.... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering.

“In dependence on the eye and forms, eye-consciousness arises.

The meeting of the three is contact. With contact as condition, feeling [comes to be]; with feeling as condition, craving. But with the remainderless fading away and cessation of that same craving comes cessation of clinging; with the cessation of clinging, cessation of existence.... Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering. [75]

“In dependence on the ear and sounds ... In dependence on the mind and mental phenomena, mind-consciousness arises. The meeting of the three is contact. With contact as condition, feeling [comes to be]; with feeling as condition, craving. But with the remainderless fading away and cessation of that same craving comes cessation of clinging; with the cessation of clinging, cessation of existence.... Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering.”

Now on that occasion a certain bhikkhu was standing listening in on the Blessed One. The Blessed One saw him standing there listening in and said to him: “Did you hear that Dhamma exposition, bhikkhu?”

“Yes, venerable sir.”

“Learn that Dhamma exposition, bhikkhu, master it and remember it. That Dhamma exposition is beneficial and relevant to the fundamentals of the holy life.”

#### 46 (6) *A Certain Brahmin*

At Sāvatti. Then a certain brahmin approached the Blessed One and exchanged greetings with him. When they had concluded their greetings and cordial talk, he sat down to one side and said to him:

“How is it, Master Gotama: is the one who acts the same as the one who experiences [the result]?”<sup>126</sup>

“The one who acts is the same as the one who experiences [the result]: this, brahmin, is one extreme.” [76]

“Then, Master Gotama, is the one who acts one, and the one who experiences [the result] another?”

“The one who acts is one, and the one who experiences [the result] is another’: this, brahmin, is the second extreme. Without veering towards either of these extremes, the Tathāgata teaches the Dhamma by the middle: ‘With ignorance as condition, volitional formations [come to be]; with volitional formations as condition,

consciousness.... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering. But with the remainderless fading away and cessation of ignorance comes cessation of volitional formations; with the cessation of volitional formations, cessation of consciousness.... Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering.”

When this was said, that brahmin said to the Blessed One: “Magnificent, Master Gotama!... I go for refuge to Master Gotama, and to the Dhamma, and to the Bhikkhu Saṅgha. From today let Master Gotama remember me as a lay follower who has gone for refuge for life.”

#### 47 (7) *Jāṇussoṇi*

At Sāvattī. Then the brahmin Jāṇussoṇi approached the Blessed One and exchanged greetings with him. When they had concluded their greetings and cordial talk, he sat down to one side and said to him:<sup>127</sup>

“How is it, Master Gotama: does all exist?”

“‘All exists’: this, brahmin, is one extreme.”

“Then, Master Gotama, does all not exist?”

“‘All does not exist’: this, brahmin, is the second extreme. Without veering towards either of these extremes, the Tathāgata teaches the Dhamma by the middle....”

When this was said, the brahmin Jāṇussoṇi said to the Blessed One: [77] “Magnificent, Master Gotama!... From today let Master Gotama remember me as a lay follower who has gone for refuge for life.”

#### 48 (8) *A Cosmologist*

At Sāvattī. Then a brahmin who was a cosmologist<sup>128</sup> approached the Blessed One ... and said to him:

“How is it, Master Gotama: does all exist?”

“‘All exists’: this, brahmin, is the oldest cosmology.”<sup>129</sup>

“Then, Master Gotama, does all not exist?”

“‘All does not exist’: this, brahmin, is the second cosmology.”

“How is it, Master Gotama: is all a unity?”<sup>130</sup>

“‘All is a unity’: this, brahmin, is the third cosmology.”

“Then, Master Gotama, is all a plurality?”<sup>131</sup>

“‘All is a plurality’: this, brahmin, is the fourth cosmology.”

Without veering towards either of these extremes, the Tathāgata teaches the Dhamma by the middle....”

When this was said, that brahmin said to the Blessed One: “Magnificent, Master Gotama!... From today let Master Gotama remember me as a lay follower who has gone for refuge for life.”

#### 49 (9) *The Noble Disciple (1)*

At Sāvattī. [78] “Bhikkhus, an instructed noble disciple does not think: ‘When what exists does what come to be? With the arising of what does what arise? [When what exists do volitional formations come to be? When what exists does consciousness come to be?]<sup>132</sup> When what exists does name-and-form come to be?... When what exists does aging-and-death come to be?’

“Rather, bhikkhus, the instructed noble disciple has knowledge about this that is independent of others: ‘When this exists, that comes to be; with the arising of this, that arises. [When there is ignorance, volitional formations come to be. When there are volitional formations, consciousness comes to be.] When there is consciousness, name-and-form comes to be.... When there is birth, aging-and-death comes to be.’ He understands thus: ‘In such a way the world originates.’

“Bhikkhus, an instructed noble disciple does not think: ‘When what does not exist does what not come to be? With the cessation of what does what cease? [When what does not exist do volitional formations not come to be? When what does not exist does consciousness not come to be? When what does not exist does name-and-form not come to be?... When what does not exist does aging-and-death not come to be?’”

“Rather, bhikkhus, the instructed noble disciple has knowledge about this that is independent of others: ‘When this does not exist, that does not come to be; with the cessation of this, that ceases. [When there is no ignorance, volitional formations do not come to be. When there are no volitional formations, consciousness does not come to be.] When there is no consciousness, name-and-form does not come to be.... When there is no birth, aging-and-death does not come to be.’ He understands thus: ‘In such a way the world ceases.’ [79]

“Bhikkhus, when a noble disciple thus understands as they really are the origin and the passing away of the world, he is then

called a noble disciple who is accomplished in view, accomplished in vision, who has arrived at this true Dhamma, who sees this true Dhamma, who possesses a trainee's knowledge, a trainee's true knowledge, who has entered the stream of the Dhamma, a noble one with penetrative wisdom, one who stands squarely before the door to the Deathless."

50 (10) *The Noble Disciple (2)*

(This sutta is identical with the preceding one except that the passages enclosed in brackets there as absent in some editions are here clearly included in all editions.) [80]

VI. SUFFERING (OR THE TREE)<sup>133</sup>

51 (1) *Thorough Investigation*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvathī in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. There the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Bhikkhus!"

"Venerable sir!" those bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

"Bhikkhus, when a bhikkhu is making a thorough investigation, in what way should he thoroughly investigate for the utterly complete destruction of suffering?"<sup>134</sup>

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One, guided by the Blessed One, [81] take recourse in the Blessed One. It would be good if the Blessed One would clear up the meaning of this statement. Having heard it from him, the bhikkhus will remember it."

"Then listen and attend closely, bhikkhus, I will speak."

"Yes, venerable sir," the bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

"Here, bhikkhus, when he makes a thorough investigation, a bhikkhu thoroughly investigates thus: 'The many diverse kinds of suffering that arise in the world [headed by] aging-and-death: what is the source of this suffering, what is its origin, from what is it born and produced? When what exists does aging-and-death come to be? When what does not exist does aging-and-death not come to be?'

"As he thoroughly investigates he understands thus: 'The many diverse kinds of suffering that arise in the world [headed by] aging-and-death: this suffering has birth as its source, birth as its origin; it is born and produced from birth. When there is birth, aging-and-death comes to be; when there is no birth, aging-and-death does not come to be.'

"He understands aging-and-death, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading on that is in conformity with its cessation.<sup>135</sup> He practises that way and conducts himself accordingly. This is called a bhikkhu who is practising for the utterly complete destruction of suffering, for the cessation of aging-and-death.

"Then, investigating further, he thoroughly investigates thus: 'What is the source of this birth, what is its origin, from what is it born and produced?... What is the source of this existence?... this clinging?... this craving?... this feeling?... this contact?... these six sense bases?... this name-and-form?... this consciousness?... What is the source of these volitional formations, what is their origin, from what are they born and produced? When what exists do volitional formations come to be? When what does not exist do volitional formations not come to be?'

"As he thoroughly investigates he understands thus: 'Volitional formations have ignorance as their source, ignorance as their origin; they are born and produced from ignorance. [82] When there is ignorance, volitional formations come to be; when there is no ignorance, volitional formations do not come to be.'

"He understands volitional formations, their origin, their cessation, and the way leading on that is in conformity with their cessation. He practises that way and conducts himself accordingly. This is called a bhikkhu who is practising for the utterly complete destruction of suffering, for the cessation of volitional formations.

"Bhikkhus, if a person immersed in ignorance generates a meritorious volitional formation, consciousness fares on to the meritorious; if he generates a demeritorious volitional formation, consciousness fares on to the demeritorious; if he generates an imperturbable volitional formation, consciousness fares on to the imperturbable.<sup>136</sup> But when a bhikkhu has abandoned ignorance and aroused true knowledge, then, with the fading away of ignorance and the arising of true knowledge, he does not generate a meritorious volitional formation, or a demeritorious volitional

formation, or an imperturbable volitional formation. Since he does not generate or fashion volitional formations, he does not cling to anything in the world. Not clinging, he is not agitated.<sup>137</sup> Not being agitated, he personally attains Nibbāna. He understands: 'Destroyed is birth, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more for this state of being.'

"If he feels a pleasant feeling,<sup>138</sup> he understands: 'It is impermanent'; he understands: 'It is not held to'; he understands: 'It is not delighted in.' If he feels a painful feeling, he understands: 'It is impermanent'; he understands: 'It is not held to'; he understands: 'It is not delighted in.' If he feels a neither-painful-nor-pleasant feeling, he understands: 'It is impermanent'; he understands: 'It is not held to'; he understands: 'It is not delighted in.'

"If he feels a pleasant feeling, he feels it detached; if he feels a painful feeling, he feels it detached; if he feels a neither-painful-nor-pleasant feeling, he feels it detached. [83]

"When he feels a feeling terminating with the body, he understands: 'I feel a feeling terminating with the body.' When he feels a feeling terminating with life, he understands: 'I feel a feeling terminating with life.'<sup>139</sup> He understands: 'With the breakup of the body, following the exhaustion of life, all that is felt, not being delighted in, will become cool right here; mere bodily remains will be left.'<sup>140</sup>

"Suppose, bhikkhus, a man would remove a hot clay pot from a potter's kiln and set it on smooth ground: its heat would be dissipated right there and potsherds would be left. So too, when he feels a feeling terminating with the body ... terminating with life.... He understands: 'With the breakup of the body, following the exhaustion of life, all that is felt, not being delighted in, will become cool right here; mere bodily remains will be left.'<sup>141</sup>

"What do you think, bhikkhus, can a bhikkhu whose taints are destroyed generate a meritorious volitional formation, or a demeritorious volitional formation, or an imperturbable volitional formation?"

"No, venerable sir."

"When there are utterly no volitional formations, with the cessation of volitional formations, would consciousness be discerned?"<sup>142</sup>

"No, venerable sir."

"When there is utterly no consciousness, with the cessation of consciousness, would name-and-form be discerned?"

"No, venerable sir."

"When there is utterly no name-and-form ... no six sense bases ... [84] ... no contact ... no feeling ... no craving ... no clinging ... no existence ... no birth, with the cessation of birth, would aging-and-death be discerned?"

"No, venerable sir."

"Good, good, bhikkhus! It is exactly so and not otherwise! Place faith in me about this, bhikkhus, resolve on this. Be free from perplexity and doubt about this. Just this is the end of suffering."<sup>143</sup>

### 52 (2) *Clinging*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, when one dwells contemplating gratification in things that can be clung to,<sup>144</sup> craving increases. With craving as condition, clinging [comes to be]; with clinging as condition, existence; with existence as condition, birth; with birth as condition, aging-and-death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair come to be. Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering.

"Suppose, bhikkhus, [85] a great bonfire was burning, consuming ten, twenty, thirty, or forty loads of wood, and a man would cast dry grass, dry cowdung, and dry wood into it from time to time. Thus, sustained by that material, fuelled by it, that great bonfire would burn for a very long time. So too, when one lives contemplating gratification in things that can be clung to, craving increases.... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering.

"Bhikkhus, when one dwells contemplating danger in things that can be clung to, craving ceases. With the cessation of craving comes cessation of clinging; with the cessation of clinging, cessation of existence ... cessation of birth ... aging-and-death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair cease. Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering."<sup>145</sup>

"Suppose, bhikkhus, a great bonfire was burning, consuming ten, twenty, thirty, or forty loads of wood, and a man would not cast dry grass, dry cowdung, or dry wood into it from time to time. Thus, when the former supply of fuel is exhausted, that great bonfire, not being fed with any more fuel, lacking sustenance, would be extinguished. So too, when one lives contem-

plating danger in things that can be clung to, craving ceases.... Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering."<sup>146</sup> [86]

53 (3) *Fetters (1)*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, when one dwells contemplating gratification in things that can fetter,<sup>147</sup> craving increases. With craving as condition, clinging [comes to be]; with clinging as condition, existence; with existence as condition, birth; with birth as condition, aging-and-death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair come to be. Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering.

"Suppose, bhikkhus, an oil lamp was burning in dependence on oil and a wick, and a man would pour oil into it and adjust the wick from time to time. Thus, sustained by that oil, fuelled by it, that oil lamp would burn for a very long time. So too, when one lives contemplating gratification in things that can fetter, craving increases.... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering.

"Bhikkhus, when one dwells contemplating danger in things that can fetter, craving ceases. With the cessation of craving comes cessation of clinging; with the cessation of clinging, cessation of existence ... cessation of birth ... aging-and-death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair cease. Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering.

"Suppose, bhikkhus, an oil lamp was burning in dependence on oil and a wick, and the man would not pour oil into it or adjust the wick from time to time. Thus, when the former supply of fuel is exhausted, that oil lamp, not being fed with any more fuel, lacking sustenance, would be extinguished. So too, when one lives contemplating danger in things that can fetter, craving ceases.... Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering." [87]

54 (4) *Fetters (2)*

(*This sutta is identical with the preceding one except that in both the sections on origination and cessation the similes come first and their applications only afterwards.*)

55 (5) *The Great Tree (1)*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, when one dwells contemplating gratification in things that can be clung to, craving increases. With craving as condition, clinging [comes to be].... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering.

"Suppose, bhikkhus, there was a great tree, and all its roots going downwards and across would send the sap upwards. Sustained by that sap, nourished by it, that great tree would stand for a very long time. So too, when one lives contemplating gratification in things that can be clung to, craving increases.... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering."<sup>148</sup> [88]

"When, bhikkhus, one dwells contemplating danger in things that can be clung to, craving ceases. With the cessation of craving comes cessation of clinging.... Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering.

"Suppose, bhikkhus, there was a great tree. Then a man would come along bringing a shovel and a basket. He would cut down the tree at its foot, dig it up, and pull out the roots, even the fine rootlets and root-fibre. He would cut the tree into pieces, split the pieces, and reduce them to slivers. Then he would dry the slivers in the wind and sun, burn them in a fire, and collect the ashes. Having done so, he would winnow the ashes in a strong wind or let them be carried away by the swift current of a river. Thus that great tree would be cut off at the root, made like a palm stump, obliterated so that it is no more subject to future arising.

"So too, bhikkhus, when one dwells contemplating danger in things that can be clung to, craving ceases.... Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering."<sup>149</sup>

56 (6) *The Great Tree (2)*

(*This sutta is identical with the preceding one except that in both the sections on origination and cessation the similes come first and their applications only afterwards.*) [89]

57 (7) *The Sapling*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, when one dwells contemplating gratification in things that can fetter, craving increases. With craving as

condition, clinging [comes to be].... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering.

“Suppose, bhikkhus, there was a sapling, and from time to time a man would clear the area around the roots, from time to time provide it with good soil, from time to time water it. Sustained by that care, nourished by it, that sapling would attain to growth, increase, and expansion. So too, when one dwells contemplating gratification in things that can fetter, craving increases.... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering.

“When, bhikkhus, one dwells contemplating danger in things that can fetter, craving ceases. With the cessation of craving comes cessation of clinging.... Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering. [90]

“Suppose, bhikkhus, there was a sapling. Then a man would come along bringing a shovel and a basket. He would cut down the sapling at its foot ... (*as in §55*) ... he would winnow the ashes in a strong wind or let them be carried away by the swift current of a river. Thus that sapling would be cut off at the root, made like a palm stump, obliterated so that it is no more subject to future arising.

“So too, bhikkhus, when one dwells contemplating danger in things that can fetter, craving ceases.... Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering.”

#### 58 (8) *Name-and-Form*

At Sāvatti. “Bhikkhus, when one dwells contemplating gratification in things that can fetter, there is a descent of name-and-form.<sup>150</sup> With name-and-form as condition, the six sense bases [come to be].... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering.

“Suppose, bhikkhus, there was a great tree, and all its roots going downwards and across would send the sap upwards. Sustained by that sap, nourished by it, that great tree would stand for a very long time. So too, when one lives contemplating gratification in things that can fetter, there is a descent of name-and-form.... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering.

“When, bhikkhus, one dwells contemplating danger in things that can fetter, there is no descent of name-and-form. [91] With the cessation of name-and-form comes cessation of the six sense bases.... Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering.

“Suppose, bhikkhus, there was a great tree. Then a man would come along bringing a shovel and a basket. He would cut down the tree at its foot ... he would winnow the ashes in a strong wind or let them be carried away by the swift current of a river. Thus that great tree would be cut off at the root, made like a palm stump, obliterated so that it is no more subject to future arising.

“So too, bhikkhus, when one dwells contemplating danger in things that can fetter, there is no descent of name-and-form.... Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering.”

#### 59 (9) *Consciousness*

At Sāvatti. “Bhikkhus, when one dwells contemplating gratification in things that can fetter, there is a descent of consciousness.<sup>151</sup> With consciousness as condition, name-and-form [comes to be].... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering.

“Suppose, bhikkhus, there was a great tree, and all its roots going downwards and across would send the sap upwards. Sustained by that sap, nourished by it, that great tree would stand for a very long time. So too, when one lives contemplating gratification in things that can fetter, there is a descent of consciousness.... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering.

“When, bhikkhus, one dwells contemplating danger in things that can fetter, there is no descent of consciousness. With the cessation of consciousness comes cessation of name-and-form.... Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering.

“Suppose, bhikkhus, there was a great tree. Then a man would come along bringing a shovel and a basket. He would cut down the tree at its foot ... he would winnow the ashes in a strong wind or let them be carried away by the swift current of a river. Thus that great tree would be cut off at the root, made like a palm stump, obliterated so that it is no more subject to future arising.

“So too, bhikkhus, when one dwells contemplating danger in things that can fetter, there is no descent of consciousness.... Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering.” [92]

#### 60 (10) *Causation*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling among the Kurus, where there was a town of the Kurus named Kammāsadamma.

Then the Venerable Ānanda approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and said to him:<sup>152</sup>

"It is wonderful, venerable sir! It is amazing, venerable sir! This dependent origination is so deep and so deep in implications, yet to me it seems as clear as clear can be."

"Not so, Ānanda! Not so, Ānanda! This dependent origination is deep and deep in implications. It is because of not understanding and not penetrating this Dhamma, Ānanda, that this generation has become like a tangled skein, like a knotted ball of thread, like matted reeds and rushes, and does not pass beyond the plane of misery, the bad destinations, the nether world, *samsāra*.

"Ānanda, when one dwells contemplating gratification in things that can be clung to, craving increases. With craving as condition, [93] clinging [comes to be].... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering.

"Suppose, Ānanda, there was a great tree, and all its roots going downwards and across would send the sap upwards. Sustained by that sap, nourished by it, that great tree would stand for a very long time. So too, when one lives contemplating gratification in things that can be clung to, craving increases.... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering.

"When, Ānanda, one dwells contemplating danger in things that can be clung to, craving ceases. With the cessation of craving comes cessation of clinging.... Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering.

"Suppose, Ānanda, there was a great tree. Then a man would come along bringing a shovel and a basket. He would cut down the tree at its foot ... he would winnow the ashes in a strong wind or let them be carried away by the swift current of a river. Thus that great tree would be cut off at the root, made like a palm stump, obliterated so that it is no more subject to future arising.

"So too, Ānanda, when one dwells contemplating danger in things that can be clung to, craving ceases. With the cessation of craving comes cessation of clinging; with the cessation of clinging, cessation of existence; with the cessation of existence, cessation of birth; with the cessation of birth, aging-and-death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair cease. Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering."

[94]

## VII. THE GREAT SUBCHAPTER

61 (1) *Uninstructed* (1)

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvattī in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park....

"Bhikkhus, the uninstructed worldling<sup>153</sup> might experience revulsion towards this body composed of the four great elements; he might become dispassionate towards it and be liberated from it. For what reason? Because growth and decline is seen in this body composed of the four great elements, it is seen being taken up and laid aside. Therefore the uninstructed worldling might experience revulsion towards this body composed of the four great elements; he might become dispassionate towards it and be liberated from it.

"But, bhikkhus, as to that which is called 'mind' and 'mentality' and 'consciousness'<sup>154</sup>—the uninstructed worldling is unable to experience revulsion towards it, unable to become dispassionate towards it and be liberated from it. For what reason? Because for a long time this has been held to by him, appropriated, and grasped thus: 'This is mine, this I am, this is my self.'<sup>155</sup> Therefore the uninstructed worldling is unable to experience revulsion towards it, unable to become dispassionate towards it and be liberated from it.

"It would be better, bhikkhus, for the uninstructed worldling to take as self this body composed of the four great elements rather than the mind. For what reason? Because this body composed of the four great elements is seen standing for one year, for two years, for three, four, five, or ten years, for twenty, thirty, forty, or fifty years, for a hundred years, [95] or even longer.<sup>156</sup> But that which is called 'mind' and 'mentality' and 'consciousness' arises as one thing and ceases as another by day and by night. Just as a monkey roaming through a forest grabs hold of one branch, lets that go and grabs another, then lets that go and grabs still another, so too that which is called 'mind' and 'mentality' and 'consciousness' arises as one thing and ceases as another by day and by night.<sup>157</sup>

"Therein, bhikkhus, the instructed noble disciple attends closely and carefully to dependent origination itself thus:<sup>158</sup> 'When this exists, that comes to be; with the arising of this, that arises.

When this does not exist, that does not come to be; with the cessation of this, that ceases. That is, with ignorance as condition, volitional formations [come to be]; with volitional formations as condition, consciousness.... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering. But with the remainderless fading away and cessation of ignorance comes cessation of volitional formations; with the cessation of volitional formations, cessation of consciousness.... Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering.

“Seeing thus, bhikkhus, the instructed noble disciple experiences revulsion towards form, revulsion towards feeling, revulsion towards perception, revulsion towards volitional formations, revulsion towards consciousness. Experiencing revulsion, he becomes dispassionate. Through dispassion [his mind] is liberated. When it is liberated there comes the knowledge: ‘It’s liberated.’ He understands: ‘Destroyed is birth, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more for this state of being.’”

#### 62 (2) *Uninstructed* (2)

(*This sutta is identical with the preceding one from the opening down to the monkey simile. It then omits the monkey simile and continues as follows:*) [96]

“Therein, bhikkhus, the instructed noble disciple attends closely and carefully to dependent origination itself thus: ‘When this exists, that comes to be; with the arising of this, that arises. When this does not exist, that does not come to be; with the cessation of this, that ceases.’ Bhikkhus, in dependence on a contact to be experienced as pleasant, a pleasant feeling arises. With the cessation of that contact to be experienced as pleasant, the corresponding feeling—the pleasant feeling that arose in dependence on that contact to be experienced as pleasant—ceases and subsides. In dependence on a contact to be experienced as painful, a painful feeling arises. With the cessation of that contact to be experienced as painful, the corresponding feeling—the painful feeling [97] that arose in dependence on that contact to be experienced as painful—ceases and subsides. In dependence on a contact to be experienced as neither-painful-nor-pleasant, a neither-painful-nor-pleasant feeling arises. With the cessation of that contact to be experienced as neither-painful-nor-pleasant,

the corresponding feeling—the neither-painful-nor-pleasant feeling that arose in dependence on that contact to be experienced as neither-painful-nor-pleasant—ceases and subsides.

“Bhikkhus, just as heat is generated and fire is produced from the conjunction and friction of two fire-sticks, but with the separation and laying aside of the sticks<sup>159</sup> the resultant heat ceases and subsides; so too, in dependence on a contact to be experienced as pleasant ... a contact to be experienced as painful ... a contact to be experienced as neither-painful-nor-pleasant, a neither-painful-nor-pleasant feeling arises.... With the cessation of that contact to be experienced as neither-painful-nor-pleasant, the corresponding feeling ... ceases and subsides.

“Seeing thus, bhikkhus, the instructed noble disciple experiences revulsion towards contact, revulsion towards feeling, revulsion towards perception, revulsion towards volitional formations, revulsion towards consciousness. Experiencing revulsion, he becomes dispassionate. Through dispassion [his mind] is liberated. When it is liberated there comes the knowledge: ‘It’s liberated.’ He understands: ‘Destroyed is birth, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more for this state of being.’”

#### 63 (3) *Son’s Flesh*

At Sāvatti.<sup>160</sup> [98] “Bhikkhus, there are these four kinds of nutriment for the maintenance of beings that have already come to be and for the assistance of those about to come to be. What four? The nutriment edible food, gross or subtle; second, contact; third, mental volition; fourth, consciousness. These are the four kinds of nutriment for the maintenance of beings that have already come to be and for the assistance of those about to come to be.

“And how, bhikkhus, should the nutriment edible food be seen? Suppose a couple, husband and wife, had taken limited provisions and were travelling through a desert. They have with them their only son, dear and beloved. Then, in the middle of the desert, their limited provisions would be used up and exhausted, while the rest of the desert remains to be crossed. The husband and wife would think: ‘Our limited provisions have been used up and exhausted, while the rest of this desert remains to be crossed. Let us kill our only son, dear and beloved, and prepare

dried and spiced meat. By eating our son's flesh we can cross the rest of this desert. Let not all three of us perish!

"Then, bhikkhus, the husband and wife would kill their only son, dear and beloved, prepare dried and roasted meat, and by eating their son's flesh they would cross the rest of the desert. While they are eating their son's flesh, they would beat their breasts and cry: 'Where are you, our only son? Where are you, our only son?'"

"What do you think, bhikkhus? Would they eat that food for amusement or for enjoyment [99] or for the sake of physical beauty and attractiveness?"

"No, venerable sir."

"Wouldn't they eat that food only for the sake of crossing the desert?"

"Yes, venerable sir."

"It is in such a way, bhikkhus, that I say the nutriment edible food should be seen.<sup>161</sup> When the nutriment edible food is fully understood, lust for the five cords of sensual pleasure is fully understood.<sup>162</sup> When lust for the five cords of sensual pleasure is fully understood, there is no fetter bound by which a noble disciple might come back again to this world.<sup>163</sup>

"And how, bhikkhus, should the nutriment contact be seen? Suppose there is a flayed cow. If she stands exposed to a wall, the creatures dwelling in the wall would nibble at her. If she stands exposed to a tree, the creatures dwelling in the tree would nibble at her. If she stands exposed to water, the creatures dwelling in the water would nibble at her. If she stands exposed to the open air, the creatures dwelling in the open air would nibble at her. Whatever that flayed cow stands exposed to, the creatures dwelling there would nibble at her.

"It is in such a way, bhikkhus, that I say the nutriment contact should be seen.<sup>164</sup> When the nutriment contact is fully understood, the three kinds of feeling are fully understood. When the three kinds of feeling are fully understood, I say, there is nothing further that a noble disciple needs to do.<sup>165</sup>

"And how, bhikkhus, should the nutriment mental volition be seen? Suppose there is a charcoal pit deeper than a man's height, filled with glowing coals without flame or smoke. A man would come along wanting to live, not wanting to die, desiring happiness and averse to suffering. Then two strong men would grab

him by both arms and drag him towards the charcoal pit. The man's volition would be to get far away, his longing would be to get far away, his wish would be to get far away [from the charcoal pit]. [100] For what reason? Because he knows: 'I will fall into this charcoal pit and on that account I will meet death or deadly suffering.'

"It is in such a way, bhikkhus, that I say the nutriment mental volition should be seen.<sup>166</sup> When the nutriment mental volition is fully understood, the three kinds of craving are fully understood. When the three kinds of craving are fully understood, I say, there is nothing further that a noble disciple needs to do.<sup>167</sup>

"And how, bhikkhus, should the nutriment consciousness be seen? Suppose they were to arrest a bandit, a criminal, and bring him before the king, saying: 'Sire, this man is a bandit, a criminal. Impose on him whatever punishment you wish.' The king says to them: 'Go, men, in the morning strike this man with a hundred spears.' In the morning they strike him with a hundred spears. Then at noon the king asks: 'Men, how's that man?' – 'Still alive, sire.' – 'Then go, and at noon strike him with a hundred spears.' At noon they strike him with a hundred spears. Then in the evening the king asks: 'Men, how's that man?' – 'Still alive, sire.' – 'Then go, and in the evening strike him with a hundred spears.' In the evening they strike him with a hundred spears.

"What do you think, bhikkhus? Would that man, being struck with three hundred spears, experience pain and displeasure on that account?"

"Venerable sir, even if he were struck with one spear he would experience pain and displeasure on that account, not to speak of three hundred spears."

"It is in such a way, bhikkhus, that I say the nutriment consciousness should be seen.<sup>168</sup> When the nutriment consciousness is fully understood, name-and-form is fully understood. When name-and-form is fully understood, I say, there is nothing further that a noble disciple needs to do."<sup>169</sup> [101]

#### 64 (4) *If There Is Lust*

At Sāvattḥi. "Bhikkhus, there are these four kinds of nutriment for the maintenance of beings that have already come to be and for the assistance of those about to come to be. What four? The

nutriment edible food, gross or subtle; second, contact; third, mental volition; fourth, consciousness. These are the four kinds of nutriment for the maintenance of beings that have already come to be and for the assistance of those seeking a new existence.

"If, bhikkhus, there is lust for the nutriment edible food, if there is delight, if there is craving, consciousness becomes established there and comes to growth.<sup>170</sup> Wherever consciousness becomes established and comes to growth, there is a descent of name-and-form.<sup>171</sup> Where there is a descent of name-and-form, there is the growth of volitional formations.<sup>172</sup> Where there is the growth of volitional formations, there is the production of future renewed existence. Where there is the production of future renewed existence, there is future birth, aging, and death. Where there is future birth, aging, and death, I say that is accompanied by sorrow, anguish, and despair.

"If, bhikkhus, there is lust for the nutriment contact, or for the nutriment mental volition, or for the nutriment consciousness, if there is delight, if there is craving, consciousness becomes established there and comes to growth. Wherever consciousness becomes established and comes to growth ... I say that is accompanied by sorrow, anguish, and despair.

"Suppose, bhikkhus, an artist or a painter, using dye or lac or turmeric or indigo or crimson, [102] would create the figure of a man or a woman complete in all its features on a well-polished plank or wall or canvas. So too, if there is lust for the nutriment edible food, or for the nutriment contact, or for the nutriment mental volition, or for the nutriment consciousness, if there is delight, if there is craving, consciousness becomes established there and comes to growth. Wherever consciousness becomes established and comes to growth ... I say that is accompanied by sorrow, anguish, and despair.<sup>173</sup>

"If, bhikkhus, there is no lust for the nutriment edible food, or [103] for the nutriment contact, or for the nutriment mental volition, or for the nutriment consciousness, if there is no delight, if there is no craving, consciousness does not become established there and come to growth. Where consciousness does not become established and come to growth, there is no descent of name-and-form. Where there is no descent of name-and-form, there is no growth of volitional formations. Where there is no growth of volitional formations, there is no production of future

renewed existence. Where there is no production of future renewed existence, there is no future birth, aging, and death. Where there is no future birth, aging, and death, I say that is without sorrow, anguish, and despair.

"Suppose, bhikkhus, there was a house or a hall with a peaked roof, with windows on the northern, southern, and eastern sides. When the sun rises and a beam of light enters through a window, where would it become established?"

"On the western wall, venerable sir."

"If there were no western wall, where would it become established?"

"On the earth, venerable sir."

"If there were no earth, where would it become established?"

"On the water, venerable sir."

"If there were no water, where would it become established?"

"It would not become established anywhere, venerable sir."

"So too, bhikkhus, if there is no lust for the nutriment edible food ... for the nutriment contact ... for the nutriment mental volition ... for the nutriment consciousness ... consciousness does not become established there and come to growth. Where consciousness does not become established and come to growth ... [104] ... I say that is without sorrow, anguish, and despair."<sup>174</sup>

### 65 (5) *The City*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, before my enlightenment, while I was still a bodhisatta, not yet fully enlightened, it occurred to me: 'Alas, this world has fallen into trouble, in that it is born, ages, and dies, it passes away and is reborn, yet it does not understand the escape from this suffering [headed by] aging-and-death. When now will an escape be discerned from this suffering [headed by] aging-and-death?'<sup>175</sup>

"Then, bhikkhus, it occurred to me: 'When what exists does aging-and-death come to be? By what is aging-and-death conditioned?' Then, bhikkhus, through careful attention, there took place in me a breakthrough by wisdom: 'When there is birth, aging-and-death comes to be; aging-and-death has birth as its condition.'

"Then, bhikkhus, it occurred to me: 'When what exists does birth come to be?... existence?... clinging?... craving?... feeling?...

contact?... the six sense bases?... name-and-form? By what is name-and-form conditioned?' Then, bhikkhus, through careful attention, there took place in me a breakthrough by wisdom: 'When there is consciousness, name-and-form comes to be; name-and-form has consciousness as its condition.'

"Then, bhikkhus, it occurred to me: 'When what exists does consciousness come to be? By what is consciousness conditioned?' Then, bhikkhus, through careful attention, there took place in me a breakthrough by wisdom: 'When there is name-and-form, consciousness comes to be; consciousness has name-and-form as its condition.'<sup>176</sup>

"Then, bhikkhus, it occurred to me: 'This consciousness turns back; it does not go further than name-and-form.'<sup>177</sup> It is to this extent that one may be born and age and die, pass away and be reborn, that is, when there is consciousness with name-and-form as its condition, and name-and-form with consciousness as its condition.<sup>178</sup> With name-and-form as condition, the six sense bases; with the six sense bases as condition, contact.... [105] Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering.'

"'Origination, origination'—thus, bhikkhus, in regard to things unheard before there arose in me vision, knowledge, wisdom, true knowledge, and light.

"Then, bhikkhus, it occurred to me: 'When what does not exist does aging-and-death not come to be? With the cessation of what does the cessation of aging-and-death come about?' Then, bhikkhus, through careful attention, there took place in me a breakthrough by wisdom: 'When there is no birth, aging-and-death does not come to be; with the cessation of birth comes cessation of aging-and-death.'

"It occurred to me: 'When what does not exist does birth not come to be?... existence?... clinging?... craving?... feeling?... contact?... the six sense bases?... name-and-form? With the cessation of what does the cessation of name-and-form come about?' Then, bhikkhus, through careful attention, there took place in me a breakthrough by wisdom: 'When there is no consciousness, name-and-form does not come to be; with the cessation of consciousness comes cessation of name-and-form.'

"It occurred to me: 'When what does not exist does consciousness not come to be? With the cessation of what does the cessation of consciousness come about?' Then, bhikkhus, through

careful attention, there took place in me a breakthrough by wisdom: 'When there is no name-and-form, consciousness does not come to be; with the cessation of name-and-form comes cessation of consciousness.'

"Then, bhikkhus, it occurred to me: 'I have discovered this path to enlightenment, that is, with the cessation of name-and-form comes cessation of consciousness; with the cessation of consciousness comes cessation of name-and-form; with the cessation of name-and-form, cessation of the six sense bases; with the cessation of the six sense bases, cessation of contact.... Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering.'<sup>179</sup>

"'Cessation, cessation'—thus, bhikkhus, in regard to things unheard before there arose in me vision, knowledge, wisdom, true knowledge, and light.

"Suppose, bhikkhus, a man wandering through a forest would see an ancient path, an ancient road travelled upon by people in the past. He would follow it and would see an ancient city, an ancient capital [106] that had been inhabited by people in the past, with parks, groves, ponds, and ramparts, a delightful place. Then the man would inform the king or a royal minister: 'Sire, know that while wandering through the forest I saw an ancient path, an ancient road travelled upon by people in the past. I followed it and saw an ancient city, an ancient capital that had been inhabited by people in the past, with parks, groves, ponds, and ramparts, a delightful place. Renovate that city, sire!' Then the king or the royal minister would renovate the city, and some time later that city would become successful and prosperous, well populated, filled with people, attained to growth and expansion.

"So too, bhikkhus, I saw the ancient path, the ancient road travelled by the Perfectly Enlightened Ones of the past.<sup>180</sup> And what is that ancient path, that ancient road? It is just this Noble Eightfold Path; that is, right view, right intention, right speech, right action, right livelihood, right effort, right mindfulness, right concentration. I followed that path and by doing so I have directly known aging-and-death, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation. I have directly known birth ... existence ... clinging ... craving ... feeling ... contact ... the six sense bases ... name-and-form ... consciousness ... volitional formations, their origin, their cessation, and the way leading to their cessation.<sup>181</sup> [107] Having directly known them, I have explained them

to the bhikkhus, the bhikkhunis, the male lay followers, and the female lay followers. This holy life, bhikkhus, has become successful and prosperous, extended, popular, widespread, well proclaimed among devas and humans."<sup>182</sup>

#### 66 (6) Exploration

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling among the Kurus, where there was a town of the Kurus named Kammāsadamma. There the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Bhikkhus!"<sup>183</sup>

"Venerable sir!" those bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

"Do you engage in inward exploration, bhikkhus?"<sup>184</sup>

When this was said, one bhikkhu said to the Blessed One: "Venerable sir, I engage in inward exploration."

"How do you engage in inward exploration, bhikkhu?"

The bhikkhu then explained but the way he explained did not satisfy the Blessed One.<sup>185</sup> Then the Venerable Ānanda said: "Now is the time for this, Blessed One! Now is the time for this, Fortunate One! Let the Blessed One explain inward exploration. Having heard it from the Blessed One, the bhikkhus will remember it."

"Then listen and attend closely, Ānanda, I will speak."

"Yes, venerable sir," the bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

"Here, bhikkhus, when engaged in inward exploration, a bhikkhu explores thus: 'The many diverse kinds of suffering that arise in the world [headed by] aging-and-death: what is the source of this suffering, what is its origin, [108] from what is it born and produced? When what exists does aging-and-death come to be? When what does not exist does aging-and-death not come to be?'<sup>186</sup>

"As he explores he understands thus: 'The many diverse kinds of suffering that arise in the world [headed by] aging-and-death: this suffering has acquisition as its source, acquisition as its origin; it is born and produced from acquisition.<sup>187</sup> When there is acquisition, aging-and-death comes to be; when there is no acquisition, aging-and-death does not come to be.'

"He understands aging-and-death, its origin, its cessation, and

the way leading on that is in conformity with its cessation.<sup>188</sup> He practises in that way and conducts himself accordingly. This is called a bhikkhu who is practising for the utterly complete destruction of suffering, for the cessation of aging-and-death.

"Then, engaging further in inward exploration, he explores thus: 'What is the source of this acquisition, what is its origin, from what is it born and produced? When what exists does acquisition come to be? When what is absent does acquisition not come to be?'

"As he explores he understands thus: 'Acquisition has craving as its source, craving as its origin; it is born and produced from craving. When there is craving, acquisition comes to be; when there is no craving, acquisition does not come to be.'

"He understands acquisition, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading on that is in conformity with its cessation. He practises in that way and conducts himself accordingly. This is called a bhikkhu who is practising for the utterly complete destruction of suffering, for the cessation of acquisition.

"Then, engaging further in inward exploration, he explores thus: 'When this craving arises, where does it arise? When it settles down, upon what does it settle?'

"As he explores he understands thus: 'Whatever in the world has a pleasant and agreeable nature: it is here that this craving arises when it arises; it is here that it settles when it settles down.<sup>189</sup> And what in the world has a pleasant and agreeable nature? The eye has a pleasant and agreeable nature in the world: it is here that this craving arises when it arises; it is here that it settles when it settles down. So too the ear, [109] the nose, the tongue, the body, and the mind have a pleasant and agreeable nature: it is here that this craving arises when it arises; it is here that it settles when it settles down.

"Bhikkhus, whatever ascetics and brahmins in the past regarded that in the world with a pleasant and agreeable nature as permanent, as happiness, as self, as healthy, as secure: they nurtured craving. In nurturing craving they nurtured acquisition. In nurturing acquisition they nurtured suffering. In nurturing suffering they were not freed from birth, aging, and death; they were not freed from sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair; they were not freed from suffering, I say."

"Whatever ascetics and brahmins in the future will regard that

in the world with a pleasant and agreeable nature as permanent, as happiness, as self, as healthy, as secure: they will nurture craving. In nurturing craving they will nurture acquisition. In nurturing acquisition they will nurture suffering. In nurturing suffering they will not be freed from birth, aging, and death; they will not be freed from sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair; they will not be freed from suffering, I say.

“Whatever ascetics and brahmins at present regard that in the world with a pleasant and agreeable nature as permanent, as happiness, as self, as healthy, as secure: they are nurturing craving. In nurturing craving they are nurturing acquisition. In nurturing acquisition they are nurturing suffering. In nurturing suffering they are not freed from birth, aging, and death; they are not freed from sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair; they are not freed from suffering, I say. [110]

“Suppose, bhikkhus, there was a bronze cup of a beverage having a fine colour, aroma, and taste, but it was mixed with poison. Then a man would come along, oppressed and afflicted by the heat, tired, parched, and thirsty. They would tell him: ‘Good man, this beverage in the bronze cup has a fine colour, aroma, and taste, but it is mixed with poison. Drink it if you wish. If you drink it, it will gratify you with its colour, aroma, and taste, but by drinking it you will meet death or deadly suffering.’ Suddenly, without reflecting, he would drink the beverage—he would not reject it—and thereby he would meet death or deadly suffering.<sup>190</sup>

“So too, bhikkhus, whatever ascetics and brahmins in the past ... in the future ... at present regard that in the world with a pleasant and agreeable nature as permanent, as happiness, as self, as healthy, as secure: they are nurturing craving. In nurturing craving ... they are not freed from suffering, I say.<sup>191</sup>

“Bhikkhus, whatever ascetics and brahmins in the past regarded that in the world with a pleasant and agreeable nature as impermanent, as suffering, as nonself, as a disease, as fearful: they abandoned craving. In abandoning craving they abandoned acquisition. In abandoning acquisition they abandoned suffering. In abandoning suffering they were freed from birth, aging, and death; they were freed from sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair; they were freed from suffering, I say.

“Whatever ascetics and brahmins in the future [111] will

regard that in the world with a pleasant and agreeable nature as impermanent, as suffering, as nonself, as a disease, as fearful: they will abandon craving. In abandoning craving ... they will be freed from suffering, I say.

“Whatever ascetics and brahmins at present regard that in the world with a pleasant and agreeable nature as impermanent, as suffering, as nonself, as a disease, as fearful: they are abandoning craving. In abandoning craving ... they are freed from suffering, I say.

“Suppose, bhikkhus, there was a bronze cup of a beverage having a fine colour, aroma, and taste, but it was mixed with poison. Then a man would come along, oppressed and afflicted by the heat, tired, parched, and thirsty. They would tell him: ‘Good man, this beverage in the bronze cup has a fine colour, aroma, and taste, but it is mixed with poison. Drink it if you wish. If you drink it, it will gratify you with its colour, aroma, and taste, but by drinking it you will meet death or deadly suffering.’ Then the man would think: ‘I can quench my thirst with water, whey, porridge, or soup, but I should not drink that beverage, since to do so would lead to my harm and suffering for a long time.’ Having reflected, he would not drink the beverage but would reject it, [112] and thereby he would not meet death or deadly suffering.

“So too, bhikkhus, whatever ascetics and brahmins in the past ... in the future ... at present regard that in the world with a pleasant and agreeable nature as impermanent, as suffering, as nonself, as a disease, as fearful: they are abandoning craving. In abandoning craving ... they are freed from suffering, I say.”<sup>192</sup>

### 67 (7) *The Sheaves of Reeds*

On one occasion the Venerable Sāriputta and the Venerable Mahākoṭṭhita were dwelling at Bārāṇasī in the Deer Park at Isipatana.<sup>193</sup> Then, in the evening, the Venerable Mahākoṭṭhita emerged from seclusion and approached the Venerable Sāriputta. He exchanged greetings with the Venerable Sāriputta and, when they had concluded their greetings and cordial talk, he sat down to one side and said to him:

“How is it, friend Sāriputta: Is aging-and-death created by oneself, or is it created by another, [113] or is it created both by one-

self and by another, or has it arisen fortuitously, being created neither by oneself nor by another?"<sup>194</sup>

"Friend Koṭṭhita, aging-and-death is not created by oneself, nor is it created by another, nor is it created both by oneself and by another, nor has it arisen fortuitously, being created neither by oneself nor by another. But rather, with birth as condition, aging-and-death [comes to be]."

"How is it, friend Sāriputta: Is birth created by oneself ... Is existence ... clinging ... craving ... feeling ... contact ... the six sense bases ... name-and-form created by oneself, or is it created by another, or is it created both by oneself and by another, or has it arisen fortuitously, being created neither by oneself nor by another?"

"Name-and-form, friend Koṭṭhita, is not created by oneself, nor is it created by another, nor is it created both by oneself and by another, nor has it arisen fortuitously, being created neither by oneself nor by another; but rather, with consciousness as condition, name-and-form [comes to be]."

"How is it, friend Sāriputta: Is consciousness created by oneself, or is it created by another, or is it created both by oneself and by another, or has it arisen fortuitously, being created neither by oneself nor by another?"

"Consciousness, friend Koṭṭhita, is not created by oneself, nor is it created by another, nor is it created both by oneself and by another, nor has it arisen fortuitously, being created neither by oneself nor by another; but rather, with name-and-form as condition, consciousness [comes to be]."<sup>195</sup> [114]

"Now we understand the Venerable Sāriputta's statement thus: 'Name-and-form, friend Koṭṭhita, is not created by oneself ... but rather, with consciousness as condition, name-and-form [comes to be].' Now we also understand the Venerable Sāriputta's [other] statement thus: 'Consciousness, friend Koṭṭhita, is not created by oneself ... but rather, with name-and-form as condition, consciousness [comes to be].' But how, friend Sāriputta, should the meaning of this statement be seen?"

"Well then, friend, I will make up a simile for you, for some intelligent people here understand the meaning of a statement by means of a simile. Just as two sheaves of reeds might stand leaning against each other, so too, with name-and-form as condition, consciousness [comes to be]; with consciousness as condition,

name-and-form [comes to be]. With name-and-form as condition, the six sense bases [come to be]; with the six sense bases as condition, contact.... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering.

"If, friend, one were to remove one of those sheaves of reeds, the other would fall, and if one were to remove the other sheaf, the first would fall. So too, with the cessation of name-and-form comes cessation of consciousness; with the cessation of consciousness comes cessation of name-and-form. With the cessation of name-and-form comes cessation of the six sense bases; with the cessation of the six sense bases, cessation of contact.... Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering."

"It is wonderful, friend Sāriputta! It is amazing, friend Sāriputta! How well this has been stated by the Venerable Sāriputta. We rejoice in the Venerable Sāriputta's statement on these thirty-six grounds:<sup>196</sup> If, friend, a bhikkhu teaches the Dhamma for the purpose of revulsion towards aging-and-death, for its fading away and cessation, he can be called a bhikkhu who is a speaker on the Dhamma. [115] If a bhikkhu is practising for the purpose of revulsion towards aging-and-death, for its fading away and cessation, he can be called a bhikkhu who is practising in accordance with the Dhamma. If through revulsion towards aging-and-death, through its fading away and cessation, a bhikkhu is liberated by nonclinging, he can be called a bhikkhu who has attained Nibbāna in this very life.

"If, friend, a bhikkhu teaches the Dhamma for the purpose of revulsion towards birth ... existence ... clinging ... craving ... feeling ... contact ... the six sense bases ... name-and-form ... consciousness ... volitional formations ... ignorance, for its fading away and cessation, he can be called a bhikkhu who is a speaker on the Dhamma. If a bhikkhu is practising for the purpose of revulsion towards ignorance, for its fading away and cessation, he can be called a bhikkhu who is practising in accordance with the Dhamma. If through revulsion towards ignorance, through its fading away and cessation, a bhikkhu is liberated by nonclinging, he can be called a bhikkhu who has attained Nibbāna in this very life."

68 (8) *Kosambi*

On one occasion the Venerable Musila, the Venerable Savitṭha,

the Venerable Nārada, and the Venerable Ānanda were living at Kosambi in Ghosita's Park.<sup>197</sup>

Then the Venerable Savit̥ṭha said to the Venerable Musila: "Friend Musila, apart from faith, apart from personal preference, apart from oral tradition, apart from reasoned reflection, apart from acceptance of a view after pondering it,<sup>198</sup> does the Venerable Musila have personal knowledge thus: 'With birth as condition, aging-and-death [comes to be]?'"

"Friend Savit̥ṭha, apart from faith, apart from personal preference, apart from oral tradition, apart from reasoned reflection, apart from acceptance of a view after pondering it, I know this, I see this: 'With birth as condition, aging-and-death [comes to be].'" [116]

"Friend Musila, apart from faith ... apart from acceptance of a view after pondering it, does the Venerable Musila have personal knowledge thus: 'With existence as condition, birth'?... 'With ignorance as condition, volitional formations'?"

"Friend Savit̥ṭha, apart from faith ... apart from acceptance of a view after pondering it, I know this, I see this: 'With ignorance as condition, volitional formations.'"

"Friend Musila, apart from faith ... apart from acceptance of a view after pondering it, does the Venerable Musila have personal knowledge: 'With the cessation of birth comes cessation of aging-and-death'?... [117] ... 'With the cessation of ignorance comes cessation of volitional formations'?"

"Friend Savit̥ṭha, apart from faith ... apart from acceptance of a view after pondering it, I know this, I see this: 'With the cessation of birth comes cessation of aging-and-death.'... 'With the cessation of ignorance comes cessation of volitional formations.'"

"Friend Musila, apart from faith, apart from personal preference, apart from oral tradition, apart from reasoned reflection, apart from acceptance of a view after pondering it, does the Venerable Musila have personal knowledge thus: 'Nibbāna is the cessation of existence'?"<sup>199</sup>

"Friend Savit̥ṭha, apart from faith, apart from personal preference, apart from oral tradition, apart from reasoned reflection, apart from acceptance of a view after pondering it, I know this, I see this: 'Nibbāna is the cessation of existence.'"

"Then the Venerable Musila is an arahant, one whose taints are destroyed."

When this was said, the Venerable Musila kept silent.<sup>200</sup>

Then the Venerable Nārada said to the Venerable Savit̥ṭha: "Friend Savit̥ṭha, it would be good if I were asked that series of questions. Ask me that series of questions and I will answer you."<sup>201</sup>

"Then let the Venerable Nārada get to answer that series of questions. I will ask the Venerable Nārada that series of questions, and let him answer me."

(*Here the Venerable Savit̥ṭha asks the Venerable Nārada the same series of questions as were addressed to the Venerable Musila, and he answers in exactly the same way.*)

"Then the Venerable Nārada is an arahant, one whose taints are destroyed." [118]

"Friend, though I have clearly seen as it really is with correct wisdom, 'Nibbāna is the cessation of existence,' I am not an arahant, one whose taints are destroyed.<sup>202</sup> Suppose, friend, there was a well along a desert road, but it had neither a rope nor a bucket. Then a man would come along, oppressed and afflicted by the heat, tired, parched, and thirsty. He would look down into the well and the knowledge would occur to him, 'There is water,' but he would not be able to make bodily contact with it.<sup>203</sup> So too, friend, though I have clearly seen as it really is with correct wisdom, 'Nibbāna is the cessation of existence,' I am not an arahant, one whose taints are destroyed."<sup>204</sup>

When this was said, the Venerable Ānanda asked the Venerable Savit̥ṭha: "When he speaks in such a way, friend Savit̥ṭha, what would you say about the Venerable Nārada?"

"When he speaks in such a way, friend Ānanda, I would not say anything about the Venerable Nārada except what is good and favourable."<sup>205</sup>

### 69 (9) *The Surge*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvatt̥hi in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. There the Blessed One said:

"Bhikkhus, the ocean surging causes the rivers to surge; the rivers surging cause the streams to surge; the streams surging cause the lakes to surge; the lakes surging cause the pools to surge. So too, ignorance surging causes volitional formations to

surge; volitional formations surging cause consciousness to surge; consciousness surging causes name-and-form to surge; name-and-form surging causes the six sense bases to surge; the six sense bases surging cause contact to surge; contact surging causes feeling to surge; feeling surging causes craving to surge; craving surging causes clinging to surge; clinging [119] surging causes existence to surge; existence surging causes birth to surge; birth surging causes aging-and-death to surge.

"Bhikkhus, the ocean receding causes the rivers to recede; the rivers receding cause the streams to recede; the streams receding cause the lakes to recede; the lakes receding cause the pools to recede. So too, ignorance receding causes volitional formations to recede; volitional formations receding cause consciousness to recede ... birth receding causes aging-and-death to recede."

#### 70 (10) *Susima*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary.

(i)

Now on that occasion the Blessed One was honoured, respected, esteemed, venerated, and revered, and he obtained robes, almsfood, lodgings, and medicinal requisites. The Bhikkhu Saṅgha too was honoured, respected, esteemed, venerated, and revered, and the bhikkhus too obtained robes, almsfood, lodgings, and medicinal requisites. But the wanderers of other sects were not honoured, respected, esteemed, venerated, and revered, and they did not obtain robes, almsfood, lodgings, and medicinal requisites.

Now on that occasion the wanderer Susima was residing in Rājagaha along with a large company of wanderers. [120] Then his company said to the wanderer Susima: "Come, friend Susima, lead the holy life under the ascetic Gotama. Master his Dhamma and teach it to us. We will master his Dhamma and preach it to the lay people. Thus we too will be honoured, respected, esteemed, venerated, and revered, and we too will obtain robes, almsfood, lodgings, and medicinal requisites."

"All right, friends," the wanderer Susima replied. He then approached the Venerable Ānanda and exchanged greetings

with him. When they had concluded their greetings and cordial talk, he sat down to one side and said to him: "Friend Ānanda, I wish to lead the holy life in this Dhamma and Discipline."

Then the Venerable Ānanda took the wanderer Susima and approached the Blessed One. He paid homage to the Blessed One, and then he sat down to one side and said to him: "Venerable sir, this wanderer Susima says that he wishes to lead the holy life in this Dhamma and Discipline."

"Well then, Ānanda, give him the going forth." The wanderer Susima then received the going forth and the higher ordination under the Blessed One.<sup>206</sup>

(ii)

Now on that occasion a number of bhikkhus had declared final knowledge in the presence of the Blessed One, saying: "We understand: Destroyed is birth, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more for this state of being." The Venerable Susima heard about this, [121] so he approached those bhikkhus, exchanged greetings with them, and then sat down to one side and said to them: "Is it true that you venerable ones have declared final knowledge in the presence of the Blessed One, saying: 'We understand: Destroyed is birth, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more for this state of being'?"<sup>207</sup>

"Yes, friend."

"Then knowing and seeing thus, do you venerable ones wield the various kinds of spiritual power, such that: having been one, you become many; having been many, you become one; you appear and vanish; you go unhindered through a wall, through a rampart, through a mountain as though through space; you dive in and out of the earth as though it were water; you walk on water without sinking as though it were earth; seated cross-legged, you travel in space like a bird; with your hand you touch and stroke the moon and sun so powerful and mighty; you exercise mastery with the body as far as the brahmā world?"

"No, friend."

"Then knowing and seeing thus, do you venerable ones, with the divine ear element, which is purified and surpasses the human, hear both kinds of sounds, the divine and human, those that are far as well as near?"

"No, friend."

"Then knowing and seeing thus, do you venerable ones understand the minds of other beings and persons, having encompassed them with your own minds? Do you understand a mind with lust as a mind with lust; a mind without lust as a mind without lust; a mind with hatred as a mind with hatred; a mind without hatred as a mind without hatred; a mind with delusion [122] as a mind with delusion; a mind without delusion as a mind without delusion; a contracted mind as contracted and a distracted mind as distracted; an exalted mind as exalted and an unexalted mind as unexalted; a surpassable mind as surpassable and an unsurpassable mind as unsurpassable; a concentrated mind as concentrated and an unconcentrated mind as unconcentrated; a liberated mind as liberated and an unliberated mind as unliberated?"

"No, friend."

"Then knowing and seeing thus, do you venerable ones recollect your manifold past abodes, that is, one birth, two births, three births, four births, five births, ten births, twenty births, thirty births, forty births, fifty births, a hundred births, a thousand births, a hundred thousand births, many aeons of world-contraction, many aeons of world-expansion, many aeons of world-contraction and expansion thus: 'There I was so named, of such a clan, with such an appearance, such was my food, such my experience of pleasure and pain, such my life span; passing away from there, I was reborn elsewhere, and there too I was so named, of such a clan, with such an appearance, such was my food, such my experience of pleasure and pain, such my life span; passing away from there, I was reborn here'? Do you thus recollect your manifold past abodes with their modes and details?"

"No, friend."

"Then knowing and seeing thus, do you venerable ones, with the divine eye, which is purified and surpasses the human, see beings passing away and being reborn, inferior and superior, beautiful and ugly, fortunate and unfortunate, and understand how beings fare on in accordance with their kamma thus: 'These beings who engaged in misconduct of body, [123] speech, and mind, who reviled the noble ones, held wrong view, and undertook actions based on wrong view, with the breakup of the body, after death, have been reborn in a state of misery, in a bad desti-

nation, in the nether world, in hell; but these beings who engaged in good conduct of body, speech, and mind, who did not revile the noble ones, who held right view, and undertook action based on right view, with the breakup of the body, after death, have been reborn in a good destination, in a heavenly world'? Thus with the divine eye, which is purified and surpasses the human, do you see beings passing away and being reborn, inferior and superior, beautiful and ugly, fortunate and unfortunate, and understand how beings fare on in accordance with their kamma?"

"No, friend."

"Then knowing and seeing thus, do you venerable ones dwell in those peaceful deliverances that transcend forms, the formless attainments, having touched them with the body?"<sup>208</sup>

"No, friend."

"Here now, venerable ones: this answer and the nonattainment of those states, how could this be, friends?"<sup>209</sup>

"We are liberated by wisdom, friend Susima."<sup>210</sup>

"I do not understand in detail, friends, the meaning of what has been stated in brief by the venerable ones. It would be good if the venerable ones would explain to me in such a way that I could understand in detail what has been stated in brief." [124]

"Whether or not you understand, friend Susima, we are liberated by wisdom."

(iii)

Then the Venerable Susima rose from his seat and approached the Blessed One. Having approached, he paid homage to the Blessed One, sat down to one side, and reported to the Blessed One the entire conversation he had had with those bhikkhus. [The Blessed One said:]

"First, Susima, comes knowledge of the stability of the Dhamma, afterwards knowledge of Nibbāna."<sup>211</sup>

"I do not understand in detail, venerable sir, the meaning of what was stated in brief by the Blessed One. It would be good if the Blessed One would explain to me in such a way that I could understand in detail what has been stated in brief."

"Whether or not you understand, Susima, first comes knowledge of the stability of the Dhamma, afterwards knowledge of Nibbāna."<sup>212</sup>

"What do you think, Susima, is form permanent or impermanent?" – "Impermanent, venerable sir."<sup>213</sup> – "Is what is impermanent suffering or happiness?" – "Suffering, venerable sir." – "Is what is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change fit to be regarded thus: 'This is mine, this I am, this is my self'?" – "No, venerable sir."

"Is feeling permanent or impermanent?... Is perception permanent or impermanent?... Are volitional formations permanent or impermanent?... Is consciousness permanent or impermanent?" [125] – "Impermanent, venerable sir." – "Is what is impermanent suffering or happiness?" – "Suffering, venerable sir." – "Is what is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change fit to be regarded thus: 'This is mine, this I am, this is my self'?" – "No, venerable sir."

"Therefore, Susima, any kind of form whatsoever, whether past, future, or present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near, all form should be seen as it really is with correct wisdom thus: 'This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self.'

"Any kind of feeling whatsoever ... Any kind of perception whatsoever ... Any kind of volitional formations whatsoever ... Any kind of consciousness whatsoever, whether past, future, or present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near, all consciousness should be seen as it really is with correct wisdom thus: 'This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self.'

"Seeing thus, Susima, the instructed noble disciple experiences revulsion towards form, revulsion towards feeling, revulsion towards perception, revulsion towards volitional formations, revulsion towards consciousness. Experiencing revulsion, he becomes dispassionate. Through dispassion [his mind] is liberated. When it is liberated there comes the knowledge: 'It's liberated.' He understands: 'Destroyed is birth, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more for this state of being.'

"Do you see, Susima: 'With birth as condition, aging-and-death [comes to be]?'"

"Yes, venerable sir."

"Do you see, Susima: 'With existence as condition, birth'?... 'With clinging as condition, existence'?... [126] ... 'With craving as condition, clinging'?... 'With feeling as condition, craving'..."

'With contact as condition, feeling'?... 'With the six sense bases as condition, contact'?... 'With name-and-form as condition, the six sense bases'?... 'With consciousness as condition, name-and-form'?... 'With volitional formations as condition, consciousness'?... 'With ignorance as condition, volitional formations [come to be]?'"

"Yes, venerable sir."

"Do you see, Susima: 'With the cessation of birth comes cessation of aging-and-death?'"

"Yes, venerable sir."

"Do you see, Susima: 'With the cessation of existence comes cessation of birth'?... 'With the cessation of clinging comes cessation of existence'?... 'With the cessation of ignorance comes cessation of volitional formations'?"

"Yes, venerable sir."

"Knowing and seeing thus, Susima, do you wield the various kinds of spiritual power, such that: having been one, you become many ... and exercise bodily mastery as far as the brahmā world?"<sup>214</sup>

"No, venerable sir."

"Then knowing and seeing thus, Susima, do you, with the divine ear element, which is purified and surpasses the human, hear both kinds of sounds, the divine and human, those that are far as well as near?" [127]

"No, venerable sir."

"Then knowing and seeing thus, Susima, do you understand the minds of other beings and persons, having encompassed them with your own mind?"

"No, venerable sir."

"Then knowing and seeing thus, Susima, do you recollect your manifold past abodes with their modes and details?"

"No, venerable sir."

"Then knowing and seeing thus, Susima, do you, with the divine eye, which is purified and surpasses the human, see beings passing away and being reborn and understand how beings fare on in accordance with their kamma?"

"No, venerable sir."

"Then knowing and seeing thus, Susima, do you dwell in those peaceful deliverances that transcend forms, the formless attainments, having touched them with the body?"

"No, venerable sir."

"Here now, Susima: this answer and the nonattainment of those states, how could this be, Susima?"

(iv)

Then the Venerable Susima prostrated himself with his head at the Blessed One's feet and said: "Venerable sir, I have committed a transgression in that I was so foolish, so confused, so inept that I went forth as a thief of the Dhamma in such a well-expounded Dhamma and Discipline as this. Venerable sir, may the Blessed One pardon me for my transgression seen as a transgression for the sake of future restraint."

"Surely, Susima, you have committed a transgression in that you were so foolish, so confused, so inept that you went forth as a thief of the Dhamma in such a well-expounded Dhamma and Discipline as this.<sup>215</sup> [128] Suppose, Susima, they were to arrest a bandit, a criminal, and bring him before the king, saying: 'Sire, this man is a bandit, a criminal. Impose on him whatever punishment you wish.' The king would say to them: 'Come, men, bind this man's arms tightly behind his back with a strong rope, shave his head, and lead him around from street to street and from square to square, beating a drum. Then take him out through the southern gate and to the south of the city cut off his head.' What do you think, Susima, would that man experience pain and displeasure on that account?"

"Yes, venerable sir."

"Although that man would experience pain and displeasure on that account, going forth as a thief of the Dhamma in such a well-expounded Dhamma and Discipline as this has results that are far more painful, far more bitter, and further, it leads to the nether world. But since you see your transgression as a transgression and make amends for it in accordance with the Dhamma, we pardon you for it. For it is growth in the Noble One's Discipline when one sees one's transgression as a transgression, makes amends for it in accordance with the Dhamma, and undertakes future restraint."

[129]

VIII. ASCETICS AND BRAHMINS

71 (1) *Aging-and-Death*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvattḥi in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. There the Blessed One said:

"Bhikkhus, those ascetics or brahmins who do not understand aging-and-death, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation: these I do not consider to be ascetics among ascetics or brahmins among brahmins, and these venerable ones do not, by realizing it for themselves with direct knowledge, in this very life enter and dwell in the goal of asceticism or the goal of brahminhood.

"But, bhikkhus, those ascetics and brahmins who understand aging-and-death, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation: these I consider to be ascetics among ascetics and brahmins among brahmins, and these venerable ones, by realizing it for themselves with direct knowledge, in this very life enter and dwell in the goal of asceticism and the goal of brahminhood."

72 (2)–81 (11) *Birth, Etc.*

"Bhikkhus, those ascetics or brahmins who do not understand birth ... existence ... clinging ... craving ... feeling ... contact ... the six sense bases ... name-and-form ... consciousness [130] ... volitional formations, their origin, their cessation, and the way leading to their cessation: these I do not consider to be ascetics among ascetics or brahmins among brahmins, and these venerable ones do not, by realizing it for themselves with direct knowledge, in this very life enter and dwell in the goal of asceticism or the goal of brahminhood.

"But, bhikkhus, those ascetics and brahmins who understand these things: these I consider to be ascetics among ascetics and brahmins among brahmins, and these venerable ones, by realizing it for themselves with direct knowledge, in this very life enter and dwell in the goal of asceticism and the goal of brahminhood."

IX. WITH INCORPORATED REPETITION SERIES<sup>216</sup>82 (1) *A Teacher*

At Sāvatti. “Bhikkhus, one who does not know and see as it really is aging-and-death, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation, should search for a teacher in order to know this as it really is.”<sup>217</sup> [131]

“Bhikkhus, one who does not know and see as it really is birth ... existence ... clinging ... craving ... feeling ... contact ... the six sense bases ... name-and-form ... consciousness ... volitional formations, their origin, their cessation, and the way leading to their cessation, should search for a teacher in order to know this as it really is.”

83 (2) *Training*

“Bhikkhus, one who does not know and see as it really is aging-and-death ... volitional formations, their origin, their cessation, and the way leading to their cessation, should practise the training in order to know this as it really is.”

84 (3)–93 (12) *Exertion, Etc.*

“Bhikkhus, one who does not know and see as it really is aging-and-death ... volitional formations, their origin, their cessation, and the way leading to their cessation, should make an exertion ... [132] arouse a desire ... arouse enthusiasm ... be unremitting ... arouse ardour ... apply energy ... practise perseverance ... practise mindfulness ... practise clear comprehension ... practise diligence in order to know this as it really is.”

## 13 *Abhisamayasaṃyutta*

### Connected Discourses on the Breakthrough

1 *The Fingernail*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvatti in Jeta’s Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika’s Park. Then the Blessed One took up a little bit of soil in his fingernail and addressed the bhikkhus thus:

“Bhikkhus, what do you think, which is more: the little bit of soil that I have taken up in my fingernail or this great earth?”

“Venerable sir, the great earth is more. The little bit of soil that the Blessed One has taken up in his fingernail is trifling. It does not amount to a hundredth part, or a thousandth part, or a hundred thousandth part of the great earth.”

“So too, bhikkhus, for a noble disciple, a person accomplished in view who has made the breakthrough, the suffering that has been destroyed and eliminated is more, while that which remains is trifling.<sup>218</sup> The latter does not amount to a hundredth part, [134] or a thousandth part, or a hundred thousandth part of the former mass of suffering that has been destroyed and eliminated, as there is a maximum of seven more lives. Of such great benefit, bhikkhus, is the breakthrough to the Dhamma, of such great benefit is it to obtain the vision of the Dhamma.”<sup>219</sup>

2 *The Pond*

At Sāvatti. “Bhikkhus, suppose there was a pond fifty *yojanas* long, fifty *yojanas* wide, and fifty *yojanas* deep, full of water, overflowing so that a crow could drink from it, and a man would draw out some water from it on the tip of a blade of *kusa* grass.

What do you think, bhikkhus, which is more: the water drawn out on the tip of the blade of *kusa* grass or the water in the pond?"<sup>220</sup>

"Venerable sir, the water in the pond is more. The water drawn out on the tip of the blade of *kusa* grass is trifling. It does not amount to a hundredth part, or a thousandth part, or a hundred thousandth part of the water in the pond."

"So too, bhikkhus, for a noble disciple, a person accomplished in view who has made the breakthrough, the suffering that has been destroyed and eliminated is more, while that which remains is trifling.... Of such great benefit, bhikkhus, is the breakthrough to the Dhamma, of such great benefit is it to obtain the vision of the Dhamma."

### 3 Water at the Confluence (1)

At Sāvattī. [135] "Bhikkhus, suppose that in the place where these great rivers meet and converge—that is, the Ganges, the Yamunā, the Aciravati, the Sarabhū, and the Mahi—a man would draw out two or three drops of water. What do you think, bhikkhus, which is more: these two or three drops of water that have been drawn out or the water at the confluence?"

"Venerable sir, the water at the confluence is more. The two or three drops of water that have been drawn out are trifling. They do not amount to a hundredth part, or a thousandth part, or a hundred thousandth part of the water at the confluence."

"So too, bhikkhus, for a noble disciple ... of such great benefit is it to obtain the vision of the Dhamma."

### 4 Water at the Confluence (2)

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, suppose that in the place where these great rivers meet and converge—that is, the Ganges, the Yamunā, the Aciravati, the Sarabhū, and the Mahi—their water would be destroyed and eliminated except for two or three drops. What do you think, bhikkhus, which is more: the water at the confluence that has been destroyed and eliminated or the two or three drops of water that remain?"

"Venerable sir, the water at the confluence that has been destroyed and eliminated is more. The two or three drops of

water that remain are trifling. They do not amount to a hundredth part, or a thousandth part, or a hundred thousandth part of the water that has been destroyed and eliminated."

"So too, bhikkhus, for a noble disciple ... of such great benefit is it to obtain the vision of the Dhamma."

### 5 The Earth (1)

At Sāvattī. [136] "Bhikkhus, suppose that a man would place seven little balls of clay the size of jujube kernels on the great earth. What do you think, bhikkhus, which is more: those seven little balls of clay the size of jujube kernels that have been placed there or the great earth?"

"Venerable sir, the great earth is more. The seven little balls of clay the size of jujube kernels are trifling. They do not amount to a hundredth part, or a thousandth part, or a hundred thousandth part of the great earth."

"So too, bhikkhus, for a noble disciple ... of such great benefit is it to obtain the vision of the Dhamma."

### 6 The Earth (2)

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, suppose that the great earth would be destroyed and eliminated except for seven little balls of clay the size of jujube kernels. What do you think, bhikkhus, which is more: the great earth that has been destroyed and eliminated or the seven little balls of clay the size of jujube kernels that remain?"

"Venerable sir, the great earth that has been destroyed and eliminated is more. The seven little balls of clay the size of jujube kernels that remain are trifling. They do not amount to a hundredth part, or a thousandth part, or a hundred thousandth part of the great earth that has been destroyed and eliminated."

"So too, bhikkhus, for a noble disciple ... of such great benefit is it to obtain the vision of the Dhamma."

### 7 The Ocean (1)

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, suppose that a man would draw out two or three drops of water from the great ocean. What do you think,

bhikkhus, which is more: the two or three drops of water that have been drawn out or the water in the great ocean?" [137]

"Venerable sir, the water in the great ocean is more. The two or three drops of water that have been drawn out are trifling. They do not amount to a hundredth part, or a thousandth part, or a hundred thousandth part of the water in the great ocean."

"So too, bhikkhus, for a noble disciple ... of such great benefit is it to obtain the vision of the Dhamma."

#### 8 *The Ocean* (2)

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, suppose that the great ocean would be destroyed and eliminated except for two or three drops of water. What do you think, bhikkhus, which is more: the water in the great ocean that has been destroyed and eliminated or the two or three drops of water that remain?"

"Venerable sir, the water in the great ocean that has been destroyed and eliminated is more. The two or three drops of water that remain are trifling. They do not amount to a hundredth part, or a thousandth part, or a hundred thousandth part of the water in the great ocean that has been destroyed and eliminated."

"So too, bhikkhus, for a noble disciple ... of such great benefit is it to obtain the vision of the Dhamma."

#### 9 *The Mountain* (1)

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, suppose that a man would place on the Himalayas, the king of mountains, seven grains of gravel the size of mustard seeds. What do you think, bhikkhus, which is more: the seven grains of gravel the size of mustard seeds that have been placed there or the Himalayas, the king of mountains?"

"Venerable sir, the Himalayas, the king of mountains, is more. The seven grains of gravel the size of mustard seeds are trifling. [138] They do not amount to a hundredth part, or a thousandth part, or a hundred thousandth part of the Himalayas, the king of mountains."

"So too, bhikkhus, for a noble disciple ... of such great benefit is it to obtain the vision of the Dhamma."

#### 10 *The Mountain* (2)

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, suppose that the Himalayas, the king of mountains, would be destroyed and eliminated except for seven grains of gravel the size of mustard seeds. What do you think, bhikkhus, which is more: the portion of the Himalayas, the king of mountains, that has been destroyed and eliminated or the seven grains of gravel the size of mustard seeds that remain?"

"Venerable sir, the portion of the Himalayas, the king of mountains, that has been destroyed and eliminated is more. The seven grains of gravel the size of mustard seeds that remain are trifling. They do not amount to a hundredth part, or a thousandth part, or a hundred thousandth part of the portion of the Himalayas, the king of mountains, that has been destroyed and eliminated."

"So too, bhikkhus, for a noble disciple, a person accomplished in view who has made the breakthrough, the suffering that has been destroyed and eliminated is more, while that which remains is trifling. The latter does not amount to a hundredth part, or a thousandth part, or a hundred thousandth part of the former mass of suffering that has been destroyed and eliminated, as there is a maximum of seven more lives. Of such great benefit, bhikkhus, is the breakthrough to the Dhamma, of such great benefit is it to obtain the vision of the Dhamma."

#### 11 *The Mountain* (3)

At Sāvatti. [139] "Bhikkhus, suppose that a man would place on Sineru,<sup>221</sup> the king of mountains, seven grains of gravel the size of mung beans. What do you think, bhikkhus, which is more: the seven grains of gravel the size of mung beans that have been placed there or Sineru, the king of mountains?"

"Venerable sir, Sineru, the king of mountains, is more. The seven grains of gravel the size of mung beans are trifling. They do not amount to a hundredth part, or a thousandth part, or a hundred thousandth part of Sineru, the king of mountains."

"So too, bhikkhus, the achievements of ascetics, brahmins, and wanderers of other sects do not amount to a hundredth part, or a thousandth part, or a hundred thousandth part of the achieve-

ment of a noble disciple, a person accomplished in view who has made the breakthrough. So great in achievement, bhikkhus, is a person accomplished in view, so great in direct knowledge."<sup>222</sup>

[140]

Chapter III

## 14 *Dhātusaṃyutta*

### Connected Discourses on Elements

#### I. DIVERSITY (Internal Pentad)

##### 1 (1) *Diversity of Elements*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, I will teach you the diversity of elements.<sup>223</sup> Listen to that and attend closely, I will speak."

"Yes, venerable sir," those bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

"And what, bhikkhus, is the diversity of elements? The eye element, form element, eye-consciousness element; the ear element, sound element, ear-consciousness element; the nose element, odour element, nose-consciousness element; the tongue element, taste element, tongue-consciousness element; the body element, tactile-object element, body-consciousness element; the mind element, mental-phenomena element, mind-consciousness element. This, bhikkhus, is called the diversity of elements."<sup>224</sup>

##### 2 (2) *Diversity of Contacts*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, it is in dependence on the diversity of elements that there arises the diversity of contacts. And what, bhikkhus, is the diversity of elements? The eye element, the ear element, the nose element, the tongue element, the body element, the mind element. This is called the diversity of elements.

"And how is it, bhikkhus, that in dependence on the diversity of elements there arises the diversity of contacts? In dependence on the eye element there arises eye-contact; in dependence on the ear element there arises ear-contact; in dependence on the nose

element there arises nose-contact; [141] in dependence on the tongue element there arises tongue-contact; in dependence on the body element there arises body-contact; in dependence on the mind element there arises mind-contact.<sup>225</sup> It is in this way, bhikkhus, that in dependence on the diversity of elements there arises the diversity of contacts."

### 3 (3) *Not Diversity of Contacts*

At Sāvathī. "Bhikkhus, it is in dependence on the diversity of elements that there arises the diversity of contacts. The diversity of elements does not arise in dependence on the diversity of contacts.

"And what, bhikkhus, is the diversity of elements? The eye element ... the mind element. This is called the diversity of elements.

"And how is it, bhikkhus, that in dependence on the diversity of elements there arises the diversity of contacts; that the diversity of elements does not arise in dependence on the diversity of contacts?

"In dependence on the eye element there arises eye-contact; the eye element does not arise in dependence on eye-contact.... In dependence on the mind element there arises mind-contact; the mind element does not arise in dependence on mind-contact.<sup>226</sup> It is in this way, bhikkhus, that in dependence on the diversity of elements there arises the diversity of contacts; that the diversity of elements does not arise in dependence on the diversity of contacts."

### 4 (4) *Diversity of Feelings (1)*

At Sāvathī. "Bhikkhus, it is in dependence on the diversity of elements that there arises the diversity of contacts; in dependence on the diversity of contacts that there arises the diversity of feelings.

"And what, bhikkhus, is the diversity of elements? [142] The eye element ... the mind element. This is called the diversity of elements.

"And how is it, bhikkhus, that in dependence on the diversity of elements there arises the diversity of contacts; that in dependence on the diversity of contacts there arises the diversity of feelings? In dependence on the eye element there arises eye-contact;

in dependence on eye-contact there arises feeling born of eye-contact. In dependence on the ear element there arises ear-contact; in dependence on ear-contact there arises feeling born of ear-contact. In dependence on the nose element there arises nose-contact; in dependence on nose-contact there arises feeling born of nose-contact. In dependence on the tongue element there arises tongue-contact; in dependence on tongue-contact there arises feeling born of tongue-contact. In dependence on the body element there arises body-contact; in dependence on body-contact there arises feeling born of body-contact. In dependence on the mind element there arises mind-contact; in dependence on mind-contact there arises feeling born of mind-contact.

"It is in this way, bhikkhus, that in dependence on the diversity of elements there arises the diversity of contacts; that in dependence on the diversity of contacts there arises the diversity of feelings."

### 5 (5) *Diversity of Feelings (2)*

At Sāvathī. "Bhikkhus, it is in dependence on the diversity of elements that there arises the diversity of contacts; in dependence on the diversity of contacts that there arises the diversity of feelings. The diversity of contacts does not arise in dependence on the diversity of feelings; the diversity of elements does not arise in dependence on the diversity of contacts.

"And what, bhikkhus, is the diversity of elements? The eye element ... the mind element. This is called the diversity of elements.

"And how is it, bhikkhus, that in dependence on the diversity of elements there arises the diversity of contacts; that in dependence on the diversity of contacts there arises the diversity of feelings? That the diversity of contacts does not arise in dependence on the diversity of feelings; that the diversity of elements does not arise in dependence on the diversity of contacts?

"In dependence on the eye element there arises eye-contact; in dependence on eye-contact there arises feeling born of eye-contact. Eye-contact does not arise in dependence on feeling born of eye-contact; [143] the eye element does not arise in dependence on eye-contact.... In dependence on the mind element there arises mind-contact; in dependence on mind-contact there arises feeling born of mind-contact. Mind-contact does not arise in dependence

on feeling born of mind-contact; the mind element does not arise in dependence on mind-contact.

"It is in this way, bhikkhus, that in dependence on the diversity of elements there arises the diversity of contacts ... the diversity of elements does not arise in dependence on the diversity of contacts."

(External Pentad)

#### 6 (6) Diversity of External Elements

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, I will teach you the diversity of elements. Listen to that and attend closely, I will speak...."

"And what, bhikkhus, is the diversity of elements? The form element, the sound element, the odour element, the taste element, the tactile-object element, the mental-phenomena element. This, bhikkhus, is called the diversity of elements."

#### 7 (7) Diversity of Perceptions

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, it is in dependence on the diversity of elements that there arises the diversity of perceptions; in dependence on the diversity of perceptions that there arises the diversity of intentions; in dependence on the diversity of intentions that there arises the diversity of desires; in dependence on the diversity of desires that there arises the diversity of passions; in dependence on the diversity of passions that there arises the diversity of quests.

"And what, bhikkhus, is the diversity of elements? The form element ... the mental-phenomena element. This, bhikkhus, is called the diversity of elements. [144]

"And how is it, bhikkhus, that in dependence on the diversity of elements there arises the diversity of perceptions ... that in dependence on the diversity of passions there arises the diversity of quests?

"In dependence on the form element there arises perception of form; in dependence on perception of form there arises intention regarding form; in dependence on intention regarding form there arises desire for form; in dependence on desire for form there arises passion for form; in dependence on passion for form there arises the quest for form....<sup>227</sup>

"In dependence on the mental-phenomena element there arises perception of mental phenomena; in dependence on perception of mental phenomena there arises intention regarding mental phenomena; in dependence on intention regarding mental phenomena there arises desire for mental phenomena; in dependence on desire for mental phenomena there arises passion for mental phenomena; in dependence on passion for mental phenomena there arises the quest for mental phenomena.

"It is in this way, bhikkhus, that in dependence on the diversity of elements there arises the diversity of perceptions ... that in dependence on the diversity of passions there arises the diversity of quests."

#### 8 (8) Not Diversity of Quests

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, it is in dependence on the diversity of elements that there arises the diversity of perceptions ... (as in preceding sutta) ... in dependence on the diversity of passions that there arises the diversity of quests. The diversity of passions does not arise in dependence on the diversity of quests; [145] the diversity of desires does not arise in dependence on the diversity of passions; the diversity of intentions does not arise in dependence on the diversity of desires; the diversity of perceptions does not arise in dependence on the diversity of intentions; the diversity of elements does not arise in dependence on the diversity of perceptions.<sup>228</sup>

"And what, bhikkhus, is the diversity of elements? The form element ... the mental-phenomena element. This, bhikkhus, is called the diversity of elements.

"And how is it, bhikkhus, that in dependence on the diversity of elements there arises the diversity of perceptions ... that in dependence on the diversity of passions there arises the diversity of quests? That the diversity of passions does not arise in dependence on the diversity of quests ... that the diversity of elements does not arise in dependence on the diversity of perceptions?

"In dependence on the form element there arises perception of form; [... in dependence on passion for form there arises the quest for form. Passion for form does not arise in dependence on the quest for form; desire for form does not arise in dependence on passion for form; intention regarding form does not arise in

dependence on desire for form; perception of form does not arise in dependence on intention regarding form; the form element does not arise in dependence on perception of form.] ...<sup>229</sup>

"In dependence on the mental-phenomena element there arises perception of mental phenomena; [146] ... in dependence on passion for mental phenomena there arises the quest for mental phenomena. Passion for mental phenomena does not arise in dependence on the quest for mental phenomena ... the mental-phenomena element does not arise in dependence on perception of mental phenomena.

"It is in this way, bhikkhus, that in dependence on the diversity of elements there arises the diversity of perceptions ... that in dependence on the diversity of passions there arises the diversity of quests. That the diversity of passions does not arise in dependence on the diversity of quests ... that the diversity of elements does not arise in dependence on the diversity of perceptions."

#### 9 (9) *Diversity of External Contacts (1)*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, it is in dependence on the diversity of elements that there arises the diversity of perceptions; in dependence on the diversity of perceptions that there arises the diversity of intentions; in dependence on the diversity of intentions that there arises the diversity of contacts; in dependence on the diversity of contacts that there arises the diversity of feelings; in dependence on the diversity of feelings that there arises the diversity of desires; in dependence on the diversity of desires that there arises the diversity of passions; in dependence on the diversity of passions that there arises the diversity of quests; in dependence on the diversity of quests that there arises the diversity of gains."<sup>230</sup>

"And what, bhikkhus, is the diversity of elements? The form element ... the mental-phenomena element. This, bhikkhus, is called the diversity of elements.

"And how is it, bhikkhus, that in dependence on the diversity of elements [147] there arises the diversity of perceptions ... that in dependence on the diversity of quests there arises the diversity of gains?

"In dependence on the form element there arises perception of form; in dependence on perception of form there arises intention

regarding form; in dependence on intention regarding form there arises contact with form; in dependence on contact with form there arises feeling born of contact with form; in dependence on feeling born of contact with form there arises desire for form; in dependence on desire for form there arises passion for form; in dependence on passion for form there arises the quest for form; in dependence on the quest for form there arises the gain of form....

"In dependence on the mental-phenomena element there arises perception of mental phenomena; in dependence on perception of mental phenomena there arises intention regarding mental phenomena ... contact with mental phenomena ... feeling born of contact with mental phenomena ... desire for mental phenomena ... passion for mental phenomena ... the quest for mental phenomena; in dependence on the quest for mental phenomena there arises the gain of mental phenomena.

"It is in this way, bhikkhus, that in dependence on the diversity of elements there arises the diversity of perceptions ... that in dependence on the diversity of quests there arises the diversity of gains."

#### 10 (10) *Diversity of External Contacts (2)*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, it is in dependence on the diversity of elements that there arises the diversity of perceptions ... [148] (*as in the preceding sutta*) ... in dependence on the diversity of quests that there arises the diversity of gains. The diversity of quests does not arise in dependence on the diversity of gains; the diversity of passions does not arise in dependence on the diversity of quests ... the diversity of elements does not arise in dependence on the diversity of perceptions.

"And what, bhikkhus, is the diversity of elements? The form element ... the mental-phenomena element. This, bhikkhus, is called the diversity of elements.

"And how is it, bhikkhus, that in dependence on the diversity of elements there arises the diversity of perceptions ... that in dependence on the diversity of quests there arises the diversity of gains? That the diversity of quests does not arise in dependence on the diversity of gains ... that the diversity of elements does not arise in dependence on the diversity of perceptions?

"In dependence on the form element there arises perception of form ... in dependence on the mental-phenomena element there arises perception of mental phenomena ... in dependence on the quest for mental phenomena there arises the gain of mental phenomena. The quest for mental phenomena does not arise in dependence on the gain of mental phenomena; passion for mental phenomena does not arise in dependence on the quest for mental phenomena; [149] desire for mental phenomena does not arise in dependence on passion for mental phenomena; feeling born of contact with mental phenomena does not arise in dependence on desire for mental phenomena; contact with mental phenomena does not arise in dependence on feeling born of contact with mental phenomena; intention regarding mental phenomena does not arise in dependence on contact with mental phenomena; perception of mental phenomena does not arise in dependence on intention regarding mental phenomena; the mental-phenomena element does not arise in dependence on perception of mental phenomena.

"It is in this way, bhikkhus, that in dependence on the diversity of elements there arises the diversity of perceptions ... that in dependence on the diversity of quests there arises the diversity of gains; that the diversity of quests does not arise in dependence on the diversity of gains ... that the diversity of elements does not arise in dependence on the diversity of perceptions."

## II. THE SECOND SUBCHAPTER (Seven Elements)

### 11 (1) *Seven Elements*

At Sāvattī. [150] "Bhikkhus, there are these seven elements. What seven? The light element, the beauty element, the base of the infinity of space element, the base of the infinity of consciousness element, the base of nothingness element, the base of neither-perception-nor-nonperception element, the cessation of perception and feeling element. These are the seven elements."<sup>231</sup>

When this was said, a certain bhikkhu asked the Blessed One: "Venerable sir, as to the light element ... the cessation of perception and feeling element: in dependence on what are these elements discerned?"

"Bhikkhu, the light element is discerned in dependence on darkness. The beauty element is discerned in dependence on foulness. The base of the infinity of space element is discerned in dependence on form. The base of the infinity of consciousness element is discerned in dependence on the base of the infinity of space. The base of nothingness element is discerned in dependence on the base of the infinity of consciousness. The base of neither-perception-nor-nonperception element is discerned in dependence on the base of nothingness. The cessation of perception and feeling element is discerned in dependence on cessation."<sup>232</sup>

"But, venerable sir, as to the light element ... the cessation of perception and feeling element: how is the attainment of these elements to be attained?"

"The light element, the beauty element, the base of the infinity of space element, the base of the infinity of consciousness element, [151] and the base of nothingness element: these elements are to be attained as attainments with perception. The base of neither-perception-nor-nonperception element: this element is to be attained as an attainment with a residue of formations.<sup>233</sup> The cessation of perception and feeling element: this element is to be attained as an attainment of cessation."

### 12 (2) *With a Source*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, sensual thought arises with a source, not without a source; thought of ill will arises with a source, not without a source; thought of harming arises with a source, not without a source. And how is this so?"

"In dependence on the sensuality element there arises sensual perception;<sup>234</sup> in dependence on sensual perception there arises sensual intention; in dependence on sensual intention there arises sensual desire; in dependence on sensual desire there arises sensual passion; in dependence on sensual passion there arises a sensual quest. Engaged in a sensual quest, the uninstructed worldling conducts himself wrongly in three ways—with body, speech, and mind.

"In dependence on the ill will element there arises perception of ill will;<sup>235</sup> in dependence on perception of ill will there arises intention of ill will; in dependence on intention of ill will there arises desire [driven by] ill will; in dependence on desire [driven

by] ill will there arises passion [driven by] ill will; in dependence on passion [driven by] ill will there arises a quest [driven by] ill will. Engaged in a quest [driven by] ill will, the uninstructed worldling conducts himself wrongly in three ways—with body, speech, and mind.

“In dependence on the harmfulness element there arises perception of harming;<sup>236</sup> in dependence on perception of harming there arises intention to harm; in dependence on intention to harm there arises desire to harm; in dependence on desire to harm there arises passion to harm; in dependence on passion to harm there arises a quest to harm. Engaged in a quest to harm, [152] the uninstructed worldling conducts himself wrongly in three ways—with body, speech, and mind.

“Suppose, bhikkhus, a man would drop a blazing grass torch into a thicket of dry grass. If he does not quickly extinguish it with his hands and feet, the creatures living in the grass and wood will meet with calamity and disaster. So too, if any ascetic or brahmin does not quickly abandon, dispel, obliterate, and annihilate the unrighteous perceptions that have arisen in him, he dwells in suffering in this very life, with vexation, despair, and fever; and with the breakup of the body, after death, a bad destination may be expected for him.

“Bhikkhus, thought of renunciation arises with a source, not without a source; thought of non-ill will arises with a source, not without a source; thought of harmlessness arises with a source, not without a source. And how is this so?

“In dependence on the renunciation element there arises perception of renunciation;<sup>237</sup> in dependence on perception of renunciation there arises intention of renunciation; in dependence on intention of renunciation there arises desire for renunciation; in dependence on desire for renunciation there arises passion for renunciation; in dependence on passion for renunciation there arises a quest for renunciation. Engaged in a quest for renunciation, the instructed noble disciple conducts himself rightly in three ways—with body, speech, and mind.

“In dependence on the non-ill will element there arises perception of non-ill will;<sup>238</sup> in dependence on perception of non-ill will there arises intention of non-ill will; in dependence on intention of non-ill will there arises desire [guided by] non-ill will; in dependence on desire [guided by] non-ill will there arises pas-

sion [guided by] non-ill will; in dependence on passion [guided by] non-ill will there arises a quest [guided by] non-ill will. Engaged in a quest [guided by] non-ill will, the instructed noble disciple conducts himself rightly in three ways—with body, speech, and mind.

“In dependence on the harmlessness element there arises perception of harmlessness;<sup>239</sup> [153] in dependence on perception of harmlessness there arises intention of harmlessness; in dependence on intention of harmlessness there arises desire for harmlessness; in dependence on desire for harmlessness there arises passion for harmlessness; in dependence on passion for harmlessness there arises a quest for harmlessness. Engaged in a quest for harmlessness, the instructed noble disciple conducts himself rightly in three ways—with body, speech, and mind.

“Suppose, bhikkhus, a man would drop a blazing grass torch into a thicket of dry grass. If he quickly extinguishes it with his hands and feet, the creatures living in the grass and wood will not meet with calamity and disaster. So too, if any ascetic or brahmin quickly abandons, dispels, obliterates, and annihilates the unrighteous perceptions that have arisen in him, he dwells happily in this very life, without vexation, despair, and fever; and with the breakup of the body, after death, a good destination may be expected for him.”

### 13 (3) *The Brick Hall*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Nātika in the Brick Hall. There the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus thus: “Bhikkhus!”

“Venerable sir!” those bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

“Bhikkhus, in dependence on an element there arises a perception, there arises a view, there arises a thought.”<sup>240</sup>

When this was said, the Venerable Saddha Kaccāyana said to the Blessed One: “Venerable sir, when, in regard to those who are not perfectly enlightened, the view arises, ‘These are Perfectly Enlightened Ones,’ in dependence on what is this view discerned?”<sup>241</sup>

“Mighty, Kaccāyana, is this element, the element of ignorance. [154] In dependence on an inferior element, Kaccāyana, there

arises an inferior perception, an inferior view, inferior thought, inferior volition, inferior longing, an inferior wish, an inferior person, inferior speech. He explains, teaches, proclaims, establishes, discloses, analyses, and elucidates the inferior. His rebirth, I say, is inferior.

"In dependence on a middling element, Kaccāyana, there arises a middling perception, a middling view, middling thought, middling volition, middling longing, a middling wish, a middling person, middling speech. He explains, teaches, proclaims, establishes, discloses, analyses, and elucidates the middling. His rebirth, I say, is middling.

"In dependence on a superior element, Kaccāyana, there arises a superior perception, a superior view, superior thought, superior volition, superior longing, a superior wish, a superior person, superior speech. He explains, teaches, proclaims, establishes, discloses, analyses, and elucidates the superior. His rebirth, I say, is superior."

#### 14 (4) *Inferior Disposition*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, it is by way of elements that beings come together and unite. Those of an inferior disposition come together and unite with those of an inferior disposition; those of a good disposition come together and unite with those of a good disposition.<sup>242</sup> In the past, by way of elements, beings came together and united.... In the future, too, by way of elements, beings will come together and unite.... [155] Now too, at present, by way of elements, beings come together and unite. Those of an inferior disposition come together and unite with those of an inferior disposition; those of a good disposition come together and unite with those of a good disposition."

#### 15 (5) *Walking Back and Forth*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha on Mount Vulture Peak. Now on that occasion, not far from the Blessed One, the Venerable Sāriputta was walking back and forth with a number of bhikkhus; the Venerable Mahāmoggallāna ... the Venerable Mahākassapa ... the Venerable Anuruddha ... the Venerable Puṇṇa Mantāniputta ... the Venerable Upāli ... the

Venerable Ānanda was walking back and forth with a number of bhikkhus. And not far from the Blessed One, Devadatta too was walking back and forth with a number of bhikkhus.

Then the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Bhikkhus, do you see Sāriputta walking back and forth with a number of bhikkhus?"<sup>243</sup>

"Yes, venerable sir."

"All those bhikkhus are of great wisdom. Do you see Moggallāna walking back and forth with a number of bhikkhus?"

"Yes, venerable sir."

"All those bhikkhus have great spiritual power. Do you see Kassapa walking back and forth with a number of bhikkhus?" [156]

"Yes, venerable sir."

"All those bhikkhus are proponents of the ascetic practices. Do you see Anuruddha walking back and forth with a number of bhikkhus?"

"Yes, venerable sir."

"All those bhikkhus possess the divine eye. Do you see Puṇṇa Mantāniputta walking back and forth with a number of bhikkhus?"

"Yes, venerable sir."

"All those bhikkhus are speakers on the Dhamma. Do you see Upāli walking back and forth with a number of bhikkhus?"

"Yes, venerable sir."

"All those bhikkhus are upholders of the Discipline. Do you see Ānanda walking back and forth with a number of bhikkhus?"

"Yes, venerable sir."

"All those bhikkhus are highly learned. Do you see Devadatta walking back and forth with a number of bhikkhus?"

"Yes, venerable sir."

"All those bhikkhus have evil wishes.

"Bhikkhus, it is by way of elements that beings come together and unite. Those of an inferior disposition come together and unite with those of an inferior disposition; those of a good disposition come together and unite with those of a good disposition. In the past they did so, in the future they will do so, [157] and now at present they do so too."

16 (6) *With Verses*

At Sāvatti.<sup>244</sup> “Bhikkhus, it is by way of elements that beings come together and unite: those of an inferior disposition come together and unite with those of an inferior disposition. In the past they did so, in the future they will do so, and now at present they do so too.

“Just as excrement comes together and unites with excrement, urine with urine, spittle with spittle, pus with pus, and blood with blood, so too, bhikkhus, it is by way of elements that beings come together and unite: those of an inferior disposition come together and unite with those of an inferior disposition. In the past they did so, in the future they will do so, and now at present they do so too. [158]

“Bhikkhus, it is by way of elements that beings come together and unite: those of a good disposition come together and unite with those of a good disposition. In the past they did so, in the future they will do so, and now at present they do so too.

“Just as milk comes together and unites with milk, oil with oil, ghee with ghee, honey with honey, and molasses with molasses, so too, bhikkhus, it is by way of elements that beings come together and unite: those of a good disposition come together and unite with those of a good disposition. In the past they did so, in the future they will do so, and now at present they do so too.”

This is what the Blessed One said. Having said this, the Fortunate One, the Teacher, further said this:

“From association the woods of lust is born,<sup>245</sup>  
By nonassociation the woods is cut.  
Just as one who has mounted a wooden plank  
Would sink upon the mighty sea,  
So one of virtuous living sinks  
By consorting with a lethargic person.

“Thus one should avoid such a person—  
One lethargic, devoid of energy.  
Keep company with the wise,  
With resolute meditators,  
With the noble ones who dwell secluded,  
Their energy constantly aroused.” [159]

17 (7) *Lacking Faith*

At Sāvatti. “Bhikkhus, it is by way of elements that beings come together and unite. Those lacking faith come together and unite with those lacking faith, the shameless with the shameless, those unafraid of wrongdoing with those unafraid of wrongdoing, the unlearned with the unlearned, the lazy with the lazy, the muddle-minded with the muddle-minded, the unwise with the unwise. In the past it was so; in the future it will be so; [160] and now too at present it is so.

“Bhikkhus, it is by way of elements that beings come together and unite. Those having faith come together and unite with those having faith, those having a sense of shame with those having a sense of shame, those afraid of wrongdoing with those afraid of wrongdoing, the learned with the learned, the energetic with the energetic, the mindful with the mindful, the wise with the wise. In the past it was so; in the future it will be so; and now too at present it is so.”

18 (8) *Rooted in those Lacking Faith*

(i)

“Bhikkhus, it is by way of elements that beings come together and unite. [161] Those lacking faith come together and unite with those lacking faith, the shameless with the shameless, the unwise with the unwise. Those having faith come together and unite with those having faith, those having a sense of shame with those having a sense of shame, the wise with the wise. In the past it was so; in the future it will be so; and now too at present it is so.”

(*The next four parts of this sutta substitute the following in the second place, instead of “the shameless,” and “those having a sense of shame”:*)

- (ii) those unafraid of wrongdoing, those afraid of wrongdoing;
- (iii) the unlearned, the learned; [162]
- (iv) the lazy, the energetic;
- (v) the muddle-minded, the mindful.

19 (9) *Rooted in the Shameless*

(i)

“Bhikkhus, it is by way of elements that beings come together

and unite. The shameless come together and unite with the shameless, [163] those unafraid of wrongdoing with those unafraid of wrongdoing, the unwise with the unwise. Those having a sense of shame come together and unite with those having a sense of shame, those afraid of wrongdoing with those afraid of wrongdoing, the wise with the wise. [In the past it was so; in the future it will be so; and now too at present it is so.]”

(*The next three parts of this sutta substitute the following in the second place, instead of “those unafraid of wrongdoing,” and “those afraid of wrongdoing”:*)

- (ii) the unlearned, the learned;
- (iii) the lazy, the energetic;
- (iv) the muddle-minded, the mindful.

20 (10) *Rooted in those Unafraid of Wrongdoing*

(i)

[164] “Bhikkhus, it is by way of elements that beings come together and unite. Those unafraid of wrongdoing come together and unite with those unafraid of wrongdoing, the unlearned with the unlearned, the unwise with the unwise. Those afraid of wrongdoing come together and unite with those afraid of wrongdoing, the learned with the learned, the wise with the wise. In the past it was so; in the future it will be so; and now too at present it is so.”

(*The next two parts of this sutta substitute the following in the second place, instead of “the unlearned,” and “the learned”:*)

- (ii) the lazy, the energetic;
- (iii) the muddle-minded, the mindful.

21 (11) *Rooted in the Unlearned*

(i)

“Bhikkhus, it is by way of elements that beings come together and unite. The unlearned come together and unite with the unlearned, the lazy with the lazy, the unwise with the unwise. The learned come together and unite with the learned, the energetic [165] with the energetic, the wise with the wise. In the past it was so; in the future it will be so; and now too at present it is so.”

(ii)

“The unlearned come together and unite with the unlearned, the muddle-minded with the muddle-minded, the unwise with the unwise. The learned come together and unite with the learned, the mindful with the mindful, the wise with the wise. In the past it was so; in the future it will be so; and now too at present it is so.”

22 (12) *Rooted in the Lazy*

“Bhikkhus, it is by way of elements that beings come together and unite. The lazy come together and unite with the lazy, the muddle-minded with the muddle-minded, the unwise with the unwise. The energetic come together and unite with the energetic, the mindful with the mindful, the wise with the wise. In the past it was so; in the future it will be so; and now too at present it is so.”

[166]

III. COURSES OF KAMMA

23 (1) *Unconcentrated*

At Sāvatti. “Bhikkhus, it is by way of elements that beings come together and unite. Those lacking faith come together and unite with those lacking faith, the shameless with the shameless, those unafraid of wrongdoing with those unafraid of wrongdoing, the unconcentrated with the unconcentrated, the unwise with the unwise.

“Those having faith come together and unite with those having faith, those having a sense of shame with those having a sense of shame, those afraid of wrongdoing with those afraid of wrongdoing, the concentrated with the concentrated, the wise with the wise.”

24 (2) *Immoral*

(*As above, except that “the unconcentrated” and “the concentrated” are replaced by “the immoral” and “the virtuous,” respectively.*) [167]

25 (3) *The Five Training Rules*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, it is by way of elements that beings come together and unite. Those who destroy life come together and unite with those who destroy life; those who take what is not given ... who engage in sexual misconduct ... who speak falsehood ... who indulge in wine, liquor, and intoxicants that cause negligence come together and unite with those who so indulge.

"Those who abstain from the destruction of life come together and unite with those who abstain from the destruction of life; those who abstain from taking what is not given ... from sexual misconduct ... from false speech ... from wine, liquor, and intoxicants that cause negligence come together and unite with those who so abstain."

26 (4) *Seven Courses of Kamma*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, it is by way of elements that beings come together and unite. Those who destroy life come together and unite with those who destroy life; those who take what is not given ... who engage in sexual misconduct ... who speak falsehood ... who speak divisively ... who speak harshly ... who indulge in idle chatter come together and unite with those who so indulge.

"Those who abstain from the destruction of life ... from taking what is not given ... from sexual misconduct ... from false speech ... from divisive speech ... from harsh speech ... from idle chatter come together and unite with those who so abstain."

27 (5) *Ten Courses of Kamma*

At Sāvattī. [168] "Bhikkhus, it is by way of elements that beings come together and unite. Those who destroy life come together and unite with those who destroy life; those ... (*as above, continuing:*) ... who are covetous ... who bear ill will ... of wrong view come together and unite with those of wrong view.

"Those who abstain from the destruction of life ... (*as above*) ... who are uncovetous ... without ill will ... of right view come together and unite with those of right view."

28 (6) *The Eightfold Path*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, it is by way of elements that beings come together and unite. Those of wrong view come together and unite with those of wrong view; those of wrong intention ... wrong speech ... wrong action ... wrong livelihood ... wrong effort ... wrong mindfulness ... wrong concentration come together and unite with those of wrong concentration.

"Those of right view come together and unite with those of right view; those of right intention ... right speech ... right action ... right livelihood ... right effort ... right mindfulness ... right concentration come together and unite with those of right concentration."

29 (7) *Ten Factors*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, it is by way of elements that beings come together and unite. Those of wrong view ... (*as above*) [169] wrong concentration ... wrong knowledge ... wrong liberation come together and unite with those of wrong liberation.

"Those of right view ... (*as above*) right concentration ... right knowledge ... right liberation come together and unite with those of right liberation."<sup>246</sup>

IV. THE FOURTH SUBCHAPTER  
(The Four Elements)30 (1) *Four Elements*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvattī in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park....

"Bhikkhus, there are these four elements. What four? The earth element, the water element, the heat element, the air element. These are the four elements."<sup>247</sup>

31 (2) *Before My Enlightenment*

At Sāvattī. [170] "Bhikkhus, before my enlightenment, while I was still a bodhisatta, not yet perfectly enlightened, it occurred to me: 'What is the gratification, what is the danger, what is the escape in the case of the earth element? What is the gratification,

what is the danger, what is the escape in the case of the water element ... the heat element ... the air element?"

"Then, bhikkhus, it occurred to me: 'The pleasure and joy that arise in dependence on the earth element: this is the gratification in the earth element. That the earth element is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change: this is the danger in the earth element. The removal and abandonment of desire and lust for the earth element: this is the escape from the earth element.'<sup>248</sup>

"The pleasure and joy that arise in dependence on the water element ... the heat element ... the air element: this is the gratification in the air element. That the air element is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change: this is the danger in the air element. The removal and abandonment of desire and lust for the air element: this is the escape from the air element.'<sup>249</sup>

"So long, bhikkhus, as I did not directly know as they really are the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of these four elements, I did not claim to have awakened to the unsurpassed perfect enlightenment in this world with its devas, Māra, and Brahmā, in this generation with its ascetics and brahmins, its devas and humans. But when I directly knew all this as it really is, then I claimed to have awakened to the unsurpassed perfect enlightenment in this world with ... its devas and humans. [171]

"The knowledge and vision arose in me: 'Unshakable is my liberation of mind;<sup>250</sup> this is my last birth; now there is no more renewed existence.'"

### 32 (3) *I Set Out*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, I set out seeking the gratification in the earth element. Whatever gratification there is in the earth element—that I discovered. I have clearly seen with wisdom just how far the gratification in the earth element extends.

"Bhikkhus, I set out seeking the danger in the earth element. Whatever danger there is in the earth element—that I discovered. I have clearly seen with wisdom just how far the danger in the earth element extends.

"Bhikkhus, I set out seeking the escape from the earth element. Whatever escape there is from the earth element—that I discovered. I have clearly seen with wisdom just how far the escape from the earth element extends.

"Bhikkhus, I set out seeking the gratification in ... the danger in ... the escape from the water element ... the heat element ... the air element. Whatever escape there is from the air element—that I discovered. I have clearly seen with wisdom just how far the escape from the earth element extends.

"So long, bhikkhus, as I did not directly know as they really are the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of these four elements ... (*as above*) [172] ... devas and humans.

"The knowledge and vision arose in me: 'Unshakable is my liberation of mind; this is my last birth; now there is no more renewed existence.'"

### 33 (4) *If There Were No*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, if there were no gratification in the earth element, beings would not become enamoured with it; but because there is gratification in the earth element, beings become enamoured with it. If there were no danger in the earth element, beings would not experience revulsion towards it; but because there is danger in the earth element, beings experience revulsion towards it. If there were no escape from the earth element, beings would not escape from it; but because there is an escape from the earth element, beings escape from it.

"Bhikkhus, if there were no gratification in the water element ... in the heat element ... in the air element, beings would not become enamoured with it ... [173] ... but because there is an escape from the air element, beings escape from it.

"So long, bhikkhus, as beings have not directly known as they really are the gratification as gratification, the danger as danger, and the escape as escape in the case of these four elements, they have not escaped from this world with its devas, Māra, and Brahmā, from this generation with its ascetics and brahmins, its devas and humans; they have not become detached from it, released from it, nor do they dwell with a mind rid of barriers. But when beings have directly known all this as it really is, then they have escaped from this world with its devas and humans ... they have become detached from it, released from it, and they dwell with a mind rid of barriers."<sup>251</sup>

34 (5) *Exclusively Suffering*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, if this earth element were exclusively suffering, immersed in suffering, steeped in suffering, and if it were not [also] steeped in pleasure, beings would not become enamoured with it. But because the earth element is pleasurable,<sup>252</sup> immersed in pleasure, steeped in pleasure, and is not steeped [only] in suffering, beings become enamoured with it. [174]

"Bhikkhus, if this water element were exclusively suffering ... if this heat element were exclusively suffering ... if this air element were exclusively suffering, immersed in suffering, steeped in suffering, and if it was not [also] steeped in pleasure, beings would not become enamoured with it. But because the air element is pleasurable, immersed in pleasure, steeped in pleasure, and is not steeped [only] in suffering, beings become enamoured with it.

"Bhikkhus, if this earth element were exclusively pleasurable, immersed in pleasure, steeped in pleasure, and if it were not [also] steeped in suffering, beings would not experience revulsion towards it. But because the earth element is suffering, immersed in suffering, steeped in suffering, and is not steeped [only] in pleasure, beings experience revulsion towards it.

"Bhikkhus, if this water element were exclusively pleasurable ... if this heat element were exclusively pleasurable ... if this air element were exclusively pleasurable, immersed in pleasure, steeped in pleasure, and if it were not [also] steeped in suffering, beings would not experience revulsion towards it. But because the air element is suffering, immersed in suffering, steeped in suffering, and is not steeped [only] in pleasure, beings experience revulsion towards it."

35 (6) *Delight*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, one who seeks delight in the earth element seeks delight in suffering. One who seeks delight in suffering, I say, is not freed from suffering. One who seeks delight in the water element ... in the heat element ... in the air element seeks delight in suffering. One who seeks delight in suffering, I say, is not freed from suffering. [175]

"One who does not seek delight in the earth element ... in the air element does not seek delight in suffering. One who does not seek delight in suffering, I say, is freed from suffering."

36 (7) *Arising*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, the arising, continuation, production, and manifestation of the earth element is the arising of suffering, the continuation of disease, the manifestation of aging-and-death.<sup>253</sup> The arising, continuation, production, and manifestation of the water element ... the heat element ... the air element is the arising of suffering, the continuation of disease, the manifestation of aging-and-death.

"The cessation, subsiding, and passing away of the earth element ... the air element is the cessation of suffering, the subsiding of disease, the passing away of aging-and-death."

37 (8) *Ascetics and Brahmins (1)*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, there are these four elements. What four? The earth element, the water element, the heat element, the air element.

"Those ascetics or brahmins, bhikkhus, who do not understand as they really are the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of these four elements: [176] these I do not consider to be ascetics among ascetics or brahmins among brahmins, and these venerable ones do not, by realizing it for themselves with direct knowledge, in this very life enter and dwell in the goal of asceticism or the goal of brahminhood.

"But, bhikkhus, those ascetics and brahmins who understand as they really are the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of these four elements: these I consider to be ascetics among ascetics and brahmins among brahmins, and these venerable ones, by realizing it for themselves with direct knowledge, in this very life enter and dwell in the goal of asceticism and the goal of brahminhood."

38 (9) *Ascetics and Brahmins (2)*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, there are these four elements. What four?

The earth element, the water element, the heat element, the air element.

“Those ascetics or brahmins, bhikkhus, who do not understand as they really are the origin and the passing away, the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of these four elements: these I do not consider to be ascetics among ascetics....

“But, bhikkhus, those ascetics and brahmins who understand as they really are the origin and the passing away, the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of these four elements: these I consider to be ascetics among ascetics and brahmins among brahmins, and these venerable ones, by realizing it for themselves with direct knowledge, in this very life enter and dwell in the goal of asceticism and the goal of brahminhood.”

39 (10) *Ascetics and Brahmins* (3)

At Sāvatti. “Bhikkhus, those ascetics or brahmins who do not understand the earth element, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation; [177] who do not understand the water element ... the heat element ... the air element, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation: these I do not consider to be ascetics among ascetics....

“But, bhikkhus, those ascetics and brahmins who understand these things: these I consider to be ascetics among ascetics and brahmins among brahmins, and these venerable ones, by realizing it for themselves with direct knowledge, in this very life enter and dwell in the goal of asceticism and the goal of brahminhood.”

15 *Anamataggasamyutta*  
Connected Discourses on  
Without Discoverable Beginning

I. THE FIRST SUBCHAPTER  
(Grass and Wood)

1 (1) *Grass and Wood*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvatti in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. There the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus thus: “Bhikkhus!”

“Venerable sir!” those bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

“Bhikkhus, this saṃsāra is without discoverable beginning.<sup>254</sup> A first point is not discerned of beings roaming and wandering on hindered by ignorance and fettered by craving. Suppose, bhikkhus, a man would cut up whatever grass, sticks, branches, and foliage there are in this Jambudipa and collect them together into a single heap. Having done so, he would put them down, saying [for each one]: ‘This is my mother, this my mother's mother.’ The sequence of that man's mothers and grandmothers would not come to an end, yet the grass, wood, branches, and foliage in this Jambudipa would be used up and exhausted. For what reason? Because, bhikkhus, this saṃsāra is without discoverable beginning. A first point is not discerned of beings roaming and wandering on hindered by ignorance and fettered by craving. For such a long time, bhikkhus, you have experienced suffering, anguish, and disaster, and swelled the cemetery. It is enough to experience revulsion towards all formations, enough to become dispassionate towards them, enough to be liberated from them.” [179]

2 (2) *The Earth*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, this saṃsāra is without discoverable beginning. A first point is not discerned of beings roaming and wandering on hindered by ignorance and fettered by craving. Suppose, bhikkhus, a man would reduce this great earth to balls of clay the size of jujube kernels and put them down, saying [for each one]: 'This is my father, this my father's father.' The sequence of that man's fathers and grandfathers would not come to an end, yet this great earth would be used up and exhausted. For what reason? Because, bhikkhus, this saṃsāra is without discoverable beginning. A first point is not discerned of beings roaming and wandering on hindered by ignorance and fettered by craving. For such a long time, bhikkhus, you have experienced suffering, anguish, and disaster, and swelled the cemetery. It is enough to experience revulsion towards all formations, enough to become dispassionate towards them, enough to be liberated from them."

3 (3) *Tears*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, this saṃsāra is without discoverable beginning. A first point is not discerned of beings roaming and wandering on hindered by ignorance and fettered by craving. What do you think, bhikkhus, which is more: the stream of tears that you have shed as you roamed and wandered on through this long course, weeping and wailing because of being united with the disagreeable and separated from the agreeable—this or the water in the four great oceans?"<sup>255</sup>

"As we understand the Dhamma taught by the Blessed One, venerable sir, [180] the stream of tears that we have shed as we roamed and wandered through this long course, weeping and wailing because of being united with the disagreeable and separated from the agreeable—this alone is more than the water in the four great oceans."

"Good, good, bhikkhus! It is good that you understand the Dhamma taught by me in such a way. The stream of tears that you have shed as you roamed and wandered through this long course, weeping and wailing because of being united with the disagreeable and separated from the agreeable—this alone is

more than the water in the four great oceans. For a long time, bhikkhus, you have experienced the death of a mother; as you have experienced this, weeping and wailing because of being united with the disagreeable and separated from the agreeable, the stream of tears that you have shed is more than the water in the four great oceans.

"For a long time, bhikkhus, you have experienced the death of a father ... the death of a brother ... the death of a sister ... the death of a son ... the death of a daughter ... the loss of relatives ... the loss of wealth ... loss through illness; as you have experienced this, weeping and wailing because of being united with the disagreeable and separated from the agreeable, the stream of tears that you have shed is more than the water in the four great oceans. For what reason? Because, bhikkhus, this saṃsāra is without discoverable beginning.... It is enough to experience revulsion towards all formations, enough to become dispassionate towards them, enough to be liberated from them."

4 (4) *Mother's Milk*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, this saṃsāra is without discoverable beginning. A first point is not discerned of beings roaming and wandering on hindered by ignorance and fettered by craving. What do you think, bhikkhus, which is more: [181] the mother's milk that you have drunk as you roamed and wandered on through this long course—this or the water in the four great oceans?"

"As we understand the Dhamma taught by the Blessed One, venerable sir, the mother's milk that we have drunk as we roamed and wandered on through this long course—this alone is more than the water in the four great oceans."

"Good, good, bhikkhus! It is good that you understand the Dhamma taught by me in such a way. The mother's milk that you have drunk as you roamed and wandered through this long course—this alone is more than the water in the four great oceans. For what reason? Because, bhikkhus, this saṃsāra is without discoverable beginning.... It is enough to be liberated from them."

5 (5) *The Mountain*

At Sāvatti. Then a certain bhikkhu approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and said to him: "Venerable sir, how long is an aeon?"<sup>256</sup>

"An aeon is long, bhikkhu. It is not easy to count it and say it is so many years, or so many hundreds of years, or so many thousands of years, or so many hundreds of thousands of years."

"Then is it possible to give a simile, venerable sir?"

"It is possible, bhikkhu," the Blessed One said. "Suppose, bhikkhu, there was a great stone mountain a *yojana* long, a *yojana* wide, and a *yojana* high, without holes or crevices, one solid mass of rock. At the end of every hundred years a man would stroke it once with a piece of Kāsian cloth.<sup>257</sup> That great stone mountain might by this effort be worn away and eliminated but the aeon would still not have come to an end. So long is an aeon, bhikkhu. [182] And of aeons of such length, we have wandered through so many aeons, so many hundreds of aeons, so many thousands of aeons, so many hundreds of thousands of aeons. For what reason? Because, bhikkhu, this saṃsāra is without discoverable beginning.... It is enough to be liberated from them."

6 (6) *The Mustard Seed*

At Sāvatti. Then a certain bhikkhu approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and said to him: "Venerable sir, how long is an aeon?"

"An aeon is long, bhikkhu. It is not easy to count it and say it is so many years, or so many hundreds of years, or so many thousands of years, or so many hundreds of thousands of years."

"Then is it possible to give a simile, venerable sir?"

"It is possible, bhikkhu," the Blessed One said. "Suppose, bhikkhu, there was a city with iron walls a *yojana* long, a *yojana* wide, and a *yojana* high, filled with mustard seeds as dense as a topknot. At the end of every hundred years a man would remove one mustard seed from there. The great heap of mustard seeds might by this effort be depleted and eliminated but the aeon would still not have come to an end. So long is an aeon, bhikkhu. And of aeons of such length, we have wandered through so many aeons, so many hundreds of aeons, so many thousands of

aeons, so many hundreds of thousands of aeons. For what reason? Because, bhikkhu, this saṃsāra is without discoverable beginning.... It is enough to be liberated from them."

7 (7) *Disciples*

At Sāvatti. [183] Then a number of bhikkhus approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and said to him: "Venerable sir, how many aeons have elapsed and gone by?"

"Bhikkhus, many aeons have elapsed and gone by. It is not easy to count them and say they are so many aeons, or so many hundreds of aeons, or so many thousands of aeons, or so many hundreds of thousands of aeons."

"But is it possible to give a simile, venerable sir?"

"It is possible, bhikkhus," the Blessed One said. "Suppose, bhikkhus, there were four disciples here each with a life span of a hundred years, living a hundred years, and each day they were each to recollect a hundred thousand aeons. There would still be aeons not yet recollected by them when those four disciples each with a life span of a hundred years, living a hundred years, would pass away at the end of a hundred years.<sup>258</sup> It is not easy to count them and say that they are so many aeons, or so many hundreds of aeons, or so many thousands of aeons, or so many hundreds of thousands of aeons. For what reason? Because, bhikkhus, this saṃsāra is without discoverable beginning.... It is enough to be liberated from them."

8 (8) *The River Ganges*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary. Then a certain brahmin approached the Blessed One and exchanged greetings with him. When they had concluded their greetings and cordial talk, he sat down to one side and said to him: "Master Gotama, how many aeons have elapsed and gone by?"

"Brahmin, many aeons have elapsed and gone by. It is not easy to count them and say they are so many aeons, or so many hundreds of aeons, or so many thousands of aeons, or so many hundreds of thousands of aeons." [184]

“But is it possible to give a simile, Master Gotama?”

“It is possible, brahmin,” the Blessed One said. “Suppose, brahmin, the grains of sand between the point where the river Ganges originates and the point where it enters the great ocean: it is not easy to count these and say there are so many grains of sand, or so many hundreds of grains, or so many thousands of grains, or so many hundreds of thousands of grains. Brahmin, the aeons that have elapsed and gone by are even more numerous than that. It is not easy to count them and say that they are so many aeons, or so many hundreds of aeons, or so many thousands of aeons, or so many hundreds of thousands of aeons. For what reason? Because, brahmin, this saṃsāra is without discoverable beginning.... It is enough to be liberated from them.”

When this was said, that brahmin said to the Blessed One: “Magnificent, Master Gotama! Magnificent, Master Gotama!... From today let Master Gotama remember me as a lay follower who has gone for refuge for life.”

#### 9 (9) *The Stick*

At Sāvatti. “Bhikkhus, this saṃsāra is without discoverable beginning. A first point is not discerned of beings roaming and wandering on hindered by ignorance and fettered by craving. Just as a stick thrown up into the air falls now on its bottom, now on its side, and now on its top, so too [185] as beings roam and wander on hindered by ignorance and fettered by craving, now they go from this world to the other world, now they come from the other world to this world.<sup>259</sup> For what reason? Because, bhikkhus, this saṃsāra is without discoverable beginning.... It is enough to be liberated from them.”

#### 10 (10) *Person*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha on Mount Vulture Peak. There the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus thus: “Bhikkhus!”<sup>260</sup>

“Venerable sir!” those bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

“Bhikkhus, this saṃsāra is without discoverable beginning. A first point is not discerned of beings roaming and wandering on

hindered by ignorance and fettered by craving. One person, roaming and wandering on hindered by ignorance and fettered by craving, would leave behind a stack of bones, a heap of bones, a pile of bones as large as this Mount Vepulla, if there were someone to collect them and what is collected would not perish.<sup>261</sup> For what reason? Because, bhikkhus, this saṃsāra is without discoverable beginning.... It is enough to be liberated from them.”

This is what the Blessed One said. Having said this, the Fortunate One, the Teacher, further said this:

“The heap of bones one person leaves behind  
With the passing of a single aeon  
Would form a heap as high as a mountain:  
So said the Great Sage.  
This is declared to be as massive  
As the tall Vepulla Mountain  
Standing north of Vulture Peak  
In the Magadhan mountain range.

“But when one sees with correct wisdom  
The truths of the noble ones—  
Suffering and its origin,  
The overcoming of suffering,  
And the Noble Eightfold Path  
That leads to suffering’s appeasement—  
Then that person, having wandered on  
For seven more times at most, [186]  
Makes an end to suffering  
By destroying all the fetters.”

#### II. THE SECOND SUBCHAPTER (Unfortunate)

#### 11 (1) *Unfortunate*

On one occasion, while dwelling at Sāvatti, the Blessed One said this: “Bhikkhus, this saṃsāra is without discoverable beginning. A first point is not discerned of beings roaming and wandering on hindered by ignorance and fettered by craving. Whenever you see anyone in misfortune, in misery, you can conclude: ‘We too

have experienced the same thing in this long course.' For what reason? Because, bhikkhus, this saṃsāra is without discoverable beginning.... It is enough to be liberated from them."

### 12 (2) *Happy*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, this saṃsāra is without discoverable beginning.... Whenever you see anyone happy and fortunate, [187] you can conclude: 'We too have experienced the same thing in this long course.' For what reason? Because, bhikkhus, this saṃsāra is without discoverable beginning.... It is enough to be liberated from them."

### 13 (3) *Thirty Bhikkhus*

At Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove. Then thirty bhikkhus from Pāvā approached the Blessed One—all forest dwellers, almsfood eaters, rag-robe wearers, triple-robe users, yet all were still with fetters.<sup>262</sup> Having approached, they paid homage to the Blessed One and sat down to one side. Then it occurred to the Blessed One: "These thirty bhikkhus from Pāvā are all forest dwellers, almsfood eaters, rag-robe wearers, triple-robe users, yet all are still with fetters. Let me teach them the Dhamma in such a way that while they are sitting in these very seats their minds will be liberated from the taints by nonclinging."

Then the Blessed One addressed those bhikkhus thus: "Bhikkhus!"

"Venerable sir!" those bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

"Bhikkhus, this saṃsāra is without discoverable beginning. A first point is not discerned of beings roaming and wandering on hindered by ignorance and fettered by craving. What do you think, bhikkhus, which is more: the stream of blood that you have shed when you were beheaded as you roamed and wandered on through this long course—this or the water in the four great oceans?"

"As we understand the Dhamma taught by the Blessed One, venerable sir, the stream of blood that we have shed when our heads were cut off as we roamed and wandered on through this long course—this alone [188] is more than the water in the four great oceans."

"Good, good, bhikkhus! It is good that you understand the Dhamma taught by me in such a way. The stream of blood that you have shed as you roamed and wandered on through this long course—this alone is more than the water in the four great oceans. For a long time, bhikkhus, you have been cows, and when as cows you were beheaded, the stream of blood that you shed is greater than the waters in the four great oceans. For a long time you have been buffalo, sheep, goats, deer, chickens, and pigs.... For a long time you have been arrested as burglars, highwaymen, and adulterers, and when you were beheaded, the stream of blood that you shed is greater than the water in the four great oceans. For what reason? Because, bhikkhus, this saṃsāra is without discoverable beginning.... It is enough to be liberated from them."

This is what the Blessed One said. Elated, those bhikkhus delighted in the Blessed One's statement. [189] And while this exposition was being spoken, the minds of the thirty bhikkhus from Pāvā were liberated from the taints by nonclinging.

### 14 (4)–19 (9) *Mother, Etc.*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, this saṃsāra is without discoverable beginning.... It is not easy, bhikkhus, to find a being who in this long course has not previously been your mother ... your father ... your brother ... your sister ... [190] ... your son ... your daughter. For what reason? Because, bhikkhus, this saṃsāra is without discoverable beginning.... It is enough to be liberated from them."

### 20 (10) *Mount Vepulla*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha on Mount Vulture Peak. There the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Bhikkhus!"

"Venerable sir!" those bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

"Bhikkhus, this saṃsāra is without discoverable beginning. A first point is not discerned of beings roaming and wandering on hindered by ignorance and fettered by craving. In the past, bhikkhus, this Mount Vepulla was called Pācīnavamsa, [191] and

at that time these people were called Tivaras. The life span of the Tivaras was 40,000 years.<sup>263</sup> They could climb Mount Pācinavaṃsa in four days and descend in four days. At that time the Blessed One Kakusandha, an Arahant, a Perfectly Enlightened One, had arisen in the world. His two chief disciples were named Vidhura and Sañjiva, an excellent pair. See, bhikkhus! That name for this mountain has disappeared, those people have died, and that Blessed One has attained final Nibbāna. So impermanent are formations, bhikkhus, so unstable, so unreliable. It is enough, bhikkhus, to experience revulsion towards all formations, enough to become dispassionate towards them, enough to be liberated from them.

"[At another time] in the past, bhikkhus, this Mount Vepulla was called Vaṅkaka, and at that time these people were called Rohitassas. The life span of the Rohitassas was 30,000 years.<sup>264</sup> They could climb Mount Vaṅkaka in three days and descend in three days. At that time the Blessed One Koṇāgamana, an Arahant, a Perfectly Enlightened One, had arisen in the world. His two chief disciples were named Bhiyyosa and Uttara, an excellent pair. See, bhikkhus! That name for this mountain has disappeared, those people have died, and that Blessed One has attained final Nibbāna. [192] So impermanent are formations.... It is enough to be liberated from them.

"[At still another time] in the past, bhikkhus, this Mount Vepulla was called Supassa, and at that time these people were called Suppiyas. The life span of the Suppiyas was 20,000 years. They could climb Mount Supassa in two days and descend in two days. At that time the Blessed One Kassapa, an Arahant, a Perfectly Enlightened One, had arisen in the world. His two chief disciples were named Tissa and Bhāradvāja, an excellent pair. See, bhikkhus! That name for this mountain has disappeared, those people have died, and that Blessed One has attained final Nibbāna. So impermanent are formations.... It is enough to be liberated from them.

"At present, bhikkhus, this Mount Vepulla is called Vepulla, and at present these people are called Magadhans. The life span of the Magadhans is short, limited, fleeting; one who lives long lives a hundred years or a little more. The Magadhans climb Mount Vepulla in an hour and descend in an hour. At present I have arisen in the world, an Arahant, a Perfectly Enlightened One.

My two chief disciples are named Sāriputta and Moggallāna, an excellent pair. There will come a time, bhikkhus, [193] when the name for this mountain will have disappeared, when these people will have died, and I will have attained final Nibbāna. So impermanent are formations, bhikkhus, so unstable, so unreliable. It is enough, bhikkhus, to experience revulsion towards all formations, enough to become dispassionate towards them, enough to be liberated from them."

This is what the Blessed One said. Having said this, the Fortunate One, the Teacher, further said this:

"This was called Pācinavaṃsa by the Tivaras,  
And Vaṅkaka by the Rohitassas,  
Supassa by the Suppiya people,  
Vepulla by the Magadhan folk.

"Impermanent, alas, are formations,  
Subject to arising and vanishing.  
Having arisen, they cease:  
Their appeasement is blissful."<sup>265</sup>

[194]

## Chapter V

16 *Kassapasamyutta*

## Connected Discourses with Kassapa

1 *Content*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, this Kassapa is content with any kind of robe, and he speaks in praise of contentment with any kind of robe, and he does not engage in a wrong search, in what is improper, for the sake of a robe.<sup>266</sup> If he does not get a robe he is not agitated, and if he gets one he uses it without being tied to it, uninfatuated with it, not blindly absorbed in it, seeing the danger in it, understanding the escape.<sup>267</sup>

"Bhikkhus, this Kassapa is content with any kind of almsfood ... with any kind of lodging ... with any kind of medicinal requisites ... and if he gets them he uses them without being tied to them, uninfatuated with them, not blindly absorbed in them, seeing the danger in them, understanding the escape.

"Therefore, bhikkhus, you should train yourselves thus: 'We will be content with any kind of robe, and we will speak in praise of contentment with any kind of robe, [195] and we will not engage in a wrong search, in what is improper, for the sake of a robe. If we do not get a robe we will not be agitated, and if we get one we will use it without being tied to it, uninfatuated with it, not blindly absorbed in it, seeing the danger in it, understanding the escape.

"We will be content with any kind of almsfood ... with any kind of lodging ... with any kind of medicinal requisites ... and if we get them we will use them without being tied to them, uninfatuated with them, not blindly absorbed in them, seeing the danger in them, understanding the escape.' Thus should you train yourselves.

"Bhikkhus, I will exhort you by the example of Kassapa or one

who is similar to Kassapa.<sup>268</sup> Being exhorted, you should practise accordingly."<sup>269</sup>

2 *Unafraid of Wrongdoing*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Venerable Mahākassapa and the Venerable Sāriputta were dwelling at Bārāṇasi in the Deer Park at Isipatana. Then, in the evening, the Venerable Sāriputta emerged from seclusion and approached the Venerable Mahākassapa. He exchanged greetings with the Venerable Mahākassapa and, when they had concluded their greetings and cordial talk, he sat down to one side and said to him:

"Friend, it is said that one who is not ardent and who is unafraid of wrongdoing is incapable of enlightenment, incapable of Nibbāna, incapable of achieving the unsurpassed security from bondage; but one who is ardent [196] and afraid of wrongdoing is capable of enlightenment, capable of Nibbāna, capable of achieving the unsurpassed security from bondage.<sup>270</sup> In what way is this so, friend?"

"Here, friend, a bhikkhu does not arouse ardour by thinking: 'If unarisen evil unwholesome states arise in me, this may lead to my harm'; nor by thinking: 'If evil unwholesome states that have arisen in me are not abandoned, this may lead to my harm'; nor by thinking: 'If unarisen wholesome states do not arise in me, this may lead to my harm'; nor by thinking: 'If wholesome states that have arisen in me cease, this may lead to my harm.' Thus he is not ardent.<sup>271</sup>

"And how, friend, is he unafraid of wrongdoing? Here, friend, a bhikkhu does not become afraid at the thought: 'If unarisen evil unwholesome states arise in me, this may lead to my harm' ... nor at the thought: 'If wholesome states that have arisen in me cease, this may lead to my harm.' Thus he is unafraid of wrongdoing.

"It is in this way, friend, that one who is not ardent and who is unafraid of wrongdoing is incapable of enlightenment, incapable of Nibbāna, incapable of achieving the unsurpassed security from bondage.

"And how, friend, is one ardent? Here, friend, a bhikkhu arouses ardour by thinking: 'If unarisen evil unwholesome states arise in me, this may lead to my harm' ... and by thinking: 'If wholesome

states that have arisen in me cease, this may lead to my harm.' Thus he is ardent.

"And how, friend, is he afraid of wrongdoing? Here, friend, a bhikkhu becomes afraid at the thought: 'If unarisen evil unwholesome states arise in me, this may lead to my harm'; ... and at the thought: 'If wholesome states that have arisen in me cease, this may lead to my harm.' [197] Thus he is afraid of wrongdoing.

"It is in this way, friend, that one who is ardent and afraid of wrongdoing is capable of enlightenment, capable of Nibbāna, capable of achieving the unsurpassed security from bondage."

### 3 Like the Moon

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, you should approach families like the moon—[198] drawing back the body and mind, always acting like newcomers, without impudence towards families.<sup>272</sup> Just as a man looking down an old well, a precipice, or a steep riverbank would draw back the body and mind, so too, bhikkhus, should you approach families.

"Bhikkhus, Kassapa approaches families like the moon—drawing back the body and mind, always acting like a newcomer, without impudence towards families. What do you think, bhikkhus, what kind of bhikkhu is worthy to approach families?"

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One, guided by the Blessed One, take recourse in the Blessed One. It would be good if the Blessed One would clear up the meaning of this statement. Having heard it from him, the bhikkhus will remember it."

Then the Blessed One waved his hand in space<sup>273</sup> and said: "Bhikkhus, just as this hand does not get caught in space, is not held fast by it, is not bound by it, so when a bhikkhu approaches families his mind does not get caught, held fast, and bound amidst families, thinking: 'May those desiring gains acquire gains, may those desiring merits make merits!'<sup>274</sup> He is as elated and happy over the gains of others as he is over his own gains. Such a bhikkhu is worthy to approach families.

"Bhikkhus, when Kassapa approaches families his mind does not get caught, held fast, or bound amidst families, thinking: 'May those desiring gains acquire gains, may those desiring merits

make merits!' He is as elated and happy over the gains of others as he is over his own gains. [199]

"What do you think, bhikkhus, how is a bhikkhu's teaching of the Dhamma impure, and how is his teaching of the Dhamma pure?"

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One...."

"Then listen and attend closely, bhikkhus, I will speak."

"Yes, venerable sir," those bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

"A bhikkhu teaches the Dhamma to others with the thought: 'Oh, may they listen to the Dhamma from me! Having listened, may they gain confidence in the Dhamma! Being confident, may they show their confidence to me!'<sup>275</sup> Such a bhikkhu's teaching of the Dhamma is impure.

"But a bhikkhu teaches the Dhamma to others with the thought: 'The Dhamma is well expounded by the Blessed One, directly visible, immediate, inviting one to come and see, applicable, to be personally experienced by the wise. Oh, may they listen to the Dhamma from me! Having listened, may they understand the Dhamma! Having understood, may they practise accordingly!' Thus he teaches the Dhamma to others because of the intrinsic excellence of the Dhamma; he teaches the Dhamma to others from compassion and sympathy, out of tender concern.<sup>276</sup> Such a bhikkhu's teaching of the Dhamma is pure.

"Bhikkhus, Kassapa teaches the Dhamma to others with the thought: 'The Dhamma is well expounded by the Blessed One.... Oh, [200] may they listen to the Dhamma from me! Having listened, may they understand the Dhamma! Having understood, may they practise accordingly!' He teaches the Dhamma to others because of the intrinsic excellence of the Dhamma; he teaches the Dhamma to others from compassion and sympathy, out of tender concern.

"Bhikkhus, I will exhort you by the example of Kassapa or one who is similar to Kassapa. Being exhorted, you should practise accordingly."

### 4 A Visitor of Families

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, what do you think, what kind of bhikkhu is worthy to be a visitor of families,<sup>277</sup> and what kind of bhikkhu is not worthy to be a visitor of families?"

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One...."

The Blessed One said this: "Bhikkhus, a bhikkhu might approach families with the thought: 'May they give to me, not hold back! May they give me much, not a little! May they give me fine things, not shabby things! May they give me promptly, not slowly! May they give me considerately, not casually!' When a bhikkhu approaches families with such a thought, if they do not give, he thereby becomes hurt; on that account he experiences pain and displeasure. If they give little rather than much ... If they give shabby things rather than fine things ... If they give slowly rather than promptly ... If they give casually rather than considerately, he thereby becomes hurt; [201] on that account he experiences pain and displeasure. Such a bhikkhu is not worthy to be a visitor of families.

"Bhikkhus, a bhikkhu might approach families with the thought: 'When among others' families, how could I possibly think: "May they give to me, not hold back!... May they give me respectfully, not casually!'"? When a bhikkhu approaches families with such a thought, if they do not give ... if they give casually rather than considerately, he does not thereby become hurt; he does not on that account experience pain and displeasure. Such a bhikkhu is worthy to be a visitor of families.

"Bhikkhus, Kassapa approaches families with such a thought.... Thus if they do not give ... if they give casually rather than considerately, he does not thereby become hurt; [202] he does not on that account experience pain and displeasure.

"Bhikkhus, I will exhort you by the example of Kassapa or one who is similar to Kassapa. Being exhorted, you should practise accordingly."

### 5 Old

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary. Then the Venerable Mahākassapa approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, and sat down to one side. The Blessed One then said to him: "You are old now, Kassapa, and those worn-out hempen rag-ropes must be burdensome for you. Therefore you should wear robes offered by householders, Kassapa, accept meals given on invitation, and dwell close to me."<sup>278</sup>

"For a long time, venerable sir, I have been a forest dweller and have spoken in praise of forest dwelling; I have been an almsfood eater and have spoken in praise of eating almsfood; I have been a rag-robe wearer and have spoken in praise of wearing rag-ropes; I have been a triple-robe user and have spoken in praise of using the triple robe; I have been of few wishes and have spoken in praise of fewness of wishes; I have been content and have spoken in praise of contentment; I have been secluded and have spoken in praise of solitude; I have been aloof from society and have spoken in praise of aloofness from society; I have been energetic and have spoken in praise of arousing energy."<sup>279</sup>

"Considering what benefit, Kassapa, have you long been a forest dweller ... and spoken in praise of arousing energy?"

"Considering two benefits, venerable sir. [203] For myself I see a pleasant dwelling in this very life, and I have compassion for later generations, thinking, 'May those of later generations follow my example!'<sup>280</sup> For when they hear, 'The enlightened disciples of the Buddha were for a long time forest dwellers and spoke in praise of forest dwelling ... were energetic and spoke in praise of arousing energy,' then they will practise accordingly, and that will lead to their welfare and happiness for a long time. Considering these two benefits, venerable sir, I have long been a forest dweller ... and have spoken in praise of arousing energy."

"Good, good, Kassapa! You are practising for the welfare and happiness of the multitude, out of compassion for the world, for the good, welfare, and happiness of devas and humans. Therefore, Kassapa, wear worn-out hempen rag-ropes, walk for alms, and dwell in the forest."

### 6 Exhortation (1)

At Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove. Then the Venerable Mahākassapa approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, and sat down to one side. The Blessed One then said to him: "Exhort the bhikkhus, Kassapa, give them a Dhamma talk. Either I [204] should exhort the bhikkhus, Kassapa, or you should. Either I should give them a Dhamma talk or you should."<sup>281</sup>

"Venerable sir, the bhikkhus are difficult to admonish now and they have qualities which make them difficult to admonish.<sup>282</sup> They are impatient and do not accept instruction respectfully

Here, venerable sir, I saw a bhikkhu named Bhaṇḍa, a pupil of Ānanda, and a bhikkhu named Abhiñjika, a pupil of Anuruddha, competing with each other in regard to their learning, saying: 'Come, bhikkhu, who can speak more? Who can speak better? Who can speak longer?'"

Then the Blessed One addressed a certain bhikkhu thus: "Come, bhikkhu, tell the bhikkhu Bhaṇḍa and the bhikkhu Abhiñjika in my name that the Teacher calls them."

"Yes, venerable sir," that bhikkhu replied, and he went to those bhikkhus and told them: "The Teacher calls the venerable ones."

"Yes, friend," those bhikkhus replied, and they approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, and sat down to one side. The Blessed One then said to them: "Is it true, bhikkhus, that you have been competing with each other in regard to your learning, as to who can speak more, who can speak better, who can speak longer?"

"Yes, venerable sir."

"Have you ever known me to teach the Dhamma thus: 'Come, bhikkhus, compete with each other in regard to your learning, and see who can speak more, who can speak better, who can speak longer?'" [205]

"No, venerable sir."

"Then if you have never known me to teach the Dhamma thus, what do you senseless men know and see that, having gone forth in such a well-expounded Dhamma and Discipline, you compete with each other in regard to your learning, as to who can speak more, who can speak better, who can speak longer?"

Then those bhikkhus prostrated themselves with their heads at the Blessed One's feet and said: "Venerable sir, we have committed a transgression—so foolish, so confused, so inept were we—in that, having gone forth in such a well-expounded Dhamma and Discipline, we competed with each other in regard to our learning, as to who can speak more, who can speak better, who can speak longer. Venerable sir, may the Blessed One pardon us for our transgression seen as a transgression for the sake of future restraint."

"Surely, bhikkhus, you have committed a transgression—so foolish, so confused, so inept were you—in that, having gone forth in such a well-expounded Dhamma and Discipline, you competed with each other in regard to your learning.... But since

you see your transgression as a transgression and make amends for it in accordance with the Dhamma, we pardon you for it. For it is growth in the Noble One's Discipline when one sees one's transgression as a transgression, makes amends for it in accordance with the Dhamma, and undertakes future restraint."

### 7 Exhortation (2)

At Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove. Then the Venerable Mahākassapa approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, and sat down to one side. The Blessed One then said to him: "Exhort the bhikkhus, Kassapa, give them a Dhamma talk. Either I should exhort the bhikkhus, Kassapa, [206] or you should. Either I should give them a Dhamma talk or you should."

"Venerable sir, the bhikkhus are difficult to admonish now, and they have qualities which make them difficult to admonish. They are impatient and do not accept instruction respectfully. Venerable sir,<sup>283</sup> for one who has no faith in regard to wholesome states, no sense of shame, no fear of wrongdoing, no energy, and no wisdom, whether day or night comes only decline is to be expected in regard to wholesome states, not growth. Just as, during the dark fortnight, whether day or night comes the moon declines in colour, circularity, and luminosity, in diameter and circumference, so too, venerable sir, for one who has no faith in wholesome states, no sense of shame, no fear of wrongdoing, no energy, and no wisdom, whether day or night comes only decline is to be expected in regard to wholesome states, not growth.

"A person without faith, venerable sir: this is a case of decline. A person without a sense of shame ... who is unafraid of wrongdoing ... who is lazy ... unwise ... angry ... malicious: this is a case of decline. When there are no bhikkhus who are exhorters: this is a case of decline.

"Venerable sir, for one who has faith in regard to wholesome states, a sense of shame, fear of wrongdoing, energy, and wisdom, whether day or night comes only growth is to be expected in regard to wholesome states, not decline. Just as, during the bright fortnight, whether day or night comes the moon grows in colour, circularity, [207] and luminosity, in diameter and circumference, so too, venerable sir, for one who has faith in wholesome states, a sense of shame, fear of wrongdoing, energy, and wisdom,

whether day or night comes only growth is to be expected in regard to wholesome states, not decline.

"A person with faith, venerable sir: this is a case of nondecline. A person with a sense of shame ... who is afraid of wrongdoing ... energetic ... wise ... without anger ... without malice: this is a case of nondecline. When there are bhikkhus who are exhorters: this is a case of nondecline."

"Good, good, Kassapa!"

(*The Buddha then repeats the entire statement of the Venerable Mahākassapa.*) [208]

### 8 Exhortation (3)

At Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove. Then the Venerable Mahākassapa approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, and sat down to one side. The Blessed One then said to him: "Exhort the bhikkhus, Kassapa, give them a Dhamma talk. Either I should exhort the bhikkhus, Kassapa, or you should. Either I should give them a Dhamma talk or you should."

"Venerable sir, the bhikkhus are difficult to admonish now, and they have qualities which make them difficult to admonish. They are impatient and do not accept instruction respectfully."

"Just so, Kassapa, in the past the elder bhikkhus were forest dwellers and spoke in praise of forest dwelling; they were almsfood eaters and spoke in praise of eating almsfood; they were rag-robe wearers and spoke in praise of wearing rag-robos; they were triple-robe users and spoke in praise of using the triple robe; they were of few wishes and spoke in praise of fewness of wishes; they were content and spoke in praise of contentment; they were secluded and spoke in praise of solitude; they were aloof from society and spoke in praise of aloofness from society; they were energetic and spoke in praise of arousing energy.

"Then, when a bhikkhu was a forest dweller and spoke in praise of forest dwelling ... [209] ... when he was energetic and spoke in praise of arousing energy, the elder bhikkhus would invite him to a seat, saying: 'Come, bhikkhu. What is this bhikkhu's name? This is an excellent bhikkhu. This bhikkhu is keen on training. Come, bhikkhu, here's a seat, sit down.' Then it would occur to the newly ordained bhikkhus: 'It seems that when a bhikkhu is a forest dweller and speaks in praise of forest

dwelling ... when he is energetic and speaks in praise of arousing energy, the elder bhikkhus invite him to a seat....' They would practise accordingly, and that would lead to their welfare and happiness for a long time.

"But now, Kassapa, the elder bhikkhus are no longer forest dwellers and do not speak in praise of forest dwelling ... [210] ... they are no longer energetic and do not speak in praise of arousing energy. Now it is the bhikkhu who is well known and famous, one who gains robes, almsfood, lodgings, and medicinal requisites, that the elder bhikkhus invite to a seat, saying: 'Come, bhikkhu. What is this bhikkhu's name? This is an excellent bhikkhu. This bhikkhu is keen on the company of his brothers in the holy life. Come, bhikkhu, here's a seat, sit down.' Then it occurs to the newly ordained bhikkhus: 'It seems that when a bhikkhu is well known and famous, one who gains robes, almsfood, lodgings, and medicinal requisites, the elder bhikkhus invite him to a seat....' They practise accordingly, and that leads to their harm and suffering for a long time.

"If, Kassapa, one speaking rightly could say: 'Those leading the holy life have been ruined by the ruination of those who lead the holy life; those leading the holy life have been vanquished by the vanquishing of those who lead the holy life,'<sup>284</sup> it is just thus that one could rightly say this."

### 9 Jhānas and Direct Knowledges

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, to whatever extent I wish, secluded from sensual pleasures, secluded from unwholesome states, I enter and dwell in the first jhāna, which is accompanied by thought and examination, with rapture and happiness born of seclusion. [211] Kassapa too, to whatever extent he wishes, secluded from sensual pleasures, secluded from unwholesome states, enters and dwells in the first jhāna.

"Bhikkhus, to whatever extent I wish, with the subsiding of thought and examination, I enter and dwell in the second jhāna, which has internal confidence and unification of mind, is without thought and examination, and has rapture and happiness born of concentration. Kassapa too, to whatever extent he wishes, with the subsiding of thought and examination, enters and dwells in the second jhāna.

“Bhikkhus, to whatever extent I wish, with the fading away as well of rapture, I dwell equanimous, and mindful and clearly comprehending, I experience happiness with the body; I enter and dwell in the third jhāna of which the noble ones declare: ‘He is equanimous, mindful, one who dwells happily.’ Kassapa too, to whatever extent he wishes, enters and dwells in the third jhāna.

“Bhikkhus, to whatever extent I wish, with the abandoning of pleasure and pain, and with the previous passing away of joy and displeasure, I enter and dwell in the fourth jhāna, which is neither painful nor pleasant and includes the purification of mindfulness by equanimity. Kassapa too, to whatever extent he wishes, enters and dwells in the fourth jhāna.

“Bhikkhus, to whatever extent I wish, with the complete transcendence of perceptions of forms, with the passing away of perceptions of sensory impingement, with nonattention to perceptions of diversity, aware that ‘space is infinite,’ I enter and dwell in the base of the infinity of space. Kassapa too, to whatever extent he wishes, enters and dwells in the base of the infinity of space.

“Bhikkhus, to whatever extent I wish, by completely transcending the base of the infinity of space, aware that ‘consciousness is infinite,’ I enter and dwell in the base of the infinity of consciousness. [212] Kassapa too, to whatever extent he wishes, enters and dwells in the base of the infinity of consciousness.

“Bhikkhus, to whatever extent I wish, by completely transcending the base of the infinity of consciousness, aware that ‘there is nothing,’ I enter and dwell in the base of nothingness. Kassapa too, to whatever extent he wishes, enters and dwells in the base of nothingness.

“Bhikkhus, to whatever extent I wish, by completely transcending the base of nothingness, I enter and dwell in the base of neither-perception-nor-nonperception. Kassapa too, to whatever extent he wishes, enters and dwells in the base of neither-perception-nor-nonperception.

“Bhikkhus, to whatever extent I wish, by completely transcending the base of neither-perception-nor-nonperception, I enter and dwell in the cessation of perception and feeling. Kassapa too, to whatever extent he wishes, enters and dwells in the cessation of perception and feeling.

“Bhikkhus, to whatever extent I wish, I wield the various kinds of spiritual power: having been one, I become many; having been many, I become one; I appear and vanish; I go unhindered through a wall, through a rampart, through a mountain as though through space; I dive in and out of the earth as though it were water; I walk on water without sinking as though it were earth; seated cross-legged, I travel in space like a bird; with my hand I touch and stroke the moon and sun so powerful and mighty; I exercise mastery with the body as far as the brahmā world. Kassapa too, to whatever extent he wishes, wields the various kinds of spiritual power.

“Bhikkhus, to whatever extent I wish, with the divine ear element, which is purified and surpasses the human, I hear both kinds of sounds, the divine and human, those that are far as well as near. Kassapa too, to whatever extent he wishes, with the divine ear element, which is purified and surpasses the human, hears both kinds of sounds. [213]

“Bhikkhus, to whatever extent I wish, I understand the minds of other beings and persons, having encompassed them with my own mind. I understand a mind with lust as a mind without lust; a mind without lust as a mind without lust; a mind with hatred as a mind with hatred; a mind without hatred as a mind without hatred; a mind with delusion as a mind with delusion; a mind without delusion as a mind without delusion; a contracted mind as contracted and a distracted mind as distracted; an exalted mind as exalted and an unexalted mind as unexalted; a surpassable mind as surpassable and an unsurpassable mind as unsurpassable; a concentrated mind as concentrated and an unconcentrated mind as unconcentrated; a liberated mind as liberated and an unliberated mind as unliberated. Kassapa too, to whatever extent he wishes, understands the minds of other beings and persons, having encompassed them with his own mind.

“Bhikkhus, to whatever extent I wish, I recollect my manifold past abodes, that is, one birth, two births, three births, four births, five births, ten births, twenty births, thirty births, forty births, fifty births, a hundred births, a thousand births, a hundred thousand births, many aeons of world-contraction, many aeons of world-expansion, many aeons of world-contraction and expansion thus: ‘There I was so named, of such a clan, with such an appearance, such was my food, such my experience of pleasure

and pain, such my life span; passing away from there, I was reborn elsewhere, and there too I was so named, of such a clan, with such an appearance, such was my food, such my experience of pleasure and pain, such my life span; passing away from there, I was reborn here.' Thus I recollect my manifold past abodes with their modes and details. Kassapa too, to whatever extent he wishes, recollects his manifold past abodes with their modes and details.

"Bhikkhus, to whatever extent I wish, with the divine eye, which is purified and surpasses the human, I see beings [214] passing away and being reborn, inferior and superior, beautiful and ugly, fortunate and unfortunate, and I understand how beings fare on according to their kamma thus: 'These beings who engaged in misconduct of body, speech, and mind, who reviled the noble ones, held wrong view, and undertook actions based on wrong view, with the breakup of the body, after death, have been reborn in a state of misery, in a bad destination, in the nether world, in hell; but these beings who engaged in good conduct of body, speech, and mind, who did not revile the noble ones, who held right view, and undertook action based on right view, with the breakup of the body, after death, have been reborn in a good destination, in a heavenly world.' Thus with the divine eye, which is purified and surpasses the human, I see beings passing away and being reborn, inferior and superior, beautiful and ugly, fortunate and unfortunate, and I understand how beings fare on according to their kamma. Kassapa too, to whatever extent he wishes, with the divine eye, which is purified and surpasses the human, sees beings passing away and being reborn, inferior and superior, beautiful and ugly, fortunate and unfortunate, and he understands how beings fare on according to their kamma.

"Bhikkhus, by the destruction of the taints, in this very life I enter and dwell in the taintless liberation of mind, liberation by wisdom, realizing it for myself with direct knowledge.<sup>285</sup> Kassapa too, by the destruction of the taints, in this very life enters and dwells in the taintless liberation of mind, liberation by wisdom, realizing it for himself with direct knowledge."

#### 10 The Bhikkhunis' Quarters

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Venerable Mahākassapa was dwelling at Sāvatti in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park.

Then, in the morning, the Venerable Ānanda dressed and, [215] taking bowl and robe, he approached the Venerable Mahākassapa and said: "Come, Venerable Kassapa, let us go to the bhikkhunis' quarters."<sup>286</sup>

"You go, friend Ānanda, you're the busy one with many duties."<sup>287</sup>

A second time the Venerable Ānanda said to the Venerable Mahākassapa: "Come, Venerable Kassapa, let us go to the bhikkhunis' quarters."

"You go, friend Ānanda, you're the busy one with many duties."

A third time the Venerable Ānanda said to the Venerable Mahākassapa: "Come, Venerable Kassapa, let us go to the bhikkhunis' quarters."

Then, in the morning, the Venerable Mahākassapa dressed and, taking bowl and robe, went to the bhikkhunis' quarters with the Venerable Ānanda as his companion. When he arrived he sat down on the appointed seat. Then a number of bhikkhunis approached the Venerable Mahākassapa, paid homage to him, and sat down to one side. As they were sitting there, the Venerable Mahākassapa instructed, exhorted, inspired, and gladdened those bhikkhunis with a Dhamma talk, after which he rose from his seat and departed.

Then the bhikkhuni Thullatissā, being displeased, expressed her displeasure thus: "How can Master Mahākassapa think of speaking on the Dhamma in the presence of Master Ānanda, the Videhan sage?<sup>288</sup> For Master Mahākassapa to think of speaking on the Dhamma in the presence of Master Ānanda, the Videhan sage—this is just as if a needle-peddler [216] would think he could sell a needle to a needle-maker!"

The Venerable Mahākassapa overheard the bhikkhuni Thullatissā making this statement and said to the Venerable Ānanda: "How is it, friend Ānanda, am I the needle-peddler and you the needle-maker, or am I the needle-maker and you the needle-peddler?"

"Be patient, Venerable Kassapa, women are foolish."<sup>289</sup>

"Hold it, friend Ānanda! Don't give the Saṅgha occasion to investigate you further.<sup>290</sup> What do you think, friend Ānanda, was it you that the Blessed One brought forward in the presence of the Bhikkhu Saṅgha, saying: 'Bhikkhus, to whatever extent I

wish, secluded from sensual pleasures, secluded from unwholesome states, I enter and dwell in the first jhāna, which is accompanied by thought and examination, with rapture and happiness born of seclusion. Ānanda too, to whatever extent he wishes, secluded from sensual pleasures, secluded from unwholesome states, enters and dwells in the first jhāna’?”

“No, venerable sir.”

“I was the one, friend, that the Blessed One brought forward in the presence of the Bhikkhu Saṅgha, saying: ‘Bhikkhus, to whatever extent I wish, ... I enter and dwell in the first jhāna.... Kassapa too, to whatever extent he wishes, enters and dwells in the first jhāna.’

*(The same exchange is repeated for the remaining meditative attainments and the six direct knowledges, all as in the preceding sutta.)*  
[217]

“I was the one, friend, that the Blessed One brought forward in the presence of the Bhikkhu Saṅgha, saying: ‘Bhikkhus, by the destruction of the taints, in this very life I enter and dwell in the taintless liberation of mind, liberation by wisdom, realizing it for myself with direct knowledge. Kassapa too, by the destruction of the taints, in this very life enters and dwells in the taintless liberation of mind, liberation by wisdom, realizing it for himself with direct knowledge.’

“Friend, one might just as well think that a bull elephant seven or seven and a half cubits high could be concealed by a palm leaf as think that my six direct knowledges could be concealed.”<sup>291</sup>

But the bhikkhuni Thullatissā fell away from the holy life.<sup>292</sup>

### 11 The Robe

On one occasion the Venerable Mahākassapa was dwelling in Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary. Now on that occasion the Venerable Ānanda was wandering on tour in Dakkhiṇāgiri together with a large Saṅgha of bhikkhus.<sup>293</sup> Now on that occasion thirty bhikkhus—pupils of the Venerable Ānanda—most of them youngsters, had given up the training and had returned to the lower life. [218]

When the Venerable Ānanda had wandered on tour in Dakkhiṇāgiri as long as he wanted, he came back to Rājagaha, to the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary. He approached the

Venerable Mahākassapa, paid homage to him, and sat down to one side, and the Venerable Mahākassapa said to him: “Friend Ānanda, for how many reasons did the Blessed One lay down the rule that bhikkhus should not take meals among families in groups of more than three?”<sup>294</sup>

“The Blessed One laid down this rule for three reasons, Venerable Kassapa: for restraining ill-behaved persons and for the comfort of well-behaved bhikkhus, [with the intention,] ‘May those of evil wishes, by forming a faction, not create a schism in the Saṅgha!’; and out of sympathy towards families.<sup>295</sup> It is for these three reasons, Venerable Kassapa, that the Blessed One laid down this rule.”

“Then why, friend Ānanda, are you wandering about with these young bhikkhus who are unguarded in their sense faculties, immoderate in eating, and not devoted to wakefulness? One would think you were wandering about trampling on crops; one would think you were wandering about destroying families. Your retinue is breaking apart, friend Ānanda, your young followers are slipping away. But still this youngster does not know his measure!”

“Grey hairs are growing on my head, Venerable Kassapa. Can’t we escape being called a youngster by the Venerable Mahākassapa?”<sup>296</sup> [219]

“Friend Ānanda, it is just because you wander around with these young bhikkhus who are unguarded in their sense faculties.... But still this youngster does not know his measure!”

The bhikkhuni Thullanandā heard:<sup>297</sup> “Master Mahākassapa has disparaged Master Ānanda, the Videhan sage, by calling him a youngster.” Then, being displeased at this, she expressed her displeasure thus: “How can Master Mahākassapa, who was formerly a member of another sect,<sup>298</sup> think to disparage Master Ānanda, the Videhan sage, by calling him a youngster?”

The Venerable Mahākassapa overheard the bhikkhuni Thullanandā making this statement and said to the Venerable Ānanda: “Surely, friend Ānanda, the bhikkhuni Thullanandā made that statement rashly, without consideration. For since I shaved off my hair and beard, put on saffron robes, and went forth from the home life into homelessness, I do not recall ever having acknowledged any other teacher except the Blessed One, the Arahant, the Perfectly Enlightened One.

"In the past, friend, when I was still a householder, it occurred to me: 'Household life is confinement, a path of dust, going forth is like the open air. It is not easy for one living at home to lead the perfectly complete, perfectly purified holy life, which is like polished conch. Let me then shave off my hair and beard, put on saffron robes, and go forth from the household life into homelessness.' Some time later [220] I had an outer robe made from patches of cloth;<sup>299</sup> then, acknowledging those who were arahants in the world [as models], I shaved off my hair and beard, put on saffron robes, and went forth from the household life into homelessness.

"When I had thus gone forth, I was travelling along a road when I saw the Blessed One sitting by the Bahuputta Shrine between Rājagaha and Nālandā.<sup>300</sup> Having seen him, I thought: 'If I should ever see the Teacher, it is the Blessed One himself that I would see. If I should ever see the Fortunate One, it is the Blessed One himself that I would see. If I should ever see the Perfectly Enlightened One, it is the Blessed One himself that I would see.' Then I prostrated myself right there at the Blessed One's feet and said to him: 'Venerable sir, the Blessed One is my teacher, I am his disciple. Venerable sir, the Blessed One is my teacher, I am his disciple.'<sup>301</sup>

"When I had said this, the Blessed One said to me: 'Kassapa, if one who does not know and see should say to a disciple so single-minded as yourself: "I know, I see," his head would split. But knowing, Kassapa, I say, "I know"; seeing, I say, "I see."<sup>302</sup>

"Therefore, Kassapa, you should train yourself thus: "I will arouse a keen sense of shame and fear of wrongdoing towards elders, the newly ordained, and those of middle status." Thus should you train yourself.

"Therefore, Kassapa, you should train yourself thus: "Whenever I listen to any Dhamma connected with the wholesome, I will listen to it with eager ears, attending to it as a matter of vital concern, applying my whole mind to it."<sup>303</sup> Thus should you train yourself.

"Therefore, Kassapa, you should train yourself thus: "I will never relinquish mindfulness directed to the body associated with joy." Thus should you train yourself.<sup>304</sup>

"Then, having given me this exhortation, the Blessed One rose from his seat and departed. [221] For seven days, friend, I ate the

country's almsfood as a debtor, but on the eighth day final knowledge arose.<sup>305</sup>

"Then, friend, the Blessed One descended from the road and went to the foot of a tree.<sup>306</sup> I folded in four my outer robe of patches and said to him: 'Venerable sir, let the Blessed One sit down here. This will lead to my welfare and happiness for a long time.' The Blessed One sat down on the appointed seat and said to me: 'Your outer robe of patches is soft, Kassapa.' – 'Venerable sir, let the Blessed One accept my outer robe of patches, out of compassion.' – 'Then will you wear my worn-out hempen rag-robes?' – 'I will, venerable sir.' Thus I offered the Blessed One my outer robe of patches and received from him his worn-out hempen rag-robes.<sup>307</sup>

"If, friend, one speaking rightly could say of anyone: 'He is a son of the Blessed One, born of his breast, born of his mouth, born of the Dhamma, created by the Dhamma, an heir to the Dhamma, a receiver of worn-out hempen rag-robes,' it is of me that one could rightly say this.<sup>308</sup>

"Friend, to whatever extent I wish, secluded from sensual pleasures, secluded from unwholesome states, I enter and dwell in the first jhāna, which is accompanied by thought and examination, [222] with rapture and happiness born of seclusion.... (*As in §9, down to:*)

"Friend, by the destruction of the taints, in this very life I enter and dwell in the taintless liberation of mind, liberation by wisdom, realizing it for myself with direct knowledge.

"Friend, one might just as well think that a bull elephant seven or seven and a half cubits high could be concealed by a palm leaf as think that my six direct knowledges could be concealed."<sup>309</sup>

But the bhikkhuni Thullanandā fell away from the holy life.

### 12 After Death

On one occasion the Venerable Mahākassapa and the Venerable Sāriputta were dwelling at Bārāṇasi in the Deer Park at Isipatana. Then, in the evening, the Venerable Sāriputta emerged from seclusion and approached the Venerable Mahākassapa. He exchanged greetings with the Venerable Mahākassapa and, when they had concluded their greetings and cordial talk, he sat down to one side and said to him:

"How is it, friend Kassapa, does the Tathāgata exist after death?"<sup>310</sup>

"The Blessed One, friend, has not declared this: 'The Tathāgata exists after death.'"

"Then, friend, does the Tathāgata not exist after death?"

"The Blessed One, friend, has not declared this either: 'The Tathāgata does not exist after death.'" [223]

"How is it then, friend, does the Tathāgata both exist and not exist after death?"

"The Blessed One, friend, has not declared this: 'The Tathāgata both exists and does not exist after death.'"

"Then, friend, does the Tathāgata neither exist nor not exist after death?"

"The Blessed One, friend, has not declared this either: 'The Tathāgata neither exists nor does not exist after death.'"

"Why hasn't the Blessed One declared this, friend?"

"Because this is unbeneficial, irrelevant to the fundamentals of the holy life, and does not lead to revulsion, to dispassion, to cessation, to peace, to direct knowledge, to enlightenment, to Nibbāna. Therefore the Blessed One has not declared this."

"And what, friend, has the Blessed One declared?"

"The Blessed One, friend, has declared: 'This is suffering,' and 'This is the origin of suffering,' and 'This is the cessation of suffering,' and 'This is the way leading to the cessation of suffering.'"

"And why, friend, has the Blessed One declared this?"

"Because, friend, this is beneficial, relevant to the fundamentals of the holy life, and leads to revulsion, to dispassion, to cessation, to peace, to direct knowledge, to enlightenment, to Nibbāna. Therefore the Blessed One has declared this."

### 13 *The Counterfeit of the True Dhamma*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvattthī in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. Then the Venerable Mahākassapa approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and said to him: [224]

"Venerable sir, what is the reason, what is the cause, why formerly there were fewer training rules but more bhikkhus were established in final knowledge, while now there are more training rules but fewer bhikkhus are established in final knowledge?"<sup>311</sup>

"That's the way it is, Kassapa. When beings are deteriorating and the true Dhamma is disappearing there are more training rules but fewer bhikkhus are established in final knowledge. Kassapa, the true Dhamma does not disappear so long as a counterfeit of the true Dhamma has not arisen in the world. But when a counterfeit of the true Dhamma arises in the world, then the true Dhamma disappears."<sup>312</sup>

"Just as, Kassapa, gold does not disappear so long as counterfeit gold has not arisen in the world, but when counterfeit gold arises then true gold disappears, so the true Dhamma does not disappear so long as a counterfeit of the true Dhamma has not arisen in the world, but when a counterfeit of the true Dhamma arises in the world, then the true Dhamma disappears.

"It is not the earth element, Kassapa, that causes the true Dhamma to disappear, nor the water element, nor the heat element, nor the air element. It is the senseless people who arise right here who cause the true Dhamma to disappear.

"The true Dhamma does not disappear all at once in the way a ship sinks.<sup>313</sup> There are, Kassapa, five detrimental things<sup>314</sup> that lead to the decay and disappearance of the true Dhamma. What are the five? Here the bhikkhus, the bhikkhunis, the male lay followers, and the female lay followers dwell without reverence and deference towards the Teacher; they dwell without reverence and deference towards the Dhamma; they dwell without reverence and deference towards the Saṅgha; [225] they dwell without reverence and deference towards the training; they dwell without reverence and deference towards concentration.<sup>315</sup> These, Kassapa, are the five detrimental things that lead to the decay and disappearance of the true Dhamma.

"There are five things, Kassapa, that lead to the longevity of the true Dhamma, to its nondecay and nondisappearance. What are the five? Here the bhikkhus, the bhikkhunis, the male lay followers, and the female lay followers dwell with reverence and deference towards the Teacher; they dwell with reverence and deference towards the Dhamma; they dwell with reverence and deference towards the Saṅgha; they dwell with reverence and deference towards the training; they dwell with reverence and deference towards concentration. These, Kassapa, are the five things that lead to the longevity of the true Dhamma, to its nondecay and nondisappearance."

Chapter VI  
17 *Lābhasakkārasaṃyutta*  
Connected Discourses on  
Gains and Honour

I. THE FIRST SUBCHAPTER  
(Dreadful)

1 (1) *Dreadful*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvatti in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. There the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Bhikkhus!" [226]

"Venerable sir!" those bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

"Bhikkhus, dreadful are gain, honour, and praise, bitter, vile, obstructive to achieving the unsurpassed security from bondage.<sup>316</sup> Therefore, bhikkhus, you should train yourselves thus: 'We will abandon the arisen gain, honour, and praise, and we will not let the arisen gain, honour, and praise persist obsessing our minds.' Thus should you train yourselves."

2 (2) *The Hook*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, dreadful are gain, honour, and praise, bitter, vile, obstructive to achieving the unsurpassed security from bondage. Suppose a fisherman would cast a baited hook into a deep lake, and a fish on the lookout for food would swallow it. That fish, having swallowed the fisherman's hook, would meet with calamity and disaster, and the fisherman could do with it as he wishes.

"'Fisherman,' bhikkhus: this is a designation for Māra the Evil One. 'Baited hook': this is a designation for gain, honour, and

praise. Any bhikkhu who relishes and enjoys the arisen gain, honour, and praise is called a bhikkhu who has swallowed the baited hook, who has met with calamity and disaster, and the Evil One can do with him as he wishes. So dreadful, bhikkhus, are gain, honour, and praise, so bitter, vile, obstructive to achieving the unsurpassed security from bondage. Therefore, bhikkhus, you should train yourselves thus: 'We will abandon the arisen gain, honour, and praise, and we will not let the arisen gain, honour, and praise persist obsessing our minds.' Thus should you train yourselves."

3 (3) *The Turtle*

At Sāvatti. [227] "Bhikkhus, dreadful are gain, honour, and praise.... Once in the past there was a large family of turtles that had been living for a long time in a certain lake.<sup>317</sup> Then one turtle said to another: 'Dear turtle, do not go to such and such a region.' But that turtle went to that region, and a hunter struck him with a corded harpoon.<sup>318</sup> Then that turtle approached the first one. When the first turtle saw him coming in the distance, he said to him: 'I hope, dear turtle, that you didn't go to that region.' – 'I did go to that region, dear.' – 'I hope you haven't been hit or struck, dear.' – 'I haven't been hit or struck; but there is this cord constantly following behind me.' – 'Indeed you've been hit, dear turtle, indeed you've been struck! Your father and grandfather also met with calamity and disaster on account of such a cord. Go now, dear turtle, you are no longer one of us.'

"'Hunter,' bhikkhus: this is a designation for Māra the Evil One. 'Corded harpoon': this is a designation for gain, honour, and praise. 'Cord': this is a designation for delight and lust. Any bhikkhu who relishes and enjoys the arisen gain, honour, and praise is called a bhikkhu who has been struck with a corded harpoon,<sup>319</sup> who has met with calamity and disaster, and the Evil One can do with him as he wishes. So dreadful, bhikkhus, are gain, honour, and praise.... [228] Thus should you train yourselves."

4 (4) *The Long-Haired Goat*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, dreadful are gain, honour, and praise.... Suppose a long-haired she-goat would enter a briar patch. She

would get caught here and there, be held fast here and there, be bound here and there, and here and there she would meet with calamity and disaster. So too, bhikkhus, a bhikkhu here whose mind is overcome and obsessed by gain, honour, and praise dresses in the morning and, taking bowl and robe, enters a village or town for alms. He gets caught here and there, is held fast here and there, is bound here and there, and here and there he meets with calamity and disaster. So dreadful, bhikkhus, are gain, honour, and praise.... Thus should you train yourselves."

#### 5 (5) *The Dung Beetle*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, dreadful are gain, honour, and praise.... Suppose there was a beetle, a dung-eater, stuffed with dung, full of dung, and in front of her was a large dunghill. Because of this she would despise the other beetles, thinking: 'I am a dung-eater, stuffed with dung, full of dung, and in front of me there is a large dunghill.' [229] So too, bhikkhus, a bhikkhu here whose mind is overcome and obsessed by gain, honour, and praise dresses in the morning and, taking bowl and robe, enters a village or town for alms. There he would eat as much as he wants, he would be invited for the next day's meal, and his almsfood would be plentiful. When he goes back to the monastery, he boasts before a group of bhikkhus: 'I have eaten as much as I want, I have been invited for tomorrow's meal, and my almsfood is plentiful. I am one who gains robes, almsfood, lodgings, and medicinal requisites, but these other bhikkhus have little merit and influence, and they do not gain robes, almsfood, lodgings, and medicinal requisites.' Thus, because his mind is overcome and obsessed by gain, honour, and praise, he despises the other well-behaved bhikkhus. That will lead to the harm and suffering of this senseless person for a long time. So dreadful, bhikkhus, are gain, honour, and praise.... Thus should you train yourselves."

#### 6 (6) *The Thunderbolt*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, dreadful are gain, honour, and praise.... Whom should a thunderbolt strike, bhikkhus? A trainee upon whom come gain, honour, and praise while he has not yet reached his mind's ideal.<sup>320</sup>

"'Thunderbolt,' bhikkhus: this is a designation for gain, honour, and praise. So dreadful, bhikkhus, are gain, honour, and praise.... Thus should you train yourselves."

#### 7 (7) *The Poisoned Dart*

At Sāvattī. [230] "Bhikkhus, dreadful are gain, honour, and praise.... Whom should one pierce with a dart smeared in poison, bhikkhus? A trainee upon whom come gain, honour, and praise while he has not yet reached his mind's ideal.<sup>321</sup>

"'Dart,' bhikkhus: this is a designation for gain, honour, and praise. So dreadful, bhikkhus, are gain, honour, and praise.... Thus should you train yourselves."

#### 8 (8) *The Jackal*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, dreadful are gain, honour, and praise.... Did you hear an old jackal howling when the night was fading?"

"Yes, venerable sir."

"That old jackal is afflicted with a disease called mange.<sup>322</sup> He cannot feel at ease whether he goes into a cave, or to the foot of a tree, or into the open air. Wherever he goes, wherever he stands, wherever he sits, wherever he lies down, there he meets with calamity and disaster. So too, bhikkhus, a bhikkhu here whose mind is overcome and obsessed with gain, honour, and praise does not feel at ease whether he goes into an empty hut, or to the foot of a tree, or into the open air. Wherever he goes, wherever he stands, wherever he sits, wherever he lies down, there he meets with calamity and disaster. [231] So dreadful, bhikkhus, are gain, honour, and praise.... Thus should you train yourselves."

#### 9 (9) *The Gale Winds*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, dreadful are gain, honour, and praise.... Bhikkhus, high in the sky winds called gales are blowing.<sup>323</sup> If a bird goes up there, the gale winds fling it about, and as it is flung about by the gale winds, its feet go one way, its wings another way, its head still another way, and its body still another way. So too, bhikkhus, a bhikkhu here whose mind is overcome and obsessed by gain, honour, and praise dresses in the morning and,

taking bowl and robe, enters a village or town for alms with body, speech, and mind unguarded, without setting up mindfulness, unrestrained in his sense faculties. He sees women there lightly clad or lightly attired and lust invades his mind. With his mind invaded by lust he gives up the training and returns to the lower life. Some take his robe, others his bowl, others his sitting cloth, and still others his needle case, as with the bird flung by the gale winds. So dreadful, bhikkhus, are gain, honour, and praise.... Thus should you train yourselves."

10 (10) *With Verses*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, dreadful are gain, honour, and praise.... Bhikkhus, I see some person here [232] whose mind is overcome and obsessed by honour, with the breakup of the body, after death, reborn in a state of misery, in a bad destination, in the nether world, in hell. Then I see some person here whose mind is overcome and obsessed by lack of honour ... reborn in a state of misery.... Then I see some person here whose mind is overcome and obsessed by both honour and lack of honour, with the breakup of the body, after death, reborn in a state of misery, in a bad destination, in the nether world, in hell. So dreadful, bhikkhus, are gain, honour, and praise.... Thus should you train yourselves."

This is what the Blessed One said. Having said this, the Fortunate One, the Teacher, further said this:

"Whether he is showered with honour,  
Shown dishonour, or offered both,  
His concentration does not vacillate  
As he dwells in the measureless state.<sup>324</sup>

When he meditates with perseverance,  
An insight-seer of subtle view  
Delighting in the destruction of clinging,  
They call him truly a superior man."<sup>325</sup>

[233]

II. THE SECOND SUBCHAPTER  
(The Bowl)

11 (1) *Golden Bowl*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, dreadful are gain, honour, and praise.... Bhikkhus, I have known of a certain person here whose mind I have encompassed with my own mind: 'This venerable one would not tell a deliberate lie even for the sake of a golden bowl filled with powdered silver.' Yet some time later I see him, his mind overcome and obsessed by gain, honour, and praise, telling a deliberate lie. So dreadful, bhikkhus, are gain, honour, and praise.... Thus should you train yourselves."

12 (2) *Silver Bowl*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, dreadful are gain, honour, and praise.... Bhikkhus, I have known of a certain person here whose mind I have encompassed with my own mind: 'This venerable one would not tell a deliberate lie even for the sake of a silver bowl filled with powdered gold.' Yet some time later I see him, his mind overcome and obsessed by gain, honour, and praise, telling a deliberate lie. So dreadful, bhikkhus, are gain, honour, and praise.... Thus should you train yourselves."

13 (3)–20 (10) *Suvaṇṇanikkha, Etc.*

At Sāvatti. [234] "Bhikkhus, dreadful are gain, honour, and praise.... Bhikkhus, I have known of a certain person here whose mind I have encompassed with my own mind: 'This venerable one would not tell a deliberate lie even for the sake of a *suvaṇṇanikkha* ... even for the sake of a hundred *suvaṇṇanikkhas* ... even for the sake of a *siṅginikkha* ... for a hundred *siṅginikkhas*<sup>326</sup> ... for the earth filled with gold ... for any material reward ... for the sake of his life ... for the most beautiful girl of the land.<sup>327</sup> Yet some time later I see him, his mind overcome and obsessed by gain, honour, and praise, telling a deliberate lie. So dreadful, bhikkhus, are gain, honour, and praise.... Thus should you train yourselves."

III. THE THIRD SUBCHAPTER  
(A Woman)

21 (1) *A Woman*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, dreadful are gain, honour, and praise.... [235] Bhikkhus, even though a woman, when one is alone with her, may not persist obsessing one's mind, still gain, honour, and praise might persist obsessing one's mind. So dreadful, bhikkhus, are gain, honour, and praise.... Thus should you train yourselves."

22 (2) *The Most Beautiful Girl of the Land*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, dreadful are gain, honour, and praise.... Bhikkhus, even though the most beautiful girl of the land, when one is alone with her, may not persist obsessing one's mind, still gain, honour, and praise might persist obsessing one's mind. So dreadful, bhikkhus, are gain, honour, and praise.... Thus should you train yourselves."

23 (3) *Only Son*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, dreadful are gain, honour, and praise.... A faithful female lay follower, rightly imploring her only son, dear and beloved, might implore him thus: 'Dear, you should become like Citta the householder and Hatthaka of Ālavaka'—for this is the standard and criterion for my male disciples who are lay followers, that is, Citta the householder and Hatthaka of Ālavaka.<sup>328</sup> 'But if, dear, you go forth from the household life into homelessness, you should become like Sāriputta and Moggallāna'—for this is the standard and criterion for my male disciples who are bhikkhus, that is, Sāriputta and Moggallāna. 'While, dear, you are a trainee, one who has not yet reached his mind's ideal, may gain, honour, and praise not come upon you!'

"Bhikkhus, if [236] gain, honour, and praise come upon a bhikkhu while he is a trainee, one who has not yet reached his mind's ideal, this is an obstacle for him. So dreadful, bhikkhus, are gain, honour, and praise.... Thus should you train yourselves."

24 (4) *Only Daughter*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, dreadful are gain, honour, and praise.... A faithful female lay follower, rightly imploring her only daughter, dear and beloved, might implore her thus: 'Dear, you should become like Khujjattarā the lay follower and Veḷukaṇḍakiyā, Nanda's mother'—for this is the standard and criterion for my female disciples who are lay followers, that is, Khujjattarā the lay follower and Veḷukaṇḍakiyā, Nanda's mother.<sup>329</sup> 'But if, dear, you go forth from the household life into homelessness, you should become like the bhikkhunis Khemā and Uppalavaṇṇā'—for this is the standard and criterion for my female disciples who are bhikkhunis, that is, Khemā and Uppalavaṇṇā. 'While, dear, you are a trainee, one who has not yet reached her mind's ideal, may gain, honour, and praise not come upon you!'

"Bhikkhus, if gain, honour, and praise come upon a bhikkhuni while she is still a trainee, one who has not yet reached her mind's ideal, this is an obstacle for her. So dreadful, bhikkhus, are gain, honour, and praise.... Thus should you train yourselves."

25 (5) *Ascetics and Brahmins (1)*

At Sāvatti. [237] "Bhikkhus, those ascetics or brahmins who do not understand as they really are the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of gain, honour, and praise:<sup>330</sup> these I do not consider to be ascetics among ascetics or brahmins among brahmins, and these venerable ones do not, by realizing it for themselves with direct knowledge, in this very life enter and dwell in the goal of asceticism or the goal of brahminhood.

"But, bhikkhus, those ascetics and brahmins who understand as they really are the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of gain, honour, and praise: these I consider to be ascetics among ascetics and brahmins among brahmins, and these venerable ones, by realizing it for themselves with direct knowledge, in this very life enter and dwell in the goal of asceticism and the goal of brahminhood."

26 (6) *Ascetics and Brahmins (2)*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, those ascetics or brahmins who do not

understand as they really are the origin and the passing away, the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of gain, honour, and praise: these I do not consider to be ascetics among ascetics....

"But, bhikkhus, those ascetics and brahmins who understand these things: these I consider to be ascetics among ascetics and brahmins among brahmins, and these venerable ones, by realizing it for themselves with direct knowledge, in this very life enter and dwell in the goal of asceticism and the goal of brahminhood."

#### 27 (7) *Ascetics and Brahmins (3)*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, those ascetics or brahmins who do not understand gain, honour, and praise, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation: these I do not consider to be ascetics among ascetics....<sup>331</sup>

"But, bhikkhus, those ascetics and brahmins who understand these things: these I consider to be ascetics among ascetics and brahmins among brahmins, and these venerable ones, by realizing it for themselves with direct knowledge, in this very life enter and dwell in the goal of asceticism and the goal of brahminhood."

#### 28 (8) *Skin*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, dreadful are gain, honour, and praise.... [238] Gain, honour, and praise cut through the outer skin, then through the inner skin, then through the flesh, then through the sinews, then through the bone. Having cut through the bone, they reach right to the marrow. So dreadful, bhikkhus, are gain, honour, and praise.... Thus should you train yourselves."

#### 29 (9) *The Rope*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, dreadful are gain, honour, and praise.... Gain, honour, and praise cut through the outer skin, then through the inner skin, then through the flesh, then through the sinews, then through the bone. Having cut through the bone, they reach right to the marrow. Suppose, bhikkhus, a strong man would wrap one's leg with a taut horsehair rope and pull it tight. It would cut through the outer skin, then through the inner skin, then through the flesh, then through the sinews, then through the

bone. Having cut through the bone, it would reach right to the marrow. So too, bhikkhus, gain, honour, and praise cut through the outer skin ... they reach right to the marrow. So dreadful, bhikkhus, are gain, honour, and praise.... Thus should you train yourselves."

#### 30 (10) *The Bhikkhu*

At Sāvattī. [239] "Bhikkhus, gain, honour, and praise, I say, are an obstacle even for a bhikkhu who is an arahant, one with taints destroyed."

When this was said, the Venerable Ānanda asked the Blessed One: "Why, venerable sir, are gain, honour, and praise an obstacle even for a bhikkhu with taints destroyed?"

"I do not say, Ānanda, that gain, honour, and praise are an obstacle to his unshakable liberation of mind. But I say they are an obstacle to [his attainment of] those pleasant dwellings in this very life which are achieved by one who dwells diligent, ardent, and resolute.<sup>332</sup> So dreadful, Ānanda, are gain, honour, and praise, so bitter, vile, obstructive to achieving the unsurpassed security from bondage. Therefore, Ānanda, you should train yourselves thus: 'We will abandon the arisen gain, honour, and praise, and we will not let the arisen gain, honour, and praise persist obsessing our minds.' Thus should you train yourselves."

### IV. THE FOURTH SUBCHAPTER (Schism in the Saṅgha)

#### 31 (1) *Schism*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, dreadful are gain, honour, and praise.... [240] Because his mind was overcome and obsessed by gain, honour, and praise, Devadatta provoked a schism in the Saṅgha. So dreadful, bhikkhus, are gain, honour, and praise.... Thus should you train yourselves."

#### 32 (2) *Wholesome Root*

... "Because his mind was overcome and obsessed by gain, honour, and praise, Devadatta's wholesome root was cut off...."<sup>333</sup>

33 (3) *Wholesome Nature*

... "Because his mind was overcome and obsessed by gain, honour, and praise, Devadatta's wholesome nature was cut off...."

34 (4) *Bright Nature*

... "Because his mind was overcome and obsessed by gain, honour, and praise, Devadatta's bright nature was cut off...."

35 (5) *Not Long After He Left*

[241] On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling in Rājagaha on Mount Vulture Peak not long after Devadatta had left. There, with reference to Devadatta, the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus thus:<sup>334</sup>

"Bhikkhus, Devadatta's gain, honour, and praise arose to his own downfall and destruction. Just as a plantain tree, a bamboo, or a reed yields fruit to its own downfall and destruction, so Devadatta's gain, honour, and praise arose to his own downfall and destruction. Just as a mule becomes pregnant to its own downfall and destruction, so Devadatta's gain, honour, and praise arose to his own downfall and destruction. So dreadful, bhikkhus, are gain, honour, and praise.... Thus should you train yourselves."

This is what the Blessed One said. Having said this, the Fortunate One, the Teacher, further said this:

"As its own fruit brings destruction  
To the plantain, bamboo, and reed,  
As its embryo destroys the mule,  
So do honours destroy the scoundrel." [242]

36 (6) *Five Hundred Carts*

While dwelling at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary. Now on that occasion Prince Ajātasattu was going to attend upon Devadatta morning and evening with five hundred carts, and an offering of food was conveyed to him in five hundred pots. Then a number of bhikkhus approached the Blessed

One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and reported this matter to the Blessed One. [The Blessed One said:]

"Bhikkhus, do not be envious of Devadatta's gain, honour, and praise. As long as Prince Ajātasattu goes to attend upon Devadatta morning and evening with five hundred carts, and an offering of food is conveyed to him in five hundred pots, only decline can be expected of Devadatta in regard to wholesome states, not growth.

"Just as a wild dog becomes even wilder when they sprinkle bile over its nose,<sup>335</sup> so too, bhikkhus, so long as Prince Ajātasattu goes to attend upon Devadatta ... only decline can be expected of Devadatta in regard to wholesome states, not growth. So dreadful, bhikkhus, are gain, honour, and praise.... Thus should you train yourselves."

37 (7)–43 (13) *Mother Sutta, Etc.*

At Sāvathī. "Bhikkhus, dreadful are gain, honour, and praise, bitter, vile, obstructive to achieving the unsurpassed security from bondage. [243] Bhikkhus, I have known of a certain person here, whose mind I have encompassed with my own mind: 'This venerable one would not tell a deliberate lie even for the sake of his mother ... even for the sake of his father ... even for the sake of his brother ... his sister ... his son ... his daughter ... his wife.'<sup>336</sup> Yet some time later I see him, his mind overcome and obsessed by gain, honour, and praise, telling a deliberate lie. So dreadful, bhikkhus, are gain, honour, and praise, so bitter, vile, obstructive to achieving the unsurpassed security from bondage. Therefore, bhikkhus, you should train yourselves thus: [244] 'We will abandon the arisen gain, honour, and praise, and we will not let the arisen gain, honour, and praise persist obsessing our minds.' Thus should you train yourselves."

## Chapter VII

18 *Rāhulasamyutta*

## Connected Discourses with Rāhula

## I. THE FIRST SUBCHAPTER

1 (1) *The Eye, Etc.*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvatti in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. Then the Venerable Rāhula approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and said to him:<sup>337</sup>

"Venerable sir, it would be good if the Blessed One would teach me the Dhamma in brief, so that, having heard the Dhamma from the Blessed One, I might dwell alone, withdrawn, diligent, ardent, and resolute."

"What do you think, Rāhula, is the eye permanent or impermanent?" – "Impermanent, venerable sir." – "Is what is impermanent suffering or happiness?" – "Suffering, venerable sir." – [245] "Is what is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change fit to be regarded thus: 'This is mine, this I am, this is my self?'" – "No, venerable sir."

"Is the ear ... the nose ... the tongue ... the body ... the mind permanent or impermanent?" – "Impermanent, venerable sir." – "Is what is impermanent suffering or happiness?" – "Suffering, venerable sir." – "Is what is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change fit to be regarded thus: 'This is mine, this I am, this is my self?'" – "No, venerable sir."

"Seeing thus, Rāhula, the instructed noble disciple experiences revulsion towards the eye, revulsion towards the ear, revulsion towards the nose, revulsion towards the tongue, revulsion towards the body, revulsion towards the mind. Experiencing revulsion, he becomes dispassionate. Through dispassion [his

mind] is liberated.<sup>338</sup> When it is liberated there comes the knowledge: 'It's liberated.' He understands: 'Destroyed is birth, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more for this state of being.'"

2 (2) *Forms, Etc.*

... "What do you think, Rāhula, are forms ... [246] ... sounds ... odours ... tastes ... tactile objects ... mental phenomena permanent or impermanent?" – "Impermanent, venerable sir." ...

"Seeing thus, Rāhula, the instructed noble disciple experiences revulsion towards forms ... revulsion towards mental phenomena. Experiencing revulsion, he becomes dispassionate.... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

3 (3) *Consciousness*

... "What do you think, Rāhula, is eye-consciousness ... ear-consciousness ... nose-consciousness ... tongue-consciousness ... body-consciousness ... mind-consciousness permanent or impermanent?" – "Impermanent, venerable sir." ...

"Seeing thus, Rāhula, the instructed noble disciple experiences revulsion towards eye-consciousness ... revulsion towards mind-consciousness. Experiencing revulsion, he becomes dispassionate.... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

4 (4) *Contact*

... "What do you think, Rāhula, is eye-contact ... ear-contact ... nose-contact ... tongue-contact ... body-contact ... mind-contact permanent or impermanent?" – "Impermanent, venerable sir." ...

"Seeing thus, Rāhula, the instructed noble disciple experiences revulsion towards eye-contact ... revulsion towards mind-contact. Experiencing revulsion, he becomes dispassionate.... [247] He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

5 (5) *Feeling*

... "What do you think, Rāhula, is feeling born of eye-contact ... feeling born of ear-contact ... feeling born of nose-contact ... feeling

born of tongue-contact ... feeling born of body-contact ... feeling born of mind-contact permanent or impermanent?" – "Impermanent, venerable sir." ...

"Seeing thus, Rāhula, the instructed noble disciple experiences revulsion towards feeling born of eye-contact ... revulsion towards feeling born of mind-contact. Experiencing revulsion, he becomes dispassionate.... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

#### 6 (6) Perception

... "What do you think, Rāhula, is perception of forms ... perception of sounds ... perception of odours ... perception of tastes ... perception of tactile objects ... perception of mental phenomena permanent or impermanent?" – "Impermanent, venerable sir." ...

"Seeing thus, Rāhula, the instructed noble disciple experiences revulsion towards perception of forms ... revulsion towards perception of mental phenomena. Experiencing revulsion, he becomes dispassionate.... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

#### 7 (7) Volition

... "What do you think, Rāhula, is volition regarding forms ... volition regarding sounds ... volition regarding odours ... volition regarding tastes ... [248] volition regarding tactile objects ... volition regarding mental phenomena permanent or impermanent?" – "Impermanent, venerable sir." ...

"Seeing thus, Rāhula, the instructed noble disciple experiences revulsion towards volition regarding forms ... revulsion towards volition regarding mental phenomena. Experiencing revulsion, he becomes dispassionate.... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

#### 8 (8) Craving

... "What do you think, Rāhula, is craving for forms ... craving for sounds ... craving for odours ... craving for tastes ... craving for tactile objects ... craving for mental phenomena permanent or impermanent?" – "Impermanent, venerable sir." ...

"Seeing thus, Rāhula, the instructed noble disciple experiences revulsion towards craving for forms ... revulsion towards craving for mental phenomena. Experiencing revulsion, he becomes dispassionate.... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

#### 9 (9) Elements

... "What do you think, Rāhula, is the earth element ... the water element ... the heat element ... the air element ... the space element ... the consciousness element permanent or impermanent?"<sup>339</sup> – "Impermanent, venerable sir." ...

"Seeing thus, Rāhula, the instructed noble disciple experiences revulsion towards the earth element ... [249] ... revulsion towards the water element ... revulsion towards the heat element ... revulsion towards the air element ... revulsion towards the space element ... revulsion towards the consciousness element. Experiencing revulsion, he becomes dispassionate.... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

#### 10 (10) Aggregates

... "What do you think, Rāhula, is form ... feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness permanent or impermanent?" – "Impermanent, venerable sir." ...

"Seeing thus, Rāhula, the instructed noble disciple experiences revulsion towards form ... revulsion towards consciousness. Experiencing revulsion, he becomes dispassionate.... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

### II. THE SECOND SUBCHAPTER

#### 11 (1)–20 (10) The Eye, Etc.

(These ten suttas are identical in all respects with §§1–10, except that in these suttas the Buddha interrogates Rāhula on his own initiative, without first being asked for a teaching.) [250–52]

21 (11) *Underlying Tendency*

At Sāvatti. Then the Venerable Rāhula approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and said to him:

“Venerable sir, how should one know, how should one see so that, in regard to this body with consciousness and in regard to all external signs, I-making, mine-making, and the underlying tendency to conceit no longer occur within?”<sup>340</sup>

“Any kind of form whatsoever, Rāhula, whether past, future, or present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near—one sees all form as it really is with correct wisdom thus: ‘This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self.’<sup>341</sup>

“Any kind of feeling whatsoever ... Any kind of perception whatsoever ... Any kind of volitional formations whatsoever ... Any kind of consciousness whatsoever, whether past, future, or present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near—one sees all consciousness as it really is with correct wisdom thus: ‘This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self.’

“When one knows and sees thus, Rāhula, then in regard to this body with consciousness and in regard to all external signs, I-making, mine-making, and the underlying tendency to conceit no longer occur within.” [253]

22 (12) *Rid Of*

At Sāvatti. Then the Venerable Rāhula approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and said to him:

“Venerable sir, how should one know, how should one see so that, in regard to this body with consciousness and in regard to all external signs, the mind is rid of I-making, mine-making, and conceit, has transcended discrimination, and is peaceful and well liberated?”<sup>342</sup>

“Any kind of form whatsoever, Rāhula, whether past, future, or present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near—having seen all form as it really is with correct wisdom thus: ‘This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self,’ one is liberated by nonclinging.

“Any kind of feeling whatsoever ... Any kind of perception whatsoever ... Any kind of volitional formations whatsoever ... Any kind of consciousness whatsoever, whether past, future, or

present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near—having seen all consciousness as it really is with correct wisdom thus: ‘This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self,’ one is liberated by nonclinging.

“When one knows and sees thus, Rāhula, then in regard to this body with consciousness and in regard to all external signs, the mind is rid of I-making, mine-making, and conceit, has transcended discrimination, and is peaceful and well liberated.”

[254]

## Chapter VIII

19. *Lakkhaṇasaṃyutta*

## Connected Discourses with Lakkhaṇa

## I. THE FIRST SUBCHAPTER

1 (1) *The Skeleton*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha, in the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary. Now on that occasion the Venerable Lakkhaṇa and the Venerable Mahāmogallāna were dwelling on Mount Vulture Peak.<sup>343</sup> Then, in the morning, the Venerable Mahāmogallāna dressed and, taking bowl and robe, he approached the Venerable Lakkhaṇa and said to him: "Come, friend Lakkhaṇa, let us enter Rājagaha for alms."

"All right, friend," the Venerable Lakkhaṇa replied. Then, as he was coming down from Mount Vulture Peak, the Venerable Mahāmogallāna displayed a smile in a certain place.<sup>344</sup> The Venerable Lakkhaṇa said to him: "For what reason, friend Moggallāna, did you display a smile?"

"This is not the time for that question, friend Lakkhaṇa. Ask me that question when we are in the presence of the Blessed One." [255]

Then, when the Venerable Lakkhaṇa and the Venerable Mahāmogallāna had walked for alms in Rājagaha and returned from their alms round, after their meal they approached the Blessed One. Having paid homage to the Blessed One, they sat down to one side, and the Venerable Lakkhaṇa said to the Venerable Mahāmogallāna: "Here, as he was coming down from Mount Vulture Peak, the Venerable Mahāmogallāna displayed a smile in a certain place. For what reason, friend Moggallāna, did you display that smile?"

"Here, friend, as I was coming down from Mount Vulture Peak, I saw a skeleton moving through the air. Vultures, crows, and hawks, following it in hot pursuit, were pecking at it between the ribs, stabbing it, and tearing it apart while it uttered cries of pain.<sup>345</sup> It occurred to me: 'It is wonderful, indeed! It is amazing, indeed! That there could be such a being, that there could be such a spirit, that there could be such a form of individual existence!'"<sup>346</sup>

Then the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Bhikkhus, there are disciples who dwell having become vision, having become knowledge, in that a disciple can know, see, and witness such a sight. In the past, bhikkhus, I too saw that being, but I did not speak about it. For if I had spoken about it, others would not have believed me, and if they had not believed me that would have led to their harm and suffering for a long time.

"That being, bhikkhus, used to be a cattle butcher in this same Rājagaha. Having been tormented in hell for many years, for many hundreds of years, for many thousands of years, for many hundreds of thousands of years as a result of that kamma, [256] as a residual result of that same kamma he is experiencing such a form of individual existence."<sup>347</sup>

*(The remaining suttas of this subchapter follow the same pattern as the first. As in the Pāli text, so in translation here only the phrases that differ are given.)*

2 (2) *The Piece of Meat*

... "Here, friend, as I was coming down from Mount Vulture Peak, I saw a piece of meat moving through the air. Vultures, crows, and hawks, following it in hot pursuit, were stabbing at it and tearing it apart as it uttered cries of pain."...

"That being, bhikkhus, was a cattle butcher in this same Rājagaha...."<sup>348</sup>

3 (3) *The Lump of Meat*

... "I saw a lump of meat...."

"That being was a poultry butcher in this same Rājagaha...."

4 (4) *The Flayed Man*

... "I saw a flayed man...."

"That being was a sheep butcher in this same Rājagaha...."  
[257]

5 (5) *Sword Hairs*

... "I saw a man with body-hairs of swords moving through the air. Those swords kept on rising up and striking his body while he uttered cries of pain...."

"That being was a hog butcher in this same Rājagaha...."

6 (6) *Spear Hairs*

... "I saw a man with body-hairs of spears moving through the air. Those spears kept on rising up and striking his body while he uttered cries of pain...."

"That being was a deer hunter in this same Rājagaha...."

7 (7) *Arrow Hairs*

... "I saw a man with body-hairs of arrows moving through the air. Those arrows kept on rising up and striking his body while he uttered cries of pain...."

"That being was a torturer in this same Rājagaha...."<sup>349</sup>

8 (8) *Needle Hairs (1)*<sup>350</sup>

... "I saw a man with body-hairs of needles moving through the air. Those needles kept on rising up and striking his body while he uttered cries of pain...."

"That being was a horse trainer in this same Rājagaha...."

9 (9) *Needle Hairs (2)*

... "I saw a man with body-hairs of needles moving through the air. [258] Those needles entered his head and came out from his mouth; they entered his mouth and came out from his chest; they entered his chest and came out from his belly; they entered his

belly and came out from his thighs; they entered his thighs and came out from his calves; they entered his calves and came out from his feet, while he uttered cries of pain...."

"That being was a slanderer in this same Rājagaha...."<sup>351</sup>

10 (10) *Pot Testicles*

... "I saw a man whose testicles were like pots moving through the air. When he walked, he had to lift his testicles onto his shoulders, and when he sat down he sat on top of his testicles. Vultures, crows, and hawks, following him in hot pursuit, were stabbing at him and tearing him apart while he uttered cries of pain...."

"That being was a corrupt magistrate in this same Rājagaha...."<sup>352</sup>

[259]

## II. THE SECOND SUBCHAPTER

11 (1) *With Head Submerged*

... "I saw a man with head submerged in a pit of dung...."

"That being was an adulterer in this same Rājagaha...."<sup>353</sup>

12 (2) *The Dung Eater*

... "I saw a man submerged in a pit of dung, eating dung with both hands...."

"That being, bhikkhus, was a hostile brahmin in this same Rājagaha. In the time of the Buddha Kassapa's Dispensation, he invited the Bhikkhu Saṅgha to a meal. Having had rice pots filled with dung, he said to the bhikkhus: 'Sirs, eat as much as you want from this and take the rest away with you.'..."<sup>354</sup>

13 (3) *The Flayed Woman*

... "I saw a flayed woman moving through the air. Vultures, crows, and hawks, following her in hot pursuit, were stabbing at her and tearing her apart while she uttered cries of pain...."

"That woman was an adulteress in this same Rājagaha...."<sup>355</sup>  
[260]

14 (4) *The Ugly Woman*

... "I saw a woman, foul-smelling and ugly, moving through the air. Vultures, crows, and hawks, following her in hot pursuit, were stabbing at her and tearing her apart while she uttered cries of pain...."

"That woman was a fortune-teller in this same Rājagaha...."<sup>356</sup>

15 (5) *The Sweltering Woman*

... "I saw a woman, her body roasting, sweltering, sooty, moving through the air, while she uttered cries of pain...."<sup>357</sup>

"That woman was the chief queen of the king of Kaliṅga. Of a jealous character, she poured a brazier of coals over one of the king's consorts...."

16 (6) *The Headless Trunk*

... "I saw a headless trunk moving through the air; its eyes and mouth were on its chest. Vultures, crows, and hawks, following it in hot pursuit, were stabbing at it and tearing it apart while it uttered cries of pain...."

"That being was an executioner named Hārika in this same Rājagaha...."

17 (7) *The Evil Bhikkhu*

... "I saw a bhikkhu moving through the air. His outer robe, bowl, waistband, [261] and body were burning, blazing, and flaming while he uttered cries of pain...."

"That bhikkhu had been an evil bhikkhu in the Buddha Kassapa's Dispensation...."<sup>358</sup>

18 (8) *The Evil Bhikkhuni*

... "I saw a bhikkhuni moving through the air. Her outer robe, bowl, waistband, and body were burning, blazing, and flaming while she uttered cries of pain...."

"That bhikkhuni had been an evil bhikkhuni in the Buddha Kassapa's Dispensation...."

19 (9)–21 (11) *The Evil Probationary Nun, Etc.*

... "Here, friend, as I was coming down from Mount Vulture Peak, I saw a probationary nun ... a novice monk ... a novice nun moving through the air. Her outer robe, bowl, waistband, and body were burning, blazing, and flaming while she uttered cries of pain. It occurred to me: 'It is wonderful, indeed! It is amazing, indeed! That there could be such a being, that there could be such a spirit, that there could be such a form of individual existence!'"

Then the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Bhikkhus, there are disciples who dwell having become vision, having become knowledge, in that a disciple can know, see, and witness such a sight. [262] In the past, bhikkhus, I too saw that novice nun, but I did not speak about it. For if I had spoken about it, others would not have believed me, and if they had not believed me that would have led to their harm and suffering for a long time.

"That novice nun had been an evil novice nun in the Buddha Kassapa's Dispensation. Having been tormented in hell for many years, for many hundreds of years, for many thousands of years, for many hundreds of thousands of years as a result of that kamma, as a residual result of that same kamma she is experiencing such a form of individual existence."

## Chapter IX

20 *Opammasamyutta*

## Connected Discourses with Similes

1 *The Roof Peak*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvatti in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park.... [263] There the Blessed One said this:

"Bhikkhus, just as all the rafters of a peaked house lead to the roof peak and converge upon the root peak, and all are removed when the roof peak is removed, so too all unwholesome states are rooted in ignorance and converge upon ignorance, and all are uprooted when ignorance is uprooted.<sup>359</sup> Therefore, bhikkhus, you should train yourselves thus: 'We will dwell diligently.' Thus should you train yourselves."

2 *The Fingernail*

At Sāvatti. Then the Blessed One took up a little bit of soil in his fingernail and addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Bhikkhus, what do you think, which is more: the little bit of soil that I have taken up in my fingernail or the great earth?"

"Venerable sir, the great earth is more. The little bit of soil that the Blessed One has taken up in his fingernail is trifling. Compared to the great earth, it is not calculable, does not bear comparison, does not amount even to a fraction."

"So too, bhikkhus, those beings who are reborn among human beings are few. But those beings are more numerous who are reborn elsewhere than among human beings.<sup>360</sup> Therefore, bhikkhus, you should train yourselves thus: 'We will dwell diligently.' Thus should you train yourselves."

3 *Families*

At Sāvatti. [264] "Bhikkhus, just as it is easy for burglars to assail those families that have many women and few men, so too it is easy for nonhuman beings to assail a bhikkhu who has not developed and cultivated the liberation of mind by lovingkindness.<sup>361</sup>

"Just as it is difficult for burglars to assail those families that have few women and many men, so too it is difficult for nonhuman beings to assail a bhikkhu who has developed and cultivated the liberation of mind by lovingkindness.

"Therefore, bhikkhus, you should train yourselves thus: 'We will develop and cultivate the liberation of mind by lovingkindness, make it our vehicle, make it our basis, stabilize it, exercise ourselves in it, and fully perfect it.' Thus should you train yourselves."

4 *Pots of Food*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, if someone were to give away a hundred pots of food<sup>362</sup> as charity in the morning, a hundred pots of food as charity at noon, and a hundred pots of food as charity in the evening, and if someone else were to develop a mind of lovingkindness even for the time it takes to pull a cow's udder, either in the morning, at noon, or in the evening, this would be more fruitful than the former.<sup>363</sup>

"Therefore, bhikkhus, you should train yourselves thus: 'We will develop and cultivate the liberation of mind by lovingkindness, make it our vehicle, make it our basis, stabilize it, exercise ourselves in it, and fully perfect it.' Thus should you train yourselves." [265]

5 *The Spear*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, suppose there was a sharp-pointed spear, and a man would come along thinking: 'I will bend back this sharp-pointed spear with my hand or fist, twist it out of shape, and twirl it around.'<sup>364</sup> What do you think bhikkhus, would it be possible for that man to do so?"

"No, venerable sir. For what reason? Because it is not easy to bend back that sharp-pointed spear with one's hand or fist, to twist it out of shape, or to twirl it around. That man would only experience fatigue and vexation."

“So too, bhikkhus, when a bhikkhu has developed and cultivated the liberation of mind by lovingkindness, made it a vehicle, made it a basis, stabilized it, exercised himself in it, and fully perfected it, if a nonhuman being thinks he can overthrow his mind, that nonhuman being would only experience fatigue and vexation.

“Therefore, bhikkhus, you should train yourselves thus: ‘We will develop and cultivate the liberation of mind by lovingkindness, make it our vehicle, make it our basis, stabilize it, exercise ourselves in it, and fully perfect it.’ Thus should you train yourselves.”

#### 6 *The Archers*

At Sāvatti. “Bhikkhus, suppose there were four firm-bowed archers, [266] trained, dexterous, experienced, standing in each of the four directions.<sup>365</sup> Then a man would come along, thinking: ‘I will catch the arrows shot by these four archers in each of the four directions before they reach the ground and then I will bring them back.’ What do you think, bhikkhus, would this be enough to say: ‘That man is a speedster endowed with supreme speed?’”

“Venerable sir, even if he could catch the arrow shot by one archer before it reached the ground and could bring it back, that would be enough to say: ‘That man is a speedster endowed with supreme speed.’ There is no need to speak about the arrows shot by all four archers!”

“Bhikkhus, as swift as that man is, still swifter are the sun and moon. As swift as that man is, and as swift as are the sun and moon, and as swift as are the deities that run before the sun and moon, the vital formations<sup>366</sup> perish even more swiftly than that. Therefore, bhikkhus, you should train yourselves thus: ‘We will dwell diligently.’ Thus should you train yourselves.”

#### 7 *The Drum Peg*

At Sāvatti. “Bhikkhus, once in the past the Dasārahas had a kettle drum called the Summoner.<sup>367</sup> When the Summoner became cracked, the Dasārahas inserted another peg. [267] Eventually the time came when the Summoner’s original drumhead had disappeared and only a collection of pegs remained.

“So too, bhikkhus, the same thing will happen with the

bhikkhus in the future. When those discourses spoken by the Tathāgata that are deep, deep in meaning, supramundane, dealing with emptiness, are being recited,<sup>368</sup> they will not be eager to listen to them, nor lend an ear to them, nor apply their minds to understand them; and they will not think those teachings should be studied and mastered. But when those discourses that are mere poetry composed by poets, beautiful in words and phrases, created by outsiders, spoken by [their] disciples,<sup>369</sup> are being recited, they will be eager to listen to them, will lend an ear to them, will apply their minds to understand them; and they will think those teachings should be studied and mastered. In this way, bhikkhus, those discourses spoken by the Tathāgata that are deep, deep in meaning, supramundane, dealing with emptiness, will disappear.

“Therefore, bhikkhus, you should train yourselves thus: ‘When those discourses spoken by the Tathāgata that are deep, deep in meaning, supramundane, dealing with emptiness, are being recited, we will be eager to listen to them, will lend an ear to them, will apply our minds to understand them; and we will think those teachings should be studied and mastered.’ Thus should you train yourselves.”

#### 8 *Blocks of Wood*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Vesāli in the Great Wood in the Hall with the Peaked Roof. There the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus thus: “Bhikkhus!”

“Venerable sir!” those bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

“Bhikkhus, now the Licchavis dwell using blocks of wood as cushions; [268] they are diligent and ardent in exercise. King Ajātasattu of Magadha, the Videhan son, does not gain access to them; he does not get a hold on them. But in the future the Licchavis will become delicate, with soft and tender hands and feet; they will sleep until sunrise on soft beds with pillows of cotton wool. Then King Ajātasattu of Magadha will gain access to them; then he will get a hold on them.

“Bhikkhus, now the bhikkhus dwell using blocks of wood as cushions; they are diligent and ardent in striving. Māra the Evil

One does not gain access to them; he does not get a hold on them. But in the future the bhikkhus will become delicate, with soft and tender hands and feet; they will sleep until sunrise on soft beds with pillows of cotton wool. Then Māra the Evil One will gain access to them; he will get a hold on them.

"Therefore, bhikkhus, you should train yourselves thus: 'Using blocks of wood as cushions, we will dwell diligent and ardent in striving.' Thus should you train yourselves."<sup>370</sup>

### 9 The Bull Elephant

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvatti in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. Now on that occasion a certain newly ordained bhikkhu was approaching families excessively. The other bhikkhus told him: "The venerable one should not approach families excessively," but when he was being admonished by them he said: "These elder bhikkhus think they can approach families, so why can't I?"

Then a number of bhikkhus approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, [269] and reported this matter to the Blessed One. [The Blessed One said:]

"Bhikkhus, once in the past there was a great lake in a forest, with bull elephants dwelling in its vicinity.<sup>371</sup> Those elephants would plunge into the lake, pull up lotus stalks with their trunks, and, having washed them thoroughly, would chew them and swallow them free from mud. This increased their beauty and strength, and on that account they did not meet death or deadly suffering.

"Their young offspring, emulating those great bull elephants, would plunge into the lake and pull up lotus stalks with their trunks, but without washing them thoroughly, without chewing them, they would swallow them along with the mud. This did not increase their beauty and strength, and on that account they met death or deadly suffering.

"So too, bhikkhus, here the elder bhikkhus dress in the morning and, taking bowl and robe, enter a village or town for alms. There they speak on the Dhamma, and the laypeople show their confidence to them.<sup>372</sup> They use their gains without being tied to them, uninfatuated with them, not blindly absorbed in them, seeing the danger in them and understanding the escape. This

increases their beauty and strength, and on that account they do not meet death or deadly suffering.

"The newly ordained bhikkhus, emulating the elder bhikkhus, dress in the morning and, taking bowl and robe, enter a village or town for alms. There they speak on the Dhamma, and the laypeople show their confidence to them. [270] They use their gains while being tied to them, infatuated with them, blindly absorbed in them, not seeing the danger in them and not understanding the escape. This does not increase their beauty and strength, and on that account they meet death or deadly suffering."<sup>373</sup>

"Therefore, bhikkhus, you should train yourselves thus: 'We will use our gains without being tied to them, uninfatuated with them, not blindly absorbed in them, seeing the danger in them and understanding the escape.' Thus should you train yourselves."

### 10 The Cat

At Sāvatti. Now on that occasion a certain bhikkhu was socializing with families excessively. The other bhikkhus told him: "The venerable one should not socialize with families excessively," but though he was admonished by them he did not desist.

Then a number of bhikkhus approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and reported this matter to the Blessed One. [The Blessed One said:]

"Bhikkhus, once in the past a cat stood by an alley or a drain or a rubbish bin<sup>374</sup> watching for a little mouse, thinking: 'When this little mouse comes out for food, right there I will grab it and eat it.' Then that mouse came out for food, and the cat grabbed it and swallowed it hastily, without chewing it. Then that little mouse ate the cat's intestines and mesentery, [271] and on that account the cat met with death and deadly suffering.

"So too, bhikkhus, here some bhikkhu dresses in the morning and, taking bowl and robe, enters a village or town for alms with body, speech, and mind unguarded, without setting up mindfulness, unrestrained in his sense faculties. He sees women there lightly clad or lightly attired and lust invades his mind. With his mind invaded by lust he meets death or deadly suffering. For this, bhikkhus, is death in the Noble One's Discipline: that one gives up the training and returns to the lower life. This is deadly

suffering: that one commits a certain defiled offence of a kind that allows for rehabilitation.<sup>375</sup>

"Therefore, bhikkhus, you should train yourselves thus: 'We will enter a village or town for alms with body, speech, and mind guarded, with mindfulness set up, restrained in our sense faculties.' Thus should you train yourselves."

### 11 *The Jackal (1)*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, did you hear an old jackal howling at the flush of dawn?"

"Yes, venerable sir."

"That old jackal is afflicted with a disease called mange. Yet he still goes wherever he wants, stands wherever he wants, sits wherever he wants, [272] lies down wherever he wants, and a cool breeze even blows upon him. It would be good for a certain person here claiming to be a follower of the Sakyan son if he were to experience even such a form of individual existence.<sup>376</sup>

"Therefore, bhikkhus, you should train yourselves thus: 'We will dwell diligently.' Thus should you train yourselves."

### 12 *The Jackal (2)*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, did you hear an old jackal howling at the flush of dawn?"

"Yes, venerable sir."

"There may be some gratitude and thankfulness in that old jackal, but there is no gratitude and thankfulness in a certain person here claiming to be a follower of the Sakyan son.<sup>377</sup>

"Therefore, bhikkhus, you should train yourselves thus: 'We will be grateful and thankful, and we will not overlook even the least favour done to us.' Thus should you train yourselves."

## 21 *Bhikkhusaṃyutta*

### Connected Discourses with Bhikkhus

#### 1 *Kolita*<sup>378</sup>

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvatti in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. There the Venerable Mahāmogallāna addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Friends, bhikkhus!"

"Friend!" those bhikkhus replied. The Venerable Mahāmogallāna said this:

"Here, friends, while I was alone in seclusion, a reflection arose in my mind thus: 'It is said, "noble silence, noble silence." What now is noble silence?'<sup>379</sup>

"Then, friends, it occurred to me: 'Here, with the subsiding of thought and examination, a bhikkhu enters and dwells in the second jhāna, which has internal confidence and unification of mind, is without thought and examination, and has rapture and happiness born of concentration. This is called noble silence.'

"Then, friends, with the subsiding of thought and examination, I entered and dwelt in the second jhāna, which ... has rapture and happiness born of concentration. While I dwelt therein, perception and attention accompanied by thought assailed me.

"Then, friends, the Blessed One came to me by means of spiritual power and said this: 'Moggallāna, Moggallāna, do not be negligent regarding noble silence, brahmin. Steady your mind in noble silence, unify your mind in noble silence, concentrate your mind on noble silence.' Then, friends, on a later occasion, with the subsiding of thought and examination, I entered and dwelt in the second jhāna, which has internal confidence and unification of mind, is without thought and examination, and has rapture and happiness born of concentration.

"If, [274] friends, one speaking rightly could say of anyone: 'He is a disciple who attained to greatness of direct knowledge with the assistance of the Teacher,' it is of me that one could rightly say this."<sup>380</sup>

### 2 *Upatissa*<sup>381</sup>

At Sāvattī. There the Venerable Sāriputta addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Friends, bhikkhus!"

"Friend!" those bhikkhus replied. The Venerable Sāriputta said this:

"Here, friends, when I was alone in seclusion, a reflection arose in my mind thus: 'Is there anything in the world through the change and alteration of which sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair might arise in me?' Then it occurred to me: 'There is nothing in the world through the change and alteration of which sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair might arise in me.'"

When this was said, the Venerable Ānanda said to the Venerable Sāriputta: "Friend Sāriputta, even if the Teacher himself were to undergo change and alteration, wouldn't sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair arise in you?"

"Friend,<sup>382</sup> even if the Teacher himself were to undergo change and alteration, still sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair would not arise in me. However, it would occur to me: 'The Teacher, so influential, so powerful and mighty, has passed away. If the Blessed One had lived for a long time, that would have been for the welfare and happiness of the multitude, out of compassion for the world, for the good, welfare, and happiness of devas and humans.'" [275]

"It must be because I-making, mine-making, and the underlying tendency to conceit have been thoroughly uprooted in the Venerable Sāriputta for a long time<sup>383</sup> that even if the Teacher himself were to undergo change and alteration, still sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair would not arise in him."

### 3 *The Barrel*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvattī in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. Now on that

occasion the Venerable Sāriputta and the Venerable Mahāmoggallāna were dwelling at Rājagaha in a single dwelling in the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary. Then, in the evening, the Venerable Sāriputta emerged from seclusion and approached the Venerable Mahāmoggallāna. He exchanged greetings with the Venerable Mahāmoggallāna and, when they had concluded their greetings and cordial talk, he sat down to one side and said to him:

"Friend Moggallāna, your faculties are serene, your facial complexion is pure and bright. Has the Venerable Mahāmoggallāna spent the day in a peaceful dwelling?"

"I spent the day in a gross dwelling, friend, but I did have some Dhamma talk."<sup>384</sup>

"With whom did the Venerable Mahāmoggallāna have some Dhamma talk?"

"I had some Dhamma talk with the Blessed One, friend."

"But the Blessed One is far away, friend. He is now dwelling at Sāvattī in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. Did the Venerable Mahāmoggallāna approach the Blessed One by means of spiritual power, or did the Blessed One approach the Venerable Mahāmoggallāna by means of spiritual power?" [276]

"I didn't approach the Blessed One by means of spiritual power, friend, nor did the Blessed One approach me by means of spiritual power. Rather, the Blessed One cleared his divine eye and divine ear element to communicate with me, and I cleared my divine eye and divine ear element to communicate with the Blessed One."<sup>385</sup>

"What kind of Dhamma talk did the Venerable Mahāmoggallāna have with the Blessed One?"

"Here, friend, I said to the Blessed One: 'Venerable sir, it is said, "one with energy aroused, one with energy aroused." In what way, venerable sir, does one have energy aroused?' The Blessed One then said to me: 'Here, Moggallāna, a bhikkhu with energy aroused dwells thus: "Willingly, let only my skin, sinews, and bones remain, and let the flesh and blood dry up in my body, but I will not relax my energy so long as I have not attained what can be attained by manly strength, by manly energy, by manly exertion."<sup>386</sup> It is in such a way, Moggallāna, that one has aroused energy.' Such, friend, is the Dhamma talk that I had with the Blessed One."

"Friend, compared to the Venerable Mahāmoggallāna we are

like a few grains of gravel compared to the Himalayas, the king of mountains. For the Venerable Mahāmoggallāna is of such great spiritual power and might that if so he wished he could live on for an aeon."<sup>387</sup>

"Friend, compared to the Venerable Sāriputta we are like a few grains of salt compared to a barrel of salt. [277] For the Venerable Sāriputta has been extolled, lauded, and praised in many ways by the Blessed One:

"As Sāriputta is supreme  
In wisdom, virtue, and peace,  
So a bhikkhu who has gone beyond  
At best can only equal him."

In this manner both these great nāgas rejoiced in what was well stated and well declared by the other.<sup>388</sup>

#### 4 The Newly Ordained Bhikkhu

At Sāvattī. Now on that occasion a certain newly ordained bhikkhu, after returning from the alms round, would enter his dwelling after the meal and pass the time living at ease and keeping silent. He did not render service to the bhikkhus at the time of making robes. Then a number of bhikkhus approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and reported this matter to him. Then the Blessed One addressed a certain bhikkhu thus: "Come, bhikkhu, tell that bhikkhu in my name that the Teacher calls him."

"Yes, venerable sir," that bhikkhu replied, and he went to that bhikkhu and told him: "The Teacher calls you, friend."

"Yes, friend," that bhikkhu replied, and he approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, and sat down to one side. [278] The Blessed One then said to him: "Is it true, bhikkhu, that after returning from the alms round you enter your dwelling after the meal and pass the time living at ease and keeping silent, and you do not render service to the bhikkhus at the time of making robes?"

"I am doing my own duty, venerable sir."

Then the Blessed One, having known with his own mind the reflection in that bhikkhu's mind, addressed the bhikkhus thus:

"Bhikkhus, do not find fault with this bhikkhu. This bhikkhu is one who gains at will, without trouble or difficulty, the four jhānas that constitute the higher mind and provide a pleasant dwelling in this very life. And he is one who, by realizing it for himself with direct knowledge, in this very life enters and dwells in that unsurpassed goal of the holy life for the sake of which clansmen rightly go forth from the household life into homelessness."

This is what the Blessed One said. Having said this, the Fortunate One, the Teacher, further said this:

"Not by means of slack endeavour,  
Not by means of feeble effort,  
Is this Nibbāna to be achieved,  
Release from all suffering.

"This young bhikkhu [by my side]  
Is a supreme man indeed:  
He carries about his final body,  
Having conquered Māra and his mount."<sup>389</sup>

#### 5 *Sujāta*

At Sāvattī. Then the Venerable Sujāta approached the Blessed One. The Blessed One saw him coming in the distance and addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Bhikkhus, this clansman is beautiful in both respects. [279] He is handsome, good-looking, pleasing to behold, possessing supreme beauty of complexion. And he is one who, by realizing it for himself with direct knowledge, in this very life enters and dwells in that unsurpassed goal of the holy life for the sake of which clansmen rightly go forth from the household life into homelessness."

This is what the Blessed One said ... [who] further said this:

"This bhikkhu shines with sublime beauty,  
Having a mind utterly straight.  
Detached is he, free from fetters,  
Attained to Nibbāna by nonclinging.  
He carries about his final body,  
Having conquered Māra and his mount."

6 *Lakuṇṭaka Bhaddiya*

At Sāvatti. Then the Venerable Lakuṇṭaka Bhaddiya approached the Blessed One.<sup>390</sup> The Blessed One saw him coming in the distance and addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Bhikkhus, do you see that bhikkhu coming, ugly, unsightly, deformed, despised among the bhikkhus?"

"Yes, venerable sir."

"That bhikkhu is of great spiritual power and might. It is not easy to find an attainment which that bhikkhu has not already attained. And he is one who, by realizing it for himself with direct knowledge, in this very life enters and dwells in that unsurpassed goal of the holy life for the sake of which clansmen rightly go forth from the household life into homelessness."

This is what the Blessed One said ... [who] further said this:

"Geese, herons, and peacocks,  
Elephants, and spotted deer,  
All are frightened of the lion  
Regardless of their bodies' size.

"In the same way among human beings  
The small one endowed with wisdom—  
He is the one that is truly great,  
Not the fool with a well-built body." [280]

7 *Visākha*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Vesāli in the Great Wood in the Hall with the Peaked Roof. Now on that occasion the Venerable Visākha Pañcālīputta was instructing, exhorting, inspiring, and gladdening the bhikkhus in the assembly hall with a Dhamma talk, [spoken] with speech that was polished, clear, articulate, expressing well the meaning, comprehensive, unattached.<sup>391</sup>

Then, in the evening, the Blessed One emerged from seclusion and approached the assembly hall. He sat down in the appointed seat and addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Bhikkhus, who has been instructing, exhorting, inspiring, and gladdening the bhikkhus in the assembly hall with a Dhamma talk, [spoken] with speech that

is polished, clear, articulate, expressing well the meaning, comprehensive, unattached?"

"It was this Venerable Visākha Pañcālīputta, venerable sir."

Then the Blessed One addressed the Venerable Visākha Pañcālīputta thus: "Good, good, Visākha! It is good that you thus instruct the bhikkhus with a Dhamma talk."

This is what the Blessed One said ... [who] further said this:

"When the wise man is in the midst of fools  
They do not know him if he does not speak,<sup>392</sup>  
But they know him when he speaks,  
Pointing out the deathless state.

"He should speak and explain the Dhamma,  
He should raise high the seers' banner.  
Well-spoken words are the seers' banner:  
For the Dhamma is the banner of seers." [281]

8 *Nanda*

At Sāvatti. Then the Venerable Nanda, the Blessed One's maternal cousin, put on well-pressed and well-ironed robes, painted his eyes, took a glazed bowl, and approached the Blessed One.<sup>393</sup> Having paid homage to the Blessed One, he sat down to one side, and the Blessed One said to him:

"Nanda, this is not proper for you, a clansman who has gone forth out of faith from the household life into homelessness, that you wear well-pressed and well-ironed robes, paint your eyes, and carry a glazed bowl. This is proper for you, Nanda, a clansman who has gone forth out of faith from the household life into homelessness, that you be a forest dweller, an almsfood eater, a rag-robes wearer, and that you dwell indifferent to sensual pleasures."

This is what the Blessed One said ... [who] further said this:

"When shall I see Nanda as a forest dweller,  
Wearing robes stitched from rags,  
Subsisting on the scraps of strangers,<sup>394</sup>  
Indifferent towards sensual pleasures?"

Then, some time later, the Venerable Nanda became a forest dweller, an almsfood eater, a rag-robles wearer, and he dwelt indifferent to sensual pleasures.

### 9 Tissa

At Sāvatti. [282] Then the Venerable Tissa, the Blessed One's paternal cousin,<sup>395</sup> approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, and sat down to one side—miserable, sorrowful, with tears streaming down. Then the Blessed One said to him:

"Tissa, why are you sitting there, miserable, sorrowful, with tears streaming down?"

"Because, venerable sir, the bhikkhus have attacked me on all sides with sharp words."<sup>396</sup>

"That, Tissa, is because you admonish others but cannot bear being admonished yourself. Tissa, this is not proper for you, a clansman who has gone forth out of faith from the household life into homelessness, that you admonish others but cannot accept admonition in turn. This is proper for you, Tissa, a clansman who has gone forth out of faith from the household life into homelessness, that you admonish others and accept admonition in turn."

This is what the Blessed One said. Having said this, the Fortunate One, the Teacher, further said this:

"Why are you angry? Don't be angry!  
Nonanger is better for you, Tissa.  
It is to remove anger, conceit, and scorn,  
That the holy life is lived, O Tissa."

### 10 A Bhikkhu Named Elder

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary. Now on that occasion a certain bhikkhu named Elder<sup>397</sup> was a lone dweller and spoke in praise of dwelling alone. He entered the village for alms alone, he returned alone, he sat alone in private, he undertook walking meditation alone.

Then a number of bhikkhus approached the Blessed One, [283] paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and said to him:

"Here, venerable sir, there is a certain bhikkhu named Elder who is a lone dweller and who speaks in praise of dwelling alone."

Then the Blessed One addressed a certain bhikkhu thus: "Come, bhikkhu, tell the bhikkhu Elder in my name that the Teacher calls him."

"Yes, venerable sir," that bhikkhu replied, and he went to the Venerable Elder and told him: "The Teacher calls you, friend Elder."

"Yes, friend," the Venerable Elder replied, and he approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, and sat down to one side. The Blessed One then said to him: "Is it true, Elder, that you are a lone dweller and speak in praise of dwelling alone?"

"Yes, venerable sir."

"But how, Elder, are you a lone dweller and how do you speak in praise of dwelling alone?"

"Here, venerable sir, I enter the village for alms alone, I return alone, I sit alone in private, and I undertake walking meditation alone. It is in such a way that I am a lone dweller and speak in praise of dwelling alone."

"That is a way of dwelling alone, Elder, I do not deny this. But as to how dwelling alone is fulfilled in detail, listen to that and attend closely, I will speak."

"Yes, venerable sir."

"And how, Elder, is dwelling alone fulfilled in detail? Here, Elder, what lies in the past has been abandoned, what lies in the future has been relinquished, and desire and lust for present forms of individual existence has been thoroughly removed.<sup>398</sup> It is in such a way, Elder, that dwelling alone is fulfilled in detail." [284]

This is what the Blessed One said. Having said this, the Fortunate One, the Teacher, further said this:

"The wise one, all-conqueror, all-knower,  
Among all things unsullied, with all cast off,  
Liberated in the destruction of craving:  
I call that person 'one who dwells alone.'<sup>399</sup>

### 11 Mahākappina

At Sāvatti. Then the Venerable Mahākappina approached the Blessed One.<sup>400</sup> The Blessed One saw him coming in the distance

and addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Bhikkhus, do you see that bhikkhu coming, fair-skinned, thin, with a prominent nose?"

"Yes, venerable sir."

"That bhikkhu is of great spiritual power and might. It is not easy to find an attainment which that bhikkhu has not already attained. And he is one who, by realizing it for himself with direct knowledge, in this very life enters and dwells in that unsurpassed goal of the holy life for the sake of which clansmen rightly go forth from the household life into homelessness."

This is what the Blessed One said. Having said this, the Fortunate One, the Teacher, further said this:

"The khattiya is the best among people  
For those whose standard is the clan,  
But one accomplished in knowledge and conduct  
Is best among devas and humans.

"The sun shines by day,  
The moon glows at night,  
The khattiya shines clad in armour,  
The meditative brahmin shines.  
But all the time, day and night,  
The Buddha shines with glory." [285]

### 12 Companions

At Sāvattī. Then two bhikkhus who were companions, pupils of the Venerable Mahākappina, approached the Blessed One. The Blessed One saw them coming in the distance and addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Bhikkhus, do you see those two bhikkhus who are companions coming, pupils of Kappina?"

"Yes, venerable sir."

"Those bhikkhus are of great spiritual power and might. It is not easy to find an attainment that those bhikkhus have not already attained. And they are ones who, by realizing it for themselves with direct knowledge, in this very life enter and dwell in that unsurpassed goal of the holy life for the sake of which clansmen rightly go forth from the household life into homelessness."

This is what the Blessed One said. Having said this, the Fortunate One, the Teacher, further said this:

"These [two] companion bhikkhus  
Have been united for a very long time.<sup>401</sup>  
The true Dhamma has united them  
In the Dhamma proclaimed by the Buddha.

"They have been disciplined well by Kappina  
In the Dhamma proclaimed by the Noble One.  
They carry about their final bodies,  
Having conquered Māra and his mount."

The Book of Causation is finished.

## Notes

### 12. *Nidānaṣaṃyutta*

- 1 Spk: When it is said, "With ignorance as condition, volitional formations," the meaning should be understood by this method: "It is ignorance and it is a condition, hence 'ignorance-as-condition' (*avijjā ca sā paccayo cā ti avijjāpaccayo*). Through that ignorance-as-condition volitional formations come to be (*tasmā avijjāpaccayā saṅkhārā sambhavanti*)."

This explanation suggests that the verb *sambhavanti*, which in the text occurs only at the end of the whole formula, should be connected to each proposition, thus establishing that each conditioned state arises through its condition. The twelve terms of the formula are treated analytically in the next sutta.

At the end of the paragraph, Ee reads *ayaṃ vuccati bhikkhave samuppādo*, but this must be an editorial error as both Be and Se have *paṭicca-samuppādo*.

- 2 Se adds, at the end of the definition of death, *jīvitindriyassa upacchedo*, which (according to a note in Be) is also found in the Thai and Cambodian eds. The fact that Spk does not gloss this expression may be taken as evidence that it was not in the text available to the commentator. The expression is found, however, in the definition of death at Vibh 99,23-24 and is commented upon at Vibh-a 101,8-12.

Spk: By the terms from "passing away" through "completion of time" he expounds death in worldly conventional terminology (*lokasammutiyā*); by the expressions "breakup of the aggregates" and "the laying down of the carcass" he expounds death in the ultimate sense (*paramattha*). For in the ultimate sense it is only the aggregates that break up; there is no "being" that dies. When the aggregates are breaking up one says, "A being is dying," and

- when they have broken up it is said, "The being has died."
- 3 Spk: From "birth" through "production" the teaching is conventional (*vohāradesanā*); the last two terms are an ultimate teaching (*paramatthadesanā*). For in the ultimate sense it is only aggregates that become manifest, not a being.
- 4 On the meaning of *bhava*, see the General Introduction, pp. 52–53. Spk: In the exposition of existence, *sense-sphere existence* is both kamma-existence (*kammabhava*) and rebirth-existence (*upapattibhava*). Of these, *kamma-existence* is just kamma that leads to sense-sphere existence; for the kamma, being the cause for rebirth-existence in that realm, is spoken of as "existence" by assigning the name of the result to the cause. *Rebirth-existence* is the set of five kammically acquired aggregates produced by that kamma; for this is called "existence" in the sense that "it comes to be there." The same method of explanation applies to form-sphere and formless-sphere existence (except that in formless-sphere rebirth-existence only the four mental aggregates exist).
- It should be noted that in interpreting the expression *upādānapaccayā bhavo*, the commentaries take *bhava* as either *kammabhava* or *upapattibhava*, since both volitional activity and rebirth are conditioned by clinging; but in the expression *bhavapaccayā jāti*, they confine *bhava* to *kammabhava*, since *upapattibhava* includes *jāti* and thus cannot be a condition for it. See *Vism* 572–73 (Ppn 17:258–60) and *Vism* 575 (Ppn 17:270).
- 5 Spk defines clinging as tight grasping (*upādānan ti dalhag-gahaṇaṃ vuccati*). Definitions of the four kinds of clinging are at *Dhs* §§1214–17. In brief, *clinging to sensual pleasures* (*kāmapādāna*) is identical with sensual desire, sensual lust, sensual delight, sensual craving, etc. *Clinging to views* (*ditthupādāna*) is the adoption of any wrong view except those included in the third and fourth types of clinging; *Dhs* §1215 mentions as an example the nihilist view (see 24:5). The expression *silabbatupādāna* is often translated "clinging to rites and rituals," but neither the canon nor commentaries supports this. I render *sīla* as rules and *vata* as vows, though the intention is actual modes of behaviour prescribed by rules and vows. The laconic definition at

- Dhs* §1222 reads: "Clinging to rules and vows is the view of ascetics and brahmins outside of here (i.e., outside the Buddhist fold) that purification is achieved by rules, by vows, by rules and vows" (condensed). The reference is evidently to the various types of austerities that the Buddha's contemporaries adopted in the belief that they lead to heaven or to ultimate purification. An example is the "dog rule, dog vow" (*kukkurasīla, kukkuravata*) at *MN* I 387,18–20; see too the common phrase, *iminā 'haṃ sīlena vā vatena vā tapena vā brahmacariyena vā devo vā bhavissāmi devaññataro vā* (e.g., at *MN* I 102,10–11). *Clinging to a doctrine of self* (*attavādupādāna*) is defined by way of the twenty types of identity view (*sakkāyadiṭṭhi*), on which see 22:7, etc.
- 6 On the translation of *nāmarūpa*, see the General Introduction, pp. 47–49. *Vism* 558,23–28 (Ppn 17:187) explains that *nāma* denotes the three aggregates—of feeling, perception, and volitional formations—which are called thus because of their "bending" (*namana*) on to an object (in the act of cognizing it). Volition, contact, and attention belong to the aggregate of volitional formations and, according to Spk, have been selected to represent that aggregate here because they are operative even in the weakest classes of consciousness.
- 7 On the translation of *saṅkhārā*, see the General Introduction, pp. 44–47. Spk: Volitional formations have the characteristic of forming (*abhisāṅkharāṇa*). The *bodily volitional formation* is a volitional formation that occurs through the body; the term is a designation for the twenty kinds of bodily volition (*kāyasañcetanā*)—eight sense-sphere wholesome and twelve unwholesome—that motivate activity in the body door (see *CMA* 1:4–7, 13). The *verbal volitional formation* is a volitional formation that occurs through speech; the term is a designation for the twenty kinds of verbal volition (*vacisañcetanā*) that motivate verbal utterances (i.e., the same twenty kinds as mentioned just above, but expressed through speech rather than bodily action). The *mental volitional formation* is a volitional formation that occurs through the mind; the term is a designation for the twenty-nine mundane wholesome and unwholesome mental volitions (*manosañcetanā*) that occur

privately in thought without motivating action in the doors of body and speech. (The additional nine volitions are the five of the form-sphere and four of the formless-sphere cittas, states of purely meditative experience; see CMA 1:18, 22.)

This triad of *saṅkhārā* should not be confused with the triad discussed at 41:6 (IV 293,14-28, also at MN I 301,17-29). I have added "volitional" to the present set to distinguish them from the other, though the Pāli terms are identical. The latter triad is always introduced in relation to the cessation of perception and feeling and is never brought into connection with dependent origination.

- 8 This definition shows that ignorance, as the most basic cause of saṃsāric existence, is lack of knowledge of the Four Noble Truths. Although in popular accounts ignorance is often identified with the idea of self, the definitions here show that the view of self is an aspect of clinging, which is itself conditioned by craving, while the latter is in turn conditioned by ignorance (see AN V 116,16-21).
- 9 Spk: By the term "cessation" in all these phrases Nibbāna is being expounded. For all those phenomena cease in dependence on Nibbāna, and therefore the latter is spoken of as their cessation. Thus in this sutta the Blessed One taught the round of existence (*vaṭṭa*) and the ending of the round (*vivaṭṭa*) by twelve phrases and brought the discourse to a climax in arahantship.
- 10 The next seven suttas describe, in identical terms, the enlightenment of the six past Buddhas and the present Buddha Gotama as the discovery of dependent origination and its cessation. The Pāli text is filled out only for Vipassī and Gotama; the others are drastically abridged. I have translated in full only the last sutta, where Gotama speaks of his own attainment of enlightenment.
- 11 From the explanation of *bodhisatta* in Spk it appears that the Pāli commentarial tradition recognizes alternative etymologies of the word, as equivalent either to Skt *bodhisattva* ("an enlightenment being") or to \**bodhisakta* ("one devoted to enlightenment"); see PED, s.v. *satta* (1).

Spk: *Bodhi* is knowledge; a being endowed with *bodhi* is a *bodhisatta*, a knowing one, a wise one, a sagely one. For

from the time he forms his aspiration at the feet of former Buddhas, that being is always wise, never a blind fool. Or else, just as a mature lotus that has risen up above the water and is due to blossom when touched by the sun's rays is called "an awakening lotus," so a being who has obtained the prediction (to future Buddhahood) from the Buddhas and who will inevitably fulfil the perfections (*pāramī*) and attain enlightenment is called an awakening being (*bujjhanasatta*); he is a *bodhisatta*. One who lives yearning for enlightenment—the knowledge of the four paths—is devoted to, attached to, enlightenment (*bodhiyaṃ satta āsatto*); he is a *bodhisatta*.

- 12 The Buddha Vipassī was the sixth Buddha of antiquity, counting back from the Buddha Gotama. A detailed account of his career is found at DN II 11–51. He arose in the world ninety-one aeons ago. Sikhi and Vessabhū arose thirty-one aeons ago; Kakusandha, Koṇāgamana, Kassapa, and Gotama all arose in this present "excellent aeon" (*bhaddakappa*). See DN II 2,15–28.
- 13 *Yoniso manasikārā ahu paññāya abhisamayo*. The commentaries consistently gloss *yoniso manasikāra* as *upāya-manasikāra*, *pathamanasikāra*, "attention that is the right means, attention on the (right) course."

*There took place (in me) a breakthrough by wisdom.* Spk: There was a breakthrough, a concurrence, a conjunction of the reason for aging-and-death together with wisdom (*paññāya saddhiṃ jarāmarañakāraṇassa abhisamayo samavāyo samāyogo*); the meaning is that it was seen by him, "Aging-and-death has birth as its condition." Or alternatively, the sense can be construed thus: Through careful attention and wisdom there took place a breakthrough (*yoniso manasikāreṇa ca paññāya ca abhisamayo ahu*). The meaning is that the penetration of aging-and-death occurred thus, "When there is birth, aging-and-death comes to be."

The first of these explanations is improbable, and even the second is unsatisfactory in construing careful attention and wisdom as joint causes. In general sutta usage *yoniso manasikāra* is the forerunner of *paññā*, while *paññā* is the efficient cause of *abhisamaya*. As a technical term, *abhisamaya* appears in the Nikāyas in two main contexts: (i) As

signifying the initial breakthrough to the Dhamma, *dhamm-abhisamaya*, it is identical with the obtaining of the vision of the Dhamma (*dhammacakkhupaṭilābha*), and thus with the attainment of stream-entry; see 13:1 (II 134,4-5). (ii) As signifying the complete breaking through of conceit (*sammā mānābhisamaya*) it is equivalent to the attainment of arahantship; see 36:5 (IV 207,14-15) and I, v. 725c. A third suttanta use is to denote the Buddha's discovery of the Dhamma, as here and in the verb form *abhisameti* at 12:20 below. In the commentaries *abhisamaya* is synonymous with *paṭivedha*, penetration, both terms being used interchangeably to characterize the four functions of the supra-mundane path; see Vism 689-91 (Ppn 22:92-97).

- 14 The two statements about the origination of aging-and-death from birth correspond respectively to the two forms of the abstract principle of conditionality. The abstract formula occurs at 12:21, 22, 49, 50, 61, and 62, with a variant at 12:41. See below n. 59. From this it would evidently be a mistake to insist that the formulation in terms of existence (*sati ... hoti*) relates to synchronic conditionality while the formulation in terms of arising (*uppādā ... uppajjati*) relates to diachronic conditionality. Since both apply to every pair of factors, they seem to be alternative ways of expressing the conditioning relationship, either of which subsumes under itself all possible modes of conditionality in their wide variety.
- 15 In the account of his enlightenment at 12:65 (II 104,13 foll.) the Buddha traces the sequence of conditions back only as far as consciousness, which he then shows to arise in dependence on name-and-form. The same difference in treatment occurs in the corresponding passage on cessation (II 105,20 foll.).
- 16 The five Pāli words are *cakkhu*, *nāṇa*, *paññā*, *vijjā*, and *āloka*. While *vijjā* is actually derived from *vindati*, Spk here glosses it as *paṭivedha*, penetration, as though it derived from *vijjhati*, to pierce.
- 17 *Bhūtānaṃ vā sattānaṃ tṭhiyā sambhavesiṇaṃ vā anuggahāya*. On *sambhavesin* as a future active participle formed from *-esi(n)*, see Geiger, *Pāli Grammar*, §193A, EV I, n. to 527, and CPD, s.v. *-esi(n)* (2). The commentators apparently were

not acquainted with this grammatical form (of which only very few instances exist in Pāli) and hence explain *sambhavesin* as if it was a *bahubbihi* compound made up of the noun *sambhava* and the adjectival termination *-esin*. Thus Spk comments on the above line: "Beings who have already come to be are those who have been born, been produced. Those about to come to be (or, on Spk's interpretation, 'seekers of new existence') are those seeking, searching for, a new existence, birth, production (*sambhavesino ti ye sambhavaṃ jātiṃ nibbattiṃ esanti gavesanti*)."

- 18 Spk: The nutriments are conditions (*paccayā*), for conditions are called nutriments (*āhārā*) because they nourish (or bring forth, *āharanti*) their own effects. Although there are other conditions for beings, these four alone are called nutriments because they serve as *special conditions* for the personal life-continuity (*ajjhattikasantatiyā visesapaccayattā*). For edible food (*kabalīnkāra āhāra*) is a special condition for the physical body of those beings who subsist on edible food. In the mental body, contact is the special condition for feeling, mental volition for consciousness, and consciousness for name-and-form. As to what they bring forth (or nourish): Edible food, as soon as it is placed in the mouth, brings forth the groups of form with nutritive essence as the eighth (*ojaṭṭhamakarūpāni*; an Abhidhamma term for the simplest cluster of material phenomena); the nutriment contact brings forth the three kinds of feeling; the nutriment mental volition brings forth the three kinds of existence; and the nutriment consciousness brings forth name-and-form on the occasion of rebirth.

In SN, nutriment is further discussed at 12:12, 31, 63, and 64. For general remarks on the four nutriments, see too Vism 341,7-18 (Ppn 11:1-3). Nyanaponika Thera, *The Four Nutriments of Life*, offers a collection of relevant suttas with commentaries. *Āhāra* is also used in a broader sense of "special condition," without reference to the four nutriments, at 46:51 and 55:31.

- 19 *These four kinds of nutriment have craving as their source*. Spk: Beginning with the moment of rebirth, these kinds of nutriment comprised in the individual existence (*attabhāva*, the sentient organism) should be understood to originate by

way of prior craving (*purimataṇhā*; the craving of the previous life that generated rebirth). How? At the moment of rebirth, firstly, there exists nutritive essence (*ojā*) produced within the arisen (bodily) form; this is the kammically acquired edible food originating from prior craving. Then the contact and volition associated with the rebirth-consciousness, and that consciousness itself, are respectively the kammically acquired nutriments of contact, mental volition, and consciousness originating from (prior) craving. Thus at rebirth the nutriments have their source in prior craving. And as at rebirth, so those produced subsequently at the moment of the first *bhavaṅgacitta* should be similarly understood.

On the conditioning role of the nutriments, see CMA 8:23. The commentarial explanation of how craving is the cause of the four nutriments seems roundabout. A simpler explanation, more consonant with the spirit of the suttas, might be that it is craving which impels beings into the perpetual struggle to obtain physical and mental nutriment, both in the present life and in future lives.

- 20 Spk: The Blessed One stopped the teaching at this point because he knew that a theorist (*ditṭhigatika*) was sitting in the assembly and he wanted to give him an opportunity to ask his questions.
- 21 Spk explains that the name “Moliya” was given to him in lay life because he wore his hair in a huge topknot (*moḷi*), and the nickname stuck with him after he went forth as a monk. At MN I 122–24 he is admonished by the Buddha for his excessively familiar relations with the bhikkhunis; in 12:32 below it is announced that he has left the Order and returned to lay life.
- 22 Phagguna’s question, “Who consumes...?” is “pregnant” with an implicit view of self. He sees *someone*—a self—standing behind consciousness in the role of a substantial subject. The Buddha must therefore reject as invalid the question itself, which is based on an illegitimate assumption. Spk: “I do not say, ‘One consumes’”: “I do not say someone—a being or a person (*koci satto vā puggalo vā*)—consumes.”
- 23 In the valid question, the Buddha replaces the personal pronoun *ko*, fraught with substantialist connotations, with

the impersonal form *kissa*, genitive singular of the stem *ki-* (see Geiger, *Pāli Grammar*, §111.1). Although all eds. read here *kissa nu kho bhante viññāṇāhāro*, the sense seems to require that we add *paccayo* at the end. Spk glosses: *Bhante ayaṃ viññāṇāhāro katamassa dhammassa paccayo? Paccayo* does in fact occur in the reply.

- 24 Spk: *The nutriment consciousness: rebirth-consciousness (paṭisandhicitta). The production of future renewed existence (āyatim punabbhavābhiniḍḍatti)*: the name-and-form arisen along with that same consciousness.

At AN I 223–24 it is said: “Kamma is the field, consciousness the seed, and craving the moisture, for consciousness ... to become established in a low (middling, superior) realm; thus there is production of future renewed existence (*kammaṃ khettaṃ viññāṇaṃ bijaṃ taṇhā sineho ... hināya (majjhimāya, paṇitāya) dhātuyā viññāṇaṃ paṭiṭṭhitaṃ; evaṃ āyatim punabbhavābhiniḍḍatti hoti*).” This implies that it is the stream of consciousness coming from the preceding existence that functions as the nutriment consciousness by generating, at the moment of conception, the initial rebirth-consciousness, which in turn brings forth (or “nourishes”) the concomitant name-and-form.

- 25 *Tasmim bhūte sati saḷāyatanaṃ*. Spk: When that name-and-form called “the production of renewed existence” is generated, when it exists, the six sense bases come to be. The conjunction *bhūte sati* is unusual and the redundancy can only be avoided if the past participle *bhūte* is here understood to function as a noun denoting the being that has come to be.
- 26 Spk: Why didn’t the theorist ask, “Who comes to be?”? Because he held the belief that it is a being that comes to be, and the Buddha’s answer would directly contradict his belief. Further, after being contradicted so many times, he became convinced, and also the Teacher continued the discourse without pause in order to prevent him from asking any more pointless questions.
- 27 Spk: They do not understand aging-and-death by way of the truth of suffering; nor its origin by way of the truth of the origin, i.e., that aging-and-death arises from birth and craving; nor its cessation by way of the truth of cessation;

nor the way to its cessation by way of the truth of the path. Similarly, in all the following passages, the meaning should be understood by way of the four truths.

Ignorance is not mentioned in the sequence because it is already implied by reference to the origin of volitional formations.

- 28 *Sāmaññatthaṃ vā brahmaññatthaṃ vā*. Spk: Here the noble path is asceticism and brahminhood, and in both cases the goal should be understood as the noble fruit. See 45:35–38.
- 29 *Dvayanissito khvāyaṃ Kaccāna loko yebhuyyena atthitañ c' eva natthitañ ca*. Spk: “For the most part” (*yebhuyyena*) means: for the great multitude, with the exception of the noble individuals (*ariyapuggala*). The notion of existence (*atthitā*) is eternalism (*sassata*); the notion of nonexistence (*natthitā*) is annihilationism (*uccheda*). Spk-pt: The notion of existence is eternalism because it maintains that the entire world (of personal existence) exists forever. The notion of nonexistence is annihilationism because it maintains that the entire world does not exist (forever) but is cut off.

In view of these explanations it would be misleading to translate the two terms, *atthitā* and *natthitā*, simply as “existence” and “nonexistence” and then to maintain (as is sometimes done) that the Buddha rejects all ontological notions as inherently invalid. The Buddha’s utterances at 22:94, for example, show that he did not hesitate to make pronouncements with a clear ontological import when they were called for. In the present passage *atthitā* and *natthitā* are abstract nouns formed from the verbs *atthi* and *natthi*. It is thus the metaphysical assumptions implicit in such abstractions that are at fault, not the ascriptions of existence and nonexistence themselves. I have tried to convey this sense of metaphysical abstraction, conveyed in Pāli by the terminal *-tā*, by rendering the two terms “the notion of existence” and “the notion of nonexistence,” respectively. On the two extremes rejected by the Buddha, see 12:48, and for the Buddha’s teaching on the origin and passing away of the world, 12:44.

Unfortunately, *atthitā* and *bhava* both had to be rendered by “existence,” which obscures the fact that in Pāli they are derived from different roots. While *atthitā* is the notion of

existence in the abstract, *bhava* is concrete individual existence in one or another of the three realms. For the sake of marking the difference, *bhava* might have been rendered by “being” (as was done in MLDB), but this English word, I feel, is too broad (suggestive of “Being,” the absolute object of philosophical speculation) and does not sufficiently convey the sense of concreteness intrinsic to *bhava*.

- 30 Spk: *The origin of the world*: the production of the world of formations. *There is no notion of nonexistence in regard to the world*: there does not occur in him the annihilationist view that might arise in regard to phenomena produced and made manifest in the world of formations, holding “They do not exist.” Spk-pt: The annihilationist view might arise in regard to the world of formations thus: “On account of the annihilation and perishing of beings right where they are, there is no persisting being or phenomenon.” It also includes the wrong view, having those formations as its object, which holds: “There are no beings who are reborn.” That view *does not occur in him*; for one seeing with right understanding the production and origination of the world of formations in dependence on such diverse conditions as kamma, ignorance, craving, etc., that annihilationist view does not occur, since one sees the uninterrupted production of formations.

Spk: *The cessation of the world*: the dissolution (*bhaṅga*) of formations. *There is no notion of existence in regard to the world*: There does not occur in him the eternalist view which might arise in regard to phenomena produced and made manifest in the world of formations, holding “They exist.” Spk-pt: The eternalist view might arise in regard to the world of formations, taking it to exist at all times, owing to the apprehension of identity in the uninterrupted continuum occurring in a cause-effect relationship. But that view *does not occur in him*; because he sees the cessation of the successively arisen phenomena and the arising of successively new phenomena, the eternalist view does not occur.

Spk: Further, “the origin of the world” is direct-order conditionality (*anuloma-paccayākāra*); “the cessation of the world,” reverse-order conditionality (*paṭiloma-paccayākāra*).

[Spk-pt: "Direct-order conditionality" is the conditioning efficiency of the conditions in relation to their own effects; "reverse-order conditionality" is the cessation of the effects through the cessation of their respective causes.] For in seeing the dependency of the world, when one sees the non-termination of the conditionally arisen phenomena owing to the nontermination of their conditions, the annihilationist view, which might otherwise arise, does not occur. And in seeing the cessation of conditions, when one sees the cessation of the conditionally arisen phenomena owing to the cessation of their conditions, the eternalist view, which might otherwise arise, does not occur.

- 31 The reading I prefer is a hybrid of Be and Se: *upayupādān-ābhinivesavinibaddho*. I take *upay-* from Be (Se and Ee: *upāy-*) and *-vinibaddho* from Se (Be and Ee: *-vinibandho*). The rendering at KS 2:13, "grasping after systems and imprisoned by dogmas," echoed by SN-Anth 2:17, is too narrow in emphasis. Spk explains that each of the three nouns—engagement, clinging, and adherence—occurs by way of craving and views (*taṅhā, diṭṭhi*), for it is through these that one engages, clings to, and adheres to the phenomena of the three planes as "I" and "mine."
- 32 *Taṅ cāyaṃ upayupādānaṃ cetaso adhiṭṭhānaṃ abhinivesānusaṃsaṃ na upeti na upādiyati nādhīṭṭhāti "attā me" ti*. I have unravelled the difficult syntax of this sentence with the aid of Spk, which glosses *ayaṃ* as "this noble disciple" (*ayaṃ ariyasāvako*). Spk says that craving and views are also called "mental standpoints" (*adhiṭṭhāna*) because they are the foundation for the (unwholesome) mind, and "adherences and underlying tendencies" (*abhinivesānusaṃsa*) because they adhere to the mind and lie latent within it. Spk connects the verb *adhiṭṭhāti* to the following "*attā me*," and I conform to this interpretation in the translation.
- 33 Spk explains *dukkha* here as "the mere five aggregates subject to clinging" (*pañcupādānakkhandhamattam eva*). Thus what the noble disciple sees, when he reflects upon his personal existence, is not a self or a substantially existent person but a mere assemblage of conditioned phenomena arising and passing away through the conditioning process governed by dependent origination. In this connection see the verses

of the bhikkhuni Vajirā, I, vv. 553–55. Spk: By just this much—the abandonment of the idea of a being (*satta-saññā*)—there is right seeing.

*Aparappaccayā ñāṇaṃ*, "knowledge independent of others," is glossed by Spk as "personal direct knowledge without dependence on another" (*aññassa apattiyāyetvā attapaccakkha-ñāṇaṃ*). This is said because the noble disciple, from the point of stream-entry on, has seen the essential truth of the Dhamma and thus is not dependent on anyone else, not even the Buddha, for his or her insight into the Dhamma. Until arahantship is attained, however, such a disciple might still approach the Buddha (or another enlightened teacher) for practical guidance in meditation.

- 34 *Dhammānudhammapaṭipanno*. Spk: *Lokuttarassa nibbāna-dhammassa anudhammabhūtaṃ paṭipadaṃ paṭipanno*; "one practising the way that is in accordance with the supramundane Nibbāna-dhamma." Spk-pt glosses *nibbāna-dhamma* as "the noble path bringing Nibbāna," and explains "(the way) that is in accordance with" it as meaning "(the way) whose nature is appropriate for the achievement of Nibbāna" (*nibbānādhigamassa anucchavikasabhāvabhūtaṃ*). This statement shows the *sekha*, the trainee. Cp. III, n. 51.
- 35 *Diṭṭhadhammanibbānappatto*. This statement shows the arahant, or *asekha*, who has completed the training.
- 36 Spk: Why does the Blessed One refuse three times? In order to inspire reverence; for if theorists are answered too quickly they do not show reverence, but they do so if they are refused two or three times. Then they wish to listen and develop faith. Also, the Master refused in order to create an opportunity for the ascetic's faculty of knowledge to ripen.
- 37 Of the four alternatives, the first and second, as will be shown, are respectively implicit formulations of eternalism and annihilationism. The third is a syncretic solution, perhaps a form of partial-eternalism (*ekaccasassatavāda*; see DN I 17–21). The fourth is the doctrine of fortuitous origination (*adhiccasamuppānavāda*; see DN I 28–29).
- 38 Spk points out that the change of address, from the familiar *bho Gotama* to the respectful *bhante bhagavā*, indicates that he has acquired reverence for the Teacher.
- 39 Spk glosses *ādito sato* as *ādimhi yeva*, and explains it as

meaning "(if) at the beginning (one thinks)...." It seems to me more likely that this phrase is part of the eternalist view itself and means "of one existing from the beginning," i.e., of a being that has always existed. This interpretation can marshal support from the fact that the phrase is omitted just below in the corresponding restatement of the annihilationist view, which is otherwise constructed according to the same logic and thus, if Spk were correct, should include *ādito sato*. Spk says "it should be brought in," but the fact that the text replaces it by another phrase is strong evidence that it does not belong there; see n. 40.

Spk: If at the beginning (one thinks), "The one who acts is the same as the one who experiences (the result)," in such a case the belief (*laddhi*) afterwards follows, "Suffering is created by oneself." And here, what is meant by suffering is the suffering of the round (*vaṭṭadukkha*). Asserting thus, from the beginning one declares eternalism, one grasps hold of eternalism. Why? Because that view of his amounts to this. Eternalism comes upon one who conceives the agent and the experiencer to be one and the same.

Spk-pt: Prior to the belief that suffering is created by oneself there are the distortions of perception and of mind (*saññācittavipallāsā*) in the notion, "The one who acts is the same as the one who experiences (the result)," and then a wrong adherence to these distortions develops, namely, the belief "Suffering is created by oneself" (a distortion of views, *ditṭhivipallāsa*).

On the three levels of distortion with their four modes, see AN II 52.

- 40 In this passage the phrase *ādito sato* found in the preceding statement of eternalism is replaced by *vedanābhitunnassa sato*, which countermands Spk's proposal that *ādito sato* should be brought in here. Spk interprets the sentence as stating that the annihilationist view is held by one who experiences the feeling associated with the view, but I understand the point to be that the view is held with reference to one "stricken by feeling," perhaps by painful feeling.

Spk: If at the beginning (one thinks), "The one who acts is one, the one who experiences (the result) is another," in

such a case afterwards there comes the belief, "Suffering is created by another," held by one stricken by—that is, pierced by—the feeling associated with the annihilationist view that arises thus: "The agent is annihilated right here, and someone else ('another') experiences (the results) of his deeds." Asserting thus, from the beginning one declares annihilationism, one grasps hold of annihilationism. Why? Because the view one holds amounts to this. Annihilationism comes upon him.

- 41 Spk: The Tathāgata teaches the Dhamma by the middle without veering to either of these extremes—eternalism and annihilationism—having abandoned them without reservation. He teaches while being established in the middle way. What is that Dhamma? By the formula of dependent origination, the effect is shown to occur through the cause and to cease with the cessation of the cause, but no agent or experiencer (*kāraka*, *vedaka*) is described.
- 42 The going forth (*pabbajjā*) is the initial ordination as a novice (*sāmaṇera*); the higher ordination (*upasampadā*) admits the novice to full membership in the Saṅgha as a bhikkhu.
- 43 For details on the ordination of a wanderer formerly belonging to another sect, see Vin I 69–71. Spk: The candidate is actually given the going forth and lives as a novice during the probationary period, after which the bhikkhus give him the higher ordination if they are satisfied with him. The Buddha, however, is entitled to waive the usual procedure when he recognizes that the candidate is sufficiently competent and need not be tested. In Kassapa's case he had the going forth given to him; then, immediately after, Kassapa was brought back to him and he called an assembly of bhikkhus and administered the higher ordination.
- 44 See I, n. 376.
- 45 Spk: In this sutta pleasure and pain as feeling (*vedanāsukhadukkha*) are being discussed; it is also acceptable to say the subject is resultant pleasure and pain (*vipākasukhadukkha*).
- 46 Spk: If at the beginning (one thinks), "The feeling and the one who feels it are the same," there then comes the belief, "Pleasure and pain are created by oneself." For in this case

feeling is created by feeling itself, and asserting thus one admits the existence of this feeling already in the past. One declares eternalism, grasps hold of eternalism.

47 Spk: If at the beginning (one thinks), "The feeling is one, the one who feels it is another," there then comes the belief, "Pleasure and pain are created by another," held by one stricken by the feeling associated with the annihilationist view that arises thus: "The feeling of the agent (*kāraka-vedanā*) in the past has been annihilated, and someone else ('another') experiences (the result) of his deeds." Asserting thus, one declares and grasps the annihilationist view that the agent is annihilated and rebirth is taken by someone else.

48 Spk: *This body has thereby originated (evam ayaṃ kāyo samudā-gato):* This body has been produced thus because he has been hindered by ignorance and fettered by craving. *So there is this body: one's own conscious body. And external name-and-form (bahiddhā ca nāmarūpaṃ):* the conscious body of others externally. The meaning should be explained in terms of the five aggregates and six sense bases of oneself and others.

This interpretation of *bahiddhā nāmarūpa* seems dubious. We may have here, rather, a rare example of the term *nāmarūpa* being employed to represent the entire field of experience available to consciousness, "external name" being the concepts used to designate the objects cognized. See the common expression *imasmiṃ saviññānake kāye bahiddhā ca sabbanimittesu*, "in regard to this conscious body and all external signs," at 18:21, 22; 22:71, 72, etc., and explained below in n. 340. Spk interprets *this dyad (etaṃ dvayaṃ)* as the internal and external sense bases, which it calls "the great dyad" (*mahādvaya*). However, while the sense bases are usually shown to be the condition for contact (e.g., at 12:43, 44) and are also called a dyad (e.g., at 35:92, 93), it seems that here the text intends the term dyad to denote one's own conscious body and "external name-and-form." The six sense bases are introduced only in the next sentence, after contact has already been said to arise from a duality. At DN II 62,12-37 too the Buddha demonstrates that name-and-form can be a direct condition for contact without mention of the six sense bases.

49 *Bhagavantam yeva paṭibhātu etassa bhāsitaṣṣa.* Lit. "Let the meaning of this statement occur to the Blessed One." I translate this Pāli idiom freely in accordance with the sense. See I, n. 227.

50 In this brief sutta we find clearly adumbrated the later exegetical scheme of "the four groups" (*catusaṅkhepa*) and "twenty modes" (*visatākāra*), explained at Paṭis I 51-52; Vism 579-81 (Ppn 17:288-98); and CMA 8:7. See Table 4, p. 519. The past causes are the ignorance and craving that brought both the fool and the wise man into the present existence; the present results—the conscious body, name-and-form, the six sense bases, contact, and feeling; the present causes—the ignorance and craving that the fool does not abandon; the future results—the birth, aging, and death to which the fool is subject in the next existence. This should also help establish the validity of the "three-life" interpretation of *paṭicca-samuppāda* and demonstrate that such an interpretation is not a commentarial innovation.

51 *Ṭhitā va sā dhātu dhammaṭṭhitatā dhammaniyāmatā idappaccayatā.* Spk: That element (*sā dhātu*), the intrinsic nature of the conditions (*paccayasabhāva*), still persists; never is it the case that birth is not a condition for aging-and-death. By the next two terms too he indicates just the condition. For the dependently arisen phenomena stand because of the condition (*paccayena hi paccayuppannā dhammā tiṭṭhanti*); therefore the condition itself is called *the stableness of the Dhamma (dhammaṭṭhitatā)*. The condition fixes (or determines) the dependent phenomena (*paccayo dhamme niyameti*); thus it is called *the fixed course of the Dhamma (dhammaniyāmatā)*. *Specific conditionality (idappaccayatā)* is the set of specific conditions for aging-and-death, etc.

Spk-pt: Whether it is unpenetrated before and after the arising of Tathāgatas, or penetrated when they have arisen, that element still persists; it is not created by the Tathāgatas, but aging-and-death always occurs through birth as its condition. A Tathāgata simply discovers and proclaims this, but he does not invent it.

At AN I 286,8-24 exactly the same statement is made about the three characteristics: "All formations are impermanent/suffering" and "All phenomena are nonself." The

two expressions, *dhammaṭṭhitatā dhammaniyāmatā*, must thus have a meaning that is common to *both* dependent origination *and* the three characteristics, and it therefore seems unfitting to explain them here, as Spk does, in a way that is specifically tied to conditionality. Moreover, it is more likely that here *dhamma* means the principle or lawfulness that holds sway over phenomena, not the phenomena subject to that principle. See too below n. 105, n. 211.

52 *Abhisambujjhati abhisameti*. The former verb, which is reserved for the Buddha's enlightenment, is transitive. I thus render it "awakens to (with the object)," though otherwise I generally translate words derived from the verb *bujjhati* as expressing the sense of "enlightenment." *Abhisameti* is the verb corresponding to *abhisamaya*, on which see n. 13.

53 Se contains a footnote which explains that the statement below, "Thus, bhikkhus, the actuality in this ..." should be inserted at the end of each section on the conditioning relationships; and each following section should begin with the statement, "whether there is an arising of Tathāgatas..."

54 At 56:20, 27 the Four Noble Truths are said to be *tatha, avitatha, anaññatha*—the adjectives corresponding to the first three abstract nouns here. Spk gives a very specific interpretation (translated just below), though we might suspect the original sense was simply that the teaching of dependent origination is true, not false, and not other than real.

Spk: *Actuality (tathatā)* is said to indicate the occurrence of each particular phenomenon when its assemblage of appropriate conditions is present. *Inerrancy (avitathatā)* means that once its conditions have reached completeness there is no nonoccurrence, even for a moment, of the phenomenon due to be produced from those conditions. *Not-otherwiseness (anaññathatā)* means that there is no production of one phenomenon by another's conditions. The phrase *specific conditionality* is used to refer to the (individual) conditions for aging-and-death, etc., or to the conditions taken as a group (*paccayasamūhato*).

55 *Sammappaññāya*. Spk: With path wisdom together with insight (*savipassanāya maggapaññāya*).

56 The sixteen cases of doubt are also mentioned at MN I 8,4-15. For a discussion of their abandonment, see Vism 599 (Ppn 19:5-6) and 603-5 (Ppn 19:21-27). Spk explains that the basic division expressed in the doubts—between existing and not existing in the past, etc.—reflects the antinomy of eternalism and annihilationism. The other doubts pertaining to past existence arise within an eternalist framework. Similar distinctions apply among the doubts pertaining to the future and the present.

57 The ten powers, which are powers of knowledge (*ñāṇabala*), are expounded at MN I 69-71, where they are called Tathāgata powers (*tathāgatabala*). The ten types of knowledge are also claimed by the Venerable Anuruddha at 52:15-24, but in part only, according to Spk. A detailed analysis is at Vibh 335-44. The four grounds of self-confidence (*vesāraja*) are explained at MN I 71-72. In brief, they are the confidence: (i) that no one can challenge his claim to be enlightened about all phenomena; (ii) that no one can challenge his claim to have eradicated all the taints; (iii) that no one can challenge him regarding the states he declares to be obstacles; and (iv) that no one can challenge his claim that his teaching leads the one who practises it to liberation from suffering.

Spk glosses *brahma* as *setṭha, uttama*, "the best, the highest," and explains the Brahma-wheel as the purified Wheel of the Dhamma (*visuddhadhammacakka*). This is twofold, the knowledge of penetration (*paṭivedhañāṇa*) and the knowledge of teaching (*desanāñāṇa*). The former originates from wisdom and brings the Buddha's own attainment of the noble fruits; the latter originates from compassion and enables him to teach in such a way that his disciples attain the fruits. The knowledge of penetration is supramundane (*lokuttara*), the knowledge of teaching mundane (*lokiya*). Both are self-begotten types of knowledge belonging exclusively to the Buddhas, not held in common with others.

58 This stock meditation formula on the five aggregates is also found in SN at 12:23, 22:78, 89, 101. It occurs too in the two versions of the Satipaṭṭhāna Sutta at DN II 301,29-302,13 and MN I 61,3-8. The origin (*samudaya*) and the passing away (*atthaṅgama*) of the aggregates are explained from the

standpoint of diachronic conditionality at 22:5 and from the standpoint of synchronic conditionality at 22:56, 57. See too n. 123.

- 59 This is the abstract formula of dependent origination: *imasmiṃ sati idaṃ hoti, imass' uppādā idaṃ uppajjati; imasmimṃ asati idaṃ na hoti, imassa nirodhā idaṃ nirujjhati*. Spk-pt explains that what is meant by existence in the first part of the formula is not actual presence as such but “the state of not having been brought to cessation by the path”; similarly, what is meant by nonexistence in the second part of the formula is not mere absence as such but “the state of having been brought to cessation by the path.” A long, complex explanation of the formula (abridged in Spk-pt) is found at Ud-a 38–42 (translated in Masefield, *The Udāna Commentary*, 1:66–72). See too n. 14 above. The use of the formula here, immediately following the statement on the aggregates, connects the origin and passing away of the five aggregates to dependent origination, indicating that the former should be understood in terms of the latter.
- 60 *Chinnapilotika*. Spk: Patchwork (*pilotika*) is an old cloth, cut up and torn, that has been sewn and stitched here and there. If one does not wear this, but is clothed in a sheet of uncut cloth, one is said to be “free of patchwork.” This Dhamma is similar, for in no way is it sewn up and stitched together by deceitful means, etc.
- This encomium of the Dhamma is also at MN I 141–42. At 16:11 (II 220,1 and 221,5 foll.) there occurs the expression *paṭapilotikānaṃ saṅghāti*, “an outer robe of patches.”
- 61 Spk calls this four-factored energy (*caturāṅgasamannāgataṃ viriyaṃ*); the four factors are to be understood by way of skin, sinews, bones, and flesh-and-blood. The vow recurs below at 21:3 (II 276,12–16) and is also at MN I 481,1–5. At Ja I 71,24–27 the Bodhisatta makes the same resolve when he takes his seat at the foot of the Bodhi Tree.
- 62 Spk glosses *sadatthaṃ: sobhanaṃ vā atthaṃ sakaṃ vā atthaṃ*, “beautiful good or own good.” The latter explanation is more likely. The common translation of the expression as “true good,” taking *sad* to represent *sant*, does not seem to have the support of the commentaries.
- 63 Spk: It is not by inferior faith, energy, mindfulness, con-

centration, and wisdom that the supreme—namely, arahantship—is to be attained. The supreme must be attained by supreme faith and so forth.

- 64 Spk explains *maṇḍapeyya* as a compound of *maṇḍa* in the sense of clear (*pasanna*) and *peyya* in the sense of what is to be drunk (*pātabba*). It seems that *maṇḍa* originally meant the best part of milk or butter, i.e., the cream, and like the English word came to signify the essence or finest part of anything. At 34:1, etc., we find *sappimaṇḍa*, “cream-of-ghee,” the finest of dairy products.
- Spk: There are three types of cream: (i) the cream of teachings (*desanāmaṇḍa*), i.e., the Four Noble Truths and the thirty-seven aids to enlightenment; (ii) the cream of recipients (*paṭiggahamaṇḍa*), i.e., disciples capable of understanding those teachings; and (iii) the cream of holy lives (*brahmacariyamaṇḍa*), i.e., the Noble Eightfold Path. The words “while the Teacher is present” (*sat!hā sammukhibhūto*) show the reason: since the Teacher is present, having made an energetic effort, you should drink this cream.
- This sentence serves as the heading for an entire treatise of Paṭi (No. 10; II 86–91), which applies the metaphor of cream in detail to all the factors of the Buddhist training.
- 65 We should read, with Be and Se, *tesaṃ te kārā amhesu mahapphalā bhavissanti*, as against *tesaṃ vo kārā* in Ee. The sense of this line has been missed by C.Rh.D at KS 2:24, and Walshe follows her at SN-Anth 3:20. Cp. MN I 140,23–24, 31–32: *Yaṃ kho idaṃ pubbe pariññātaṃ tattha me (no) evarūpā kārā kariyanti*. PED recognizes *kāra* in the sense of “service, act of mercy or worship,” but does not include these references.
- 66 *Alam eva appamādena sampādetum*. These words anticipate the Buddha’s final injunction at 6:15 (I 157,34–158,2).
- 67 For an essay based on this important sutta, see Bodhi, *Transcendental Dependent Arising*. The opening paragraph recurs at 22:101, but with a different sequel; see too n. 58. Spk states that the destruction of the taints (*āsavaakkhaya*) is arahantship, which gains this name because it arises at the end of the destruction of the taints (*āsavānaṃ khayante jātattā*).
- 68 Spk: Having set up the teaching with its climax in arahantship, the Buddha next shows the preliminary practice

along which the arahant has travelled. *The knowledge of destruction in regard to destruction* (*khayasmiṃ khaye nāṇaṃ*) is the reviewing knowledge (*paccavekkhanañāṇa*) which occurs when the destruction of the taints—namely, arahantship—has been obtained (see I, n. 376 and *Vism* 676; Ppn 22:19–21). *Liberation* is the liberation of the fruit of arahantship (*arahattaphalavimutti*), which is a condition for reviewing knowledge by way of decisive-support condition (*upanissayapaccaya*). First the fruit of arahantship arises, then the knowledge of destruction.

Spk glosses *sa-upanisā* as *sakāraṇa*, *sappacayya*, “with cause, with condition.” Spk-pṭ adds: *upanisidati phalaṃ etthā ti kāraṇaṃ upanisā*; “the cause is called the proximate cause because the effect rests upon it.” Thus the commentators take *upanisā* to be the equivalent of Skt *upaniṣad*, not a contraction of *upanissaya*. Although, as CPD points out, “a semantic blend” with the latter takes place, the two words must be kept distinct because not everything that is an *upanisā* (proximate cause) for other things is an *upanissaya-paccaya* (decisive support condition) for those things. The latter refers solely to something which plays a strong causal role.

- 69 Spk glosses the terms in the above sequence thus (starting from the end): *Suffering* is the suffering of the round (*vaṭṭa-dukkha*). *Faith* is repeatedly arising faith (*aparāparaṃ uppajjanasaddhā*; that is, tentative faith, not the unwavering faith of a noble disciple). *Gladness* (*pāmojja*) is weak rapture, while *rapture* proper (*pīti*) is strong rapture. *Tranquillity* (*passaddhi*) is the subsiding of distress, a condition for the happiness preliminary to absorption. *Happiness* is the happiness in the preliminary phase of meditative absorption, *concentration* the *jhāna* used as a basis (for insight; *pādaka-jjhānasamādhī*). *Knowledge and vision of things as they really are* (*yathābhūtañāṇadassana*) is weak insight, namely, the knowledges of the discernment of formations, of the overcoming of doubt, of exploration, and of what is and what is not the path (see *Vism* chaps. 18–20). *Revulsion* (*nibbidā*) is strong insight, namely, knowledge of appearance as fearful, of contemplation of danger, of reflection, and of equanimity about formations (*Vism* 645–57; Ppn 21:29–66).

*Dispassion* (*virāga*) is the path, which arises expunging defilements.

Note that in the next paragraph suffering replaces aging-and-death of the usual formula.

- 70 The simile also occurs at 55:38, AN I 243,27–32, and AN V 114,6–14.
- 71 On the identity of the four views see above n. 37.
- 72 A stock passage in the Nikāyas, recurring in SN in slightly different forms determined by the context, at 12:25, 12:26, 22:2, 22:86, 35:81, 42:13, 44:2, and 45:5. The readings alternate, even within the same volume, between *vādānuvādo* and *vādānupāto*, and it is uncertain which of the two is more original. The passage has stumped previous translators, mainly because of the phrase *koci sahadhammiko vādānupāto*, which at KS 2:28 is rendered “one who is of his doctrine, a follower of his views.” To avoid such errors two meanings of *sahadhammika* must be distinguished: (i) a noun meaning a follower of the same doctrine (unambiguously so at MN I 64,13); and (ii) an adjective meaning legitimate, reasonable (unambiguously so at 41:8; IV 299,25 foll.). Here the second meaning is applicable.

Spk explains: “How (should we answer) so that not the slightest consequence or implication (*vādānupāto vādappavatti*) of the ascetic Gotama’s assertion—(a consequence) which is reasonable because of the reason stated (*vuttakāraṇena sakāraṇo hutvā*)—might give ground for criticism?” This is meant: “How can there be no ground for criticism in any way of the ascetic Gotama’s assertion?” I dissent from Spk on what is to be safeguarded against criticism: Spk takes it to be the Buddha’s assertion, while I understand it to be the *inquirer’s account* of the Buddha’s assertion. In other words, the inquirer wants to be sure he is representing the Buddha’s position correctly, whether or not he agrees with it.

At AN III 4,10, 19 *sahadhammikā vādānuvādā gārayhā thānā āgacchanti* occurs in a context where it means simply “reasonable rebukes, grounds for criticism, come up,” and is contrasted with *sahadhammikā pāsamsā thānā āgacchanti*, “reasonable grounds for praise come up.”

- 73 On the expression *tadapi phassapaccayā*, “that (too) is condi-

tioned by contact," Spk says that this may be known from the fact that there is no experience of suffering without contact. It seems to me, however, that the point being made here is not that suffering does not arise without contact (though this is true), but that the adoption of a view does not occur without contact. The Brahmajāla Sutta states the same point in relation to the sixty-two speculative views—that the proclamation of each of these views is conditioned by contact and the views cannot be experienced without contact. See DN I 41–43, translated in Bodhi, *All-Embracing Net of Views*, pp. 85–87, with the commentary at pp. 197–98.

- 74 *Gambhiro c' eva assa gambhirāvabhāso ca*. The same two terms are used at 12:60 and at DN II 55,9–10 to describe *paṭicca-samuppāda*. For the explanation of Sv, see Bodhi, *The Great Discourse on Causation*, pp. 64–67. Spk explains "that same meaning" (*es' ev' attho*) to be the meaning of dependent origination implicit in the proposition, "Suffering is dependent on contact."
- 75 He gives his name to the Bhūmija Sutta (MN No. 126), where he answers some questions of Prince Jayasena and then engages in conversation with the Buddha. The first part of the present sutta repeats the first part of the preceding one except that it is phrased in terms of "pleasure and pain."
- 76 It is difficult to understand how these ascetics could be "proponents of kamma" (*kammavādā*) when they hold that pleasure and pain arise fortuitously. Neither Spk nor Spk-ṭ offers any clarification.
- 77 This passage is also at AN II 157–59. Spk says that the Buddha added this section to show that pleasure and pain do not arise with contact alone as condition, but with other conditions as well. In this case the bodily, verbal, and mental volitions (*kāya-, vaci-, manosañcetanā*) are the kammically effective volitions that function as conditions for the resultant pleasure and pain (*vipākasukhadukkha*). I follow Be and Se in reading *avijjāpaccayā ca* and in taking this clause to belong to the end of the present paragraph. This has the support of Spk, which explains that this is said to show that these volitions are conditioned by ignorance. Ee reads *va* for *ca* and places the clause at the beginning of the next paragraph.

- 78 Spk identifies the three volitional formations—*kāyasaṅkhāra, vacisaṅkhāra, manosaṅkhāra*—with the three types of volition mentioned just above. One generates them "on one's own initiative" (*sāmañi*) when one acts without inducement by others, with an unprompted mind (*asaṅkhārikacitta*); one generates them "prompted by others" when one acts with a prompted mind (*sasaṅkhārikacitta*). One acts deliberately (*sampajāno*) when one acts with knowledge of kamma and its fruit; undeliberately (*asampajāno*), when one acts without such knowledge. This text may be the original basis for the Abhidhamma distinction between *sasaṅkhārikacitta* and *asaṅkhārikacitta*, on which see CMA 1:4.
- 79 The term used here is *manosaṅkhāra*, but from the context this is clearly synonymous with *cittasaṅkhāra* at 12:2. There is no textual justification for identifying the latter with the *cittasaṅkhāra* at 41:6 (IV 293,17) and MN I 301,28–29, defined as *saññā* and *vedanā*.
- 80 I read with Be and Se, *imesu Ānanda dhammesu avijjā anupatitā*. The *chasu* in Ee appears superfluous.  
Spk: Ignorance is included among these states under the heading of decisive support (*upanissaya*); for they are all comprehended under this phrase, "With ignorance as condition, volitional formations." (On the interpretation of *paṭicca-samuppāda* by way of the twenty-four conditional relations of the *Paṭṭhāna*, see Vism, chap. 17, concisely explained in Nyanatiloka Thera, *Guide through the Abhidhamma Piṭaka*, pp. 159–73.)
- 81 Spk: That body does not exist which, if it existed, would enable pleasure and pain to arise conditioned by bodily volition; the same method of explanation applies to speech and mind. (Query:) But an arahant acts, speaks, and thinks, so how is it that his body, etc., do not exist? (Reply:) In the sense that they do not generate kammic results. For the deeds done by an arahant are neither wholesome nor unwholesome kamma, but merely functional (*kiriyaṃmatṭa*); thus for him it is said, "that body, etc., do not exist."

On the functional consciousness of the arahant, see CMA 1:15. An alternative explanation might be simply that with the elimination of ignorance there will be no further arising of the five aggregates, the basis of all experi-

- ence, and thus no further experiencing of pleasure and pain.
- 82 Spk: There is no *field* (*khetta*) in the sense of a place of growth; no *site* (*vatthu*) in the sense of a support; no *base* (*āyatana*) in the sense of a condition; no *foundation* (*adhikaraṇa*) in the sense of a cause.
- 83 Upavāṇa is the Buddha's attendant at 7:13. The present sutta is almost identical with the first part of 12:24 except that it omits the qualifying expression *kammavādā* in the description of the ascetics and brahmins.
- 84 Spk: He understands the condition by way of the truth of suffering, and the origin of the condition, etc., by way of the truth of the origin, etc.
- 85 This whole passage is repeated at 12:28, 33, 49, and 50. Spk: He is endowed with the view of the path (*maggaditṭhi*), the vision of the path, etc.  
*Sekha* is used here as an adjective to qualify *nāṇa* and *vijjā*. The *sekha* or trainee is one who has arrived at the supramundane path and is training in it but has not yet reached arahantship, i.e., a stream-enterer, once-returner, or nonreturner; on reaching arahantship he becomes an *asekha*, "one beyond training."  
 The rendering of *amatadvāraṃ āhacca tiṭṭhati* at KS 2:33 as "who stands knocking at the door of the Deathless," if intended literally, shows a misunderstanding of the idiom *āhacca tiṭṭhati*. In both canon and commentaries the expression is often used to mean "reaching right up to, standing up against," and does not imply knocking on a door, which in Pāli is expressed by the verb *ākoṭeti* (e.g., at Vin I 248,5). The idiom is also at 17:28, 29 (II 238,5, 16-17). For other instances, see CPD, s.v. *āhacca*. The Deathless, of course, is Nibbāna. Spk identifies the door to the Deathless as the noble path.
- 86 This sutta is almost identical with 12:13; the only difference is in the operative verb, there *pajānāti* and here *parijānāti*. Spk says this sutta was spoken in accordance with the inclination (*ajjhāsaya*) of the bhikkhus who recite the words, for they are able to penetrate (the sense) when the prefix *pari-* is used.
- 87 The *Pārāyana*, the "Going to the Far Shore," is the last chapter of Sn. It consists of sixteen sections (plus prologue and

- epilogue), in each of which the Buddha replies to questions posed by one of sixteen brahmin students. "The Questions of Ajita" is the first of the sixteen sections.
- 88 Spk-pt: *Those who have comprehended the Dhamma* (*saṅkhātadhammā*) are the arahants, who have penetrated the (four) truths. *The trainees* (*sekhā*) are the seven types of persons—those on the four paths and the lower three fruits.  
*Saṅkhātadhammā* could be understood to mean either "those who have comprehended the Dhamma," i.e., the teaching, or "those who have comprehended things," i.e., phenomena and their principles. Nidd II 34-35 (Be) glosses in both ways: as those who have known the Dhamma (*ñātadhammā*), by knowing all formations as impermanent, etc.; and as those who have comprehended the aggregates, elements, sense bases, etc. The trainees (*sekhā*) are so called because they train in the higher virtue, the higher mind (the *jhānas*), and the higher wisdom. Though Norman says that Pj II and Nidd II do not take *sekhā* and *puṭhū* as going together (GD, p. 367, n. to 1038), read correctly both these texts do place the two words in apposition. The trainees are manifold (*puṭhū*) because they fall into the seven types.
- 89 Spk: Why did he remain silent up to the third time? He was not puzzled by the question but by the Buddha's intention (*ajjhāsaya*). For it was possible to answer in many ways—by way of the aggregates, elements, sense bases, or conditionality—and he wanted to catch the Teacher's intention. Then the Teacher, aware of the reason for his silence, gave him the method with the words, "Do you see...?"
- 90 Spk: *This has come to be* (*bhūtam idaṃ*): this is said of the five aggregates. Thus the Teacher gave the elder the method, implying, "Answer my question by way of the five aggregates." Then, just as the great ocean appears as one open expanse to a man standing on the shore, so as soon as he was given the method the answer to the question appeared to the elder with a hundred and a thousand methods. *With correct wisdom* (*sammā paññāya*): one sees it with path-wisdom together with insight. *One is practising*: from the stage of virtue as far as the path of arahantship one is said to be practising for the purpose of revulsion, etc. This section shows the practice of the trainee.

91 *Tadāhārasambhavaṃ*. On nutriment see 12:11, 12, and n. 18 above. No doubt it is the dependence of the five aggregates on nutriment that accounts for the inclusion of this sutta in the *Nidānasamyutta*. A similar treatment of nutriment, in catechism form, is at MN I 260,7–32.

Spk resolves *tadāhārasambhavaṃ* as *taṃ āhārasambhavaṃ*, apparently taking *tad* to represent the five aggregates. I see the whole expression as qualifying an implicit subject (“its”) and take *tad* (“that”) as a specification of *āhāra*. Such an interpretation seems required by the parallel statement on cessation. See too the use of the expression *tadāhāra* at SN II 85,6, 86,12, 87,6, etc., which supports this interpretation.

92 *Anupādā vimutto*. Spk: One is liberated by not grasping anything at all with the four kinds of clinging (*upādāna*). This section shows the arahant.

93 The bhikkhu Kaḷāra the Khattiya is met only here. Moliya-phagga appears in 12:12; see n. 21. “Returned to the lower life” (*hināyavatto*) means that he reverted to the state of a layman.

Spk and Spk-pt together help to illuminate this cryptic exchange thus: “He did not find solace (*assāsa*)” means that he had not attained the three (lower) paths; for if he had attained them he would not have reverted to the lower life since then he would not have been tempted by sensual pleasures (his reason for disrobing). Sāriputta says “I have no perplexity” (*na kaṅkhāmi*) about having attained solace since his support is the knowledge of a disciple’s perfection (*sāvakaṇḍamānāna*). “As to the future” (*āyatim*) refers to future rebirth; the question is an indirect way of asking if he has attained arahantship.

94 Spk remarks that Sāriputta did not declare final knowledge in such words, but the elder Kaḷāra Khattiya had ascribed this statement to him because he was happy and pleased. Final knowledge (*aññā*) is arahantship.

95 Spk: The Blessed One asked him this question to get him to declare final knowledge, thinking: “He will not declare final knowledge of his own accord, but he will do so when answering my question.”

96 Spk: Here too (as in 12:31) the elder was puzzled not by the question but by the Buddha’s intention; he was unsure

how the Teacher wanted him to declare arahantship. But he started to speak in terms of conditionality, which was what the Teacher wanted. When he realized that he had grasped the Teacher’s intention, the answer appeared to him with a hundred and a thousand methods.

I have translated the first part of Sāriputta’s reply in accordance with the gloss of Spk thus: “With the destruction of the specific condition for birth, I have understood, ‘As the condition for birth is destroyed, the effect, namely birth, is destroyed.’”

97 Spk: The Buddha asks this to get Sāriputta to roar a lion’s roar in his own proper domain. For Sāriputta attained the knowledge of a disciple’s perfection after he had discerned the three feelings while the Buddha taught the wanderer Dighanakha “The Discourse on the Discernment of Feelings” and this became his own domain (*savisaya*).

Spk refers here to the Dighanakha Sutta (MN No. 74; see esp. MN I 500,9–501,6), and seems to be using “*Vedanā-pariggaha Sutta*” as an alternative title for that text. Ee (S II 53,8–9, 12) should be amended to read *vedanāsu nandī*.

98 *Yaṃ kiñci vedayitaṃ taṃ dukkhasmiṃ*. See 36:11 (IV 216,20–217,3).

99 Spk: *Internal deliverance (ajjhataṃ vimokkha)*: he attained arahantship while comprehending the internal formations. Spk refers here to a fourfold distinction in how the path emerges, found also at Vism 661–62 (Ppn 21:84–85).

Spk: *The taints do not flow within me (āsava nānussavanti)*: The three taints, the taint of sensuality, etc., do not flow through the six sense doors towards the six sense objects, i.e., they do not arise in me. *And I do not despise myself (attānañ ca nāvajānāmi)*: by this the abandoning of self-contempt (*omāna*) is indicated. C.Rh.D, at KS 2:40, has misunderstood this expression, rendering it “and I admit no (immutable) soul.”

100 *Pubbe appaṭisaṃviditaṃ*. Spk: “I had not previously known or understood, ‘He will ask me this.’ His hesitancy was for the purpose of finding out the Teacher’s intention.”

The past participle *appaṭisaṃvidita* suggests the Skt noun *pratisaṃvid*, counterpart of Pāli *paṭisaṃbhidā*, the analytical knowledges in which Sāriputta excelled.

- 101 Spk: *That element of the Dhamma (sā dhammadhātu):* Here, “element of the Dhamma” is the knowledge of a disciple’s perfection, which is capable of seeing the principle of conditionality without obscuration (*paccayākārassa vivaṭabhāvā-dassanasamattaṃ sāvakaṭṭhāmiñāṇaṃ*).
- 102 *Dhamme ñāṇa.* Spk explains the Dhamma here as the Four Noble Truths (*catusaccadhamma*) or path knowledge (*maggañāṇadhamma*).
- 103 *Iminā dhammena diṭṭhena viditena akālikena pattena pariyogālhena.* Note that the string of participles here corresponds exactly to the terms used in the standard description of one who has gained “the vision of the Dhamma” (*dhammacakkhu*): *diṭṭhadhammo, pattadhammo, viditadhammo, pariyogāḷhadhammo* (“seen the Dhamma, attained the Dhamma, understood the Dhamma, fathomed the Dhamma,” e.g., at DN I 110,14–15). This implies that the Dhamma which the stream-enterer has seen is dependent origination, an inference additionally confirmed by the closing passage of the present sutta.
- Spk here treats *akālikena* as an independent adjective qualifying *dhammena* and explains it to mean that the path yields its fruit immediately after it is penetrated, without passage of time (*kiñci kālaṃ anatikkamivā paṭivedhānantaraṃ yeva phaladāyakena*). However, in commenting on 42:11 (IV 328,21–22), where the same statement is found, Spk explains *akālikena* as an adverb of manner used in apposition to *pattena* (see IV, n. 352). I understand *akālikena* in the present passage in exactly the same way; otherwise it is difficult to see why it should be included amidst a string of past participles. Moreover, since the word here characterizes the relationship between temporal events like birth and aging, the common rendering of it as “timeless” is not entirely satisfactory. The desired sense in this context is “not involving the passage of time,” i.e., immediate, which qualifies *the knowledge* of the conditional relationship between the factors, not the factors themselves. The point is that this knowledge is a matter of direct “ocular” experience rather than of reasoning and inference.
- 104 *Anvaye ñāṇa.* Spk: The knowledge (that follows) as a consequence of the knowledge of the principle; this is a name

for reviewing knowledge (see n. 68). It is not possible to apply the method to the past and future by means of the *dhamma* of the four truths or the *dhamma* of path knowledge, but when the four paths have been penetrated by path knowledge, reviewing knowledge subsequently occurs, and one applies the method by means of that.

This explanation is difficult to square with the account of reviewing knowledge at Vism 676 and elsewhere as knowledge of the path and fruit attained, the defilements abandoned, those remaining, and Nibbāna. What is meant here, rather, is an inference extended to past and future, based on the immediate discernment of the conditionality operative between any given pair of factors.

The following paragraph is also at 12:27, 28. Spk says that the arahant’s (prior) plane of traineeship (*khināsavassa sekhabhūmi*) is being discussed, on which Spk-pt remarks: the moment of the supreme path (*aggamaggakhaṇa*).

- 105 Spk: *The knowledge of the stability of the Dhamma (dhammaṭṭhiti-ñāṇa)* is the knowledge of the principle of conditionality. For the principle of conditionality is called “the stability of the Dhamma” because it is the cause for the continued occurrence of phenomena (*pavattiṭṭhitikāraṇattā*); the knowledge of it is “the knowledge of the stability of the Dhamma.” This is a designation for just this sixfold knowledge.

I render *dhammaṭṭhitatā* (at 12:20; n. 51) “*stableness* of the Dhamma” and *dhammaṭṭhiti* “*stability* of the Dhamma.” The latter also occurs at 12:70 (II 124,10). The two seem to be effectively synonymous.

The knowledge *that* this knowledge too is subject to destruction is called by Spk “counter-insight into insight” (*vipassanā-paṭivipassanā*), i.e., insight into the dissolution of the very act of insight knowledge that had just cognized the dissolution of the primary object. See Vism 641–42 (Ppn 21:11–13), where, however, the expression *vipassanā-paṭivipassanā* does not occur.

- 106 *Kassa ca pan’ idaṃ jarāmaraññaṃ.* This question, and the following ones moulded on the same pattern, presuppose the reality of a self and thus, like the questions at 12:12, must be rejected by the Buddha as invalid.

Spk: Even though the question, “What is aging-and-

death?" is properly formulated, because it is combined with the question, "For whom is there aging-and-death?"—which implicitly affirms belief in a being (*sattūpaladdhi-vāda*)—the entire question becomes wrongly formulated. This is like a dish of delicious food served on a golden platter, on top of which a small lump of excrement is placed: all the food becomes inedible and must be discarded.

107 Spk: *The living of the holy life (brahmacariyavāsa)* is the living of the noble path. One who holds the view "the soul and the body are the same" (*taṃ jīvaṃ taṃ sariraṃ*) holds that the soul and the body are annihilated together (at death). For one who holds this, the annihilationist view follows, for he holds that "a being is annihilated." Now this noble path arises to stop and eradicate the round of existence. But on the annihilationist view the round ceases even without the development of the path, and thus the development of the path becomes purposeless. In the second case, one holding the view "the soul is one thing, the body another" (*aññaṃ jīvaṃ aññaṃ sariraṃ*) holds that the body alone is annihilated here, while the soul goes about freely like a bird released from a cage. This view is eternalism. But if there were even one formation that is permanent, stable, and eternal, the noble path would not be able to bring the round to an end; thus again the development of the path would be purposeless.

108 I read with Be: *yāni 'ssa tāni visūkāyikāni visevitāni vipphan-ditāni kānici kānici*. Se is almost the same, but the orthography in Ee is very unsatisfactory. Spk explains that the three nouns are all synonyms for wrong view. This is called a *contortion (visūkāyika)* because it is an obstruction to oneself, being like a spike (*visūkam iva*; Spk-pt: = *kaṇṭaka*, a thorn) in the sense that it punctures right view (*sammā-ditṭhiyā vinivijjhanatṭhena*). It is a *manoeuvre (visevita)* because it fails to conform to right view but instead runs contrary to it; and a *vacillation (vipphan-dita)* because of grasping now annihilationism, now eternalism.

Spk takes *visūkāyika* to be related to *sūci*, needle, but it would be difficult to justify this derivation by the actual use of the term. The three synonyms also occur at 4:24

(I 123,30–31) and MN I 234,19–20; at MN I 446,12–13 they describe the behaviour of an untrained horse.

109 Spk glosses *tālāvattthukatāni* as *tālavatthu viya katāni*, "made like a palm-base," and explains: "Made like a palm with cut-off head (i.e., a palm stump) in the sense of never growing again; and made like a place for the support of a palm after it has been extricated along with its root" (*puna aviruhānatṭhena matthakacchinnatālo viya samūlaṃ tālaṃ uddharitvā tassa patiṭṭhitatṭhānaṃ viya ca katāni*). Spk-pt first accepts the original reading *tālāvattthu* (lit. "palm-non-base") as it stands and explains: "The palm itself is the 'palm-non-base' because it is not a base for leaves, flowers, fruit, and sprouts. But some read *tālāvattthukatāni*, which means: 'made like a palm because of being without a base.'"

110 Spk: Since there actually is no self, there is nothing belonging to self; thus he says, "It is not yours" (*na tumhākaṃ*). And since there is no self of others, he says, "Neither does it belong to others" (*na pi aññesaṃ*). See too 22:33 and 35:101.

111 Spk: *It is old kamma (purāṇam idaṃ kammaṃ)*: This body is not actually old kamma, but because it is produced by old kamma it is spoken of in terms of its condition. It should be seen as *generated (abhisankhata)*, in that it is made by conditions; as *fashioned by volition (abhisancetayita)*, in that it is based on volition, rooted in volition; and as *something to be felt (vedaniya)*, in that it is a basis for what is to be felt [Spk-pt: because it is a basis and object of feeling].

See too 35:146, where the same idea is extended to the six internal sense bases. To reflect upon the body in terms of dependent origination, one considers that this body can be subsumed under "form" in the compound "name-and-form." One then reflects that name-and-form comes into being with consciousness, i.e., the rebirth-consciousness, as a conascent condition, and that both consciousness and name-and-form originate from the volitional formations, i.e., the kammic activities of the preceding existence. Thus the theme of this sutta ties up with the three that immediately follow.

112 Spk: Here, the phrase *one intends (ceteti)* includes all wholesome and unwholesome volition of the three planes; *one*

plans (*pakappeti*), the mental fabrications of craving and views (*tanhādiṭṭhikappā*) in the eight cittas accompanied by greed [Spk-pt: the fabrications of views occur only in the four cittas associated with views]; and *whatever one has a tendency towards* (*anuseti*) implies the underlying tendencies (*anusaya*) under the headings of conascence and decisive-support conditions for the twelve (unwholesome) volitions. (On the twelve unwholesome cittas, see CMA 1:4–7.)

*This becomes a basis* (*ārammaṇam etaṃ hoti*): These various states such as volition become a condition; for here the word *ārammaṇa* is intended as condition (*paccaya*; that is, here *ārammaṇa* does not signify an object of consciousness, the usual meaning in the Abhidhamma). *For the maintenance of consciousness* (*viññāṇassa ṭhitiyā*): for the purpose of maintaining the kammic consciousness. When there is this condition, *there is a support for the establishing of consciousness* (*patitṭhā viññāṇassa hoti*), i.e., for the establishing of that kammic consciousness [Spk-pt: it has a capacity to yield fruit in one's mental continuum]. *When that (kammic) consciousness is established and has come to growth* (*tasmim patitṭhite viññāṇe ... virūḷhe*): when, having impelled kamma, it has grown, produced roots, through its ability to precipitate rebirth, *there is the production of future renewed existence*, i.e., production consisting in renewed existence.

Cp. 12:64 and 22:53–54 below. AN I 223–24 explains the process of renewed existence in similar terms (see n. 24). I see the verbs *ceteti* and *pakappeti* as allusions to *saṅkhārā* (which, as kammic activities, are expressive of *cetanā*—see AN III 415,7–8). *Anuseti* clearly refers to the *anusaya* or underlying tendencies, which include *avijjānusaya*, the underlying tendency to ignorance (= ignorance in the usual formula of dependent origination) and *rāgānusaya*, the underlying tendency to lust (= craving in the usual formula). The way they maintain consciousness is thus no different from the way the volitional formations, fueled by ignorance and craving, serve as the condition for consciousness: together, they underlie the flow of consciousness, infuse it with kammic potentials for renewed existence, and project it into a new existence, thereby initiating the process that will culminate in birth. I am not in full

agreement with Spk in taking the *viññāṇa* that is “maintained” and “established” as the kammic consciousness. I interpret it simply as the ongoing process of consciousness, including both the kammically active and resultant phases. At 22:53–54 the other four aggregates are spoken of as the *ārammaṇa* and *patitṭhā* of *viññāṇa*, but I am doubtful that this application will work here. To use the categories of the Abhidhamma, it seems that in this sutta the terms *ārammaṇa* and *patitṭhā* denote the decisive-support condition (*upanissayapaccaya*) for consciousness, while in the two suttas in the Khandhasamyutta they denote the conascence and support conditions (*sahajātapaccaya*, *nissayapaccaya*).

I use “volition” as a rendering for *cetanā* but “intends” for the corresponding verb *ceteti*; I use “intention” for the unrelated noun *saṅkappa*. I justify this apparent inconsistency on the ground that in Pāli the verb *saṅkappeti* (corresponding to *saṅkappa*) occurs very rarely (if at all), while English lacks a simple verb corresponding to “volition.” “A support for the establishing of consciousness” renders *patitṭhā viññāṇassa*. I find that “established” works consistently better as a rendering for the participle *patitṭhita*, but “support” for the noun *patitṭhā*, so to bridge the participle and the noun in the present passage (and at 22:53, 54) I have coined this compound expression.

113 Spk: This refers to a moment when there is no occurrence of [wholesome and unwholesome] volition of the three planes, and no occurrence of the mental fabrications of craving and views. *But one still has a tendency*: by this the underlying tendencies are included because they have not been abandoned here in the resultants of the three planes, in the limited functional states (the five-door adverting and mind-door adverting cittas), and in form. As long as the underlying tendencies exist, they become a condition for the kammic consciousness, for there is no way to prevent its arising.

Spk-pt: This second section is stated to show that wholesome and unwholesome kamma capable of producing rebirth is accumulated in the preliminary portion (of the path of practice), and that even without planning (through craving and views), the volitions of insight meditation in a

meditator who has seen the dangers in existence are still conditioned by the underlying tendencies and are capable of generating rebirth. It is also stated to show that even when wholesome and unwholesome states are not occurring there is still an establishing of kammic consciousness with underlying defilements as condition; for so long as these have not been abandoned they lie latent in the existing resultants of the three planes, etc.

- 114 Spk: *When one does not intend*, etc.: By the first phrase (“does not intend”) he shows that the wholesome and unwholesome volitions pertaining to the three planes have ceased; by the second (“does not plan”), that the craving and views in the eight cittas (accompanied by greed) have ceased; by the third (“does not have a tendency”), that the underlying tendencies lying latent in the aforesaid states have ceased. What is being discussed here? The function of the path of arahantship (*arahattamaggassa kiccaṃ*). It can also be interpreted as the arahant’s doing of his task (*khīṇāsavassa kiccakaraṇaṃ*) and the nine supramundane states (*navalokuttaradhammā*; i.e., the four paths, their fruits, and Nibbāna).

Spk-pt: In this third section the function of the path of arahantship is discussed because that path completely stops the production of the underlying tendencies. The “arahant’s doing of his task” can be said because of the exclusion of feeling, etc. (meaning unclear). The nine supramundane states can be said because the underlying tendencies are extirpated by the series of paths, and the fruits follow immediately upon the paths, and Nibbāna is the object of both.

I understand the “unestablished consciousness” (*appatiṭṭhita viññāna*) here to mean a consciousness without the prospect of a future rebirth through the propulsive power of ignorance, craving, and the volitional formations. The arahant is said to expire with consciousness “unestablished,” as at 4:23 and 22:87.

- 115 *Nāmarūpassa avakkanti*. See 12:12, where the production of future renewed existence is placed between consciousness and the six sense bases. Taken in conjunction, the two suttas imply that the “descent of name-and-form” and the “pro-

duction of future renewed existence” are interchangeable (this in spite of the commentarial predilection for always seeing the latter as kammically active existence). Spk states that there is a “link” (*sandhi*) between consciousness and name-and-form; thus on this interpretation consciousness denotes the kammically generative consciousness of the previous existence, name-and-form the beginning of the present existence. It seems to me, however, more likely that *viññāna* straddles both the past life and the present life, as the principle of personal continuity.

- 116 Spk: *Inclination (nati)* is craving, called “inclination” in the sense of inclining (*namanaṭṭhena*) towards pleasant forms, etc. *There is coming and going (āgatigati)*: there is a going of consciousness by way of rebirth towards what has come up (at death), presenting itself as kamma or the sign of kamma or the sign of future destiny. (The allusion is to the three objects of the last conscious process preceding death; see CMA 5:35–37.) *There is passing away*, passing from here, and *being reborn*, rebirth there.
- 117 Cp. the “teaching of the Blessed One” recited by Mahācunda at 35:87 (IV 59,10–14).
- 118 The sutta is also at 55:28 and at AN V 182–84. Spk glosses *bhayāni verāni* as volitions (bringing) fear and enmity (*bhayaveracetanāyo*). Spk-pt: The destruction of life and so forth are fearful and dreadful both for the perpetrator and for the victim; they are productive of fear and enmity, which are to be feared.
- The self-assured declaration of stream-entry is also at 55:8–10. The stream-enterer is exempt from the prospect of rebirth in the lower realms; he is *fixed in destiny (niyata)*, as he cannot take more than seven rebirths, all in the human or celestial realms; and he *has enlightenment as his destination (sambodhiparāyana)*, as he will necessarily attain the enlightenment of arahantship.
- 119 The version at AN V 183 includes another line here: “But one who abstains from the destruction of life (etc.) does not engender fearful animosity pertaining to the present life and fearful animosity pertaining to the future life, and he does not experience mental pain and displeasure” (*pāṇātipātā paṭivirato n’ eva diṭṭhadhammikaṃ bhayaṃ veram*

*pasavati, na samparāyikaṃ bhayaṃ veraṃ pasavati, na cetasi-kaṃ dukkhaṃ domanassaṃ paṭisaṃvedeti*). It seems that the logic of the discourse requires this addition; its omission from the present text could be an early scribal error.

- 120 Spk: The factors of stream-entry (*sotāpattiyāṅga*) are of two kinds: (i) the factors for stream-entry, the preliminary practices that lead to the attainment of stream-entry, namely, associating with superior persons, hearing the true Dhamma, careful attention, and practice in accordance with the Dhamma (see 55:55); (ii) the factors of one who abides having attained stream-entry. The latter are intended here. *Confirmed confidence* is unshakable confidence (gained) through what has been achieved [Spk-pt: namely, the path] (*aveccappasādenā ti adhigatena [maggena] acalappasādena*).

*Aveccappasāda* is a syntactical compound (see I, n. 68), with *avecca* (Skt *avetya*) absolutive of *\*aveti*, to undergo, to know, to experience. The formulas for recollection of the Buddha, the Dhamma, and the Saṅgha are analysed in detail at Vism 197–221 (Ppn 7:1–100).

- 121 Spk: The virtues dear to the noble ones (*ariyakantāni silāni*) are the five precepts, which the noble ones do not forsake even when they pass on to a new existence.

The terms are explained at Vism 222 (Ppn 7:104). These virtues are “ungrasped” (*aparāmaṭṭha*) in the sense that they are not adhered to with craving and wrong view.

- 122 Spk: *The method* (*ñāya*) is both dependent origination and the stable knowledge after one has known the dependently arisen. As he says: “It is dependent origination that is called the method; the method is also the Noble Eightfold Path” (untraced). *Wisdom* here is repeatedly arisen insight-wisdom (*aparāparaṃ uppannā vipassanāpaññā*).

Spk-pt: Dependent origination is called “the method” because, with the application of the right means, it is what is known (*ñāyati*) as it actually is in the dependently arisen. But knowledge (*ñāṇa*) is called “the method” because it is *by this* that the latter is known.

Despite the commentators, *ñāya* has no relation to *ñāṇa* but is derived from *ni + i*.

- 123 Spk: Suffering here is the suffering of the round (*vaṭṭa-dukkha*). There are two kinds of *origin*, momentary origin

(*khaṇikasamudaya*) and origin through conditions (*paccaya-samudaya*). A bhikkhu who sees the one sees the other. *Passing away* is also twofold, final passing away (*accantatthaṅgama*; Spk-pt: nonoccurrence, cessation, Nibbāna) and dissolutional passing away (*bhedatthaṅgama*; Spk-pt: the momentary cessation of formations). One who sees the one sees the other.

- 124 Spk: *The world* here is the world of formations (*saṅkhāraloka*). On the nature of the world in the Buddha’s teaching, see I, n. 182.

- 125 *Dhammapariyāya*, a method of presenting the teaching. This sutta recurs at 35:113, where it is called *Upassuti*, “Listening In.” On *Ñātika*, see V, n. 330.

- 126 See 12:17, 18, and n. 39, n. 40.

- 127 A brahmin Jāṇussoṇi is mentioned at 45:4 and elsewhere in the Nikāyas. Spk says that he was a great chaplain (*mahāpurohita*) of much wealth who had gained his name by reason of his position. On the theme of this sutta see 12:15.

- 128 *Lokāyatika*. Spk says that he was versed in *lokāyata*, the science of debate (*vitandasaṭṭhe lokāyate kataparicayo*). Spk-pt explains the etymology of the word thus: “*Lokāyata* is so called because by means of this the world does not strive for, does not advance towards, future welfare (*āyatim hitaṃ tena loko na yatati na ihati ti lokāyatam*). For on account of this belief, beings do not arouse even the thought of doing deeds of merit, much less do they make the effort.”

Spk-pt’s explanation seems to reflect the understanding of *lokāyata* held at the time of the commentaries, as seen in MW’s definition of the word as “materialism, the system of atheistical philosophy (taught by Cārvāka).” There is cogent evidence, however, that the word acquired these connotations only in a later period. As Rhys Davids points out in a detailed discussion (at *Dialogues of the Buddha*, 1:166–72), *lokāyata* is used in the Nikāyas in a complimentary sense to designate a branch of brahmanical learning (as at DN I 88,7, 114,3, etc.). He suggests that the word originally meant nature-lore and only gradually acquired the negative meaning of sophistry and materialism. Jayatilleke has proposed that since the word is always used with reference to *loka*, the world, or *sabba*, the all, it originally signified, not nature-lore in general, but cosmology, and that

the arrangement of *lokāyata* theses in opposing pairs indicates that the brahmins used the rival cosmological theories as topics of debate (*Early Buddhist Theory of Knowledge*, pp. 48–57).

- 129 *Jeṭṭhaṃ etaṃ lokāyataṃ*. Spk glosses *jeṭṭhaṃ* with *paṭhamaṃ* and explains: “*Lokāyata* is an inferior, tainted speculative view that appears great and deep” (*mahantaṃ gambhīraṃ ti upaṭṭhitaṃ parittaṃ sāsavaṃ diṭṭhigataṃ*; reading as in Se, which seems more reliable here than Be).
- 130 *Ekattaṃ*. Spk: He asks whether it has a permanent nature (*niccasabhāva*); the first and third views are forms of the eternalist view (*sassatadiṭṭhi*).
- 131 *Puthuttaṃ*. Spk: This means a nature different from the previous nature; the second and fourth views are forms of the annihilationist view (*ucchedadiṭṭhi*).
- 132 The bracketed passages here and below are enclosed in brackets in all three eds., with notes to the effect that they are not found in certain eds. (Se says they are not found in the Thai ed. or in Sinhalese mss). It is really necessary to exclude them, for if they are included nothing would distinguish this sutta from the following one. Spk confirms this with its comment on 12:50 that this sutta differs from the preceding one only by stating the two methods together (*dve nayā ekato vuttā*), on which Spk-pṭ remarks: “This is said because the method stated in the ninth sutta, beginning ‘When there is consciousness, name-and-form comes to be,’ is included by the method stated in the tenth sutta, beginning ‘When there is ignorance, volitional formations come to be.’”
- 133 This *vagga* is entitled *Dukkhavagga* in Be and Se, but *Rukkhavagga* in Ee.
- 134 *Kittāvātā ... bhikkhu parivimaṃsamāno parivimaṃseyya sabbaso sammā dukkhakkhayāya*. Spk glosses *parivimaṃsamāno* with *upaparikkhamāno*.
- 135 *Jarāmarāṇanirodhasārūppagāmini paṭipadā*. Spk: *The way leading on that is in conformity with the cessation of aging-and-death* means the way leading on by its conformation with the cessation of aging-and-death, being similar (to cessation) by reason of its undefiled nature, its purity.

In the repetition series just below, Ee omits *jāti panāyaṃ kinnidānā*, no doubt an editorial oversight.

- 136 Spk: *A meritorious volitional formation (puññaṃ saṅkhāraṃ)* is the thirteen kinds of volition (i.e., the volitions of the eight wholesome sense-sphere cittas and the five wholesome cittas of the form sphere; see n. 7). *Consciousness fares on to the meritorious (puññūpagaṃ hoti viññāṇaṃ)*: the kammic consciousness becomes associated with a meritorious kamma, the resultant consciousness with the fruits of merit. *A demeritorious volitional formation (apuññaṃ saṅkhāraṃ)* is the twelve kinds of volition (i.e., in the twelve unwholesome cittas; see n. 7). *An imperturbable volitional formation (āneñjaṃ saṅkhāraṃ)*: the four kinds of volition (i.e., in the four wholesome cittas of the formless sphere). And here by mentioning the three kinds of kammic formations, the twelve-factored principle of conditionality is implied. To this extent the round of existence is shown.

An analysis of these three types of volitional formations is at Vibh 135. At MN II 262–63 the Buddha explains in detail how *viññāṇa* becomes *āneñjūpaga*.

- 137 *Paritassati* clearly represents Skt *paritṛṣyati*, “to crave, to thirst for,” and is connected etymologically with *taṇhā*. However, in Pāli (and perhaps in MIA dialects generally) the verbal stem has become conflated with *tasati* = to fear, to tremble, and thus its noun derivatives such as *paritasanā* and *paritasita* acquire the sense of nouns derived from *tasati*. This convergence of meanings, already evident in the Nikāyas, is made explicit in the commentaries. I have tried to capture both nuances by rendering the verb “to be agitated” and the noun “agitation.”

Here Spk glosses *na paritassati*: “He is not agitated with the agitation of craving (*taṇhāparitassanā*) or the agitation of fear (*bhaya-paritassanā*); the meaning is, he does not crave and does not fear.” Neither Spk nor Spk-pṭ comment on *parinibbāyati*, but what is meant is obviously the attainment of *kilesaparinibbāna*, the full quenching of defilements, on which see the General Introduction, pp. 49–50. On the arahant’s reviewing knowledge, see I, n. 376.

- 138 Spk: After the arahant’s reviewing knowledge has been shown, this passage is stated to show his constant dwelling (*satatavihāra*). The passage recurs, but with a different simile, at 22:88, 36:7, 8, and 54:8.

- 139 Spk: A feeling terminating with the body (*kāyapariyantikaṃ vedanaṃ*) is one delimited by the body (*kāyapariyantikaṃ vedanaṃ*); a feeling terminating with life (*jīvitapariyantikaṃ vedanaṃ*) is one delimited by life. As long as the body with its five sense doors continues, the feelings occurring at the five sense doors continue; as long as life continues, the feelings occurring at the mind door continue.
- 140 Spk: Will become cool right here (*idh' eva ... sītibhavissanti*): Right here, without having gone elsewhere by way of rebirth, they will become cool, subject to no further occurrence, devoid of the palpitation and disturbance of their occurrence.
- 141 The unusual use of the plural *sarirāni* here mirrors the unusual use of the plural *kapillāni* to mean potsherds. Spk glosses *sarirāni* as *dhātusarirāni*, bodily elements, which Spk-pt identifies as the bones (*aṭṭhikakaṅkala*). *Kapilla* usually means a pot or a bowl, but Spk says the plural here denotes potsherds bound together along with the rim.  
Spk elaborates the simile: The blazing potter's oven represents the three realms of existence, the potter the meditator, and his rod the knowledge of the path of arahantship. The smooth piece of ground represents Nibbāna. The time when the potter removes the hot clay pot from the oven and places it on the ground is like the time when the meditator, having attained the supreme fruit of arahantship, removes his individual form from the four realms of misery and places it on the surface of Nibbāna by way of fruition attainment. Just as the hot clay pot (does not break up at once), so the arahant does not attain parinibbāna on the same day he reaches arahantship. He lives on for fifty or sixty years, striving to sustain the Buddha's dispensation. When he reaches his last thought-moment, with the breakup of the aggregates he attains parinibbāna by the Nibbāna element without residue. Then, as with the potsherds of the pot, only inanimate bodily remains are left behind.
- 142 Spk: "Would a rebirth-consciousness (*paṭisandhivīññāṇa*) be discerned?"
- 143 Spk: "Just this is the end of the suffering of the round, its termination, that is, Nibbāna."

- 144 *Upādānīyesu dhammesu*. Spk: In the phenomena of the three planes, which are the conditions for the four kinds of clinging. On *upādānīyā dhammā*, see 22:121, 35:110, 123, where clinging (*upādāna*) is explained simply as desire and lust (*chandarāga*) for the things that can be clung to.
- 145 Spk: The great bonfire represents the three realms of existence; the man tending the fire, the blind worldling attached to the round. His casting of fuel into the fire is like the worldling who contemplates gratification, creating wholesome and unwholesome kamma through the six sense doors on account of craving. The increase of the bonfire is like the blind worldling's repeated production of the suffering of the round by the accumulation of kamma.
- 146 Spk: A benefactor might come along and teach the man how to extinguish the fire, and the man would follow his advice. The benefactor represents the Buddha; his advice, the explanation of a meditation subject and an exhortation to gain release from suffering. The time the man follows the instructions is like the time the meditator is sitting in an empty hut applying insight to the phenomena of the three planes. The time when the man has bathed and adorned himself and is sitting tranquil and happy represents the time when the meditator, having cleansed himself of defilements by the noble path, sits absorbed in the attainment of fruition having Nibbāna as object. The time when the great bonfire is extinguished represents the time when the arahant's aggregates break up and he passes away into the Nibbāna element without residue.
- 147 *Samyojanīyesu dhammesu*. Spk: The conditions for the ten fetters. On "things that can fetter," see 22:120, 35:109, 122. Here too "the fetter" is explained simply as desire and lust.
- 148 Spk: The great tree represents the round of existence with its three planes; the roots, the sense bases; the sending up of the sap through the roots, the building up of kamma through the six sense doors; the stability of the tree, the blind worldling's long continuation in saṃsāra as he repeatedly sustains the round by building up kamma.
- 149 Spk: The man wishing to destroy the great tree represents the meditator, his shovel (or axe) knowledge, the basket concentration. The time the tree is cut down at its root is

like the occasion when wisdom arises in the meditator as he attends to his meditation subject. The cutting of the tree into pieces is like attending to the body in brief by way of the four great elements; the splitting of the pieces is like attending to the body in detail in forty-two aspects (Vism 348–51; Ppn 11:31–38); reducing the pieces to slivers is like the discernment of name-and-form by way of derived form and consciousness; cutting up the roots is like the search for the conditions of name-and-form. The time of burning the slivers is like the time when the meditator attains the supreme fruit (of arahantship). The collecting of the ashes is like the arahant's life up to the time of his parinibbāna. The winnowing of the ashes, or their being carried away by the river, is like the stilling of the round when the arahant attains parinibbāna by the Nibbāna element without residue.

- 150 *Nāmarūpassa avakkanti*. Spk does not comment, but in the light of other suttas we might assume the statement to mean that the craving that underlies “contemplating gratification in things that can fetter” is the principal sustaining cause for the process of rebirth, which begins with “the descent of name-and-form.” See in this connection 12:39, 12:64, and n. 115.
- 151 *Viññāṇassa avakkanti*. At DN II 63,2–4 it is said that if consciousness were not to descend into the mother's womb, name-and-form would not take shape in the womb. The “descent of the embryo” (*gabbhassāvakkanti*)—spoken of at MN I 265,35–266,6, II 156,29–157,3, and AN I 176,31—presumably refers to the descent of the consciousness that initiates conception.
- 152 The opening of this sutta as far as “the nether world, saṃsāra” is nearly identical with the opening of the Mahānidāna Suttanta (DN No. 15), which differs only in including the aorist *avaca*. The present sutta is a composite, made up of the opening of the Mahānidāna grafted on to the body of 12:55. Spk here incorporates the long opening of the commentary to the Mahānidāna, for which see Bodhi, *The Great Discourse on Causation*, pp. 58–73. Spk, however, does not attempt to explain how the same opening could have such a different sequel.

- 153 Spk: *Uninstructed (assutavā)*: devoid of learning, interrogation, and discrimination regarding the aggregates, elements, sense bases, conditionality, the establishments of mindfulness, etc. *Worldling (puthujjana)* is a “many-being,” so called because of generating many diverse defilements, etc. (*puthūnaṃ nānappakārānaṃ kilesādināṃ jananādikāraṇehi puthujjano*); and also because he is included among the many people (*puthūnaṃ janānaṃ antogadhattā*), in number beyond reckoning, who are engaged in a low Dhamma contrary to the Dhamma of the noble ones. Or else *puthu* means “reckoned as separate”; the worldling is a person separated from the noble ones, who possess such qualities as virtue, learning, etc. (*puthu vā ayaṃ visuṃ yeva saṅkhaṃ gato; visamsattho silasutādiguṇayuttehi ariyehi jano ti puthujjano*).

This twofold etymology stems from a twofold understanding of Pāli *puthu*: as representing either Vedic *ṛ̥thu* = numerous, many; or *ṛ̥thak* = separate, distinct. The BHS form *ṛ̥thagjana* indicates a preference for the latter derivation, though the Pāli commentators tend to take the former as primary.

- 154 *Cittaṃ iti pi mano iti pi viññāṇaṃ iti pi*. Cp. DN I 21,21: *Yaṃ ... idaṃ vuccati cittaṃ ti vā mano ti vā viññāṇaṃ ti vā*. Spk says these are all names for the mind base (*manāyatana*). Normally I render both *citta* and *mano* as “mind,” but since English has only two words of common usage to denote the faculty of cognition—“mind” and “consciousness”—here I am compelled to use “mentality” as a makeshift for *mano*. While technically the three terms have the same denotation, in the Nikāyas they are generally used in distinct contexts. As a rough generalization, *viññāṇa* signifies the particularizing awareness through a sense faculty (as in the standard sixfold division of *viññāṇa* into eye-consciousness, etc.) as well as the underlying stream of consciousness, which sustains personal continuity through a single life and threads together successive lives (emphasized at 12:38–40). *Mano* serves as the third door of action (along with body and speech) and as the sixth internal sense base (along with the five physical sense bases); as the mind base it coordinates the data of the other five senses and also cognizes mental phenomena (*dhammā*), its own

special class of objects. *Citta* signifies mind as the centre of personal experience, as the subject of thought, volition, and emotion. It is *citta* that needs to be understood, trained, and liberated. For a more detailed discussion, see Hamilton, *Identity and Experience*, chap. 5.

- 155 Spk: It is held to (*ajjhosita*) by being swallowed up by craving; appropriated (*mamāyita*) by being appropriated by craving; and grasped (*parāmaṭṭha*) by being grasped through views. "This is mine" (*etaṃ mama*): the grip of craving (*taṇhāgāha*); by this the 108 thoughts of craving are included (see AN II 212,31–213,2). "This I am" (*eso 'ham asmi*): the grip of conceit (*mānagāha*); by this the nine kinds of conceit are included (see I, n. 37). "This is my self" (*eso me attā*): the grip of views (*diṭṭhigāha*); by this the sixty-two views are included (see DN I 12–38).
- 156 *Because this body ... is seen standing for a hundred years, or even longer.* Spk: (Query:) Why does the Blessed One say this? Isn't it true that the physical form present in the first period of life does not last through to the middle period, and the form present in the middle period does not last through to the last period?... Isn't it true that formations break up right on the spot, stage by stage, section by section, just as sesamum seeds pop when thrown on a hot pan? (Reply:) This is true, but the body is said to endure for a long time in continuous sequence (*paveṇivasena*), just as a lamp is said to burn all night as a connected continuity (*paveṇisambandhavasena*) even though the flame ceases right where it burns without passing over to the next section of the wick.
- 157 Spk: *By day and by night (rattiyā ca divasassa ca)*: This is a genitive in the locative sense, i.e., during the night and during the day. *Arises as one thing and ceases as another (aññadeva uppajjati, aññaṃ nirujjhati)*: The meaning is that (the mind) that arises and ceases during the day is other than (the mind) that arises and ceases during the night. The statement should not be taken to mean that one thing arises and something altogether different, which had not arisen, ceases. "Day and night" is said by way of continuity, taking a continuity of lesser duration than the previous one (i.e., the one stated for the body). But one *citta* is not

able to endure for a whole day or a whole night. Even in the time of a fingersnap many hundred thousand of *koṭis* of *cittas* arise and cease (1 *koṭi* = 10 million). The simile of the monkey should be understood thus: The "grove of objects" is like the forest grove. The mind arising in the grove of objects is like the monkey wandering in the forest grove. The mind's taking hold of an object is like the monkey grabbing hold of a branch. Just as the monkey, roaming through the forest, leaves behind one branch and grabs hold of another, so the mind, roaming through the grove of objects, arises sometimes grasping hold of a visible object, sometimes a sound, sometimes the past, sometimes the present or future, sometimes an internal object, sometimes an external object. When the monkey does not find a (new) branch it does not descend and sit on the ground, but sits holding to a single leafy branch. So too, when the mind is roaming through the grove of objects, it cannot be said that it arises without holding to an object; rather, it arises holding to an object of a single kind.

It should be noted that neither the sutta nor the commentary interprets the monkey simile here as saying that the untrained mind is as restless as a monkey; the point, rather, is that the mind is always dependent on an object.

- 158 Spk explains the order of this discourse thus: First, because these bhikkhus were excessively obsessed with form, the Buddha spoke as if it were improper to grasp form (because its growth and decline are seen) but not improper to grasp mind. Next (in the passage beginning, "It would be better to take as self the body") he speaks as if it were proper to grasp the body but improper to grasp the mind (because of its incessant change). Now, in the present passage, he speaks with the aim of removing their obsession with both body and mind.
- 159 I read with Se and Ee *nānābhāvā vinikkhepā*, as against Be *nānākatavinibbhogā*. The simile recurs at 36:10 (IV 215,22–25) and 48:39 (V 212,21–24); in both places Be has the same reading as Se and Ee here. Spk: The sense base is like the lower firestick, the object is like the upper firestick, contact is like the friction of the two, and feeling is like the heat element.
- 160 A translation of the long commentary to this sutta is

included in Nyanaponika, *The Four Nutriment of Life*. Spk explains that the Buddha spoke this discourse because the Bhikkhu Saṅgha was receiving abundant almsfood and other requisites, and the Buddha wanted to place before the bhikkhus “a mirror of the Dhamma for their self-control and restraint, so that, contemplating on it again and again, the bhikkhus of the future will make use of the four requisites only after due reflection.” The opening paragraph is identical with that of 12:11.

- 161 Spk: Edible food should be considered as similar to son’s flesh by way of the ninefold repulsiveness: the repulsiveness of having to go out for it, of having to seek it, of eating it, of the bodily secretions, of the receptacle for the food (i.e., the stomach), of digestion and indigestion, of smearing, and of excretion. (For details see Vism 342–46; Ppn 11:5–26; there ten aspects are mentioned, the additional one being “fruit,” i.e., the repulsive parts of the body produced by food.) A bhikkhu should use his almsfood in the way the couple eat their son’s flesh: without greed and desire, without pickiness, without gorging themselves, without selfishness, without delusion about what they are eating, without longing to eat such food again, without hoarding, without pride, without disdain, and without quarreling.
- 162 Spk: *When the nutriment edible food is fully understood*: It is fully understood by these three kinds of full understanding: (i) the full understanding of the known (*ñātapariññā*); (ii) the full understanding by scrutinization (*tiraṇapariññā*); and (iii) the full understanding as abandonment (*pahānapariññā*). Therein, (i) a bhikkhu understands: “This nutriment edible food is ‘form with nutritive essence as the eighth’ (see n. 18) together with its base. This impinges on the tongue-sensitivity, which is dependent on the four great elements. Thus nutriment, tongue-sensitivity, and the four elements—these things are the form aggregate. The contact pentad (contact, feeling, perception, volition, consciousness) arisen in one who discerns this—these are the four mental aggregates. All these five aggregates are, in brief, name-and-form.” Next he searches out the conditions for these phenomena and sees dependent origination

in direct and reverse order. By thus seeing name-and-form with its conditions as it actually is, the nutriment of edible food is fully understood by *the full understanding of the known*. (ii) Next he ascribes the three characteristics to that same name-and-form and explores it by way of the seven contemplations (of impermanence, suffering, nonself, revulsion, dispassion, cessation, and relinquishment—see Vism 607; Ppn 20:4). Thus it is fully understood by *the full understanding by scrutinization*. (iii) It is fully understood by *the full understanding as abandonment* when it is fully understood by the path of nonreturning, which cuts off desire and lust for that same name-and-form.

*Lust for the five cords of sensual pleasure is fully understood*: It is fully understood by (i) *the singlefold full understanding (ekapariññā)*, namely, that the craving for tastes arisen at the tongue door is the same craving that arises at all five sense doors; (ii) *the comprehensive full understanding (sabba-pariññā)*, namely, that lust for all five cords of sensual pleasure arises even in regard to a single morsel of food placed in the bowl (for food stimulates desire in all five senses); (iii) *the root full understanding (mūlapariññā)*, namely, that nutriment is the root for all five types of sensual lust, since sensual desire thrives when people are well fed.

- 163 Spk: *There is no fetter bound by which*: This teaching is taken only as far as the path of nonreturning; but if one develops insight into the five aggregates by way of these same forms, etc., it is possible to explain it as far as arahantship.
- 164 Spk: Just as a cow, seeing the danger of being eaten by the creatures living in the places she might be exposed to, would not wish to be honoured and venerated, or to be massaged, rubbed, given hot baths, etc., so a bhikkhu, seeing the danger of being eaten by the defilement-creatures rooted in the nutriment contact, becomes desireless towards contact in the three planes of existence.
- 165 Spk explains the full understanding of contact in the same way as for edible food, except that contact is taken as the starting point for the discernment of the five aggregates. When contact is fully understood *the three feelings are fully understood* because they are rooted in contact and associated

- with it. The teaching by way of the nutriment contact is carried as far as arahantship.
- 166 Spk: The charcoal pit represents the round of existence with its three planes; the man wanting to live, the foolish worldling attached to the round; the two strong men, wholesome and unwholesome kamma. When they grab the man by both arms and drag him towards the pit, this is like the worldling's accumulation of kamma; for the accumulated kamma drags along a rebirth. The pain from falling into the charcoal pit is like the suffering of the round.
- 167 Spk: *The three kinds of craving are fully understood*: The three kinds of craving are craving for sensual pleasures, craving for existence, and craving for extermination. They are fully understood because craving is the root of mental volition. Here too the teaching is carried as far as arahantship by way of mental volition.
- 168 Spk: The king represents kamma; the criminal, the worldling; the three hundred spears, the rebirth-consciousness. The time the king gives his command is like the time the worldling is driven towards rebirth by King Kamma. The pain from being struck by the spears is like the resultant suffering in the course of existence once rebirth has taken place.
- 169 Spk: *Name-and-form* is fully understood when consciousness is fully understood because it is rooted in consciousness and arises along with it. By way of consciousness too the teaching is carried as far as arahantship.
- 170 Spk explains lust (*rāga*), delight (*nandī*), and craving (*taṇhā*) as synonyms for greed (*lobha*). *Consciousness becomes established there and comes to growth (patitṭhitam tattha viññānam virūlham)*: having impelled a kamma, it "becomes established and comes to growth" through its ability to drag along a rebirth. On the establishing of consciousness, see 12:38 and n. 112, and on the descent of name-and-form, 12:39 and n. 115.
- 171 Spk: *Wherever (yattha)* is a locative referring to the round of existence with its three planes. Or else, in all instances, this locative is used with reference to the correlative term in the preceding phrase. [Spk-pt: This locative expression *yattha ... tattha* is used with reference to each preceding phrase, which is its sphere of application.]

- 172 *Atthi tattha saṅkhārānaṃ vuddhi*. Spk: This is said with reference to the volitional formations that are the cause of a future round of existence for one abiding in the present round of results.
- The variation here on the usual sequence is very interesting. When "the growth of volitional formations" is placed *between* name-and-form and future existence, this implies that the expression corresponds to three critical terms of the standard formula—craving, clinging, and (kamma-)existence—with *āyatim punabbhavābhiniḅbatti* signifying the process of entering the new existence.
- 173 Spk: The painter represents kamma with its adjuncts [Spk-pt: craving and ignorance, and time and destination, etc.]; the panel, wall, or canvas represents the round with its three realms. As the painter creates a figure on the panel, so kamma with its adjuncts creates a form in the realms of existence. As the figure created by an unskilled painter is ugly, deformed, and disagreeable, so the kamma performed with a mind dissociated from knowledge gives rise to an ugly, deformed, disagreeable figure. But as the figure created by a skilled painter is beautiful and well shaped, so the kamma performed with a mind associated with knowledge gives rise to a beautiful and comely figure.
- 174 Spk: The kamma of the arahant is similar to the sunbeam. However, the sunbeam does exist, but because there is no place for it to settle it is said to be unestablished (*appatitṭhitā*). But the arahant's kamma is said to be unestablished because it is nonexistent. Although he has a body, etc., no wholesome or unwholesome kamma is thereby created. His deeds are merely functional, not productive of results (*kiriyaṃmatte thatvā avipākaṃ hoti*). In this connection, see 12:25 and n. 81.
- It should be noted that Spk explains the statement that the arahant's *consciousness* is unestablished to mean that his kamma is unestablished. This seems too free an interpretation. Nevertheless, I think it would be wrong to interpret the sutta as saying that after his parinibbāna the arahant's consciousness persists in some mode that can only be described as unestablished. The present passage is clearly speaking of the arahant's consciousness *while he is alive*. Its purport is not that an "unestablished consciousness"

remains after the arahant's parinibbāna, but that his consciousness, being devoid of lust, does not "become established in" the four nutriments in any way that might generate a future existence.

175 Opening as at 12:10.

176 Dependent origination is formulated in identical terms in the account of the Buddha Vipassī's enlightenment at DN II 32,22-30. For the Buddha's explanation of the mutual dependency of consciousness and name-and-form, see DN II 62,38-63,26. A translation of the detailed explanation at Sv II 501-3 with excerpts from Sv-pt can be found in Bodhi, *The Great Discourse on Causation*, pp. 84-89. See too below 12:67.

Spk: *When there is name-and-form, consciousness comes to be:* Here it should be said, "When there are volitional formations, consciousness comes to be," and "When there is ignorance, volitional formations come to be." But neither is mentioned. Why not? Because ignorance and volitional formations belong to a third existence and this insight is not connected with them (*avijjāsaṅkhārā hi tatiyo bhavo, tehi saddhīm ayaṃ vipassanā na ghaṭṭiyati*). For the Great Man (the Bodhisatta) undertakes insight by way of the present five-constituent existence (*pañcavokārabhava*, i.e., existence where all five aggregates are present).

(Query:) Isn't it true that one cannot become enlightened as long as ignorance and volitional formations are unseen? (Reply:) True, one cannot. But these are seen by way of craving, clinging, and existence. If a man pursuing a lizard has seen it enter a pit, he would descend, dig up the place where it entered, catch it, and depart; he wouldn't dig up some other place where the lizard can't be found. Similarly, when the Great Man was sitting on the seat of enlightenment, he searched for the conditions beginning with aging-and-death. Having traced the conditions for the phenomena back to name-and-form, he searched for its condition too and saw it to be consciousness. Then, realizing "So much is the range of exploration by way of five-constituent existence," he reversed his insight (*vipassanaṃ paṭinivattesi*). Beyond this there is still the pair, ignorance and volitional formations, which are like the unbroken region of the

empty pit. But because they have been included by insight earlier (under craving, etc.?), they do not undergo exploration separately; hence he does not mention them.

177 *This consciousness turns back (paccudāvattati kho idaṃ viññāṇāṃ).* Spk: What is the consciousness that turns back here? The rebirth-consciousness and the insight-consciousness. Rebirth-consciousness turns back from its condition, insight-consciousness from its object. Neither overcomes name-and-form, goes further than name-and-form.

Spk-pt: *From its condition:* Rebirth-consciousness turns back from volitional formations—the special cause for consciousness—which has not been mentioned; it does not turn back from all conditions, as name-and-form is stated as the condition for consciousness. *From its object:* from ignorance and volitional formations as object, or from the past existence as object.

It is possible the Bodhisatta had been seeking a self of the Upaniṣadic type, a self-subsistent subject consisting of pure consciousness that requires nothing but itself in order to exist. His discovery that consciousness is invariably dependent on name-and-form would have disclosed to him the futility of such a quest and thereby shown that even consciousness, the subtlest basis for the sense of self (see 12:61), is conditioned and thus marked by impermanence, suffering, and selflessness.

178 Spk: *To this extent one may be born (ettāvata jāyetha vā), etc.:* With consciousness as a condition for name-and-form, and with name-and-form as a condition for consciousness, to this extent one may be born and undergo rebirth. What is there beyond this that can be born or undergo rebirth? Isn't it just this that is born and undergoes rebirth?

Spk-pt: *To this extent:* that is, by the occurrence of consciousness and name-and-form mutually supporting one another. *One may be born and undergo rebirth:* Though the expression "A being is born and undergoes rebirth" is used, there is nothing that serves as the referent of the designation "a being" apart from consciousness and name-and-form. Hence the commentator says, "What is there beyond this?" *Just this (etadeva):* namely, the pair consciousness and name-and-form.

It might be noted that *jāyetha*, *jiyetha*, etc., are middle-voice optatives in the third person singular. At KS 2:73, C.Rh.D seems to have mistaken them for second person plural optatives in the active voice, while at LDB, pp. 211, 226, Walshe has used a roundabout rendering, presumably to avoid having to identify the forms. For a detailed discussion of the mutual conditionality of consciousness and name-and-form, see Bodhi, *The Great Discourse on Causation*, pp. 18–22.

- 179 The mutual cessation of consciousness and name-and-form is also found in the version at DN II 34,21–35,13. Spk does not comment on the expression “I have discovered the path to enlightenment” (*adhigato kho myāyaṃ maggo bodhāya*), but the corresponding passage of DN is commented upon at Sv II 461,5–8 thus: “*Path*: the path of insight. *To enlighten*: for the awakening to the Four Noble Truths, or for the awakening to Nibbāna. Further, enlightenment is so called because it becomes enlightened (*bujjhati ti bodhi*); this is a name for the noble path. What is meant is (that he has discovered the path) for the sake of that. For the noble path is rooted in the path of insight. Now, making that path explicit, he says, ‘With the cessation of name-and-form,’ and so forth.”

This explanation hinges upon the distinction (only implicit in the Nikāyas) between the mundane preliminary portion of the path (*pubbabhāgaṭṭipadā*), which is the “path of insight,” and the noble supramundane path (*lokuttaramagga*), which directly realizes Nibbāna. Since the supramundane path is identical with enlightenment, the commentary holds that “the path to enlightenment” the Bodhisatta discovered must be the mundane path of insight. In the DN version, having discovered the path to enlightenment, the Bodhisatta Vipassi continues to contemplate the rise and fall of the five aggregates, as a result of which “his mind was liberated from the taints by not clinging.”

- 180 Spk elaborates minutely upon the parable of the ancient city and then draws extensive correspondences between the elements of the parable and their counterparts in the Dhamma.
- 181 At this point *saṅkhārā*, omitted earlier, are finally introduced,

and *avijjā*, their condition, is implied by the mention of “their origin.”

- 182 This passage is also at 51:10 (V 262,9–14). I follow Spk in its explanation of *yāva devamanussehi suppakāsitaṃ*. The point is that, despite the use of the instrumental form *-ehi*, the Dhamma is not proclaimed *by* devas and humans, but “throughout the region (inhabited) by devas and humans in the ten-thousandfold galaxy, within this extent it is well proclaimed, well taught, *by the Tathāgata*” (*yāva dasasahassa-cakkavāle devamanussehi paricchedo atthi, etasmim̐ antare suppakāsitaṃ sudesitaṃ tathāgatenā*). It is possible *-ehi* here is a vestigial Eastern locative plural; see Geiger, *Pāli Grammar*, §80.3.
- 183 Spk: Why did he address the bhikkhus? Because a subtle Dhamma discourse, one stamped with the three characteristics, had presented itself to him. In this country (the Kuru country), it is said, the people had good roots [Spk-pṭ: supporting conditions for achievement of the noble Dhamma] and were wise [Spk-pṭ: with the wisdom of a three-rooted rebirth-consciousness and pragmatic wisdom]. They were capable of penetrating a deep Dhamma talk stamped with the three characteristics. Therefore the Buddha taught here the two Satipaṭṭhāna Suttas (DN No. 22, MN No. 10), the Mahānidāna Sutta (DN No. 15), the Āneṅjasappāya Sutta (MN No. 106), the Cūḷanidāna Sutta (12:60), and other deep suttas.
- 184 *Sammasatha no tumhe bhikkhave antaraṃ sammasan ti*. Spk explains “inward exploration” as internal exploration of conditions (*abbhantaraṃ paccayasammasanaṃ*). In the exegetical literature, *sammasana-ñāṇa* is a technical term for the comprehension of the five aggregates by way of the three characteristics (see Paṭis I 53–54, quoted at Vism 607–8; Ppn 20:6–20). Here, however, *sammasana* is used in a sense that comes closer to the exegetical notion of *paccaya-pariggaha*, “discernment of conditions,” as at Vism 598–600; Ppn 19:1–13.
- 185 Spk: The Blessed One wanted him to answer by way of conditionality, but he could not grasp the Master’s intention and answered by way of the thirty-two aspects (of bodily foulness).

- 186 As at 12:51, but with a different sequel. I read with *Be idaṃ kho dukkhaṃ kimnidānaṃ*. Ee here is unsatisfactory.
- 187 *Idaṃ kho dukkhaṃ upadhinidānaṃ*, etc. Spk: It has its source in "acquisition as the aggregates" (*khandhupadhinidānaṃ*); for here the five aggregates are intended by "acquisition." On *upadhi*, see I, n. 21. The standard exegetical analysis of *upadhi* is fourfold: as defilements, aggregates, sensual pleasures, and volitional formations. As *upadhi* is conditioned by *taṇhā*, one might contend that here *upadhi* is synonymous with *upādāna*. Spk, however, does not endorse this interpretation, and the fact that *upadhi* is declared the basis for aging-and-death and the other types of suffering supports Spk's gloss *khandhupadhi*. Possibly a double meaning is intended: *upadhi* as the aggregates is the immediate condition for aging-and-death, while *upadhi* as equivalent to *upādāna* is the remote condition for existence and birth, which in turn is the remote condition for aging-and-death. On *upadhi* as the origin of suffering, see Sn p. 141,7-8: *yaṃ kiñci dukkhaṃ sambhoti sabbaṃ upadhīpaccayā*.
- 188 *Upadhinirodhasārūppagāmini paṭipadā*. As at 12:51; see n. 135.
- 189 For a more elaborate treatment, see the Mahāsatipaṭṭhāna Sutta, DN II 308,6-309,11.
- 190 The same simile, but with slight differences in wording, is at MN I 316,10-23.
- 191 Spk: The bronze cup of beverage represents worldly objects of a pleasant and agreeable nature. The man oppressed by the heat represents the worldling attached to the round; the man who invites him to drink, the people who invite the worldling to enjoy objects in the world with a pleasant and agreeable nature. The man in charge of the drink, who explains its virtues and dangers, is like a spiritual friend, one's preceptor, teacher, etc., who explains the gratification and danger in the five cords of sensual pleasure. Just as the man in the simile suddenly, without reflection, drinks the beverage and meets death or deadly suffering, so the worldling, eager to enjoy sensual pleasures, spurns the advice of his preceptor and teacher, gives up the training, and reverts to the lower life. There he commits a crime and is punished by the king, and in the next life he experiences great suffering in the four realms of misery.

- 192 Spk: In the counterpart, the man oppressed by the heat represents the meditator at the time he is still attached to the round. When he reflects, rejects the beverage, and dispels his thirst with some other drink, this is like the bhikkhu's abiding by the advice of his preceptor and teacher, guarding the sense doors, gradually developing insight, and attaining the fruit of arahantship. The other four beverages are like the four paths. As the man dispels his thirst with the other four beverages and goes happily wherever he wants, so the arahant, having drunk of the four paths, dispels craving and goes to the region of Nibbāna.
- 193 Mahākoṭṭhita was the foremost disciple in the analytical knowledges (*paṭisambhidā*). He often appears in dialogue with Sāriputta. As C.Rh.D remarks (KS 2:79, n. 1), since both elders were arahants it is likely these dialogues were intended as "lessons" for their students rather than as genuine inquiries.
- 194 The underlying presuppositions of the four alternatives are eternalism, annihilationism, partial-eternalism, and fortuitous origination; see n. 37.
- 195 On the reciprocal conditionality of consciousness and name-and-form, see 12:65.
- 196 Cp. 12:16. Spk: *On thirty-six grounds*: for thirty-six reasons, obtained by taking three cases in relation to each of the twelve terms. The first is the quality of being a speaker on the Dhamma, the second the practice, the third the fruit of the practice. By the first method the excellence of the teaching is discussed, by the second the plane of the trainee (*sekha*), by the third the plane of the arahant (*asekha*, one beyond training).
- 197 Spk does not identify these elders. Saviṭṭha appears at AN I 118-19, Nārada at AN III 57-62.
- 198 These five grounds for the acceptance of a thesis recur at 35:153 and are examined critically by the Buddha at MN II 170,26-171,25; see too MN II 218,15-21. Here they are being contrasted with personal knowledge (*paccattameva ñāṇa*). For a detailed discussion, see Jayatilleke, *Early Buddhist Theory of Knowledge*, pp. 182-88, 274-76.
- Spk: One person accepts something through *faith* (*saddhā*) by placing faith in another and accepting what he

says as true. Another accepts something through *personal preference* (*ruci*) when he approves of some thesis by reflecting on it and then takes it to be true. One accepts a thesis by *oral tradition* (*anusava*) when one thinks: "This has come down from ancient times by oral tradition, so it must be true." For another, as he thinks, a certain thesis appears valid, and he concludes, "So it is": he accepts it by *reasoned reflection* (*ākāraparivaitakka*). (Jayatilleke discusses *ākāra* as meaning "reason" at p. 274.) In the fifth case, as one reflects, a view arises by pondering some hypothesis; this is *acceptance of a view after pondering it* (*diṭṭhinijjhānakkhanti*).

- 199 *Bhavanirodho nibbānaṃ*. Spk: Nibbāna is the cessation of the five aggregates.
- 200 Spk: The elder Musila was an arahant, but without saying whether or not it was so he just kept silent.
- 201 Spk: Why did he speak up? It is said that he reflected thus: "This proposition—'Nibbāna is the cessation of existence'—can be understood even by trainees. But this elder (Saviṭṭha) places that one (Musila) on the plane of the arahant. I will make him understand this matter correctly."
- 202 Spk: *Clearly seen ... with correct wisdom*: clearly seen with path wisdom together with insight. *I am not an arahant*: he indicates this because he stands on the path of nonreturning. But his knowledge that "Nibbāna is the cessation of existence" is a type of reviewing knowledge (*paccavekkhaṇāñāṇa*) apart from the nineteen (regular) types of reviewing knowledge (see *Vism* 676; *Ppn* 22:19–21).
- 203 *Na ca kāyena phusitvā vihareyya*, lit. "but he would not dwell having contacted it with the body." Spk glosses: "He would not be able to draw out the water."
- 204 Spk: The seeing of water in the well represents the seeing of Nibbāna by the nonreturner. The man afflicted by heat represents the nonreturner; the water bucket, the path of arahantship. As the man oppressed by heat sees water in the well, the nonreturner knows by reviewing knowledge, "There exists a breakthrough to the path of arahantship" (reading with *Se arahattaphalābhisamaya*). But as the man lacking the bucket cannot draw out the water and touch it with the body, so the nonreturner, lacking the path of arahantship, cannot sit down and become absorbed in the

attainment of the fruit of arahantship, which has Nibbāna as its object.

- It would be a misunderstanding of Nārada's reply to take it as a rejoinder to Musila's tacit claim that he is an arahant (the interpretation adopted by Gombrich, *How Buddhism Began*, pp. 128–29). The point is not that Musila was unjustified in consenting to that title, but that Saviṭṭha drew an incorrect inference, for he held the wrong belief that the defining mark of an arahant is the understanding of dependent origination and the nature of Nibbāna. This understanding, rather, is common property of the trainee and the arahant. What distinguishes the arahant from the trainee is not his insight into dependent origination (and other principles of the Dhamma) but the fact that he has used this insight to eradicate all defilements and has thereby gained access to a unique meditative state (called in the commentaries *arahattaphalāsamāpatti*, the fruition attainment of arahantship) in which he can dwell "touching the deathless element with his body." At 48:53, too, the expression *kāyena phusitvā viharati* highlights the essential difference between the *sekha* and the *asekha*; see *V*, n. 238. For parallel texts on the difference between the stream-enterer and the arahant, see 22:109–110 (stated in terms of the five aggregates) and 48:2–5, 26–27, 32–33 (in terms of the faculties).
- 205 In all three eds. the question begins with *evaṃvādi tvam* and the reply with *evaṃvādāham*. However, since it was Nārada who just spoke, it seems we should read the question portion as *evaṃvādiṃ tvam* and resolve *evaṃvādāham* in the reply into *evaṃvādiṃ aham*. Neither Spk nor Spk-pṭ offers any help here, but a note in *Be* of the text suggests this amendment. The *Ee* reading of a parallel passage at 55:23 (*V* 374,24–27) has the reading I prefer, though there *Be* and *Se* have the same reading as here. At *MN* II 214,14 foll. we find *evaṃvādāham* in a context where it would have to be resolved as an accusative plural, *evaṃvādino* (*nigaṇṭhe*) *aham*, which further supports my proposal regarding the present passage.
- 206 This sutta is discussed in relation to its Chinese counterpart by Gombrich, *How Buddhism Began*, pp. 123–27.  
Spk: Susima had approached the Venerable Ānanda,

thinking, "He is the most learned disciple, and also the Teacher frequently reports to him the Dhamma he has spoken on various occasions; under him I will be able to learn the Dhamma quickly." Ānanda brought him to the Buddha because he knew that Susima had been a teacher in his own right and he was apprehensive that after going forth he might try to bring discredit to the Dispensation. The Buddha understood that Susima's motive in taking ordination was "theft of the Dhamma," which made his entry into the Dispensation impure, but he foresaw that Susima would shortly undergo a change of heart and attain arahantship. Hence he instructed Ānanda to give him the going forth.

It is puzzling that here, when it was most necessary to do so, the Buddha makes no mention of the probationary period normally imposed on wanderers of other sects who wish to enter the Buddhist order; perhaps the Buddha had foreseen that Susima would have been discouraged by such a stipulation and would not have applied for admission, thus losing the chance to gain liberation.

- 207 Spk: Those bhikkhus, having received a meditation subject from the Teacher, entered upon the three-month rains residence, and during the rains, striving and struggling, they attained arahantship. At the end of the rains they went to the Teacher and informed him of their attainment. When Susima heard about this he thought: "Final knowledge (*aññā*) must be the supreme standard in this Dispensation, the essential personal transmission of the teacher (*paramapamāṇaṃ sārabhūtā ācariyamuṭṭhi*, lit. 'teacher's fist'). Let me inquire and find out about it." Therefore he approached those bhikkhus.

The stock description of the five *abhiññās* that follows is commented upon in detail in *Vism*, chaps. 12 and 13.

- 208 Spk-pt: The formless jhānas and deliverance from perception (*ārūppajjhāna-saññāvimokkhā*).
- 209 The text enclosed in brackets in Ee should be deleted and the question read as in Be and Se thus: *Ettha dāni āyaśman-to idaṇ ca veyyākaraṇaṃ imesaṇ ca dhammānaṃ asamāpatti, idaṃ no āvuso kathan ti*. I take the *no* to be merely an interrogative particle (= *nu*).

- 210 *Paññāvimuttā kho mayaṃ āvuso Susīma*. Spk: He shows: "Friend, we are without jhāna, dry-insighters, liberated simply by wisdom" (*āvuso mayaṃ nijjhānakā sukkhavipas-sakā paññāmatteva vimuttā*). Spk-pt: *Liberated simply by wisdom: not both-ways-liberated (na ubhatobhāgavimuttā)*.

While Spk seems to be saying that those bhikkhus did not have any jhānas, the sutta itself establishes only that they lacked the *abhiññās* and *ārūppas*; nothing is said about whether or not they had achieved the four jhānas. It is significant that Susima's questions do not extend to the jhānas, and it is even possible (though contrary to the commentaries) that *nijjhānaka* should be understood, not as the deprivative "without jhāna," but as an agent noun from *nijjhāna*, pondering, hence "ponderers." In any case, the sutta goes no further than to distinguish the *paññāvimutta* arahant from other arahants who have the six *abhiññās* and the formless attainments, and thus it offers nothing radically different from the Nikāyas as a whole.

The commentaries explain the *paññāvimutta* arahant to be of five kinds: those who attain one or another of the four jhānas, and the "dry-insighter" (*sukkhavipassaka*) who lacks mundane jhāna but still has the supramundane jhāna inseparable from the noble path (see Sv II 512,19–28). On the contrast between *paññāvimutta* and *ubhatobhāgavimutta* arahants, see MN I 477–78; Pp 14, 190–91.

- 211 *Pubbe kho Susīma dhammaṭṭhitiñāṇaṃ, pacchā nibbāne ñāṇaṃ*. Spk: Insight knowledge is "knowledge of the stability of the Dhamma," which arises first. At the end of the course of insight, path knowledge arises; that is "knowledge of Nibbāna," which arises later. Spk-pt: The "stability of the Dhamma" is the stableness of phenomena, their intrinsic nature (*dhammānaṃ ṭhitatā taṃsabhāvata*): namely, impermanence, suffering, nonself. Knowledge of that is "knowledge of the stability of the Dhamma." See too n. 51, n. 105. A chapter on *dhammaṭṭhitiñāṇa* is at Paṭi I 50–52, where it is explained as the knowledge of the relations between each pair of factors in *paṭicca-samuppāda*.
- 212 Spk: Why is this said? For the purpose of showing the arising of knowledge thus even without concentration. This is what is meant: "Susīma, the path and fruit are not the issue

of concentration (*samādhinissanda*), nor the advantage brought about by concentration (*samādhi-ānisamsā*), nor the outcome of concentration (*samādhinipphatti*). They are the issue of insight (*vipassanā*), the advantage brought about by insight, the outcome of insight. Therefore, whether you understand or not, first comes knowledge of the stability of the Dhamma, afterwards knowledge of Nibbāna."

Spk-pt: *Even without concentration (vinā pi samādhiṃ): even without previously established (concentration) that has acquired the characteristic of serenity (samathalakkhaṇappattam); this is said referring to one who takes the vehicle of insight (vipassanāyānika).*

If understood on its own terms, the text establishes only that arahantship can be attained without the supernormal powers and the formless attainments. Read in the light of Spk and Spk-pt, it may be seen to affirm the existence of a "vehicle of bare insight" which begins directly with mindful contemplation of mental and physical phenomena, without depending on a base of concentration by means of the jhānas or access concentration (*upacārasamādhi*). Though the suttas themselves say nothing about a system of bare insight meditation, some contemporary teachers regard the Satipaṭṭhāna Sutta as propounding such a method and appeal to Spk and Spk-pt for additional support.

- 213 Spk: Having known him to be capable of penetration, the Buddha speaks thus giving a Dhamma teaching with three turns, at the conclusion of which the elder attained arahantship. Spk-pt: The "three turns" (*teparivaṭṭam*) are by way of the turning over of the three characteristics in relation to the five aggregates.

The catechism on the three characteristics recurs throughout the Khandha-saṃyutta, as at 22:49, 59, 79, 80, 82, etc.

- 214 Spk: This query is started in order to make it evident that those bhikkhus were dry-insighters without jhāna (or: "dry-insight ponderers"). This is the purport here: "You are not the only dry-insighter without jhāna; those bhikkhus were also such."
- 215 *Dhammatthenaka*. The formula for confession and pardon is also at 16:6 (II 205,10-16).

- 216 *Antarapeyyāla*. As the preceding section contains twelve suttas by way of the twelve factors of the formula, so each of the following suttas can be divided into twelve. Spk says these were all spoken by way of the inclinations of the persons to be guided and enlightened according to their different inclinations (*sabbe pi tathā tathā bujjanakānaṃ veneyyapuggalānaṃ ajjhāsayaavasena vuttā*).
- 217 Spk: Whether it be the Buddha or a disciple, the one in dependence upon whom one gains path knowledge is called a teacher (*satthā*, a word usually reserved for the Buddha); he should be sought for.

### 13 *Abhisamayasaṃyutta*

- 218 The expression *ditṭhisampanna* denotes one who has seen the truth of the Dhamma, beginning with the *sotāpanna*. See the closing paragraph of 12:27, etc. MN III 64,16-65,12, and AN III 438-40 list various qualities of the *ditṭhisampanna*, e.g., being incapable of regarding any formation as permanent, etc., being incapable of parricide and matricide, etc. Spk glosses *abhisametāvino*: "for one who abides having made the breakthrough to the noble truths by means of wisdom" (*paññāya ariyasaccāni abhisametvā tṭhitassa*). On *abhisamaya*, see n. 13.
- Spk: What is the suffering that has been destroyed? That which might have arisen if the first path had not been developed. The suffering that might have arisen in the plane of misery during the next seven existences, and that which might have arisen anywhere at all beginning with the eighth rebirth—all that has been destroyed.
- 219 Both *dhammābhisamaya* and *dhammacakkhupaṭilābha* signify the attainment of stream-entry. On the benefit of stream-entry, see Dh 178.
- 220 The *yojana* is a measure of distance roughly equal to ten kilometers. Spk explains *kākapeyya* (lit. "crow-drinkable") thus: "So that it is possible for a crow, standing on the bank, to drink from it naturally by inserting its beak."
- 221 According to early Buddhist cosmology, Sineru is the mountain at the centre of our world-sphere; the word is the Pāli counterpart of the better known Skt Meru. For a fuller

picture of Buddhist cosmology, see *Vism* 205–7 (Ppn 7:40–44), and Ppn 7: n. 15.

- 222 Note that the ending here is different from the stock ending in the preceding suttas.

#### 14. *Dhātusaṃyutta*

- 223 Spk: *Diversity of elements*: the diversified intrinsic nature of phenomena, which gain the name “elements” in the sense that they have an intrinsic nature consisting in their emptiness and absence of a being (*nissattaṭṭha-suññataṭṭha-saṅkhātena sabhāvaṭṭhena dhātū ti laddhanāmānaṃ dhammānaṃ nānāsabhāvo dhātunānattaṃ*).

- 224 Spk: The *eye element* is eye-sensitivity (*cakkhupasāda*), the *form element* is the form object; the *eye-consciousness element* is the mind based on eye-sensitivity (*cakkhupasāda-vaṭṭhukaṃ cittaṃ*). The other four sense elements, their objects, and states of consciousness are explained in the same way, with the appropriate changes. The *mind element* (*manodhātu*) is the threefold mind element [Spk-pt: the two receiving (*sampaṭicchana*) mind elements and the functional mind element [= the five-door adverting citta]. The *mental-phenomena element* (*dhammadhātu*) is the three aggregates—feeling, (perception, and volitional formations)—subtle form, and Nibbāna. The *mind-consciousness element* is all mind-consciousness [Spk-pt: of seventy-six types].

Precise formal definitions of the elements are not to be found in the Nikāyas. Perhaps the oldest canonical source for the definitions of the eighteen elements is *Vibh* 87–90. This comes in the *Abhidhamma-bhājanīya* only, which implies that the compilers of *Vibh* considered the eighteen elements a proper *Abhidhamma* category rather than one pertaining to the suttas. Discussion from the commentarial standpoint is at *Vism* 484–90 (Ppn 15:17–43) and *Vibh-a* 76–82.

The “sensitivities” (*pasāda*) are types of material phenomena, located in the gross sense organs, that are especially receptive to the appropriate types of sense objects. Both *Vibh-a* and *Vism* frame their explanations on the basis of the *Abhidhamma* theory of the cognitive process,

which, though articulated as such only in the commentaries, already seems to underlie the classification of cittas in the *Abhidhamma Piṭaka*. This scheme, however, is clearly later than the Nikāyas, and Spk’s attempts to reconcile the two standpoints sometimes seems contrived.

The five types of sense consciousness are the cittas that exercise the rudimentary function of bare cognition of the sense object. Of the three mind elements, the “functional” (*kiriya*) is the first citta in the process, which merely adverts to the object, and hence is called the five-door adverting consciousness (*pañcadvārāvajjana-citta*). This is followed by the appropriate sense consciousness (eye-consciousness, etc.), a kammically resultant citta which may be either wholesome-resultant or unwholesome-resultant; hence the fivefold sense consciousness becomes tenfold. Next comes the receiving consciousness (*sampaṭicchana-citta*), which “picks up” the object for further scrutiny; this is a “mind element” and is either wholesome-resultant or unwholesome-resultant. Following this, an investigating consciousness (*santiraṇa-citta*) arises, a wholesome-resultant or unwholesome-resultant citta which investigates the object; then a determining consciousness (*voṭṭhapana-citta*), a functional citta which defines the object; and then comes a string of cittas called *javana*, which constitute either a wholesome or an unwholesome response to the object (or, in the case of the arahant, a merely “functional” response). This may be followed by a registration consciousness (*tadārammaṇa*), a resultant citta which records the impression of the object on the mental continuum. All the cittas from the investigating consciousness onwards are mind-consciousness element, which is of seventy-six types. In the mind door the process is somewhat different: it begins with a mind-door adverting consciousness (*manodvārāvajjana-citta*), followed immediately by the string of *javanas*. For details, see *CMA* 1:8–10, 4:1–23.

The mental-phenomena element (*dhammadhātu*) is not necessarily the object of mind-consciousness element, as one might suppose it to be by analogy with the other senses. Along with the object of mind-consciousness it includes all feeling, perception, and volitional factors that accompany

consciousness in the process of cognition. Thus it belongs as much to the subjective pole of the cognitive act as to the objective pole. See particularly CMA, Table 7.4.

- 225 Spk: Eye-contact, etc., are associated with eye-consciousness, etc. Mind-contact is that associated with the first *javana* in the mind door; therefore when it is said, *in dependence on the mind element there arises mind contact*, this means that the contact of the first *javana* arises in dependence on the functional mind-consciousness element, i.e., the mind-door advertent citta.

On *javana*, see CMA 3:9, 4:12–16, and on the mind-door advertent citta, see CMA 1:10, 3:9.

- 226 Since, according to the Abhidhamma scheme of conditional relations, the mind element and its concomitant contact are mutually dependent, Spk is compelled to explain these terms in a way that does not place the sutta in contradiction with the Abhidhamma. Hence Spk says: “The functional mind-consciousness element with the function of advertent (i.e., the mind-door advertent citta) does not arise in dependence on the contact associated with the first *javana* in the mind door (which occurs subsequent to it).”
- 227 Spk: *Perception of form (rūpasaññā)*: the perception associated with eye-consciousness. *Intention regarding form (rūpa-saṅkappa)*: the intention associated with three cittas—the receiving, (investigating, and determining cittas). *Desire for form (rūpacchanda)*: desire in the sense of desirousness for form. *Passion for form (rūpapariḷāha)*: passion (lit. “fever”) in the sense of a burning in regard to form [Spk-pṭ: for the fire of lust, etc., has the function of “burning up” its own support]. *The quest for form (rūpapariyesanā)*: searching in order to obtain that form, having taken along one’s friends and comrades. Passion and the quest are found in different *javana* processes (so that passion can become an antecedent condition for the quest).
- 228 Ee should be corrected to read: *no saṅkappanānattaṃ paṭicca uppajjati saññānānattaṃ; no saññānānattaṃ paṭicca uppajjati dhātunānattaṃ.*
- 229 Text enclosed in brackets is found in Ee and Se, but without the elision. Se further develops the pattern for the sound element, while Be proceeds directly from *rūpadhātuṃ*

*bhikkhave paṭicca uppajjati rūpasaññā to dhammadhātuṃ paṭicca uppajjati dhammasaññā* and develops the pattern for the mental-phenomena element alone.

- 230 This attempt to combine into one series the discrete sequences beginning with contact and perception leads to some strange incongruities, which become even more bizarre among the negations of the following sutta. Elsewhere contact is said to be the condition for the manifestation of the aggregates of feeling, perception, and volitional formations (e.g., at 22:82 (III 101,33–102,2), and see 35:93 (IV 68,15–16)); yet here contact and feeling are said to be dependent on perception and intention. Neither Spk nor Spk-pṭ shows any signs of uneasiness over the discrepancies nor tries to justify them.

At MN I 111,35–112,13 a sequence of mental phenomena is given as follows: contact > perception > thought > conceptual proliferation > obsession by perceptions and notions arisen from proliferation. The texts often treat thought (*vitakka*) as identical with intention (*saṅkappa*); proliferation (*papañca*) includes craving (*taṇhā*), which is synonymous with desire (*chanda*); and obsession (*samudācāra*) may comprise passions and quests, etc. This would then give us a more cogent version of the series. Spk does in fact refer to one elder, Uruvelāyavāsi Cūlatissa Thera, who said: “Although the Blessed One inserted contact and feeling in the middle of the text, having turned the text back (*pāliṃ pana parivaṭṭetvā*) we get: perception, intention, desire, passion, quest, and gain in regard to the stated object (form, etc.), ‘gain of form’ being the object gained together with craving; then there is contact as the (mental) contact with the object gained and feeling as the experiencing of the object. In such a way this pair—contact with form and feeling—is found.”

Spk continues on its own: “And here, perception, intention, contact, feeling, and desire are found both in the same *javana* process and in different *javana* processes, while passion, quest, and gain are found only in different *javana* processes.”

- 231 Spk: The *light element (ābhādhātu)* is a name for the *jhāna* together with its object, that is, light (*āloka*) and the *jhāna*

arisen after doing the preparatory work on the light-*kaṣiṇa*. The *beauty element* (*subhadhātu*) is just the *jhāna* together with its object, namely, the *jhāna* arisen on the basis of a beautiful *kaṣiṇa*. The others are self-explanatory.

232 Spk: *The light element is discerned in dependence on darkness*: for darkness is delimited by (contrasted with) light, and light by darkness. Similarly, foulness is delimited by (contrasted with) beauty, and beauty by foulness. *In dependence on form*: in dependence on a form-sphere meditative attainment. For when one has a form-sphere attainment one can overcome form or attain the base of the infinity of space. *In dependence on cessation* (*nirodham paṭicca*): in dependence on the reflectively induced nonoccurrence (*paṭisaṅkhā-appavatti*) of the four (mental) aggregates. For the attainment of cessation is discerned in dependence on the cessation of the aggregates, not on their occurrence. And here it is just the cessation of the four aggregates that should be understood as “the attainment of cessation.”

233 Spk: *An attainment with a residue of formations* (*saṅkhārā-vasesa-samāpatti*): because of a residue of subtle formations. According to *Vism* 337–38 (Ppn 10:47–54), in this attainment perception and the other mental factors are present merely in a subtle residual mode and thus cannot perform their decisive functions; hence the ambivalence in the name.

234 Spk: The *sensuality element* (*kāmadhātu*) is sensual thought, all sense-sphere phenomena in general, and in particular everything unwholesome except the ill-will element and the harmfulness element, which are mentioned separately here. Sensual perception arises in dependence on the sensuality element either by taking it as an object or by way of association (i.e., when sensual perception is associated with sensual thought in the same *citta*).

All these elements are defined at *Vibh* 86–87, quoted by Spk. *Vibh*-a 74 correlates sensual thought with sensuality as defilement (*kilesakāma*) and sense-sphere phenomena with sensuality as sensual objects (*vatthukāma*). Sensual intention arises in dependence on sensual perception by way either of association or decisive support. (Association condition (*sampayutta-paccaya*) is a relation between simultaneous mental phenomena; decisive-support condition

(*upanissaya-paccaya*) is a relation between a cause and effect separated in time.)

235 Spk: The *ill will element* (*byāpādhātu*) is thought of ill will or ill will itself [Spk-pt: i.e., hatred (*dosa*)]. Note that the commentaries, following the *Abhidhamma*’s systematic treatment of the Buddha’s teaching, differentiate between ill will and thought of ill will. The two are distinct mental constituents (*cetasikā dhammā*), the former being a mode of the unwholesome mental factor hatred (*dosa*), the latter the thought (*vitakka*) associated with that mental factor. Similarly with harmfulness, etc.

236 Spk: The *harmfulness element* (*vihimsādhātu*) is thought of harmfulness and harmfulness itself. *Vibh* 86 explains the harmfulness element as injuring beings in various ways.

237 Spk: The *renunciation element* (*nekkhammadhātu*) is thought of renunciation and all wholesome states except the other two elements, which are to be explained separately. Perception of renunciation arises in dependence on the renunciation element by way of such conditions as conascence (*sahajātapaccaya*), etc.

238 Spk: The *non-ill will element* (*abyāpādhātu*) is thought of non-ill will and non-ill will itself, i.e., lovingkindness towards beings.

239 Spk: The *harmlessness element* (*avihimsādhātu*) is thought of harmlessness and compassion.

240 Spk: From this point on the word “element” means inclination (*ajjhāsaya*).

241 The name of the *bhikkhu* is given as in *Ee*. *Be* and *Se* cite it simply as *Kaccāna*, and *Se* notes a v.l., *Sandha Kaccāyana*. At 44:11 a *Sabhiya Kaccāna* is mentioned, also at the *Brick Hall* in *Ñātika*, and the two may be the same person.

Spk explains his question in two ways: (i) “Why does the view arise in the six (rival) teachers who are not perfectly enlightened, ‘We are Perfectly Enlightened Ones?’” (ii) “Why does the view arise in their disciples in regard to (their teachers) who are not perfectly enlightened, ‘They are Perfectly Enlightened Ones?’” *Ee sammāsambuddho ti* should be amended to *sammāsambuddhā ti*.

242 The contrast is between *hinādhimuttikā* and *kalyāṇādhimuttikā*. Spk glosses *adhimuttikā* with *ajjhāsaya*, “inclination.”

- 243 Sāriputta, as the bhikkhu disciple foremost in wisdom, attracted bhikkhus who were likewise of great wisdom. All the other disciples mentioned below attract pupils who share their specialty.
- 244 This sutta, including the verses, is at It 70–71. The verses alone, excluding the first two pādas, are at Th 147–48.
- 245 *Samsaggā vanatho jāto*. On *vanatha*, see I, n. 474. Spk: From association—from craving and affection based upon association through seeing and hearing—the woods is born, the woods of the defilements is born. By nonassociation it is cut: it is cut by nonassociation, by not-seeing, by avoiding standing and sitting privately (with a person of the opposite sex).
- 246 Spk: *Those of wrong knowledge*: those endowed with wrong reviewing (*micchāpaccavekkhaṇena samannāgatā*). *Those of wrong liberation*: those who abide in an unemancipating liberation, which they assume to be wholesome liberation. *Those of right knowledge*: those with right reviewing. *Those of right liberation*: those endowed with the emancipating liberation of the fruit.
- Right knowledge and right liberation supplement the eight factors of the Noble Eightfold Path. They are said to be factors of the arahant (e.g., at MN III 76,8), but at 55:26 (V 384,1–12) they are also ascribed to Anāthapiṇḍika, a stream-enterer. Spk's gloss of right knowledge as right reviewing knowledge is difficult to accept. More likely the expression refers to the full knowledge of the Four Noble Truths by means of which arahantship is gained.
- 247 Spk interprets each element by way of its physical characteristic or function: the earth element is the foundational element (*paṭiṭṭhādhātu*); the water element, the cohesive element (*ābandhanadhātu*); the fire element, the maturing element (*paripācanadhātu*); and the air element, the distensive element (*vitthambhanadhātu*). For a more detailed treatment according to the commentarial method, see Vism 364–70 (Ppn 11:85–117).
- 248 Spk: Since it is contingent upon Nibbāna (*nibbānaṃ āgama*) that desire and lust are removed and abandoned, Nibbāna is the escape from it.
- 249 Spk: In this sutta the Four Noble Truths are discussed. The

- gratification (*assāda*) in the four elements is the truth of the origin; the danger (*ādinava*) is the truth of suffering; the escape (*nissaraṇa*) is the truth of cessation; the path that understands the escape is the truth of the path.
- 250 Throughout I read with Se and Ee *cetovimutti* as against Be *vimutti*. Spk: The knowledge arose, "This liberation of mine by the fruit of arahantship is unshakable." Its unshakableness can be understood through the cause and through the object. It is unshakable through the cause because there can be no return of the defilements eradicated by the four paths. It is unshakable through the object because it occurs taking the unshakable state, Nibbāna, as object.
- 251 *Vimariyādikatena cetasa*. Spk: The barriers (*mariyādā*) are twofold: the barriers of defilements and the barriers of the round of existence. Here, because of the abandoning of both, it is said that they dwell with a mind rid of barriers.
- 252 Spk: It is pleasurable in that it is a condition for pleasant feeling.
- 253 There is a lack of symmetry between the two clauses in this statement: the first strings together four terms: *uppādo ṭhiti abhinibbatti pātubhāvo*, but the sequel exemplifies only three, omitting *abhinibbatti*. This is done consistently whenever this "template" is applied, as at 22:30 and 35:21–22.

## 15. Anamataggasaṃyutta

- 254 *Anamataggo 'yaṃ bhikkhave saṃsāro*. Spk resolves *anamatagga* into *anu amatagga*, explaining: "Even if it should be pursued by knowledge for a hundred or a thousand years, it would be with unthought-of beginning, with unknown beginning (*vassasataṃ vassasahassaṃ nāṇena anugantvā pi amataggo aviditaggo*). It wouldn't be possible to know its beginning from here or from there; the meaning is that it is without a delimiting first or last point. *Saṃsāra* is the uninterruptedly occurring succession of the aggregates, etc. (*khandhādinaṃ avicchinnappavattā paṭipāṭi*)."
- The BHS equivalent of *anamatagga* is *anavaṛāgra* (e.g., at Mv I 34,7), "without lower or upper limit." For various explanations, see CPD, s.v. *an-amat'-agga*.
- 255 Spk: The four great oceans delimited by the rays of Mount

- Sineru. For Sineru's eastern slope is made of silver, its southern slope of jewels, its western slope of crystal, and its northern slope of gold. From the eastern and southern slopes rays of silver and jewels come forth, merge, traverse the surface of the ocean, and reach right up to the mountains that encircle the world-sphere; and so too with the rays coming forth from the other slopes. The four great oceans are situated between those rays.
- 256 *Kappa*. Apparently a *mahākappa* is intended, the length of time needed for a world system to arise, develop, and perish. Each *mahākappa* consists of four *asaṅkheyyakappas*, periods of expansion, stabilization, contraction, and dissolution: see AN II 142,15–28.
- 257 *Kāsikena vatthēna*. Although this is often understood to be silk, Spk explains it to be an extremely delicate cloth made of thread spun from three fibres of cotton.
- 258 Reading, with Be and Se, *ananussarītā va*. Ee *anussarītā va* should be amended.
- 259 The simile is also at 56:33.
- 260 The sutta, including the verses, is also at It 17–18.
- 261 Spk: For these beings, the times when they are born as invertebrates is greater than the times when they are born as vertebrates; for when they become creatures such as worms, etc., they have no bones. But when they become fish and tortoises, etc., their bones are numerous. Therefore, skipping over the time when they are invertebrates and the time when they have extremely numerous bones, only the time when they have a moderate number of bones (*samaṭṭhikakālo va*) should be taken.
- 262 The same group of bhikkhus provided the occasion for the Buddha to institute the offering of the *kaṭhina* robe at the end of the Vassa, the annual rains residence; see Vin I 253–54. Forest dwelling, etc., are four of the ascetic practices (*dhutaṅga*). Spk: *Yet all were still with fetters (sabbe sasamyojanā)*: Some were stream-enterers, some once-returners, some nonreturners, but among them there were no worldlings or arahants.
- 263 On the variations in the human life span during the epochs of the different Buddhas, see DN II 3,28–4,5. DN III 68–76 explains how the life span of humans will

decline still further as a result of moral degeneration until it reaches a low of ten years, after which it will increase until it reaches 80,000 years in the time of the future Buddha Metteyya.

- 264 Spk says that the text should not be interpreted to mean that the life span gradually decreased from Kakusandha's age directly to that of Koṇāgamana's. Rather, the life span after Kakusandha's parinibbāna continually decreased until it reached the minimum of ten years, then it increased to an incalculable (*asaṅkheyya*), and then decreased again until it reached 30,000 years, at which time Koṇāgamana arose in the world. The same pattern applies to the subsequent cases, including that of Metteyya (see n. 263).
- 265 Also at 6:15 (I, v. 609). See too v. 21 and I, n. 20.

#### 16. *Kassapasamyutta*

- 266 Spk discusses a threefold typology of contentment (*santosa*): (i) contentment that accords with one's gains (*yathālābhasantosa*), i.e., remaining content with any gains, whether fine or coarse; (ii) contentment that accords with one's ability (*yathābalasantosa*), i.e., remaining content with whatever one needs to sustain one's health; and (iii) contentment that accords with suitability (*yathāsāruppasantosa*), i.e., disposing of any luxury items received and retaining only the simplest and most basic requisites. A translation of the full passage—from the parallel commentary to the Sāmaññaphala Sutta (Sv I 206–8)—may be found in Bodhi, *Discourse on the Fruits of Reclusheship*, pp. 134–37. Various types of wrong search (*anesanā*) are discussed at Vism 22–30 (Ppn 1:60–84).
- 267 Spk: *If he does not get a robe*: If he does not get a robe he does not become agitated (*na paritassati*) like one who, failing to get a robe, becomes frightened and agitated and associates with meritorious bhikkhus, thinking “How can I get a robe?” *Seeing the danger (ādinavadassāvī)*: the danger of an offence in improper search and of use while being tied to it. *Understanding the escape (nissaraṇapaññā)*: he uses it knowing the escape stated in the formula, “Only for warding off cold,” etc. (On the formulas for the four requisites,

see MN I 10,4–20, with detailed analysis at Vism 30–35; Ppn 1:85–97) This passage (and the parallels in regard to the other requisites excluding medicines) is found in the Ariyavaṃsa Sutta in a description of the ideal ascetic monk (AN II 27–29).

- 268 *Kassapena vā hi vo bhikkhave ovaḍissāmi yo vā pan' assa Kassapasadiso*. Spk makes it clear that *yo ... Kassapasadiso* should be construed as instrumental in force, parallel to *Kassapena*: “He exhorts by the example of Kassapa when he says, ‘As the Elder Mahākassapa is content with the four requisites, so too should you be.’ He exhorts by one who is similar to Kassapa when he says, ‘If there should be any one else here who is similar to Kassapa—that is, like the Elder Mahākassapa—in being content with the four requisites, you should be so too.’”
- 269 *Tathattāya paṭipajjitabbam*. Spk: (He says:) “In this sutta on contentment the Perfectly Enlightened One’s responsibility (*bhāra*) is explaining the practice of effacement (*sallekhācāra*), while our responsibility is to fulfil it by the fulfilment of the practice. Let us accept the responsibility entrusted to us’—having reflected thus, you should practise accordingly, as explained by me.”
- 270 Spk explains *not ardent* (*anātāpi*) as devoid of the energy that burns up (*ātapati*) defilements, and *unafraid of wrongdoing* (*anottappi*) as devoid of fear over the arising of defilements and the nonarising of wholesome qualities. Both words are derived from the same root, *tap*, to burn. Spk explains *anuttara yogakkhema* as arahantship, so called because it is secure from the four bonds (*yoga*; see 45:172). See too I, n. 463.
- 271 The four parts of this reflection correspond to the four aspects of right effort (see 45:8) or the four right kinds of striving (see 49:1–12).
- 272 Spk: “As the moon, gliding across the sky, does not form intimacy, affection, or attachment with anyone, nor give rise to fondness, longing, and obsession, yet remains dear and agreeable to the multitude, so you too should not form intimacy, etc., with anyone; then, by doing so, you will approach families like the moon, dear and agreeable to the multitude. Further, as the moon dispels darkness and

emits light, so you will dispel the darkness of defilements and emit the light of knowledge.”

Spk explains *apakassa* as an absolutive, equivalent to *apakassitvā* and glossed *apanetvā*, “having pulled away.” A bhikkhu draws back the body when he lives in a forest abode (rather than a village temple) and draws back the mind when he refrains from sensual thoughts and other harmful mental states.

- 273 Spk: This is a unique phrase (*asambhinnapada*) in the Word of the Buddha preserved in the Tipiṭaka. Spk-pt: For nowhere else has this phrase, “The Blessed One waved his hand in space,” been recorded.
- 274 This is a self-serving thought. The bhikkhu wants to see the bhikkhus receive offerings and the lay followers “make merit” by offering gifts to them. The bhikkhu who is elated over the gains of others has the virtue of altruistic joy (*muditā*); he does not become envious when others are chosen to receive gifts rather than himself.
- 275 *Pasannākāraṃ kareyyuṃ*. This idiom also occurs below at 20:9 (II 269,24, 33) and at MN III 131,30–31 and III 144,18–19. A *pasannākāraṃ* (lit. “a mode of the confident”) is a gift given as an expression of appreciation. The hiatus in Ee should be closed up. Spk: “May they give the requisites, a robe and so forth!”
- 276 *Kāruṇṇaṃ paṭicca anudayaṃ paṭicca anukampaṃ upādāya*. I generally translate both *karuṇā* (of which *kāruṇṇaṃ* is a cognate) and *anukampā* as “compassion.” This is usually successful as the two seldom occur together, but the present passage is a rare exception; thus I use “tender concern” as a makeshift for *anukampā*. Spk glosses *anudaya* with *rakkhaṇabhāva* (the protective state) and *anukampā* with *muducittatā* (tender-heartedness), and says that both terms are synonymous with *kāruṇṇaṃ*. In the next paragraph, where the same statement is applied to Kassapa, Ee has omitted a line (at II 200,3), apparently by oversight: ... *paraṃ dhammaṃ deseti; kāruṇṇaṃ paṭicca...*
- 277 *Kulūpaka*. Spk: One who goes to the homes of families. As will be seen at 20:9, 10, this could be dangerous for monks who were not inwardly strong enough to resist the temptations posed by intimate association with lay people.

278 Spk: Kassapa's robes are said to be worn-out (*nibbasana*) because the Blessed One, having worn them, had discarded them. (See below 16:11; II 221,15–25.)

The Buddha is apparently requesting Mahākassapa to abandon three of the ascetic practices—wearing rag-robes, eating only food collected on alms round, and living in the forest. The Buddha himself wore robes offered by householders, accepted invitations to meals, and dwelt in town monasteries; see MN II 7–8. According to Spk, the Buddha did not really intend to make Kassapa give up his ascetic practices, but rather “just as a drum does not give off a sound unless it is struck, so such persons do not roar their lion's roar unless they are ‘struck.’ Thus he spoke to him in this way intending to make him roar his lion's roar.”

279 This is Mahākassapa's lion's roar; see too MN I 214,1–17, where Kassapa describes the ideal monk in the same terms. The first four items are ascetic practices; the second four, virtues nurtured by observance of these practices. At AN I 23,20 the Buddha declares Mahākassapa the foremost among his bhikkhu disciples who are proponents of the ascetic practices, as is clear too from 14:15 above.

280 Reading with Se: *App' eva nāma pacchimā janatā diṭṭhānugatiṃ āpajjeyya*. Be and Ee have the plural *āpajjeyyūṃ*. At KS 2:136 this is rendered: “For surely these [those who will come after us] may fall into error.” The translator here evidently understands *diṭṭhānugati* as resolvable into *diṭṭhi* + *anugati*, with *diṭṭhi* meaning wrong view. Spk and Spk-pt are silent, but I find it more plausible to take the first part of the compound as the past participle *diṭṭha*, “the seen” in the sense of an example or role model. This interpretation can claim support from the use of the idiom at AN I 126,19–20, 127,22–23; III 108,5–6, 251,8, and 422,10, 19. See too MLDB, n. 57.

281 Spk: He says this in order to appoint Mahākassapa to his own position. But weren't Sāriputta and Mahāmoggallāna around? They were, but he thought: “They will not live much longer, but Kassapa will live until the age of 120. After my parinibbāna he will hold a recital of the Dhamma and the Vinaya in the Sattapaṇṇi Cave, and he will enable my Dispensation to endure for a full 5,000 years. Let me

appoint him to my own position; then the bhikkhus will think he should be heeded.” Despite this remark of Spk, it should be noted that the Buddha expressly refused to appoint a personal successor; instead he instructed the Saṅgha that the Dhamma and the Vinaya should represent him after his passing (DN II 154,4–8).

282 *Dovacassakaraṇehi dhammehi samannāgatā*: for a list of such qualities, see MN I 95,18–96,16.

283 The following, slightly expanded and including the simile of the moon, is also at AN V 123,10–124,19, ascribed to Sāriputta. There too the Buddha approves of the disciple's statement and repeats it in full.

284 I read with Ee: *evaṃ hi taṃ Kassapa sammā vadamāno vadeyya upaddutā brahmacāri brahmacārūpaddavena abhibhavanā brahmacāri brahmacārābhibhavanenā ti*. Se differs only in reading *vadanto* for *vadamāno*. Be, however, has *etarahi taṃ Kassapa sammā vadamāno vadeyya upaddutā brahmacāri brahmacārūpaddavena abhipatthanā brahmacāri brahmacāri-abhipatthanenā ti*. This version, I suspect, arose by substituting the commentarial gloss for the original. It seems that in Se and Ee the sense requires, in place of the first *abhibhavanā*, the past participle *abhibhūtā* (or *adhibhūtā*), though no edition available to me has this reading. On how gain and honour ruin those who live the holy life, see MN III 116,22–117,13.

Spk (Se): They are ruined by the *ruination of those who lead the holy life*, namely, excessive desire and lust for the four requisites. *Vanquishment* is excessive longing (*abhibhavanā ti adhimattapattanā*). *By the vanquishing of those who lead the holy life*: by the state of the four requisites that consists in the excessive longing of those who lead the holy life (*brahmacārābhibhavanenā ti brahmacārīnaṃ adhimattapattanāsaṅkhātena catupaccayabhāvena*). Se has a note here to the gloss: *Evaṃ sabbattha. Catupaccayābhibhavena iti bhavitabbaṃ*.

285 In MLDB *cetovimutti paññāvimutti* is translated “deliverance of mind and deliverance by wisdom,” as if the two terms were separate items standing in conjunction. I now think it better to omit the conjunctive particle (which is not in the Pāli) and to treat the two terms as a dual designation for what is essentially the same state. Spk explains

*cetovimutti* as the concentration of the fruit of arahantship (*arahattaphalasamādhī*), *paññāvimutti* as the wisdom of the fruit of arahantship (*arahattaphalapaññā*).

286 From the absence of any reference to the Blessed One in the introduction it is likely that this sutta takes place after his parinibbāna. Spk supports this supposition (see following note), as does Ānanda's use of the vocative *bhante* when addressing Mahākassapa. Before the Buddha expired the monks used to address one another as *āvuso*, "friend" (see DN II 154,9-15).

Spk: Ānanda asked him to come to the bhikkhunis' quarters in order to inspire them and to explain a meditation subject, thinking they would place faith in the talk of the disciple who was the Buddha's counterpart (*buddha-ṭṭibhāga-sāvaka*).

287 Spk: He was not involved with building work, etc., but the four assemblies would come to the Elder Ānanda lamenting over the Buddha's demise and he would be obliged to console them (see 9:5 and I, n. 541).

288 Her name means "Fat Tissā." Spk glosses *vedehimuni* with *paṇḍitamuni*, "wise sage," explaining: "A wise person endeavours with erudition consisting in knowledge—that is, he does all his tasks—therefore he is called Videhan (*paṇḍīto hi ñāṇasaṅkhā-tena vedena ihati ... tasmā vedeho ti vuccati*). He was Videhan and a sage, hence 'the Videhan sage.'" Ap-a 128,12, however, offers a more plausible explanation: "Ānanda was called *vedehimuni* because he was a sage and the son of a mother from the Videha country [= Videha] (*Vedeharattṭhe jātattā Vedehiyā putto*)." See I, n. 233.

289 *Khamatha bhante Kassapa bālo mātugāmo*. I have translated this sentence with complete fidelity to the text, aware that some readers might find the rendering provocative. One consultant told me, "You've just lost half your readership," and suggested I avoid drawing criticism to the translation by rendering *bālo mātugāmo* as "she is a foolish woman." To my mind, this would distort the meaning of the Pāli in subservience to current views of gender. I do not see how the sentence could be construed in any other way than I have rendered it. I leave it to the reader to decide whether Ānanda himself could actually have made such a statement

or whether it was put into his mouth by the compilers of the canon.

- 290 Spk: This is what is meant: "Do not let the Saṅgha think, 'Ānanda restrained the disciple who was the Buddha's counterpart, but he did not restrain the bhikkhuni. Could there be some intimacy or affection between them?'" He utters the following passage (on his meditative attainments) to demonstrate how he is the Buddha's counterpart.
- 291 Spk glosses *sattaratana* (seven cubits) as *sattahattappamāṇa* (the measurement of seven hands); a *hatta* (lit. "hand"), which extends from the elbow to the fingertip, is approximately two feet. This is one of the rare texts in the Nikāyas where the word *abhiññā* is used collectively to designate the six higher knowledges.
- 292 Spk: After she had censured the disciple who was the Buddha's counterpart, even while Mahākassapa was roaring his lion's roar about the six *abhiññās*, her saffron robes began to irritate her body like thorny branches or a prickly plant. As soon as she removed them and put on the white clothes (of a lay woman) she felt at ease.
- 293 A BHS parallel of this sutta is at Mvu III 47-56. Spk: Dakkhināgiri was a country in the southern region of the hills surrounding Rājagaha. After the Buddha's parinibbāna Ānanda had gone to Sāvattṭhi to inform the multitude; then he left for Rājagaha and along the way was walking on tour in Dakkhināgiri.
- 294 This is said with reference to Pācittiya 32. See Vin IV 71-75.
- 295 See Vin II 196, which relates the original background story to the rule, namely, Devadatta's attempt to create a schism in the Saṅgha (also at Vin IV 71). Spk alludes to this in its gloss of the expression *mā pāpicchā pakkaṃ nissāya saṅghaṃ bhindeyyum*: "It was laid down for this reason: 'As Devadatta along with his retinue ate after informing families and, by relying on those of evil wishes, divided the Saṅgha, so let it not come to pass that others of evil wishes—by collecting a group, eating among families after informing them, and enlarging their group—divide the Saṅgha in reliance on their faction.'" Spk seems to interpret *dummaṅkūnaṃ puggalānaṃ niggaḥāya* and *pesalānaṃ bhikkhūnaṃ phāsuvihārāya* as comple-

mentary sides of a single reason, a view explicitly endorsed by Spk-pt: *dummaṅkūnaṃ niggaho eva pesalānaṃ phāsuvihāro ti idaṃ ekaṃ aṅgaṃ*. Thus on this interpretation “*mā pāpicchā ...*” would become a second, independent reason. But I follow Horner (at BD 5:275) and C.Rh.D (at KS 2:147), both of whom take the restraint of ill-behaved persons and the comforting of well-behaved bhikkhus as two distinct reasons, to which “*mā pāpicchā ...*” is subordinate. This seems to be corroborated by the list of ten reasons for the laying down of the training rules (at Vin III 21, etc.), where these two factors are counted as separate reasons. As to the third reason, “out of sympathy for families” (*kulānuddayatāya*), Spk says: “When the Bhikkhu Saṅgha is living in harmony and performing the Uposatha and Pavāraṇā, people who give ticket-meals, etc., become destined for heaven.” A more plausible explanation is that families are spared the burden of having to support too many bhikkhus at one time. In the Mvu version (at III 48) only two reasons are mentioned, “the protection, safeguarding, and comfort of families” and “the breaking up of cliques of wicked men.”

296 *Kumārakavāḍā na muccāma*. Commentarial tradition holds that Ānanda was born on the same day as the Bodhisatta (see Sv II 425, Ap-a 58, 358, Ja I 63 (Be, but not in the Se or Ee versions)). If this were true, however, he would now be over eighty years of age and thus would hardly have to point to a few grey hairs to prove he is no longer a youngster. Other facts recorded in the canon suggest that Ānanda must have been considerably younger than the Buddha, perhaps by as much as thirty years. On the different opinions about his age held by the early Buddhist schools, see C. Witanachchi’s article “Ānanda,” in the *Encyclopaedia of Buddhism*, Vol. I, fasc. 4, p. 529.

Spk paraphrases in a way that supports the traditional view: “Since you wander around with newly ordained bhikkhus devoid of sense restraint, you wander around with youngsters and thus you yourself deserve to be called a youngster.”

297 The name means “Fat Nandā.” She is frequently mentioned in the Bhikkhuni Vibhaṅga as a troublemaker in the

Bhikkhuni Saṅgha; see e.g. Vin IV 216, 218, 223–24, etc. KS 2:148 mistakenly calls this nun “Fat Tissā,” confusing her with the petulant nun of the preceding sutta.

298 *Aññatitthiyapubbo samāno*. Spk: Since the elder was not known to have any teacher or preceptor in this Dispensation, and he had put on the saffron robes himself when he renounced the world, out of indignation she depicts him as having been formerly a member of another sect. On Ānanda as the “Videhan sage” see above n. 288.

299 *Paṭapilotikānaṃ*. See n. 60 above.

300 Spk relates here the entire biographical background of Mahākassapa, including several past lives, culminating in his meeting with the Buddha. For a paraphrase, see Hecker, “Mahākassapa: Father of the Saṅgha,” in Nyanaponika and Hecker, *Great Disciples of the Buddha*, pp. 109–19.

301 I translate Kassapa’s thought just above following Spk, which paraphrases each sentence as a conditional: “If I should see the Teacher, it is just the Blessed One that I would see; there cannot be any other Teacher than him. If I should see the Fortunate One—called *sugata* because he has gone well by the right practice—it is just this Blessed One that I would see; there cannot be any other Fortunate One than him. If I should see the Perfectly Enlightened One—so called because he awakened fully to the truths by himself—it is just the Blessed One that I would see; there cannot be any other Perfectly Enlightened One than him.’ By this he shows, ‘Merely by seeing him, I had no doubt that this is the Teacher, this is the Fortunate One, this is the Perfectly Enlightened One.’”

The repetition of Kassapa’s declaration of discipleship is in Be and Se though not in Ee. Spk confirms the repetition, explaining that although the utterance is recorded twice we should understand that it was actually spoken three times.

302 Spk: If a disciple so single-minded (*evaṃ sabbacetasā samannāgato*)—so confident in mind (*pasannacitto*)—should perform such an act of supreme humility towards an outside teacher who, without knowing, claims to know (i.e., to be enlightened), that teacher’s head would fall off from the neck like a palm fruit broken at the stalk; the meaning is, it

would split into seven pieces. But when such an act of humility is done at the Master's golden feet, it cannot stir even a hair on his body. The following "Therefore" implies: "Since knowing, I say 'I know,' therefore you should train thus."

- 303 Here Spk explains *sabbacetāsā* differently than above: "attending with a completely attentive mind (*sabbena samannāhāracittena*), without allowing the mind to stray even a little."
- 304 *Sātasahagatā ca me kāyagatā sati*. Spk: This is mindfulness of the body associated with pleasure by way of the first jhāna in the foulness meditation and mindfulness of breathing. This threefold exhortation was itself the elder's going forth and higher ordination.
- 305 Spk (Se): *Sāṇo ti sakileso sa-iṇo hutvā*. Be (text and Spk) reads *saraṇo* instead of *sāṇo*, which is less satisfactory. The line is also at MN III 127, 7-8, with *sāṇo*.  
Spk: There are four modes of using the requisites: (i) by theft (*theyyaparibhoga*), the use made by a morally depraved monk; (ii) as a debtor (*iṇaparibhoga*), the unreflective use made by a virtuous monk; (iii) as an heir (*dāyajjaparibhoga*), the use made by the seven trainees; (iv) as an owner (*sāmiparibhoga*), the use made by an arahant. Thus only an arahant uses the requisites as an owner, without debt. The elder speaks of his use of the requisites when he was still a worldlyling as use by a debtor.
- 306 Spk: This took place on the day of their first meeting. The attainment of arahantship was mentioned beforehand because of the sequence of the teaching, but it actually took place afterwards. The Buddha descended from the road with the intention of making Kassapa a forest dweller, a rag-robe wearer, and a one-meal eater from his very birth (as a monk).
- 307 Spk: The Blessed One wanted to exchange robes with Kassapa because he wished to appoint the elder to his own position (*theraṃ attano thāne thapetukāmatāya*). When he asked whether the elder could wear his rag-robes he was not referring to his bodily strength but to the fulfilment of the practice (*paṭipattipūraṇa*). The Buddha had made this robe from a shroud that had covered a slave woman

- named Puṇṇā, which had been cast away in a cremation ground. When he picked it up, brushed away the creatures crawling over it, and established himself in the great lineage of the nobles ones, the earth quaked and sounded a roar and the devas applauded. In offering the robe, the Buddha implied: "This robe should be worn by a bhikkhu who is from birth an observer of the ascetic practices. Will you be able to make proper use of it?" And Kassapa's assent signifies, "I will fulfil this practice." At the moment they exchanged robes the great earth resounded and shook to its ocean boundaries.
- 308 Cp. the Buddha's praise of Sāriputta at MN III 29,8-13. Spk: By this statement the elder has absolved his going forth from the charge of Thullanandā. This is the purport: "Does one without teacher or preceptor, who takes the saffron robe himself, and who leaves another sect, receive the honour of having the Buddha go out to welcome him, or take ordination by a triple exhortation, or get to exchange robes with the Buddha in person? See how offensive the bhikkhuni Thullanandā's utterance was!"
- 309 As at 16:10.
- 310 Spk glosses "Tathāgata" here as *satta*, a being, on which Spk-pṭ comments: "As in past aeons, in past births, one has come into being by way of kamma and defilements, so one has also come now (*tathā etarahi pi āgato*); hence it is said 'tathāgata.' Or else, according to the kamma one has done and accumulated, just so has one come, arrived, been reborn in this or that form of individual existence (*tathā taṃ taṃ attabhāvaṃ āgato upagato upapanno*)."  
This explanation seems implausible, especially when other texts clearly show that the philosophical problem over the Tathāgata's post-mortem state concerns "the Tathāgata, the highest type of person, the supreme person, the one who has attained the supreme attainment (*tathāgato uttamapuriso paramapuriso paramapattipatto*)" (22:86 (III 116,13-14) = 44:2 (IV 380,14-15)).
- 311 The same question, but with a different reply, is at MN I 444,36-445,25. Possibly Mahākassapa's concern with the preservation of the true Dhamma, demonstrated in this sutta, presages his role as the convener of the First

Buddhist Council soon after the Buddha's parinibbāna (described at Vin II 284–85). There we see, in the ebullient reaction of the old bhikkhu Subhadda to the report of the Buddha's death, the first stirring towards the emergence of a "counterfeit" Dhamma. Mahākassapa convenes the First Council precisely to ensure that the true Dhamma and Discipline will endure long and will not be driven out by counterfeit versions devised by unscrupulous monks.

- 312 Spk: There are two counterfeits of the true Dhamma (*saddhammapaṭirūpaka*): one with respect to attainment (*adhigama*), the other with respect to learning (*pariyatti*). The former is the ten corruptions of insight knowledge (see Vism 633–38; Ppn 20:105–28). The latter consists of texts other than the authentic Word of the Buddha authorized at the three Buddhist councils, exception made of these five topics of discussion (*kathāvatthu*): discussion of elements, discussion of objects, discussion of foulness, discussion of the bases of knowledge, the casket of true knowledge. [The counterfeit texts include] the Secret Vinaya (*gulhavinaya*), the Secret Vessantara, the Secret Mahosadha, the Vaṇṇa Piṭaka, the Aṅgulimāla Piṭaka, the Raṭṭhapāla-gajjita, the Ālavaka-gajjita, and the Vedalla Piṭaka.

Spk-pt: The "Vedalla Piṭaka" is the Vetulla Piṭaka, which they say had been brought from the abode of the nāgas; others say it consists of what was spoken in debates (*vādabhāsita*). "Other than the authentic Word of the Buddha" (*abuddhavacana*), because of contradicting the Word of the Buddha; for the Enlightened One does not speak anything internally inconsistent (*pubbāparaviruddha*). They apply a dart to it; the removal of defilements is not seen there, so it is inevitably a condition for the arising of defilements.

An attempt to identify the texts cited by Spk is made in the fourteenth century work, *Nikāyasaṅgraha*, discussed by Adikaram, *Early History of Buddhism in Ceylon*, pp. 99–100. The *Nikāyasaṅgraha* assigns each text to a different non-Theravādin school. The late date of this work casts doubt on its reliability, and its method of identification is just too neat to be convincing. Spk-pt's comment on the Vedalla Piṭaka suggests it may be a collection of Mahāyāna sūtras.

The Mahāyāna is referred to in the Sri Lankan chronicles as the Vetullavāda (Skt Vaitulyavāda); see Rahula, *History of Buddhism in Ceylon*, pp. 87–90. Spk-pt is apparently alluding to the belief that Nāgārjuna had brought the Prajñāpāramitā Sūtras from the nāga realm. The five types of "topics of discussion" (*kathāvatthu*), accepted by the Theravādins though not authorized as canonical, were probably philosophical treatises recording the opinions of famous teachers on important points of doctrine. Spk describes at length the gradual disappearance of the Buddha's Dispensation as a threefold disappearance of achievement, practice, and learning (*adhigama-, paṭipatti-, pariyatti-saddhamma*).

- 313 Spk glosses: *ādikenā ti ādānena gahaṇena; opilavati ti nimujjati*. Spk-pt: *ādānaṃ ādi, ādi eva ādikaṃ*. Spk explains the simile thus: "Unlike a ship crossing the water, which sinks when receiving goods, there is no disappearance of the true Dhamma by being filled up with learning, etc. For when learning declines the practice declines, and when the practice declines achievement declines. But when learning becomes full, persons rich in learning fill up the practice, and those filling up the practice fill up achievement. Thus when learning, etc., are increasing, my Dispensation increases, just like the new moon."

C.Rh.D, following this explanation, renders the line: "Take the sinking of a ship, Kassapa, by overloading" (KS 2:152). I find dubious, however, Spk's understanding of *ādikena* as meaning "taking, grasping." Elsewhere *ādikena* has the sense of "all at once, suddenly," contrasted with *anupubbena*, "gradually" (see MN I 395,4, 479,35; II 213,4; Ja VI 567,6, 14). This is clearly the meaning required here.

- 314 *Pañca okkamaniyā dhammā*. Spk glosses: *okkamaniyā ti heṭṭhāgamaniya*, "leading downwards." A parallel passage at AN III 247 repeats the first four causes but replaces the fifth by "lack of mutual respect and deference."
- 315 Spk: One dwells without reverence for concentration when one does not attain the eight attainments (*aṭṭha samāpattiyo*) or make any effort to attain them.

17. *Lābhasakkārasaṃyutta*

- 316 Spk: Gain (*lābha*) is the gain of the four requisites; honour (*sakkāra*), the gain of (requisites) that are well made and well produced; praise (*siloka*), acclamation (*vaṇṇaghosa*).
- 317 Pāli indiscriminately uses two words, *kumma* and *kacchapa*, for both turtle and tortoise. Here *kumma* refers to the lake-dwelling variety, but at 35:240 *kumma kacchapa* jointly denote what seems to be a land-dwelling creature, while at 56:47 *kacchapa* alone refers to the sea-dwelling variety. Spk glosses *mahākummakula* with *mahantaṃ aṭṭhikacchapakula*, which further confirms the interchangeability of the two words. I have rendered both terms "turtle" when they denote a predominantly aquatic creature (here and at 56:47), "tortoise" when they refer to a land-dwelling creature.
- 318 *Papatā*. Spk explains this as an iron spear shaped like a hooked dart, kept in an iron case. When it is dropped on its target with a certain force, the spear comes out from the case and the rope follows along, still attached to it.
- 319 Although all three eds. read *giddho papatāya*, it seems we should read *viddho papatāya*, proposed by a note in Be.
- 320 In all three eds. the text as it stands is unintelligible and is likely to be corrupt. Spk does not offer enough help to reconstruct an original reading, while Be appends a long note with a circuitous explanation intended to resolve the difficulties. I would prefer to amend the final verb in Be and Se (and SS) from *anupāpunātu* to *anupāpunāti* so that we read: *Kaṃ bhikkhave asanivicakkaṃ āgacchatu? Sekhaṃ appattamānasaṃ lābhasakkārasiloko anupāpunāti*. Ee does have *anupāpunāti*, and it is possible *anupāpunātu* entered the other eds. under the influence of the preceding *āgacchatu* and the corresponding sentences in 17:23, 24.

Spk paraphrases the question: "Which person should a bright thunderbolt strike, hitting him on the head and crushing him?" and comments on the reply: "The Blessed One does not speak thus because he desires suffering for beings, but in order to show the danger. For a lightning bolt, striking one on the head, destroys only a single individual existence, but one with a mind obsessed by gain, honour, and praise experiences endless suffering in hell,

- etc." Who has not yet reached his mind's ideal (*appattamānasa*): who has not achieved arahantship.
- 321 Be and Se read: *Kaṃ bhikkhave diddhagatena visallena sallena vijjhatu?* The reading in Ee is less satisfactory. Spk: *Diddhagatenā ti gatadiddhena* [Spk-pk: *acchavisayuttā ti vā diddhe gatena*]; *visallenā ti visamakkhitenā*; *sallenā ti sattiyā*.  
The rhetorical construction parallels that in the preceding sutta. *Visallena* is problematic, and we might accept C.Rh.D's suggestion *visa-sallena*, though *diddha* (= Skt *digdha*) already conveys the idea of poisoned. See Ja IV 435,26: *Saro diddho kalāpaṃ va/Alittaṃ upalimpati*.
- 322 *Ukkaṇṭaka* (so Be and Se; Ee: *ukkaṇṇaka*). Spk: This is the name of a disease, said to arise in the cold season. The hairs fall off from the entire body, and the entire body, fully exposed, breaks open all over. Struck by the wind, the wounds ooze. Just as a man, bitten by a rabid dog, runs around in circles, so does the jackal when it has contracted this disease, and there is no place where it finds safety.
- 323 *Verambhavātā*. Spk: A strong type of wind, discerned at a height from which the four continents appear the size of lotus leaves.
- 324 This verse and the next are at Th 1011–12 and It 74,22–75,3. Here I read with Be and Se *appamāṇavihārino*, as against Ee *appamādavihārino*. The latter, however, is found in all three eds. of Th 1011d; readings of It 74,25 are divided. Spk supports *appamāṇa-* with its gloss: *appamāṇena phalasaṃādhinā viharantassa*; "as he is dwelling in the measureless fruition concentration." Th-a does not comment on the pāda at Th 1011, and the comment in It-a reads *appamāda-* in Be and *appamāṇa-* in Se.
- 325 We should read pāda b with Se *sukhumaditṭhivipassakaṃ* as against *sukhumaṃ ditṭhivipassakaṃ* in Be and Ee. The former is also the reading at Th 1012b and It 75,1. Spk: It is a *subtle view* because (it is reached) through the view of the path of arahantship, and he is an *insight-seer* (*vipassaka*) because he has arrived there after having set up insight for the sake of fruition attainment. *Delighting in the destruction of clinging*: Delighted with Nibbāna, called the destruction of clinging.
- 326 The *suvaṇṇanikkha* and the *siṅginikkha* seem to be two different types of golden coin, the latter presumably of greater

value than the former, or made from a superior species of gold. Spk glosses *suvaṇṇanikkhassa* as *ekassa kañcana-nikkhassa*, and *siṅginikkhassa* as *siṅgisuvaṇṇanikkhassa*.

- 327 *Janapadakalyāṇi*. See below 17:22 and 47:20, and the famous simile at MN II 33,6–22.
- 328 Cp. AN I 88,13–89,3. This sutta and the next seem to be quoting from AN II 164,4–22, where the Buddha names the “standards and criteria” for the four classes of his followers. Citta the householder was the foremost male lay disciple among the speakers on the Dhamma; see the *Cittasaṃyutta* (41:1–10). Hatthaka Āḷavaka was the foremost of those who propitiate an assembly with the four means of beneficence; see AN I 26,5–9 and AN IV 217–20, and I, n. 604.
- 329 Khujjuttarā was the foremost female lay disciple among those who have learned much, Veḷukaṇḍakiyā (or Uttarā) Nandamātā the foremost of the meditators; see AN I 26,19, 21. Khemā and Uppalavaṇṇā, mentioned just below, were the foremost bhikkhunis in regard to wisdom and spiritual power, respectively. Uppalavaṇṇā has appeared at 5:5, and Khemā gives a discourse at 44:1.
- 330 See above n. 249.
- 331 Spk: *Its origin (samudaya)*: an individual form of existence together with past kamma, status as a son of good family, beauty of complexion, eloquence as a speaker, the display of ascetic virtues, the wearing of the robe, possession of a retinue, etc., are called the origin of gain and honour. They do not understand this by way of the truth of the origin, and so cessation and the path should be understood by way of the truths of cessation and the path.
- 332 Spk: The *pleasant dwellings in this very life (diṭṭhadhamma-sukhavihāra)* are the pleasant dwellings in fruition attainment. For when a meritorious arahant receives congee, sweets, etc., he must give thanks to those who come, teach them the Dhamma, answer questions, etc., and thus he does not get a chance to sit down and enter fruition attainment.  
Spk’s identification of the “pleasant dwellings” with fruition attainment is certainly too narrow. The term usually means the *jhānas*, as at II 278,10–11.
- 333 The three wholesome roots are nongreed, nonhatred, and

nondelusion. Spk explains this to mean that the wholesome roots have been cut off to such an extent that Devadatta is incapable of taking rebirth in heaven or of achieving the path and fruit; it does not mean that his wholesome roots have been permanently eradicated. The next two suttas state the same meaning using different terms.

- 334 This sutta and the following one also occur at Vin II 187–88 in inverted order, without the homily on gains, honour, and fame, and with the verse at the end. See too AN II 73. The verse = I, v. 597, also spoken with reference to Devadatta. On the simile of the mule just below, Spk says that they mate her with a horse. If she becomes pregnant, when her time for delivery arrives she is unable to give birth. She stands striking the ground with her feet. Then they tie her feet to four stakes, split open her belly, and remove the foal. She dies right there.
- 335 *Pittaṃ bhindeyyuṃ*. PED, s.v. *pittaṃ*, says the passage is unclear and refers to an alternative interpretation proposed by Morris, JPTS 1893, 4. My rendering accords with Spk’s comment: “They throw (*pakhippeyyuṃ*) bear bile or fish bile over its nostrils.” Spk-pt glosses *pakhippeyyuṃ* here with *osiñceyyuṃ*, “they sprinkle.” Horner renders “as if they were to throw a bladder at a fierce dog’s nose” (BD 5:263).
- 336 Spk: When bandits grab hold of his mother in the wilderness and say they will release her only if he tells a deliberate lie, even then he won’t tell a deliberate lie. The same method in the other cases.

### 18. *Rāhulasāmyutta*

- 337 Rāhula was the Buddha’s son. He became a novice (*sāmaṇera*) at the age of seven, during the Buddha’s first visit to his native city of Kapilavatthu after his enlightenment. Other discourses spoken to him are: MN Nos. 61, 62 and 147 (the latter = 35:121) and Sn II, 11 (pp. 58–59).
- 338 Spk explains the three “grips” (*gāha*) of “mine, I, and my self” exactly as in n. 155. It takes dispassion (*virāga*) to denote the four paths, liberation (*vimutti*) the four fruits. Spk does not comment on *nibbindati*, “experiences revul-

sion," but the commentaries consistently identify the corresponding noun *nibbidā* with strong insight knowledge (see above n. 69).

- 339 To the four primary elements of the form aggregate (*cattāro mahābhūtā*) the suttas sometimes add the space element (*ākāśadhātu*)—which (according to the commentaries) represents derived form (*upādāya rūpa*)—and the consciousness element (*viññāṇadhātu*), which represents the entire mental side of existence. For a detailed analysis of all six elements, see MN III 240,17–243,10.
- 340 Spk: *In regard to this body with consciousness (imasmim saviññāṇake kāye)*: he shows his own conscious body. *And in regard to all external signs (bahiddhā ca sabbanimittesu)*: the conscious body of others and insentient objects. Or alternatively: by the former expression he shows his own sentient organism and that of others (reading with *Se attano ca parassa ca saviññāṇakaṃ eva*); by the latter, external form not bound up with sense faculties (*bahiddhā anindriyabaddharūpaṃ*). (The compound) *ahaṅkāramamaṅkāramānānusayā* is to be resolved thus: *I-making (ahaṅkāra)*, *mine-making (mamaṅkāra)*, and *the underlying tendency to conceit (mānānusayā)*. (So the text in Be and Se, but if, as seems likely, the plural termination derives from the *asamāhāra* compound, after resolution the last member should be *mānānusayo*.)
- "I-making" is regarded as the function of wrong view (the view of self), "mine-making" of craving. The root conceit is the conceit "I am" (*asmimāna*), so conceit is also responsible for "I-making."
- 341 This elevenfold classification of each of the five aggregates is analysed in detail at Vibh 1–12.
- 342 Spk: *Has transcended discrimination (vidhā samatikkantaṃ)*: has fully gone beyond the different kinds of conceit; *is peaceful (santaṃ)*: by the appeasement of defilements; *and well liberated (suvimuttaṃ)*: fully liberated from defilements.

### 19. *Lakkhaṇasaṃyutta*

- 343 The series of suttas included in this *saṃyutta* also occurs at Vin III 104–8. Spk: The Venerable Lakkhaṇa, a great disciple,

had been one of the thousand *jaṭila* ascetics who received higher ordination by the "Come, bhikkhu" utterance (see Vin I 32–34). He attained arahantship at the end of the Discourse on Burning (35:28). Since he possessed a Brahmā-like body that was endowed with auspicious marks (*lakkhaṇasampanna*), perfect in all respects, he was called "Lakkhaṇa."

- 344 Spk: The reason for Moggallāna's smile, as is mentioned in the text below, is that he saw a being reborn in the world of ghosts whose body was a skeleton. Having seen such a form of individual existence, he should have felt compassion, so why did he display a smile? Because he recollected his own success in gaining release from the prospect of such forms of rebirth and the success of the Buddha-knowledge; for the Buddhas teach such things through their own direct cognition (*paccakkhaṃ katvā*) and have thoroughly penetrated the element of phenomena (*suppaṭividdhā buddhānaṃ dhammadhātu*).
- 345 I follow Be: *vitudenti vitacchenti virājenti*. Se reads *vitudenti* only, while Ee has *vitacchenti vibhajenti*. Spk comments only on *vitudenti*: "They ran and moved here and there, piercing him again and again with their metal beaks as sharp as sword blades." According to Spk, the vultures, etc., were actually *yakkhas* (*yakkhagijjhā*, *yakkhakākā*, *yakkhakulalā*); for such a form does not come into the visual range of natural vultures, etc.
- 346 *Evarūpo pi nāma satto bhavissati evarūpo pi nāma yakkho bhavissati evarūpo pi nāma attabhāvapaṭilābho bhavissati*. Spk: In saying this Moggallāna shows his sense of urgency in the Dhamma, arisen out of compassion for such beings.
- The expression *attabhāvapaṭilābho*, which literally means "acquisition of selfhood," is used idiomatically to denote a concrete form of individual identity. *Attabhāva* sometimes occurs in a more restricted sense with reference to the physical body, for instance at Ud 54,17–19.
- 347 Spk: *As a residual result of that same kamma (tass' eva kammaṃ vipākāvasesena)*: of that "kamma (to be experienced) in subsequent lives" (*aparāpariyakamma*) accumulated by different volitions. For the rebirth in hell is produced by a certain volition, and when its result is exhausted rebirth is

produced among the ghosts, etc., having as its object the residue of that kamma or the sign of the kamma (see CMA 5:35–38). Therefore, because that rebirth comes about through correspondence of kamma or correspondence of object (*kammasabhāgatāya ārammaṇasabhāgatāya vā*), it is called “a residual result of that same kamma.” It is said that at the time he passed away from hell, a heap of fleshless cows’ bones became the sign (i.e., the object of the last conscious process, which then becomes the object of the rebirth-consciousness). Thus he became a ghost (in the form of) a skeleton, as if making manifest to the wise the hidden kamma.

- 348 Spk: He had earned his living for many years as a cattle butcher who seasoned pieces of beef, dried them, and sold the dried meat. When he passed away from hell, a piece of meat became the sign and he became a ghost (in the form of) a piece of meat.
- 349 Spk: He was an executioner who inflicted many punishments on state criminals and then finally shot them with arrows. After arising in hell, when he was subsequently reborn through the residual result of that kamma the state of being pierced by an arrow became the sign and therefore he became a ghost with body-hairs of arrows.
- 350 In Be and Se, this sutta is entitled *Sūciloma* and the following sutta *Dutiya-sūciloma*, while in Ee the former is entitled *Sūci-sārathi* and the latter *Sūcako*. In Be and Se, the miserable spirit in the former sutta is said to have been a *sūta*, glossed by Spk as *assadamaka*, a horse trainer, while in Ee he is said to have been a *sūcaka*. In all three eds., the spirit in the following sutta is said to have been a *sūcaka*, glossed by Spk as *pesuññākāraka*, a slanderer. I follow Be and Se both with respect to the titles of the two suttas and the former identities of the tormented spirits.
- 351 Spk: He was a slanderer who divided people from each other and brought them to ruin and misery by his insinuations. Therefore, as people were divided by him through his insinuations (*tena sūcetvā manussā bhinnā*), to experience the pain of being pierced by needles (*sūcihi bhedanadukkhaṃ paccanubhotuṃ*), he took that kamma itself as the sign and became a needle-haired ghost (*sūcilomapeta*). (The aptness

of the retribution is established by the similarity between the Pāli word *sūci*, needle, and the verb *sūceti*, to insinuate to indicate.)

- 352 *Gāmakūṭa*, lit. “village cheat.” Spk: He secretly accepted bribes and, committing an evident wrong by his skewed judgements, misallocated the belongings of others. Hence his private parts were exposed. Since he caused an unbearable burden for others by imposing harsh penalties, his private parts became an unbearable burden for him. And since he was unrighteous (*visama*) when he should have been righteous, his private parts became uneven (*visama*) and he had to sit on them.
- Interestingly, Ee (apparently based on SS) here reads *dhaṅkā* for crows in place of *kākā* in the other eds. See I v. 808d and I, n. 566.
- 353 Spk: Having experienced contact with another man’s wife having enjoyed vile pleasure, sensual pleasure, he has been reborn in circumstances where, as a counterpart of that kamma, he experiences contact with filth and undergoes pain.
- 354 I read the first word of this sentence with Se and SS as *ato* as against the exclamation *aho* in Be and Ee.
- 355 Spk: She cheated on her husband and enjoyed contact with other men. Thus she fell away from pleasant contact and as a counterpart of that kamma, was reborn as a flayed woman to experience painful contact.
- 356 *Maṅgulitthi*. Spk glosses: *maṅgulin ti virūpaṃ duddasikaṃ bibhacchaṃ*. She deceived people, accepting scents and flowers, telling them they could become rich by performing certain rites. She caused the multitude to accept a bad view, a wrong view. Thus she herself became foul-smelling because of taking scents and flowers, and ugly because of making them accept a bad view.
- 357 Spk explains *uppakkaṃ okiliniṃ okirinaṃ* thus: She was lying on a bed of coals, trembling and turning around as she was cooked, therefore she was *roasting* (*uppakkā*), i.e. with body cooked by the hot fire. She was *sweltering* (*okilini*), with a sweating body; and *sooty* (*okirini*), completely covered with soot.
- 358 Spk: While using the four requisites provided by the people

out of faith, being unrestrained in bodily and verbal conduct and corrupt in his means of livelihood, he went about playfully to his heart's content. The same method of explanation applies in the following cases too.

### 20. *Opammasaṃyutta*

- 359 The simile of the peaked house, common in the Nikāyas, recurs in SN at 22:102 (III 156,3-5), 45:141, 46:7, 48:52. Spk glosses "diligent" as "constantly yoked with mindfulness" (*appamattā ti satiyā avippavāse ʔhitā hutvā*).
- 360 This theme is treated in greater detail at 56:102-31. Spk says that the devas are included here along with humans, so that the statement should be understood to mean that few are reborn among humans and devas.
- 361 The simile is also at Vin II 256,16-18 and AN IV 278,22-25, but with a different application. *Corehi kumbhatthenakehi* is lit. "pot-thief bandits." Spk explains: Having entered the houses of others, having surveyed the scene by the light of a lamp, desiring to steal the belongings of others, they make a lamp in a jar (*ghaṭe*) and enter. Even mud-sprites (*paṃsupisācakā*) assail those devoid of development of lovingkindness, how much more then powerful nonhumans? *Amanussa*, lit. "nonhuman," usually denotes a malevolent spirit or demon.
- 362 Be and Se: *okkhāsatam*; Ee: *ukkhāsatam*. Spk: = *mahāmukha-ukkhālinam satam*. Spk-pt: = *mahāmukhānam mahantakoḷumbānam satam*. The reference is to large pots used to boil a great quantity of rice. AN IV 394-96 makes the same point somewhat differently, and adds that developing the perception of impermanence even for a fingersnap is still more fruitful than developing a mind of lovingkindness.
- 363 Spk: *Gadduhanamattan ti goduhanamattam* (lit. "the extent of a cow's milking"), that is, the extent of time needed to take one pull on a cow's teat. Or else (*gadduhanamattam* =) *gandha-ūhanamattam* (lit. "the extent of a scent-sniff"), that is, the extent of time needed to take a single sniff of a piece of incense picked up with two fingers. If, for even such a short time, one is able to develop a mind of lovingkindness, pervading all beings in immeasurable world systems with a wish for their welfare, this is more fruitful even than that alms given three times in a single day.
- 364 Spk explains the three verbs thus: *paṭileneti*, having struck the top, bending it like a cotton wick, one makes it fuse together as if it were a strand of resin; *paṭikoṭṭeti*, having struck it in the middle and bent it back, or having struck it along the blade, one makes the two blades fuse together; *paṭivaṭṭeti*, turning it around as if making a cotton wick (?), one twirls it around for a long time, unravels it, and again twirls it around.
- 365 This sutta also appears in the introduction to Ja No. 476, which turns upon the same theme. In this story the Bodhisatta, in his incarnation as the swift goose Javana-haṃsa, performs the remarkable feat to be described just below.  
Spk explains the stock description of the archers thus: *Firm-bowed archers* (*dalhadhammā dhanuggahā*): archers with firm bows (*dalhadhanuno issāsā*). A "firm bow" is called the strength of two thousand. "The strength of two thousand" means that a weight of metal, such as bronze or lead, etc. (used for the arrowhead), bound to the string when the bow is lifted (for the shot), is released from the earth when the bow is grasped by its handle and drawn back the full length of the arrow. *Trained* (Se and Ee: *sikkhitā*; Be: *susikkhitā*, "well trained"): they have studied the craft in their teacher's circle for ten or twelve years. *Dexterous* (*katahatthā*): one who has simply studied a craft is not yet dexterous, but these are dexterous, having achieved mastery over it. *Experienced* (*katūpāsana*): they have displayed their craft in the king's court, etc.
- 366 *Āyusaṅkhārā*. Spk: This is said with reference to the physical life faculty (*rūpajīvitindriya*); for this perishes even faster than that. But it is not possible to describe the breakup of formless phenomena (i.e., of mental states, because according to the Abhidhamma they break up sixteen times faster than material phenomena).
- 367 Spk: The Dasārahas were a khattiya clan, so called because they took a tenth portion from a hundred (*satato dasabhāgaṃ gaṇhiṃsu*—reference not clear). The Summoner (*ānaka*) was the name of a drum, made from the claw of a

giant crab. It gave off a sound that could be heard for twelve *yojanas* all around and was therefore used to summon the people to assembly on festival days.

- 368 Spk: *Deep (gambhira)* by way of the text (*pāḷivasena*), like the Salla Sutta (Sn III, 8; Se: Sallekha Sutta = MN No. 8); *deep in meaning (gambhirattha)*, like the Mahāvedalla Sutta (MN No. 43); *supramundane (lokuttara)*, i.e., pointing to the supramundane goal; *dealing with emptiness (suññatā-paṭisaṃyutta)*, explaining mere phenomena devoid of a being (*sattasuññata-dhammamattam eva pakāsakā*), like the Saṅkhattasaṃyutta (?).

This passage recurs at 55:53, in commenting on which Spk cites as examples texts that sometimes differ from those cited here. See V, n. 366.

- 369 Spk glosses *sāvakaḥāsītā* as *tesaṃ tesaṃ sāvakehi bhāsītā*, referring back to the outsiders (*bāhiraka*). Spk-pt clarifies: "By the disciples of any of those who were not known as the Buddha's disciples."

- 370 "Block of wood" is *kaliṅgara*. Spk: In the first period of the Buddha's ministry the bhikkhus would practise meditation from the time they finished their meal (before noon) through the first watch of the night. They would sleep in the middle watch, resting their heads on pieces of wood (*kaṭṭhakaṇḍa*, a gloss on *kaliṅgara*); then they would rise early and resume their walking meditation.

The mood of this sutta is similar to the "fears of the future" suttas, AN III 105–10.

- 371 The elephant simile is also at Vin II 120, used in relation to Devadatta.

- 372 *Pasannākāraṃ karonti*. Spk: They give the four requisites. See n. 275.

- 373 See the following sutta for an explanation.

- 374 *Sandhisamalasaṅkatire*. Spk explains *sandhi* as an alley between two detached houses; *samala* as a channel for the discharge of waste from a house; and *saṅkatira* as a rubbish bin; see too Ps III 418,16 (commenting on MN I 334,27). At MLDB p. 433 the compound was translated, "by a doorpost or a dust-bin or a drain," but it seems these last two nouns should be inverted.

- 375 *Aññataraṃ saṅkiliṭṭhaṃ āpattiṃ āpajjati yathārūpāya āpattiyā*

*vuṭṭhānaṃ paññāyati*. An offence motivated by a defilement (in this case lust) but of a kind that can be expiated by undergoing the appropriate penalty (as opposed to an offence of the *pārājikā* class, which does not allow for expiation but requires permanent expulsion from the Saṅgha).

- 376 See 17:8 and n. 322 above. Spk identifies the "certain person" as Devadatta. I understand *Sakyaputtiya* to be an adjective meaning "following the Sakyan son," not a noun meaning "Sakyan son." The Sakyan son is the Buddha himself, who went forth from the Sakyan clan (see 55:7, V 352,18). Thus a *samaṇa sakyaputtiya* (see 28:10 (III 240,3-4) and 42:10 (IV 325,19-21)) is an ascetic following the Sakyan son, i.e., a Buddhist monk.
- 377 Spk: This too is said with reference to the behaviour of Devadatta. Spk relates an anecdote about a jackal who had been rescued from a python by a farmer. When the python grabbed the farmer, the jackal, out of gratitude, went to the farmer's brothers and led them to the scene, thereby enabling them to rescue the farmer.

## 21. *Bhikkhusaṃyutta*

- 378 Kolita was Mahāmoggallāna's personal name, Moggallāna being derived from his clan name. The present sutta is nearly identical with 40:2 and must be simply a variant on the latter, formulated in terms of noble silence rather than the second jhāna. As Spk makes clear, the sutta refers back to Moggallāna's week of striving for arahantship.
- 379 Spk explains that the second jhāna is called noble silence (*ariya tuṅhibhāva*) because within it thought and examination (*vitakka-vicāra*) cease, and with their cessation speech cannot occur. At 41:6 (IV 293,24–26) thought and examination are called the verbal formation (*vacisaṅkhāra*), the mental factors responsible for articulation of speech. But, Spk adds, when the Buddha says "either speak on the Dhamma or observe noble silence" (e.g., at MN I 161,32–33), even attention to a meditation subject can be considered noble silence.
- 380 Spk: It is said that by this means, over seven days, the Teacher helped the elder to develop concentration on occasions

- when it was tending to decline (*hānabhāgiya*) and thus led him to “greatness of direct knowledge” (*mahābhiññatā*), i.e., to the six direct knowledges.
- 381 Upatissa was Sāriputta’s personal name.
- 382 We should read simply *āvuso* with Be and Se, as against Ee *āvuso Sāriputta*.
- 383 Spk: *For a long time*: he says this referring to the time that had passed since the Buddha taught the wanderer Dighanakha “The Discourse on the Discernment of Feelings” at the door of the Boar’s Cave. For it was on that day that these defilements inherent in the round of existence were uprooted in the elder. See n. 97 above.
- 384 Spk: The dwelling is called gross on account of its object. For he dwelt in the exercise of the divine eye and divine ear element, which take gross objects, namely, the form base and the sound base.
- 385 I translate the peculiar Pāli idiom here a little freely to bring out the meaning. My rendering follows Spk’s paraphrase: “The elder wondered, ‘Where is the Blessed One now dwelling?’ Having extended light, he saw him with the divine eye sitting in his Fragrant Cottage in Jeta’s Grove; then he heard his voice with the divine ear element. The Teacher did the same, and thus they could see each other and hear each other’s voices.”
- 386 As at 12:22 (II 28,24–28).
- 387 See 51:10 (V 259,18–20). Spk glosses *kappa* here as *āyukappa*, meaning the full human life span of 120 years. However, there seems to be no textual basis for taking *kappa* in this passage as meaning anything other than a cosmic aeon, the full extent of time required for a world system to evolve and dissolve. See V, n. 249.
- 388 The word “*nāga*” here is used in the sense of arahant.
- 389 *Jetvā Māraṃ savāhanaṃ*. Spk does not comment on the “mount,” but other commentaries explain it as either the elephant Girimekha (Pj II 392,3 to Sn 442) or Māra’s army (Mp III 18,26 to AN II 15,29). At Ja I 72, Māra is shown mounting his elephant Girimekha before going to attack the future Buddha under the Bodhi Tree.
- 390 His name means “Bhaddiya the Dwarf.” The prose portion is at Ud 76; see too Ud 74,20–75,6. Spk notes that it was the monks of the “gang of six” (*chabbhagiya bhikkhū*, the mischief-makers of the Saṅgha often mentioned in the Vinaya Piṭaka) who had been ridiculing him. Bhaddiya’s ugliness, according to Spk, was the kammic result of his behaviour in a previous life when he was a king who mocked and harassed old people. Though ugly in appearance, he had a lovely voice, which resulted from another past life when he was a cuckoo who offered a sweet mango to the Buddha Vipassī. The Buddha declared him the foremost of bhikkhus having a sweet voice (*mañjussara*; AN I 23,24). His verses at Th 466–72 do not include the verses here.
- 391 His verses are at Th 209–10. The same description is given of Sāriputta’s talk at 8:6. This entire sutta is at AN II 51.
- 392 We should read with Be (and Ee at AN II 51,29): *nābhāsamānaṃ jānanti*. The readings *no bhāsamānaṃ* (Ee) and *na bhāsamānaṃ* (Se) give a meaning opposite to the one required. The BHS parallel of the verse at Uv 29:43–44 supports Be: *nābhāsamānā jñāyante*.
- 393 He was the son of the Buddha’s father Suddhodana and his aunt and foster mother, Mahāpajāpatī Gotamī. Hence, though he was also the Buddha’s half-brother through their common father, the text refers to him as *mātucchāputta*, “maternal cousin.” His story is at Ud 21–24 and, more elaborately, at Dh-p-a I 115–22; see BL 1:217–23.
- Spk: Why did the elder behave thus? To find out what the Teacher thought about it, thinking: “If the Teacher says, ‘My half-brother is beautiful like this,’ I’ll conduct myself in this way all my life. But if he points out a fault here, I’ll give this up, wear a rag-robe, and dwell in a remote lodging.”
- 394 *Aññātuñchena yāpentaṃ*. Spk: Scraps gained by one seeking delicious, well-seasoned food at the homes of affluent and powerful people are called “scraps of known people” (*ñātuncha*, lit. “known scraps”). But the mixed food obtained by standing at the doors of houses is called “scraps of strangers” (lit. “unknown scraps”).
- 395 He was the Buddha’s *pitucchāputta*, son of the Buddha’s paternal aunt, Amitā (DPPN, s.v. Tissa Thera (14)).
- 396 Spk explains that while he was still a novice, when elders arrived at the monastery from distant regions to see the Buddha he remained seated and did not perform any

services to them or show them due respect. This was all because of his khattiya pride and his pride of being the Buddha's cousin. The other bhikkhus had surrounded him and censured him sharply for his lack of courtesy. A variant of this incident is recorded at Dh-p-a I 37-39; see BL 1:166-67.

- 397 *Aññatāro bhikkhu theranāmakō*. Spk does not explain this peculiar name or further identify the monk.
- 398 Spk: The past is said to be abandoned (*pahinaṃ*) by the abandoning of desire and lust for the five aggregates of the past; the future is relinquished (*paṭinissaṭṭhaṃ*) by the relinquishing of desire and lust for the five aggregates of the future. Cp. MN III 188-89, 195-98. The plural *attabhāva-paṭilābhesu* is hard to account for; perhaps it means the five aggregates taken individually, though this would be an unusual use of the expression. See n. 346.
- 399 The first three pādas are at Sn 211 and, with a variation, at Dh-p 353. Spk: *All-conqueror (sabbābhibhuṃ)*: one who abides having overcome all aggregates, sense bases, and elements, and the three kinds of existence. *Unstuck (anupalit-taṃ, or "unstuck")* among those very things by the paste (*lepa*) of craving and views. *Liberated in the destruction of craving (taṇhakkhaye vimuttaṃ)*: liberated in Nibbāna, called the destruction of craving by way of the liberation that takes this as its object.
- 400 He was the foremost bhikkhu disciple among those who exhort bhikkhus (*bhikkhu-ovādaka*; AN I 25,13). His verses are at Th 547-56, and he is commended by the Buddha at 54:7. Spk: He had been a king who ruled over the city of Kukkuṭavati. As soon as he heard about the Buddha, the Dhamma, and the Saṅgha from a group of travelling merchants he left his kingdom for Sāvattḥi together with his thousand ministers, intending to go forth. His queen Anojā followed him, accompanied by the ministers' wives, all with the same intention. The Buddha came out to meet both parties. He first ordained the men as bhikkhus with the "Come, bhikkhu" ordination, and then he had the women ordained as bhikkhunis by the elder nun Uppalavaṇṇā.
- 401 Spk: It is said that they had been companions in five hundred past births.

### Part III

## The Book of the Aggregates

### (*Khandhavagga*)

# Contents

Introduction 839

## Chapter I

### 22. *Khandhasamyutta*

Connected Discourses on the Aggregates

#### DIVISION I. THE ROOT FIFTY

##### I. Nakulapitā

- 1 (1) Nakulapitā 853
- 2 (2) At Devadaha 856
- 3 (3) Hālidakāni (1) 859
- 4 (4) Hālidakāni (2) 862
- 5 (5) Concentration 863
- 6 (6) Seclusion 864
- 7 (7) Agitation through Clinging (1) 865
- 8 (8) Agitation through Clinging (2) 866
- 9 (9) Impermanent in the Three Times 867
- 10 (10) Suffering in the Three Times 867
- 11 (11) Nonsself in the Three Times 868

##### II. Impermanent

- 12 (1) Impermanent 868
- 13 (2) Suffering 868
- 14 (3) Nonsself 869
- 15 (4) What is Impermanent 869
- 16 (5) What is Suffering 869
- 17 (6) What is Nonsself 870
- 18 (7) Impermanent with Cause 870
- 19 (8) Suffering with Cause 870

- 20 (9) Nonsell with Cause 871
- 21 (10) Ānanda 871

## III. The Burden

- 22 (1) The Burden 871
- 23 (2) Full Understanding 872
- 24 (3) Directly Knowing 873
- 25 (4) Desire and Lust 873
- 26 (5) Gratification (1) 873
- 27 (6) Gratification (2) 874
- 28 (7) Gratification (3) 875
- 29 (8) Delight 875
- 30 (9) Arising 876
- 31 (10) The Root of Misery 876
- 32 (11) The Fragile 876

## IV. Not Yours

- 33 (1) Not Yours (1) 877
- 34 (2) Not Yours (2) 877
- 35 (3) A Certain Bhikkhu (1) 877
- 36 (4) A Certain Bhikkhu (2) 879
- 37 (5) Ānanda (1) 880
- 38 (6) Ānanda (2) 880
- 39 (7) In Accordance with the Dhamma (1) 882
- 40 (8) In Accordance with the Dhamma (2) 882
- 41 (9) In Accordance with the Dhamma (3) 882
- 42 (10) In Accordance with the Dhamma (4) 882

## V. With Yourselves as an Island

- 43 (1) With Yourselves as an Island 882
- 44 (2) The Way 883
- 45 (3) Impermanent (1) 884
- 46 (4) Impermanent (2) 885
- 47 (5) Ways of Regarding Things 885
- 48 (6) Aggregates 886
- 49 (7) Soṇa (1) 887
- 50 (8) Soṇa (2) 889
- 51 (9) Destruction of Delight (1) 889
- 52 (10) Destruction of Delight (2) 890

## DIVISION II. THE MIDDLE FIFTY

## I. Engagement

- 53 (1) Engagement 890
- 54 (2) Seeds 891
- 55 (3) Inspired Utterance 892
- 56 (4) Phases of the Clinging Aggregates 895
- 57 (5) The Seven Cases 897
- 58 (6) The Perfectly Enlightened One 900
- 59 (7) The Characteristic of Nonsell 901
- 60 (8) Mahāli 903
- 61 (9) Burning 904
- 62 (10) Pathways of Language 905

## II. Arahants

- 63 (1) In Clinging 906
- 64 (2) In Conceiving 907
- 65 (3) In Seeking Delight 907
- 66 (4) Impermanent 908
- 67 (5) Suffering 909
- 68 (6) Nonsell 909
- 69 (7) What Does Not Belong to Self 909
- 70 (8) Whatever Appears Tantalizing 909
- 71 (9) Rādha 909
- 72 (10) Surādha 910

## III. Being Devoured

- 73 (1) Gratification 910
- 74 (2) Origin (1) 911
- 75 (3) Origin (2) 911
- 76 (4) Arahants (1) 911
- 77 (5) Arahants (2) 913
- 78 (6) The Lion 913
- 79 (7) Being Devoured 914
- 80 (8) Alms-Gatherer 918
- 81 (9) Pārileyya 921
- 82 (10) The Full-Moon Night 923

## IV. The Elders

- 83 (1) Ānanda 928
- 84 (2) Tissa 929

- 85 (3) Yamaka 931
- 86 (4) Anurādha 936
- 87 (5) Vakkali 938
- 88 (6) Assaji 941
- 89 (7) Khemaka 942
- 90 (8) Channa 946
- 91 (9) Rāhula (1) 947
- 92 (10) Rāhula (2) 948

## V. Flowers

- 93 (1) The River 949
- 94 (2) Flowers 949
- 95 (3) A Lump of Foam 951
- 96 (4) A Lump of Cowdung 953
- 97 (5) The Fingernail 955
- 98 (6) Simple Version 956
- 99 (7) The Leash (1) 957
- 100 (8) The Leash (2) 958
- 101 (9) The Adze Handle (or The Ship) 959
- 102 (10) Perception of Impermanence 961

## DIVISION III. THE FINAL FIFTY

## I. Portions

- 103 (1) Portions 963
- 104 (2) Suffering 963
- 105 (3) Identity 964
- 106 (4) To Be Fully Understood 964
- 107 (5) Ascetics (1) 964
- 108 (6) Ascetics (2) 965
- 109 (7) Stream-Enterer 965
- 110 (8) Arahant 966
- 111 (9) Abandoning Desire (1) 966
- 112 (10) Abandoning Desire (2) 966

## II. A Speaker on the Dhamma

- 113 (1) Ignorance 966
- 114 (2) True Knowledge 967
- 115 (3) A Speaker on the Dhamma (1) 967
- 116 (4) A Speaker on the Dhamma (2) 968
- 117 (5) Bondage 968

- 118 (6) Interrogation (1) 969
- 119 (7) Interrogation (2) 969
- 120 (8) Things That Fetter 970
- 121 (9) Things That Can Be Clung To 970
- 122 (10) Virtuous 970
- 123 (11) Instructed 972
- 124 (12) Kappa (1) 972
- 125 (13) Kappa (2) 972

## III. Ignorance

- 126 (1) Subject to Arising (1) 972
- 127 (2) Subject to Arising (2) 973
- 128 (3) Subject to Arising (3) 973
- 129 (4) Gratification (1) 974
- 130 (5) Gratification (2) 974
- 131 (6) Origin (1) 974
- 132 (7) Origin (2) 975
- 133 (8) Kottḥita (1) 975
- 134 (9) Kottḥita (2) 975
- 135 (10) Kottḥita (3) 975

## IV. Hot Embers

- 136 (1) Hot Embers 976
- 137 (2) Impermanent (1) 976
- 138 (3) Impermanent (2) 976
- 139 (4) Impermanent (3) 976
- 140 (5) Suffering (1) 977
- 141 (6) Suffering (2) 977
- 142 (7) Suffering (3) 977
- 143 (8) Nonsself (1) 977
- 144 (9) Nonsself (2) 977
- 145 (10) Nonsself (3) 977
- 146 (11) Engrossed in Revulsion 977
- 147 (12) Contemplating Impermanence 978
- 148 (13) Contemplating Suffering 978
- 149 (14) Contemplating Nonsself 978

## V. Views

- 150 (1) Internally 978
- 151 (2) This Is Mine 979

- 152 (3) The Self 979
- 153 (4) It Might Not Be For Me 980
- 154 (5) Wrong View 980
- 155 (6) Identity View 981
- 156 (7) View of Self 981
- 157 (8) Adherence (1) 982
- 158 (9) Adherence (2) 982
- 159 (10) Ānanda 982

## Chapter II

23. *Rādhasamyutta*

## Connected Discourses with Rādha

## I. The First Māra Subchapter

- 1 (1) Māra 984
- 2 (2) A Being 985
- 3 (3) The Conduit to Existence 985
- 4 (4)–10 (10) To Be Fully Understood, Etc. 986

## II. The Second Māra Subchapter

- 11 (1) Māra 986
- 12 (2) Subject to Māra 986
- 13 (3) Impermanent 986
- 14 (4) Of Impermanent Nature 987
- 15 (5) Suffering 987
- 16 (6) Of Painful Nature 987
- 17 (7) Nonself 987
- 18 (8) Of Selfless Nature 988
- 19 (9) Subject to Destruction 988
- 20 (10) Subject to Vanishing 988
- 21 (11) Subject to Arising 988
- 22 (12) Subject to Cessation 989

## III. Request

- 23 (1) Māra 989
- 24 (2)–34 (12) Subject to Māra, Etc. 989

## IV. Sitting Nearby

- 35 (1) Māra 990
- 36 (2)–46 (12) Subject to Māra, Etc. 990

## Chapter III

24. *Ditṭhisamyutta*

## Connected Discourses on Views

## I. Stream-Entry

- 1 (1) Winds 991
- 2 (2) This Is Mine 992
- 3 (3) The Self 992
- 4 (4) It Might Not Be For Me 993
- 5 (5) There Is Not 993
- 6 (6) Acting 994
- 7 (7) Cause 995
- 8 (8) The Great View 995
- 9 (9) The World Is Eternal 997
- 10 (10) The World Is Not Eternal 997
- 11 (11) The World is Finite 997
- 12 (12) The World Is Infinite 997
- 13 (13) Soul and Body Are the Same 998
- 14 (14) Soul and Body Are Different 998
- 15 (15) The Tathāgata Exists 998
- 16 (16) The Tathāgata Does Not Exist 998
- 17 (17) The Tathāgata Both Exists and Does Not Exist 999
- 18 (18) The Tathāgata Neither Exists Nor Does Not Exist 999

## II. The Second Trip

- 19 (1) Winds 1000
- 20 (2)–36 (18) This Is Mine, Etc. 1000
- 37 (19) A Self Consisting of Form 1000
- 38 (20) A Formless Self 1001
- 39 (21) A Self Both Consisting of Form and Formless 1001
- 40 (22) A Self Neither Consisting of Form nor Formless 1001
- 41 (23) Exclusively Happy 1001
- 42 (24) Exclusively Miserable 1001
- 43 (25) Both Happy and Miserable 1001
- 44 (26) Neither Happy nor Miserable 1001

## III. The Third Trip

- 45 (1) Winds 1002
- 46 (2)–70 (26) This Is Mine, Etc. 1002

## IV. The Fourth Trip

- 71 (1) Winds 1002  
72 (2)–96 (26) This Is Mine, Etc. 1003

## Chapter IV

25. *Okkantisaṃyutta*

## Connected Discourses on Entering

- 1 The Eye 1004  
2 Forms 1004  
3 Consciousness 1005  
4 Contact 1005  
5 Feeling 1005  
6 Perception 1006  
7 Volition 1006  
8 Craving 1006  
9 Elements 1006  
10 Aggregates 1006

## Chapter V

26. *Uppādasāṃyutta*

## Connected Discourses on Arising

- 1 The Eye 1008  
2 Forms 1008  
3 Consciousness 1008  
4 Contact 1009  
5 Feeling 1009  
6 Perception 1009  
7 Volition 1010  
8 Craving 1010  
9 Elements 1010  
10 Aggregates 1010

## Chapter VI

27. *Kilesasāṃyutta*

## Connected Discourses on Defilements

- 1 The Eye 1012  
2 Forms 1012

- 3 Consciousness 1012  
4 Contact 1013  
5 Feeling 1013  
6 Perception 1013  
7 Volition 1013  
8 Craving 1013  
9 Elements 1014  
10 Aggregates 1014

## Chapter VII

28. *Sāriputtasāṃyutta*

## Connected Discourses with Sāriputta

- 1 Born of Seclusion 1015  
2 Without Thought 1016  
3 Rapture 1016  
4 Equanimity 1016  
5 The Base of the Infinity of Space 1017  
6 The Base of the Infinity of Consciousness 1017  
7 The Base of Nothingness 1017  
8 The Base of Neither-Perception-Nor-Nonperception 1017  
9 The Attainment of Cessation 1018  
10 Sucimukhi 1018

## Chapter VIII

29. *Nāgasāṃyutta*

## Connected Discourses on Nāgas

- 1 Simple Version 1020  
2 Superior 1020  
3 The Uposatha (1) 1020  
4–6 The Uposatha (2–4) 1021  
7 He Has Heard (1) 1021  
8–10 He Has Heard (2–4) 1021  
11–20 With the Support of Giving (1) 1021  
21–50 With the Support of Giving (2–4) 1022

## Chapter IX

30. *Supaṇṇasamyutta*

## Connected Discourses on Supaṇṇas

- 1 Simple Version 1023
- 2 They Carry Off 1023
- 3 Ambivalent (1) 1023
- 4–6 Ambivalent (2–4) 1024
- 7–16 With the Support of Giving (1) 1024
- 17–46 With the Support of Giving (2–4) 1024

## Chapter X

31. *Gandhabbasamyutta*

## Connected Discourses on Gandhabbas

- 1 Simple Version 1025
- 2 Good Conduct 1025
- 3 Giver (1) 1026
- 4–12 Giver (2–10) 1026
- 13–22 With the Support of Giving (1) 1026
- 23–112 With the Support of Giving (2) 1027

## Chapter XI

32. *Valāhakasamyutta*

## Connected Discourses on Cloud Devas

- 1 Simple Version 1028
- 2 Good Conduct 1028
- 3–12 With the Support of Giving (1) 1028
- 13–52 With the Support of Giving (2) 1028
- 53 Cool-Cloud Devas 1028
- 54 Warm-Cloud Devas 1029
- 55 Storm-Cloud Devas 1029
- 56 Wind-Cloud Devas 1029
- 57 Rain-Cloud Devas 1029

## Chapter XII

33. *Vacchagottasamyutta*

## Connected Discourses with Vacchagotta

- 1 Because of Not Knowing (1) 1031
- 2 Because of Not Knowing (2) 1031
- 3 Because of Not Knowing (3) 1032
- 4 Because of Not Knowing (4) 1032
- 5 Because of Not Knowing (5) 1032
- 6–10 Because of Not Seeing 1032
- 11–15 Because of Not Breaking Through 1032
- 16–20 Because of Not Comprehending 1032
- 21–25 Because of Not Penetrating 1033
- 26–30 Because of Not Discerning 1033
- 31–35 Because of Not Discriminating 1033
- 36–40 Because of Not Differentiating 1033
- 41–45 Because of Not Examining 1033
- 46–50 Because of Not Closely Examining 1033
- 51–55 Because of Not Directly Cognizing 1033

## Chapter XIII

34. *Jhānasamyutta*

## Connected Discourses on Meditation

- 1 Attainment in relation to Concentration 1034
- 2 Maintenance in relation to Concentration 1034
- 3 Emergence in relation to Concentration 1035
- 4 Pliancy in relation to Concentration 1035
- 5 The Object in relation to Concentration 1035
- 6 The Range in relation to Concentration 1035
- 7 Resolution in relation to Concentration 1035
- 8 Thoroughness in relation to Concentration 1036
- 9 Persistence in relation to Concentration 1036
- 10 Suitability in relation to Concentration 1036
- 11 Maintenance in relation to Attainment 1036
- 12 Emergence in relation to Attainment 1036
- 13 Pliancy in relation to Attainment 1037
- 14 The Object in relation to Attainment 1037
- 15 The Range in relation to Attainment 1037
- 16 Resolution in relation to Attainment 1037

## Introduction

17 Thoroughness in relation to Attainment	1037
18 Persistence in relation to Attainment	1037
19 Suitability in relation to Attainment	1037
20 Emergence in relation to Maintenance	1037
21–27 Pliancy in relation to Maintenance, Etc.	1038
28 Pliancy in relation to Emergence	1038
29–34 The Object in relation to Emergence, Etc.	1038
35 The Object in relation to Pliancy	1038
36–40 The Range in relation to Pliancy, Etc.	1039
41 The Range in relation to the Object	1039
42–45 Resolution in relation to the Object, Etc.	1039
46 Resolution in relation to the Range	1039
47–49 Thoroughness in relation to the Range, Etc.	1040
50 Thoroughness in relation to Resolution	1040
51–52 Thoroughness in relation to the Range, Etc.	1040
53 Persistence in relation to Thoroughness	1040
54 Suitability in relation to Thoroughness	1041
55 Suitability in relation to Persistence	1041

Notes 1043

The *Khandhavagga*, The Book of the Aggregates, continues along the trail of philosophical exposition opened up by The Book of Causation, but this time breaking into another major area of early Buddhist discourse, the five aggregates. Like its predecessor, the *Khandhavagga* is named after its opening *saṃyutta*, which dominates the entire collection. Though the *Vagga* contains thirteen *saṃyuttas*, none of the minor ones even approaches the length of the *Khandhasaṃyutta*, which in the PTS edition takes up 188 of the 278 pages in this volume. But even more, within this *Vagga* three minor *saṃyuttas*—SN 23, 24, and 33—focus on the aggregates as their point of interest. These chapters seem to be offshoots from the original *Khandhasaṃyutta* which at some point were broken off and made into autonomous *saṃyuttas*. Thus the theme of the five aggregates leaves its stamp throughout this whole collection.

22. *Khandhasaṃyutta*

The *Khandhasaṃyutta* contains 159 suttas arranged into three divisions called *paññāsakas*, “sets of fifty.” Each *paññāsaka* is made up of five *vaggas* consisting of approximately ten suttas each, though several *vaggas* have slightly more than ten. The length and character of the suttas vary widely, ranging from texts several pages long with a unique flavour of their own to extremely terse suttas that merely instantiate a common template.

The topic of this *saṃyutta* is the five aggregates (*pañcakkhandha*), the primary scheme of categories the Buddha draws upon to analyse sentient existence. Whereas the teaching on dependent origination is intended to disclose the dynamic pattern running

through everyday experience that propels the round of birth and death forward from life to life, the teaching on the five aggregates concentrates on experience in its lived immediacy in the continuum from birth to death.

Examination of the five aggregates plays a critical role in the Buddha's teaching for at least four reasons. First, because the five aggregates are the ultimate referent of the first noble truth, the noble truth of suffering (see 56:13), and since all four truths revolve around suffering, understanding the aggregates is essential for understanding the Four Noble Truths as a whole. Second, because the five aggregates are the objective domain of clinging and as such contribute to the causal origination of future suffering. Third, because the removal of clinging is necessary for the attainment of release, and clinging must be removed from the objects around which its tentacles are wrapped, namely, the five aggregates. And fourth, because the removal of clinging is achieved by wisdom, and the kind of wisdom needed is precisely clear insight into the real nature of the aggregates.

The five aggregates are at once the constituents of sentient existence and the operative factors of lived experience, for within the thought world of the Nikāyas existence is of concern only to the extent that it is implicated in experience. Thus the five aggregates simultaneously serve the Buddha as a scheme of categories for analysing human identity and for explicating the structure of experience. However, the analysis into the aggregates undertaken in the Nikāyas is not pursued with the aim of reaching an objective, scientific understanding of the human being along the lines pursued by physiology and psychology; thus comparisons of the Buddhist analysis with those advanced by modern scientific disciplines can easily lead to spurious conclusions. For the Buddha, investigation into the nature of personal existence always remains subordinate to the liberative thrust of the Dhamma, and for this reason only those aspects of human existence that contribute to the realization of this purpose receive the spotlight of his attention.

The word *khandha* (Skt *skandha*) means, among other things, a heap or mass (*rāsi*). The five aggregates are so called because they each unite under one label a multiplicity of phenomena that share the same defining characteristic. Thus whatever form there is, "past, future, or present, internal or external, gross or subtle,

inferior or superior, far or near," is incorporated into the form aggregate, and so for each of the other aggregates (22:48). Two suttas in the *Khandhasamyutta* (22:56, 57) spell out the constituents of each aggregate, doing so in much simpler terms than the later, more elaborate analyses found in the *Visuddhimagga* and the commentaries. The breakdown of the aggregates according to the suttas is shown in Table 5. Another sutta (22:79) explains why each aggregate is called by its assigned name, and it is revealing that these explanations are phrased in terms of functions rather than fixed essences. This treatment of the aggregates as dynamic functions rather than substantial entities already pulls the ground away from the urge to grasp upon them as containing a permanent essence that can be considered the ultimate ground of being.

TABLE 5

The Five Aggregates according to the Suttas  
(based on SN 22:56 and 57)

Aggregate	Contents	Condition
form	4 great elements and form derived from them	nutriment
feeling	6 classes of feeling: feeling born of contact through eye, ear, nose, tongue, body, and mind	contact
perception	6 classes of perception: perception of forms, sounds, odours, tastes, tactiles, and mental phenomena	contact
volitional formations	6 classes of volition: volition regarding forms, sounds, odours, tastes, tactiles, and mental phenomena	contact
consciousness	6 classes of consciousness: eye-consciousness, ear-, nose-, tongue-, body-, and mind-consciousness	name-and-form

The Khandhasaṃyutta stresses in various ways that the five aggregates are *dukkha*, suffering, a point clearly articulated by the Buddha already in his first sermon when he states, "In brief, the five aggregates subject to clinging are suffering" (56:11). The aggregates are suffering because they tend to affliction and cannot be made to conform with our desires (22:59); because attachment to them leads to sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair (22:1); because their change induces fear, distress, and anxiety (22:7). Even more pointedly, the five aggregates are already suffering simply because they are impermanent (22:15) and thus can never fulfil our hopes for perfect happiness and security. While they give pleasure and joy, which is the gratification (*assāda*) in them, eventually they must change and pass away, and this instability is the danger (*ādinava*) perpetually concealed within them (22:26). Though we habitually assume that we are in control of the aggregates, in truth they are perpetually devouring us, making us their hapless victims (22:79). To identify with the aggregates and seek fulfilment in them is to be like a man who employs as his servant a vicious murderer out to take his life (22:85).

The five aggregates are the objective domain of the defilements that bind living beings to the round of existence, particularly the taints (*āsava*) and clinging (*upādāna*). Whatever in the world one might cling to, it is only form, feeling, perception, volitional formations, and consciousness that one clings to (22:79). For this reason the aggregates that make up our mundane experience are commonly called the five aggregates subject to clinging (*pañcupādānakkhandha*). Clinging, it will be recalled, is one of the links in the chain of dependent origination, the link that leads into the production of a new existence in the future. In 22:5, the five aggregates are spliced into the second half of the formula for dependent origination, thereby revealing how clinging to the five aggregates in this existence brings forth a new birth and thus the reappearance of the five aggregates in the next existence. Sutta 22:54 states that because of attachment to the five aggregates, consciousness grows and thrives from life to life; but with the destruction of lust, consciousness becomes unsupported and is then peaceful and liberated. This sutta assigns to consciousness a special place among the five aggregates, since consciousness stands supported by the other aggregates and passes away and

undergoes rebirth in dependence on them. This dictum accords with the suttas on dependent origination (such as 12:12, 38, and 64) that treat consciousness as the channel or vehicle of the rebirth process.

Clinging to the five aggregates occurs in two principal modes, which we might call appropriation and identification. In clinging to the aggregates, one either grasps them with desire and lust (*chandaraṅga*) and assumes possession of them, or one identifies with them, taking them as the basis for conceit or for views about one's real self. In a phrase often met with in the Khandhasaṃyutta, we are prone to think of the aggregates, "This is mine, this I am, this is my self" (*etaṃ mama, eso 'ham asmi, eso me attā*). Here, the notion "This is mine" represents the act of appropriation, a function of craving (*taṇhā*). The notions "This I am" and "This is my self" represent two types of identification, the former expressive of conceit (*māna*), the latter of views (*diṭṭhi*).

To break our appropriation of the aggregates, the Buddha often enjoins us to abandon desire and lust for them (22:137–45). Sometimes he tells us to abandon the aggregates themselves, for they are as completely alien to us as the twigs and foliage in Jeta's Grove (22:33–34). But to give up clinging is difficult because clinging is reinforced by views, which rationalize our identification with the aggregates and thus equip clinging with a protective shield.

The type of view that lies at the bottom of all affirmation of selfhood is called identity view (*sakkāyadiṭṭhi*). All views of self are formulated with reference to the five aggregates either collectively or individually (22:47). The suttas often mention twenty types of identity view, obtained by considering one's self to stand in any of four relations to each of the five aggregates: either as identical with it, as possessing it, as containing it, or as contained within it (22:1, 7, 47, 81, 82, etc.). The Buddha describes identity view as the leash that keeps the worldling bound to the round of rebirths, revolving in circles like a dog going around a post (22:99, 117). He also makes identity view the first of the ten fetters to be eradicated on the path to liberation. The most common way the suttas distinguish between "the uninstructed worldling" (*assutavā puthujjana*) and "the instructed noble disciple" (*sutavā ariyasāvaka*) is precisely by way of identity view: the worldling perpetually regards the aggregates as a self or a self's accessories;

the noble disciple never does so, for such a disciple has seen with wisdom the selfless nature of the aggregates (22:1, etc.).

As the formula for dependent origination demonstrates, clinging to the five aggregates is ultimately sustained by ignorance (*avijjā*). In relation to the aggregates, ignorance weaves a net of three delusions that nurture desire and lust. These delusions, which infiltrate cognition at a variety of levels, are the notions that the five aggregates are permanent, a true source of happiness, and a self or the accessories of a self. The antidote needed to break the spell of this delusion is wisdom (*paññā*) or knowledge (*vijjā*), which means knowing and seeing the five aggregates as they really are: as impermanent (*anicca*), as suffering (*dukkha*), and as nonself (*anattā*). These are known in the Buddhist tradition as the three characteristics (*tilakkhaṇa*), and in the *Khandhasaṃyutta* they are extensively applied to the five aggregates in a variety of patterns. The suttas devoted to this theme can be highly repetitive, but the repetition is designed to serve a vital purpose: to strip away the delusions of permanence, pleasure, and selfhood that envelop the five aggregates and keep us trapped in the chain of dependent origination.

Perhaps the original nucleus of the *Khandhasaṃyutta* consisted of the template suttas at 22:9–20, along with the auxiliary template suttas prevalent in *The Final Fifty*. These suttas were never intended to be read merely to gather information, but to offer concise instructions on the development of insight (*vipassanā-bhāvanā*). Behind the repetitive utterances, occasionally irksome on first acquaintance, the attentive eye can discern subtle variations attuned to the diversity in the proclivities and intellectual capacities of the people to be guided. Some suttas seem to make the contemplation of one or another of the three characteristics alone sufficient for reaching the goal, though the exegetical texts insist that all must be contemplated to some degree. As the three characteristics are closely intertwined, the most common formula throughout the *Nikāyas* is the one that discloses their internal relationship. This formula, first enunciated in the Buddha's second discourse at *Bārāṇasī* (22:59), uses the characteristic of impermanence to reveal the characteristic of suffering, and both conjointly to reveal the characteristic of nonself. But whatever approach is taken, all the different expositions of the three characteristics eventually converge on the eradication of clinging by

showing, with regard to each aggregate, "This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self." The lesson this maxim teaches is that there is no point in appropriating anything, no point in identifying with anything, because the subject of appropriation and identification, the "self," is merely a fabrication of conceptual thought woven in the darkness of ignorance.

Different suttas within the *Khandhasaṃyutta* speak of the three characteristics under various synonyms, and to navigate one's way through this chapter it is important to recognize which characteristic is being indicated. Thus the statement that the five aggregates are "impermanent, conditioned, dependently arisen, subject to destruction, to vanishing, to fading away, to cessation" (22:21) is obviously using different terms to point out the characteristic of impermanence. Less obviously, the sutta on the fragile (22:32) and the two on arising, vanishing, and alteration (22:37, 38) are doing the same thing. The suttas that speak of knowing the aggregates as subject to arising and vanishing are also commending contemplation of impermanence (22:126–28). Such suttas as the one on the burden (22:22), on misery (22:31), and on being devoured (22:79), emphasize the contemplation of suffering. Among the many suttas that directly expound nonself, one that deserves special attention is the discourse on the lump of foam (22:95), with its striking similes for the empty, insubstantial nature of the aggregates.

Besides the three characteristics, the *Khandhasaṃyutta* makes use of other patterns as guidelines for contemplation and understanding. The "gratification triad" is often applied to the aggregates (22:26, 107, 130), sometimes expanded into a pentad by the addition of "origin and passing away" (22:108, 132). Another is the four-truth pattern: understanding each aggregate, its origin, its cessation, and the way to its cessation (22:56, 114). A sevenfold hybrid is obtained by merging the four-truth pattern with the gratification triad (22:57). In two suttas (22:122, 123) the Venerable *Sāriputta* recommends a scheme of eleven ways of attending to the aggregates, obtained by differentiating various aspects of the three characteristics. This method of contemplation, he says, leads all the way from the first steps on the path of meditation to the final stage of arahantship and can even be recommended to the arahant.

According to a stock formula attached to most of the suttas on

the three characteristics, the insight into the five aggregates as impermanent, suffering, and nonself induces revulsion (*nibbidā*), dispassion (*virāga*), and liberation (*vimutti*). Revulsion is explained by the commentaries as a profound inward turning away from conditioned existence that comes with the higher stages of insight. Dispassion is the supramundane path, particularly the path of arahantship, which eliminates the last traces of craving. Dispassion culminates in liberation, the release of the mind from clinging and the taints, and liberation is in turn ascertained by the subsequent "knowledge and vision of liberation," a reviewing knowledge that gives the assurance that the round of rebirths has been stopped and nothing further remains to be done.

The *Khandhasamyutta* shows that the elimination of clinging occurs in two distinct stages. The first is the elimination of the conceptual types of clinging expressed by wrong views, above all by identity view. This stage of release comes with the breakthrough to the Dhamma, the attainment of stream-entry. At this point the disciple sees the selfless nature of the aggregates and thus overcomes all views of self. For this reason the defining mark of the "instructed noble disciple," the one who has made the breakthrough, is the elimination of every kind of identity view. However, disciples in training (*sekha*), even those at the penultimate stage of nonreturner, still retain a subtle notion of "I am" that continues to linger over the five aggregates like the scent of soap over newly washed clothes. This is spoken of as "a residual conceit 'I am,' a desire 'I am,' an underlying tendency 'I am'" (22:89). However, as the noble disciple continues to contemplate the rise and fall of the aggregates, in time even this residual notion of "I am" disappears. It is only the arahant who has fully understood the five aggregates down to the root and thus eradicated the subtlest tendencies to self-affirmation.

Elsewhere in the *Khandhasamyutta* the distinction between the trainee and the arahant is drawn in other terms, based on the same principle but differently expressed. Sutta 22:56 explains that trainees have directly known the five aggregates by way of the four-truth pattern and are practising for their fading away and cessation; thereby they "have gained a foothold in this Dhamma and Discipline." Arahants have also directly known the five aggregates by way of the four-truth pattern, but they have extirpated all attachment to the aggregates and are liberated by

nonclinging; thus they are called consummate ones for whom "there is no round for describing them" (see too 22:57, which expands the sphere of direct knowledge into a sevenfold pattern). While direct knowledge (*abhiññā*) of the aggregates is ascribed to both trainees and arahants, only arahants are said to have full understanding (*pariññā*) of the aggregates, for full understanding implies the destruction of lust, hatred, and delusion (22:106; see too 22:23). At 22:79 the trainee is described as one who is abandoning the five aggregates and does not cling to them. The arahant, in contrast, is one who neither abandons nor clings, but "abides having abandoned." And at 22:109–10, the stream-enterer is defined as one who understands the five aggregates by way of their origin, passing away, gratification, danger, and escape, while the arahant is one who, having understood the aggregates thus, is liberated by nonclinging. Thus these passages indicate the essential difference between the trainee and the arahant to consist in the extent to which they have developed liberating knowledge. The trainee has arrived at this knowledge and thereby eliminated the conceptually explicit types of ignorance crystallized in wrong views, but he has not yet fully utilized it to eradicate the emotively tinged types of ignorance manifest as clinging. The arahant has mastered this knowledge and fully developed it, so that in his mind all the defilements along with the subtlest shades of ignorance have been abolished. The trainee might be compared to a person walking along a mountain path who catches a distant glimpse of a splendid city but must still walk across several more mountains to reach his destination. The arahant is like one who has arrived at the city and now dwells comfortably within its bounds.

Beneath its repetitiveness and copious use of template formulas, the *Khandhasamyutta* is a rich compilation of texts, and no brief introduction can do justice to all its suggestive themes. Special mention, however, might be made of the *Theravagga*, the fourth *vagga*, on the elder monks. Here we find Ānanda's first-hand account of his breakthrough to the Dhamma while listening to a discourse on the aggregates (22:83); Sāriputta's refutation of the annihilationist interpretation of *Nibbāna* (22:85); Anurādha's puzzlement about the Tathāgata's status after death (22:86); the story of Vakkali, who attained final *Nibbāna* while dying at his own hand (22:87); the *Khemaka Sutta*, on the distinction between

the trainee and the arahant (22:89); and the story of the refractory monk Channa whose change of heart proved abundantly fruitful (22:90).

### 23. *Rādhasaṃyutta*

This *saṃyutta* is virtually an appendix to the *Khandhasaṃyutta* as it revolves entirely around the five aggregates, but it has a distinct internal unity in that all its suttas are addressed to a single bhikkhu named Rādha. According to the commentary, the Buddha liked to speak to this monk on deep and subtle matters, and thus a large number of texts have come down through him. The *saṃyutta* consists of four vaggas with a total of forty-six suttas, all relating to the aggregates. Suttas 23:4–10 have exact counterparts in the *Khandhasaṃyutta*. The contents of the second and third vagga largely overlap, while the third and fourth vaggas are identical except for the circumstances of their delivery.

### 24. *Ditṭhisāṃyutta*

This *saṃyutta*, too, is an extension of the *Khandhasaṃyutta*, an outgrowth of its last vagga, called *Ditṭhivagga* and dealing with views. However, while the *Ditṭhivagga* focuses only on a few basic views, here an attempt is made to cover a much wider range. The aim of the chapter is to show, from various angles, how all these views originate from clinging to the five aggregates.

The views fall into several distinct classes: first comes a strange philosophy, not encountered elsewhere in the *Nikāyas*, but apparently a species of eternalism; then come several familiar views—the view “this is mine,” etc., eternalism, and annihilationism (24:2–4). This is followed by four philosophical theories advocated by the Buddha’s contemporaries, all of which he condemned as morally pernicious (24:5–8); and next come the ten speculative views that the Buddha consistently rejected as invalid (24:9–18). Beginning with the second vagga, eighteen additional views are introduced, all concerning the nature of the self after death (24:19–36). It is unclear why these views are not included in the first vagga, as they would have fit in there without any difficulty.

The *saṃyutta* contains four vaggas, which centre upon the same collection of views, except that the first vagga lacks the eighteen views of self. Each mode of treatment in the four vaggas is called a “trip” (*gamana*), though the word appears only from the second vagga on. The suttas of the first trip define the mark of the stream-enterer as the overcoming of perplexity (*kaṅkhā*) regarding six things—namely, the arising of views from clinging to the five aggregates and the four types of sense objects (the four counted as one), which are impermanent, suffering, and subject to change—and the overcoming of perplexity about the Four Noble Truths. The second shows that since the five aggregates are impermanent, suffering, and subject to change, views arise by clinging and adhering to suffering. The third includes the refrain that the views arise by clinging to the five aggregates, which are suffering because they are impermanent. The fourth applies the catechism, “Is form permanent or impermanent?” to the five aggregates to expose their nature as nonself, showing how liberation arises through realizing the selflessness of the aggregates.

### 25. *Okkantisaṃyutta*

### 26. *Uppādasāṃyutta*

### 27. *Kilesasaṃyutta*

These three *saṃyuttas* can be treated together, as they are each built upon a common foundation, differing only in the way they use this material to articulate their distinctive themes. The foundation on which they are built is a tenfold scheme for classifying the factors of experience already encountered in the *Rāhulasaṃyutta* (18): the six internal sense bases; the six external sense bases; the six classes each of consciousness, contact, feeling, perception, volition, and craving; the six elements; and the five aggregates. Thus each *saṃyutta* contains ten suttas, one devoted to each group of items.

In relation to these ten groups, the *Okkantisaṃyutta* makes a distinction between two types of individuals who enter upon “the fixed course of rightness” (*sammattaniyāma*), i.e., the transcendental Noble Eightfold Path, the path of stream-entry. The difference between them is determined by their dominant faculty. The one who emphasizes faith resolves (*adhimuccati*) on the impermanence of the factors in the ten groups; this type of person

is called a faith-follower (*saddhānusāri*). The one who emphasizes wisdom gains understanding of the impermanence of the factors in the ten groups; this type of person is called a Dhamma-follower (*dhammānusāri*). Of both it is said that they cannot pass away without having realized the fruit of stream-entry. Regardless of this distinction in means of entering the path, when they know and see the truth of the teaching for themselves, they become stream-enterers. This saṃyutta does not distinguish between their character as stream-enterers, but elsewhere (MN I 478) it is indicated that the stream-enterer who gives prominence to faith is called "liberated by faith" (*saddhāvimutta*) while one who gives prominence to wisdom is called "attained by view" (*diṭṭhippatta*). A third class, without counterpart among path-attainers, consists of one who gains the formless meditations; this type is known as a "body-witness" (*kāyasakkhi*).

#### 28. *Sāriputtasamṃyutta*

The Venerable Sāriputta was the Buddha's foremost disciple with respect to wisdom, but here he is depicted as an adept in meditation as well. The first nine suttas of the saṃyutta are composed from a stereotyped formula in which Sāriputta explains how he enters and emerges from the nine meditative attainments without giving rise to ego-affirming thoughts. Each time his reply is applauded by Ānanda. In the tenth sutta Sāriputta replies to some provocative questions from a female wanderer and his answers win her approval.

#### 29. *Nāgasamṃyutta*

#### 30. *Supaṇṇasamṃyutta*

#### 31. *Gandhabbasamṃyutta*

#### 32. *Valāhakasamṃyutta*

These four saṃyuttas can be discussed together, as they all deal with certain classes of sentient beings that, from a modern perspective, would be considered mythological. In each the Buddha enumerates the different species into which the class can be divided and the courses of kamma that lead to rebirth into that particular mode of existence. By counting separately each type of gift given by the aspirant for rebirth into those destinies, and con-

necting them with the subdivisions among the beings, a large number of very short suttas are generated.

The *nāgas* are dragons, serpent-like beings, powerful and mysterious, believed to reside in the Himalayas, beneath the earth, and in the depths of the ocean. They are often thought to have access to hidden treasures and the ability to grant favours to their human benefactors. They also appear on earth and can assume human form, though only temporarily. The Vinaya Piṭaka even relates the story of a nāga who obtained ordination as a bhikkhu but was forced to relinquish his monastic status; as a result, every candidate for ordination must affirm, before the Saṅgha, that he is a human being (and not a nāga in disguise; see Vin I 86–87). The *supaṇṇas*, identical with the *garuḍas*, are their arch-enemies: fierce birds of prey that pounce on unwary nāgas, carry them away, and devour them. The *gandhabbas* are more benign: though sometimes depicted as celestial musicians, here they are obviously plant deities. They are identified as the spirits of fragrant plants because *gandha* means fragrance. The identity of the *valāhakas* or cloud-dwelling devas is evident from the explanation given in the texts.

These beings do not fit neatly into the scheme of cosmology outlined in the Introduction to Part I. The nāgas and gandhabbas are said to be ruled over by two of the Four Great Kings presiding over the heaven of that name, though as depicted here they can hardly be described as dwelling in heavenly worlds themselves. Rather, all these beings seem to belong to an intermediate zone between the human world and the lowest heaven, twilight creatures described with striking uniformity in the mythologies of many different cultures.

#### 33. *Vacchagottasamṃyutta*

Vacchagotta was a wanderer who often approached the Buddha to ask questions, almost always of a philosophical hue. Finally convinced, he became a bhikkhu and attained arahantship (see MN Nos. 71–73).

This saṃyutta shows him during his phase as an inquirer. The saṃyutta has fifty-five chapters, undivided into vaggas, created by a process of permutation. In the first five suttas, in response to Vaccha's questions, the Buddha explains why the ten speculative

views arise in the world, namely, from not knowing the five aggregates. Each sutta deals with a separate aggregate, treated by way of the four-truth pattern; hence five suttas. The remaining fifty suttas are created by taking ten synonyms for not knowing—e.g., not seeing, etc.—and relating them individually to the five aggregates in exactly the same way.

#### 34. *Jhānasamyutta*

This *samyutta* is concerned with the types of skills required for success in attaining concentration (*samādhi*). Despite the title, it does not deal explicitly with the *jhānas* as states of meditation but with the process of meditation. A proper *Jhānasamyutta*, concerned with the *jhānas*, is found in Part V. Perhaps at one point this chapter was called the *Jhāyanasamyutta*, which seems more appropriate. The *samyutta* explores, in pairwise combinations, ten meditative skills. Each pair is related to four types of meditators: one who possesses one skill but not the other, one who has neither, and one who has both. In each case the last in the tetrad is extolled as the best. In this way fifty-five suttas are generated covering all possible permutations.

## [1] PART III: The Book of the Aggregates (*Khandhavagga*)

*Homage to the Blessed One,  
the Arahant, the Perfectly Enlightened One*

### Chapter I

## 22 *Khandhasamyutta*

# Connected Discourses on the Aggregates

Division I  
THE ROOT FIFTY

I. NAKULAPITĀ

#### 1 (1) *Nakulapitā*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling among the Bhaggas at Suṃsumāragira in the Bhesakaḷā Grove, the Deer Park. Then the householder Nakulapitā approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and said to him:<sup>1</sup>

“I am old, venerable sir, aged, burdened with years, advanced in life, come to the last stage, afflicted in body, often ill. I rarely get to see the Blessed One and the bhikkhus worthy of esteem.<sup>2</sup> Let the Blessed One exhort me, venerable sir, let him instruct me, since that would lead to my welfare and happiness for a long time.”

“So it is, householder, so it is! This body of yours is afflicted, weighed down, encumbered.<sup>3</sup> If anyone carrying around this body were to claim to be healthy even for a moment, what is that due to other than foolishness? Therefore, householder, you

should train yourself thus: 'Even though I am afflicted in body, my mind will be unafflicted.' Thus should you train yourself."

Then the householder Nakulapitā, having delighted and rejoiced in the Blessed One's statement, [2] rose from his seat and, having paid homage to the Blessed One, keeping him on his right, he approached the Venerable Sāriputta. Having paid homage to the Venerable Sāriputta, he sat down to one side, and the Venerable Sāriputta then said to him:

"Householder, your faculties are serene, your facial complexion is pure and bright. Did you get to hear a Dhamma talk today in the presence of the Blessed One?"

"Why not, venerable sir? Just now I was anointed by the Blessed One with the ambrosia of a Dhamma talk."

"With what kind of ambrosia of a Dhamma talk did the Blessed One anoint you, householder?"

"Here, venerable sir, I approached the Blessed One...."

*(The householder Nakulapitā repeats his entire conversation with the Buddha.)*

"It was with the ambrosia of such a Dhamma talk, venerable sir, that the Blessed One anointed me."

"Didn't it occur to you, householder, to question the Blessed One further as to how one is afflicted in body and afflicted in mind, and how one is afflicted in body but not afflicted in mind?" [3]

"We would come from far away, venerable sir, to learn the meaning of this statement from the Venerable Sāriputta. It would be good indeed if the Venerable Sāriputta would clear up the meaning of this statement."

"Then listen and attend closely, householder, I will speak."

"Yes, venerable sir," the householder Nakulapitā replied. The Venerable Sāriputta said this:

"How, householder, is one afflicted in body and afflicted in mind? Here, householder, the uninstructed worldling,<sup>4</sup> who is not a seer of the noble ones and is unskilled and undisciplined in their Dhamma, who is not a seer of superior persons and is unskilled and undisciplined in their Dhamma, regards form as self, or self as possessing form, or form as in self, or self as in form. He lives obsessed by the notions: 'I am form, form is mine.'<sup>5</sup> As he lives obsessed by these notions, that form of his changes and alters. With the change and alteration of form, there arise in him sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair.

"He regards feeling as self, or self as possessing feeling, or feeling as in self, or self as in feeling. He lives obsessed by the notions: 'I am feeling, feeling is mine.' As he lives obsessed by these notions, that feeling of his changes and alters. With the change and alteration of feeling, there arise in him sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair.

"He regards perception as self, or self as possessing perception, or perception as in self, or self as in perception. He lives obsessed by the notions: 'I am perception, perception is mine.' As he lives obsessed by these notions, that perception of his changes and alters. With the change and alteration of perception, there arise in him sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair.

"He regards volitional formations as self, or self as possessing volitional formations, or volitional formations as in self, or self as in volitional formations. He lives obsessed by the notions: 'I am volitional formations, volitional formations are mine.' As he lives obsessed by these notions, those volitional formations of his change and alter. [4] With the change and alteration of volitional formations, there arise in him sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair.

"He regards consciousness as self, or self as possessing consciousness, or consciousness as in self, or self as in consciousness. He lives obsessed by the notions: 'I am consciousness, consciousness is mine.' As he lives obsessed by these notions, that consciousness of his changes and alters. With the change and alteration of consciousness, there arise in him sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair.

"It is in such a way, householder, that one is afflicted in body and afflicted in mind.<sup>6</sup>

"And how, householder, is one afflicted in body but not afflicted in mind? Here, householder, the instructed noble disciple, who is a seer of the noble ones and is skilled and disciplined in their Dhamma, who is a seer of superior persons and is skilled and disciplined in their Dhamma, does not regard form as self, or self as possessing form, or form as in self, or self as in form.<sup>7</sup> He does not live obsessed by the notions: 'I am form, form is mine.' As he lives unobsessed by these notions, that form of his changes and alters. With the change and alteration of form, there do not arise in him sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair.

"He does not regard feeling as self, or self as possessing feeling,

or feeling as in self, or self as in feeling. He does not live obsessed by the notions: 'I am feeling, feeling is mine.' As he lives unobsessed by these notions, that feeling of his changes and alters. With the change and alteration of feeling, there do not arise in him sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair.

"He does not regard perception as self, or self as possessing perception, or perception as in self, or self as in perception. He does not live obsessed by the notions: 'I am perception, perception is mine.' As he lives unobsessed by these notions, that perception of his changes and alters. With the change and alteration of perception, there do not arise in him sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair. [5]

"He does not regard volitional formations as self, or self as possessing volitional formations, or volitional formations as in self, or self as in volitional formations. He does not live obsessed by the notions: 'I am volitional formations, volitional formations are mine.' As he lives unobsessed by these notions, those volitional formations of his change and alter. With the change and alteration of volitional formations, there do not arise in him sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair.

"He does not regard consciousness as self, or self as possessing consciousness, or consciousness as in self, or self as in consciousness. He does not live obsessed by the notions: 'I am consciousness, consciousness is mine.' As he lives unobsessed by these notions, that consciousness of his changes and alters. With the change and alteration of consciousness, there do not arise in him sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair.

"It is in such a way, householder, that one is afflicted in body but not afflicted in mind."<sup>8</sup>

This is what the Venerable Sāriputta said. Elated, the householder Nakulapitā delighted in the Venerable Sāriputta's statement.

## 2 (2) *At Devadaha*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling among the Sakyans where there was a town of the Sakyans named Devadaha. Then a number of westward-bound bhikkhus approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and said to him:

"Venerable sir, we wish to go to the western province in order to take up residence there."<sup>9</sup>

"Have you taken leave of Sāriputta, bhikkhus?"

"No, venerable sir."

"Then take leave of Sāriputta, bhikkhus. Sāriputta is wise, he is one who helps his brothers in the holy life."<sup>10</sup> [6]

"Yes, venerable sir," those bhikkhus replied. Now on that occasion the Venerable Sāriputta was sitting not far from the Blessed One in a cassia bush.<sup>11</sup> Then those bhikkhus, having delighted and rejoiced in the Blessed One's statement, rose from their seats and paid homage to the Blessed One. Then, keeping him on their right, they approached the Venerable Sāriputta. They exchanged greetings with the Venerable Sāriputta and, when they had concluded their greetings and cordial talk, they sat down to one side and said to him:

"Friend Sāriputta, we wish to go to the western province in order to take up residence there. We have taken leave of the Teacher."

"Friends, there are wise khattiyas, wise brahmins, wise householders, and wise ascetics who question a bhikkhu when he has gone abroad<sup>12</sup>—for wise people, friends, are inquisitive: 'What does your teacher say, what does he teach?' I hope that you venerable ones have learned the teachings well, grasped them well, attended to them well, reflected on them well, and penetrated them well with wisdom, so that when you answer you will state what has been said by the Blessed One and will not misrepresent him with what is contrary to fact; so that you will explain in accordance with the Dhamma, and no reasonable consequence of your assertion would give ground for criticism."<sup>13</sup>

"We would come from far away, friend, to learn the meaning of this statement from the Venerable Sāriputta. It would be good indeed if the Venerable Sāriputta would clear up the meaning of this statement."

"Then listen and attend closely, friends, I will speak."

"Yes, friend," those bhikkhus replied. The Venerable Sāriputta said this: [7]

"There are, friends, wise khattiyas, wise brahmins, wise householders, and wise ascetics who question a bhikkhu when he has gone abroad—<sup>14</sup>for wise people, friends, are inquisitive: 'What does your teacher say, what does he teach?' Being asked thus,

friends, you should answer: 'Our teacher, friends, teaches the removal of desire and lust.'

"When you have answered thus, friends, there may be wise khattiyas ... wise ascetics who will question you further—for wise people, friends, are inquisitive: 'In regard to what does your teacher teach the removal of desire and lust?' Being asked thus, friends, you should answer: 'Our teacher, friends, teaches the removal of desire and lust for form, the removal of desire and lust for feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness.'

"When you have answered thus, friends, there may be wise khattiyas ... wise ascetics who will question you further—for wise people, friends, are inquisitive: 'Having seen what danger does your teacher teach the removal of desire and lust for form, the removal of desire and lust for feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness?' Being asked thus, friends, you should answer thus: 'If, friends, one is not devoid of lust, desire, affection, thirst, passion, and craving in regard to form,<sup>14</sup> then with the change and alteration of form there arise in one sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair. If, friends, one is not devoid of lust, desire, affection, thirst, passion, and craving in regard to feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, then with the change and alteration of consciousness there arise in one sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair. Having seen this danger, our teacher teaches the removal of desire and lust for form, the removal of desire and lust for feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness.' [8]

"When you have answered thus, friends, there may be wise khattiyas ... wise ascetics who will question you further—for wise people, friends, are inquisitive: 'Having seen what benefit does your teacher teach the removal of desire and lust for form, the removal of desire and lust for feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness?' Being asked thus, friends, you should answer thus: 'If, friends, one is devoid of lust, desire, affection, thirst, passion, and craving in regard to form, then with the change and alteration of form sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair do not arise in one. If one is devoid of lust, desire, affection, thirst, passion, and craving in regard to feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, then

with the change and alteration of consciousness sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair do not arise in one. Having seen this benefit, our teacher teaches the removal of desire and lust for form, the removal of desire and lust for feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness.'

"If, friends,<sup>15</sup> one who enters and dwells amidst unwholesome states could dwell happily in this very life, without vexation, despair, and fever, and if, with the breakup of the body, after death, he could expect a good destination, then the Blessed One would not praise the abandoning of unwholesome states. But because one who enters and dwells amidst unwholesome states dwells in suffering in this very life, with vexation, despair, and fever, and because he can expect a bad destination with the breakup of the body, after death, the Blessed One praises the abandoning of unwholesome states.

"If, friends, one who enters and dwells amidst wholesome states would dwell in suffering in this very life, with vexation, [9] despair, and fever, and if, with the breakup of the body, after death, he could expect a bad destination, then the Blessed One would not praise the acquisition of wholesome states. But because one who enters and dwells amidst wholesome states dwells happily in this very life, without vexation, despair, and fever, and because he can expect a good destination with the breakup of the body, after death, the Blessed One praises the acquisition of wholesome states."

This is what the Venerable Sāriputta said. Elated, those bhikkhus delighted in the Venerable Sāriputta's statement.

### 3 (3) *Hālidakāni* (1)

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Venerable Mahākaccāna was dwelling among the people of Avanti on Mount Papāta at Kuraraghara.<sup>16</sup> Then the householder Hālidakāni approached the Venerable Mahākaccāna, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and said to him:

"Venerable sir, this was said by the Blessed One in 'The Questions of Māgandiya' of the Aṭṭhakavagga:<sup>17</sup>

'Having left home to roam without abode,  
In the village the sage is intimate with none;

Rid of sensual pleasures, without expectations,  
He would not engage people in dispute.'

How, venerable sir, should the meaning of this, stated by the Blessed One in brief, be understood in detail?"

"The form element, householder, is the home of consciousness; one whose consciousness is shackled by lust for the form element is called one who roams about in a home.<sup>18</sup> The feeling element is the home of consciousness ... [10] The perception element is the home of consciousness ... The volitional formations element is the home of consciousness; one whose consciousness is shackled by lust for the volitional formations element is called one who roams about in a home. It is in such a way that one roams about in a home.<sup>19</sup>

"And how, householder, does one roam about homeless? The desire, lust, delight, and craving, the engagement and clinging, the mental standpoints, adherences, and underlying tendencies regarding the form element: these have been abandoned by the Tathāgata, cut off at the root, made like a palm stump, obliterated so that they are no more subject to future arising.<sup>20</sup> Therefore the Tathāgata is called one who roams about homeless. The desire, lust, delight, and craving, the engagement and clinging, the mental standpoints, adherences, and underlying tendencies regarding the feeling element ... the perception element ... the volitional formations element ... the consciousness element:<sup>21</sup> these have been abandoned by the Tathāgata, cut off at the root, made like a palm stump, obliterated so that they are no more subject to future arising. Therefore the Tathāgata is called one who roams about homeless. It is in such a way that one roams about homeless.

"And how, householder, does one roam about in an abode? By diffusion and confinement in the abode [consisting in] the sign of forms, one is called one who roams about in an abode.<sup>22</sup> By diffusion and confinement in the abode [consisting in] the sign of sounds ... the sign of odours ... the sign of tastes ... the sign of tactile objects ... the sign of mental phenomena, one is called one who roams about in an abode.

"And how, householder, does one roam about without abode? Diffusion and confinement in the abode [consisting in] the sign of forms: these have been abandoned by the Tathāgata, cut off at

the root, made like a palm stump, obliterated so that they are no more subject to future arising. Therefore the Tathāgata is called one who roams about without abode. Diffusion and confinement in the abode [consisting in] the sign of sounds ... the sign of odours ... the sign of tastes ... the sign of tactile objects ... the sign of mental phenomena: these have been abandoned by the Tathāgata, cut off at the root, made like a palm stump, [11] obliterated so that they are no more subject to future arising. Therefore the Tathāgata is called one who roams about without abode. It is in such a way that one roams about without abode.<sup>23</sup>

"And how, householder, is one intimate in the village? Here, householder, someone lives in association with laypeople: he rejoices with them and sorrows with them, he is happy when they are happy and sad when they are sad, and he involves himself in their affairs and duties.<sup>24</sup> It is in such a way that one is intimate in the village.

"And how, householder, is one intimate with none in the village? Here, householder, a bhikkhu does not live in association with laypeople. He does not rejoice with them or sorrow with them, he is not happy when they are happy and sad when they are sad, and he does not involve himself in their affairs and duties. It is in such a way that one is intimate with none in the village.

"And how, householder, is one not rid of sensual pleasures? Here, householder, someone is not devoid of lust, desire, affection, thirst, passion, and craving in regard to sensual pleasures. It is in such a way that one is not rid of sensual pleasures.

"And how, householder, is one rid of sensual pleasures? Here, householder, someone is devoid of lust, desire, affection, thirst, passion, and craving in regard to sensual pleasures. It is in such a way that one is rid of sensual pleasures.

"And how, householder, does one entertain expectations?<sup>25</sup> Here, householder, someone thinks: 'May I have such form in the future! May I have such feeling in the future! May I have such perception in the future! May I have such volitional formations in the future! May I have such consciousness in the future!' It is in such a way that one entertains expectations.

"And how, householder, is one without expectations? Here, householder, someone does not think: 'May I have such form in the future!... [12] May I have such consciousness in the future!' It is in such a way that one is without expectations.

“And how, householder, does one engage people in dispute? Here, householder, someone engages in such talk as this:<sup>26</sup> ‘You don’t understand this Dhamma and Discipline. I understand this Dhamma and Discipline. What, you understand this Dhamma and Discipline! You’re practising wrongly, I’m practising rightly. What should have been said before you said after; what should have been said after you said before. I’m consistent, you’re inconsistent. What you took so long to think out has been overturned. Your thesis has been refuted. Go off to rescue your thesis, for you’re defeated, or disentangle yourself if you can.’ It is in such a way that one engages people in dispute.

“And how, householder, does one not engage people in dispute? Here, householder, someone does not engage in such talk as this: ‘You don’t understand this Dhamma and Discipline....’ It is in such a way that one does not engage people in dispute.

“Thus, householder, when it was said by the Blessed One in ‘The Questions of Māgandiya’ of the *Atthakavagga*:

‘Having left home to roam without abode,  
In the village the sage is intimate with none;  
Rid of sensual pleasures, without expectations,  
He would not engage people in dispute’—

it is in such a way that the meaning of this, stated in brief by the Blessed One, should be understood in detail.”

#### 4 (4) *Hāliddakāni* (2)

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Venerable Mahākaccāna was dwelling among the people of Avanti on Mount Papāta at Kuraraghara. [13] Then the householder Hāliddakāni approached the Venerable Mahākaccāna, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and said to him:

“Venerable sir, this was said by the Blessed One in ‘The Questions of Sakka’:<sup>27</sup> ‘Those ascetics and brahmins who are liberated in the extinction of craving are those who have reached the ultimate end, the ultimate security from bondage, the ultimate holy life, the ultimate goal, and are best among devas and humans.’<sup>28</sup> How, venerable sir, should the meaning of this, stated in brief by the Blessed One, be understood in detail?”

“Householder, through the destruction, fading away, cessation, giving up, and relinquishment of desire, lust, delight, craving, engagement and clinging, mental standpoints, adherences, and underlying tendencies towards the form element, the mind is said to be well liberated.

“Through the destruction, fading away, cessation, giving up, and relinquishment of desire, lust, delight, craving, engagement and clinging, mental standpoints, adherences, and underlying tendencies towards the feeling element ... the perception element ... the volitional formations element ... the consciousness element, the mind is said to be well liberated.

“Thus, householder, when it was said by the Blessed One in ‘The Questions of Sakka’: ‘Those ascetics and brahmins who are liberated in the extinction of craving are those who have reached the ultimate end, the ultimate security from bondage, the ultimate holy life, the ultimate goal, and are best among devas and humans’—it is in such a way that the meaning of this, stated in brief by the Blessed One, should be understood in detail.”

#### 5 (5) *Concentration*

Thus have I heard. At Sāvatti.... There the Blessed One said this:

“Bhikkhus, develop concentration. A bhikkhu who is concentrated understands things as they really are.

“And what does he understand as it really is? The origin and passing away of form; the origin and passing away of feeling; [14] the origin and passing away of perception; the origin and passing away of volitional formations; the origin and passing away of consciousness.<sup>29</sup>

“And what, bhikkhus, is the origin of form? What is the origin of feeling? What is the origin of perception? What is the origin of volitional formations? What is the origin of consciousness?

“Here, bhikkhus, one seeks delight, one welcomes, one remains holding. And what is it that one seeks delight in, what does one welcome, to what does one remain holding? One seeks delight in form, welcomes it, and remains holding to it. As a consequence of this, delight arises. Delight in form is clinging. With one’s clinging as condition, existence [comes to be]; with existence as condition, birth; with birth as condition, aging-and-death,

sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair come to be. Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering.

"One seeks delight in feeling ... in perception ... in volitional formations ... in consciousness, welcomes it, and remains holding to it. As a consequence of this, delight arises.... Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering.

"This, bhikkhus, is the origin of form; this is the origin of feeling; this is the origin of perception; this is the origin of volitional formations; this is the origin of consciousness.<sup>30</sup>

"And what, bhikkhus, is the passing away of form? What is the passing away of feeling? What is the passing away of perception? What is the passing away of volitional formations? What is the passing away of consciousness?

"Here, bhikkhus, one does not seek delight, one does not welcome, one does not remain holding. And what is it that one does not seek delight in? What doesn't one welcome? To what doesn't one remain holding? One does not seek delight in form, does not welcome it, does not remain holding to it. As a consequence of this, delight in form ceases. With the cessation of delight comes cessation of clinging; with cessation of clinging, cessation of existence.... Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering.

"One does not seek delight in feeling ... [15] ... in perception ... in volitional formations ... in consciousness, does not welcome it, does not remain holding to it. As a consequence of this, delight in consciousness ceases.... Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering.

"This, bhikkhus, is the passing away of form; this is the passing away of feeling; this is the passing away of perception; this is the passing away of volitional formations; this is the passing away of consciousness."

#### 6 (6) Seclusion

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, make an exertion in seclusion.<sup>31</sup> A bhikkhu who is secluded understands things as they really are.

"And what does he understand as it really is? The origin and passing away of form; the origin and passing away of feeling; the origin and passing away of perception; the origin and passing away of volitional formations; the origin and passing away of consciousness.

"And what, bhikkhus, is the origin of form?..."  
(*The rest of this sutta is identical with the preceding one.*)

#### 7 (7) Agitation through Clinging (1)

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, I will teach you agitation through clinging and nonagitation through nonclinging.<sup>32</sup> Listen to that and attend closely, I will speak." [16]

"Yes, venerable sir," those bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

"And how, bhikkhus, is there agitation through clinging? Here, bhikkhus, the uninstructed worldling, who is not a seer of the noble ones and is unskilled and undisciplined in their Dhamma, who is not a seer of superior persons and is unskilled and undisciplined in their Dhamma, regards form as self, or self as possessing form, or form as in self, or self as in form. That form of his changes and alters. With the change and alteration of form, his consciousness becomes preoccupied with the change of form. Agitation and a constellation of mental states born of preoccupation with the change of form remain obsessing his mind.<sup>33</sup> Because his mind is obsessed, he is frightened, distressed, and anxious, and through clinging he becomes agitated.

"He regards feeling as self ... perception as self ... volitional formations as self ... consciousness as self, or self as possessing consciousness, or consciousness as in self, or self as in consciousness. That consciousness of his changes and alters. [17] With the change and alteration of consciousness, his consciousness becomes preoccupied with the change of consciousness. Agitation and a constellation of mental states born of preoccupation with the change of consciousness remain obsessing his mind. Because his mind is obsessed, he is frightened, distressed, and anxious, and through clinging he becomes agitated.

"It is in such a way, bhikkhus, that there is agitation through clinging.

"And how, bhikkhus, is there nonagitation through nonclinging? Here, bhikkhus, the instructed noble disciple, who is a seer of the noble ones and is skilled and disciplined in their Dhamma, who is a seer of superior persons and is skilled and disciplined in their Dhamma, does not regard form as self, or self as possessing form, or form as in self, or self as in form. That form of his

changes and alters. Despite the change and alteration of form, his consciousness does not become preoccupied with the change of form. No agitation and constellation of mental states born of preoccupation with the change of form remain obsessing his mind. Because his mind is not obsessed, he is not frightened, distressed, or anxious, and through nonclinging he does not become agitated.

"He does not regard feeling as self ... perception as self ... volitional formations as self ... [18] ... consciousness as self, or self as possessing consciousness, or consciousness as in self, or self as in consciousness. That consciousness of his changes and alters. Despite the change and alteration of consciousness, his consciousness does not become preoccupied with the change of consciousness. No agitation and constellation of mental states born of preoccupation with the change of consciousness remain obsessing his mind. Because his mind is not obsessed, he is not frightened, distressed, or anxious, and through nonclinging he does not become agitated.

"It is in such a way, bhikkhus, that there is nonagitation through nonclinging."

#### 8 (8) *Agitation through Clinging (2)*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, I will teach you agitation through clinging and nonagitation through nonclinging. Listen to that and attend closely....

"And how, bhikkhus, is there agitation through clinging? Here, bhikkhus, the uninstructed worldling regards form thus: 'This is mine, this I am, this is my self.'<sup>34</sup> That form of his changes and alters. With the change and alteration of form, there arise in him sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair.

"He regards feeling thus ... perception thus ... volitional formations thus ... consciousness thus: 'This is mine, this I am, this is my self.' That consciousness of his changes and alters. With the change and alteration of consciousness, there arise in him sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair.

"It is in such a way, bhikkhus, that there is agitation through clinging.

"And how, bhikkhus, is there nonagitation through nonclinging? [19] Here, bhikkhus, the instructed noble disciple does not regard form thus: 'This is mine, this I am, this is my self.' That

form of his changes and alters. With the change and alteration of form, there do not arise in him sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair.

"He does not regard feeling thus ... perception thus ... volitional formations thus ... consciousness thus: 'This is mine, this I am, this is my self.' That consciousness of his changes and alters. With the change and alteration of consciousness, there do not arise in him sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair.

"It is in such a way, bhikkhus, that there is nonagitation through nonclinging."

#### 9 (9) *Impermanent in the Three Times*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, form is impermanent, both of the past and the future, not to speak of the present. Seeing thus, bhikkhus, the instructed noble disciple is indifferent towards form of the past; he does not seek delight in form of the future; and he is practising for revulsion towards form of the present, for its fading away and cessation.

"Feeling is impermanent ... Perception is impermanent ... Volitional formations are impermanent ... Consciousness is impermanent, both of the past and the future, not to speak of the present. Seeing thus, bhikkhus, the instructed noble disciple is indifferent towards consciousness of the past; he does not seek delight in consciousness of the future; and he is practising for revulsion towards consciousness of the present, for its fading away and cessation."

#### 10 (10) *Suffering in the Three Times*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, form is suffering, both of the past and the future, not to speak of the present. [20] Seeing thus, bhikkhus, the instructed noble disciple is indifferent towards form of the past; he does not seek delight in form of the future; and he is practising for revulsion towards form of the present, for its fading away and cessation.

"Feeling is suffering ... Perception is suffering ... Volitional formations are suffering ... Consciousness is suffering, both of the past and the future, not to speak of the present. Seeing thus, bhikkhus, the instructed noble disciple is indifferent towards

consciousness of the past; he does not seek delight in consciousness of the future; and he is practising for revulsion towards consciousness of the present, for its fading away and cessation."

#### 11 (11) *NonselF in the Three Times*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, form is nonself, both of the past and the future, not to speak of the present. Seeing thus, bhikkhus, the instructed noble disciple is indifferent towards form of the past; he does not seek delight in form of the future; and he is practising for revulsion towards form of the present, for its fading away and cessation.

"Feeling is nonself ... Perception is nonself ... Volitional formations are nonself ... Consciousness is nonself, both of the past and the future, not to speak of the present. Seeing thus, bhikkhus, the instructed noble disciple is indifferent towards consciousness of the past; he does not seek delight in consciousness of the future; and he is practising for revulsion towards consciousness of the present, for its fading away and cessation."

[21]

#### II. IMPERMANENT

#### 12 (1) *Impermanent*

Thus have I heard. At Sāvattī.... There the Blessed One said this:

"Bhikkhus, form is impermanent, feeling is impermanent, perception is impermanent, volitional formations are impermanent, consciousness is impermanent. Seeing thus, bhikkhus, the instructed noble disciple experiences revulsion towards form, revulsion towards feeling, revulsion towards perception, revulsion towards volitional formations, revulsion towards consciousness. Experiencing revulsion, he becomes dispassionate. Through dispassion [his mind] is liberated. When it is liberated there comes the knowledge: 'It's liberated.' He understands: 'Destroyed is birth, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more for this state of being.'"

#### 13 (2) *Suffering*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, form is suffering, feeling is suffering,

perception is suffering, volitional formations are suffering, consciousness is suffering. Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

#### 14 (3) *NonselF*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, form is nonself, feeling is nonself, perception is nonself, volitional formations are nonself, consciousness is nonself. Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'" [22]

#### 15 (4) *What is Impermanent*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, form is impermanent. What is impermanent is suffering. What is suffering is nonself. What is nonself should be seen as it really is with correct wisdom thus: 'This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self.'

"Feeling is impermanent.... Perception is impermanent.... Volitional formations are impermanent.... Consciousness is impermanent. What is impermanent is suffering. What is suffering is nonself. What is nonself should be seen as it really is with correct wisdom thus: 'This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self.'

"Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

#### 16 (5) *What is Suffering*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, form is suffering. What is suffering is nonself. What is nonself should be seen as it really is with correct wisdom thus: 'This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self.'

"Feeling is suffering.... Perception is suffering.... Volitional formations are suffering.... Consciousness is suffering. What is suffering is nonself. What is nonself should be seen as it really is with correct wisdom thus: 'This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self.'

"Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

17 (6) *What is Nonself*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, form is nonself. What is nonself [23] should be seen as it really is with correct wisdom thus: 'This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self.'

"Feeling is nonself.... Perception is nonself.... Volitional formations are nonself.... Consciousness is nonself. What is nonself should be seen as it really is with correct wisdom thus: 'This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self.'

"Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

18 (7) *Impermanent with Cause*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, form is impermanent. The cause and condition for the arising of form is also impermanent. As form has originated from what is impermanent, how could it be permanent?

"Feeling is impermanent.... Perception is impermanent.... Volitional formations are impermanent.... Consciousness is impermanent. The cause and condition for the arising of consciousness is also impermanent. As consciousness has originated from what is impermanent, how could it be permanent?

"Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

19 (8) *Suffering with Cause*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, form is suffering. The cause and condition for the arising of form is also suffering. As form has originated from what is suffering, how could it be happiness?

"Feeling is suffering.... Perception is suffering.... Volitional formations are suffering.... [24] Consciousness is suffering. The cause and condition for the arising of consciousness is also suffering. As consciousness has originated from what is suffering, how could it be happiness?

"Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

20 (9) *Nonself with Cause*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, form is nonself. The cause and condition for the arising of form is also nonself. As form has originated from what is nonself, how could it be self?

"Feeling is nonself.... Perception is nonself.... Volitional formations are nonself.... Consciousness is nonself. The cause and condition for the arising of consciousness is also nonself. As consciousness has originated from what is nonself, how could it be self?"

"Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

21 (10) *Ānanda*

At Sāvatti. Then the Venerable Ānanda approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and said to him:

"Venerable sir, it is said, 'cessation, cessation.' Through the cessation of what things is cessation spoken of?"

"Form, Ānanda, is impermanent, conditioned, dependently arisen, subject to destruction, to vanishing, to fading away, to cessation. Through its cessation, cessation is spoken of.

"Feeling is impermanent ... Perception is impermanent ... Volitional formations are impermanent ... [25] ... Consciousness is impermanent, conditioned, dependently arisen, subject to destruction, to vanishing, to fading away, to cessation. Through its cessation, cessation is spoken of.

"It is through the cessation of these things, Ānanda, that cessation is spoken of."

## III. THE BURDEN

22 (1) *The Burden*

At Sāvatti.... There the Blessed One said this:

"Bhikkhus, I will teach you the burden, the carrier of the burden,<sup>35</sup> the taking up of the burden, and the laying down of the burden. Listen to that....

"And what, bhikkhus, is the burden? It should be said: the five aggregates subject to clinging. What five? The form aggregate subject to clinging, the feeling aggregate subject to clinging, the

perception aggregate subject to clinging, the volitional formations aggregate subject to clinging, the consciousness aggregate subject to clinging. This is called the burden.<sup>36</sup>

“And what, bhikkhus, is the carrier of the burden? It should be said: the person, this venerable one of such a name and clan. This is called the carrier of the burden.<sup>37</sup> [26]

“And what, bhikkhus, is the taking up of the burden? It is this craving that leads to renewed existence, accompanied by delight and lust, seeking delight here and there; that is, craving for sensual pleasures, craving for existence, craving for extermination. This is called the taking up of the burden.<sup>38</sup>

“And what, bhikkhus, is the laying down of the burden? It is the remainderless fading away and cessation of that same craving, the giving up and relinquishing of it, freedom from it, non-reliance on it. This is called the laying down of the burden.”<sup>39</sup>

This is what the Blessed One said. Having said this, the Fortunate One, the Teacher, further said this:

“The five aggregates are truly burdens,  
The burden-carrier is the person.  
Taking up the burden is suffering in the world,  
Laying the burden down is blissful.

Having laid the heavy burden down  
Without taking up another burden,  
Having drawn out craving with its root,  
One is free from hunger, fully quenched.”<sup>40</sup>

### 23 (2) Full Understanding

At Sāvattī. [27] “Bhikkhus, I will teach you things that should be fully understood and also full understanding. Listen to that....

“And what, bhikkhus, are the things that should be fully understood? Form, bhikkhus, is something that should be fully understood; feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness is something that should be fully understood. These are called the things that should be fully understood.

“And what, bhikkhus, is full understanding? The destruction of lust, the destruction of hatred, the destruction of delusion. This is called full understanding.”<sup>41</sup>

### 24 (3) Directly Knowing

At Sāvattī. “Bhikkhus, without directly knowing and fully understanding form, without becoming dispassionate towards it and abandoning it, one is incapable of destroying suffering. Without directly knowing and fully understanding feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, without becoming dispassionate towards it and abandoning it, one is incapable of destroying suffering.

“Bhikkhus, by directly knowing and fully understanding form, by becoming dispassionate towards it and abandoning it, one is capable of destroying suffering. By directly knowing and fully understanding feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, by becoming dispassionate towards it and abandoning it, one is capable of destroying suffering.”<sup>42</sup>

### 25 (4) Desire and Lust

At Sāvattī. “Bhikkhus, abandon desire and lust for form. Thus that form will be abandoned, cut off at the root, made like a palm stump, obliterated so that it is no more subject to future arising.

“Abandon desire and lust for feeling ... for perception ... for volitional formations ... for consciousness. Thus that consciousness will be abandoned, cut off at the root, made like a palm stump, obliterated so that it is no more subject to future arising.”

### 26 (5) Gratification (1)

At Sāvattī. “Bhikkhus, before my enlightenment, while I was still a bodhisatta, not yet fully enlightened, it occurred to me: ‘What is the gratification, what is the danger, what is the escape in the case of form? What is the gratification, what is the danger, what is the escape in the case of feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness?’<sup>43</sup> [28]

“Then, bhikkhus, it occurred to me: ‘The pleasure and joy that arise in dependence on form: this is the gratification in form. That form is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change: this is the danger in form. The removal and abandonment of desire and lust for form: this is the escape from form.

“The pleasure and joy that arise in dependence on feeling ...

in dependence on perception ... in dependence on volitional formations ... in dependence on consciousness: this is the gratification in consciousness. That consciousness is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change: this is the danger in consciousness. The removal and abandonment of desire and lust for consciousness: this is the escape from consciousness.'

"So long, bhikkhus, as I did not directly know as they really are the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of these five aggregates subject to clinging, I did not claim to have awakened to the unsurpassed perfect enlightenment in this world with its devas, Māra, and Brahmā, in this generation with its ascetics and brahmins, its devas and humans. But when I directly knew all this as it really is, then I claimed to have awakened to the unsurpassed perfect enlightenment in this world with ... its devas and humans.

"The knowledge and vision arose in me: 'Unshakable is my liberation of mind; this is my last birth; now there is no more renewed existence.'" [29]

#### 27 (6) *Gratification (2)*

At Sāvattḥi. "Bhikkhus, I set out seeking the gratification in form. Whatever gratification there is in form—that I discovered. I have clearly seen with wisdom just how far the gratification in form extends.

"Bhikkhus, I set out seeking the danger in form. Whatever danger there is in form—that I discovered. I have clearly seen with wisdom just how far the danger in form extends.

"Bhikkhus, I set out seeking the escape from form. Whatever escape there is from form—that I discovered. I have clearly seen with wisdom just how far the escape from form extends.

"Bhikkhus, I set out seeking the gratification in ... the danger in ... the escape from feeling ... from perception ... from volitional formations ... from consciousness. Whatever escape there is from consciousness—that I discovered. I have clearly seen with wisdom just how far the escape from consciousness extends.

"So long, bhikkhus, as I did not directly know as they really are the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of these five aggregates subject to clinging, I did not claim to have awakened to the unsurpassed perfect enlightenment in this world

with its devas, Māra, and Brahmā, in this generation with its ascetics and brahmins, its devas and humans. But when I directly knew all this as it really is, then I claimed to have awakened to the unsurpassed perfect enlightenment in this world with ... its devas and humans.

"The knowledge and vision arose in me: 'Unshakable is my liberation of mind; this is my last birth; now there is no more renewed existence.'" "

#### 28 (7) *Gratification (3)*

At Sāvattḥi. "Bhikkhus, if there were no gratification in form, [30] beings would not become enamoured with it; but because there is gratification in form, beings become enamoured with it. If there were no danger in form, beings would not experience revulsion towards it; but because there is danger in form, beings experience revulsion towards it. If there were no escape from form, beings would not escape from it; but because there is an escape from form, beings escape from it.

"Bhikkhus, if there were no gratification in feeling ... in perception ... in volitional formations ... in consciousness, beings would not become enamoured with it ... but because there is an escape from consciousness, beings escape from it.

"So long, bhikkhus, as beings have not directly known as they really are the gratification as gratification, the danger as danger, and the escape as escape in the case of these five aggregates subject to clinging, they have not escaped from this world with its devas, Māra, [31] and Brahmā, from this generation with its ascetics and brahmins, its devas and humans; they have not become detached from it, released from it, nor do they dwell with a mind rid of barriers. But when beings have directly known all this as it really is, then they have escaped from this world with ... its devas and humans; they have become detached from it, released from it, and they dwell with a mind rid of barriers."

#### 29 (8) *Delight*

At Sāvattḥi. "Bhikkhus, one who seeks delight in form seeks delight in suffering. One who seeks delight in suffering, I say, is

not freed from suffering. One who seeks delight in feeling ... in perception ... in volitional formations ... in consciousness seeks delight in suffering. One who seeks delight in suffering, I say, is not freed from suffering.

“One who does not seek delight in form ... in consciousness does not seek delight in suffering. One who does not seek delight in suffering, I say, is freed from suffering.”

### 30 (9) *Arising*

At Sāvatti. “Bhikkhus, the arising, continuation, production, [32] and manifestation of form is the arising of suffering, the continuation of disease, the manifestation of aging-and-death. The arising of feeling ... of perception ... of volitional formations ... of consciousness is the arising of suffering, the continuation of disease, the manifestation of aging-and-death.

“The cessation, subsiding, and passing away of form ... of consciousness is the cessation of suffering, the subsiding of disease, the passing away of aging-and-death.”

### 31 (10) *The Root of Misery*

At Sāvatti. “Bhikkhus, I will teach you misery<sup>44</sup> and the root of misery. Listen to that....

“And what, bhikkhus, is misery? Form is misery; feeling is misery; perception is misery; volitional formations are misery; consciousness is misery. This is called misery.

“And what, bhikkhus, is the root of misery? It is this craving that leads to renewed existence, accompanied by delight and lust, seeking delight here and there; that is, craving for sensual pleasures, craving for existence, craving for extermination. This is called the root of misery.”

### 32 (11) *The Fragile*

At Sāvatti. “Bhikkhus, I will teach you the fragile<sup>45</sup> and the unfragile. Listen to that....

“And what, bhikkhus, is the fragile, and what the unfragile? [33] Form is the fragile; its cessation, subsiding, passing away is the unfragile. Feeling is the fragile ... Perception is the fragile ...

Volitional formations are the fragile ... Consciousness is the fragile; its cessation, subsiding, passing away is the unfragile.”

## IV. NOT YOURS

### 33 (1) *Not Yours (1)*

At Sāvatti. “Bhikkhus, whatever is not yours, abandon it. When you have abandoned it, that will lead to your welfare and happiness.<sup>46</sup> And what is it, bhikkhus, that is not yours? Form is not yours: abandon it. When you have abandoned it, that will lead to your welfare and happiness. Feeling is not yours ... Perception is not yours ... [34] Volitional formations are not yours ... Consciousness is not yours: abandon it. When you have abandoned it, that will lead to your welfare and happiness.

“Suppose, bhikkhus, people were to carry off the grass, sticks, branches, and foliage in this Jeta’s Grove, or to burn them, or to do with them as they wish. Would you think: ‘People are carrying us off, or burning us, or doing with us as they wish?’”

“No, venerable sir. For what reason? Because, venerable sir, that is neither our self nor what belongs to our self.”

“So too, bhikkhus, form is not yours ... consciousness is not yours: abandon it. When you have abandoned it, that will lead to your welfare and happiness.”

### 34 (2) *Not Yours (2)*

(*This sutta is identical with the preceding one except that it omits the simile.*)

### 35 (3) *A Certain Bhikkhu (1)*

At Sāvatti. [35] Then a certain bhikkhu approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and said to him: “Venerable sir, it would be good if the Blessed One would teach me the Dhamma in brief, so that, having heard the Dhamma from the Blessed One, I might dwell alone, withdrawn, diligent, ardent, and resolute.”

“Bhikkhu, if one has an underlying tendency towards something, then one is reckoned in terms of it.<sup>47</sup> If one does not have

an underlying tendency towards something, then one is not reckoned in terms of it."

"Understood, Blessed One! Understood, Fortunate One!"

"In what way, bhikkhu, do you understand in detail the meaning of what was stated by me in brief?"

"If, venerable sir, one has an underlying tendency towards form, then one is reckoned in terms of it. If one has an underlying tendency towards feeling, then one is reckoned in terms of it. If one has an underlying tendency towards perception, then one is reckoned in terms of it. If one has an underlying tendency towards volitional formations, then one is reckoned in terms of them. If one has an underlying tendency towards consciousness, then one is reckoned in terms of it.

"If, venerable sir, one does not have an underlying tendency towards form, then one is not reckoned in terms of it. If one does not have an underlying tendency towards feeling ... towards perception ... towards volitional formations ... towards consciousness, then one is not reckoned in terms of it.

"It is in such a way, venerable sir, that I understand in detail the meaning of what was stated by the Blessed One in brief."

"Good, good, bhikkhu! It is good that you understand in detail the meaning of what was stated by me in brief. If, bhikkhu, one has an underlying tendency towards form ... (*as above in full*) ... then one is not reckoned in terms of it. It is in such a way that the meaning of what was stated by me in brief should be understood in detail."

Then that bhikkhu, having delighted and rejoiced in the Blessed One's statement, [36] rose from his seat, and, after paying homage to the Blessed One, keeping him on his right, he departed.

Then, dwelling alone, withdrawn, diligent, ardent, and resolute, that bhikkhu, by realizing it for himself with direct knowledge, in this very life entered and dwelt in that unsurpassed goal of the holy life for the sake of which clansmen rightly go forth from the household life into homelessness. He directly knew: "Destroyed is birth, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more for this state of being." And that bhikkhu became one of the arahants.<sup>48</sup>

36 (4) *A Certain Bhikkhu* (2)

At Sāvatti. Then a certain bhikkhu approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and said to him: "Venerable sir, it would be good if the Blessed One would teach me the Dhamma in brief, so that, having heard the Dhamma from the Blessed One, I might dwell alone, withdrawn, diligent, ardent, and resolute."

"Bhikkhu, if one has an underlying tendency towards something, then one is measured in accordance with it;<sup>49</sup> if one is measured in accordance with something, then one is reckoned in terms of it. If one does not have an underlying tendency towards something, then one is not measured in accordance with it; if one is not measured in accordance with something, then one is not reckoned in terms of it."

"Understood, Blessed One! Understood, Fortunate One!"

"In what way, bhikkhu, do you understand in detail the meaning of what was stated by me in brief?"

"If, venerable sir, one has an underlying tendency towards form, then one is measured in accordance with it; if one is measured in accordance with it, then one is reckoned in terms of it. If one has an underlying tendency towards feeling ... towards perception ... towards volitional formations ... towards consciousness, then one is measured in accordance with it; if one is measured in accordance with it, then one is reckoned in terms of it.

"If, venerable sir, one does not have an underlying tendency towards form, then one is not measured in accordance with it; [37] if one is not measured in accordance with it, then one is not reckoned in terms of it. If one does not have an underlying tendency towards feeling ... towards perception ... towards volitional formations ... towards consciousness, then one is not measured in accordance with it; if one is not measured in accordance with it, then one is not reckoned in terms of it.

"It is in such a way, venerable sir, that I understand in detail the meaning of what was stated by the Blessed One in brief."

"Good, good, bhikkhu! It is good that you understand in detail the meaning of what was stated by me in brief. If, bhikkhu, one has an underlying tendency towards form ... (*as above in full*) ... then one is not reckoned in terms of it. It is in such a way that the

meaning of what was stated by me in brief should be understood in detail."

Then that bhikkhu, having delighted and rejoiced in the Blessed One's words, rose from his seat ... And that bhikkhu became one of the arahants.

37 (5) *Ānanda* (1)

At Sāvatti. Then the Venerable *Ānanda* approached the Blessed One.... The Blessed One then said to the Venerable *Ānanda* as he was sitting to one side:

"If, *Ānanda*, they were to ask you: 'Friend *Ānanda*, what are the things of which an arising is discerned, a vanishing is discerned, an alteration of that which stands is discerned?'—being asked thus, how would you answer?"<sup>50</sup> [38]

"Venerable sir, if they were to ask me this, I would answer thus: 'Friends, with form an arising is discerned, a vanishing is discerned, an alteration of that which stands is discerned. With feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness an arising is discerned, a vanishing is discerned, an alteration of that which stands is discerned. These, friends, are the things of which an arising is discerned, a vanishing is discerned, an alteration of that which stands is discerned.' Being asked thus, venerable sir, I would answer in such a way."

"Good, good, *Ānanda*! With form, *Ānanda*, an arising is discerned, a vanishing is discerned, an alteration of that which stands is discerned. With feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness an arising is discerned, a vanishing is discerned, an alteration of that which stands is discerned. These, *Ānanda*, are the things of which an arising is discerned, a vanishing is discerned, an alteration of that which stands is discerned. Being asked thus, *Ānanda*, you should answer in such a way."

38 (6) *Ānanda* (2)

At Sāvatti.... The Blessed One then said to the Venerable *Ānanda* as he was sitting to one side:

"If, *Ānanda*, they were to ask you: 'Friend *Ānanda*, what are the things of which an arising was discerned, a vanishing was discerned, an alteration of that which stands was discerned?

What are the things of which an arising will be discerned, a vanishing will be discerned, an alteration of that which stands will be discerned? What are the things of which an arising is discerned, a vanishing is discerned, an alteration of that which stands is discerned?'—being asked thus, *Ānanda*, how would you answer?"

"Venerable sir, if they were to ask me this, [39] I would answer thus: 'Friends, with form that has passed, ceased, changed, an arising was discerned, a vanishing was discerned, an alteration of that which stands was discerned. With feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness that has passed, ceased, changed, an arising was discerned, a vanishing was discerned, an alteration of that which stands was discerned. It is of these things, friends, that an arising was discerned, that a vanishing was discerned, that an alteration of that which stands was discerned.

"Friends, with form that has not been born, not become manifest, an arising will be discerned, a vanishing will be discerned, an alteration of that which stands will be discerned. With feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness that has not been born, not become manifest, an arising will be discerned, a vanishing will be discerned, an alteration of that which stands will be discerned. It is of these things, friends, that an arising will be discerned, that a vanishing will be discerned, that an alteration of that which stands will be discerned.

"Friends, with form that has been born, that has become manifest, an arising is discerned, a vanishing is discerned, an alteration of that which stands is discerned. With feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness that has been born, that has become manifest, an arising is discerned, a vanishing is discerned, an alteration of that which stands is discerned. It is of these things, friends, that an arising is discerned, that a vanishing is discerned, that an alteration of that which stands is discerned.'

"Being asked thus, venerable sir, I would answer in such a way."

"Good, good, *Ānanda*!"

(*The Buddha here repeats the entire answer of the Venerable Ānanda, concluding:*) [40]

"Being asked thus, *Ānanda*, you should answer in such a way."

39 (7) *In Accordance with the Dhamma (1)*

At Sāvattḥi. “Bhikkhus, when a bhikkhu is practising in accordance with the Dhamma,<sup>51</sup> this is what accords with the Dhamma: he should dwell engrossed in revulsion towards form, feeling, perception, volitional formations, and consciousness.<sup>52</sup> One who dwells engrossed in revulsion towards form ... and consciousness, fully understands form, feeling, perception, volitional formations, and consciousness. One who fully understands form ... and consciousness is freed from form, [41] feeling, perception, volitional formations, and consciousness. He is freed from birth, aging, and death; freed from sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair; freed from suffering, I say.”

40 (8) *In Accordance with the Dhamma (2)*

At Sāvattḥi. “Bhikkhus, when a bhikkhu is practising in accordance with the Dhamma, this is what accords with the Dhamma: he should dwell contemplating impermanence in form ... (as above) ... he is freed from suffering, I say.”

41 (9) *In Accordance with the Dhamma (3)*

... “he should dwell contemplating suffering in form ... (as above) ... he is freed from suffering, I say.”

42 (10) *In Accordance with the Dhamma (4)*

... “he should dwell contemplating nonself in form ... (as above) ... he is freed from suffering, I say.”

## [42] V. WITH YOURSELVES AS AN ISLAND

43 (1) *With Yourselves as an Island*

At Sāvattḥi. “Bhikkhus, dwell with yourselves as an island, with yourselves as a refuge, with no other refuge; with the Dhamma as an island, with the Dhamma as a refuge, with no other refuge.<sup>53</sup> When you dwell with yourselves as an island, with yourselves as a refuge, with no other refuge; with the Dhamma

as an island, with the Dhamma as a refuge, with no other refuge, the basis itself should be investigated thus:<sup>54</sup> ‘From what are sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair born? How are they produced?’

“And, bhikkhus, from what are sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair born? How are they produced? Here, bhikkhus, the uninstructed worldling, who is not a seer of the noble ones and is unskilled and undisciplined in their Dhamma, who is not a seer of superior persons and is unskilled and undisciplined in their Dhamma, regards form as self, or self as possessing form, or form as in self, or self as in form. That form of his changes and alters. With the change and alteration of form, there arise in him sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair.

“He regards feeling as self ... perception as self ... volitional formations as self ... consciousness as self, or self as possessing consciousness, or consciousness as in self, or self as in consciousness. [43] That consciousness of his changes and alters. With the change and alteration of consciousness, there arise in him sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair.

“But, bhikkhus, when one has understood the impermanence of form, its change, fading away, and cessation, and when one sees as it really is with correct wisdom thus: ‘In the past and also now all form is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change,’ then sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair are abandoned. With their abandonment, one does not become agitated.<sup>55</sup> Being unagitated, one dwells happily. A bhikkhu who dwells happily is said to be quenched in that respect.<sup>56</sup>

“When one has understood the impermanence of feeling ... of perception ... of volitional formations ... of consciousness, its change, fading away, and cessation, and when one sees as it really is with correct wisdom thus: ‘In the past and also now all consciousness is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change,’ then sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair are abandoned. With their abandonment, one does not become agitated. Being unagitated, one dwells happily. A bhikkhu who dwells happily is said to be quenched in that respect.”

44 (2) *The Way*

At Sāvattḥi. [44] “Bhikkhus, I will teach you the way leading to

the origination of identity and the way leading to the cessation of identity. Listen to that....

“And what, bhikkhus, is the way leading to the origination of identity? Here, bhikkhus, the uninstructed worldling ... regards form as self ... feeling as self ... perception as self ... volitional formations as self ... consciousness as self ... or self as in consciousness. This, bhikkhus, is called the way leading to the origination of identity. When it is said, ‘The way leading to the origination of identity,’ the meaning here is this: a way of regarding things that leads to the origination of suffering.<sup>57</sup>

“And what, bhikkhus, is the way leading to the cessation of identity? Here, bhikkhus, the instructed noble disciple ... does not regard form as self ... nor feeling as self ... nor perception as self ... nor volitional formations as self ... nor consciousness as self ... nor self as in consciousness. This, bhikkhus, is called the way leading to the cessation of identity. When it is said, ‘The way leading to the cessation of identity,’ the meaning here is this: a way of regarding things that leads to the cessation of suffering.”

#### 45 (3) *Impermanent (1)*

At Sāvattī. “Bhikkhus, form is impermanent. What is impermanent is suffering. [45] What is suffering is nonself. What is nonself should be seen as it really is with correct wisdom thus: ‘This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self.’ When one sees this thus as it really is with correct wisdom, the mind becomes dispassionate and is liberated from the taints by non-clinging.<sup>58</sup>

“Feeling is impermanent.... Perception is impermanent.... Volitional formations are impermanent.... Consciousness is impermanent. What is impermanent is suffering. What is suffering is nonself. What is nonself should be seen as it really is with correct wisdom thus: ‘This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self.’ When one sees this thus as it really is with correct wisdom, the mind becomes dispassionate and is liberated from the taints by nonclinging.

“If, bhikkhus, a bhikkhu’s mind has become dispassionate towards the form element, it is liberated from the taints by non-clinging. If his mind has become dispassionate towards the feeling element ... towards the perception element ... towards the

volitional formations element ... towards the consciousness element, it is liberated from the taints by nonclinging.

“By being liberated, it is steady; by being steady, it is content; by being content, he is not agitated. Being unagitated, he personally attains Nibbāna. He understands: ‘Destroyed is birth, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more for this state of being.’”<sup>59</sup>

#### 46 (4) *Impermanent (2)*

At Sāvattī. “Bhikkhus, form is impermanent.... Feeling is impermanent.... Perception is impermanent.... Volitional formations are impermanent.... Consciousness is impermanent. What is impermanent is suffering. What is suffering is nonself. What is nonself should be seen as it really is with correct wisdom thus: ‘This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self.’

“When one sees this thus as it really is with correct wisdom, one holds no more views concerning the past. When one holds no more views concerning the past, [46] one holds no more views concerning the future. When one holds no more views concerning the future, one has no more obstinate grasping.<sup>60</sup> When one has no more obstinate grasping, the mind becomes dispassionate towards form, feeling, perception, volitional formations, and consciousness, and is liberated from the taints by nonclinging.

“By being liberated, it is steady; by being steady, it is content; by being content, one is not agitated. Being unagitated, one personally attains Nibbāna. One understands: ‘Destroyed is birth, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more for this state of being.’”

#### 47 (5) *Ways of Regarding Things*

At Sāvattī. “Bhikkhus, those ascetics and brahmins who regard [anything as] self in various ways all regard [as self] the five aggregates subject to clinging, or a certain one among them. What five?

“Here, bhikkhus, the uninstructed worldling, who is not a seer of the noble ones and is unskilled and undisciplined in their Dhamma, who is not a seer of superior persons and is unskilled and undisciplined in their Dhamma, regards form as self, or self

as possessing form, or form as in self, or self as in form. He regards feeling as self ... perception as self ... volitional formations as self ... consciousness as self, or self as possessing consciousness, or consciousness as in self, or self as in consciousness.

"Thus this way of regarding things and [the notion] 'I am' have not vanished in him.<sup>61</sup> As 'I am' has not vanished, there takes place a descent of the five faculties—of the eye faculty, the ear faculty, the nose faculty, the tongue faculty, the body faculty.<sup>62</sup> There is, bhikkhus, the mind, there are mental phenomena, there is the element of ignorance. When the uninstructed worldling is contacted by a feeling born of ignorance-contact, 'I am' occurs to him; 'I am this' occurs to him; 'I will be' and 'I will not be,' and 'I will consist of form' and 'I will be formless,' and 'I will be percipient' and 'I will be nonpercipient' and 'I will be neither percipient nor nonpercipient'—these occur to him.<sup>63</sup> [47]

"The five faculties remain right there, bhikkhus, but in regard to them the instructed noble disciple abandons ignorance and arouses true knowledge. With the fading away of ignorance and the arising of true knowledge, 'I am' does not occur to him; 'I am this' does not occur to him; 'I will be' and 'I will not be,' and 'I will consist of form' and 'I will be formless,' and 'I will be percipient' and 'I will be nonpercipient' and 'I will be neither percipient nor nonpercipient'—these do not occur to him."

#### 48 (6) Aggregates

At Sāvattthi. "Bhikkhus, I will teach you the five aggregates and the five aggregates subject to clinging. Listen to that....

"And what, bhikkhus, are the five aggregates? Whatever kind of form there is, whether past, future, or present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near: this is called the form aggregate.<sup>64</sup> Whatever kind of feeling there is ... this is called the feeling aggregate. Whatever kind of perception there is ... this is called the perception aggregate. Whatever kind of volitional formations there are ... these are called the volitional formations aggregate. Whatever kind of consciousness there is, whether past, future, or present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near: this is called the consciousness aggregate. These, bhikkhus, are called the five aggregates.

"And what, bhikkhus, are the five aggregates subject to clinging? Whatever kind of form there is, whether past, future, or present ... far or near, that is tainted, that can be clung to: this is called the form aggregate subject to clinging. Whatever kind of feeling there is ... that is tainted, that can be clung to: this is called the feeling aggregate subject to clinging. Whatever kind of perception there is ... that is tainted, that can be clung to: this is called the perception aggregate subject to clinging. Whatever kind of volitional formations there are ... that are tainted, that can be clung to: these are called the volitional formations aggregate subject to clinging. [48] Whatever kind of consciousness there is, whether past, future, or present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near, that is tainted, that can be clung to: this is called the consciousness aggregate subject to clinging. These, bhikkhus, are called the five aggregates subject to clinging."<sup>65</sup>

#### 49 (7) *Soṇa* (1)

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary. Then *Soṇa* the householder's son approached the Blessed One.... The Blessed One then said to *Soṇa* the householder's son:

"*Soṇa*, when any ascetics and brahmins, on the basis of form—which is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change—regard themselves thus: 'I am superior,' or 'I am equal,' or 'I am inferior,' what is that due to apart from not seeing things as they really are?<sup>66</sup>

"When any ascetics and brahmins, on the basis of feeling ... on the basis of perception ... on the basis of volitional formations ... on the basis of consciousness—which is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change—regard themselves thus: 'I am superior,' or 'I am equal,' or 'I am inferior,' what is that due to apart from not seeing things as they really are?

"*Soṇa*, when any ascetics and brahmins do not, on the basis of form—which is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change—regard themselves thus: 'I am superior,' or 'I am equal,' [49] or 'I am inferior,' what is that due to apart from seeing things as they really are?

“When any ascetics and brahmins do not, on the basis of feeling ... on the basis of perception ... on the basis of volitional formations ... on the basis of consciousness—which is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change—regard themselves thus: ‘I am superior,’ or ‘I am equal,’ or ‘I am inferior,’ what is that due to apart from seeing things as they really are?

“What do you think, Soṇa, is form permanent or impermanent?” – “Impermanent, venerable sir.” – “Is what is impermanent suffering or happiness?” – “Suffering, venerable sir.” – “Is what is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change fit to be regarded thus: ‘This is mine, this I am, this is my self?’” – “No, venerable sir.”

“Is feeling permanent or impermanent?... Is perception permanent or impermanent?... Are volitional formations permanent or impermanent?... Is consciousness permanent or impermanent?” – “Impermanent, venerable sir.” – “Is what is impermanent suffering or happiness?” – “Suffering, venerable sir.” – “Is what is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change fit to be regarded thus: ‘This is mine, this I am, this is my self?’” – “No, venerable sir.”

“Therefore, Soṇa, any kind of form whatsoever, whether past, future, or present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near, all form should be seen as it really is with correct wisdom thus: ‘This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self.’

“Any kind of feeling whatsoever ... Any kind of perception whatsoever ... Any kind of volitional formations whatsoever ... Any kind of consciousness whatsoever, whether past, future, or present, [50] internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near, all consciousness should be seen as it really is with correct wisdom thus: ‘This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self.’

“Seeing thus, Soṇa, the instructed noble disciple experiences revulsion towards form, revulsion towards feeling, revulsion towards perception, revulsion towards volitional formations, revulsion towards consciousness. Experiencing revulsion, he becomes dispassionate. Through dispassion [his mind] is liberated. When it is liberated there comes the knowledge: ‘It’s liberated.’ He understands: ‘Destroyed is birth, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more for this state of being.’”

50 (8) *Soṇa* (2)

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary. Then Soṇa the householder’s son approached the Blessed One.... The Blessed One then said to Soṇa the householder’s son:

“Soṇa, those ascetics or brahmins who do not understand form, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation; who do not understand feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation: these I do not consider to be ascetics among ascetics or brahmins among brahmins, and these venerable ones do not, by realizing it for themselves with direct knowledge, in this very life enter and dwell in the goal of asceticism or the goal of brahminhood.<sup>67</sup>

“But, Soṇa, those ascetics and brahmins who understand form, [51] its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation; who understand feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation: these I consider to be ascetics among ascetics and brahmins among brahmins, and these venerable ones, by realizing it for themselves with direct knowledge, in this very life enter and dwell in the goal of asceticism and the goal of brahminhood.”

51 (9) *Destruction of Delight* (1)

At Sāvatti. “Bhikkhus, a bhikkhu sees as impermanent form which is actually impermanent: that is his right view. Seeing rightly, he experiences revulsion. With the destruction of delight comes the destruction of lust; with the destruction of lust comes the destruction of delight. With the destruction of delight and lust the mind is liberated and is said to be well liberated.<sup>68</sup>

“A bhikkhu sees as impermanent feeling which is actually impermanent ... perception which is actually impermanent ... volitional formations which are actually impermanent ... consciousness which is actually impermanent: that is his right view.... With the destruction of delight and lust the mind is liberated and is said to be well liberated.”

52 (10) *Destruction of Delight* (2)

At Sāvattī. [52] “Bhikkhus, attend carefully to form. Recognize the impermanence of form as it really is. When a bhikkhu attends carefully to form and recognizes the impermanence of form as it really is, he experiences revulsion towards form. With the destruction of delight comes the destruction of lust; with the destruction of lust comes the destruction of delight. With the destruction of delight and lust the mind is liberated and is said to be well liberated.

“Bhikkhus, attend carefully to feeling ... to perception ... to volitional formations ... to consciousness.... With the destruction of delight and lust the mind is liberated and is said to be well liberated.”

[53] Division II  
THE MIDDLE FIFTY  
  
I. ENGAGEMENT

53 (1) *Engagement*

At Sāvattī. “Bhikkhus, one who is engaged is unliberated;<sup>69</sup> one who is disengaged is liberated. Consciousness, bhikkhus, while standing, might stand engaged with form; based upon form, established upon form, with a sprinkling of delight, it might come to growth, increase, and expansion. Or consciousness, while standing, might stand [engaged with feeling ... engaged with perception ...] engaged with volitional formations; based upon volitional formations, established upon volitional formations, with a sprinkling of delight, it might come to growth, increase, and expansion.<sup>70</sup>

“Bhikkhus, though someone might say: ‘Apart from form, apart from feeling, apart from perception, apart from volitional formations, I will make known the coming and going of consciousness, its passing away and rebirth, its growth, increase, and expansion’—that is impossible.

“Bhikkhus, if a bhikkhu has abandoned lust for the form element, with the abandoning of lust the basis is cut off: there is no support for the establishing of consciousness.<sup>71</sup> If he has aban-

doned lust for the feeling element ... for the perception element ... for the volitional formations element... for the consciousness element, with the abandoning of lust the basis is cut off: there is no support for the establishing of consciousness.

“When that consciousness is unestablished, not coming to growth, nongenerative, [54] it is liberated.<sup>72</sup> By being liberated, it is steady; by being steady, it is content; by being content, he is not agitated. Being unagitated, he personally attains Nibbāna. He understands: ‘Destroyed is birth, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more for this state of being.’”

54 (2) *Seeds*

At Sāvattī. “Bhikkhus, there are these five kinds of seeds. What five? Root-seeds, stem-seeds, joint-seeds, cutting-seeds, and germ-seeds as the fifth.<sup>73</sup> If these five kinds of seeds are unbroken, unspoilt, undamaged by wind and sun, fertile, securely planted, but there is no earth or water, would these five kinds of seeds come to growth, increase, and expansion?”

“No, venerable sir.”

“If these five kinds of seeds are broken, spoilt, damaged by wind and sun, unfertile, not securely planted, but there is earth and water, would these five kinds of seeds come to growth, increase, and expansion?”

“No, venerable sir.”

“If these five kinds of seeds are unbroken, unspoilt, undamaged by wind and sun, fertile, securely planted, and there is earth and water, would these five kinds of seeds come to growth, increase, and expansion?”

“Yes, venerable sir.”

“Bhikkhus, the four stations of consciousness should be seen as like the earth element. Delight and lust should be seen as like the water element. Consciousness together with its nutriment should be seen as like the five kinds of seeds.<sup>74</sup>

“Consciousness, bhikkhus, while standing, might stand engaged with form; [55] based upon form, established upon form, with a sprinkling of delight, it might come to growth, increase, and expansion. Or consciousness, while standing, might stand engaged with feeling ... engaged with perception ... engaged

with volitional formations; based upon volitional formations, established upon volitional formations, with a sprinkling of delight, it might come to growth, increase, and expansion.

"Bhikkhus, though someone might say: 'Apart from form, apart from feeling, apart from perception, apart from volitional formations, I will make known the coming and going of consciousness, its passing away and rebirth, its growth, increase, and expansion'—that is impossible.

"Bhikkhus, if *ā* bhikkhu has abandoned lust for the form element, with the abandoning of lust the basis is cut off: there is no support for the establishing of consciousness. If he has abandoned lust for the feeling element ... for the perception element ... for the volitional formations element ... for the consciousness element, with the abandoning of lust the basis is cut off: there is no support for the establishing of consciousness.

"When that consciousness is unestablished, not coming to growth, nongenerative, it is liberated. By being liberated, it is steady; by being steady, it is content; by being content, he is not agitated. Being unagitated, he personally attains Nibbāna. He understands: 'Destroyed is birth, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more for this state of being.'"

### 55 (3) *Inspired Utterance*

At Sāvatti. There the Blessed One uttered this inspired utterance: "It might not be, and it might not be for me; it will not be, [and] it will not be for me': [56] resolving thus, a bhikkhu can cut off the lower fetters."<sup>75</sup>

When this was said, a certain bhikkhu said to the Blessed One: "But how, venerable sir, can a bhikkhu, resolving thus: 'It might not be, and it might not be for me; it will not be, [and] it will not be for me,' cut off the lower fetters?"

"Here, bhikkhu, the uninstructed worldling, who is not a seer of the noble ones ... regards form as self ... or self as in consciousness.

"He does not understand as it really is impermanent form as 'impermanent form' ... impermanent feeling as 'impermanent feeling' ... impermanent perception as 'impermanent perception' ... impermanent volitional formations as 'impermanent volitional formations' ... impermanent consciousness as 'impermanent consciousness.'

"He does not understand as it really is painful form as 'painful form' ... painful feeling as 'painful feeling' ... painful perception as 'painful perception' ... painful volitional formations as 'painful volitional formations' ... painful consciousness as 'painful consciousness.'

"He does not understand as it really is selfless form as 'selfless form' ... selfless feeling as 'selfless feeling' ... selfless perception as 'selfless perception' ... selfless volitional formations as 'selfless volitional formations' ... selfless consciousness as 'selfless consciousness.'

"He does not understand as it really is conditioned form as 'conditioned form' ... conditioned feeling as 'conditioned feeling' ... conditioned perception as 'conditioned perception' ... conditioned volitional formations as 'conditioned volitional formations' ... conditioned consciousness as 'conditioned consciousness.'

"He does not understand as it really is: 'Form will be exterminated' ... 'Feeling will be exterminated' ... 'Perception will be exterminated' ... 'Volitional formations will be exterminated' ... 'Consciousness will be exterminated.'<sup>76</sup> [57]

"The instructed noble disciple, bhikkhu, who is a seer of the noble ones ... does not regard form as self ... or self as in consciousness.

"He understands as it really is impermanent form as 'impermanent form' ... impermanent consciousness as 'impermanent consciousness.'

"He understands as it really is painful form as 'painful form' ... painful consciousness as 'painful consciousness.'

"He understands as it really is selfless form as 'selfless form' ... selfless consciousness as 'selfless consciousness.'

"He understands as it really is conditioned form as 'conditioned form' ... conditioned consciousness as 'conditioned consciousness.'

"He understands as it really is: 'Form will be exterminated' ... 'Feeling will be exterminated' ... 'Perception will be exterminated' ... 'Volitional formations will be exterminated' ... 'Consciousness will be exterminated.'

"With the extermination of form, feeling, perception, volitional formations, and consciousness, that bhikkhu, resolving thus: 'It might not be, and it might not be for me; it will not be, [and] it will not be for me,' can cut off the lower fetters."<sup>77</sup>

"Resolving thus, venerable sir, a bhikkhu can cut off the lower fetters. But how should one know, how should one see, for the immediate destruction of the taints to occur?"<sup>78</sup>

"Here, bhikkhu, the uninstructed worldling becomes frightened over an unfrighting matter. For this is frightening to the uninstructed worldling: 'It might not be, and it might not be for me; it will not be, [and] it will not be for me.' But the instructed noble disciple does not become frightened over an unfrighting matter. For this is not frightening to the noble disciple: 'It might not be, and it might not be for me; it will not be, [and] it will not be for me.'<sup>79</sup> [58]

"Consciousness, bhikkhu, while standing, might stand engaged with form ... engaged with feeling ... engaged with perception ... engaged with volitional formations; based upon volitional formations, established upon volitional formations, with a sprinkling of delight, it might come to growth, increase, and expansion.

"Bhikkhu, though someone might say: 'Apart from form, apart from feeling, apart from perception, apart from volitional formations, I will make known the coming and going of consciousness, its passing away and rebirth, its growth, increase, and expansion'—that is impossible.

"Bhikkhu, if a bhikkhu has abandoned lust for the form element, with the abandoning of lust the basis is cut off: there is no support for the establishing of consciousness. If he has abandoned lust for the feeling element ... for the perception element ... for the volitional formations element ... for the consciousness element, with the abandoning of lust the basis is cut off: there is no support for the establishing of consciousness.

"When that consciousness is unestablished, not coming to growth, nongenerative, it is liberated. By being liberated, it is steady; by being steady, it is content; by being content, he is not agitated. Being unagitated, he personally attains Nibbāna. He understands: 'Destroyed is birth, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more for this state of being.'

"It is, bhikkhu, for one who knows thus, for one who sees thus, that the immediate destruction of the taints occurs."

#### 56 (4) *Phases of the Clinging Aggregates*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, there are these five aggregates subject to clinging. What five? The form aggregate subject to clinging, [59] the feeling aggregate subject to clinging, the perception aggregate subject to clinging, the volitional formations aggregate subject to clinging, the consciousness aggregate subject to clinging.

"So long as I did not directly know as they really are the five aggregates subject to clinging in four phases,<sup>80</sup> I did not claim to have awakened to the unsurpassed perfect enlightenment in this world with its devas, Māra, and Brahmā, in this generation with its ascetics and brahmins, its devas and humans. But when I directly knew all this as it really is, then I claimed to have awakened to the unsurpassed perfect enlightenment in this world with ... its devas and humans.

"And how, bhikkhus, are there four phases? I directly knew form, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation. I directly knew feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation.

"And what, bhikkhus, is form? The four great elements and the form derived from the four great elements: this is called form. With the arising of nutriment there is the arising of form. With the cessation of nutriment there is the cessation of form. This Noble Eightfold Path is the way leading to the cessation of form; that is, right view ... right concentration.<sup>81</sup>

"Whatever ascetics and brahmins, having thus directly known form, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation, are practising for the purpose of revulsion towards form, for its fading away and cessation, they are practising well. Those who are practising well have gained a foothold in this Dhamma and Discipline.<sup>82</sup>

"And whatever ascetics and brahmins, having thus directly known form, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation, through revulsion towards form, through its fading away and cessation, are liberated by nonclinging, they are well liberated. Those who are well liberated are consummate ones. As to those consummate ones, there is no round for describing them.<sup>83</sup>

"And what, bhikkhus, is feeling? [60] There are these six classes of feeling: feeling born of eye-contact, feeling born of ear-

contact, feeling born of nose-contact, feeling born of tongue-contact, feeling born of body-contact, feeling born of mind-contact. This is called feeling. With the arising of contact there is the arising of feeling.<sup>84</sup> With the cessation of contact there is the cessation of feeling. This Noble Eightfold Path is the way leading to the cessation of feeling; that is, right view ... right concentration.

"Whatever ascetics and brahmins, having thus directly known feeling, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation, are practising for the purpose of revulsion towards feeling, for its fading away and cessation, they are practising well. Those who are practising well have gained a foothold in this Dhamma and Discipline.

"And whatever ascetics and brahmins, having thus directly known feeling ... and the way leading to its cessation ... As to those consummate ones, there is no round for describing them.

"And what, bhikkhus, is perception? There are these six classes of perception: perception of forms, perception of sounds, perception of odours, perception of tastes, perception of tactile objects, perception of mental phenomena. This is called perception. With the arising of contact there is the arising of perception. With the cessation of contact there is the cessation of perception. This Noble Eightfold Path is the way leading to the cessation of perception; that is, right view ... right concentration.

"Whatever ascetics and brahmins ... As to those consummate ones, there is no round for describing them.

"And what, bhikkhus, are volitional formations? There are these six classes of volition:<sup>85</sup> volition regarding forms, volition regarding sounds, volition regarding odours, volition regarding tastes, volition regarding tactile objects, volition regarding mental phenomena. These are called volitional formations. With the arising of contact there is the arising of volitional formations. With the cessation of contact there is the cessation of volitional formations. This Noble Eightfold Path is the way leading to the cessation of volitional formations; that is, right view ... right concentration.

"Whatever ascetics and brahmins ... [61] ... As to those consummate ones, there is no round for describing them.

"And what, bhikkhus, is consciousness? There are these six classes of consciousness: eye-consciousness, ear-consciousness, nose-consciousness, tongue-consciousness, body-consciousness,

mind-consciousness. This is called consciousness. With the arising of name-and-form there is the arising of consciousness. With the cessation of name-and-form there is the cessation of consciousness. This Noble Eightfold Path is the way leading to the cessation of consciousness; that is, right view ... right concentration.<sup>86</sup>

"Whatever ascetics and brahmins, having thus directly known consciousness, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation, are practising for the purpose of revulsion towards consciousness, for its fading away and cessation, they are practising well. Those who are practising well have gained a foothold in this Dhamma and Discipline.

"And whatever ascetics and brahmins, having thus directly known consciousness, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation, through revulsion towards consciousness, through its fading away and cessation, are liberated by non-clinging, they are well liberated. Those who are well liberated are consummate ones. As to those consummate ones, there is no round for describing them."

#### 57 (5) *The Seven Cases*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, a bhikkhu who is skilled in seven cases and a triple investigator is called, in this Dhamma and Discipline, a consummate one, one who has fully lived the holy life, the highest kind of person.<sup>87</sup>

"And how, bhikkhus, is a bhikkhu skilled in seven cases? [62] Here, bhikkhus, a bhikkhu understands form, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation; he understands the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of form.

"He understands feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation; he understands the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of consciousness.

"And what, bhikkhus, is form? The four great elements and the form derived from the four great elements: this is called form. With the arising of nutriment there is the arising of form. With the cessation of nutriment there is the cessation of form. This Noble Eightfold Path is the way leading to the cessation of form; that is, right view ... right concentration.

"The pleasure and joy that arise in dependence on form: this is the gratification in form. That form is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change: this is the danger in form. The removal and abandonment of desire and lust for form: this is the escape from form.

"Whatever ascetics and brahmins, having thus directly known form, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation, having thus directly known the gratification, the danger, and [63] the escape in the case of form, are practising for the purpose of revulsion towards form, for its fading away and cessation, they are practising well. Those who are practising well have gained a foothold in this Dhamma and Discipline.

"And whatever ascetics and brahmins, having thus directly known form, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation, having thus directly known the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of form, through revulsion towards form, through its fading away and cessation, are liberated by nonclinging, they are well liberated. Those who are well liberated are consummate ones. As to those consummate ones, there is no round for describing them.

"And what, bhikkhus, is feeling? There are these six classes of feeling: feeling born of eye-contact ... (*as in preceding sutta*) ... feeling born of mind-contact. This is called feeling. With the arising of contact there is the arising of feeling. With the cessation of contact there is the cessation of feeling. This Noble Eightfold Path is the way leading to the cessation of feeling; that is, right view ... right concentration.

"The pleasure and joy that arise in dependence on feeling: this is the gratification in feeling. That feeling is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change: this is the danger in feeling. The removal and abandonment of desire and lust for feeling: this is the escape from feeling.

"Whatever ascetics and brahmins, having thus directly known feeling, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation, having thus directly known the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of feeling, are practising for the purpose of revulsion towards feeling, for its fading away and cessation, they are practising well. Those who are practising well have gained a foothold in this Dhamma and Discipline.

"And whatever ascetics and brahmins, having thus directly

known feeling ... and the escape in the case of feeling ... As to those consummate ones, there is no round for describing them.

"And what, bhikkhus, is perception? There are these six classes of perception: perception of forms ... perception of mental phenomena. This is called perception. With the arising of contact there is the arising of perception. With the cessation of contact there is the cessation of perception. This Noble Eightfold Path is the way leading to the cessation of perception; that is, right view ... right concentration.

"The pleasure and joy that arise in dependence on perception: this is the gratification in perception. That perception is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change: this is the danger in perception. The removal and abandonment of desire and lust for perception: this is the escape from perception.

"Whatever ascetics and brahmins ... As to those consummate ones, there is no round for describing them.

"And what, bhikkhus, are volitional formations? There are these six classes of volition: volition regarding forms ... volition regarding mental phenomena. This is called volitional formations. With the arising of contact there is the arising of volitional formations. With the cessation of contact there is the cessation of volitional formations. [64] This Noble Eightfold Path is the way leading to the cessation of volitional formations; that is, right view ... right concentration.

"The pleasure and joy that arise in dependence on volitional formations: this is the gratification in volitional formations. That volitional formations are impermanent, suffering, and subject to change: this is the danger in volitional formations. The removal and abandonment of desire and lust for volitional formations: this is the escape from volitional formations.

"Whatever ascetics and brahmins ... As to those consummate ones, there is no round for describing them.

"And what, bhikkhus, is consciousness? There are these six classes of consciousness: eye-consciousness ... mind-consciousness. This is called consciousness. With the arising of name-and-form there is the arising of consciousness. With the cessation of name-and-form there is the cessation of consciousness. This Noble Eightfold Path is the way leading to the cessation of consciousness; that is, right view ... right concentration.

"The pleasure and joy that arise in dependence on consciousness:

this is the gratification in consciousness. That consciousness is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change: this is the danger in consciousness. The removal and abandonment of desire and lust for consciousness: this is the escape from consciousness.

"Whatever ascetics and brahmins, having thus directly known consciousness, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation, having thus directly known the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of consciousness, are practising for the purpose of revulsion towards consciousness, for its fading away and cessation, they are practising well. Those who are practising well have gained a foothold in this Dhamma and Discipline. [65]

"And whatever ascetics and brahmins, having thus directly known consciousness, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation, having thus directly known the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of consciousness, through revulsion towards consciousness, through its fading away and cessation, are liberated by nonclinging, they are well liberated. Those who are well liberated are consummate ones. As to those consummate ones, there is no round for describing them.

"It is in such a way, bhikkhus, that a bhikkhu is skilled in seven cases.

"And how, bhikkhus, is a bhikkhu a triple investigator? Here, bhikkhus, a bhikkhu investigates by way of the elements, by way of the sense bases, and by way of dependent origination. It is in such a way that a bhikkhu is a triple investigator.<sup>88</sup>

"Bhikkhus, a bhikkhu who is skilled in these seven cases and a triple investigator is called, in this Dhamma and Discipline, a consummate one, one who has fully lived the holy life, the highest kind of person."

#### 58 (6) *The Perfectly Enlightened One*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, the Tathāgata, the Arahant, the Perfectly Enlightened One, liberated by nonclinging through revulsion towards form, through its fading away and cessation, is called a Perfectly Enlightened One. A bhikkhu liberated by wisdom, liberated by nonclinging through revulsion towards form, through its fading away and cessation, is called one liberated by wisdom.<sup>89</sup>

"The Tathāgata, the Arahant, the Perfectly Enlightened One,

liberated by nonclinging through revulsion towards feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, through its fading away [66] and cessation, is called a Perfectly Enlightened One. A bhikkhu liberated by wisdom, liberated by nonclinging through revulsion towards feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, through its fading away and cessation, is called one liberated by wisdom.

"Therein, bhikkhus, what is the distinction, what is the disparity, what is the difference between the Tathāgata, the Arahant, the Perfectly Enlightened One, and a bhikkhu liberated by wisdom?"

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One, guided by the Blessed One, take recourse in the Blessed One. It would be good if the Blessed One would clear up the meaning of this statement. Having heard it from him, the bhikkhus will remember it."

"Then listen and attend closely, bhikkhus, I will speak."

"Yes, venerable sir," the bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

"The Tathāgata, bhikkhus, the Arahant, the Perfectly Enlightened One, is the originator of the path unarisen before, the producer of the path unproduced before, the declarer of the path undeclared before. He is the knower of the path, the discoverer of the path, the one skilled in the path. And his disciples now dwell following that path and become possessed of it afterwards.

"This, bhikkhus, is the distinction, the disparity, the difference between the Tathāgata, the Arahant, the Perfectly Enlightened One, and a bhikkhu liberated by wisdom."

#### 59 (7) *The Characteristic of Nonself*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Bārāṇasī in the Deer Park at Isipatana.<sup>90</sup> There the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus of the group of five thus: "Bhikkhus!"

"Venerable sir!" those bhikkhus replied. The Blessed One said this:

"Bhikkhus, form is nonself. For if, bhikkhus, form were self, this form would not lead to affliction, and it would be possible to have it of form: 'Let my form be thus; let my form not be thus.'

But because form is nonself, form leads to affliction, and it is not possible to have it of form: 'Let my form be thus; let my form not be thus.'<sup>91</sup>

"Feeling is nonself.... [67] ... Perception is nonself.... Volitional formations are nonself.... Consciousness is nonself. For if, bhikkhus, consciousness were self, this consciousness would not lead to affliction, and it would be possible to have it of consciousness: 'Let my consciousness be thus; let my consciousness not be thus.' But because consciousness is nonself, consciousness leads to affliction, and it is not possible to have it of consciousness: 'Let my consciousness be thus; let my consciousness not be thus.'

"What do you think, bhikkhus, is form permanent or impermanent?" – "Impermanent, venerable sir." – "Is what is impermanent suffering or happiness?" – "Suffering, venerable sir." – "Is what is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change fit to be regarded thus: 'This is mine, this I am, this is my self'?" – "No, venerable sir."

"Is feeling permanent or impermanent?... Is perception permanent or impermanent?... Are volitional formations permanent or impermanent?" – "Impermanent, venerable sir." – "Is what is impermanent suffering or happiness?" – [68] "Suffering, venerable sir." – "Is what is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change fit to be regarded thus: 'This is mine, this I am, this is my self'?" – "No, venerable sir."

"Therefore, bhikkhus, any kind of form whatsoever, whether past, future, or present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near, all form should be seen as it really is with correct wisdom thus: 'This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self.'

"Any kind of feeling whatsoever ... Any kind of perception whatsoever ... Any kind of volitional formations whatsoever ... Any kind of consciousness whatsoever, whether past, future, or present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near, all consciousness should be seen as it really is with correct wisdom thus: 'This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self.'

"Seeing thus, bhikkhus, the instructed noble disciple experiences revulsion towards form, revulsion towards feeling, revulsion

towards perception, revulsion towards volitional formations, revulsion towards consciousness. Experiencing revulsion, he becomes dispassionate. Through dispassion [his mind] is liberated. When it is liberated there comes the knowledge: 'It's liberated.' He understands: 'Destroyed is birth, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more for this state of being.'"

That is what the Blessed One said. Elated, those bhikkhus delighted in the Blessed One's statement. And while this discourse was being spoken, the minds of the bhikkhus of the group of five were liberated from the taints by nonclinging.

#### 60 (8) *Mahāli*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Vesāli in the Great Wood in the Hall with the Peaked Roof. Then Mahāli the Licchavi approached the Blessed One [69] ... and said to him:

"Venerable sir, Pūraṇa Kassapa speaks thus: 'There is no cause or condition for the defilement of beings; beings are defiled without cause or condition. There is no cause or condition for the purification of beings; beings are purified without cause or condition.' What does the Blessed One say about this?"<sup>92</sup>

"There is, Mahāli, a cause and condition for the defilement of beings; beings are defiled with cause and condition. There is a cause and condition for the purification of beings; beings are purified with cause and condition."

"But, venerable sir, what is the cause and condition for the defilement of beings? How is it that beings are defiled with cause and condition?"

"If, Mahāli, this form were exclusively suffering, immersed in suffering, steeped in suffering, and if it were not [also] steeped in pleasure, beings would not become enamoured with it. But because form is pleasurable, immersed in pleasure, steeped in pleasure, and is not steeped [only] in suffering, beings become enamoured with it.<sup>93</sup> By being enamoured with it, they are captivated by it, and by being captivated by it they are defiled. This, Mahāli, is a cause and condition for the defilement of beings; it is thus that beings are defiled with cause and condition.

"If, Mahāli, this feeling were exclusively suffering ... If this

perception ... these volitional formations ... [70] ... this consciousness were exclusively suffering ... beings would not become enamoured with it. But because consciousness is pleasurable ... beings become enamoured with it. By being enamoured with it, they are captivated by it, and by being captivated by it they are defiled. This too, Mahāli, is a cause and condition for the defilement of beings; it is thus that beings are defiled with cause and condition."

"But, venerable sir, what is the cause and condition for the purification of beings? How is it that beings are purified with cause and condition?"

"If, Mahāli, this form were exclusively pleasurable, immersed in pleasure, steeped in pleasure, and if it were not [also] steeped in suffering, beings would not experience revulsion towards it. But because form is suffering, immersed in suffering, steeped in suffering, and is not steeped [only] in pleasure, beings experience revulsion towards it. Experiencing revulsion, they become dispassionate, and through dispassion they are purified. This, Mahāli, is a cause and condition for the purification of beings; it is thus that beings are purified with cause and condition."

"If, Mahāli, this feeling were exclusively pleasurable ... If this perception ... these volitional formations ... this consciousness were exclusively pleasurable ... beings would not experience revulsion towards it. But because consciousness is suffering ... beings experience revulsion towards it. Experiencing revulsion, they become dispassionate, and through dispassion they are purified. [71] This too, Mahāli, is a cause and condition for the purification of beings; it is thus that beings are purified with cause and condition."

#### 61 (9) *Burning*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, form is burning, feeling is burning, perception is burning, volitional formations are burning, consciousness is burning.<sup>94</sup> Seeing thus, bhikkhus, the instructed noble disciple experiences revulsion towards form, revulsion towards feeling, revulsion towards perception, revulsion towards volitional formations, revulsion towards consciousness. Experiencing revulsion, he becomes dispassionate. Through dispassion [his mind] is liberated. When it is liberated there comes the knowl-

edge: 'It's liberated.' He understands: 'Destroyed is birth, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more for this state of being.'"

#### 62 (10) *Pathways of Language*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, there are these three pathways of language, pathways of designation, pathways of description,<sup>95</sup> that are unmixed, that were never mixed, that are not being mixed, that will not be mixed, that are not rejected by wise ascetics and brahmins. What three?

"Whatever form, bhikkhus, has passed, ceased, changed: the term, label, and description 'was' applies to it, not the term 'is' or the term 'will be.'

"Whatever feeling ... Whatever perception ... Whatever volitional formations ... [72] Whatever consciousness has passed, ceased, changed: the term, label, and description 'was' applies to it, not the term 'is' or the term 'will be.'

"Whatever form, bhikkhus, has not been born, has not become manifest: the term, label, and description 'will be' applies to it, not the term 'is' or the term 'was.'

"Whatever feeling ... Whatever perception ... Whatever volitional formations ... Whatever consciousness has not been born, has not become manifest: the term, label, and description 'will be' applies to it, not the term 'is' or the term 'was.'

"Whatever form, bhikkhus, has been born, has become manifest: the term, label, and description 'is' applies to it, not the term 'was' or the term 'will be.'

"Whatever feeling ... Whatever perception ... Whatever volitional formations ... Whatever consciousness has been born, has become manifest: the term, label, and description 'is' applies to it, not the term 'was' or the term 'will be.'

"These, bhikkhus, are the three pathways of language, pathways of designation, pathways of description, that are unmixed, that were never mixed, that are not being mixed, [73] that will not be mixed, that are not rejected by wise ascetics and brahmins.

"Bhikkhus, even Vassa and Bañña of Ukkalā, proponents of noncausality, of the inefficacy of action, and of nihilism, did not think that these three pathways of language, pathways of designation, pathways of description should be criticized or scorned.

For what reason? Because they fear blame, attack, and condemnation."<sup>96</sup>

## II. ARAHANTS

### 63 (1) *In Clinging*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvatti, in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. Then a certain bhikkhu approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and said to him:

"Venerable sir, it would be good if the Blessed One would teach me the Dhamma in brief, so that, having heard the Dhamma from the Blessed One, I might dwell alone, withdrawn, diligent, ardent, and resolute."

"Bhikkhu, in clinging one is bound by Māra; by not clinging one is freed from the Evil One."<sup>97</sup> [74]

"Understood, Blessed One! Understood, Fortunate One!"

"In what way, bhikkhu, do you understand in detail the meaning of what was stated by me in brief?"

"In clinging to form, venerable sir, one is bound by Māra; by not clinging to it one is freed from the Evil One. In clinging to feeling ... to perception ... to volitional formations ... to consciousness one is bound by Māra; by not clinging to it one is freed from the Evil One."

"It is in such a way, venerable sir, that I understand in detail the meaning of what was stated by the Blessed One in brief."

"Good, good, bhikkhu! It is good that you understand in detail the meaning of what was stated by me in brief. In clinging to form, bhikkhu, one is bound by Māra ... (*as above in full*) ... by not clinging to it one is freed from the Evil One. It is in such a way that the meaning of what was stated by me in brief should be understood in detail."

Then that bhikkhu, having delighted and rejoiced in the Blessed One's words, rose from his seat, and, after paying homage to the Blessed One, keeping him on his right, he departed.

Then, dwelling alone, withdrawn, diligent, ardent, and resolute, that bhikkhu, by realizing it for himself with direct knowledge, in this very life entered and dwelt in that unsurpassed goal of the holy life for the sake of which clansmen rightly go forth

from the household life into homelessness. He directly knew: "Destroyed is birth, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more for this state of being." And that bhikkhu became one of the arahants.

### 64 (2) *In Conceiving*

At Sāvatti. Then a certain bhikkhu approached the Blessed One ... and said to him: [75]

"Venerable sir, it would be good if the Blessed One would teach me the Dhamma in brief...."

"Bhikkhu, in conceiving one is bound by Māra; by not conceiving one is freed from the Evil One."

"Understood, Blessed One! Understood, Fortunate One!"

"In what way, bhikkhu, do you understand in detail the meaning of what was stated by me in brief?"

"In conceiving form, venerable sir, one is bound by Māra; by not conceiving it one is freed from the Evil One. In conceiving feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness one is bound by Māra; by not conceiving it one is freed from the Evil One."

"It is in such a way, venerable sir, that I understand in detail the meaning of what was stated by the Blessed One in brief."

"Good, good, bhikkhu! It is good that you understand in detail the meaning of what was stated by me in brief. In conceiving form, bhikkhu, one is bound by Māra ... (*as above in full*) ... by not conceiving it one is freed from the Evil One. It is in such a way that the meaning of what was stated by me in brief should be understood in detail."

... And that bhikkhu became one of the arahants.

### 65 (3) *In Seeking Delight*

At Sāvatti. Then a certain bhikkhu approached the Blessed One ... and said to him:

"Venerable sir, it would be good if the Blessed One would teach me the Dhamma in brief...."

"Bhikkhu, in seeking delight one is bound by Māra; by not seeking delight one is freed from the Evil One."

"Understood, Blessed One! Understood, Fortunate One!"

"In what way, bhikkhu, do you understand in detail the meaning of what was stated by me in brief?"

"In seeking delight in form, venerable sir, one is bound by Māra; by not seeking delight in it one is freed from the Evil One. In seeking delight in feeling ... in perception ... in volitional formations ... in consciousness one is bound by Māra; by not seeking delight in it one is freed from the Evil One. [76]

"It is in such a way, venerable sir, that I understand in detail the meaning of what was stated by the Blessed One in brief."

"Good, good, bhikkhu! It is good that you understand in detail the meaning of what was stated by me in brief. In seeking delight in form, bhikkhu, one is bound by Māra ... (as above in full) ... by not seeking delight in it one is freed from the Evil One. It is in such a way that the meaning of what was stated by me in brief should be understood in detail."

... And that bhikkhu became one of the arahants.

#### 66 (4) Impermanent

At Sāvattī. Then a certain bhikkhu approached the Blessed One ... and said to him:

"Venerable sir, it would be good if the Blessed One would teach me the Dhamma in brief...."

"Bhikkhu, you should abandon desire for whatever is impermanent."

"Understood, Blessed One! Understood, Fortunate One!"

"In what way, bhikkhu, do you understand in detail the meaning of what was stated by me in brief?"

"Form, venerable sir, is impermanent; I should abandon desire for it. Feeling is impermanent ... Perception is impermanent ... Volitional formations are impermanent ... Consciousness is impermanent; I should abandon desire for it.

"It is in such a way, venerable sir, that I understand in detail the meaning of what was stated by the Blessed One in brief."

"Good, good, bhikkhu! It is good that you understand in detail the meaning of what was stated by me in brief. Form is impermanent ... Consciousness is impermanent; you should abandon desire for it. It is in such a way that the meaning of what was stated by me in brief should be understood in detail." [77]

... And that bhikkhu became one of the arahants.

#### 67 (5) Suffering

(Opening as in preceding sutta:)

... "Bhikkhu, you should abandon desire for whatever is suffering." ...

#### 68 (6) Nonself

... "Bhikkhu, you should abandon desire for whatever is nonself." ... [78]

#### 69 (7) What Does Not Belong to Self

... "Bhikkhu, you should abandon desire for whatever does not belong to self." ... [79]

#### 70 (8) Whatever Appears Tantalizing

... "Bhikkhu, you should abandon desire for whatever appears tantalizing." ...

#### 71 (9) Rādha

At Sāvattī. Then the Venerable Rādha approached the Blessed One, [80] paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and said to him:<sup>98</sup>

"Venerable sir, how should one know, how should one see so that, in regard to this body with consciousness and in regard to all external signs, I-making, mine-making, and the underlying tendency to conceit no longer occur within?"

"Any kind of form whatsoever, Rādha, whether past, future, or present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near—one sees all form as it really is with correct wisdom thus: 'This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self.'

"Any kind of feeling whatsoever ... Any kind of perception whatsoever ... Any kind of volitional formations whatsoever ... Any kind of consciousness whatsoever, whether past, future, or present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near—one sees all consciousness as it really is with correct wisdom thus: 'This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self.'

"When one knows and sees thus, Rādha, then in regard to this body with consciousness and in regard to all external signs, I-making, mine-making, and the underlying tendency to conceit no longer occur within."

Then the Venerable Rādha ... became one of the arahants.

#### 72 (10) *Surādha*

At Sāvatti. Then the Venerable Surādha approached the Blessed One ... and said to him:

"Venerable sir, how should one know, how should one see so that, in regard to this body with consciousness and in regard to all external signs, the mind is rid of I-making, mine-making, and conceit, has transcended discrimination, and is peaceful and well liberated?"

"Any kind of form whatsoever, Surādha, whether past, future, or present ... far or near—having seen all form as it really is with correct wisdom thus: 'This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self,' one is liberated by nonclinging.

"Any kind of feeling whatsoever ... Any kind of perception whatsoever ... Any kind of volitional formations whatsoever ... [81] Any kind of consciousness whatsoever, whether past, future, or present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near—having seen all consciousness as it really is with correct wisdom thus: 'This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self,' one is liberated by nonclinging.

"When one knows and sees thus, Surādha, then in regard to this body with consciousness and in regard to all external signs, the mind is rid of I-making, mine-making, and conceit, has transcended discrimination, and is peaceful and well liberated."

Then the Venerable Surādha ... became one of the arahants.

### III. BEING DEVoured

#### 73 (1) *Gratification*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, the uninstructed worldling does not understand as it really is the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of form, feeling, perception, volitional formations, and consciousness.

"But, bhikkhus, the instructed noble disciple [82] understands as it really is the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of form, feeling, perception, volitional formations, and consciousness."

#### 74 (2) *Origin (1)*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, the uninstructed worldling does not understand as it really is the origin and the passing away, the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of form, feeling, perception, volitional formations, and consciousness.

"But, bhikkhus, the instructed noble disciple understands as it really is the origin and the passing away, the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of form, feeling, perception, volitional formations, and consciousness."

#### 75 (3) *Origin (2)*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, the instructed noble disciple understands as it really is the origin and the passing away, the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of form, feeling, perception, volitional formations, and consciousness."

#### 76 (4) *Arahants (1)*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, form is impermanent. What is impermanent is suffering. What is suffering is nonself. What is nonself [83] should be seen as it really is with correct wisdom thus: 'This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self.'

"Feeling is impermanent... Perception is impermanent... Volitional formations are impermanent... Consciousness is impermanent. What is impermanent is suffering. What is suffering is nonself. What is nonself should be seen as it really is with correct wisdom thus: 'This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self.'

"Seeing thus, bhikkhus, the instructed noble disciple experiences revulsion towards form, revulsion towards feeling, revulsion towards perception, revulsion towards volitional formations, revulsion towards consciousness. Experiencing revulsion, he becomes dispassionate. Through dispassion [his mind] is liberated.

When it is liberated there comes the knowledge: 'It's liberated.'  
He understands: 'Destroyed is birth, the holy life has been lived,  
what had to be done has been done, there is no more for this state  
of being.'

"To whatever extent, bhikkhus, there are abodes of beings,  
even up to the pinnacle of existence,<sup>99</sup> these are the foremost in  
the world, these are the best, that is, the arahants."

This is what the Blessed One said. Having said this, the  
Fortunate One, the Teacher, further said this:

"Happy indeed are the arahants!  
No craving can be found in them.  
Cut off is the conceit 'I am,'  
Burst asunder is delusion's net.

"They have reached the unstirred state,<sup>100</sup>  
Limpid are their minds;  
They are unsullied in the world—  
The holy ones, without taints.

"Having fully understood the five aggregates,  
Ranging in the seven good qualities,<sup>101</sup>  
Those praiseworthy superior men  
Are the Buddha's bosom sons.

"Endowed with the seven gems,  
Trained in the threefold training,<sup>102</sup>  
Those great heroes wander about  
With fear and trembling abandoned.

"Endowed with the ten factors,  
Those great nāgas, concentrated,  
Are the best beings in the world:  
No craving can be found in them.<sup>103</sup>

"The adepts' knowledge has arisen in them:  
'This body is the last I bear.'  
In regard to the core of the holy life  
They no longer depend on others. [84]

"They do not waver in discrimination,<sup>104</sup>  
They are released from renewed existence.  
Having reached the stage of the tamed,  
They are the victors in the world.

"Above, across, and below,  
Delight is no more found in them.  
They boldly sound their lion's roar:  
'The enlightened are supreme in the world.'"

#### 77 (5) *Arahants* (2)

(*This sutta is identical with the preceding one except that the verses are omitted.*)

#### 78 (6) *The Lion*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, in the evening the lion, the king of beasts, comes out from his lair. Having come out, he stretches himself, surveys the four quarters all around, and roars his lion's roar three times. Then he sets out in search of game. [85]

"When the lion, the king of beasts, roars, whatever animals hear the sound are for the most part filled with fear, a sense of urgency, and terror. Those who live in holes enter their holes; those who live in the water enter the water; those who live in the woods enter the woods; and the birds fly up into the air. Even those royal bull elephants, bound by strong thongs in the villages, towns, and capital cities, burst and break their bonds asunder; frightened, they urinate and defecate and flee here and there. So powerful, bhikkhus, is the lion, the king of beasts, among the animals, so majestic and mighty.

"So too, bhikkhus,<sup>105</sup> when the Tathāgata arises in the world, an arahant, perfectly enlightened, accomplished in true knowledge and conduct, fortunate, knower of the world, unsurpassed leader of persons to be tamed, teacher of devas and humans, the Enlightened One, the Blessed One, he teaches the Dhamma thus: 'Such is form, such its origin, such its passing away; such is feeling ... such is perception ... such are volitional formations ... such is consciousness, such its origin, such its passing away.'<sup>106</sup>

"Then, bhikkhus, when those devas who are long-lived, beau-

tiful, abounding in happiness, dwelling for a long time in lofty palaces, hear the Tathāgata's teaching of the Dhamma, they are for the most part filled with fear, a sense of urgency, and terror, [saying]: 'It seems, sir, that we are impermanent, though we thought ourselves permanent; it seems, sir, that we are unstable, though we thought ourselves stable; it seems, sir, that we are noneternal, though we thought ourselves eternal. It seems, sir, that we are impermanent, unstable, noneternal, included within identity.'<sup>107</sup> So powerful, bhikkhus, is the Tathāgata over this world together with its devas, so majestic and mighty."

This is what the Blessed One said. Having said this, the Fortunate One, the Teacher, further said this: [86]

"When the Buddha, through direct knowledge,  
Sets in motion the Wheel of Dhamma,  
The peerless Teacher in this world  
With its devas [makes this known]:

"The cessation of identity  
And the origin of identity,  
Also the Noble Eightfold Path  
That leads to suffering's appeasement.

"Then those devas with long life spans,  
Beautiful, ablaze with glory,  
Are struck with fear, filled with terror,  
Like beasts who hear the lion's roar.

"We've not transcended identity;  
It seems, sir, we're impermanent,'  
[So they say] having heard the utterance  
Of the Arahant, the released Stable One."

#### 79 (7) *Being Devoured*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, those ascetics and brahmins who recollect their manifold past abodes all recollect the five aggregates subject to clinging or a certain one among them.<sup>108</sup> What five?

"When recollecting thus, bhikkhus: 'I had such form in the past,' it is just form that one recollects. When recollecting: 'I had

such a feeling in the past,' it is just feeling that one recollects. When recollecting: 'I had such a perception in the past,' it is just perception that one recollects. When recollecting: 'I had such volitional formations in the past,' it is just volitional formations that one recollects. When recollecting: 'I had such consciousness in the past,' it is just consciousness that one recollects.

"And why, bhikkhus, do you call it form?<sup>109</sup> 'It is deformed,' bhikkhus, therefore it is called form.<sup>110</sup> Deformed by what? Deformed by cold, deformed by heat, deformed by hunger, deformed by thirst, deformed by contact with flies, mosquitoes, wind, sun, and serpents. 'It is deformed,' bhikkhus, therefore it is called form.

"And why, bhikkhus, do you call it feeling? 'It feels,' bhikkhus, therefore it is called feeling.<sup>111</sup> And what does it feel? It feels pleasure, it feels pain, [87] it feels neither-pain-nor-pleasure. 'It feels,' bhikkhus, therefore it is called feeling.

"And why, bhikkhus, do you call it perception? 'It perceives,' bhikkhus, therefore it is called perception. And what does it perceive? It perceives blue, it perceives yellow, it perceives red, it perceives white. 'It perceives,' bhikkhus, therefore it is called perception.

"And why, bhikkhus, do you call them volitional formations? 'They construct the conditioned,' bhikkhus, therefore they are called volitional formations.<sup>112</sup> And what is the conditioned that they construct? They construct conditioned form as form;<sup>113</sup> they construct conditioned feeling as feeling; they construct conditioned perception as perception; they construct conditioned volitional formations as volitional formations; they construct conditioned consciousness as consciousness. 'They construct the conditioned,' bhikkhus, therefore they are called volitional formations.

"And why, bhikkhus, do you call it consciousness? 'It cognizes,' bhikkhus, therefore it is called consciousness. And what does it cognize? It cognizes sour, it cognizes bitter, it cognizes pungent, it cognizes sweet, it cognizes sharp, it cognizes mild, it cognizes salty, it cognizes bland. 'It cognizes,' bhikkhus, therefore it is called consciousness.<sup>114</sup>

"Therein, bhikkhus, the instructed noble disciple reflects thus: 'I am now being devoured by form.'<sup>115</sup> In the past too I was devoured by form in the very same way that I am now being

devoured by present form. If I were to seek delight in future form, then in the future too I shall be devoured by form in the very same way that I am now being devoured by present form.' Having reflected thus, he becomes indifferent towards past form, he does not seek delight in future form, and he is practising for revulsion towards present form, for its fading away and cessation.

"[He reflects thus:] 'I am now being devoured by feeling.' ... [88] ... 'I am now being devoured by perception.' ... 'I am now being devoured by volitional formations.' ... 'I am now being devoured by consciousness. In the past too I was devoured by consciousness in the very same way that I am now being devoured by present consciousness. If I were to seek delight in future consciousness, then in the future too I shall be devoured by consciousness in the very same way that I am now being devoured by present consciousness.' Having reflected thus, he becomes indifferent towards past consciousness, he does not seek delight in future consciousness, and he is practising for revulsion towards present consciousness, for its fading away and cessation.

"What do you think, bhikkhus, is form permanent or impermanent?... Is feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... [89] consciousness permanent or impermanent?"<sup>116</sup> – "Impermanent, venerable sir." – "Is what is impermanent suffering or happiness?" – "Suffering, venerable sir." – "Is what is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change fit to be regarded thus: 'This is mine, this I am, this is my self'?" – "No, venerable sir."

"Therefore, bhikkhus, any kind of form whatsoever ... Any kind of feeling whatsoever ... Any kind of perception whatsoever ... Any kind of volitional formations whatsoever ... Any kind of consciousness whatsoever, whether past, future, or present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near, all consciousness should be seen as it really is with correct wisdom thus: 'This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self.'

"This is called, bhikkhus, a noble disciple who dismantles and does not build up; who abandons and does not cling; who scatters and does not amass; who extinguishes and does not kindle."<sup>117</sup>

"And what is it that he dismantles and does not build up? He dismantles form and does not build it up. He dismantles feeling

... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness and does not build it up.

"And what is it that he abandons and does not cling to? He abandons form and does not cling to it. He abandons feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness and does not cling to it.

"And what is it that he scatters and does not amass? He scatters form and does not amass it. He scatters feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness and does not amass it. [90]

"And what is it that he extinguishes and does not kindle? He extinguishes form and does not kindle it. He extinguishes feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness and does not kindle it.

"Seeing thus, bhikkhus, the instructed noble disciple experiences revulsion towards form, revulsion towards feeling, revulsion towards perception, revulsion towards volitional formations, revulsion towards consciousness. Experiencing revulsion, he becomes dispassionate. Through dispassion [his mind] is liberated. When it is liberated there comes the knowledge: 'It's liberated.' He understands: 'Destroyed is birth, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more for this state of being.'

"This is called, bhikkhus, a noble disciple who neither builds up nor dismantles, but who abides having dismantled; who neither abandons nor clings, but who abides having abandoned; who neither scatters nor amasses, but who abides having scattered; who neither extinguishes nor kindles, but who abides having extinguished."<sup>118</sup>

"And what is it, bhikkhus, that he neither builds up nor dismantles, but abides having dismantled? He neither builds up nor dismantles form, but abides having dismantled it. He neither builds up nor dismantles feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, but abides having dismantled it.

"And what is it that he neither abandons nor clings to, but abides having abandoned? He neither abandons nor clings to form, but abides having abandoned it. He neither abandons nor clings to feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, but abides having abandoned it.

"And what is it that he neither scatters nor amasses, but abides having scattered? He neither scatters nor amasses form, but

abides having scattered it. He neither scatters nor amasses feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, but abides having scattered it.

“And what is it that he neither extinguishes nor kindles, but abides having extinguished? He neither extinguishes nor kindles form, but abides having extinguished it. He neither extinguishes nor kindles feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, but abides having extinguished it.

“When, bhikkhus, a bhikkhu is thus liberated in mind, the devas together with Indra, Brahmā, and Pajāpati pay homage to him from afar: [91]

“Homage to you, O thoroughbred man!  
Homage to you, O highest among men!  
We ourselves do not directly know  
Dependent upon what you meditate.”<sup>119</sup>

#### 80 (8) *Alms-Gatherer*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling among the Sakyans at Kapilavatthu in Nigrodha's Park.

Then the Blessed One, having dismissed the bhikkhus for a particular reason,<sup>120</sup> dressed in the morning and, taking bowl and robe, entered Kapilavatthu for alms. When he had walked for alms in Kapilavatthu and had returned from the alms round, after his meal he went to the Great Wood for the day's abiding. Having plunged into the Great Wood, he sat down at the foot of a *beluva* sapling for the day's abiding.

Then, while the Blessed One was alone in seclusion, a reflection arose in his mind thus:<sup>121</sup> “The Saṅgha of bhikkhus has been dismissed by me. There are bhikkhus here who are newly ordained, not long gone forth, recently come to this Dhamma and Discipline. If they do not see me there may take place in them some alteration or change. Just as when a young calf does not see its mother there may take place in it some alteration or change, so too there are bhikkhus here who are newly ordained, not long gone forth, recently come to this Dhamma and Discipline. If they do not see me there may take place in them some alteration or change. Just as when young seedlings do not get water there may take place in them some alteration or change, so too there are

bhikkhus here who are newly ordained, not long gone forth, recently come to this Dhamma and Discipline. If they do not see me there may take place in them some alteration or change. Let me assist the Saṅgha of bhikkhus now just as I have assisted it in the past.”

Then Brahmā Sahampati, having known with his own mind the reflection in the Blessed One's mind, just as quickly as a strong man might extend his drawn-in arm or draw in his extended arm, disappeared from the brahmā world and reappeared before the Blessed One. [92] He arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, raised his joined hands in reverential salutation towards the Blessed One, and said to him: “So it is, Blessed One! So it is, Fortunate One! The Saṅgha of bhikkhus has been dismissed by the Blessed One. There are bhikkhus here who are newly ordained ... (*as above, including the similes*) ... If they do not see the Blessed One there may take place in them some alteration or change. Venerable sir, let the Blessed One take delight in the Saṅgha of bhikkhus! Let the Blessed One welcome the Saṅgha of bhikkhus! Let the Blessed One assist the Saṅgha of bhikkhus now just as he has assisted it in the past.”

The Blessed One consented by silence. Then Brahmā Sahampati, having understood the Blessed One's consent, paid homage to the Blessed One and, keeping him on his right, he disappeared right there.

Then in the evening the Blessed One emerged from seclusion and went to Nigrodha's Park. He sat down in the appointed seat and performed such a feat of spiritual power that the bhikkhus would come to him, alone and in pairs, in a timid manner.<sup>122</sup> Then those bhikkhus approached the Blessed One, alone and in pairs, in a timid manner. [93] Having approached, they paid homage to the Blessed One and sat down to one side. The Blessed One then said to them:

“Bhikkhus, this is the lowest form of livelihood, that is, gathering alms. In the world this is a term of abuse:<sup>123</sup> ‘You alms-gatherer; you roam about with a begging bowl in your hand!’ And yet, bhikkhus, clansmen intent on the good take up that way of life for a valid reason. It is not because they have been driven to it by kings that they do so, nor because they have been driven to it by thieves, nor owing to debt, nor from fear, nor to earn a livelihood. But they do so with the thought: ‘I am immersed in

birth, aging, and death; in sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair. I am immersed in suffering, oppressed by suffering. Perhaps an ending of this entire mass of suffering might be discerned!

"It is in such a way, bhikkhus, that this clansman has gone forth. Yet he is covetous, inflamed by lust for sensual pleasures, with a mind full of ill will, with intentions corrupted by hate, muddle-minded, lacking clear comprehension, unconcentrated, scatter-brained, loose in his sense faculties. Just as a brand from a funeral pyre, burning at both ends and smeared with excrement in the middle, cannot be used as timber either in the village or in the forest, in just such a way do I speak about this person: he has missed out on the enjoyments of a householder, yet he does not fulfil the goal of asceticism.

"There are, bhikkhus, these three kinds of unwholesome thoughts: sensual thought, thought of ill will, thought of harming.<sup>124</sup> And where, bhikkhus, do these three unwholesome thoughts cease without remainder? For one who dwells with a mind well established in the four establishments of mindfulness, or for one who develops the signless concentration. This is reason enough, bhikkhus, to develop the signless concentration. When the signless concentration is developed and cultivated, bhikkhus, it is of great fruit and benefit.

"There are, bhikkhus, these two views: the view of existence and the view of extermination.<sup>125</sup> [94] Therein, bhikkhus, the instructed noble disciple reflects thus: 'Is there anything in the world that I could cling to without being blameworthy?' He understands thus: 'There is nothing in the world that I could cling to without being blameworthy. For if I should cling, it is only form that I would be clinging to, only feeling ... only perception ... only volitional formations ... only consciousness that I would be clinging to. With that clinging of mine as condition, there would be existence; with existence as condition, birth; with birth as condition, aging-and-death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair would come to be. Such would be the origin of this whole mass of suffering.'<sup>126</sup>

"What do you think, bhikkhus, is form permanent or impermanent?... Is feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness permanent or impermanent?" – "Impermanent, venerable sir." – "Is what is impermanent suffering or happiness?"

– "Suffering, venerable sir." – "Is what is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change fit to be regarded thus: 'This is mine, this I am, this is my self?'" – "No, venerable sir."

"Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'<sup>127</sup>

### 81 (9) *Pāṛileyya*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Kosambi in Ghosita's Park.

Then, in the morning, the Blessed One dressed and, taking bowl and robe, entered Kosambi for alms. When he had walked for alms in Kosambi and had returned from the alms round, after his meal [95] he set his lodging in order himself, took his bowl and robe, and without informing his personal attendants, without taking leave of the Bhikkhu Saṅgha, he set out on tour alone, without a companion.<sup>128</sup>

Then, not long after the Blessed One had departed, a certain bhikkhu approached the Venerable Ānanda and told him: "Friend Ānanda, the Blessed One has set his lodging in order himself, taken his bowl and robe, and without informing his personal attendants, without taking leave of the Bhikkhu Saṅgha, he has set out on tour alone, without a companion."

"Friend, whenever the Blessed One sets out like that he wishes to dwell alone. On such an occasion the Blessed One should not be followed by anyone."

Then the Blessed One, wandering by stages, arrived at Pāṛileyyaka. There at Pāṛileyyaka the Blessed One dwelt at the foot of an auspicious sal tree.<sup>129</sup>

Then a number of bhikkhus approached the Venerable Ānanda and exchanged greetings with him.<sup>130</sup> When they had concluded their greetings and cordial talk, they sat down to one side and said to the Venerable Ānanda: "Friend Ānanda, it has been a long time since we heard a Dhamma talk in the presence of the Blessed One. We should like to hear such a talk, friend Ānanda."

Then the Venerable Ānanda together with those bhikkhus approached the Blessed One at Pāṛileyyaka, at the foot of the auspicious sal tree. Having approached, they paid homage to the Blessed One and sat down to one side. The Blessed One then instructed, exhorted, inspired, and gladdened those bhikkhus:

with a Dhamma talk. [96] Now on that occasion a reflection arose in the mind of a certain bhikkhu thus: "How should one know, how should one see, for the immediate destruction of the taints to occur?"<sup>131</sup>

The Blessed One, having known with his own mind the reflection in that bhikkhu's mind, addressed the bhikkhus thus:

"Bhikkhus, this Dhamma has been taught by me discriminately.<sup>132</sup> The four establishments of mindfulness have been taught by me discriminately. The four right strivings ... The four bases for spiritual power ... The five spiritual faculties ... The five powers ... The seven factors of enlightenment ... The Noble Eightfold Path has been taught by me discriminately. Bhikkhus, in regard to the Dhamma that has been thus taught by me discriminately, a reflection arose in the mind of a certain bhikkhu thus: 'How should one know, how should one see, for the immediate destruction of the taints to occur?'

"And how, bhikkhus, should one know, how should one see, for the immediate destruction of the taints to occur? Here, bhikkhus, the uninstructed worldling, who is not a seer of the noble ones and is unskilled and undisciplined in their Dhamma, who is not a seer of superior persons and is unskilled and undisciplined in their Dhamma, regards form as self. That regarding, bhikkhus, is a formation.<sup>133</sup> That formation—what is its source, what is its origin, from what is it born and produced? When the uninstructed worldling is contacted by a feeling born of ignorance-contact, craving arises: thence that formation is born.

"Thus, bhikkhus, that formation is impermanent, conditioned, dependently arisen; that craving is impermanent, conditioned, dependently arisen; that feeling is impermanent, conditioned, dependently arisen; that contact is impermanent, conditioned, dependently arisen; that ignorance is impermanent, conditioned, dependently arisen. [97] When one knows and sees thus, bhikkhus, the immediate destruction of the taints occurs.

"He may not regard form as self, but he regards self as possessing form. That regarding is a formation ... (*all as above*) ... When one knows and sees thus, bhikkhus, the immediate destruction of the taints occurs.

"He may not regard form as self or self as possessing form, but he regards form as in self. That regarding is a formation....

"He may not regard form as self or self as possessing form or

form as in self, but he regards self as in form. That regarding is a formation.... [98]

"He may not regard form as self ... or self as in form, but he regards feeling as self ... perception as self ... volitional formations as self ... consciousness as self ... self as in consciousness. That regarding is a formation.... When one knows and sees thus, bhikkhus, the immediate destruction of the taints occurs.

"He may not regard form as self ... [99] ... or self as in consciousness, but he holds such a view as this: 'That which is the self is the world; having passed away, that I shall be—permanent, stable, eternal, not subject to change.'<sup>134</sup> That eternalist view is a formation.... When one knows and sees thus, bhikkhus, the immediate destruction of the taints occurs.

"He may not regard form as self ... or hold such an [eternalist] view, but he holds such a view as this: 'I might not be, and it might not be for me; I will not be, [and] it will not be for me.'<sup>135</sup> That annihilationist view is a formation....

"He may not regard form as self ... or hold such an [annihilationist] view, but he is perplexed, doubtful, indecisive in regard to the true Dhamma. That perplexity, doubtfulness, indecisiveness in regard to the true Dhamma is a formation. That formation—what is its source, what is its origin, from what is it born and produced? When the uninstructed worldling is contacted by a feeling born of ignorance-contact, craving arises: thence that formation is born.<sup>136</sup>

"So that formation, bhikkhus, is impermanent, conditioned, dependently arisen; that craving is impermanent, conditioned, dependently arisen; that feeling is impermanent, conditioned, dependently arisen; that contact is impermanent, conditioned, dependently arisen; that ignorance is impermanent, conditioned, dependently arisen. When one knows and sees thus, bhikkhus, the immediate destruction of the taints occurs."<sup>137</sup> [100]

### 82 (10) *The Full-Moon Night*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Sāvatti in the Eastern Park, in the Mansion of Migāra's Mother, together with a great Saṅgha of bhikkhus.<sup>138</sup> Now on that occasion—the Uposatha day of the fifteenth, a full-moon night—the Blessed One was sitting out in the open surrounded by the Saṅgha of bhikkhus.

Then a certain bhikkhu rose from his seat, arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, raised his joined hands in reverential salutation towards the Blessed One, and said to him: "Venerable sir, I would ask the Blessed One about a certain point, if the Blessed One would grant me the favour of answering my question."

"Well then, bhikkhu, sit down in your own seat and ask whatever you wish."

"Yes, venerable sir," that bhikkhu replied. Then he sat down in his own seat and said to the Blessed One:

"Aren't these the five aggregates subject to clinging, venerable sir: that is, the form aggregate subject to clinging, the feeling aggregate subject to clinging, the perception aggregate subject to clinging, the volitional formations aggregate subject to clinging, the consciousness aggregate subject to clinging?"

"Those are the five aggregates subject to clinging, bhikkhu: that is, the form aggregate subject to clinging, the feeling aggregate subject to clinging, the perception aggregate subject to clinging, the volitional formations aggregate subject to clinging, the consciousness aggregate subject to clinging."

Saying, "Good, venerable sir," that bhikkhu delighted and rejoiced in the Blessed One's statement. Then he asked the Blessed One a further question:

"But, venerable sir, in what are these five aggregates subject to clinging rooted?"

"These five aggregates subject to clinging, bhikkhu, are rooted in desire."<sup>139</sup>

"Venerable sir, is that clinging the same as these five aggregates subject to clinging, or is the clinging something apart from the five aggregates subject to clinging?"

"Bhikkhus, that clinging is neither the same as the five aggregates subject to clinging, [101] nor is the clinging something apart from the five aggregates subject to clinging. But rather, the desire and lust for them, that is the clinging there."<sup>140</sup>

Saying, "Good, venerable sir," that bhikkhu ... asked the Blessed One a further question:

"But, venerable sir, can there be diversity in the desire and lust for the five aggregates subject to clinging?"

"There can be, bhikkhu," the Blessed One said. "Here, bhikkhu, it occurs to someone: 'May I have such form in the future! May I have such feeling in the future! May I have such

perception in the future! May I have such volitional formations in the future! May I have such consciousness in the future!' Thus, bhikkhu, there can be diversity in the desire and lust for the five aggregates subject to clinging."

Saying, "Good, venerable sir," that bhikkhu ... asked the Blessed One a further question:

"In what way, venerable sir, does the designation 'aggregates' apply to the aggregates?"

"Whatever kind of form there is, bhikkhu, whether past, future, or present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near: this is called the form aggregate. Whatever kind of feeling there is, whether past, future, or present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near: this is called the feeling aggregate. Whatever kind of perception there is, whether past, future, or present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near: this is called the perception aggregate. Whatever kind of volitional formations there are, whether past, future, or present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near: this is called the volitional formations aggregate. Whatever kind of consciousness there is, whether past, future, or present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near: this is called the consciousness aggregate. It is in this way, bhikkhu, that the designation 'aggregates' applies to the aggregates."

Saying, "Good, venerable sir," that bhikkhu ... asked the Blessed One a further question:

"What is the cause and condition, venerable sir, for the manifestation of the form aggregate?<sup>141</sup> What is the cause and condition for the manifestation of the feeling aggregate?... for the manifestation of the perception aggregate?... for the manifestation of the volitional formations aggregate?... for the manifestation of the consciousness aggregate?"

"The four great elements, bhikkhu, are the cause and condition for the manifestation of the form aggregate. Contact is the cause and condition for the manifestation of the feeling aggregate. Contact is the cause and condition for the manifestation of the perception aggregate. [102] Contact is the cause and condition for the manifestation of the volitional formations aggregate. Name-and-form is the cause and condition for the manifestation of the consciousness aggregate."

"Venerable sir, how does identity view come to be?"

"Here, bhikkhu, the uninstructed worldling, who is not a seer of the noble ones and is unskilled and undisciplined in their Dhamma, who is not a seer of superior persons and is unskilled and undisciplined in their Dhamma, regards form as self, or self as possessing form, or form as in self, or self as in form. He regards feeling as self ... perception as self ... volitional formations as self ... consciousness as self, or self as possessing consciousness, or consciousness as in self, or self as in consciousness. That is how identity view comes to be."

"But, venerable sir, how does identity view not come to be?"

"Here, bhikkhu, the instructed noble disciple, who is a seer of the noble ones and is skilled and disciplined in their Dhamma, who is a seer of superior persons and is skilled and disciplined in their Dhamma, does not regard form as self, or self as possessing form, or form as in self, or self as in form. He does not regard feeling as self ... perception as self ... volitional formations as self ... consciousness as self, or self as possessing consciousness, or consciousness as in self, or self as in consciousness. That is how identity view does not come to be."

"What, venerable sir, is the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of form? What is the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of feeling?... in the case of perception?... in the case of volitional formations?... in the case of consciousness?"

"The pleasure and joy, bhikkhu, that arise in dependence on form: this is the gratification in form. That form is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change: this is the danger in form. The removal and abandonment of desire and lust for form: this is the escape from form. The pleasure and joy that arise in dependence on feeling ... [103] in dependence on perception ... in dependence on volitional formations ... in dependence on consciousness: this is the gratification in consciousness. That consciousness is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change: this is the danger in consciousness. The removal and abandonment of desire and lust for consciousness: this is the escape from consciousness."

Saying, "Good, venerable sir," that bhikkhu delighted and rejoiced in the Blessed One's statement. Then he asked the Blessed One a further question:

"Venerable sir, how should one know, how should one see so

that, in regard to this body with consciousness and in regard to all external signs, I-making, mine-making, and the underlying tendency to conceit no longer occur within?"

"Any kind of form whatsoever, bhikkhu, whether past, future, or present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near—one sees all form as it really is with correct wisdom thus: 'This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self.'

"Any kind of feeling whatsoever ... Any kind of perception whatsoever ... Any kind of volitional formations whatsoever ... Any kind of consciousness whatsoever, whether past, future, or present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near—one sees all consciousness as it really is with correct wisdom thus: 'This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self.'

"When one knows and sees thus, bhikkhu, then in regard to this body with consciousness and in regard to all external signs, I-making, mine-making, and the underlying tendency to conceit no longer occur within."

Now on that occasion the following reflection arose in the mind of a certain bhikkhu: "So it seems that form is nonself, feeling is nonself, perception is nonself, volitional formations are nonself, consciousness is nonself. What self, then, will deeds done by what is nonself affect?"<sup>142</sup>

Then the Blessed One, knowing with his own mind the reflection in the mind of that bhikkhu, addressed the bhikkhus thus: "It is possible, bhikkhus, that some senseless man here, obtuse and ignorant, with his mind dominated by craving, might think that he can outstrip the Teacher's Teaching thus: 'So it seems that form is nonself ... consciousness is nonself. [104] What self, then, will deeds done by what is nonself affect? Now, bhikkhus, you have been trained by me through interrogation here and there in regard to diverse teachings.'<sup>143</sup>

"What do you think, bhikkhu, is form permanent or impermanent?" – "Impermanent, venerable sir."... – "Is feeling permanent or impermanent?... Is perception permanent or impermanent?... Are volitional formations permanent or impermanent?... Is consciousness permanent or impermanent?" – "Impermanent, venerable sir." – "Is what is impermanent suffering or happiness?" – "Suffering, venerable sir." – "Is what is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change fit to be regarded thus: 'This is mine, this I am, this is my self?'" – "No, venerable sir."

"Therefore ... Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"144

These are the ten questions  
The bhikkhu came to ask:  
Two about the aggregates,  
Whether the same, can there be,  
Designation and the cause,  
Two about identity,  
[One each on] gratification  
And [this body] with consciousness.

[105] IV. THE ELDERS

83 (1) *Ānanda*

At Sāvattī. There the Venerable Ānanda addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Friends, bhikkhus!"

"Friend!" those bhikkhus replied. The Venerable Ānanda said this:

"Friends, the Venerable Puṇṇa Mantāniputta was very helpful to us when we were newly ordained.<sup>145</sup> He exhorted us with the following exhortation:

"It is by clinging, Ānanda, that [the notion] 'I am' occurs, not without clinging. And by clinging to what does 'I am' occur, not without clinging?<sup>146</sup> It is by clinging to form that 'I am' occurs, not without clinging. It is by clinging to feeling ... to perception ... to volitional formations ... to consciousness that 'I am' occurs, not without clinging.

"Suppose, friend Ānanda, a young woman—or a man—youthful and fond of ornaments, would examine her own facial image in a mirror or in a bowl filled with pure, clear, clean water: she would look at it with clinging, not without clinging. So too, it is by clinging to form that 'I am' occurs, not without clinging. It is by clinging to feeling ... to perception ... to volitional formations ... to consciousness that 'I am' occurs, not without clinging.

"What do you think, friend Ānanda, is form permanent

or impermanent?"... (as in preceding sutta) ... "Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

"Friends, the Venerable Puṇṇa Mantāniputta [106] was very helpful to us when we were newly ordained. He exhorted us with that exhortation. And when I heard his Dhamma teaching I made the breakthrough to the Dhamma."<sup>147</sup>

84 (2) *Tissa*

At Sāvattī. Now on that occasion the Venerable Tissa, the Blessed One's paternal cousin,<sup>148</sup> informed a number of bhikkhus: "Friends, my body seems as if it has been drugged, I have become disoriented, the teachings are no longer clear to me.<sup>149</sup> Sloth and torpor persist obsessing my mind. I am leading the holy life dissatisfied, and I have doubt about the teachings."

Then a number of bhikkhus approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and reported this matter to him. The Blessed One then addressed a certain bhikkhu thus: "Come, bhikkhu, tell the bhikkhu Tissa in my name that the Teacher calls him."

"Yes, venerable sir," that bhikkhu replied, and he went to the Venerable Tissa and told him: "The Teacher calls you, friend Tissa."

"Yes, friend," the Venerable Tissa replied, and he approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, and sat down to one side. The Blessed One then said to him: "Is it true, Tissa, [107] that you informed a number of bhikkhus thus: 'Friends, my body seems as if it were drugged ... and I have doubt about the teachings?'"

"Yes, venerable sir."

"What do you think, Tissa, if one is not devoid of lust for form, not devoid of desire, affection, thirst, passion, and craving for it, then with the change and alteration of that form, do sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair arise within?"

"Yes, venerable sir."

"Good, good, Tissa! So it is, Tissa, with one who is not devoid of lust for form. If one is not devoid of lust for feeling ... for perception ... for volitional formations ... for consciousness, not devoid of desire, [108] affection, thirst, passion, and craving for

it, then with the change and alteration of that consciousness, do sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair arise within?"

"Yes, venerable sir."

"Good, good, Tissa! So it is, Tissa, with one who is not devoid of lust for consciousness. If one is devoid of lust for form, devoid of desire, affection, thirst, passion, and craving for it, then with the change and alteration of that form, do sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair arise within?"

"No, venerable sir."

"Good, good, Tissa! So it is, Tissa, with one who is devoid of lust for form. If one is devoid of lust for feeling ... for perception ... for volitional formations ... for consciousness, devoid of desire, affection, thirst, passion, and craving for it, then with the change and alteration of that consciousness, do sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair arise within?"

"No, venerable sir."

"Good, good, Tissa! So it is, Tissa, with one who is devoid of lust for consciousness. What do you think, Tissa, is form permanent or impermanent?" – "Impermanent, venerable sir."... – "Therefore ... Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'

"Suppose, Tissa, there were two men: one unskilled in the path, the other skilled in the path. The man unskilled in the path would ask the skilled man a question about the path, and the latter would say: 'Come, good man, this is the path. Go along it a little way and you will see a fork in the road. Avoid the left-hand branch and take the right-hand branch. Go a little further and you will see a dense thicket. Go a little further and you will see a vast marshy swamp. Go a little further and you will see a steep precipice. Go a little further and you will see a delightful expanse of level ground.'

"I have made up this simile, Tissa, in order to convey a meaning. This here is the meaning: 'The man unskilled in the path': this is a designation for the worldling. 'The man skilled in the path': this is a designation for the Tathāgata, the Arahant, the Perfectly Enlightened One. 'The forked road': this is a designation for doubt. [109] 'The left-hand branch': this is a designation for the wrong eightfold path; that is, wrong view ... wrong concentration. 'The right-hand branch': this is a designation for the Noble Eightfold Path; that is, right view ... right concentration.

'The dense thicket': this is a designation for ignorance. 'The vast marshy swamp': this is a designation for sensual pleasures. 'The steep precipice': this is a designation for despair due to anger. 'The delightful expanse of level ground': this is a designation for Nibbāna.

"Rejoice, Tissa! Rejoice, Tissa! I am here to exhort, I am here to assist, I am here to instruct!"

This is what the Blessed One said. Elated, the Venerable Tissa delighted in the Blessed One's statement.<sup>150</sup>

### 85 (3) *Yamaka*

On one occasion the Venerable Sāriputta was dwelling at Sāvatti in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. Now on that occasion the following pernicious view had arisen in a bhikkhu named Yamaka: "As I understand the Dhamma taught by the Blessed One, a bhikkhu whose taints are destroyed is annihilated and perishes with the breakup of the body and does not exist after death."<sup>151</sup>

A number of bhikkhus heard that such a pernicious view had arisen in the bhikkhu Yamaka. Then they approached the Venerable Yamaka and exchanged greetings with him, after which they sat down to one side and said to him: "Is it true, friend Yamaka, that such a pernicious view as this has arisen in you: [110] 'As I understand the Dhamma taught by the Blessed One, a bhikkhu whose taints are destroyed is annihilated and perishes with the breakup of the body and does not exist after death?'"

"Exactly so, friends. As I understand the Dhamma taught by the Blessed One, a bhikkhu whose taints are destroyed is annihilated and perishes with the breakup of the body and does not exist after death."

"Friend Yamaka, do not speak thus. Do not misrepresent the Blessed One. It is not good to misrepresent the Blessed One. The Blessed One would not speak thus: 'A bhikkhu whose taints are destroyed is annihilated and perishes with the breakup of the body and does not exist after death.'"

Yet, although he was admonished by the bhikkhus in this way, the Venerable Yamaka still obstinately grasped that pernicious view, adhered to it, and declared: "As I understand the Dhamma

taught by the Blessed One, a bhikkhu whose taints are destroyed is annihilated and perishes with the breakup of the body and does not exist after death."

Since those bhikkhus were unable to detach the Venerable Yamaka from that pernicious view, they rose from their seats, approached the Venerable Sāriputta, and told him all that had occurred, adding: "It would be good if the Venerable Sāriputta would approach the bhikkhu Yamaka out of compassion for him." The Venerable Sāriputta consented by silence.

Then, in the evening, the Venerable Sāriputta emerged from seclusion. He approached the Venerable Yamaka and exchanged greetings with him, after which he sat down to one side and said to him: "Is it true, friend Yamaka, that such a pernicious view as this has arisen in you: 'As I understand the Dhamma taught by the Blessed One, [111] a bhikkhu whose taints are destroyed is annihilated and perishes with the breakup of the body and does not exist after death?'"

"Exactly so, friend."

"What do you think, friend Yamaka, is form permanent or impermanent?" – "Impermanent, friend."... – "Therefore ... Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'<sup>152</sup>

"What do you think, friend Yamaka, do you regard form as the Tathāgata?" – "No, friend." – "Do you regard feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness as the Tathāgata?" – "No, friend."

"What do you think, friend Yamaka, do you regard the Tathāgata as in form?" – "No, friend." – "Do you regard the Tathāgata as apart from form?" – "No, friend." – "Do you regard the Tathāgata as in feeling? As apart from feeling? As in perception? As apart from perception? As in volitional formations? As apart from volitional formations? As in consciousness? As apart from consciousness?" – "No, friend."

"What do you think, friend Yamaka, do you regard form, feeling, perception, volitional formations, and consciousness [taken together] as the Tathāgata?" – "No, friend." [112]

"What do you think, friend Yamaka, do you regard the Tathāgata as one who is without form, without feeling, without perception, without volitional formations, without consciousness?" – "No, friend."<sup>153</sup>

"But, friend, when the Tathāgata is not apprehended by you as real and actual here in this very life;<sup>154</sup> is it fitting for you to declare: 'As I understand the Dhamma taught by the Blessed One, a bhikkhu whose taints are destroyed is annihilated and perishes with the breakup of the body and does not exist after death?'"

"Formerly, friend Sāriputta, when I was ignorant, I did hold that pernicious view, but now that I have heard this Dhamma teaching of the Venerable Sāriputta I have abandoned that pernicious view and have made the breakthrough to the Dhamma."<sup>155</sup>

"If, friend Yamaka, they were to ask you: 'Friend Yamaka, when a bhikkhu is an arahant, one whose taints are destroyed, what happens to him with the breakup of the body, after death?'—being asked thus, what would you answer?"

"If they were to ask me this, friend, I would answer thus: 'Friends, form is impermanent; what is impermanent is suffering; what is suffering has ceased and passed away. Feeling ... Perception ... Volitional formations ... Consciousness is impermanent; what is impermanent is suffering; what is suffering has ceased and passed away.' Being asked thus, friend, I would answer in such a way."<sup>156</sup>

"Good, good, friend Yamaka! Now, friend Yamaka, I will make up a simile for you in order to convey this same meaning even more clearly. Suppose, friend Yamaka, there was a householder or a householder's son, a rich man, with much wealth and property, protected by a bodyguard. Then some man would appear who wanted to ruin him, to harm him, to endanger him, to take his life. [113] It would occur to that man: 'This householder or householder's son is a rich man, with much wealth and property, protected by a bodyguard. It won't be easy to take his life by force. Let me get close to him and then take his life.'

"Then he would approach that householder or householder's son and say to him: 'I would serve you, sir.' Then the householder or householder's son would appoint him as a servant. The man would serve him, rising up before him, retiring after him, doing whatever he wants, agreeable in his conduct, endearing in his speech. The householder or householder's son would consider him a friend,<sup>157</sup> a bosom friend, and he would place trust in him. But when the man becomes aware that the householder or householder's son has placed trust in him, then, finding him alone, he would take his life with a sharp knife.

"What do you think, friend Yamaka, when that man had approached that householder or householder's son and said to him: 'I would serve you, sir,' wasn't he a murderer even then, though the other did not recognize him as 'my murderer'? And when the man was serving him, rising up before him, retiring after him, doing whatever he wants, agreeable in his conduct, endearing in his speech, wasn't he a murderer then too, though the other did not recognize him as 'my murderer'? And when the man came upon him while he was alone and took his life with a sharp knife, wasn't he a murderer then too, though the other did not recognize him as 'my murderer'?"

"Yes, friend."

"So too, friend Yamaka,<sup>158</sup> the uninstructed worldling, who is not a seer of the noble ones and is unskilled and undisciplined in their Dhamma, who is not a seer of superior persons and is unskilled and undisciplined in their Dhamma, regards form as self, or self as possessing form, or form as in self, or self as in form.

"He regards feeling as self ... perception as self ... volitional formations as self ... consciousness as self, [114] or self as possessing consciousness, or consciousness as in self, or self as in consciousness.

"He does not understand as it really is impermanent form as 'impermanent form'<sup>159</sup> ... impermanent feeling as 'impermanent feeling' ... impermanent perception as 'impermanent perception' ... impermanent volitional formations as 'impermanent volitional formations' ... impermanent consciousness as 'impermanent consciousness.'

"He does not understand as it really is painful form as 'painful form' ... painful feeling as 'painful feeling' ... painful perception as 'painful perception' ... painful volitional formations as 'painful volitional formations' ... painful consciousness as 'painful consciousness.'

"He does not understand as it really is selfless form as 'selfless form' ... selfless feeling as 'selfless feeling' ... selfless perception as 'selfless perception' ... selfless volitional formations as 'selfless volitional formations' ... selfless consciousness as 'selfless consciousness.'

"He does not understand as it really is conditioned form as 'conditioned form' ... conditioned feeling as 'conditioned feeling'

... conditioned perception as 'conditioned perception' ... conditioned volitional formations as 'conditioned volitional formations' ... conditioned consciousness as 'conditioned consciousness.'

"He does not understand as it really is murderous form as 'murderous form' ... murderous feeling as 'murderous feeling' ... murderous perception as 'murderous perception' ... murderous volitional formations as 'murderous volitional formations' ... murderous consciousness as 'murderous consciousness.'

"He becomes engaged with form, clings to it, and takes a stand upon it as 'my self.'<sup>160</sup> He becomes engaged with feeling ... with perception ... with volitional formations ... with consciousness, clings to it, and takes a stand upon it as 'my self.' These same five aggregates of clinging, to which he becomes engaged and to which he clings, lead to his harm and suffering for a long time.

"But, friend, the instructed noble disciple, who is a seer of the noble ones ... does not regard form as self, or self as possessing form, or form as in self, or self as in form.

"He does not regard feeling as self ... perception as self ... volitional formations as self ... consciousness as self, or self as possessing consciousness, or consciousness as in self, or self as in consciousness. [115]

"He understands as it really is impermanent form as 'impermanent form' ... impermanent consciousness as 'impermanent consciousness.'

"He understands as it really is painful form as 'painful form' ... painful consciousness as 'painful consciousness.'

"He understands as it really is selfless form as 'selfless form' ... selfless consciousness as 'selfless consciousness.'

"He understands as it really is conditioned form as 'conditioned form' ... conditioned consciousness as 'conditioned consciousness.'

"He understands as it really is murderous form as 'murderous form' ... murderous consciousness as 'murderous consciousness.'

"He does not become engaged with form, cling to it, and take a stand upon it as 'my self.' He does not become engaged with feeling ... with perception ... with volitional formations ... with consciousness, cling to it, and take a stand upon it as 'my self.' These same five aggregates of clinging, to which he does not become engaged and to which he does not cling, lead to his welfare and happiness for a long time."

"So it is, friend Sāriputta, for those venerable ones who have such compassionate and benevolent brothers in the holy life to admonish and instruct them. And now that I have heard this Dhamma teaching of the Venerable Sāriputta, my mind is liberated from the taints by nonclinging."<sup>161</sup> [116]

This is what the Venerable Sāriputta said. Elated, the Venerable Yamaka delighted in the Venerable Sāriputta's statement.

#### 86 (4) *Anurādha*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Vesāli in the Great Wood in the Hall with the Peaked Roof.<sup>162</sup> Now on that occasion the Venerable Anurādha was dwelling in a forest hut not far from the Blessed One. Then a number of wanderers of other sects approached the Venerable Anurādha and exchanged greetings with him. When they had concluded their greetings and cordial talk, they sat down to one side and said to him:

"Friend Anurādha, when a Tathāgata is describing a Tathāgata—the highest type of person, the supreme person, the attainer of the supreme attainment<sup>163</sup>—he describes him in terms of these four cases: 'The Tathāgata exists after death,' or 'The Tathāgata does not exist after death,' or 'The Tathāgata both exists and does not exist after death,' or 'The Tathāgata neither exists nor does not exist after death.'"

When this was said, the Venerable Anurādha said to those wanderers: 'Friends, when a Tathāgata is describing a Tathāgata—the highest type of person, the supreme person, the attainer of the supreme attainment—he describes him apart from these four cases: 'The Tathāgata exists after death,' or 'The Tathāgata does not exist after death,' or 'The Tathāgata both exists and does not exist after death,' or 'The Tathāgata neither exists nor does not exist after death.'"<sup>164</sup>

When this was said, those wanderers said to the Venerable Anurādha: 'This bhikkhu must be newly ordained, not long gone forth; or, if he is an elder, he must be an incompetent fool.'

Then those wanderers of other sects, having denigrated the Venerable Anurādha with the terms "newly ordained" and "fool," rose from their seats and departed. [117]

Then, not long after those wanderers had left, it occurred to the Venerable Anurādha: "If those wanderers of other sects should

question me further, how should I answer if I am to state what has been said by the Blessed One and not misrepresent him with what is contrary to fact? And how should I explain in accordance with the Dhamma, so that no reasonable consequence of my assertion would give ground for criticism?"

Then the Venerable Anurādha approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and reported to the Blessed One everything that had happened, [118] asking: "If those wanderers of other sects should question me further, how should I answer ... so that no reasonable consequence of my assertion would give ground for criticism?"

"What do you think, Anurādha, is form permanent or impermanent?" – "Impermanent, venerable sir."... – "Therefore ... Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'

"What do you think, Anurādha, do you regard form as the Tathāgata?" – "No, venerable sir." – "Do you regard feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness as the Tathāgata?" – "No, venerable sir."

"What do you think, Anurādha, do you regard the Tathāgata as in form?" – "No, venerable sir." – "Do you regard the Tathāgata as apart from form?" – "No, venerable sir." – "Do you regard the Tathāgata as in feeling? As apart from feeling? As in perception? As apart from perception? As in volitional formations? As apart from volitional formations? As in consciousness? As apart from consciousness?" – "No, venerable sir."

"What do you think, Anurādha, do you regard form, feeling, perception, volitional formations, and consciousness [taken together] as the Tathāgata?" – "No, venerable sir."

"What do you think, Anurādha, do you regard the Tathāgata as one who is without form, without feeling, without perception, without volitional formations, without consciousness?" – "No, venerable sir."

"But, Anurādha, when the Tathāgata is not apprehended by you as real and actual here in this very life, is it fitting for you to declare: 'Friends, when a Tathāgata is describing a Tathāgata—the highest type of person, the supreme person, the attainer of the supreme attainment—he describes him apart from these four cases: [119] 'The Tathāgata exists after death,' or ... 'The Tathāgata neither exists nor does not exist after death?'"

"No, venerable sir."

"Good, good, Anurāḍha! Formerly, Anurāḍha, and also now, I make known just suffering and the cessation of suffering."<sup>165</sup>

#### 87 (5) *Vakkali*

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary. Now on that occasion the Venerable Vakkali was dwelling in a potter's shed, sick, afflicted, gravely ill.<sup>166</sup> Then the Venerable Vakkali addressed his attendants:

"Come, friends, approach the Blessed One, pay homage to him in my name with your head at his feet, and say: 'Venerable sir, the bhikkhu Vakkali is sick, afflicted, gravely ill; he pays homage to the Blessed One with his head at his feet.' Then say: 'It would be good, venerable sir, if the Blessed One would approach the bhikkhu Vakkali out of compassion.'"

"Yes, friend," those bhikkhus replied, and they approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and delivered their message. The Blessed One consented by silence.

Then the Blessed One dressed and, taking bowl and robe, approached the Venerable Vakkali. [120] The Venerable Vakkali saw the Blessed One coming in the distance and stirred on his bed.<sup>167</sup> The Blessed One said to him: "Enough, Vakkali, do not stir on your bed. There are these seats ready, I will sit down there."

The Blessed One then sat down on the appointed seat and said to the Venerable Vakkali: "I hope you are bearing up, Vakkali, I hope you are getting better. I hope that your painful feelings are subsiding and not increasing, and that their subsiding, not their increase, is to be discerned."

"Venerable sir, I am not bearing up, I am not getting better. Strong painful feelings are increasing in me, not subsiding, and their increase, not their subsiding, is to be discerned."

"I hope then, Vakkali, that you are not troubled by remorse and regret."

"Indeed, venerable sir, I have quite a lot of remorse and regret."

"I hope, Vakkali, that you have nothing for which to reproach yourself in regard to virtue."

"I have nothing, venerable sir, for which to reproach myself in regard to virtue."

"Then, Vakkali, if you have nothing for which to reproach yourself in regard to virtue, why are you troubled by remorse and regret?"

"For a long time, venerable sir, I have wanted to come to see the Blessed One, but I haven't been fit enough to do so."

"Enough, Vakkali! Why do you want to see this foul body? One who sees the Dhamma sees me; one who sees me sees the Dhamma.<sup>168</sup> For in seeing the Dhamma, Vakkali, one sees me; and in seeing me, one sees the Dhamma.

"What do you think, Vakkali, is form permanent or impermanent?" – [121] "Impermanent, venerable sir." ... – "Therefore ... Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

Then the Blessed One, having given this exhortation to the Venerable Vakkali, rose from his seat and departed for Mount Vulture Peak.

Then, not long after the Blessed One had left, the Venerable Vakkali addressed his attendants thus: "Come, friends, lift me up on this bed and carry me to the Black Rock on the Isigili Slope.<sup>169</sup> How can one like me think of dying among the houses?"

"Yes, friend," those bhikkhus replied and, having lifted up the Venerable Vakkali on the bed, they carried him to the Black Rock on the Isigili Slope.

The Blessed One spent the rest of that day and night on Mount Vulture Peak. Then, when the night was well advanced, two devatās of stunning beauty approached the Blessed One, illuminating the whole of Mount Vulture Peak.... Standing to one side, one devatā said to the Blessed One: "Venerable sir, the bhikkhu Vakkali is intent on deliverance."<sup>170</sup> The other devatā said: "Surely, venerable sir, he will be liberated as one well liberated."<sup>171</sup> This is what those devatās said. Having said this, they paid homage to the Blessed One and, keeping him on their right, they disappeared right there.

Then, when the night had passed, the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Come, bhikkhus, approach the bhikkhu Vakkali and say to him: 'Friend Vakkali, listen to the word of the Blessed One [122] and two devatās. Last night, friend, when the night was well advanced, two devatās of stunning beauty approached the Blessed One. One devatā said to the Blessed One: 'Venerable sir, the bhikkhu Vakkali is intent on deliverance.' The other devatā said: 'Surely, venerable sir, he will be liberated

as one well liberated." And the Blessed One says to you, friend Vakkali: "Do not be afraid, Vakkali, do not be afraid! Your death will not be a bad one. Your demise will not be a bad one.""

"Yes, venerable sir," those bhikkhus replied, and they approached the Venerable Vakkali and said to him: "Friend Vakkali, listen to the word of the Blessed One and two deities."

Then the Venerable Vakkali addressed his attendants: "Come, friends, lower me from the bed. How can one like me think of listening to the Blessed One's teaching while seated on a high seat."

"Yes, friend," those bhikkhus replied, and they lowered the Venerable Vakkali from the bed.

"Last night, friend, two deities of stunning beauty approached the Blessed One. One devatā said to the Blessed One: 'Venerable sir, the bhikkhu Vakkali is intent on deliverance.' The other devatā said: 'Surely, venerable sir, he will be liberated as one well liberated.' And the Blessed One says to you, friend Vakkali: 'Do not be afraid, Vakkali, do not be afraid! Your death will not be a bad one. Your demise will not be a bad one.'"

"Well then, friends, pay homage to the Blessed One in my name with your head at his feet and say: 'Venerable sir, the bhikkhu Vakkali is sick, afflicted, gravely ill; he pays homage to the Blessed One with his head at his feet.' Then say: 'Form is impermanent: I have no perplexity about this, venerable sir, I do not doubt that whatever is impermanent is suffering. I do not doubt that in regard to what is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change, I have no more desire, lust, or affection. [123] Feeling is impermanent ... Perception is impermanent ... Volitional formations are impermanent ... Consciousness is impermanent: I have no perplexity about this, venerable sir, I do not doubt that whatever is impermanent is suffering. I do not doubt that in regard to what is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change, I have no more desire, lust, or affection.'"

"Yes, friend," those bhikkhus replied, and then they departed. Then, not long after those bhikkhus had left, the Venerable Vakkali used the knife.<sup>172</sup>

Then those bhikkhus approached the Blessed One ... and delivered their message. The Blessed One then addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Come, bhikkhus, let us go to the Black Rock on the Isigili Slope, where the clansman Vakkali has used the knife."

"Yes, venerable sir," those bhikkhus replied. Then the Blessed

One, together with a number of bhikkhus, went to the Black Rock on the Isigili Slope. The Blessed One saw in the distance the Venerable Vakkali lying on the bed with his shoulder turned. [124]

Now on that occasion a cloud of smoke, a swirl of darkness, was moving to the east, then to the west, to the north, to the south, upwards, downwards, and to the intermediate quarters. The Blessed One then addressed the bhikkhus thus: "Do you see, bhikkhus, that cloud of smoke, that swirl of darkness, moving to the east, then to the west, to the north, to the south, upwards, downwards, and to the intermediate quarters?"

"Yes, venerable sir."

"That, bhikkhus, is Māra the Evil One searching for the consciousness of the clansman Vakkali, wondering: 'Where now has the consciousness of the clansman Vakkali been established?' However, bhikkhus, with consciousness unestablished, the clansman Vakkali has attained final Nibbāna."

#### 88 (6) *Assaji*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary. Now on that occasion the Venerable Assaji was dwelling at Kassapaka's Park, sick, afflicted, gravely ill.

(*As in preceding sutta, down to:*) [125]

"Then if you have nothing for which to reproach yourself in regard to virtue, Assaji, why are you troubled by remorse and regret?"

"Formerly, venerable sir, when I was ill I kept on tranquillizing the bodily formations, but [now] I do not obtain concentration.<sup>173</sup> As I do not obtain concentration, it occurs to me: 'Let me not fall away!'"

"Those ascetics and brahmins, Assaji, who regard concentration as the essence and identify concentration with asceticism,<sup>174</sup> failing to obtain concentration, might think, 'Let us not fall away!'"

"What do you think, Assaji, is form permanent or impermanent?" – "Impermanent, venerable sir." ... [126] – "Therefore ... Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'<sup>175</sup>

"If he feels a pleasant feeling, he understands: 'It is impermanent'; he understands: 'It is not held to'; he understands: 'It is not delighted in.' If he feels a painful feeling, he understands: 'It is

impermanent'; he understands: 'It is not held to'; he understands: 'It is not delighted in.' If he feels a neither-painful-nor-pleasant feeling, he understands: 'It is impermanent'; he understands: 'It is not held to'; he understands: 'It is not delighted in.'

"If he feels a pleasant feeling, he feels it detached; if he feels a painful feeling, he feels it detached; if he feels a neither-painful-nor-pleasant feeling, he feels it detached.

"When he feels a feeling terminating with the body, he understands: 'I feel a feeling terminating with the body.' When he feels a feeling terminating with life, he understands: 'I feel a feeling terminating with life.' He understands: 'With the breakup of the body, following the exhaustion of life, all that is felt, not being delighted in, will become cool right here.'

"Just as, Assaji, an oil lamp burns in dependence on the oil and the wick, and with the exhaustion of the oil and the wick it is extinguished through lack of fuel, so too, Assaji, when a bhikkhu feels a feeling terminating with the body ... terminating with life ... He understands: 'With the breakup of the body, following the exhaustion of life, all that is felt, not being delighted in, will become cool right here.'"

#### 89 (7) *Khemaka*

On one occasion a number of elder bhikkhus were dwelling at Kosambi in Ghosita's Park. Now on that occasion the Venerable Khemaka was living at Jujube Tree Park, sick, afflicted, gravely ill. [127]

Then, in the evening, those elder bhikkhus emerged from seclusion and addressed the Venerable Dāsaka thus: "Come, friend Dāsaka, approach the bhikkhu Khemaka and say to him: 'The elders say to you, friend Khemaka: We hope that you are bearing up, friend, we hope that you are getting better. We hope that your painful feelings are subsiding and not increasing, and that their subsiding, not their increase, is to be discerned.'"

"Yes, friends," the Venerable Dāsaka replied, and he approached the Venerable Khemaka and delivered his message.

[The Venerable Khemaka answered:] "I am not bearing up, friend, I am not getting better. Strong painful feelings are increasing in me, not subsiding, and their increase, not their subsiding, is to be discerned."

Then the Venerable Dāsaka approached the elder bhikkhus and reported what the Venerable Khemaka had said. They told him: "Come, friend Dāsaka, approach the bhikkhu Khemaka and say to him: 'The elders say to you, friend Khemaka: These five aggregates subject to clinging, friend, have been spoken of by the Blessed One; that is, the form aggregate subject to clinging, the feeling aggregate subject to clinging, the perception aggregate subject to clinging, the volitional formations aggregate subject to clinging, the consciousness aggregate subject to clinging. Does the Venerable Khemaka regard anything as self or as belonging to self among these five aggregates subject to clinging?'"

"Yes, friends," the Venerable Dāsaka replied, and he approached the Venerable Khemaka and delivered his message.

[The Venerable Khemaka replied:] [128] "These five aggregates subject to clinging have been spoken of by the Blessed One; that is, the form aggregate subject to clinging ... the consciousness aggregate subject to clinging. Among these five aggregates subject to clinging, I do not regard anything as self or as belonging to self."

Then the Venerable Dāsaka approached the elder bhikkhus and reported what the Venerable Khemaka had said. They replied: "Come, friend Dāsaka, approach the bhikkhu Khemaka and say to him: 'The elders say to you, friend Khemaka: These five aggregates subject to clinging, friend, have been spoken of by the Blessed One; that is, the form aggregate subject to clinging ... the consciousness aggregate subject to clinging. If the Venerable Khemaka does not regard anything among these five aggregates subject to clinging as self or as belonging to self, then he is an arahant, one whose taints are destroyed.'"

"Yes, friends," the Venerable Dāsaka replied, and he approached the Venerable Khemaka and delivered his message.

[The Venerable Khemaka replied:] "These five aggregates subject to clinging have been spoken of by the Blessed One; that is, the form aggregate subject to clinging ... the consciousness aggregate subject to clinging. I do not regard anything among these five aggregates subject to clinging as self or as belonging to self, yet I am not an arahant, one whose taints are destroyed. Friends, [the notion] 'I am' has not yet vanished in me in relation to these five aggregates subject to clinging, but I do not regard [anything among them] as 'This I am.'"<sup>176</sup> [129]

Then the Venerable Dāsaka approached the elder bhikkhus and reported what the Venerable Khemaka had said. They replied: "Come, friend Dāsaka, approach the bhikkhu Khemaka and say to him: 'The elders say to you, friend Khemaka: Friend Khemaka, when you speak of this "I am"—what is it that you speak of as "I am"? Do you speak of form as "I am," or do you speak of "I am" apart from form? Do you speak of feeling ... of perception ... of volitional formations ... of consciousness as "I am," or do you speak of "I am" apart from consciousness? When you speak of this "I am," friend Khemaka, what is it that you speak of as "I am"?"

"Yes, friends," the Venerable Dāsaka replied, and he approached the Venerable Khemaka and delivered his message.

"Enough, friend Dāsaka! Why keep running back and forth? Bring me my staff, friend. I'll go to the elder bhikkhus myself."

Then the Venerable Khemaka, leaning on his staff, approached the elder bhikkhus, exchanged greetings with them, and sat down to one side. [130] The elder bhikkhus then said to him: "Friend Khemaka, when you speak of this 'I am' ... what is it that you speak of as 'I am'?"

"Friends, I do not speak of form as 'I am,' nor do I speak of 'I am' apart from form. I do not speak of feeling as 'I am' ... nor of perception as 'I am' ... nor of volitional formations as 'I am' ... nor of consciousness as 'I am,' nor do I speak of 'I am' apart from consciousness. Friends, although [the notion] 'I am' has not yet vanished in me in relation to these five aggregates subject to clinging, still I do not regard [anything among them] as 'This I am.'

"Suppose, friends, there is the scent of a blue, red, or white lotus. Would one be speaking rightly if one would say, 'The scent belongs to the petals,' or 'The scent belongs to the stalk,'<sup>177</sup> or 'The scent belongs to the pistils'?"

"No, friend."

"And how, friends, should one answer if one is to answer rightly?"

"Answering rightly, friend, one should answer: 'The scent belongs to the flower.'"

"So too, friends, I do not speak of form as 'I am,' nor do I speak of 'I am' apart from form. I do not speak of feeling as 'I am' ... nor of perception as 'I am' ... nor of volitional formations as 'I am' ... nor of consciousness as 'I am,' nor do I speak of 'I am' apart from consciousness. Friends, although [the notion] 'I am'

has not yet vanished in me in relation to these five aggregates subject to clinging, still I do not regard [anything among them] as 'This I am.'

"Friends, even though a noble disciple has abandoned the five lower fetters, still, in relation to the five aggregates subject to clinging, there lingers in him a residual conceit 'I am,' a desire 'I am,' an underlying tendency 'I am' that has not yet been uprooted. Sometime later he dwells contemplating rise and fall in the five aggregates subject to clinging: 'Such is form, such its origin, [131] such its passing away; such is feeling ... such is perception ... such are volitional formations ... such is consciousness, such its origin, such its passing away.' As he dwells thus contemplating rise and fall in the five aggregates subject to clinging, the residual conceit 'I am,' the desire 'I am,' the underlying tendency 'I am' that had not yet been uprooted—this comes to be uprooted.

"Suppose, friends, a cloth has become soiled and stained, and its owners give it to a laundryman. The laundryman would scour it evenly with cleaning salt, lye, or cowdung, and rinse it in clean water. Even though that cloth would become pure and clean, it would still retain a residual smell of cleaning salt, lye, or cowdung that had not yet vanished. The laundryman would then give it back to the owners. The owners would put it in a sweet-scented casket, and the residual smell of cleaning salt, lye, or cowdung that had not yet vanished would vanish.<sup>178</sup>

"So too, friends, even though a noble disciple has abandoned the five lower fetters, still, in relation to the five aggregates subject to clinging, there lingers in him a residual conceit 'I am,' a desire 'I am,' an underlying tendency 'I am' that has not yet been uprooted.... As he dwells thus contemplating rise and fall in the five aggregates subject to clinging, the residual conceit 'I am,' the desire 'I am,' the underlying tendency 'I am' that had not yet been uprooted—this comes to be uprooted."

When this was said, the elder bhikkhus said to the Venerable Khemaka: "We did not ask our questions in order to trouble the Venerable Khemaka, [132] but we thought that the Venerable Khemaka would be capable of explaining, teaching, proclaiming, establishing, disclosing, analysing, and elucidating the Blessed One's teaching in detail. And the Venerable Khemaka has explained, taught, proclaimed, established, disclosed, analysed, and elucidated the Blessed One's teaching in detail."

This is what the Venerable Khemaka said. Elated, the elder bhikkhus delighted in the Venerable Khemaka's statement. And while this discourse was being spoken, the minds of sixty elder bhikkhus and of the Venerable Khemaka were liberated from the taints by nonclinging.

#### 90 (8) Channa

On one occasion a number of bhikkhus were dwelling at Bārāṇasi in the Deer Park at Isipatana. Then, in the evening, the Venerable Channa emerged from seclusion and, taking his key, went from dwelling to dwelling saying to the elder bhikkhus: "Let the elder venerable ones exhort me, let them instruct me, let them give me a Dhamma talk in such a way that I might see the Dhamma."<sup>179</sup>

When this was said, the elder bhikkhus said to the Venerable Channa: "Form, friend Channa, is impermanent, feeling is impermanent, perception is impermanent, volitional formations are impermanent, consciousness is impermanent. Form is nonself, [133] feeling is nonself, perception is nonself, volitional formations are nonself, consciousness is nonself. All formations are impermanent; all phenomena are nonself."<sup>180</sup>

Then it occurred to the Venerable Channa: "I too think in this way: 'Form is impermanent ... consciousness is impermanent. Form is nonself ... consciousness is nonself. All formations are impermanent; all phenomena are nonself.' But my mind does not launch out upon the stilling of all formations, the relinquishing of all acquisitions, the destruction of craving, dispassion, cessation, Nibbāna; nor does it acquire confidence, settle down, and resolve on it. Instead, agitation and clinging arise and the mind turns back, thinking: 'But who is my self?'"<sup>181</sup> But such does not happen to one who sees the Dhamma. So who can teach me the Dhamma in such a way that I might see the Dhamma?"

Then it occurred to the Venerable Channa: "This Venerable Ānanda is dwelling at Kosambi in Ghosita's Park, and he has been praised by the Teacher and is esteemed by his wise brothers in the holy life. The Venerable Ānanda is capable of teaching me the Dhamma in such a way that I might see the Dhamma. Since I have so much trust in the Venerable Ānanda, let me approach him."

Then the Venerable Channa set his lodging in order, took his bowl and robe, and went to Ghosita's Park in Kosambi, where he approached the Venerable Ānanda and exchanged greetings with him. When they had concluded their greetings and cordial talk, he sat down to one side and told the Venerable Ānanda everything that had happened, adding: [134] "Let the Venerable Ānanda exhort me, let him instruct me, let him give me a Dhamma talk in such a way that I might see the Dhamma."

"Even by this much am I pleased with the Venerable Channa. Perhaps the Venerable Channa has opened himself up and broken through his barrenness.<sup>182</sup> Lend your ear, friend Channa, you are capable of understanding the Dhamma."

Then at once a lofty rapture and gladness arose in the Venerable Channa as he thought: "It seems that I am capable of understanding the Dhamma."

[The Venerable Ānanda then said:] "In the presence of the Blessed One I have heard this, friend Channa, in his presence I have received the exhortation he spoke to the bhikkhu Kaccānagotta:<sup>183</sup>

"This world, Kaccāna, for the most part relies upon a duality ... [135] (*the entire sutta 12:15 is cited here*) ... Such is the cessation of this whole mass of suffering."

"So it is, friend Ānanda, for those venerable ones who have such compassionate and benevolent brothers in the holy life to admonish and instruct them. And now that I have heard this Dhamma teaching of the Venerable Ānanda, I have made the breakthrough to the Dhamma."

#### 91 (9) Rāhula (1)

At Sāvathī.<sup>184</sup> Then the Venerable Rāhula approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, [136] and said to him:

"Venerable sir, how should one know, how should one see so that, in regard to this body with consciousness and in regard to all external signs, I-making, mine-making, and the underlying tendency to conceit no longer occur within?"

"Any kind of form whatsoever, Rāhula, whether past, future,

or present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near—one sees all form as it really is with correct wisdom thus: ‘This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self.’

“Any kind of feeling whatsoever ... Any kind of perception whatsoever ... Any kind of volitional formations whatsoever ... Any kind of consciousness whatsoever, whether past, future, or present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near—one sees all consciousness as it really is with correct wisdom thus: ‘This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self.’

“When one knows and sees thus, Rāhula, then in regard to this body with consciousness and in regard to all external signs, I-making, mine-making, and the underlying tendency to conceit no longer occur within.”

#### 92 (10) *Rāhula* (2)

At Sāvatti. Then the Venerable Rāhula ... said to the Blessed One:

“Venerable sir, how should one know, how should one see so that, in regard to this body with consciousness and in regard to all external signs, the mind is rid of I-making, mine-making, and conceit, has transcended discrimination, and is peaceful and well liberated?”

“Any kind of form whatsoever, Rāhula, whether past, future, or present ... far or near—having seen all form as it really is with correct wisdom thus: ‘This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self,’ one is liberated by nonclinging.

“Any kind of feeling whatsoever ... Any kind of perception whatsoever ... Any kind of volitional formations whatsoever ... Any kind of consciousness whatsoever, whether past, future, or present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near—[137] having seen all consciousness as it really is with correct wisdom thus: ‘This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self,’ one is liberated by nonclinging.

“When one knows and sees thus, Rāhula, then in regard to this body with consciousness and in regard to all external signs, the mind is rid of I-making, mine-making, and conceit, has transcended discrimination, and is peaceful and well liberated.”

#### V. FLOWERS

#### 93 (1) *The River*

At Sāvatti. “Bhikkhus, suppose there was a mountain river sweeping downwards, flowing into the distance with a swift current. If on either bank of the river *kāsa* grass or *kusa* grass were to grow, it would overhang it; if rushes, reeds, or trees were to grow, they would overhang it. If a man being carried along by the current should grasp the *kāsa* grass, it would break off and he would thereby meet with calamity and disaster; if he should grasp the *kusa* grass, it would break off and he would thereby meet with calamity and disaster; if he should grasp the rushes, reeds, or trees, [138] they would break off and he would thereby meet with calamity and disaster.

“So too, bhikkhus, the uninstructed worldling ... regards form as self, or self as possessing form, or form as in self, or self as in form. That form of his disintegrates and he thereby meets with calamity and disaster. He regards feeling as self ... perception as self ... volitional formations as self ... consciousness as self, or self as possessing consciousness, or consciousness as in self, or self as in consciousness. That consciousness of his disintegrates and he thereby meets with calamity and disaster.

“What do you think, bhikkhus, is form permanent or impermanent?” – “Impermanent, venerable sir.” ... – “Therefore ... Seeing thus ... He understands: ‘... there is no more for this state of being.’”

#### 94 (2) *Flowers*

At Sāvatti. “Bhikkhus, I do not dispute with the world; rather, it is the world that disputes with me. A proponent of the Dhamma does not dispute with anyone in the world. Of that which the wise in the world agree upon as not existing, I too say that it does not exist. And of that which the wise in the world agree upon as existing, I too say that it exists.<sup>185</sup>

“And what is it, bhikkhus, that the wise in the world agree upon as not existing, of which I too say that it does not exist? [139] Form that is permanent, stable, eternal, not subject to change: this the wise in the world agree upon as not existing, and I too say that it does not exist. Feeling ... Perception ... Volitional

formations ... Consciousness that is permanent, stable, eternal, not subject to change: this the wise in the world agree upon as not existing, and I too say that it does not exist.

“That, bhikkhus, is what the wise in the world agree upon as not existing, of which I too say that it does not exist.

“And what is it, bhikkhus, that the wise in the world agree upon as existing, of which I too say that it exists? Form that is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change: this the wise in the world agree upon as existing, and I too say that it exists. Feeling ... Perception ... Volitional formations ... Consciousness that is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change: this the wise in the world agree upon as existing, and I too say that it exists.

“That, bhikkhus, is what the wise in the world agree upon as existing, of which I too say that it exists.

“There is, bhikkhus, a world-phenomenon<sup>186</sup> in the world to which the Tathāgata has awakened and broken through. Having done so, he explains it, teaches it, proclaims it, establishes it, discloses it, analyses it, elucidates it.

“And what is that world-phenomenon in the world to which the Tathāgata has awakened and broken through? Form, bhikkhus, is a world-phenomenon in the world to which the Tathāgata has awakened and broken through. Having done so, he explains it, teaches it, proclaims it, establishes it, discloses it, analyses it, elucidates it. When it is being thus explained ... [140] ... elucidated by the Tathāgata, if anyone does not know and see, how can I do anything with that foolish worldling, blind and sightless, who does not know and does not see?

“Feeling ... Perception ... Volitional formations ... Consciousness is a world-phenomenon in the world to which the Tathāgata has awakened and broken through. Having done so, he explains it, teaches it, proclaims it, establishes it, discloses it, analyses it, elucidates it. When it is being thus explained ... and elucidated by the Tathāgata, if anyone does not know and see, how can I do anything with that foolish worldling, blind and sightless, who does not know and does not see?

“Bhikkhus, just as a blue, red, or white lotus is born in the water and grows up in the water, but having risen up above the water, it stands unsullied by the water, so too the Tathāgata was born in the world and grew up in the world, but having overcome the world, he dwells unsullied by the world.”<sup>187</sup>

95 (3) *A Lump of Foam*

On one occasion the Blessed One was dwelling at Ayojjhā on the bank of the river Ganges. There the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus thus:<sup>188</sup>

“Bhikkhus, suppose that this river Ganges was carrying along a great lump of foam. A man with good sight would inspect it, ponder it, and carefully investigate it, and it would appear to him to be void, hollow, insubstantial. For what substance could there be in a lump of foam? So too, bhikkhus, whatever kind of form there is, whether past, future, or present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near: [141] a bhikkhu inspects it, ponders it, and carefully investigates it, and it would appear to him to be void, hollow, insubstantial. For what substance could there be in form?<sup>189</sup>

“Suppose, bhikkhus, that in the autumn, when it is raining and big rain drops are falling, a water bubble arises and bursts on the surface of the water. A man with good sight would inspect it, ponder it, and carefully investigate it, and it would appear to him to be void, hollow, insubstantial. For what substance could there be in a water bubble? So too, bhikkhus, whatever kind of feeling there is, whether past, future, or present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near: a bhikkhu inspects it, ponders it, and carefully investigates it, and it would appear to him to be void, hollow, insubstantial. For what substance could there be in feeling?<sup>190</sup>

“Suppose, bhikkhus, that in the last month of the hot season, at high noon, a shimmering mirage appears. A man with good sight would inspect it, ponder it, and carefully investigate it, and it would appear to him to be void, hollow, insubstantial. For what substance could there be in a mirage? So too, bhikkhus, whatever kind of perception there is, whether past, future, or present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near: a bhikkhu inspects it, ponders it, and carefully investigates it, and it would appear to him to be void, hollow, insubstantial. For what substance could there be in perception?<sup>191</sup>

“Suppose, bhikkhus, that a man needing heartwood, seeking heartwood, wandering in search of heartwood, would take a sharp axe and enter a forest. There he would see the trunk of a large plantain tree, straight, fresh, without a fruit-bud core.<sup>192</sup> He

would cut it down at the root, cut off the crown, and unroll the coil. As he unrolls the coil, he would not find even softwood, let alone heartwood. A man with good sight would inspect it, ponder it, and carefully investigate it, [142] and it would appear to him to be void, hollow, insubstantial. For what substance could there be in the trunk of a plantain tree? So too, bhikkhus, whatever kind of volitional formations there are, whether past, future, or present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near: a bhikkhu inspects them, ponders them, and carefully investigates them. As he investigates them, they appear to him to be void, hollow, insubstantial. For what substance could there be in volitional formations?<sup>193</sup>

“Suppose, bhikkhus, that a magician or a magician’s apprentice would display a magical illusion at a crossroads. A man with good sight would inspect it, ponder it, and carefully investigate it, and it would appear to him to be void, hollow, insubstantial. For what substance could there be in a magical illusion? So too, bhikkhus, whatever kind of consciousness there is, whether past, future, or present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near: a bhikkhu inspects it, ponders it, and carefully investigates it, and it would appear to him to be void, hollow, insubstantial. For what substance could there be in consciousness?<sup>194</sup>

“Seeing thus, bhikkhus, the instructed noble disciple experiences revulsion towards form, revulsion towards feeling, revulsion towards perception, revulsion towards volitional formations, revulsion towards consciousness. Experiencing revulsion, he becomes dispassionate. Through dispassion [his mind] is liberated. When it is liberated there comes the knowledge: ‘It’s liberated.’ He understands: ‘Destroyed is birth, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more for this state of being.’”

This is what the Blessed One said. Having said this, the Fortunate One, the Teacher, further said this:

“Form is like a lump of foam,  
Feeling like a water bubble;  
Perception is like a mirage,  
Volitions like a plantain trunk,

And consciousness like an illusion,  
So explained the Kinsman of the Sun.

“However one may ponder it  
And carefully investigate it,  
It appears but hollow and void  
When one views it carefully. [143]

“With reference to this body  
The One of Broad Wisdom has taught  
That with the abandoning of three things  
One sees this form discarded.

“When vitality, heat, and consciousness  
Depart from this physical body,  
Then it lies there cast away:  
Food for others, without volition.<sup>195</sup>

“Such is this continuum,  
This illusion, beguiler of fools.  
It is taught to be a murderer;  
Here no substance can be found.<sup>196</sup>

“A bhikkhu with energy aroused  
Should look upon the aggregates thus,  
Whether by day or at night,<sup>197</sup>  
Comprehending, ever mindful.

“He should discard all the fetters  
And make a refuge for himself;  
Let him fare as with head ablaze,  
Yearning for the imperishable state.”

96 (4) *A Lump of Cowdung*

At Sāvatti. Then a certain bhikkhu ... Sitting to one side, that bhikkhu said to the Blessed One:

“Venerable sir, is there any form that is permanent, stable, eternal, not subject to change, and that will remain the same just like

eternity itself? Is there, venerable sir, any feeling ... any perception ... any volitional formations ... any consciousness [144] that is permanent, stable, eternal, not subject to change, and that will remain the same just like eternity itself?"

"Bhikkhu, there is no form that is permanent, stable, eternal, not subject to change, and that will remain the same just like eternity itself. There is no feeling ... no perception ... no volitional formations ... no consciousness that is permanent, stable, eternal, not subject to change, and that will remain the same just like eternity itself."

Then the Blessed One took up a little lump of cowdung in his hand and said to that bhikkhu: "Bhikkhu, there is not even this much individual existence that is permanent, stable, eternal, not subject to change, and that will remain the same just like eternity itself. If there was this much individual existence that was permanent, stable, eternal, not subject to change, this living of the holy life for the complete destruction of suffering could not be discerned.<sup>198</sup> But because there is not even this much individual existence that is permanent, stable, eternal, not subject to change, this living of the holy life for the complete destruction of suffering is discerned.

"In the past, bhikkhu, I was a head-anointed khattiya king.<sup>199</sup> I had 84,000 cities, the chief of which was the capital Kusāvati. I had 84,000 palaces, the chief of which was the palace [named] Dhamma. I had 84,000 halls with peaked roofs, the chief of which was the hall [named] the Great Array. I had 84,000 couches made of ivory, of heartwood, of gold and silver, decked with long-haired coverlets, embroidered with flowers, with choice spreads made of antelope hides, [145] with red awnings overhead and red cushions at both ends.

"I had 84,000 bull elephants with golden ornaments and golden banners, covered with nets of golden thread, the chief of which was the royal bull elephant [named] Uposatha.<sup>200</sup> I had 84,000 steeds with golden ornaments and golden banners, covered with nets of golden thread, the chief of which was the royal steed [named] Valāhaka. I had 84,000 chariots with golden ornaments and golden banners, covered with nets of golden thread, the chief of which was the chariot [named] Vejayanta.

"I had 84,000 jewels, the chief of which was the jewel-gem. I had 84,000 women, the chief of whom was Queen Subhaddā. I

had 84,000 vassals of the khattiya caste, the chief of whom was the commander-gem. I had 84,000 cows with tethers of fine jute and milk pails of bronze. I had 84,000 *koṭis* of garments made of fine linen, of fine silk, of fine wool, of fine cotton. I had 84,000 plates on which my meals were served both in the morning and in the evening.

"Of those 84,000 cities,<sup>201</sup> bhikkhu, there was only one city in which I resided at that time: the capital Kusāvati. Of those 84,000 palaces, [146] there was only one palace in which I resided at that time: the palace [named] Dhamma. Of those 84,000 halls with peaked roof, there was only one hall with peaked roof in which I resided at that time: the hall [named] the Great Array. Of those 84,000 couches, there was only one couch that I used at that time, one made either of ivory or of heartwood or of gold or of silver.

"Of those 84,000 elephants, there was only one elephant that I rode at that time, the royal bull elephant [named] Uposatha. Of those 84,000 steeds, there was only one steed that I rode at that time, the royal steed [named] Valāhaka. Of those 84,000 chariots, there was only one chariot that I rode in at that time, the chariot [named] Vejayanta.

"Of those 84,000 women, there was only one woman who waited on me at that time, either a khattiya maiden or a *velāmika* maiden.<sup>202</sup> Of those 84,000 *koṭis* of garments, there was only one pair of garments that I wore at that time, one made either of fine linen or of fine silk or of fine wool or of fine cotton. Of those 84,000 plates, there was only one plate from which I ate at most a measure of rice with a suitable curry.

"Thus, bhikkhu, all those formations have passed, ceased, changed. So impermanent are formations, bhikkhu, so unstable, so unreliable. [147] It is enough, bhikkhu, to feel revulsion towards all formations, enough to become dispassionate towards them, enough to be liberated from them."

### 97 (5) *The Fingernail*

At Sāvatti. Sitting to one side, that bhikkhu said to the Blessed One: "Is there, venerable sir, any form that is permanent, stable, eternal, not subject to change, and that will remain the same just like eternity itself? Is there any feeling ... any perception ... any volitional formations ... any consciousness that is permanent,

stable, eternal, not subject to change, and that will remain the same just like eternity itself?"

"Bhikkhu, there is no form ... no feeling ... no perception ... no volitional formations ... no consciousness that is permanent, stable, eternal, not subject to change, and that will remain the same just like eternity itself."

Then the Blessed One took up a little bit of soil in his fingernail and said to that bhikkhu: "Bhikkhu, there is not even this much form that is permanent, stable, eternal, not subject to change, and that will remain the same just like eternity itself. If there was this much form that was permanent, stable, eternal, not subject to change, this living of the holy life for the complete destruction of suffering could not be discerned. But because there is not even this much form that is permanent, stable, eternal, not subject to change, this living of the holy life for the complete destruction of suffering is discerned. [148]

"There is not even this much feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness that is permanent, stable, eternal, not subject to change, and that will remain the same just like eternity itself. If there was this much consciousness ... But because there is not even this much consciousness that is permanent, stable, eternal, not subject to change, this living of the holy life for the complete destruction of suffering is discerned.

"What do you think, bhikkhu, is form permanent or impermanent?" – "Impermanent, venerable sir." ... [149] ... – "Therefore ... Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

#### 98 (6) *Simple Version*

At Sāvattḥi. Sitting to one side, that bhikkhu said to the Blessed One: "Is there, venerable sir, any form, any feeling, any perception, any volitional formations, any consciousness that is permanent, stable, eternal, not subject to change, and that will remain the same just like eternity itself?"

"Bhikkhu, there is no form, no feeling, no perception, no volitional formations, no consciousness that is permanent, stable, eternal, not subject to change, and that will remain the same just like eternity itself."

#### 99 (7) *The Leash (1)*

At Sāvattḥi. "Bhikkhus, this saṃsāra is without discoverable beginning. A first point is not discerned of beings roaming and wandering on hindered by ignorance and fettered by craving.<sup>203</sup>

"There comes a time, bhikkhus, when the great ocean dries up and evaporates and no longer exists,<sup>204</sup> but still, I say, there is no making an end of suffering for those beings roaming and wandering on hindered by ignorance and fettered by craving.

"There comes a time, bhikkhus, when Sineru, the king of mountains, burns up and perishes and no longer exists, but still, I say, [150] there is no making an end of suffering for those beings roaming and wandering on hindered by ignorance and fettered by craving.

"There comes a time, bhikkhus, when the great earth burns up and perishes and no longer exists, but still, I say, there is no making an end of suffering for those beings roaming and wandering on hindered by ignorance and fettered by craving.

"Suppose, bhikkhus, a dog tied up on a leash was bound to a strong post or pillar: it would just keep on running and revolving around that same post or pillar. So too, the uninstructed worldling ... regards form as self ... feeling as self ... perception as self ... volitional formations as self ... consciousness as self.... He just keeps running and revolving around form, around feeling, around perception, around volitional formations, around consciousness.<sup>205</sup> As he keeps on running and revolving around them, he is not freed from form, not freed from feeling, not freed from perception, not freed from volitional formations, not freed from consciousness. He is not freed from birth, aging, and death; not freed from sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair; not freed from suffering, I say.

"But the instructed noble disciple ... does not regard form as self ... nor feeling as self ... nor perception as self ... nor volitional formations as self ... nor consciousness as self.... He no longer keeps running and revolving around form, around feeling, around perception, around volitional formations, around consciousness. As he no longer keeps running and revolving around them, he is freed from form, freed from feeling, freed from perception, freed from volitional formations, freed from consciousness. He is freed from birth, aging, and death; freed

from sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair; freed from suffering, I say." [151]

100 (8) *The Leash* (2)

"Bhikkhus, this saṃsāra is without discoverable beginning. A first point is not discerned of beings roaming and wandering on hindered by ignorance and fettered by craving....

"Suppose, bhikkhus, a dog tied up on a leash was bound to a strong post or pillar. If it walks, it walks close to that post or pillar. If it stands, it stands close to that post or pillar. If it sits down, it sits down close to that post or pillar. If it lies down, it lies down close to that post or pillar.

"So too, bhikkhus, the uninstructed worldling regards form thus: 'This is mine, this I am, this is my self.' He regards feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness thus: 'This is mine, this I am, this is my self.' If he walks, he walks close to those five aggregates subject to clinging. If he stands, he stands close to those five aggregates subject to clinging. If he sits down, he sits down close to those five aggregates subject to clinging. If he lies down, he lies down close to those five aggregates subject to clinging.

"Therefore, bhikkhus, one should often reflect upon one's own mind thus: 'For a long time this mind has been defiled by lust, hatred, and delusion.' Through the defilements of the mind beings are defiled; with the cleansing of the mind beings are purified.

"Bhikkhus, have you seen the picture called 'Faring On'?"<sup>206</sup>

"Yes, venerable sir."

"Even that picture called 'Faring On' has been designed in its diversity by the mind, yet the mind is even more diverse than that picture called 'Faring On.'<sup>207</sup>

"Therefore, bhikkhus, one should often reflect upon one's own mind thus: 'For a long time this mind has been defiled by lust, hatred, and delusion.' Through the defilements of the mind beings are defiled; with the cleansing of the mind beings are purified. [152]

"Bhikkhus, I do not see any other order of living beings so diversified as those in the animal realm. Even those beings in the animal realm have been diversified by the mind,<sup>208</sup> yet the mind is even more diverse than those beings in the animal realm.

"Therefore, bhikkhus, one should often reflect upon one's own mind thus: 'For a long time this mind has been defiled by lust, hatred, and delusion.' Through the defilements of the mind beings are defiled; with the cleansing of the mind beings are purified.

"Suppose, bhikkhus, an artist or a painter, using dye or lac or turmeric or indigo or crimson, would create the figure of a man or a woman complete in all its features on a well-polished plank or wall or canvas.<sup>209</sup> So too, when the uninstructed worldling produces anything, it is only form that he produces; only feeling that he produces; only perception that he produces; only volitional formations that he produces; only consciousness that he produces.

"What do you think, bhikkhus, is form permanent or impermanent?" – "Impermanent, venerable sir." ... – "Therefore ... Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

101 (9) *The Adze Handle (or The Ship)*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, I say that the destruction of the taints is for one who knows and sees, not for one who does not know and does not see. For one who knows what, who sees what, does the destruction of the taints come about? 'Such is form, such its origin, such its passing away; such is feeling ... such is perception ... such are volitional formations ... such is consciousness, such its origin, [153] such its passing away': it is for one who knows thus, for one who sees thus, that the destruction of the taints comes about."<sup>210</sup>

"Bhikkhus, when a bhikkhu does not dwell devoted to development, even though such a wish as this might arise in him: 'Oh, that my mind might be liberated from the taints by nonclinging!' yet his mind is not liberated from the taints by nonclinging. For what reason? It should be said: because of nondevelopment. Because of not developing what? Because of not developing the four establishments of mindfulness ... the four right strivings ... the four bases for spiritual power ... the five spiritual faculties ... the five powers ... the seven factors of enlightenment ... the Noble Eightfold Path."<sup>211</sup>

"Suppose, bhikkhus there was a hen with eight, ten, or twelve eggs that she had not covered, incubated, and nurtured properly.

Even though such a wish as this might arise in her: 'Oh, that my chicks might pierce their shells with the points of their claws and beaks and hatch safely!' yet the chicks are incapable of piercing their shells with the points of their claws and beaks and hatching safely. For what reason? Because that hen with eight, ten, or twelve eggs had not covered, incubated, and nurtured them properly.

"So too, bhikkhus, when a bhikkhu does not dwell devoted to development, even though such a wish as this might arise in him: 'Oh, that my mind might be liberated from the taints by nonclinging!' yet his mind is not liberated from the taints by nonclinging. For what reason? It should be said: because of nondevelopment. Because of not developing what? Because of not developing ... the Noble Eightfold Path.

"Bhikkhus, when a bhikkhu dwells devoted to development, [154] even though no such wish as this might arise in him: 'Oh, that my mind might be liberated from the taints by nonclinging!' yet his mind is liberated from the taints by nonclinging. For what reason? It should be said: because of development. Because of developing what? Because of developing the four establishments of mindfulness ... the four right strivings ... the four bases for spiritual power ... the five spiritual faculties ... the five powers ... the seven factors of enlightenment ... the Noble Eightfold Path.

"Suppose, bhikkhus there was a hen with eight, ten, or twelve eggs that she had covered, incubated, and nurtured properly. Even though no such wish as this might arise in her: 'Oh, that my chicks might pierce their shells with the points of their claws and beaks and hatch safely!' yet the chicks are capable of piercing their shells with the points of their claws and beaks and of hatching safely. For what reason? Because that hen with eight, ten, or twelve eggs had covered, incubated, and nurtured them properly.

"So too, bhikkhus,<sup>212</sup> when a bhikkhu dwells devoted to development, even though no such wish as this might arise in him: 'Oh, that my mind might be liberated from the taints by nonclinging!' yet his mind is liberated from the taints by nonclinging. For what reason? It should be said: because of development. Because of developing what? Because of developing ... the Noble Eightfold Path.

"When, bhikkhus, a carpenter<sup>213</sup> or a carpenter's apprentice looks at the handle of his adze, he sees the impressions of his fin-

gers and his thumb, but he does not know: 'So much of the adze handle has been worn away today, so much yesterday, so much earlier.' But when it has worn away, the knowledge occurs to him that it has worn away.

"So too, bhikkhus, when a bhikkhu dwells devoted to development, [155] even though no such knowledge occurs to him: 'So much of my taints has been worn away today, so much yesterday, so much earlier,' yet when they are worn away, the knowledge occurs to him that they have been worn away.

"Suppose, bhikkhus, there was a seafaring ship bound with rigging that had been worn away in the water for six months.<sup>214</sup> It would be hauled up on dry land during the cold season and its rigging would be further attacked by wind and sun. Inundated by rain from a rain cloud, the rigging would easily collapse and rot away. So too, bhikkhus, when a bhikkhu dwells devoted to development, his fetters easily collapse and rot away."

#### 102 (10) *Perception of Impermanence*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, when the perception of impermanence is developed and cultivated, it eliminates all sensual lust, it eliminates all lust for existence, it eliminates all ignorance, it uproots all conceit 'I am.'<sup>215</sup>

"Just as, bhikkhus, in the autumn a ploughman ploughing with a great ploughshare cuts through all the rootlets as he ploughs, so too, when the perception of impermanence is developed and cultivated, it eliminates all sensual lust ... it uproots all conceit 'I am.'

"Just as, bhikkhus, a rush-cutter would cut down a rush, grab it by the top, and shake it down and shake it out and thump it about, so too, when the perception of impermanence is developed and cultivated, it eliminates all sensual lust ... it uproots all conceit 'I am.'

"Just as, bhikkhus, when the stalk of a bunch of mangoes has been cut, [156] all the mangoes attached to the stalk follow along with it, so too, when the perception of impermanence is developed ... it uproots all conceit 'I am.'

"Just as, bhikkhus, all the rafters of a house with a peaked roof lead to the roof peak, slope towards the roof peak, and converge upon the roof peak, and the roof peak is declared to be their chief,

so too, when the perception of impermanence is developed ... it uproots all conceit 'I am.'<sup>216</sup>

"Just as, bhikkhus, among fragrant roots, black orris is declared to be their chief, so too, when the perception of impermanence is developed ... it uproots all conceit 'I am.'

"Just as, bhikkhus, among fragrant heartwoods, red sandalwood is declared to be their chief, so too, when the perception of impermanence is developed ... it uproots all conceit 'I am.'

"Just as, bhikkhus, among fragrant flowers, jasmine is declared to be their chief, so too, when the perception of impermanence is developed ... it uproots all conceit 'I am.'

"Just as, bhikkhus, all petty princes are the vassals of a wheel-turning monarch, and the wheel-turning monarch is declared to be their chief, so too, when the perception of impermanence is developed ... it uproots all conceit 'I am.'

"Just as, bhikkhus, the radiance of all the stars does not amount to a sixteenth part of the radiance of the moon, and the radiance of the moon is declared to be their chief, so too, when the perception of impermanence is developed ... it uproots all conceit 'I am.'

"Just as, bhikkhus, in the autumn, when the sky is clear and cloudless, the sun, ascending in the sky, dispels all darkness from space as it shines and beams and radiates, so too, when the perception of impermanence is developed and cultivated, it eliminates all sensual lust, it eliminates all lust for existence, it eliminates all ignorance, it uproots all conceit 'I am.'

"And how, bhikkhus, is the perception of impermanence developed [157] and cultivated so that it eliminates all sensual lust, eliminates all lust for existence, eliminates all ignorance, and uproots all conceit 'I am'? 'Such is form, such its origin, such its passing away; such is feeling ... such is perception ... such are volitional formations ... such is consciousness, such its origin, such its passing away': that is how the perception of impermanence is developed and cultivated so that it eliminates all sensual lust, eliminates all lust for existence, eliminates all ignorance, and uproots all conceit 'I am.'"

Division III  
THE FINAL FIFTY

I. PORTIONS

103 (1) *Portions*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, there are these four portions.<sup>217</sup> What four? [158] The portion of identity, the portion of the origin of identity, the portion of the cessation of identity, the portion of the way leading to the cessation of identity.

"And what, bhikkhus, is the portion of identity? It should be said: the five aggregates subject to clinging. What five? The form aggregate subject to clinging, the feeling aggregate subject to clinging, the perception aggregate subject to clinging, the volitional formations aggregate subject to clinging, the consciousness aggregate subject to clinging. This is called the portion of identity.

"And what, bhikkhus, is the portion of the origin of identity? It is this craving that leads to renewed existence, accompanied by delight and lust, seeking delight here and there; that is, craving for sensual pleasures, craving for existence, craving for extermination. This is called the portion of the origin of identity.

"And what, bhikkhus, is the portion of the cessation of identity? It is the remainderless fading away and cessation of that same craving, the giving up and relinquishing of it, freedom from it, non-reliance on it. This is called the portion of the cessation of identity.

"And what, bhikkhus, is the portion of the way leading to the cessation of identity? It is this Noble Eightfold Path; that is, right view ... right concentration. This is called the portion of the way leading to the cessation of identity.

"These, bhikkhus, are the four portions."

104 (2) *Suffering*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, I will teach you suffering, the origin of suffering, the cessation of suffering, and the way leading to the cessation of suffering.

"And what, bhikkhus, is suffering? It should be said: the five aggregates subject to clinging. What five?... (*as above*) ... This is called suffering.

“And what, bhikkhus, is the origin of suffering? It is this craving that leads to renewed existence.... This is called the origin of suffering.

“And what, bhikkhus, is the cessation of suffering? It is the remainderless fading away and cessation of that same craving.... This is called the cessation of suffering. [159]

“And what, bhikkhus, is the way leading to the cessation of suffering? It is this Noble Eightfold Path; that is, right view ... right concentration. This is called the way leading to the cessation of suffering.”

#### 105 (3) Identity

At Sāvattī. “Bhikkhus, I will teach you identity, the origin of identity, the cessation of identity, and the way leading to the cessation of identity.”

*(The remainder of this sutta is identical with the preceding one, with appropriate substitutions.)*

#### 106 (4) To Be Fully Understood

At Sāvattī. “Bhikkhus, I will teach you things that should be fully understood, full understanding, and the person who has fully understood.<sup>218</sup> Listen to that....

“And what, bhikkhus, are the things that should be fully understood? Form, bhikkhus, is something that should be fully understood. Feeling ... Perception ... Volitional formations ... Consciousness is something that should be fully understood. These are called the things that should be fully understood. [160]

“And what, bhikkhus, is full understanding? The destruction of lust, the destruction of hatred, the destruction of delusion: this is called full understanding.<sup>219</sup>

“And who, bhikkhus, is the person that has fully understood? It should be said: the arahant, the venerable one of such a name and clan. This is called the person that has fully understood.”

#### 107 (5) Ascetics (1)

At Sāvattī. “Bhikkhus, there are these five aggregates subject to clinging. What five? The form aggregate subject to clinging ... the

consciousness aggregate subject to clinging.

“Bhikkhus, those ascetics and brahmins who do not understand as they really are the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of these five aggregates subject to clinging: these I do not consider to be ascetics among ascetics or brahmins among brahmins, and these venerable ones do not, by realizing it for themselves with direct knowledge, in this very life enter and dwell in the goal of asceticism or the goal of brahminhood.

“But, bhikkhus, those ascetics and brahmins who understand these things as they really are: these I consider to be ascetics among ascetics and brahmins among brahmins, and these venerable ones, by realizing it for themselves with direct knowledge, in this very life enter and dwell in the goal of asceticism and the goal of brahminhood.”

#### 108 (6) Ascetics (2)

At Sāvattī.<sup>220</sup> “Bhikkhus, there are these five aggregates subject to clinging. What five? The form aggregate subject to clinging ... the consciousness aggregate subject to clinging.

“Bhikkhus, those ascetics and brahmins who do not understand as they really are the origin and the passing away, the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of these five aggregates subject to clinging: these I do not consider to be ascetics among ascetics or brahmins among brahmins....

“But, bhikkhus, those ascetics and brahmins who understand these things as they really are ... in this very life enter and dwell in the goal of asceticism and the goal of brahminhood.”

#### 109 (7) Stream-Enterer

At Sāvattī. “Bhikkhus, there are these five aggregates subject to clinging. What five? The form aggregate subject to clinging ... the consciousness aggregate subject to clinging.

“When, bhikkhus, a noble disciple understands as they really are the origin and the passing away, [161] the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of these five aggregates subject to clinging, then he is called a noble disciple who is a stream-enterer, no longer bound to the nether world, fixed in destiny, with enlightenment as his destination.”

110 (8) *Arahant*

... "When, bhikkhus, having understood as they really are the origin and the passing away, the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of these five aggregates subject to clinging, a bhikkhu is liberated by nonclinging,<sup>221</sup> then he is called a bhikkhu who is an arahant, one whose taints are destroyed, who has lived the holy life, done what had to be done, laid down the burden, reached his own goal, utterly destroyed the fetters of existence, one completely liberated through final knowledge."

111 (9) *Abandoning Desire (1)*

At Sāvattthi. "Bhikkhus, whatever desire there is for form, whatever lust, delight, craving—abandon it. Thus that form will be abandoned, cut off at the root, made like a palm stump, obliterated so that it is no more subject to future arising. So too in the case of feeling, perception, volitional formations, and consciousness."

112 (10) *Abandoning Desire (2)*

At Sāvattthi. "Bhikkhus, whatever desire there is for form, whatever lust, delight, craving, whatever engagement and clinging, mental standpoints, adherences, and underlying tendencies—[162] abandon them. Thus that form will be abandoned, cut off at the root, made like a palm stump, obliterated so that it is no more subject to future arising. So too in the case of feeling, perception, volitional formations, and consciousness."

## II. A SPEAKER ON THE DHAMMA

113 (1) *Ignorance*

At Sāvattthi. Then a certain bhikkhu approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and said to him:

"Venerable sir, it is said, 'ignorance, ignorance.' What now, venerable sir, is ignorance, and in what way is one immersed in ignorance?"

"Here, bhikkhu, the uninstructed worldling does not understand form, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation.

He does not understand feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation. [163] This is called ignorance, and in this way one is immersed in ignorance."

114 (2) *True Knowledge*

At Sāvattthi.... Sitting to one side, that bhikkhu said to the Blessed One:

"Venerable sir, it is said, 'true knowledge, true knowledge.' What now, venerable sir, is true knowledge, and in what way has one arrived at true knowledge?"

"Here, bhikkhu, the instructed noble disciple understands form, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation. He understands feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation. This is called true knowledge, and in this way one has arrived at true knowledge."

115 (3) *A Speaker on the Dhamma (1)*

At Sāvattthi.... Sitting to one side, that bhikkhu said to the Blessed One:

"Venerable, sir, it is said, 'a speaker on the Dhamma, a speaker on the Dhamma.' In what way, venerable sir, is one a speaker on the Dhamma?"<sup>222</sup>

"Bhikkhu, if one teaches the Dhamma for the purpose of revulsion towards form, for its fading away and cessation, one can be called a bhikkhu who is a speaker on the Dhamma. If one is practising for the purpose of revulsion towards form, for its fading away and cessation, one can be called a bhikkhu who is practising in accordance with the Dhamma. If, through revulsion towards form, through its fading away and cessation, one is liberated by nonclinging, one can be called a bhikkhu who has attained Nibbāna in this very life.

"Bhikkhu, if one teaches the Dhamma for the purpose of revulsion towards feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, for its fading away and cessation, one can be called a bhikkhu who is a speaker on the Dhamma. If one is practising for the purpose of revulsion towards consciousness, for its

fading away and cessation, one can be called a bhikkhu who is practising in accordance with the Dhamma. If, through revulsion towards consciousness, [164] through its fading away and cessation, one is liberated by nonclinging, one can be called a bhikkhu who has attained Nibbāna in this very life."

116 (4) *A Speaker on the Dhamma* (2)

At Sāvattī.... Sitting to one side, that bhikkhu said to the Blessed One:

"Venerable, sir, it is said, 'a speaker on the Dhamma, a speaker on the Dhamma.' In what way, venerable sir, is one a speaker on the Dhamma? In what way is one practising in accordance with the Dhamma? In what way has one attained Nibbāna in this very life?"

*(The rest of this sutta is identical with the preceding one.)*

117 (5) *Bondage*

At Sāvattī. "Here, bhikkhus, the uninstructed worldling ... regards form as self, or self as possessing form, or form as in self, or self as in form. This is called, bhikkhus, an uninstructed worldling who is bound by bondage to form, who is bound by inner and outer bondage, who does not see the near shore and the far shore, who grows old in bondage,<sup>223</sup> who dies in bondage, who in bondage goes from this world to the other world. [165]

"He regards feeling as self ... perception as self ... volitional formations as self ... consciousness as self, or self as possessing consciousness, or consciousness as in self, or self as in consciousness. This is called, bhikkhus, an uninstructed worldling who is bound by bondage to consciousness ... who in bondage goes from this world to the other world.

"But, bhikkhus, the instructed noble disciple ... does not regard form as self, or self as possessing form, or form as in self, or self as in form. This is called, bhikkhus, an instructed noble disciple who is not bound by bondage to form, who is not bound by inner and outer bondage, who sees the near shore and the far shore. He is freed from suffering, I say.

"He does not regard feeling as self ... perception as self ... volitional formations as self ... consciousness as self ... or self as in

consciousness. This is called, bhikkhus, an instructed noble disciple who is not bound by bondage to consciousness.... He is freed from suffering, I say."

118 (6) *Interrogation* (1)<sup>224</sup>

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, what do you think, do you regard form thus: 'This is mine, this I am, this is my self?'"

"No, venerable sir."

"Good, bhikkhus! Form should be seen as it really is with correct wisdom thus: 'This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self.'

"Do you regard feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... [166] consciousness thus: 'This is mine, this I am, this is my self?'"

"No, venerable sir."

"Good, bhikkhus! Consciousness should be seen as it really is with correct wisdom thus: 'This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self.'

"Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

119 (7) *Interrogation* (2)

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, what do you think, do you regard form thus: 'This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self?'"

"Yes, venerable sir."

"Good, bhikkhus! Form should be seen as it really is with correct wisdom thus: 'This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self.'

"Do you regard feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness thus: 'This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self?'"

"Yes, venerable sir."

"Good, bhikkhus! Consciousness should be seen as it really is with correct wisdom thus: 'This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self.'

"Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

120 (8) *Things That Fetter*

At Sāvatti. “Bhikkhus, I will teach you the things that fetter and the fetter. Listen to that....

“And what, bhikkhus, are the things that fetter, and what is the fetter? Form, bhikkhus, is a thing that fetters; the desire and lust for it is the fetter there. Feeling ... Perception ... Volitional formations ... [167] Consciousness is a thing that fetters; the desire and lust for it is the fetter there. These are called the things that fetter, and this the fetter.”

121 (9) *Things That Can Be Clung To*

“Bhikkhus, I will teach you the things that can be clung to and the clinging. Listen to that....

“And what, bhikkhus, are the things that can be clung to, and what is the clinging? Form, bhikkhus, is a thing that can be clung to; the desire and lust for it is the clinging there. Feeling ... Perception ... Volitional formations ... Consciousness is a thing that can be clung to; the desire and lust for it is the clinging there. These are called the things that can be clung to, and this the clinging.”

122 (10) *Virtuous*

On one occasion the Venerable Sāriputta and the Venerable Mahākoṭṭhita were dwelling at Bārāṇasī in the Deer Park at Isipatana. Then, in the evening, the Venerable Mahākoṭṭhita emerged from seclusion, approached the Venerable Sāriputta, exchanged greetings, and said to him: “Friend Sāriputta, what are the things that a virtuous bhikkhu should carefully attend to?”

“Friend Koṭṭhita, a virtuous bhikkhu should carefully attend to the five aggregates subject to clinging as impermanent, as suffering, as a disease, as a tumour, as a dart, as misery, as an affliction, as alien, as disintegrating, as empty, as nonself.<sup>225</sup> What five? The form aggregate subject to clinging, the feeling aggregate subject to clinging, the perception aggregate subject to clinging, the volitional formations aggregate subject to clinging, the consciousness aggregate subject to clinging. A virtuous bhikkhu should carefully attend to these five aggregates subject to clinging as imper-

manent ... as nonself. [168] When, friend, a virtuous bhikkhu carefully attends thus to these five aggregates subject to clinging, it is possible that he may realize the fruit of stream-entry.”

“But, friend Sāriputta, what are the things that a bhikkhu who is a stream-enterer should carefully attend to?”

“Friend Koṭṭhita, a bhikkhu who is a stream-enterer should carefully attend to these five aggregates subject to clinging as impermanent ... as nonself. When, friend, a bhikkhu who is a stream-enterer carefully attends thus to these five aggregates subject to clinging, it is possible that he may realize the fruit of once-returning.”

“But, friend Sāriputta, what are the things that a bhikkhu who is a once-returner should carefully attend to?”

“Friend Koṭṭhita, a bhikkhu who is a once-returner should carefully attend to these five aggregates subject to clinging as impermanent ... as nonself. When, friend, a bhikkhu who is a once-returner carefully attends thus to these five aggregates subject to clinging, it is possible that he may realize the fruit of non-returning.”

“But, friend Sāriputta, what are the things that a bhikkhu who is a nonreturner should carefully attend to?”

“Friend Koṭṭhita, a bhikkhu who is a nonreturner should carefully attend to these five aggregates subject to clinging as impermanent ... as nonself. When, friend, a bhikkhu who is a nonreturner carefully attends thus to these five aggregates subject to clinging, it is possible that he may realize the fruit of arahantship.”

“But, friend Sāriputta, what are the things that a bhikkhu who is an arahant should carefully attend to?”

“Friend Koṭṭhita, a bhikkhu who is an arahant should carefully attend to these five aggregates subject to clinging as impermanent, as suffering, as a disease, as a tumour, as a dart, as misery, as an affliction, as alien, as disintegrating, as empty, as nonself. For the arahant, friend, there is nothing further that has to be done and no repetition of what he has already done.<sup>226</sup> [169] However, when these things are developed and cultivated, they lead to a pleasant dwelling in this very life and to mindfulness and clear comprehension.”

123 (11) *Instructed*

(This sutta is identical with the preceding one except that the opening question and reply are phrased in terms of "an instructed bhikkhu.")

124 (12) *Kappa (1)*

At Sāvatti. Then the Venerable Kappa approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and said to him:

"Venerable sir, how should one know, how should one see so that, in regard to this body with consciousness and in regard to all external signs, I-making, mine-making, and the underlying tendency to conceit no longer occur within?"

(Remainder identical with §71, but addressed to Kappa.) [170]

125 (13) *Kappa (2)*

At Sāvatti. Then the Venerable Kappa approached the Blessed One ... and said to him:

"Venerable sir, how should one know, how should one see so that, in regard to this body with consciousness and in regard to all external signs, the mind is rid of I-making, mine-making, and conceit, has transcended discrimination, and is peaceful and well liberated?"

(Remainder identical with §72, but addressed to Kappa.)

## III. IGNORANCE

126 (1) *Subject to Arising (1)*

At Sāvatti. [171] Then a certain bhikkhu approached the Blessed One ... and said to him: "Venerable sir, it is said, 'ignorance, ignorance.' What now, venerable sir, is ignorance, and in what way is one immersed in ignorance?"

"Here, bhikkhu, the uninstructed worldling does not understand form subject to arising as it really is thus: 'Form is subject to arising.' He does not understand form subject to vanishing as it really is thus: 'Form is subject to vanishing.' He does not understand form subject to arising and vanishing as it really is thus: 'Form is subject to arising and vanishing.' He does not

understand feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness subject to arising ... subject to vanishing ... subject to arising and vanishing as it really is thus: 'Consciousness is subject to arising and vanishing.'

"This is called ignorance, bhikkhu, and in this way one is immersed in ignorance."

When this was said, that bhikkhu said to the Blessed One:

"Venerable sir, it is said, 'true knowledge, true knowledge.' What now, venerable sir, is true knowledge, and in what way has one arrived at true knowledge?"

"Here, bhikkhu, the instructed noble disciple understands form subject to arising as it really is thus: 'Form is subject to arising.' He understands form subject to vanishing as it really is thus: 'Form is subject to vanishing.' [172] He understands form subject to arising and vanishing as it really is thus: 'Form is subject to arising and vanishing.' He understands feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness subject to arising ... subject to vanishing ... subject to arising and vanishing as it really is thus: 'Consciousness is subject to arising and vanishing.'

"This is called true knowledge, bhikkhu, and in this way one has arrived at true knowledge."

127 (2) *Subject to Arising (2)*

On one occasion the Venerable Sāriputta and the Venerable Mahākoṭṭhita were dwelling at Bārāṇasī in the Deer Park at Isipatana. Then, in the evening, the Venerable Mahākoṭṭhita emerged from seclusion, approached the Venerable Sāriputta, ... and said to him: "Friend Sāriputta, it is said, 'ignorance, ignorance.' What now, friend, is ignorance, and in what way is one immersed in ignorance?"

(The rest of this sutta is identical with the exchange on ignorance in the preceding sutta.) [173]

128 (3) *Subject to Arising (3)*

At Bārāṇasī in the Deer Park at Isipatana. Sitting to one side, the Venerable Mahākoṭṭhita said to the Venerable Sāriputta: "Friend Sāriputta, it is said, 'true knowledge, true knowledge.' What

now, friend, is true knowledge, and in what way has one arrived at true knowledge?"

(*The rest of this sutta is identical with the exchange on true knowledge in §126.*)

129 (4) *Gratification (1)*

At Bārāṇasī in the Deer Park at Isipatana. Sitting to one side, the Venerable Mahākoṭṭhita said to the Venerable Sāriputta: "Friend Sāriputta, it is said, 'ignorance, ignorance.' What now, friend, is ignorance, and in what way is one immersed in ignorance?"

"Here, friend, the uninstructed worldling does not understand as it really is the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of form, feeling, perception, volitional formations, and consciousness. This, friend, is called ignorance, and in this way one is immersed in ignorance."

130 (5) *Gratification (2)*

At Bārāṇasī in the Deer Park at Isipatana.... [174] "Friend Sāriputta, it is said, 'true knowledge, true knowledge.' What now, friend, is true knowledge, and in what way has one arrived at true knowledge?"

"Here, friend, the instructed noble disciple understands as it really is the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of form, feeling, perception, volitional formations, and consciousness. This, friend, is called true knowledge, and in this way one has arrived at true knowledge."

131 (6) *Origin (1)*

At Bārāṇasī in the Deer Park at Isipatana.... "Friend Sāriputta, it is said, 'ignorance, ignorance.' What now, friend, is ignorance, and in what way is one immersed in ignorance?"

"Here, friend, the uninstructed worldling does not understand as it really is the origin and the passing away, the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of form, feeling, perception, volitional formations, and consciousness. This, friend, is called ignorance, and in this way one is immersed in ignorance."

132 (7) *Origin (2)*

At Bārāṇasī in the Deer Park at Isipatana.... "Friend Sāriputta, it is said, 'true knowledge, true knowledge.' What now, friend, is true knowledge, and in what way has one arrived at true knowledge?"

"Here, friend, the instructed noble disciple understands as it really is the origin and the passing away, the gratification, the danger, and the escape in the case of form, feeling, perception, volitional formations, and consciousness. This, friend, is called true knowledge, and in this way one has arrived at true knowledge." [175]

133 (8) *Koṭṭhita (1)*

(*Identical with §129 and §130 combined, except here Sāriputta asks the questions and Mahākoṭṭhita replies.*)

134 (9) *Koṭṭhita (2)*

(*Identical with §131 and §132 combined, except here Sāriputta asks the questions and Mahākoṭṭhita replies.*) [176]

135 (10) *Koṭṭhita (3)*

The same setting. Sitting to one side, the Venerable Sāriputta said to the Venerable Mahākoṭṭhita: "Friend Koṭṭhita, it is said, 'ignorance, ignorance.' What now, friend, is ignorance, and in what way is one immersed in ignorance?"

"Here, friend, the uninstructed worldling does not understand form, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation. He does not understand feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation. This, friend, is called ignorance, and in this way one is immersed in ignorance."

When this was said, the Venerable Sāriputta said to the Venerable Mahākoṭṭhita: "Friend Koṭṭhita, it is said, 'true knowledge, true knowledge.' What now, friend, is true knowledge, and in what way has one arrived at true knowledge?"

"Here, friend, the instructed noble disciple understands form,

[177] its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation. He understands feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation. This, friend, is called true knowledge, and in this way one has arrived at true knowledge."

## IV. HOT EMBERS

136 (1) *Hot Embers*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, form is hot embers,<sup>227</sup> feeling is hot embers, perception is hot embers, volitional formations are hot embers, consciousness is hot embers. Seeing thus, bhikkhus, the instructed noble disciple experiences revulsion towards form ... revulsion towards consciousness. Experiencing revulsion, he becomes dispassionate.... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

137 (2) *Impermanent (1)*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, you should abandon desire for whatever is impermanent. And what is impermanent? [178] Form is impermanent; you should abandon desire for it. Feeling ... Perception ... Volitional formations ... Consciousness is impermanent; you should abandon desire for it. Bhikkhus, you should abandon desire for whatever is impermanent."

138 (3) *Impermanent (2)*

... "Bhikkhus, you should abandon lust for whatever is impermanent." ...  
(Complete as in the preceding sutta, with "lust" instead of "desire.")

139 (4) *Impermanent (3)*

... "Bhikkhus, you should abandon desire and lust for whatever is impermanent." ...  
(Complete as in §137, with "desire and lust" instead of "desire.")

140 (5) *Suffering (1)*

... "Bhikkhus, you should abandon desire for whatever is suffering." ...

141 (6) *Suffering (2)*

... "Bhikkhus, you should abandon lust for whatever is suffering." ...

142 (7) *Suffering (3)*

... "Bhikkhus, you should abandon desire and lust for whatever is suffering." ...

143 (8) *Nonself (1)*

... "Bhikkhus, you should abandon desire for whatever is nonself." ... [179]

144 (9) *Nonself (2)*

... "Bhikkhus, you should abandon lust for whatever is nonself." ...

145 (10) *Nonself (3)*

... "Bhikkhus, you should abandon desire and lust for whatever is nonself." ...

146 (11) *Engrossed in Revulsion*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, for a clansman who has gone forth out of faith, this is what accords with the Dhamma: he should dwell engrossed in revulsion towards form, feeling, perception, volitional formations, and consciousness.<sup>228</sup> One who dwells engrossed in revulsion towards form ... towards consciousness, fully understands form, feeling, perception, volitional formations, and consciousness. One who fully understands form ... consciousness is freed from form, feeling, perception, volitional

formations, and consciousness. He is freed from birth, aging, and death; freed from sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure, and despair; freed from suffering, I say."

147 (12) *Contemplating Impermanence*

At Sāvatti.<sup>229</sup> "Bhikkhus, for a clansman who has gone forth out of faith, this is what accords with the Dhamma: he should dwell contemplating impermanence in form ... (as above) ... [180] he is freed from suffering, I say."

148 (13) *Contemplating Suffering*

... "he should dwell contemplating suffering in form ... he is freed from suffering, I say."

149 (14) *Contemplating Nonself*

... "he should dwell contemplating nonself in form ... he is freed from suffering, I say."

V. VIEWS

150 (1) *Internally*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, when what exists, by clinging to what, do pleasure and pain arise internally?"<sup>230</sup> [181]

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One...."

"When there is form, bhikkhus, by clinging to form, pleasure and pain arise internally. When there is feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, by clinging to consciousness, pleasure and pain arise internally.

"What do you think, bhikkhus, is form permanent or impermanent?"

"Impermanent, venerable sir."

"Is what is impermanent suffering or happiness?"

"Suffering, venerable sir."

"But without clinging to what is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change, could pleasure and pain arise internally?"

"No, venerable sir."

"Is feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness permanent or impermanent?... But without clinging to what is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change, could pleasure and pain arise internally?"

"No, venerable sir."

"Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

151 (2) *This Is Mine*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, when what exists, by clinging to what, by adhering to what,<sup>231</sup> does one regard things thus: 'This is mine, this I am, this is my self?'"

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One...."

"When there is form, bhikkhus, by clinging to form, by adhering to form, [182] one regards things thus: 'This is mine, this I am, this is my self.' When there is feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, by clinging to consciousness, by adhering to consciousness, one regards things thus: 'This is mine, this I am, this is my self.'

"What do you think, bhikkhus, is form ... consciousness permanent or impermanent?"

"Impermanent, venerable sir."...

"But without clinging to what is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change, could one regard anything thus: 'This is mine, this I am, this is my self?'"

"No, venerable sir."

"Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

152 (3) *The Self*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, when what exists, by clinging to what, by adhering to what, does such a view as this arise: 'That which is the self is the world; having passed away, that I shall be—permanent, stable, eternal, not subject to change?'"<sup>232</sup>

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One...."

"When there is form, bhikkhus, by clinging to form, by adhering to form, such a view as this arises: 'That which is the self is the world; having passed away, that I shall be—permanent, stable,

eternal, not subject to change.' When there is feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, by clinging to consciousness, by adhering to consciousness, such a view as this [183] arises: 'That which is the self is the world ... not subject to change.'

"What do you think, bhikkhus, is form ... consciousness permanent or impermanent?"

"Impermanent, venerable sir." ...

"But without clinging to what is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change, could such a view as that arise?"

"No, venerable sir."

"Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

#### 153 (4) *It Might Not Be For Me*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, when what exists, by clinging to what, by adhering to what, does such a view as this arise: 'I might not be, and it might not be for me; I will not be, [and] it will not be for me?'"<sup>233</sup>

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One...."

"When there is form, bhikkhus, by clinging to form, by adhering to form, such a view as this arises: 'I might not be, and it might not be for me; I will not be, [and] it will not be for me.' When there is feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... [184] consciousness, by clinging to consciousness, by adhering to consciousness, such a view as this arises: 'I might not be ... and it will not be for me.'

"What do you think, bhikkhus, is form ... consciousness permanent or impermanent?"

"Impermanent, venerable sir." ...

"But without clinging to what is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change, could such a view as that arise?"

"No, venerable sir."

"Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

#### 154 (5) *Wrong View*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, when what exists, by clinging to what, by adhering to what, does wrong view arise?"<sup>234</sup>

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One...."

"When there is form, bhikkhus, by clinging to form, by adhering to form, wrong view arises. When there is feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, by clinging to consciousness, by adhering to consciousness, wrong view arises."

"What do you think, bhikkhus, is form ... consciousness permanent or impermanent?" [185]

"Impermanent, venerable sir." ...

"But without clinging to what is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change, could wrong view arise?"

"No, venerable sir."

"Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

#### 155 (6) *Identity View*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, when what exists, by clinging to what, by adhering to what, does identity view arise?"<sup>235</sup>

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One...."

"When there is form, bhikkhus, by clinging to form, by adhering to form, identity view arises. When there is feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, by clinging to consciousness, by adhering to consciousness, identity view arises." ...

"Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

#### 156 (7) *View of Self*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, when what exists, by clinging to what, by adhering to what, does view of self arise?"<sup>236</sup>

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One...."

"When there is form, bhikkhus, by clinging to form, by adhering to form, view of self arises. [186] When there is feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, by clinging to consciousness, by adhering to consciousness, view of self arises." ...

"Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

157 (8) *Adherence (1)*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, when what exists, by clinging to what, by adhering to what, do the fetters, adherences, and shackles arise?"<sup>237</sup>

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One...."

"When there is form, bhikkhus, by clinging to form, by adhering to form, the fetters, adherences, and shackles arise. When there is feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, by clinging to consciousness, by adhering to consciousness, the fetters, adherences, and shackles arise."...

"Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'" [187]

158 (9) *Adherence (2)*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, when what exists, by clinging to what, by adhering to what, do the fetters, adherences, shackles, and holding arise?"

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One...."

(*Complete as above.*)

159 (10) *Ānanda*

At Sāvatti. Then the Venerable Ānanda approached the Blessed One ... and said to him: "Venerable sir, it would be good if the Blessed One would teach me the Dhamma in brief, so that having heard the Dhamma from the Blessed One, I might dwell alone, withdrawn, diligent, ardent, and resolute."<sup>238</sup>

"What do you think, Ānanda, is form permanent or impermanent?" – "Impermanent, venerable sir." – "Is what is impermanent suffering or happiness?" – "Suffering, venerable sir." – "Is what is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change fit to be regarded thus: 'This is mine, this I am, this is my self?'" – "No, venerable sir."

"Is feeling permanent or impermanent?... Is perception permanent or impermanent?... Are volitional formations permanent or impermanent?... Is consciousness permanent or impermanent?" – "Impermanent, venerable sir." – "Is what is impermanent suffering or happiness?" – "Suffering, venerable sir." – "Is

what is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change fit to be regarded thus: 'This is mine, this I am, this is my self?'" – "No, venerable sir."

"Therefore, Ānanda, any kind of form whatsoever, whether past, future, or present.... [188]

"Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

## Chapter II

23 *Rādhasamyutta*

## Connected Discourses with Rādha

## I. THE FIRST MĀRA SUBCHAPTER

1 (1) *Māra*

At Sāvattḥi. Then the Venerable Rādha approached the Blessed One,<sup>239</sup> [189] paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and said to him: "Venerable sir, it is said, 'Māra, Māra.' In what way, venerable sir, might Māra be?"<sup>240</sup>

"When there is form, Rādha, there might be Māra, or the killer, or the one who is killed.<sup>241</sup> Therefore, Rādha, see form as Māra, see it as the killer, see it as the one who is killed. See it as a disease, as a tumour, as a dart, as misery, as real misery. Those who see it thus see rightly.

"When there is feeling ... When there is perception ... When there are volitional formations ... When there is consciousness, Rādha, there might be Māra, or the killer, or the one who is killed. Therefore, Rādha, see consciousness as Māra, see it as the killer, see it as the one who is killed. See it as a disease, as a tumour, as a dart, as misery, as real misery. Those who see it thus see rightly."

"What, venerable sir, is the purpose of seeing rightly?"

"The purpose of seeing rightly, Rādha, is revulsion."

"And what, venerable sir, is the purpose of revulsion?"

"The purpose of revulsion is dispassion."

"And what, venerable sir, is the purpose of dispassion?"

"The purpose of dispassion is liberation."

"And what, venerable sir, is the purpose of liberation?"

"The purpose of liberation is Nibbāna."<sup>242</sup>

"And what, venerable sir, is the purpose of Nibbāna?"

"You have gone beyond the range of questioning, Rādha."<sup>243</sup>

You weren't able to grasp the limit to questioning. For, Rādha the holy life is lived with Nibbāna as its ground, Nibbāna as its destination, Nibbāna as its final goal."<sup>244</sup>

2 (2) *A Being*

At Sāvattḥi. Sitting to one side, the Venerable Rādha said to the Blessed One: [190] "Venerable sir, it is said, 'a being, a being.' In what way, venerable sir, is one called a being?"

"One is stuck, Rādha, tightly stuck, in desire, lust, delight, and craving for form; therefore one is called a being.<sup>244</sup> One is stuck tightly stuck, in desire, lust, delight, and craving for feeling ... for perception ... for volitional formations ... for consciousness: therefore one is called a being.

"Suppose, Rādha, some little boys or girls are playing with sand castles. So long as they are not devoid of lust, desire, affection, thirst, passion, and craving for those sand castles, they cherish them, play with them, treasure them,<sup>245</sup> and treat them possessively. But when those little boys or girls lose their lust, desire, affection, thirst, passion, and craving for those sand castles, then they scatter them with their hands and feet, demolish them, shatter them, and put them out of play.

"So too, Rādha, scatter form, demolish it, shatter it, put it out of play; practise for the destruction of craving. Scatter feeling ... Scatter perception ... Scatter volitional formations ... Scatter consciousness, demolish it, shatter it, put it out of play; practise for the destruction of craving. For the destruction of craving, Rādha, is Nibbāna."

3 (3) *The Conduit to Existence*

At Sāvattḥi. Sitting to one side, the Venerable Rādha said to the Blessed One: "Venerable sir, it is said, 'the conduit to existence, the conduit to existence.'<sup>246</sup> What, venerable sir, is the conduit to existence, and what is the cessation of the conduit to existence?" [191]

"Rādha, the desire, lust, delight, craving, engagement and clinging, mental standpoints, adherences, and underlying tendencies regarding form:<sup>247</sup> this is called the conduit to existence. Their cessation is the cessation of the conduit to existence.

"The desire, lust, delight, craving, engagement and clinging, mental standpoints, adherences, and underlying tendencies regarding feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness: this is called the conduit to existence. Their cessation is the cessation of the conduit to existence."

4 (4)–10 (10) *To Be Fully Understood, Etc.*

(These seven suttas are identical with 22:106–12, but addressed to Rādha.) [192–94]

[195] II. THE SECOND MĀRA SUBCHAPTER

11 (1) *Māra*

At Sāvattḥi. Sitting to one side, the Venerable Rādha said to the Blessed One: "Venerable sir, it is said, 'Māra, Māra.' What now, venerable sir, is Māra?"

"Form, Rādha, is Māra. Feeling ... Perception ... Volitional formations ... Consciousness is Māra. Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

12 (2) *Subject to Māra*

At Sāvattḥi. Sitting to one side, the Venerable Rādha said to the Blessed One: "Venerable sir, it is said, 'subject to Māra, subject to Māra.'<sup>248</sup> What now, venerable sir, is subject to Māra?"

"Form, Rādha, is subject to Māra. Feeling ... Perception ... Volitional formations ... Consciousness is subject to Māra. Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

13 (3) *Impermanent*

At Sāvattḥi. Sitting to one side, the Venerable Rādha said to the Blessed One: "Venerable sir, it is said, 'impermanent, impermanent.' What now, venerable sir, is impermanent?"

"Form, Rādha, is impermanent. Feeling ... Perception ... Volitional formations ... Consciousness is impermanent. Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

14 (4) *Of Impermanent Nature*

At Sāvattḥi. Sitting to one side, the Venerable Rādha said to the Blessed One: "Venerable sir, it is said, 'of an impermanent nature, of an impermanent nature.' What now, venerable sir, is of an impermanent nature?"

"Form, Rādha, is of an impermanent nature. Feeling ... [196] Perception ... Volitional formations ... Consciousness is of an impermanent nature. Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

15 (5) *Suffering*

At Sāvattḥi. Sitting to one side, the Venerable Rādha said to the Blessed One: "Venerable sir, it is said, 'suffering, suffering.' What now, venerable sir, is suffering?"

"Form, Rādha, is suffering, feeling is suffering, perception is suffering, volitional formations are suffering, consciousness is suffering. Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

16 (6) *Of Painful Nature*

At Sāvattḥi. Sitting to one side, the Venerable Rādha said to the Blessed One: "Venerable sir, it is said, 'of a painful nature, of a painful nature.' What now, venerable sir, is of a painful nature?"

"Form, Rādha, is of a painful nature. Feeling ... Perception ... Volitional formations ... Consciousness is of a painful nature. Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

17 (7) *Nonself*

At Sāvattḥi. Sitting to one side, the Venerable Rādha said to the Blessed One: "Venerable sir, it is said, 'nonself, nonself.' What now, venerable sir, is nonself?"

"Form, Rādha, is nonself, feeling is nonself, perception is nonself, volitional formations are nonself, consciousness is nonself. Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

18 (8) *Of Selfless Nature*

At Sāvattḥi. Sitting to one side, the Venerable Rādha said to the Blessed One: "Venerable sir, it is said, 'of a selfless nature, of a selfless nature.' What now, venerable sir, is of a selfless nature?"

"Form, Rādha, is of a selfless nature. Feeling ... [197] Perception ... Volitional formations ... Consciousness is of a selfless nature. Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

19 (9) *Subject to Destruction*

At Sāvattḥi. Sitting to one side, the Venerable Rādha said to the Blessed One: "Venerable sir, it is said, 'subject to destruction, subject to destruction.' What now, venerable sir, is subject to destruction?"

"Form, Rādha, is subject to destruction. Feeling ... Perception ... Volitional formations ... Consciousness is subject to destruction. Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

20 (10) *Subject to Vanishing*

At Sāvattḥi. Sitting to one side, the Venerable Rādha said to the Blessed One: "Venerable sir, it is said, 'subject to vanishing, subject to vanishing.' What now, venerable sir, is subject to vanishing?"

"Form, Rādha, is subject to vanishing. Feeling ... Perception ... Volitional formations ... Consciousness is subject to vanishing. Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

21 (11) *Subject to Arising*

At Sāvattḥi. Sitting to one side, the Venerable Rādha said to the Blessed One: "Venerable sir, it is said, 'subject to arising, subject to arising.' What now, venerable sir, is subject to arising?"

"Form, Rādha, is subject to arising. Feeling ... Perception ... Volitional formations ... Consciousness is subject to arising. Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

22 (12) *Subject to Cessation*

At Sāvattḥi. Sitting to one side, the Venerable Rādha said to the Blessed One: "Venerable sir, it is said, 'subject to cessation, [198] subject to cessation.' What now, venerable sir, is subject to cessation?"

"Form, Rādha, is subject to cessation. Feeling ... Perception ... Volitional formations ... Consciousness is subject to cessation. Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

## III. REQUEST

23 (1) *Māra*

At Sāvattḥi. Sitting to one side, the Venerable Rādha said to the Blessed One: "Venerable sir, it would be good if the Blessed One would teach me the Dhamma in brief, so that, having heard the Dhamma from the Blessed One, I might dwell alone, withdrawn, diligent, ardent, and resolute."

"Rādha, you should abandon desire, you should abandon lust, you should abandon desire and lust, for whatever is Māra. And what, Rādha, is Māra? Form is Māra. Feeling ... Perception ... Volitional formations ... Consciousness is Māra. Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

24 (2)–34 (12) *Subject to Māra, Etc.*

... "Rādha, you should abandon desire, you should abandon lust, you should abandon desire and lust, for whatever is subject to Māra ... [199] ... for whatever is impermanent ... for whatever is of an impermanent nature ... for whatever is suffering ... for whatever is of a painful nature ... for whatever is nonself ... for whatever is of a selfless nature ... for whatever is subject to destruction ... for whatever is subject to vanishing ... for whatever is subject to arising ... for whatever is subject to cessation. And what, Rādha, is subject to cessation? Form is subject to cessation. Feeling ... Perception ... Volitional formations ... Consciousness is subject to cessation. Seeing thus ... He understands: '... there is no more for this state of being.'"

[200]

## IV. SITTING NEARBY

35 (1) *Māra*

At Sāvatti. The Blessed One said to the Venerable Rādha as he was sitting to one side: "Rādha, you should abandon desire, you should abandon lust, you should abandon desire and lust, for whatever is Māra. And what, Rādha, is Māra?" ... (Complete as in §23.)

36 (2)–46 (12) *Subject to Māra, Etc.*

(Identical with §§24–34, but opening as in the preceding sutta.) [201]

[202]

## Chapter III

24 *Dit̐thisaṃyutta*

## Connected Discourses on Views

## I. STREAM-ENTRY

1 (1) *Winds*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, when what exists, by clinging to what, by adhering to what, does such a view as this arise: 'The winds do not blow, the rivers do not flow, pregnant women do not give birth, the moon and sun do not rise and set but stand as steady as a pillar?'"<sup>249</sup>

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One..."

"When there is form, bhikkhus, by clinging to form, by adhering to form, such a view as this arises: 'The winds do not blow ... but stand as steady as a pillar.' When there is feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, by clinging to consciousness, by adhering to consciousness, such a view as this arises: 'The winds do not blow ... but stand as steady as a pillar.'

"What do you think, bhikkhus, is form permanent or impermanent?... [203] ... Is consciousness permanent or impermanent?"

"Impermanent, venerable sir."...

"But without clinging to what is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change, could such a view as that arise?"

"No, venerable sir."

"That which is seen, heard, sensed, cognized, attained, sought after, and ranged over by the mind:<sup>250</sup> is that permanent or impermanent?"

"Impermanent, venerable sir."

"Is what is impermanent suffering or happiness?"

"Suffering, venerable sir."

"But without clinging to what is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change, could such a view as that arise?"

"No, venerable sir."

"When, bhikkhus, a noble disciple has abandoned perplexity in these six cases,<sup>251</sup> and when, further, he has abandoned perplexity about suffering, the origin of suffering, the cessation of suffering, and the way leading to the cessation of suffering, he is then called a noble disciple who is a stream-enterer, no longer bound to the nether world, fixed in destiny, with enlightenment as his destination."

#### 2 (2) *This Is Mine*

At Sāvattthī. "Bhikkhus, when what exists, by clinging to what, by adhering to what, does such a view as this arise: 'This is mine, this I am, this is my self'?"

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One...." [204]

"When there is form, bhikkhus, by clinging to form, by adhering to form, such a view as this arises: 'This is mine, this I am, this is my self.' When there is feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, by clinging to consciousness, by adhering to consciousness, such a view as this arises: 'This is mine, this I am, this is my self.'..."

"When, bhikkhus, a noble disciple has abandoned perplexity in these six cases ... he is then called a noble disciple who is a stream-enterer ... with enlightenment as his destination."

#### 3 (3) *The Self*

At Sāvattthī. "Bhikkhus, when what exists, by clinging to what, by adhering to what, does such a view as this arise: 'That which is the self is the world; having passed away, that I shall be—permanent, stable, eternal, not subject to change'?"<sup>252</sup> [205]

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One...."

"When there is form, bhikkhus, by clinging to form, by adhering to form, such a view as this arises: 'That which is the self is the world; having passed away, that I shall be—permanent, stable, eternal, not subject to change' When there is feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, by clinging to

consciousness, by adhering to consciousness, such a view as this arises: 'That which is the self is the world ... not subject to change.' ...

"When, bhikkhus, a noble disciple has abandoned perplexity in these six cases ... he is then called a noble disciple who is a stream-enterer ... with enlightenment as his destination."

#### 4 (4) *It Might Not Be For Me*

At Sāvattthī. "Bhikkhus, when what exists, by clinging to what, by adhering to what, does such a view as this arise: 'I might not be, and it might not be for me; I will not be, [and] it will not be for me'?"<sup>253</sup>

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One...."

"When there is form, bhikkhus, by clinging to form, by adhering to form, [206] such a view as this arises: 'I might not be, and it might not be for me; I will not be, [and] it will not be for me.' When there is feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, by clinging to consciousness, by adhering to consciousness, such a view as this arises: 'I might not be ... it will not be for me.'..."

"When, bhikkhus, a noble disciple has abandoned perplexity in these six cases ... he is then called a noble disciple who is a stream-enterer ... with enlightenment as his destination."

#### 5 (5) *There Is Not*

At Sāvattthī. "Bhikkhus, when what exists, by clinging to what, by adhering to what, does such a view as this arise:<sup>254</sup> 'There is nothing given, nothing offered, nothing presented in charity; no fruit or result of good and bad actions; no this world, no other world; no mother, no father; no beings who are reborn spontaneously; no ascetics and brahmins faring and practising rightly in the world who, having realized this world and the other world for themselves by direct knowledge, make them known to others. This person consists of the four great elements. [207] When one dies, earth returns to and merges with the earth-body; water returns to and merges with the water-body; fire returns to and merges with the fire-body; air returns to and merges with the air-body; the faculties are transferred to space. [Four] men with the

bier as fifth carry away the corpse. The funeral orations last as far as the charnel ground; the bones whiten; burnt offerings end with ashes. Giving is a doctrine of fools. When anyone asserts the doctrine that there is [giving and the like], it is empty, false prattle. Fools and the wise are alike cut off and perish with the breakup of the body; after death they do not exist?"

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One...."

"When there is form, bhikkhus, when there is feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, by clinging to consciousness, by adhering to consciousness, such a view as this arises: 'There is nothing given ... [208] ... after death they do not exist.'...

"When, bhikkhus, a noble disciple has abandoned perplexity in these six cases ... he is then called a noble disciple who is a stream-enterer ... with enlightenment as his destination."

#### 6 (6) Acting

At Sāvathī. "Bhikkhus, when what exists, by clinging to what, by adhering to what, does such a view as this arise:<sup>255</sup> 'When one acts or makes others act, when one mutilates or makes others mutilate, when one tortures or makes others inflict torture, when one inflicts sorrow or makes others inflict sorrow, when one oppresses or makes others inflict oppression, when one intimidates or makes others inflict intimidation, when one destroys life, takes what is not given, breaks into houses, plunders wealth, commits burglary, ambushes highways, seduces another's wife, utters falsehood—no evil is done by the doer. If, with a razor-rimmed wheel, one were to make the living beings of this earth into one mass of flesh, into one heap of flesh, because of this there would be no evil and no outcome of evil. If one were to go along the south bank of the Ganges [209] killing and slaughtering, mutilating and making others mutilate, torturing and making others inflict torture, because of this there would be no evil and no outcome of evil. If one were to go along the north bank of the Ganges giving gifts and making others give gifts, making offerings and making others make offerings, because of this there would be no merit and no outcome of merit. By giving, by taming oneself, by self-control, by speaking truth, there is no merit and no outcome of merit?'"

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One...."

"When there is form, bhikkhus, when there is feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, by clinging to consciousness, by adhering to consciousness, such a view as this arises: 'When one acts or makes others act ... there is no merit and no outcome of merit.'...

"When, bhikkhus, a noble disciple has abandoned perplexity in these six cases ... he is then called a noble disciple who is a stream-enterer ... with enlightenment as his destination." [210]

#### 7 (7) Cause

At Sāvathī. "Bhikkhus, when what exists, by clinging to what, by adhering to what, does such a view as this arise:<sup>256</sup> 'There is no cause or condition for the defilement of beings; beings are defiled without cause or condition. There is no cause or condition for the purification of beings; beings are purified without cause or condition. [There is no action by self, no action by others, no manly action.] There is no power, no energy, no manly strength, no manly endurance. All beings, all living beings, all creatures, all souls are without mastery, power, and energy; moulded by destiny, circumstance, and nature, they experience pleasure and pain in the six classes?'"<sup>257</sup>

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One...."

"When there is form, bhikkhus, when there is feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, by clinging to consciousness, by adhering to consciousness, such a view as this arises: 'There is no cause or condition for the defilement of beings ... they experience pleasure and pain in the six classes.'...

"When, bhikkhus, a noble disciple has abandoned perplexity in these six cases ... [211] ... he is then called a noble disciple who is a stream-enterer ... with enlightenment as his destination."

#### 8 (8) The Great View

At Sāvathī. "Bhikkhus, when what exists, by clinging to what, by adhering to what, does such a view as this arise:<sup>258</sup> 'There are these seven bodies that are unmade, not brought forth, uncreated, without a creator, barren, steady as mountain peaks, steady as pillars. They do not move or change or obstruct each other.

None is able to cause pleasure or pain or pleasure-and-pain to others. What are the seven? They are: the earth-body, the water-body, the fire-body, the air-body, pleasure, pain, and the soul as the seventh. These seven bodies are unmade.... [Herein, there is no killer, no slaughterer, no hearer, no speaker, no knower, no intimator.]<sup>259</sup> Even one who cuts off another's head with a sharp sword does not deprive anyone of life; the sword merely passes through the space between the seven bodies. There are fourteen hundred thousand principal modes of generation,<sup>260</sup> and six thousand, and six hundred; there are five hundred kinds of kamma, and five kinds of kamma, and three kinds of kamma, and full kamma, and half-kamma; there are sixty-two pathways, sixty-two sub-aeons, six classes, eight stages in the life of man, forty-nine hundred kinds of *Ājivakas*,<sup>261</sup> forty-nine hundred kinds of wanderers, forty-nine hundred abodes of *nāgas*, twenty hundred faculties, thirty hundred hells, thirty-six realms of dust, seven spheres of percipient beings, seven spheres of nonpercipient beings, seven spheres of knotless ones, seven [212] kinds of devas, seven kinds of human beings, seven kinds of demons, seven great lakes, seven kinds of knots, seven hundred [other] kinds of knots, seven precipices, seven hundred [other] precipices, seven kinds of dreams, seven hundred [other] kinds of dreams, eighty-four hundred thousand great aeons through which the foolish and the wise roam and wander, after which they will alike make an end to suffering. There is none of this: "By this virtue or vow or austerity or holy life I will make unripened kamma ripen or eradicate ripened kamma by repeatedly experiencing it"—not so! Pleasure and pain are meted out; *samsāra*'s limits are fixed; there is no shortening it or extending it, no advancing forward or falling back. Just as, when a ball of string is thrown, it runs away unwinding, so too the foolish and the wise, by unwinding, flee from pleasure and pain."<sup>262</sup>

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One...."

"When there is form, bhikkhus, when there is feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, by clinging to consciousness, by adhering to consciousness, such a view as this arises: 'There are these seven bodies that are unmade ... the foolish and the wise, by unwinding, flee from pleasure and pain.' ... [213] ...

"When, bhikkhus, a noble disciple has abandoned perplexity

in these six cases ... he is then called a noble disciple who is a stream-enterer ... with enlightenment as his destination."

#### 9 (9) *The World Is Eternal*

At Sāvattthi. "Bhikkhus, when what exists, by clinging to what, by adhering to what, does such a view as this arise: 'The world is eternal?'"<sup>263</sup>

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One...."

"When there is form, bhikkhus, when there is feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, by clinging to consciousness, by adhering to consciousness, such a view as this arises: 'The world is eternal.' ... [214] ...

"When, bhikkhus, a noble disciple has abandoned perplexity in these six cases ... he is then called a noble disciple who is a stream-enterer ... with enlightenment as his destination."

#### 10 (10) *The World Is Not Eternal*

At Sāvattthi. "Bhikkhus, when what exists, by clinging to what, by adhering to what, does such a view as this arise: 'The world is not eternal?'"

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One...."

"When, bhikkhus, a noble disciple ... with enlightenment as his destination."

#### 11 (11) *The World is Finite*

At Sāvattthi. "Bhikkhus, when what exists, by clinging to what, by adhering to what, does such a view as this arise: 'The world is finite?'"

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One...."

"When, bhikkhus, a noble disciple ... with enlightenment as his destination." [215]

#### 12 (12) *The World Is Infinite*

At Sāvattthi. "Bhikkhus, when what exists, by clinging to what, by adhering to what, does such a view as this arise: 'The world is infinite?'"

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One...."

"When, bhikkhus, a noble disciple ... with enlightenment as his destination."

13 (13) *Soul and Body Are the Same*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, when what exists, by clinging to what, by adhering to what, does such a view as this arise: 'The soul and the body are the same?'"

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One...."

"When, bhikkhus, a noble disciple ... with enlightenment as his destination."

14 (14) *Soul and Body Are Different*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, when what exists, by clinging to what, by adhering to what, does such a view as this arise: 'The soul is one thing, the body another?'"

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One...."

"When, bhikkhus, a noble disciple ... with enlightenment as his destination."

15 (15) *The Tathāgata Exists*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, when what exists, by clinging to what, by adhering to what, does such a view as this arise: 'The Tathāgata exists after death?'"

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One...."

"When, bhikkhus, a noble disciple ... with enlightenment as his destination."

16 (16) *The Tathāgata Does Not Exist*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, when what exists, by clinging to what, by adhering to what, does such a view as this arise: 'The Tathāgata does not exist after death?'"

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One...."

"When, bhikkhus, a noble disciple ... with enlightenment as his destination."

17 (17) *The Tathāgata Both Exists and Does Not Exist*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, when what exists, [216] by clinging to what, by adhering to what, does such a view as this arise: 'The Tathāgata both exists and does not exist after death?'"

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One...."

"When, bhikkhus, a noble disciple ... with enlightenment as his destination."

18 (18) *The Tathāgata Neither Exists Nor Does Not Exist*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, when what exists, by clinging to what, by adhering to what, does such a view as this arise: 'The Tathāgata neither exists nor does not exist after death?'"

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One...."

"When there is form, bhikkhus, by clinging to form, by adhering to form, such a view as this arises: 'The Tathāgata neither exists nor does not exist after death.' When there is feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, by clinging to consciousness, by adhering to consciousness, such a view as this arises: 'The Tathāgata neither exists nor does not exist after death.'

"What do you think, bhikkhus, is form ... consciousness permanent or impermanent?"

"Impermanent, venerable sir."...

"But without clinging to what is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change, could such a view as that arise?"

"No, venerable sir."

"That which is seen, heard, sensed, cognized, attained, sought after, and ranged over by the mind: is that permanent or impermanent?"

"Impermanent, venerable sir."

"Is what is impermanent suffering or happiness?"

"Suffering, venerable sir."

"But without clinging to what is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change, could such a view as that arise?"

"No, venerable sir."

"When, bhikkhus, a noble disciple has abandoned perplexity in these six cases, and when, further, he has abandoned perplexity about suffering, the origin of suffering, the cessation of suffering, and the way leading to the cessation of suffering, he is then called

a noble disciple who is a stream-enterer, no longer bound to the nether world, fixed in destiny, with enlightenment as his destination." [217]

II. THE SECOND TRIP<sup>264</sup>19 (1) *Winds*

At Sāvātthi. "Bhikkhus, when what exists, by clinging to what, by adhering to what, does such a view as this arise: 'The winds do not blow, the rivers do not flow, pregnant women do not give birth, the moon and sun do not rise and set but stand as steady as a pillar?'"

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One...."

"When there is form, bhikkhus, by clinging to form, by adhering to form, such a view as this arises: 'The winds do not blow ... but stand as steady as a pillar.' When there is feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, by clinging to consciousness, by adhering to consciousness, such a view as this arises: 'The winds do not blow ... but stand as steady as a pillar.'"

"What do you think, bhikkhus, is form ... [218] ... consciousness permanent or impermanent?"

"Impermanent, venerable sir." ...

"But without clinging to what is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change, could such a view as that arise?"

"No, venerable sir."

"Thus, bhikkhus, when there is suffering, it is by clinging to suffering, by adhering to suffering,<sup>265</sup> that such a view as this arises: 'The winds do not blow ... but stand as steady as a pillar.'"

20 (2)–36 (18) *This Is Mine, Etc.*

(These suttas repeat the views of 24:2–18, but modelled on the above paradigm.)

37 (19) *A Self Consisting of Form*

At Sāvātthi. "Bhikkhus, when what is present ... [219] ... does such a view as this arise: 'The self consists of form and is unimpaired after death?' ...<sup>266</sup>

38 (20) *A Formless Self*

At Sāvātthi. "Bhikkhus, when what is present ... does such a view as this arise: 'The self is formless and is unimpaired after death?' ..."

39 (21) *A Self Both Consisting of Form and Formless*

At Sāvātthi. "Bhikkhus, when what is present ... does such a view as this arise: 'The self both consists of form and is formless, and is unimpaired after death?' ..."

40 (22) *A Self Neither Consisting of Form nor Formless*

At Sāvātthi. "Bhikkhus, when what is present ... does such a view as this arise: 'The self neither consists of form nor is formless, and is unimpaired after death?' ..."

41 (23) *Exclusively Happy*

At Sāvātthi. "Bhikkhus, when what is present ... does such a view as this arise: 'The self is exclusively happy and is unimpaired after death?' ... [220]

42 (24) *Exclusively Miserable*

At Sāvātthi. "Bhikkhus, when what is present ... does such a view as this arise: 'The self is exclusively miserable and is unimpaired after death?' ..."

43 (25) *Both Happy and Miserable*

At Sāvātthi. "Bhikkhus, when what is present ... does such a view as this arise: 'The self is both happy and miserable and is unimpaired after death?' ..."

44 (26) *Neither Happy nor Miserable*

At Sāvātthi. "Bhikkhus, when what is present ... does such a view as this arise: 'The self is neither happy nor miserable and is unimpaired after death?' ..."

## III. THE THIRD TRIP

45 (1) *Winds*

[221] At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, when what exists, by clinging to what, by adhering to what, does such a view as this arise: 'The winds do not blow, the rivers do not flow, pregnant women do not give birth, the moon and sun do not rise and set but stand as steady as a pillar?'"

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One...."

"When there is form, bhikkhus, by clinging to form, by adhering to form, such a view as this arises: 'The winds do not blow ... but stand as steady as a pillar.' When there is feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, by clinging to consciousness, by adhering to consciousness, such a view as this arises: 'The winds do not blow ... but stand as steady as a pillar.'"

"What do you think, bhikkhus, is form ... consciousness permanent or impermanent?"

"Impermanent, venerable sir."...

"But without clinging to what is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change, could such a view as that arise?"

"No, venerable sir."

"Thus, bhikkhus, whatever is impermanent is suffering. When that is present, it is by clinging to that, that such a view as this arises:<sup>267</sup> 'The winds do not blow ... but stand as steady as a pillar.'"

46 (2)–70 (26) *This Is Mine, Etc.*

(*These suttas repeat the views of The Second Trip, but are modelled on the above paradigm.*) [222]

## IV. THE FOURTH TRIP

71 (1) *Winds*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, when what exists, by clinging to what, by adhering to what, does such a view as this arise: 'The winds do not blow, the rivers do not [223] flow, pregnant women do not give birth, the moon and sun do not rise and set but stand as steady as a pillar?'"

"Venerable sir, our teachings are rooted in the Blessed One...."

"When there is form, bhikkhus, by clinging to form, by adhering to form, such a view as this arises: 'The winds do not blow ... but stand as steady as a pillar.' When there is feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, by clinging to consciousness, by adhering to consciousness, such a view as this arises: 'The winds do not blow ... but stand as steady as a pillar.'"

"What do you think, bhikkhus, is form ... feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness permanent or impermanent?" – "Impermanent, venerable sir." – "Is what is impermanent suffering or happiness?" – "Suffering, venerable sir." – "Is what is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change fit to be regarded thus: 'This is mine, this I am, this is my self?'" – "No, venerable sir."

"Therefore, bhikkhus, any kind of form whatsoever ... Any kind of feeling whatsoever ... Any kind of perception whatsoever ... Any kind of volitional formations whatsoever ... Any kind of consciousness whatsoever, whether past, future, or present, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near—all consciousness should be seen as it really is with correct wisdom thus: 'This is not mine, this I am not, this is not my self.'"

"Seeing thus, bhikkhus, the instructed noble disciple experiences revulsion towards form, revulsion towards feeling, revulsion towards perception, revulsion towards volitional formations, revulsion towards consciousness. Experiencing revulsion, he becomes dispassionate. Through dispassion [his mind] is liberated. When it is liberated there comes the knowledge: 'It's liberated.' He understands: 'Destroyed is birth, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more for this state of being.'"

72 (2)–96 (26) *This Is Mine, Etc.*

(*These suttas repeat the views of The Second Trip, but are modelled on the above paradigm.*) [224]

[225]

## Chapter IV

25 *Okkantisaṃyutta*

## Connected Discourses on Entering

1 *The Eye*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, the eye is impermanent, changing, becoming otherwise. The ear ... The nose ... The tongue ... The body ... The mind is impermanent, changing, becoming otherwise. One who places faith in these teachings and resolves on them thus is called a faith-follower, one who has entered the fixed course of rightness, entered the plane of superior persons, transcended the plane of the worldlings. He is incapable of doing any deed by reason of which he might be reborn in hell, in the animal realm, or in the domain of ghosts; he is incapable of passing away without having realized the fruit of stream-entry.<sup>268</sup>

"One for whom these teachings are accepted thus after being pondered to a sufficient degree with wisdom is called a Dhamma-follower,<sup>269</sup> one who has entered the fixed course of rightness, entered the plane of superior persons, transcended the plane of the worldlings. He is incapable of doing any deed by reason of which he might be reborn in hell, in the animal realm, or in the domain of ghosts; he is incapable of passing away without having realized the fruit of stream-entry.

"One who knows and sees these teachings thus is called a stream-enterer, no longer bound to the nether world, fixed in destiny, with enlightenment as his destination."<sup>270</sup>

2 *Forms*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, forms are impermanent, changing, becoming otherwise. Sounds ... Odours ... Tastes ... Tactile objects ... Mental phenomena are impermanent, changing,

becoming otherwise. [226] One who places faith in these teachings and resolves on them thus is called a faith-follower, one who has entered the fixed course of rightness...; he is incapable of passing away without having realized the fruit of stream-entry.

"One for whom these teachings are accepted thus after being pondered to a sufficient degree with wisdom is called a Dhamma-follower, one who has entered the fixed course of rightness...; he is incapable of passing away without having realized the fruit of stream-entry.

"One who knows and sees these teachings thus is called a stream-enterer, no longer bound to the nether world, fixed in destiny, with enlightenment as his destination."

3 *Consciousness*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, eye-consciousness is impermanent, changing, becoming otherwise. Ear-consciousness ... Nose-consciousness ... Tongue-consciousness ... Body-consciousness ... Mind-consciousness is impermanent, changing, becoming otherwise. One who ... with enlightenment as his destination."

4 *Contact*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, eye-contact is impermanent, changing, becoming otherwise. Ear-contact ... Nose-contact ... Tongue-contact ... Body-contact ... Mind-contact is impermanent, changing, becoming otherwise. One who ... with enlightenment as his destination."

5 *Feeling*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, feeling born of eye-contact is impermanent, changing, becoming otherwise. Feeling born of ear-contact ... Feeling born of nose-contact ... Feeling born of tongue-contact ... Feeling born of body-contact ... Feeling born of mind-contact is impermanent, changing, becoming otherwise. One who ... with enlightenment as his destination." [227]

## 6 Perception

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, perception of forms is impermanent, changing, becoming otherwise. Perception of sounds ... Perception of odours ... Perception of tastes ... Perception of tactile objects ... Perception of mental phenomena is impermanent, changing, becoming otherwise. One who ... with enlightenment as his destination."

## 7 Volition

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, volition regarding forms is impermanent, changing, becoming otherwise. Volition regarding sounds ... Volition regarding odours ... Volition regarding tastes ... Volition regarding tactile objects ... Volition regarding mental phenomena is impermanent, changing, becoming otherwise. One who ... with enlightenment as his destination."

## 8 Craving

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, craving for forms is impermanent, changing, becoming otherwise. Craving for sounds ... Craving for odours ... Craving for tastes ... Craving for tactile objects ... Craving for mental phenomena is impermanent, changing, becoming otherwise. One who ... with enlightenment as his destination."

## 9 Elements

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, the earth element is impermanent, changing, becoming otherwise. The water element ... The heat element ... The air element ... The space element ... The consciousness element is impermanent, changing, becoming otherwise.<sup>271</sup> One who ... with enlightenment as his destination."

## 10 Aggregates

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, form is impermanent, changing, becoming otherwise. Feeling ... Perception ... Volitional formations ... Consciousness is impermanent, changing, becoming otherwise.

One who places faith in these teachings and resolves on them thus is called a faith-follower, one who has entered the fixed course of rightness, [228] entered the plane of superior persons, transcended the plane of the worldlings. He is incapable of doing any deed by reason of which he might be reborn in hell, in the animal realm, or in the domain of ghosts; he is incapable of passing away without having realized the fruit of stream-entry.

"One for whom these teachings are accepted thus after being pondered to a sufficient degree with wisdom is called a Dhamma-follower, one who has entered the fixed course of rightness, entered the plane of superior persons, transcended the plane of the worldlings. He is incapable of doing any deed by reason of which he might be reborn in hell, in the animal realm, or in the domain of ghosts; he is incapable of passing away without having realized the fruit of stream-entry.

"One who knows and sees these teachings thus is called a stream-enterer, no longer bound to the nether world, fixed in destiny, with enlightenment as his destination."

Chapter V  
26 Uppādasamyutta  
Connected Discourses on Arising

1 The Eye

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, the arising, continuation, production, and manifestation of the eye is the arising of suffering, the continuation of disease, the manifestation of aging-and-death.<sup>272</sup> The arising, continuation, production, and manifestation of the ear ... of the nose ... of the tongue ... of the body ... of the mind [229] is the arising of suffering, the continuation of disease, the manifestation of aging-and-death.

"The cessation, subsiding, and passing away of the eye ... the mind is the cessation of suffering, the subsiding of disease, the passing away of aging-and-death."

2 Forms

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, the arising, continuation, production, and manifestation of forms ... of sounds ... of odours ... of tastes ... of tactile objects ... of mental phenomena is the arising of suffering, the continuation of disease, the manifestation of aging-and-death.

"The cessation, subsiding, and passing away of forms ... of mental phenomena is the cessation of suffering, the subsiding of disease, the passing away of aging-and-death."

3 Consciousness

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, the arising, continuation, production, and manifestation of eye-consciousness ... of mind-consciousness

is the arising of suffering, the continuation of disease, the manifestation of aging-and-death.

"The cessation, subsiding, and passing away of eye-consciousness ... of mind-consciousness is the cessation of suffering, the subsiding of disease, the passing away of aging-and-death." [230]

4 Contact

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, the arising, continuation, production, and manifestation of eye-contact ... of mind-contact is the arising of suffering, the continuation of disease, the manifestation of aging-and-death.

"The cessation, subsiding, and passing away of eye-contact ... of mind-contact is the cessation of suffering, the subsiding of disease, the passing away of aging-and-death."

5 Feeling

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, the arising, continuation, production, and manifestation of feeling born of eye-contact ... of feeling born of mind-contact is the arising of suffering, the continuation of disease, the manifestation of aging-and-death.

"The cessation, subsiding, and passing away of feeling born of eye-contact ... of feeling born of mind-contact is the cessation of suffering, the subsiding of disease, the passing away of aging-and-death."

6 Perception

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, the arising, continuation, production, and manifestation of perception of forms ... of perception of mental phenomena is the arising of suffering, the continuation of disease, the manifestation of aging-and-death.

"The cessation, subsiding, and passing away of perception of forms ... of perception of mental phenomena is the cessation of suffering, the subsiding of disease, the passing away of aging-and-death."

7 *Volition*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, the arising, continuation, production, and manifestation of volition regarding forms ... of volition regarding mental phenomena is the arising of suffering, the continuation of disease, the manifestation of aging-and-death.

"The cessation, subsiding, and passing away of volition regarding forms ... of volition regarding mental phenomena is the cessation of suffering, the subsiding of disease, the passing away of aging-and-death."

8 *Craving*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, the arising, continuation, production, and manifestation of craving for forms ... of craving for mental phenomena is the arising of suffering, the continuation of disease, the manifestation of aging-and-death. [231]

"The cessation, subsiding, and passing away of craving for forms ... of craving for mental phenomena is the cessation of suffering, the subsiding of disease, the passing away of aging-and-death."

9 *Elements*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, the arising, continuation, production, and manifestation of the earth element ... of the water element ... of the heat element ... of the air element ... of the space element ... of the consciousness element is the arising of suffering, the continuation of disease, the manifestation of aging-and-death.

"The cessation, subsiding, and passing away of the earth element ... of the consciousness element is the cessation of suffering, the subsiding of disease, the passing away of aging-and-death."

10 *Aggregates*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, the arising, continuation, production, and manifestation of form ... of feeling ... of perception ... of volitional formations ... of consciousness is the arising of suffering, the continuation of disease, the manifestation of aging-and-death.

"The cessation, subsiding, and passing away of form ... of consciousness is the cessation of suffering, the subsiding of disease, the passing away of aging-and-death."

[232]

## Chapter VI

## 27 Kilesasamyutta

## Connected Discourses on Defilements

## 1 The Eye

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, desire and lust for the eye is a corruption of the mind.<sup>273</sup> Desire and lust for the ear ... for the nose ... for the tongue ... for the body ... for the mind is a corruption of the mind. When a bhikkhu has abandoned the mental corruption in these six cases, his mind inclines to renunciation. A mind fortified by renunciation becomes wieldy in regard to those things that are to be realized by direct knowledge."<sup>274</sup>

## 2 Forms

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, desire and lust for forms is a corruption of the mind. Desire and lust for sounds ... for odours ... for tastes ... for tactile objects ... for mental phenomena is a corruption of the mind. When a bhikkhu has abandoned the mental corruption in these six cases, his mind inclines to renunciation. A mind fortified by renunciation becomes wieldy in regard to those things that are to be realized by direct knowledge."

## 3 Consciousness

"Bhikkhus, desire and lust for eye-consciousness ... for mind-consciousness is a corruption of the mind. When a bhikkhu has abandoned the mental corruption in these six cases ... [233] ... [his mind] becomes wieldy in regard to those things that are to be realized by direct knowledge."

## 4 Contact

"Bhikkhus, desire and lust for eye-contact ... for mind-contact is a corruption of the mind. When a bhikkhu has abandoned the mental corruption in these six cases ... [his mind] becomes wieldy in regard to those things that are to be realized by direct knowledge."

## 5 Feeling

"Bhikkhus, desire and lust for feeling born of eye-contact ... for feeling born of mind-contact is a corruption of the mind. When a bhikkhu has abandoned the mental corruption in these six cases ... [his mind] becomes wieldy in regard to those things that are to be realized by direct knowledge."

## 6 Perception

"Bhikkhus, desire and lust for perception of forms ... for perception of mental phenomena is a corruption of the mind. When a bhikkhu has abandoned the mental corruption in these six cases ... [his mind] becomes wieldy in regard to those things that are to be realized by direct knowledge."

## 7 Volition

"Bhikkhus, desire and lust for volition regarding forms ... [234] ... for volition regarding mental phenomena is a corruption of the mind. When a bhikkhu has abandoned the mental corruption in these six cases ... [his mind] becomes wieldy in regard to those things that are to be realized by direct knowledge."

## 8 Craving

"Bhikkhus, desire and lust for craving for forms ... for craving for mental phenomena is a corruption of the mind. When a bhikkhu has abandoned the mental corruption in these six cases ... [his mind] becomes wieldy in regard to those things that are to be realized by direct knowledge."

## 9 Elements

"Bhikkhus, desire and lust for the earth element ... for the water element ... for the heat element ... for the air element ... for the space element ... for the consciousness element is a corruption of the mind. When a bhikkhu has abandoned the mental corruption in these six cases ... [his mind] becomes wieldy in regard to those things that are to be realized by direct knowledge."

## 10 Aggregates

"Bhikkhus, desire and lust for form ... for feeling ... for perception ... for volitional formations ... for consciousness is a corruption of the mind. When a bhikkhu has abandoned the mental corruption in these five cases, his mind inclines to renunciation. A mind fortified by renunciation becomes wieldy in regard to those things that are to be realized by direct knowledge."

[235]

## Chapter VII

28 *Sāriputtasamyutta*

## Connected Discourses with Sāriputta

1 *Born of Seclusion*

On one occasion the Venerable Sāriputta was dwelling at Sāvattī in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park.

Then, in the morning, the Venerable Sāriputta dressed and, taking bowl and robe, entered Sāvattī for alms. Then, when he had walked for alms in Sāvattī and had returned from the alms round, after his meal he went to the Blind Men's Grove for the day's abiding. Having plunged into the Blind Men's Grove, he sat down at the foot of a tree for the day's abiding.

Then, in the evening, the Venerable Sāriputta emerged from seclusion and went to Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's Park. The Venerable Ānanda saw the Venerable Sāriputta coming in the distance and said to him: "Friend Sāriputta, your faculties are serene, your facial complexion is pure and bright. In what dwelling has the Venerable Sāriputta spent the day?"<sup>275</sup>

"Here, friend, secluded from sensual pleasures, secluded from unwholesome states, I entered and dwelt in the first jhāna, which is accompanied by thought and examination, with rapture and happiness born of seclusion. Yet, friend, it did not occur to me, 'I am attaining the first jhāna,' or 'I have attained the first jhāna,' or 'I have emerged from the first jhāna.'" [236]

"It must be because I-making, mine-making, and the underlying tendency to conceit have been thoroughly uprooted in the Venerable Sāriputta for a long time that such thoughts did not occur to him."<sup>276</sup>

2 *Without Thought*

At Sāvatti.... (as above) ... The Venerable Ānanda saw the Venerable Sāriputta coming in the distance and said to him: "Friend Sāriputta, your faculties are serene, your complexion is pure and bright. In what dwelling has the Venerable Sāriputta spent the day?"

"Here, friend, with the subsiding of thought and examination, I entered and dwelt in the second jhāna, which has internal confidence and unification of mind, is without thought and examination, and has rapture and happiness born of concentration. Yet, friend, it did not occur to me, 'I am attaining the second jhāna,' or 'I have attained the second jhāna,' or 'I have emerged from the second jhāna.'"

"It must be because I-making, mine-making, and the underlying tendency to conceit have been thoroughly uprooted in the Venerable Sāriputta for a long time that such thoughts did not occur to him."

3 *Rapture*

At Sāvatti.... The Venerable Ānanda saw the Venerable Sāriputta coming in the distance....

"Here, friend, with the fading away as well of rapture, I dwelt equanimous and, mindful and clearly comprehending, I experienced happiness with the body; I entered and dwelt in the third jhāna of which the noble ones declare: 'He is equanimous, mindful, one who dwells happily.' [237] Yet, friend, it did not occur to me, 'I am attaining the third jhāna....'" (Complete as in preceding sutta.)

4 *Equanimity*

At Sāvatti.... The Venerable Ānanda saw the Venerable Sāriputta coming in the distance....

"Here, friend, with the abandoning of pleasure and pain, and with the previous passing away of joy and displeasure, I entered and dwelt in the fourth jhāna, which is neither painful nor pleasant and includes the purification of mindfulness by equanimity. Yet, friend, it did not occur to me, 'I am attaining the fourth jhāna....'"

5 *The Base of the Infinity of Space*

At Sāvatti.... The Venerable Ānanda saw the Venerable Sāriputta coming in the distance....

"Here, friend, with the complete transcendence of perceptions of forms, with the passing away of perceptions of sensory impingement, with nonattention to perceptions of diversity, aware that 'space is infinite,' I entered and dwelt in the base of the infinity of space. Yet, friend, it did not occur to me, 'I am attaining the base of the infinity of space....'"

6 *The Base of the Infinity of Consciousness*

At Sāvatti.... The Venerable Ānanda saw the Venerable Sāriputta coming in the distance....

"Here, friend, by completely transcending the base of the infinity of space, aware that 'consciousness is infinite,' I entered and dwelt in the base of the infinity of consciousness. Yet, friend, it did not occur to me, 'I am attaining the base of the infinity of consciousness....'"

7 *The Base of Nothingness*

At Sāvatti.... The Venerable Ānanda saw the Venerable Sāriputta coming in the distance....

"Here, friend, by completely transcending the base of the infinity of consciousness, aware that 'there is nothing,' I entered and dwelt in the base of nothingness. Yet, friend, it did not occur to me, 'I am attaining the base of nothingness....'" [238]

8 *The Base of Neither-Perception-Nor-Nonperception*

At Sāvatti.... The Venerable Ānanda saw the Venerable Sāriputta coming in the distance....

"Here, friend, by completely transcending the base of nothingness, I entered and dwelt in the base of neither-perception-nor-nonperception. Yet, friend, it did not occur to me, 'I am attaining the base of neither-perception-nor-nonperception....'"

9 *The Attainment of Cessation*

At Sāvattḥi.... The Venerable Ānanda saw the Venerable Sāriputta coming in the distance....

"Here, friend, by completely transcending the base of neither-perception-nor-nonperception, I entered and dwelt in the cessation of perception and feeling. Yet, friend, it did not occur to me, 'I am attaining the cessation of perception and feeling,' or 'I have attained the cessation of perception and feeling,' or 'I have emerged from the cessation of perception and feeling.'"

"It must be because I-making, mine-making, and the underlying tendency to conceit have been thoroughly uprooted in the Venerable Sāriputta for a long time that such thoughts did not occur to him."

10 *Sucimukhi*

On one occasion the Venerable Sāriputta was dwelling at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove, the Squirrel Sanctuary. Then, in the morning, the Venerable Sāriputta dressed and, taking bowl and robe, entered Rājagaha for alms. Then, when he had walked for alms on continuous alms round in Rājagaha,<sup>277</sup> he ate that almsfood leaning against a certain wall.

Then the female wanderer Sucimukhi approached the Venerable Sāriputta and said to him: "Ascetic, do you eat facing downwards?"<sup>278</sup>

"I don't eat facing downwards, sister."

"Then, ascetic, do you eat facing upwards?"

"I don't eat facing upwards, sister." [239]

"Then, ascetic, do you eat facing the [four] quarters?"<sup>279</sup>

"I don't eat facing the [four] quarters, sister."

"Then, ascetic, do you eat facing the intermediate directions?"

"I don't eat facing the intermediate directions, sister."

"When you are asked, 'Ascetic, do you eat facing downwards?'... 'Do you eat facing the intermediate directions?' you reply, 'I don't eat thus, sister.' How then do you eat, ascetic?"

"Sister, those ascetics and brahmins who earn their living by the debased art of geomancy<sup>280</sup>—a wrong means of livelihood—these are called ascetics and brahmins who eat facing downwards. Those ascetics and brahmins who earn their living by the

debased art of astrology<sup>281</sup>—a wrong means of livelihood—these are called ascetics and brahmins who eat facing upwards. Those ascetics and brahmins who earn their living by undertaking to go on errands and run messages<sup>282</sup>—a wrong means of livelihood—these are called ascetics and brahmins who eat facing the [four] quarters. Those ascetics and brahmins who earn their living by the debased art of palmistry<sup>283</sup>—a wrong means of livelihood—these are called ascetics and brahmins who eat facing the intermediate directions.

"Sister, I do not earn my living by such wrong means of livelihood as the debased art of geomancy, or the debased art of astrology, or by undertaking to go on errands and run messages, or by the debased art of palmistry. I seek almsfood righteously and, having sought it, I eat my almsfood righteously." [240]

Then the female wanderer Sucimukhi went from street to street and from square to square in Rājagaha announcing: "The ascetics following the Sakyan son eat righteous food; they eat blameless food. Give almsfood to the ascetics following the Sakyan son."

## Chapter VIII

29 *Nāgasamyutta*

## Connected Discourses on Nāgas

1 *Simple Version*

At Sāvattḥi. “Bhikkhus, there are these four modes of generation of nāgas.<sup>284</sup> What four? Nāgas born from eggs, nāgas born from the womb, nāgas born from moisture, nāgas of spontaneous birth. These are the four modes of generation of nāgas.”

2 *Superior*

At Sāvattḥi. “Bhikkhus, there are these four modes of generation of nāgas.... [241]

“Therein, bhikkhus, nāgas born from the womb, from moisture, and born spontaneously are superior to nāgas born from eggs. Nāgas born from moisture and born spontaneously are superior to nāgas born from eggs and from the womb. Nāgas born spontaneously are superior to nāgas born from eggs, from the womb, and from moisture.

“These, bhikkhus, are the four modes of generation of nāgas.”

3 *The Uposatha (1)*

At Sāvattḥi. Then a certain bhikkhu approached the Blessed One, paid homage to him, sat down to one side, and said to him: “Venerable sir, what is the cause and reason why some egg-born nāgas here observe the Uposatha and relinquish [concern for] their bodies?”<sup>285</sup>

“Here, bhikkhus, some egg-born nāgas think thus: ‘In the past we acted ambivalently in body, speech, and mind.<sup>286</sup> Having done so, with the breakup of the body, after death, we were

reborn in the company of egg-born nāgas. If today we practise good conduct of body, speech, and mind, then with the breakup of the body, after death, we shall be reborn in a happy destination, in a heavenly world. Come now, let us practise good conduct of body, speech, and mind.’

“This, bhikkhu, is the cause and reason why some egg-born nāgas here observe the Uposatha and relinquish [concern for] their bodies.” [242]

4–6 *The Uposatha (2–4)*

(*The same is repeated for the other three types of nāgas.*) [243]

7 *He Has Heard (1)*

At Sāvattḥi.... Sitting to one side, that bhikkhu said to the Blessed One: “Venerable sir, what is the cause and reason why someone here, with the breakup of the body, after death, is reborn in the company of egg-born nāgas?”

“Here, bhikkhu, someone acts ambivalently in body, speech, and mind. He has heard: ‘Egg-born nāgas are long-lived, beautiful, and abound in happiness.’ He thinks: ‘Oh, with the breakup of the body, after death, may I be reborn in the company of egg-born nāgas!’ Then, with the breakup of the body, after death, he is reborn in the company of egg-born nāgas.

“This, bhikkhus, is the cause and reason why someone here, with the breakup of the body, after death, is reborn in the company of egg-born nāgas.”

8–10 *He Has Heard (2–4)*

(*These three suttas repeat the same for the other three types of nāgas.*) [244]

11–20 *With the Support of Giving (1)*

Sitting to one side, that bhikkhu said to the Blessed One: “Venerable sir, what is the cause and reason why [245] someone here, with the breakup of the body, after death, is reborn in the company of egg-born nāgas?”

“Here, bhikkhu, someone acts ambivalently in body, speech, and mind. He has heard: ‘Egg-born nāgas are long-lived, beautiful, and abound in happiness.’ He thinks: ‘Oh, with the breakup of the body, after death, may I be reborn in the company of egg-born nāgas!’ He gives food.... He gives drink.... He gives clothing.... He gives a vehicle.... He gives a garland.... He gives a fragrance.... He gives an unguent.... He gives a bed.... He gives a dwelling.... He gives a lamp.<sup>287</sup> Then, with the breakup of the body, after death, he is reborn in the company of egg-born nāgas.

“This, bhikkhus, is the cause and reason why someone here, with the breakup of the body, after death, is reborn in the company of egg-born nāgas.”

21–50 *With the Support of Giving (2–4)*

(These three decads each repeat the preceding decad for the other three types of nāgas.) [246]

## Chapter IX

### 30 *Supaṇṇasamyutta*

#### Connected Discourses on Supaṇṇas

##### 1 *Simple Version*

At Sāvatti. “Bhikkhus, there are these four modes of generation of supaṇṇas. What four? Supaṇṇas born from eggs, supaṇṇas born from the womb, supaṇṇas born from moisture, supaṇṇas of spontaneous birth. These are the four modes of generation of supaṇṇas.” [247]

##### 2 *They Carry Off*

At Sāvatti. “Bhikkhus, there are these four modes of generation of supaṇṇas....

“Therein, bhikkhus, egg-born supaṇṇas carry off only nāgas that are egg-born, not those that are womb-born, moisture-born, or spontaneously born.<sup>288</sup> Womb-born supaṇṇas carry off nāgas that are egg-born and womb-born, but not those that are moisture-born or spontaneously born. Moisture-born supaṇṇas carry off nāgas that are egg-born, womb-born, and moisture-born, but not those that are spontaneously born. Spontaneously born supaṇṇas carry off nāgas that are egg-born, womb-born, moisture-born, and spontaneously born.

“These, bhikkhus, are the four modes of generation of supaṇṇas.”

##### 3 *Ambivalent (1)*

At Sāvatti.... Sitting to one side, that bhikkhu said to the Blessed One: “Venerable sir, what is the cause and reason why someone here, with the breakup of the body, after death, is reborn in the company of egg-born supaṇṇas?”

“Here, bhikkhu, someone acts ambivalently in body, speech, and mind. He has heard: ‘Egg-born supaññas are long-lived, beautiful, and abound in happiness.’ He thinks: ‘Oh, with the breakup of the body, after death, may I be reborn in the company of egg-born supaññas!’ Then, with the breakup of the body, after death, he is reborn in the company of egg-born supaññas.

“This, bhikkhus, is the cause and reason why someone here, with the breakup of the body, after death, is reborn in the company of egg-born supaññas.”

4–6 *Ambivalent (2–4)*

(*The same is repeated for the other three types of supaññas.*) [248]

7–16 *With the Support of Giving (1)*

Sitting to one side, that bhikkhu said to the Blessed One: “Venerable sir, what is the cause and reason why someone here, with the breakup of the body, after death, is reborn in the company of egg-born supaññas?”

“Here, bhikkhu, someone acts ambivalently in body, speech, and mind. He has heard: ‘Egg-born supaññas are long-lived, beautiful, and abound in happiness.’ He thinks: ‘Oh, with the breakup of the body, after death, may I be reborn in the company of egg-born supaññas!’ He gives food.... He gives drink.... He gives clothing.... He gives a vehicle.... He gives a garland.... He gives a fragrance.... He gives an unguent.... He gives a bed.... He gives a dwelling.... He gives a lamp. Then, with the breakup of the body, after death, he is reborn in the company of egg-born supaññas.

“This, bhikkhus, is the cause and reason why someone here, with the breakup of the body, after death, is reborn in the company of egg-born supaññas.”

17–46 *With the Support of Giving (2–4)*

(*These three decads each repeat the preceding decad for the other three types of supaññas.*) [249]

Chapter X

31 *Gandhabbasamyutta*

Connected Discourses on Gandhabbas

1 *Simple Version*

At Sāvattī. [250] “Bhikkhus, I will teach you about the devas of the gandhabba order. Listen to that....

“And what, bhikkhus, are the devas of the gandhabba order? There are, bhikkhus, devas dwelling in fragrant roots,<sup>289</sup> devas dwelling in fragrant heartwood, devas dwelling in fragrant softwood, devas dwelling in fragrant bark, devas dwelling in fragrant shoots, devas dwelling in fragrant leaves, devas dwelling in fragrant flowers, devas dwelling in fragrant fruits, devas dwelling in fragrant sap, and devas dwelling in fragrant scents.

“These, bhikkhus, are called the devas of the gandhabba order.”

2 *Good Conduct*

At Sāvattī.... Sitting to one side, that bhikkhu said to the Blessed One: “Venerable sir, what is the cause and reason why someone here, with the breakup of the body, after death, is reborn in the company of the devas of the gandhabba order?”

“Here, bhikkhu, someone practises good conduct of body, speech, and mind.<sup>290</sup> He has heard: ‘The devas of the gandhabba order are long-lived, beautiful, and abound in happiness.’ He thinks: ‘Oh, with the breakup of the body, after death, may I be reborn in the company of the devas of the gandhabba order!’ Then, with the breakup of the body, after death, he is reborn in the company of the devas of the gandhabba order.

“This, bhikkhus, is the cause and reason why someone here, with the breakup of the body, after death, is reborn in the company of the devas of the gandhabba order.”

## 3 Giver (1)

At Sāvatti.... Sitting to one side, that bhikkhu [251] said to the Blessed One: "Venerable sir, what is the cause and reason why someone here, with the breakup of the body, after death, is reborn in the company of the devas who dwell in fragrant roots?"

"Here, bhikkhu, someone practises good conduct of body, speech, and mind. He has heard: 'The devas who dwell in fragrant roots are long-lived, beautiful, and abound in happiness.' He thinks: 'Oh, with the breakup of the body, after death, may I be reborn in the company of the devas who dwell in fragrant roots!' He becomes a giver of fragrant roots. Then, with the breakup of the body, after death, he is reborn in the company of the devas who dwell in fragrant roots.

"This, bhikkhus, is the cause and reason why someone here, with the breakup of the body, after death, is reborn in the company of the devas who dwell in fragrant roots."

## 4–12 Giver (2–10)

(The same paradigm is repeated for each of the other groups of *gandhabbas*—those who dwell in fragrant heartwood, etc.—as enumerated in §1, each the giver of the corresponding type of gift.) [252]

## 13–22 With the Support of Giving (1)

At Sāvatti.... Sitting to one side, that bhikkhu said to the Blessed One: "Venerable sir, what is the cause and reason why someone here, with the breakup of the body, after death, is reborn in the company of the devas who dwell in fragrant roots?"

"Here, bhikkhu, someone practises good conduct of body, speech, and mind. He has heard: 'The devas who dwell in fragrant roots are long-lived, beautiful, and abound in happiness.'

"He thinks: 'Oh, with the breakup of the body, after death, may I be reborn in the company of the devas who dwell in fragrant roots!' He gives food.... He gives drink.... He gives clothing.... He gives a vehicle.... He gives a garland.... He gives a fragrance.... He gives an unguent.... He gives a bed.... He gives a dwelling.... He gives a lamp. Then, with the breakup of the body, after death, he is reborn in the company of the devas who dwell in fragrant roots.

"This, bhikkhus, is the cause and reason why someone here, with the breakup of the body, after death, is reborn in the company of the devas who dwell in fragrant roots." [253]

## 23–112 With the Support of Giving (2)

(Repeat the paradigm of §§13–22 for each of the other types of *gandhabbas*, those who dwell in fragrant heartwood, etc.)

32 *Valāhakaṣaṃyutta*

## Connected Discourses on Cloud Devas

1 *Simple Version*

At Sāvattḥi. “Bhikkhus, I will teach you about the devas of the cloud-dwelling order. Listen to that....

“And what, bhikkhus, are the devas of the cloud-dwelling order?<sup>291</sup> There are, bhikkhus, cool-cloud devas, warm-cloud devas, storm-cloud devas, wind-cloud devas, and rain-cloud devas.

“These, bhikkhus, are called the devas of the cloud-dwelling order.”

2 *Good Conduct*

(Identical with 31:2, but concerning rebirth in the company of the devas of the cloud-dwelling order.)

3–12 *With the Support of Giving (1)*

(These suttas are modelled on 31:13–22, but concerning rebirth in the company of the cool-cloud devas.)<sup>292</sup> [255]

13–52 *With the Support of Giving (2)*

(These suttas repeat the paradigm in regard to rebirth among the other types of cloud-dwelling devas.) [256]

53 *Cool-Cloud Devas*

At Sāvattḥi.... Sitting to one side, that bhikkhu said to the Blessed

One: “Venerable sir, what is the cause and reason why it sometimes becomes cool?”

“There are, bhikkhu, what are called cool-cloud devas. When it occurs to them, ‘Let us revel in our own kind of delight,’<sup>293</sup> then, in accordance with their wish, it becomes cool. This, bhikkhu, is the cause and reason why it sometimes becomes cool.”

54 *Warm-Cloud Devas*

... “Venerable sir, what is the cause and reason why it sometimes becomes warm?”

“There are, bhikkhu, what are called warm-cloud devas. When it occurs to them, ‘Let us revel in our own kind of delight,’ then, in accordance with their wish, it becomes warm. This, bhikkhu, is the cause and reason why it sometimes becomes warm.”

55 *Storm-Cloud Devas*

... “Venerable sir, what is the cause and reason why it sometimes becomes stormy?”

“There are, bhikkhu, what are called storm-cloud devas. When it occurs to them, ‘Let us revel in our own kind of delight,’ then, in accordance with their wish, it becomes stormy. This, bhikkhu, is the cause and reason why it sometimes becomes stormy.”

56 *Wind-Cloud Devas*

... “Venerable sir, what is the cause and reason why it sometimes becomes windy?”

“There are, bhikkhu, what are called wind-cloud devas. [257] When it occurs to them, ‘Let us revel in our own kind of delight,’ then, in accordance with their wish, it becomes windy. This, bhikkhu, is the cause and reason why it sometimes becomes windy.”

57 *Rain-Cloud Devas*

... “Venerable sir, what is the cause and reason why it sometimes rains?”

“There are, bhikkhu, what are called rain-cloud devas. When it

occurs to them, 'Let us revel in our own kind of delight,' then, in accordance with their wish, it rains. This, bhikkhu, is the cause and reason why it sometimes rains."

Chapter XII

33 *Vacchagottasamyutta*

Connected Discourses with Vacchagotta

1 *Because of Not Knowing (1)*

At Sāvatti. Then the wanderer Vacchagotta approached the Blessed One and exchanged greetings with him.<sup>294</sup> When they had concluded their greetings and cordial talk, he sat down to one side and said to him: [258]

"Master Gotama, what is the cause and reason why these various speculative views arise in the world: 'The world is eternal' or 'The world is not eternal'; or 'The world is finite' or 'The world is infinite'; or 'The soul and the body are the same' or 'The soul is one thing, the body is another'; or 'The Tathāgata exists after death,' or 'The Tathāgata does not exist after death,' or 'The Tathāgata both exists and does not exist after death,' or 'The Tathāgata neither exists nor does not exist after death'?"

"It is, Vaccha, because of not knowing form, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation that those various speculative views arise in the world: 'The world is eternal' ... or 'The Tathāgata neither exists nor does not exist after death.' This, Vaccha, is the cause and reason why those various speculative views arise in the world."<sup>295</sup>

2 *Because of Not Knowing (2)*

At Sāvatti....

"It is, Vaccha, because of not knowing feeling, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation that those various speculative views arise in the world: 'The world is eternal' ... or 'The Tathāgata neither exists nor does not exist after death.' This,

Vaccha, is the cause and reason why those various speculative views arise in the world."

3 *Because of Not Knowing* (3)

[259] ... "It is, Vaccha, because of not knowing perception, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation that those various speculative views arise in the world...."

4 *Because of Not Knowing* (4)

... "It is, Vaccha, because of not knowing volitional formations, their origin, their cessation, and the way leading to their cessation that those various speculative views arise in the world...."

5 *Because of Not Knowing* (5)

[260] ... "It is, Vaccha, because of not knowing consciousness, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation that those various speculative views arise in the world...."

6–10 *Because of Not Seeing*

... "It is, Vaccha, because of not seeing form ... feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation that those various speculative views arise in the world...."<sup>296</sup>

11–15 *Because of Not Breaking Through*

... "It is, Vaccha, because of not breaking through to form ... feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation that those various speculative views arise in the world...." [261]

16–20 *Because of Not Comprehending*

(*The same, but read "not comprehending form," etc.*)

21–25 *Because of Not Penetrating*

26–30 *Because of Not Discerning*

31–35 *Because of Not Discriminating*

36–40 *Because of Not Differentiating*

41–45 *Because of Not Examining*

[262]

46–50 *Because of Not Closely Examining*

51–55 *Because of Not Directly Cognizing*

... "It is, Vaccha, because of not directly cognizing form ... feeling ... perception ... volitional formations ... consciousness, its origin, its cessation, and the way leading to its cessation that those various speculative views arise in the world: [263] 'The world is eternal' ... or 'The Tathāgata neither exists nor does not exist after death.' This, Vaccha, is the cause and reason why those various speculative views arise in the world: 'The world is eternal' or 'The world is not eternal'; or 'The world is finite' or 'The world is infinite'; or 'The soul and the body are the same' or 'The soul is one thing, the body is another'; or 'The Tathāgata exists after death,' or 'The Tathāgata does not exist after death,' or 'The Tathāgata both exists and does not exist after death,' or 'The Tathāgata neither exists nor does not exist after death.'"

## Chapter XIII

### 34 *Jhānasamyutta*<sup>297</sup>

#### Connected Discourses on Meditation

##### 1 *Attainment in relation to Concentration*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, there are these four kinds of meditators. What four? [264]

"Here, bhikkhus, a meditator is skilled in concentration regarding concentration but not skilled in attainment regarding concentration.<sup>298</sup>

"Here a meditator is skilled in attainment regarding concentration but not skilled in concentration regarding concentration.

"Here a meditator is skilled neither in concentration regarding concentration nor in attainment regarding concentration.

"Here a meditator is skilled both in concentration regarding concentration and in attainment regarding concentration.

"Therein, bhikkhus, the meditator who is skilled both in concentration regarding concentration and in attainment regarding concentration is the chief, the best, the foremost, the highest, the most excellent of these four kinds of meditators.

"Just as, bhikkhus, from a cow comes milk, from milk comes cream, from cream comes butter, from butter comes ghee, and from ghee comes cream-of-ghee,<sup>299</sup> which is reckoned the best of all these, so too the meditator who is skilled both in concentration regarding concentration and in attainment regarding concentration is the chief, the best, the foremost, the highest, the most excellent of these four kinds of meditators."

##### 2 *Maintenance in relation to Concentration*

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, there are these four kinds of meditators. What four?

"Here, bhikkhus, a meditator is skilled in concentration regarding concentration but not skilled in maintenance regarding concentration.<sup>300</sup>

"Here a meditator is skilled in maintenance regarding concentration but not skilled in concentration regarding concentration.

"Here a meditator is skilled neither in concentration nor in maintenance regarding concentration.

"Here a meditator is skilled both in concentration and in maintenance regarding concentration.

"Therein, bhikkhus, the meditator who is skilled both in concentration and in maintenance regarding concentration [265] is the chief, the best, the foremost, the supreme, the most excellent of these four kinds of meditators.

"Just as, bhikkhus, from a cow comes milk ... and from ghee comes cream-of-ghee, which is reckoned the best of all these, so too the meditator who is skilled both in concentration and in maintenance regarding concentration ... is the most excellent of these four kinds of meditators."

##### 3 *Emergence in relation to Concentration*

(The same, but for "skilled in maintenance" read "skilled in emergence.")<sup>301</sup>

##### 4 *Pliancy in relation to Concentration*

(The same, but read "skilled in pliancy.")<sup>302</sup> [266]

##### 5 *The Object in relation to Concentration*

(The same, but read "skilled in the object.")<sup>303</sup>

##### 6 *The Range in relation to Concentration*

(The same, but read "skilled in the range.")<sup>304</sup> [267]

##### 7 *Resolution in relation to Concentration*

(The same, but read "skilled in resolution.")<sup>305</sup>

## 8 Thoroughness in relation to Concentration

(The same, but read "a thorough worker regarding concentration.")<sup>306</sup> [268]

## 9 Persistence in relation to Concentration

(The same, but read "a persistent worker regarding concentration.")<sup>307</sup>

## 10 Suitability in relation to Concentration

(The same, but read "one who does what is suitable regarding concentration.")<sup>308</sup> [269]

## 11 Maintenance in relation to Attainment

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, there are these four kinds of meditators. What four?

"Here, bhikkhus, a meditator is skilled in attainment regarding concentration but not skilled in maintenance regarding concentration.

"Here a meditator is skilled in maintenance regarding concentration but not skilled in attainment regarding concentration.

"Here a meditator is skilled neither in attainment nor in maintenance regarding concentration.

"Here a meditator is skilled both in attainment and in maintenance regarding concentration.

"Therein, bhikkhus, the meditator who is skilled both in attainment and in maintenance regarding concentration is the chief, the best, the foremost, the highest, the most excellent of these four kinds of meditators.

"Just as, bhikkhus, from a cow comes milk ... and from ghee comes cream-of-ghee, which is reckoned the best of all these, so too the meditator who is skilled both in attainment and in maintenance regarding concentration ... is the most excellent of these four kinds of meditators."

## 12 Emergence in relation to Attainment

(The same, but for "skilled in maintenance regarding concentration" read "skilled in emergence regarding concentration.") [270]

## 13 Pliancy in relation to Attainment

(The same, but read "skilled in pliancy.")

## 14 The Object in relation to Attainment

(The same, but read "skilled in the object.")

## 15 The Range in relation to Attainment

(The same, but read "skilled in the range.") [271]

## 16 Resolution in relation to Attainment

(The same, but read "skilled in resolution.")

## 17 Thoroughness in relation to Attainment

(The same, but read "a thorough worker regarding concentration.")

## 18 Persistence in relation to Attainment

(The same, but read "a persistent worker regarding concentration.")

## 19 Suitability in relation to Attainment

(The same, but read "one who does what is suitable regarding concentration.") [272]

## 20 Emergence in relation to Maintenance

At Sāvatti. "Bhikkhus, there are these four kinds of meditators. What four?

"Here, bhikkhus, a meditator is skilled in maintenance regarding concentration but not skilled in emergence regarding concentration.

"Here a meditator is skilled in emergence regarding concentration but not skilled in maintenance regarding concentration.

"Here a meditator is skilled neither in maintenance nor in emergence regarding concentration.

"Here a meditator is skilled both in maintenance and in emergence regarding concentration.

"Therein, bhikkhus, the meditator who is skilled both in maintenance and in emergence regarding concentration is the chief ... the most excellent of these four kinds of meditators." [273]

21–27 *Pliancy in relation to Maintenance, Etc.*

(These seven suttas are modelled on the preceding one, but "emergence" is replaced by the seven terms from "pliancy" through "one who does what is suitable," as in §§13–19.)

28 *Pliancy in relation to Emergence*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, there are these four kinds of meditators. What four?

"Here, bhikkhus, a meditator is skilled in emergence but not in pliancy ... [274] ... skilled in pliancy but not in emergence ... skilled neither in emergence nor in pliancy ... skilled both in emergence and in pliancy regarding concentration.

"Therein, bhikkhus, the meditator who is skilled both in emergence and in pliancy regarding concentration is the chief ... the most excellent of these four kinds of meditators."

29–34 *The Object in relation to Emergence, Etc.*

(These six suttas are modelled on the preceding one, but "pliancy" is replaced by the six terms from "the object" through "one who does what is suitable.") [275]

35 *The Object in relation to Pliancy*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, there are these four kinds of meditators. What four?

"Here, bhikkhus, a meditator is skilled in pliancy but not in the object ... skilled in the object but not in pliancy ... skilled neither in pliancy nor in the object ... skilled both in pliancy and in the object regarding concentration.

"Therein, bhikkhus, the meditator who is skilled both in pliancy

and in the object regarding concentration is the chief ... the most excellent of these four kinds of meditators."

36–40 *The Range in relation to Pliancy, Etc.*

(These five suttas are modelled on the preceding one, but "the object" is replaced by the five terms from "the range" through "one who does what is suitable.")

41 *The Range in relation to the Object*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, there are these four kinds of meditators. What four?

"Here, bhikkhus, a meditator is skilled in the object but not in the range ... skilled in the range but not in the object ... skilled neither in the object nor in the range ... skilled both in the object and in the range regarding concentration.

"Therein, bhikkhus, the meditator who is skilled both in the object and in the range regarding concentration is the chief ... the most excellent of these four kinds of meditators." [276]

42–45 *Resolution in relation to the Object, Etc.*

(These four suttas are modelled on the preceding one, but "the range" is replaced by the four terms from "resolution" through "one who does what is suitable.")

46 *Resolution in relation to the Range*

At Sāvattī. "Bhikkhus, there are these four kinds of meditators. What four?

"Here, bhikkhus, a meditator is skilled in the range but not in resolution ... skilled in resolution but not in the range ... skilled neither in the range nor in resolution ... skilled both in the range and in resolution regarding concentration.

"Therein, bhikkhus, the meditator who is skilled both in the range and in resolution regarding concentration is the chief ... the most excellent of these four kinds of meditators."

47–49 *Thoroughness in relation to the Range, Etc.*

(These three suttas are modelled on the preceding one, but “resolution” is replaced by the three terms: “a thorough worker,” “a persistent worker,” and “one who does what is suitable.”)

50 *Thoroughness in relation to Resolution*

At Sāvatti. “Bhikkhus, there are these four kinds of meditators. What four?”

“Here, bhikkhus, a meditator is skilled in resolution [277] but not a thorough worker ... a thorough worker but not skilled in resolution ... neither skilled in resolution nor a thorough worker ... both skilled in resolution and a thorough worker regarding concentration.

“Therein, bhikkhus, the meditator who is both skilled in resolution and a thorough worker regarding concentration is the chief ... the most excellent of these four kinds of meditators.”

51–52 *Thoroughness in relation to the Range, Etc.*

(These two suttas are modelled on the preceding one, but “a thorough worker” is replaced by the two terms: “a persistent worker” and “one who does what is suitable.”)

53 *Persistence in relation to Thoroughness*

At Sāvatti. “Bhikkhus, there are these four kinds of meditators. What four?”

“Here, bhikkhus, a meditator is a thorough worker but not a persistent worker ... a persistent worker but not a thorough worker ... neither a thorough worker nor a persistent worker ... both a thorough worker and a persistent worker regarding concentration.

“Therein, bhikkhus, the meditator who is both a thorough worker and a persistent worker regarding concentration is the chief ... the most excellent of these four kinds of meditators.”

54 *Suitability in relation to Thoroughness*

At Sāvatti. “Bhikkhus, there are these four kinds of meditators. What four?”

“Here, bhikkhus, a meditator is a thorough worker but not one who does what is suitable regarding concentration....”

55 *Suitability in relation to Persistence*

At Sāvatti. “Bhikkhus, there are these four kinds of meditators. What four?”

“Here, bhikkhus, a meditator is a persistent worker but not one who does what is suitable ... one who does what is suitable but not a persistent worker ... neither a persistent worker nor one who does what is suitable ... [278] both a persistent worker and one who does what is suitable regarding concentration.

“Therein, bhikkhus, the meditator who is both a persistent worker and one who does what is suitable regarding concentration is the chief, the best, the foremost, the highest, the most excellent of these four kinds of meditators.

“Just as, bhikkhus, from a cow comes milk, from milk comes cream, from cream comes butter, from butter comes ghee, and from ghee comes cream-of-ghee, which is reckoned the best of all these, so too the meditator who is both a persistent worker and one who does what is suitable regarding concentration is the chief, the best, the foremost, the highest, the most excellent of these four kinds of meditators.”

The Book of the Aggregates is finished.

## Notes

### 22. *Khandhasaṃyutta*

1 The name means "Nakula's father." His wife is called Nakulamātā, "Nakula's mother," though the texts never disclose the identity of Nakula. The Buddha pronounced him and his wife the most trusting (*etadaggaṃ viśāsā-kānaṃ*) of his lay disciples (AN I 26). According to Spk, they had been the Blessed One's parents in five hundred past lives and his close relations in many more past lives. For additional references see DPPN 2:3 and Hecker, "Shorter Lives of the Disciples," in Nyanaponika and Hecker, *Great Disciples of the Buddha*, pp. 375–78.

2 All three eds. of SN, and both eds. of Spk, read *anicca-dassāvi*, "not always a seer," but the SS reading *adhicca-dassāvi*, "a chance seer," may be more original; CPD also prefers the latter. Spk: "Because of my affliction I am unable to come whenever I want; I get to see (him) only sometimes, not constantly."

*Manobhāvanīyā*, used in apposition to *bhikkhū*, has often been misinterpreted by translators to mean "with developed mind." However, the expression is a gerundive meaning literally "who should be brought to mind," i.e., who are worthy of esteem. Spk: "Those great elders such as Sāriputta and Moggallāna are called 'worthy of esteem' ('to be brought to mind') because the mind (*citta*) grows in wholesome qualities whenever they are seen."

3 Be and Se read the second descriptive term as *aṇḍabhūto*, lit. "egg-become," and Spk endorses this with its explanation:

"*Aṇḍabhūto*: become weak (*dubbala*) like an egg. For just as one cannot play with an egg by throwing it around or hitting it—since it breaks apart at once—so this body has 'become like an egg' because it breaks apart even if one stumbles on a thorn or a stump." Despite the texts and Spk, Ee *addhabhūto* may be preferable; see 35:29 and IV, n. 14.

4 On the commentarial etymology of *puṭhujjana*, see II, n. 153. Spk gives a long analysis of this passage; for a translation of the parallel at Ps I 20–25, see Bodhi, *Discourse on the Root of Existence*, pp. 33–38. The commentaries distinguish between the "uninstructed worldling" (*assutavā puṭhujjana*) and the "good worldling" (*kalyāṇa puṭhujjana*). While both are worldlings in the technical sense that they have not reached the path of stream-entry, the former has neither theoretical knowledge of the Dhamma nor training in the practice, while the latter has both and is striving to reach the path.

5 Text here enumerates the twenty types of identity view (*sakkāyaditṭhi*), obtained by positing a self in the four given ways in relation to the five aggregates that constitute personal identity (*sakkāya*; see 22:105). Identity view is one of the first three fetters to be eradicated by the attainment of the path of stream-entry.

Spk: He regards form as self (*rūpaṃ attato samanupassati*), by regarding form and the self as indistinguishable, just as the flame of an oil lamp and its colour are indistinguishable. He regards self as possessing form (*rūpavantaṃ attānaṃ*), when he takes the formless (i.e., the mind or mental factors) as a self that possesses form, in the way a tree possesses a shadow; form as in self (*attani rūpaṃ*), when he takes the formless (mind) as a self within which form is situated, as the scent is in a flower; self as in form (*rūpasmiṃ attānaṃ*), when he takes the formless (mind) as a self situated in form, as a jewel is in a casket. He is obsessed by the notions, "I am form, form is mine": he swallows these ideas with craving and views, takes his stand upon them, and grasps hold of them.

Spk states that the identification of each aggregate individually with the self is the annihilationist view (*ucchedaditṭhi*), while the other views are variants of eternalism

(*sassataditṭhi*); thus there are five types of annihilationism and fifteen of eternalism. To my mind this is unacceptable, for eternalist views can clearly be formulated by taking the individual mental aggregates as the self. It also seems to me questionable that a view of self must implicitly posit one (or more) of the aggregates as self; for a view of self to have any meaning or content, it need only posit a relationship between a supposed self and the aggregates, but it need not identify one of the aggregates as self. According to the Buddha, all such positions collapse under analysis. See the "considerations of self" section of the Mahānidāna Sutta (DN II 66–68), translated with commentary in Bodhi, *The Great Discourse on Causation*, pp. 53–55, 92–98.

- 6 Spk: Even for the Buddhas the body is afflicted, but the mind is afflicted when it is accompanied by lust, hatred, and delusion.
- 7 This is a common formula describing a disciple whose minimal attainment is stream-entry (*sotāpatti*). The path of stream-entry eradicates the lower three fetters: identity view, doubt, and grasping of rules and vows.
- 8 Spk: Here, nonaffliction of mind is shown by the absence of defilements. Thus in this sutta the worldly multitude is shown to be afflicted in both body and mind, the arahant to be afflicted in body but unafflicted in mind. The seven trainees (*sekha*: the four on the path and three at the fruition stages) are neither [entirely] afflicted in mind nor [entirely] unafflicted in mind, but they are pursuing nonaffliction of mind (*anāturaccittataṃ yeva bhajanti*).
- 9 Spk: They wanted to spend the three months of the rains residence there.
- 10 Spk here gives a long account of how Sāriputta assists his fellow monks with both their material needs (*āmisānuggaha*) and with the Dhamma (*dhammānuggaha*). For a translation, see Nyanaponika Thera, "Sāriputta: The Marshal of the Dhamma," in Nyanaponika and Hecker, *Great Disciples of the Buddha*, pp. 21–22.
- 11 *Elagalāgumbha*. PED identifies *elagalā* as the plant *Cassia tora*. Spk: This bush grows where there is a constant supply of flowing water. People made a bower with four posts, over which they let the bush grow, forming a pavilion.

Below this they made a seat by placing bricks down and strewing sand over them. It was a cool place during the day, with a fresh breeze blowing from the water.

- 12 Spk: *Gone abroad* (*nānāverajjagataṃ*): Gone to a realm different from the realm of one king. A foreign realm (*virajja*) is another realm; for as a region different from one's own is called a foreign region (*videsa*), so a realm different from the one where one normally resides is called a foreign realm. That is what is meant by "abroad."
- 13 See II, n. 72.
- 14 Spk says that all these terms should be understood as synonyms of craving (*taṇhā*). I deliberately translate *parilāha* in two ways: as "passion" when it is used as a synonym for craving (as here), and as "fever" (just below) when it is used to signify a severe degree of suffering.
- 15 Spk: This passage is introduced to show the danger facing one who is not devoid of lust for the five aggregates, and the benefits won by one who is devoid of lust.
- 16 Mahākaccāna was the Buddha's foremost disciple in the detailed exposition of brief sayings, a skill he displays in this sutta and the next, and elsewhere in SN at 35:130, 132. For a concise account of his life and teachings, see Bodhi, "Mahākaccāna: The Master of Doctrinal Exposition," in Nyanaponika and Hecker, *Great Disciples of the Buddha*, pp. 213–44. Avanti, his native region, was to the far southwest of the Ganges basin. This entire sutta is quoted verbatim at Nidd I 197–200 in place of a commentary on the verse below.
- 17 Sn 844. In analysing the first line of the verse, Mahākaccāna does not simply explain the literal meaning of the words, which taken literally make perfectly good sense. Instead he treats the terms as metaphors bearing figurative meanings, and then draws out these meanings by plotting the terms on to a technical system of exegesis not evident in the verse itself. This approach to interpretation was to become characteristic of the later commentaries.
- 18 The first line of the verse reads: *okaṃ pahāya aniketasāri*. No mention is made of *okasāri* or *anokasāri*, "one who roams in a home" and "one who roams about homeless," but Mahākaccāna introduces these terms as implicit in the absolute construction *okaṃ pahāya*. The use of *dhātu* as a synonym

for *khandha* is unusual; more often the two are treated as headings for different schemes of classification. But see 22:45, 53, 54, etc., where we also meet this usage.

I follow the reading of the text in Se and Ee, *rūpadhātu-rāgavinibaddhaṃ*, also supported by Spk (Be), as against Be *-vinibandhaṃ*. Spk resolves the compound, *rūpadhātumhi rāgena vinibaddhaṃ*, and explains this consciousness as the kammic consciousness (*kammaṃviññāṇa*). The passage confirms the privileged status of consciousness among the five aggregates. While all the aggregates are conditioned phenomena marked by the three characteristics, consciousness serves as the connecting thread of personal continuity through the sequence of rebirths. This ties up with the idea expressed at 12:38–40 that consciousness is the persisting element in experience that links together the old existence with the new one. The other four aggregates serve as the "stations for consciousness" (*viññāṇaṭṭhitiyo*; see 22:53–54). Even consciousness, however, is not a self-identical entity but a sequence of dependently arisen occasions of cognizing; see MN I 256–60.

- 19 Spk: Why isn't the consciousness element mentioned here (as a "home for consciousness")? To avoid confusion, for "home" is here spoken of in the sense of a condition (*pac-caya*). An earlier kammic consciousness is a condition for both a later kammic consciousness and a resultant consciousness, and an (earlier) resultant consciousness for both a (later) resultant consciousness and a (later) kammic consciousness. Therefore the confusion could arise: "What kind of consciousness is intended here?" To avoid such confusion, consciousness is not included, and the teaching is expressed without disorder. Further, the other four aggregates, as objects (or bases: *ārammaṇavāsena*), are said to be "stations for the kammically generative consciousness" (*abhisankhāravīññāṇaṭṭhitiyo*), and to show them thus consciousness is not mentioned here.
- 20 *Engagement and clinging* (*upay' upādāna*), etc. See 12:15 and II, n. 31. Spk explains that although all arahants abandon these, the Tathāgata, the Perfectly Enlightened One, is mentioned as the supreme example because his status as an arahant is most evident to all the world.

- 21 Spk: Why is consciousness mentioned here? To show the abandoning of defilements. For defilements are not fully abandoned in relation to the other four aggregates only, but in relation to all five.
- 22 I read the long compound with Be and Se *rūpanimittaniketa-visāraviniḅandha*. Ee has *-sāra-* in place of *-visāra-*. The interpretation is as difficult as it looks. I have unravelled it with the aid of Spk, which explains: "Form itself is the 'sign' (*nimitta*) in the sense that it is a condition for defilements, and it is also the abode (consisting in) the 'sign of forms,' being an abode in the sense of a dwelling place, namely, for the act of objectification. By the two terms 'diffusion and confinement' (*visāra-viniḅandha*) what is meant is the expansion of defilements and their confining (or binding) nature. (Thus the full compound should be resolved:) 'diffusion and confinement in the abode (consisting in) the sign of forms.' Hence the meaning is: 'by the diffusion of defilements, and by the bondage of defilements arisen in the abode (consisting in) the sign of forms.' *One is called 'one who roams about in an abode': one is called 'one who roams about in a dwelling place' by making (forms) an object.*"
- 23 Spk: Why are the five aggregates here called "home" (*oka*), while the six objects are called "an abode" (*niketa*)? Because of the relative strength and weakness of desire and lust, respectively. For though they are similar in being places of residence, "home" means one's house, a permanent dwelling place, while "abode" is a place where one dwells for a special purpose, such as a park, etc. As desire and lust are strong in relation to one's home, which is inhabited by one's wife, children, wealth, and possessions, so too they are strong in regard to the internal aggregates. But as lust and desire are weaker in regard to such places as parks, etc., so too in relation to external objects.
- Spk-pt: Because desire and lust are strong in relation to the internal five aggregates, the latter are called "home," and because desire and lust are weaker in relation to the six external objects, the latter are called "an abode."
- 24 Such intimacy with lay people in the affairs of lay life is considered unsuitable for a monk; see 9:7 and 35:241 (IV 180,17-21).

- 25 Se: *purekkharāno*; Be and Ee: *purakkharāno*. Sn reads as in Se. The word usually means "honouring, revering," but the text here plays on the literal meaning "putting in front," interpreted as projecting into the future through desire. Spk glosses it with *vaṭṭaṃ purato kurumāno*, "putting the round of existence in front." The negative *apurekkharāno* is here glossed *vaṭṭaṃ purato akurumāno*, and at Pj II 547,6-7 *āyatiṃ attabhāvaṃ anabhinibbattento*, "not producing individual existence in the future." Mahākaccāna's explanation echoes the Buddha's exegesis of the Bhaddekaratta verses at MN III 188,15-26.
- 26 This passage is also found at 56:9, also at DN I 8,9-16 and elsewhere. The expressions used are probably taken from the arsenal of rhetoric used in the heated philosophical debates that took place between the wanderers of different sects. The mood of these debates, and the Buddha's evaluation of them, is effectively conveyed by a number of suttas in the Aṭṭhakavagga; see Sn IV, 8, 12, 13.
- 27 The quote is from DN II 283,9-13, but the words *setṭhā devamanussānaṃ* are not found there. They are, however, attached to the partly parallel statement, also addressed to Sakka, at MN I 252,3-5.
- 28 Spk: "*Liberated in the extinction of craving (taṇhāsankhaya-vimuttā)*: Liberated in Nibbāna, the extinction of craving, by the liberation of the fruit, which takes Nibbāna as object." This explanation, it seems, is supported by the texts. While simple *khaya*, in relation to *vimutta*, usually occurs in the ablative (see e.g. MN III 31,1-2 foll.), *sankhaya* is in the locative (e.g., at 4:25: *anuttare upadhisankhaye vimutto*).
- 29 See II, n. 58.
- 30 Here the text speaks of the diachronic or distal origination of the five aggregates, in contrast to the synchronic or proximal origination shown below at 22:56, 57. The concluding portion of the passage shows that we have here a compressed statement of dependent origination. To "seek delight, welcome, and remain holding" is the work of craving (*taṇhā*). The delight (*nandi*) obtained is clinging (*upādāna*), from which the remaining links of the series flow. The passage thus demonstrates how craving for the present five aggregates is the efficient cause for the arising

of a fresh batch of five aggregates in the next existence. The section on passing away should be understood in the converse manner: when craving for the present five aggregates ceases, one has eliminated the efficient cause for the arising of the five aggregates in a future existence.

- 31 *Paṭisallāna*. Spk: The Blessed One saw those bhikkhus falling away from physical seclusion (*kāyaviveka*) and spoke to them thus because he knew that their meditation would succeed if they would obtain physical seclusion.
- 32 A nearly identical passage is incorporated into MN No. 138 (III 227,25–229,9). The reading here shows that *anupādā paritassanā* and *anupādāya paritassati* there are ancient errors which had crept into the texts even before the age of the commentators, who were beguiled into devising bad explanations of the bad reading. The MN text should be corrected on the basis of SN.
- 33 Spk explains *paritassanā* as a *dvanda* compound: *taṇhāparitassanā ca akusaladhammasamuppādā ca*; “the agitation of craving and a constellation of unwholesome states.” The long compound might also have been construed as a *tappurisa*: “a constellation of states (arisen from, associated with) agitation.” While both Spk and Spk-ṭ understand *paritassanā* in the sense of craving, it seems to me that the text emphasizes *bhaya-paritassanā*, “agitation through fear.” On how *paritassanā* has come to bear two meanings, see II, n. 137.
- 34 While the preceding sutta is framed solely in terms of identity view, this one is framed in terms of the “three grips” (*gāha*): “this is mine” (*etaṃ mama*) is the grip of craving; “this I am” (*eso ’ham asmī*), the grip of conceit; and “this is my self” (*eso me attā*), the grip of views. A shift also occurs in the implications of *paritassanā*, from craving and fear to sorrow and grief.
- 35 Collins translates *bhārahāra* as “the bearing of the burden,” contending that *hāra* must here be understood as an action noun rather than as an agent noun (*Selfless Persons*, p. 165). MW, however, lists “a carrier, a porter” as meanings of *hāra*, and it seems clear that this is the sense required here.
- 36 Spk: In what sense are these “five aggregates subject to

clinging” called the burden? In the sense of having to be borne through maintenance. For their maintenance—by being lifted up, moved about, seated, laid to rest, bathed, adorned, fed and nourished, etc.—is something to be borne; thus they are called a burden in the sense of having to be borne through maintenance.

- 37 The *puggalavāda* or “personalist” schools of Buddhism appealed to this passage as proof for the existence of the person (*puggala*) as a real entity, neither identical with the five aggregates nor different from them. It is the *puggala*, they claimed, that persists through change, undergoes rebirth, and eventually attains Nibbāna. This tenet was bluntly rejected by the other Buddhist schools, who saw in it a camouflaged version of the *ātman*, the self of the non-Buddhist systems. For an overview of the arguments, see Dutt, *Buddhist Sects in India*, pp. 184–206. The mainstream Buddhist schools held that the person was a mere convention (*vohāra*) or concept (*paññatti*) derivative upon (*upādāya*) the five aggregates, not a substantial reality in its own right. For the Theravāda response, see the first part of Kvu, a lengthy refutation of the “personalist” thesis.

Spk: Thus, by the expression “the carrier of the burden,” he shows the person to be a mere convention. For the person is called the carrier of the burden because it “picks up” the burden of the aggregates at the moment of rebirth, maintains the burden by bathing, feeding, seating, and laying them down during the course of life, and then discards them at the moment of death, only to take up another burden of aggregates at the moment of rebirth.

- 38 *Bhārādāna*. This formula is identical with the definition of the second noble truth (see 56:11). So too, the explanation of the laying down of the burden (*bhāranikkhepa*) is identical with the definition of the third truth.

Spk: *Seeking delight here and there (tatratatrābhīnandini)*: having the habit of seeking delight in the place of rebirth or among the various objects such as forms. Lust for the five cords of sensual pleasure is *craving for sensual pleasures (kāmataṇhā)*. Lust for form-sphere or formless-sphere existence, attachment to jhāna, and lust accompanied by the eternalist view: this is called craving for existence (*bhava-*

*taṇhā*). Lust accompanied by the annihilationist view is craving for extermination (*vibhavataṇhā*).

This explanation of the last two kinds of craving seems to me too narrow. More likely, craving for existence should be understood as the primal desire to continue in existence (whether supported by a view or not), craving for extermination as the desire for a complete end to existence, based on the underlying assumption (not necessarily formulated as a view) that such extermination brings an end to a real "I."

- 39 Spk: All these terms are designations for Nibbāna. For it is contingent upon this (*taṃ hi āgamma*) that craving fades away without remainder, ceases, is given up, is relinquished, and released; and here there is no reliance on sensual pleasures or views. For such a reason Nibbāna gains these names.
- 40 Spk: The root of craving is ignorance. One draws out craving along with its root by the path of arahantship.
- 41 The explanation of *pariññā*, full understanding, in terms of the destruction of lust (*rāgakkhaya*), etc., initially seems puzzling, but see MN I 66–67, where *pariññā* is used as a virtual synonym for *pahāna*. Spk specifies *pariññā* here as *accantapariññā*, ultimate abandonment, which it glosses as *samatikkama*, transcendence, and identifies with Nibbāna. Apparently *accantapariññā* is distinct from the usual three kinds of *pariññā*, on which see the following note.
- 42 *Anabhijānaṃ*, etc., are present participles, glossed *anabhijānanto*, etc. Spk: By "directly knowing" (*abhijānaṃ*), the full understanding of the known (*ñātapariññā*) is indicated; by "fully understanding" (*parijānaṃ*), full understanding by scrutinization (*tiraṇapariññā*); by "becoming dispassionate" and "abandoning," the full understanding as abandonment (*pahānapariññā*).

On the three kinds of full understanding, see I, n. 36. In sutta usage, the distinction between *abhijānāti* and *parijānāti* is drawn more sharply than in the commentaries. In the suttas, *abhijānāti* (and its cognates) indicates direct knowledge of phenomena in accordance with the pattern established by the Four Noble Truths. This knowledge is shared by both the *sekha* and the arahant. In contrast, *parijānāti* (and its cognates) is generally used only in rela-

- tion to the arahant, and signifies the consummation of the knowledge initiated by *abhijānāti*. The Mūlapariyāya Sutta, for example (at MN I 4,7–34), stresses that the *sekha* "has directly known" (*abhiññāya*) each of the twenty-four bases of "conceiving," but must still train further in order to fully understand them (*pariññeyyaṃ tassa*). Only of the arahant is it said "he has fully understood" (*pariññātaṃ tassa*).
- 43 The next three suttas are composed on the pattern of 14:31–33. Just below, 22:29–30 correspond to 14:35–36. Spk explains that in the former three texts, the Four Noble Truths are discussed (see II, n. 249); in the latter two, the round of existence and its cessation. The parallel of 14:34 is embedded in 22:60.
- 44 *Agha*, glossed *dukkha* by Spk.
- 45 *Pabhaṅga*, glossed *pabhijjanasabhāva*, "subject to breaking apart." Spk: Here the characteristic of impermanence is discussed.
- 46 The parallel at MN I 140,33–141,19 includes *digharattaṃ*, "for a long time"; 35:101 also omits this. Spk says that form and the other aggregates are abandoned by the abandoning of desire and lust, confirmed by 22:25 and 22:111.
- 47 *Yaṃ kho bhikkhu anuseti tena saṅkhaṃ gacchati*. The verb *anuseti* implies *anusaya*, the seven underlying tendencies of lust, aversion, and ignorance (see 36:3). Spk: If one has an underlying tendency towards form by way of sensual lust, etc., then one is described in terms of that same underlying tendency as "lustful, hating, deluded." But when that underlying tendency is absent, one is not reckoned thus.
- Additionally, we might suppose, one is reckoned not only by way of the defilements, but even more prominently by way of the aggregate with which one principally identifies. One who inclines to form is reckoned a "physical" person, one who inclines to feeling a "hedonist," one who inclines to perception an "aesthete" (or fact-gatherer?), one who inclines to volition a "man of action," one who inclines to consciousness a thinker, etc.
- 48 See I, n. 376.
- 49 Spk explains *anumiyati* as if it were equivalent to Skt

*anumryate*, “to die along with”: “When the underlying tendency is dying, the form to which it tends dies along with it (*anumarati!*); for when the object is breaking up, the mental factors that take it as object cannot persist.” This of course is ludicrous, for *anumiyati* is doubtlessly from *anu + mā*; CPD defines the verb as meaning “to be measured after,” which I follow here. This statement then sheds light on the famous passage at 44:1 (IV 376–77 = MN I 487–88) declaring that the Tathāgata, freed from reckoning in terms of form, etc. (*rūpasāṅkhāvimutto*), is immeasurable (*appameyyo*) like the great ocean.

- 50 *Uppāda, vaya, thitassa aññathattaṃ*. At AN I 152,6–10 these are called the three conditioned characteristics of the conditioned (*tiṇi saṅkhatassa saṅkhatalakkaṇāni*). The commentaries identify them with the three sub-moments in the momentary life span of a *dhamma*: arising (*uppāda*), persistence or presence (*thiti*), and dissolution (*bhaṅga*). (For more on this, see CMA 4:6.) Spk explains *thitassa aññathatta* as the aging (or decay) of the persisting living entity (*dharamānassa jivamānassa jarā*), namely, of the life faculty. The commentator mentions the opinion held by some teachers that it is not possible to posit a moment of decay in the case of the mental phenomena (feeling, etc.) [Spk-pṭ: because of the extreme brevity of the moment, decay being quickly overtaken by dissolution], but he rejects this view on the basis of the sutta itself. Spk-pṭ proposes a logical argument for the sub-moment of presence: “Just as a stage of dissolution distinct from the stage of arising is admitted, for otherwise it would follow that an entity dissolves in the very act of arising, so we must admit, as distinct from the stage of dissolution, a stage when an entity ‘confronts its own dissolution’ (*bhaṅgābhimukhāvattā*); for something cannot break up unless it has confronted its own dissolution.”
- 51 *Dhammānuddhammapaṭipanna*. Spk: *Navannaṃ lokuttara-dhammānaṃ anulomadhammaṃ pubbhāgaṭipadaṃ paṭipannassa*; “when he is practising the preliminary portion of the practice that is in conformity with the ninefold supramundane Dhamma (the four paths, their fruits, and Nibbāna).” Cp. II, n. 34.
- 52 *Rūpe nibbidābahuḷaṃ vihareyya*. *Nibbidā*, “revulsion,” is

usually taken to refer to an advanced level of insight, which follows knowledge and vision of things as they really are (see 12:23 and II, n. 69). Spk explains “fully understands” by way of the three kinds of full understanding (see n. 42), and “is freed” (*parimuccati*) as meaning “freed through the full understanding of abandonment arisen at the moment of the path.” Alternatively, we might take the former as the arahant’s full knowledge of the first noble truth, the latter as the liberation from future rebirth ensured by the eradication of the taints.

- 53 These words are identical with the Buddha’s famous injunction to Ānanda in the Mahāparinibbāna Sutta (at DN II 100,20–22), also below at 47:9, 13, 14 (V 154,5–6, 163,10–11, 164,28–29). In explaining the expression *attadīpa*, “with self as island,” Spk says: “What is meant by ‘self’? The mundane and supramundane Dhamma (*ko paṇ’ ettha attā nāma? lokiyalokuttaro dhammo*). Therefore he says next, ‘with the Dhamma as an island,’ etc.” This comment overlooks the obvious point that the Buddha is inculcating self-reliance.
- 54 The Se reading seems best: *yoni yeva upaparikkhitabbā*. Be omits *yeva* and Ee treats *yoni* as a masculine noun. Spk glosses *yoni* with *kāraṇa*, “cause,” and refers to MN III 142,23–24: *yoni h’ esā Bhūmija phalassa adhigamāya*; “For this, Bhūmija, is the basis for the achievement of the fruit.” See too 35:239 (IV 175,27–28) and AN II 76,24–25. Spk-pṭ offers an etymology: *yavati etasmā phalaṃ pasavati ti yoni*. At 22:95 we repeatedly find the phrase *yoniso upaparikkhati*, “carefully investigates,” and it is quite possible that here too *yoniso* was the original reading. A Burmese v.l. cited by Ee actually has *yoniso va*.
- 55 *Na paritassati*. See n. 33 above and II, n. 137.
- 56 *Tadaṅganibbuto ti vuccati*. Though *nibbuto* is the past participle generally used to describe one who has attained Nibbāna, the prefix *tadaṅga-* qualifies that sense, suggesting he has not actually attained Nibbāna but has only approximated its attainment. One might have rendered this expression “one who has attained Nibbāna in that respect,” i.e., only in respect of a particular freedom. Spk: He is “quenched in that respect” because of the quenching of the defilements

with respect to (or: through the factor of) insight. In this sutta it is just insight (*vipassanā va*) that is discussed.

- 57 *Dukkhasamudayagāminī samanupassanā*. Identity view (*sakkāyadiṭṭhi*) is so called because the five aggregates of clinging, which constitute personal identity (*sakkāya*), are also the most basic manifestation of suffering (*dukkha*), as declared in the first noble truth: *saṅkhittena pañc' upādānakhandhā dukkhā* (see 56:11). According to Spk, *samanupassanā* is here equivalent to views (*diṭṭhi*), while in the following passage on the cessation of suffering it denotes the knowledge of the four paths along with insight.
- 58 Spk: Seeing with correct wisdom (*sammappaññāya*) is the wisdom of the path together with insight. The mind becomes dispassionate (*virajjati*) at the moment of the path, and is liberated (*vimuccati*) at the moment of the fruit.
- 59 Spk: It is *steady* (*thitaṃ*) because there is no further work to be done; and *content* (*santussitaṃ*) because what was to be attained has been attained.

It is noteworthy that the passage makes an unexpected transition from impersonal neuter nominatives (describing the bhikkhu's mind, *cittaṃ*) to verbs that imply a personal subject (*na paritassati, parinibbāyati, pajānāti*).

- 60 The two expressions, "views concerning the past" (*pubbāntānudiṭṭhiyo*) and "views concerning the future" (*aparāntānudiṭṭhiyo*), clearly allude to the Brahmajāla Sutta (DN No. 1), which describes the famous sixty-two speculative views, eighteen about the past and forty-four about the future. Spk confirms this, and explains that at this point the first path has been shown [Spk-pt: by showing the complete abandonment of views]. The following passage shows the three higher paths and fruits; or, alternatively, the former passage shows the abandoning of views by way of mere insight, the sequel the four paths along with insight.

For "obstinate grasping," *Se thāmasā parāmāso* seems superior to *Be thāmaso parāmāso* and *Ee thāmaso parāmāso*; that is the reading at MN I 130,34, 257,4, etc. Spk glosses "obstinate grasping" as the obstinacy of views (*diṭṭhi-thāmaso*) and the grasping of views (*diṭṭhiparāmāso*), apparently construing *thāmasā*, an instrumental used adverbially, as if it were an independent noun.

- 61 I read with *Be* and *Se*: *asmi ti c' assa avigataṃ hoti*. *Ee*, and many mss, read *adhigataṃ* for *avigataṃ*. That the latter reading must be correct is proved by AN III 292,16-17, where the affirmative occurs, *asmi ti kho me vigataṃ*. This same argument applies to the reading at 22:89 below (III 128,34 foll.), despite the prevalence of *adhigataṃ* there.
- Spk explains "this way of regarding things" as regarding with views (*diṭṭhisamanupassanā*), and "the notion 'I am'" as the "triple proliferation" (*papañcattaya*) of craving, conceit, and views. The two differ in that "regarding" is a conceptually formulated view, the notion "I am" a subtler manifestation of ignorance expressive of desire and conceit; see the important discussion at 22:89. The view of self is eliminated by the path of stream-entry; the notion "I am" is fully eradicated only by the path of arahantship.
- 62 I take this terse sentence to be describing the rebirth process contingent upon the persistence of the delusion of personal selfhood. Elsewhere "descent" (*avakkanti*)—of consciousness, or of name-and-form—indicates the commencement of a new existence (as at 12:39, 58, 59). Spk: When there is this group of defilements, there is the production of the five faculties conditioned by defilements and kamma.
- 63 I interpret this whole passage as a demonstration of how the new kammically active phase of existence commences through the renewal of conceiving in terms of the notion "I am" and speculative views of selfhood. Spk identifies "mind" (*mano*) with the kamma-mind (*kammamano*) and "mental phenomena" (*dhammā*) with its objects, or the former as the *bhavaṅga* and adverting consciousness. Ignorance-contact (*avijjāsamphassa*) is the contact associated with ignorance (*avijjāsampayuttaphassa*).
- Ignorance is the most fundamental condition underlying this process, and when this is activated by feeling it gives rise to the notion "I am" (a manifestation of craving and conceit). The idea "I am *this*" arises subsequently, when the vacuous "I" is given a content by being identified with one or another of the five aggregates. Finally, full eternalist and annihilationist views originate when the imagined self is held either to survive death or to undergo destruction at

death. This passage thus presents us with an alternative version of dependent origination, where the “way of regarding things” and the notion “I am” belong to the causally active side of the past existence; the five faculties to the resultant side of the present existence; and the recurrence of the notion “I am” to the causal side of the present existence. This will in turn generate renewed existence in the future.

- 64 The word *khandha*, aggregate, is glossed in the commentaries with *rāsi*, “group.” Each aggregate includes all instances of the particular phenomenological type that share its defining characteristic. The eleven categories into which each aggregate is classified are analysed at Vibh 1–12.
- 65 This sutta is quoted and discussed at Vism 477–78 (Ppn 14:214–15), in relation to the difference between the aggregates and the aggregates subject to clinging. The key terms distinguishing the *pañc’ upādānakkhandhā* from the *pañcakkhandhā* are *sāsava upādāniya*, “with taints and subject to clinging.” The *pañc’ upādānakkhandhā* are included within the *pañcakkhandhā*, for all members of the former set must also be members of the latter set. However, the fact that a distinction is drawn between them implies that there are *khandha* which are *anāsava anupādāniya*, “untainted and not subject to clinging.” On first consideration it would seem that the “bare aggregates” are those of the arahant, who has eliminated the *āsava* and *upādāna*. However, in the Abhidhamma all *rūpa* is classified as *sāsava* and *upādāniya*, and so too the resultant (*vipāka*) and functional (*kiriya*) mental aggregates of the arahant (see Dhs §§1103, 1219). The only aggregates classed as *anāsava* and *anupādāniya* are the four mental aggregates occurring on the cognitive occasions of the four supramundane paths and fruits (see Dhs §§1104, 1220). The reason for this is that *sāsava* and *upādāniya* do not mean “accompanied by taints and by clinging,” but “capable of being taken as the objects of the taints and of clinging,” and the arahant’s mundane aggregates can be taken as objects of the taints and clinging by others (see As 347). For a detailed study of this problem, see Bodhi, “Aggregates and Clinging Aggregates.”

Spk: Among the five aggregates the form aggregate is of the sense sphere, the other four aggregates are of the four planes (sense sphere, form sphere, formless sphere, supramundane). *With taints (sāsava)* means: what becomes a condition for the taints by way of object; so too *that can be clung to (upādāniya)* means what becomes a condition for clinging [Spk-pt: by being made its object]. Among the aggregates subject to clinging, stated by way of the practice of insight, the form aggregate is sense sphere, the others pertain to the three planes (i.e., excluding only the supramundane).

- 66 This is the threefold conceit: superiority, equality, and inferiority.
- 67 This passage applies the formula for the Four Noble Truths to each of the five aggregates, in accordance with the Buddha’s statement, “the five aggregates subject to clinging are suffering” (56:11). See 12:13 and II, n. 27.
- 68 Spk: The mutual destruction of delight (*nandi*) and lust (*rāga*) is stated to show that in denotation there is actually no difference between them. Or, alternatively, one abandons delight by experiencing revulsion, (which occurs) through the contemplation of revulsion (*nibbidānupassanā*); one abandons lust by becoming dispassionate, (which occurs) through the contemplation of dispassion (*virāgānupassanā*). To this extent, having set up insight [Spk-pt: with the phrase, “with the destruction of delight comes the destruction of lust,” which consummates the function of insight], by the phrase “with the destruction of lust comes the destruction of delight” he shows the path; and by the phrase “with the destruction of delight and lust the mind is liberated” the fruit is shown.
- 69 I read *upayo* with Be and Se, as against Ee *upāyo*. Here it seems the noun is being used as a virtual present participle. Spk: *Engaged*: one who has approached (*upagato*) the five aggregates by way of craving, conceit, and views.
- 70 I translate in accordance with Se. Be and Ee have omitted the clauses on *vedanā* and *saññā*, apparently an old scribal error. I also read *nandūpasevana*, with Be and Se, as against Ee *nandūpasevana*. Though Spk does not offer a gloss, the Be–Se reading can claim support from the underlying metaphor of vegetation, which is made explicit in the simile

in the next sutta. In the simile *nandirāga* is compared to the water element, and it is thus appropriate that it be “sprinkled.”

The passage is quoted at DN III 228,6–13 in explanation of the “four stations of consciousness” (*catasso viññāṇaṭṭhitiyo*); see too Nidd II 1. We find here still another indication of how consciousness grows and evolves in dependence on the other four aggregates. This sutta and the next should be compared with 12:38–40, 12:64, and 22:3. As to why consciousness is not “engaged” with itself, see above n. 19, which makes essentially the same point.

- 71 Spk: *The basis is cut off* (*vocchijjatārammaṇaṃ*): the basis (or object) is cut off through the lack of any ability to precipitate rebirth. Spk-pt: The basis (or object), which is the condition for rebirth by way of the sign of kamma, etc., is “cut off” by way of (the cutting off of) the kamma that generates rebirth.

Spk-pt thus takes *ārammaṇa* here in the sense dominant in the Abhidhamma, i.e., as the object of rebirth-consciousness (see CMA 3:17). However, I understand the word in the older sense of “basis,” elsewhere glossed simply as *paccaya*; see II, n. 112. Spk’s explanation need not entail the interpretation proposed by Spk-pt.

- 72 Be, Se: *Anabhisankhacca vimuttaṃ* (Ee: *anabhisankhāraṇca vimuttaṃ*). The “nongenerative consciousness” is the consciousness that does not generate volitional formations (*sankhāra*). Spk says it is “liberated” because it does not generate rebirth.
- 73 The five kinds of “seeds” (*bija*) are actually five means of propagation. Spk gives examples of the five kinds drawn from Vin IV 35.
- 74 For a poetic version of the vegetation simile, see 5:9; for an elaboration of the comparison of consciousness to a seed, see AN I 223–24.
- 75 Spk: The Blessed One uttered this inspired utterance because he was aroused by powerful joy while reviewing the emancipating nature (*niyyānikabhāva*) of the Teaching. The five lower fetters (*pañc’ orambhāgiyāni saṃyojanāni*) are: identity view, doubt, distorted grasp of rules and vows, sensual lust, and ill will.

The formula for resolution recommended by the Buddha occurs in the suttas in two versions, one used by the annihilationists, the other the Buddha’s adaptation of this; as the two versions differ only with respect to two verb forms, they are sometimes confounded in the various recensions. From the commentarial glosses, it appears that the confusion had already set in before the age of the commentaries. Readings also differ among several editions of the same text. Generally I prefer the readings in Se, though in relation to the present sutta Se follows the lemma and gloss of Spk, which has adopted the first phrase in its annihilationist variant (though not interpreted as such). This corruption was probably already present in the text available to the commentators.

The annihilationist version—explicitly identified as *ucchedadiṭṭhi* at 22:81 and classed among the wrong views at 22:152 and 24:4—reads: *no c’ assaṃ no ca me siyā, na bhavissāmi na me bhavissati*. At AN V 63,28–64,2 the Buddha describes this creed as the highest of outside speculative views (*etadaggaṃ bāhirakānaṃ diṭṭhigatānaṃ*), the reason being that one who accepts such a view will not be attracted to existence nor averse to the cessation of existence. It is problematic how the optative clause in the annihilationist version should be interpreted; perhaps it can be read as an assertion that personal existence, along with its experienced world, is utterly fortuitous (“I might not have been and it might not have been mine”). The clause in the future tense clearly asserts that personal existence and its world will terminate at death.

The Buddha transformed this formula into a theme for contemplation consonant with his own teaching by replacing the first person verbs with their third person counterparts: *No c’ assa no ca me siyā, na bhavissati na me bhavissati*. The change of person shifts the stress from the view of self implicit in the annihilationist version (“I will be annihilated”) to an impersonal perspective that harmonizes with the *anattā* doctrine. In the present sutta, resolving (*adhimuccamāno*) on the formula is said to culminate in the destruction of the five lower fetters, that is, in the stage of nonreturning (*anāgāmitā*). Elsewhere the formula includes

a rider, *yad atthi yaṃ bhūtaṃ taṃ pajahāmi*, “what exists, what has come to be, that I am abandoning.” Contemplation of this is said to lead to equanimity. At MN II 264,29–265,20 practice guided by the full formula, with the rider, culminates in rebirth in the base of neither-perception-nor-non-perception (if the meditator clings to the equanimity) or in Nibbāna (if there is no clinging to the equanimity). At AN IV 70–74, resolution guided by the formula, again with the rider, leads to one of the five levels of nonreturning or to arahantship. At Ud 78,2-3 the shorter formula is applied to mindfulness of the body; one who dwells thus gradually crosses attachment, i.e., wins arahantship.

It may be significant that in the Nikāyas the precise meaning of the formula is never explicated, which suggests it may have functioned as an open-ended guide to reflection to be filled in by the meditator through personal intuition. As to the actual word meaning, the commentaries take the opening particle *c'* to represent *ce*, “if,” glossed *sace* by Spk and *yadi* by Spk-pt. On this basis they interpret each part of the formula as a conditional. Spk explains the formula in the present sutta on the basis of the questionable reading *c' assam*, though its second alternative conforms to the superior reading *c' assa*. I translate here from Spk very literally, rendering the lemma in the way favoured by the explanation: “If I were not, it would not be for me: If I were not (*sace ahaṃ na bhavyeyyaṃ*), neither would there be my belongings (*mama parikkhāro*). Or else: If in my past there had not been kammic formation (*kammābhi-saṅkhāro*), now there would not be for me these five aggregates. I will not be, (and) it will not be for me: I will now so strive that there will not be any kammic formation of mine producing the aggregates in the future; when that is absent, there will be for me no future rebirth.”

I part with the commentaries on the meaning of *c'*, which I take to represent *ca*; the syntax of the phrase as a whole clearly requires this. The Skt parallels actually contain *ca* (e.g., at Uv 15:4, parallel to Ud 78). If we accept this reading, then (in the present sutta) the first “it” can be taken to refer to the personal five aggregates, the second to the world apprehended through the aggregates. For the worldling

this dyad is misconstrued as the duality of self and world; for the noble disciple it is simply the duality of internal and external phenomena. On this basis I would interpret the formula thus: “The five aggregates can be terminated, and the world presented by them can be terminated. I will so strive that the five aggregates will be terminated, (and) so that the world presented by them will be terminated.” Alternatively, the first “it” might be taken to refer to craving, and the second to the five aggregates arisen through craving. In the additional rider, “what exists, what has come to be” denotes the presently existent set of five aggregates, which are being abandoned through the abandonment of the cause for their continued re-manifestation, namely, craving or desire-and-lust.

My understanding of this passage has been largely influenced by discussions with VĀT and Bhikkhu Nāṇatusita. I am also indebted to Peter Skilling for information on the Skt and Tibetan versions of the formula.

- 76 *Rūpaṃ vibhavissati*, etc. Spk glosses: *rūpaṃ bhijjissati*, “form will break up,” and Spk-pt: *rūpaṃ vinasissati*, “form will perish.” The commentators seem to understand “extermination” here as the incessant momentary cessation of the aggregates, but I believe the verb refers to the final cessation of the aggregates with the attainment of the *anupādisesa-nibbānadhātu*. This meaning harmonizes better with the opening formula, and also seems supported by Th 715cd: *saṅkhārā vibhavissanti, tattha kā paridevanā*, “formations (only) will be exterminated, so what lamentation can there be over that.”
- 77 Spk: *With the extermination of form (rūpassa vibhavā)*: by the seeing of extermination, together with insight [Spk-pt: for the word “extermination” in the text is stated by elision of the word “seeing”]. For the four paths together with insight are called “the seeing of the extermination of form, etc.” This is said with reference to that.

On the interpretation that I prefer (as stated in the preceding note), “the extermination of form,” etc., refers to the ultimate cessation of the aggregates in Nibbāna, and thus the realization that such cessation takes place functions as the spur implicit in the meditation formula that inspires the bhikkhu to break the five fetters.

- 78 *Anantarā āsavānaṃ khayō*. Here “the destruction of the taints” refers to arahantship, and it seems the bhikkhu is asking how arahantship can be attained directly, without being detained at the stage of nonreturner. Spk explains that there are two types of immediacy (*anantara*), proximate and distant. Insight is the proximate immediate cause for the path (since the supramundane path arises when insight has reached its peak), and the distant immediate cause for the fruit (since the fruit directly follows the path). Thus the bhikkhu is asking: “How should one know and see, with insight as the immediate cause, to attain the fruit of arahantship called ‘the destruction of the taints’?”
- 79 Spk: The worldling becomes frightened with the arising of weak insight (*dubbalavipassanā*); for he cannot overcome self-love and thus he becomes afraid, thinking, “Now I will be annihilated and won’t exist any more.” He sees himself falling into an abyss (see MN I 136,30–37,4 and n. 181 below). But when strong insight occurs to the instructed noble disciple, he doesn’t become frightened but thinks, “It is formations only that arise, formations only that cease.” Spk-pt: When the good worldling sees, with the knowledge of appearance as fearful, that formations are fearful, he doesn’t become afraid.
- “Knowledge of appearance as fearful” (*bhayat’ upaṭṭhānānāna*) is an advanced stage of insight knowledge which lays bare the fearful nature of formations in all three periods of time; see Vism 645–47; Ppn 21:29–34.
- 80 *Catuparivaṭṭa*, lit. “four turnings.” Spk-pt: By way of turning round the Four Noble Truths with respect to each of the five aggregates.
- 81 Strangely, the Nikāyas do not offer an analysis of the form derived from the four great elements (*catunnaṃ mahābhūtānaṃ upādāya rūpaṃ*). This analysis first appears only in the Abhidhamma Piṭaka, according to which such form includes the five sense faculties, four sense objects (the tactile object being assigned to three of the great elements, excluding the water element), the space element, sexual determination, physical nutriment (= edible food), etc.; see CMA 6:2–5. On nutriment as a condition for the physical body, see II, n. 18. In this sutta the proximate condition for

the origination of each of the five aggregates is shown, in contrast with 22:5, which shows the collective distal or remote condition for all five aggregates. For the distinction of the two types of conditions, see II, n. 58.

- 82 This paragraph shows trainees (*sekha*), who have directly known the Four Noble Truths and are practising for attainment of Nibbāna, the ultimate cessation of the five aggregates. For this reason the trainees are said to have “gained a foothold (*gādhanti*) in this Dhamma and Discipline,” in contrast to the arahants, who have completed their work.
- 83 This paragraph shows those beyond training (*asekha*), the arahants. Spk: They are *well liberated* (*suvimuttā*) by the liberation of the fruit of arahantship; *consummate ones* (*kevalino*), complete, having done all their duties. *There is no round for describing them* (*vaṭṭaṃ tesaṃ natthi paññāpanāya*): there is no remaining round (of rebirths) for the description of them. Or else “round” means basis (*kāraṇa*), so there is no basis for description. At this point the plane of the one beyond training (*asekhabhūmi*, i.e., of the arahant) has been discussed.
- On “consummate one,” see I, n. 446. On the idea of the arahant as beyond description or free from reckoning, see 22:35 and n. 47 above. The expression *vaṭṭaṃ tesaṃ natthi paññāpanāya* recurs at 44:6 (IV 391,10); see too DN II 63,30–64,1. The phrase might also have been translated, “There is no round for their manifestation.”
- 84 Contact (*phassa*) is the coming together of sense object and consciousness via a sense faculty. When this occurs, the other mental factors arise, most notably feeling, perception, and volition.
- 85 The fact that there is a difference between the name of the aggregate (*saṅkhārakkhandha*) and the term of definition (*sañcetanā*) suggests that this aggregate has a wider compass than the others. In the Abhidhamma Piṭaka and the commentaries, the *saṅkhārakkhandha* is treated as an “umbrella category” for classifying all mental factors other than feeling and perception. Volition is mentioned only as the most important factor in this aggregate, not as its exclusive constituent.
- 86 It is significant that while contact is the proximate condition

for feeling, perception, and volitional formations, name-and-form in its entirety is the proximate condition for consciousness. This ties up with the idea, as stated in 22:3, that the other four aggregates are the "home" of consciousness. See too in this connection 12:65 and 12:67.

- 87 The seven cases (*sattaṭṭhānā*) are obtained by merging the tetrad of the preceding sutta with the triad of 22:26. Spk: This sutta is a statement of both congratulations (*ussadanandiya*) and enticement (*palobhaniya*). For just as a king who has won a battle rewards and honours his victorious warriors in order to inspire the other soldiers to become heroes, so the Blessed One extols and praises the arahants in order to inspire the others to attain the fruit of arahantship.
- 88 A triple investigator (*tividhūpaparikki*). This may be understood by way of the Dhātusaṃyutta (SN 14), the Saḷāyatanaṃyutta (SN 35), and the Nidānaṃyutta (SN 12). See too MN No. 115, where skill in the elements, sense bases, and dependent origination is explained in detail, augmented by the skill of knowing the possible and the impossible.
- 89 It seems that here *bhikkhu paññāvimutto* should be understood as any arahant disciple, not specifically as the *paññāvimutta* contrasted with the *ubhatobhāgavimutta* type, as in MN I 477–78. See II, n. 210.
- 90 This is the second discourse of the Buddha, recorded at Vin I 13–14. The five bhikkhus are the first five disciples, who at this point are still trainees (*sekha*). They attain arahantship by the end of the discourse. Spk: Following the Dhammacakkappavattana Sutta (the first sermon), given on the full-moon day of Āsaḷha (July), the five were gradually established in the fruit of stream-entry. On the fifth of the following fortnight, he addressed them, thinking, "Now I will teach them the Dhamma for the destruction of the taints."
- 91 The sutta offers two "arguments" for the *anattā* thesis. The first demonstrates the selfless nature of the five aggregates on the ground that they are insusceptible to the exercise of mastery (*avasavattitā*). If anything is to count as our "self"

it must be subject to our volitional control; since, however, we cannot bend the five aggregates to our will, they are all subject to affliction and therefore cannot be our self. For a fuller presentation of this argument, see MN I 230–33. The second argument for *anattā* is introduced just below, beginning with the words "What do you think?..." This argument demonstrates the characteristic of nonself on the basis of the other two characteristics, impermanence and suffering, taken conjointly.

- 92 In the *Sāmaññaphala Sutta* this view is ascribed to the Ājivika teacher Makkhali Gosāla (DN I 53,24–28). The same source ascribes to Pūraṇa Kassapa the theory of the inefficacy of action (*akiriyavāda*; DN I 52,21–53,2), stated at 24:6 but without ascription. At 46:56 a different noncausality doctrine (*ahetukavāda*) is ascribed to Pūraṇa Kassapa.
- 93 See 14:34.
- 94 This is a compressed version of the fuller *Āditta Sutta* at 35:28, which applies the metaphor of burning to the twelve sense bases. Perhaps the present sutta was composed by simply replacing the sense bases with the aggregates, and was then compressed so that it would not "steal the show" from the more famous sutta, popularly known as the Fire Sermon, regarded by the Pāli tradition as the third formal discourse of the Buddha's ministry.
- 95 *Niruttipathā adhivacanapathā paññattipathā*. Spk: Language (*nirutti*, linguistic expression) is itself the pathway of language; or alternatively, language is called the pathway of language because it is the pathway for the communication of meanings to be understood through language. The other two terms should be understood in the same way; the three are synonyms.
- Dhs §§1306–8 distinguishes between *nirutti*, *adhivacana*, and *paññatti* on the one hand, and their respective *patha* on the other. There *nirutti* and the other two are treated as synonymous, but their respective *patha* are said to comprise all phenomena (*sabb' eva dhammā*). At DN II 63,28–64,2, name-and-form together with consciousness is said to be *adhivacanapatha*, *niruttipatha*, *paññattipatha*. On the basis of these texts it seems that Spk has gone astray here, and we should understand that the three pathways of language,

etc., are the five aggregates pertaining to the three time periods, and the corresponding temporal “term, label, description” applied to them is “language, designation, description.”

The sutta is quoted at Kv 150 as support for the Theravādin argument against the Sarvāstivādins, who held that past and future phenomena exist in some way.

- 96 Spk explains *ukkalā* as residents of the country of Ukkala (also called Okkala, according to CPD corresponding to modern Orissa). Spk treats *vasabhaññā* as a *dvanda*, *vasso ca bhañño ca*, and explains that the two held the three wrong views found at 24:5–7. I read the last expression with Se and Ee, *nindabyārosa-uparambhabhayā*. Be includes an additional term in the second place, *ghaṭṭana*, not found in the other eds. See the parallel at MN III 78,12–16, which reads as Se and Ee do here. In Spk, *ghaṭṭana* is the gloss on *byārosa*, which Be apparently has absorbed into the text.
- 97 Spk: *Clinging* (*upādiyamāno*): seizing by way of craving, conceit, and views. In the next two suttas, *conceiving* (*mañña-māno*) and *seeking delight* (*abhinandamāno*) are explained in the same way.
- 98 This sutta is identical with 18:21 (and 22:91), the next with 18:22 (and 22:92). A whole saṃyutta (SN 23) consists of suttas spoken to the Venerable Rādhā.
- 99 Nine abodes of beings (*sattāvāsa*) are enumerated at AN IV 401 (= DN III 263). The “pinnacle of existence” (*bhavagga*) is presumably the sphere of neither-perception-nor-nonperception, the highest realm of sentient existence. The term is used in this sense at Vibh 426,8 and regularly in the commentaries.
- 100 We should read with Be and Se: *anejaṃ te anuppattā*. Spk: This is arahantship, the abandoning of craving, which is known as “the stirring” (*ejā*). See 35:90, 91.
- 101 *Sattasaddhammagocarā*. The seven good qualities: faith, moral shame, fear of wrongdoing, learning, energy, mindfulness, and wisdom; see MN I 356,1–21; DN III 252,10–12.
- 102 The seven gems (*sattaratana*) are the seven factors of enlightenment (*satta bojjhaṅgā*); see 46:42. The threefold training (*tisikkhā*) is the training in the higher virtue, the higher mind, and the higher wisdom; see AN I 235–36.

- 103 The ten factors (*dasāṅga*): the eight perfected factors of the Noble Eightfold Path, augmented by right knowledge and right liberation. They are known more specifically as the ten factors of the one beyond training (*asekha*); see MN I 446,29–447,6, II 29,2–12, etc. On *nāga*, see I, n. 84.
- 104 *Vidhāsu nā vikampati*. Spk: This refers to the three modes of conceit (superior, equal, inferior).
- 105 Spk elaborates point-by-point on the comparison between the lion’s emerging from his lair and roaring, and the Buddha’s arising in the world and teaching the Dhamma. The lion’s sounding his roar is like the Buddha’s “setting in motion” the Wheel of the Dhamma in the Deer Park, and the terror of the smaller animals like the “arising of the terror of knowledge” (*ñāṇasantāsassa uppatti*) in the long-lived deities when they hear the Buddha expound the Four Noble Truths.
- 106 Also at 12:21, etc.; see II, n. 58. Spk refers to 22:56 for an explanation of the origin and passing away of the five aggregates.
- 107 Spk: “For the most part” (*yebhuyyena*) is said to make an exception of those devas who are noble disciples. For no fear at all arises in the arahants, though they experience “urgency of knowledge” (*ñāṇasaṃvega*) because they have attained what should be attained through careful striving by one stirred by a sense of urgency. The other devas, as they attend to impermanence, experience both fear as mental fright (*cittutrāsabhaya*) and, at the time of strong insight, the fear of knowledge (*ñāṇabhaya*: probably the advanced stage of insight called *bhayat’ upaṭṭhānañāṇa*, “knowledge of appearance as fearful”; see n. 79). *Included within identity* (*sakkāyapariyāpannā*): included in the five aggregates. Thus, when the Buddha teaches them the Dhamma stamped with the three characteristics, exposing the faults in the round of existence, the fear of knowledge enters them.
- 108 Spk says that this does not refer to recollection by direct knowledge (i.e., by retrocognition of the past) but to the recollection of one’s past abodes by way of insight. Spk seems to understand the purport of the Buddha’s statement to be that they *deliberately* recollect the past in terms of the aggregates. I take the point differently, i.e., that

though these ascetics imagine they are recalling the past experience of a permanent self, they are only recollecting past configurations of the five aggregates. This interpretation seems to be confirmed by the next paragraph, which reduces first-person memories (*evaṃrūpo ahosiṃ*) to experiences framed solely in terms of the aggregates (*rūpaṃ yeva*). It can also draw support from the parallel paragraph opening 22:47. Spk entitles this passage “the emptiness section” (*suññatāpabba*). A parallel commentary on the passage, slightly more elaborate, is at Vibh-a 3–6.

109 Spk: Even though emptiness has been discussed, the discussion is not yet definitive because the characteristic of emptiness (*suññatālakkaṇa*) has not been discussed. The present passage is introduced to show the characteristic of emptiness. Spk-pṭ: Since form, etc., are neither a self nor the belongings of a self, but are insubstantial and ownerless, they are empty of that (self). Their nature is emptiness, their characteristic is “being deformed,” etc.

110 *Ruppati ti kho bhikkhave tasmā rūpaṃ ti vuccati*. I have tried, though clumsily, to capture the subtle word play of the Pāli, which capitalizes on the apparent correspondence between the verb *ruppati* and the noun *rūpa*. Etymologically, the two are not related. *Ruppati* is a passive verb from the root *rup* (= Skt *rup*), “to break, injure, spoil.” MW lists *rupyate* (s.v. *rup*), “to suffer violent or racking pain.” See too PED, s.v. *ruppati*. Spk glosses: *Ruppati ti kuppati ghaṭṭiyati piḷiyati, bhijjati ti attho*; “It is deformed: it is disturbed, stricken, oppressed, meaning ‘it is broken.’”

At KS 2:73, n. 1, Woodward has misunderstood the point of the commentary. It is not the case that Buddhaghosa misconstrues “these various contacts not as referring to this life, but as ‘informing’ creatures in other spheres.” Rather, he merely cites the cold hells, hot hells, etc., as the realms where the different types of “deformation” are most evident (*pākaṭa*). Spk adds that being “deformed” is the specific characteristic (*paccattalakkhaṇa*) of form, which distinguishes it from feeling and the other aggregates; but the general characteristics (*sāmaññalakkhaṇa*) are what they have in common, namely, impermanence, suffering, and nonself.

111 Spk: It is feeling itself that feels, not another—a being or a person.

112 *Saṅkhatam abhisankharonti ti bhikkhave tasmā saṅkhārā ti vuccanti*. Unfortunately English is a poor medium for capturing the interconnections of this sentence in the Pāli, with the object (*saṅkhatam*), the verb (*abhisankharonti*), and the subject (*saṅkhārā*) all derived from the same stem. See my discussion of *saṅkhārā* in the General Introduction, pp. 44–47. To replicate the Pāli we might have rendered it, “They construct the constructed, therefore they are called volitional constructions,” though this would bear certain connotations quite alien to the original. It is also an unfortunate coincidence that “volitional formations,” my rendering for *saṅkhārā*, is related to “form,” my rendering for *rūpa*. In Pāli there is no etymological tie between *rūpa* and *saṅkhārā*. To capture the several nuances of the verb *abhisankharoti* we might have taken the liberty of rendering it, in this passage, by two verbs: “to generate,” which conveys the idea that the volitional formations actually produce the other aggregates (see the following note); and “to form,” which makes apparent the correspondence with the noun “formations.”

This passage shows the active role of *cetanā*, volition, in constructing experienced reality. Not only does volition influence the objective content of the experience, but it also shapes the psychophysical organism within which it has arisen and, via its role as *kamma*, shapes the future configurations of the five aggregates to be produced by *kamma*. In this connection see 35:146, on the six sense bases as “old *kamma*.”

113 All three printed eds. of SN read, *rūpaṃ rūpattāya saṅkhatam abhisankharonti*, and so for the other aggregates, except *viññāṇa*, where Ee reads, *viññāṇatthāya*; however, since Ee has no note on vv.ll., this is almost certainly an editorial oversight rather than a meaningful variant. Spk (Se and Ee) reads *rūpatthāya* in its lemma, implying that the termination *-atthāya* should apply to every aggregate, and apparently old Sinhalese mss of SN had this reading. Spk (Be), however, has *rūpattāya*. The explanation in Spk is equally intelligible on either reading of SN.

I follow Be here: "As one is said to cook congee as congee, to bake a cake as a cake, so it [Spk-pt: the collection of states headed by volition] constructs, builds up, amasses (*abhisankharoti āyūhati sampiṇḍati*) form itself—called 'the conditioned' because it is made by a combination of conditions—so that it becomes 'conditioned form' in accordance with its nature, for its formness (*tathattāya rūpabhāvāya*); the meaning is that it produces it (*nipphādeti ti attho*). This is the sense in brief: It constructs, produces the form arising along with itself and the associated feeling, etc. Here, too, the Blessed One shows just the specific characteristic of volitional formations, whose characteristic is volition. [Spk-pt: This is said because volition is the chief of the states belonging to the aggregate of volitional formations.]"

- 114 The eight flavours are: *ambīla, tittaka, kaṭuka, madhuka, khārika, akhārika, loṇaka, aloṇaka*; see too 47:8. The explanation of *viññāṇa* here is very similar to that of *saññā*, the difference being only in the type of sense object they cognize. Spk explains that the difference in object highlights a difference in their cognitive functions: "Perception is analysed by way of the eye door because it is evident in grasping the appearance and shape of the object; consciousness is analysed by way of the tongue door because it can grasp particular distinctions in an object even when there is no appearance and shape." Spk continues with an explanation (also found at *Vism* 437; *Ppn* 14:3–5) according to which *saññā*, *viññāṇa*, and *paññā* are cognitive functions of increasing depth, discriminative acumen, and power of comprehension; this, however, is difficult to reconcile with the account of these factors found in the *Nikāyas*. Usually in the suttas *viññāṇa* is presented simply as the basic awareness of an object through one of the sense bases, i.e., as bare "consciousness of" rather than as a discriminative capacity. A parallel treatment of *viññāṇa* at *MN* I 292,26–29 defines it through its ability to cognize the three types of feelings (pleasant, painful, neutral); this just shifts the problem to that of distinguishing between *viññāṇa* and *vedanā*. Hamilton discusses the problem posed by these passages (*Identity and Experience*, pp. 53–55, 92–93). She offers the helpful suggestion that although *viññāṇa* is here

- defined in a way that encroaches upon the domain of *saññā*, we should understand that *saññā* does the actual discrimination (of objects at all five senses) while *viññāṇa* "is the awareness by which we experience every stage of the cognitive process, including the process of discriminating" (p. 92). From the commentarial standpoint, *saññā* is discussed more fully at *As* 110–11 and *viññāṇa* (under the name *citta*) at *As* 63–64.
- 115 Spk: The first two sections—the emptiness section and the section on the characteristic of emptiness—have discussed the characteristic of nonself. Now he will discuss the characteristic of suffering. Therein, form does not devour one as a dog does a piece of meat, by tearing one apart, but rather in the way a soiled garment might cause discomfort, as when one says, "This shirt is devouring me." The lines following the reflection incorporate the conclusion of 22:9–11.
- 116 Spk: This passage is stated to show the characteristic of impermanence, and to do so by bringing the three characteristics together.
- 117 I render this passage with the aid of Spk, which glosses the last two pairs of terms thus: *Visineti na ussineti ti vikirati na sampiṇḍeti; vidhūpeti na sandhūpeti ti nibbāpeti na jālāpeti* (some texts read *viseneti, usseneti*); cp. *AN* II 214–16. The present passage describes the *sekha*, who is still in the process of dismantling the round.
- 118 Spk: This shows the arahant, who abides having dismantled the round.
- 119 Pādas cd should be read: *yassa te nābhijānāma, yampi nissāya jhāyati*. See *AN* V 324–26 and *MN* I 140,3–6. Spk states that at the end of this discourse five hundred bhikkhus were established in arahantship.
- 120 Spk: After spending the rains residence at Sāvathī, the Buddha had set out for Kapilavatthu together with a large company of bhikkhus. When they arrived, the Sakyans came to see him, bringing many gifts for the Saṅgha. A noisy quarrel broke out among the bhikkhus over the distribution of the gifts, and it was for this reason that the Teacher dismissed them. He wanted to teach them, "It isn't for the sake of such things as robes, etc., that you have gone

- forth into homelessness, but for the sake of arahantship.”
- 121 A similar passage is at MN I 457–59, but there the Sakyans first request the Buddha to pardon the bhikkhus, followed by Brahmā Sahampati, who makes the same appeal. In the MN version the sequence of the two similes is inverted.
- 122 I follow Se here, which reads: *Tathārūpaṃ iddhābhisāṅkhāraṃ abhisāṅkhāsi yathā te bhikkhū ekadvihikāya sārājjamānarūpā yena bhagavā ten’ upasāṅkameyyuṃ*. Be and Ee read *yenāhaṃ* in place of *yena bhagavā*; it seems the whole phrase is missing in SS. Spk glosses: *Ekadvihikāya ti ek’ eko c’ eva dve dve ca hutoā*. *Sārājjamānarūpā ti ottappamānasabhāvā bhāyamānā*.  
Spk: Why did the Buddha perform such a feat? From a desire for their welfare. For if they had come to him in groups they would not have shown reverence towards the Buddha nor would they have been able to receive a Dhamma teaching. But when they come timidly, ashamed, alone and in pairs, they show reverence and can receive a teaching.
- 123 *Abhisāpa*, glossed *akkosa* by Spk, which explains: “For when people get angry they abuse their antagonist by saying, ‘You should put on a monk’s robe, get yourself a begging bowl, and roam about seeking alms!’” *Kapāla*, rendered here “begging bowl,” is not the usual word for a monk’s almsbowl (= *patta*), but refers to the kind of bowl used by non-Buddhist ascetics (sometimes made from a skull); the use of the word seems pejorative. This paragraph and the next are also at It 89–90. Some of the terms describing the deviant monk just below are commented on in I, n. 176.
- 124 Spk says this passage is introduced to show that this person has become like a brand from a funeral pyre because of his evil thoughts. The “signless concentration” (*animittasamādhi*) is insight concentration (*vipassanā-samādhi*), called “signless” because it removes the signs of permanence, etc. For more on the signless concentration, see IV, nn. 280, 312, 368.
- 125 Spk: The view of existence (*bhavadit̥ṭhi*) is eternalism (*sassatadit̥ṭhi*); the view of extermination (*vibhavadit̥ṭhi*) is annihilationism (*ucchedadit̥ṭhi*). This passage is introduced to show that the signless concentration removes not only the three wrong thoughts but also eternalism and annihilationism.
- 126 Here the Buddha connects clinging, which arises on the basis of the mere five aggregates mistakenly held to as a self, with the last portion of the formula on dependent origination, thus showing present clinging to be the sustaining cause for the continuation of the round of existence. For a parallel, see MN I 511,30–512,2.
- 127 Spk: At the end of the discourse five hundred bhikkhus attained arahantship together with the analytical knowledges (*paṭisambhidā*).
- 128 Spk assigns this sutta to the time of the famous quarrel at Kosambi. After he had failed in three attempts to reconcile the factious parties, the Buddha decided to set out alone. For a full account, see Vin I 337–57 and Nānamoli, *Life of the Buddha*, pp. 109–19.
- 129 Spk: The residents of Pārileyaka built a leaf hall for the Blessed One in a protected grove near their town. An auspicious (*bhadda*) sal tree grew there. While living in dependence on the town, the Blessed One dwelt at the foot of the tree near the leaf hut in the grove. Spk relates here the story of the bull elephant who came to wait upon the Buddha; see Ud 41–42 and Vin I 352–53.
- 130 Spk: These were not the factious bhikkhus, but five hundred other monks who had come from various quarters after the rains.
- 131 See 22:55 and n. 78 above. Spk explains this as referring to “the fruit of arahantship immediately following the path” (*maggānantaraṃ arahattaphalaṃ*). However, as in the commentarial system the fruit inevitably occurs in immediate succession to the path, I think the monk is really asking how to attain arahantship swiftly and directly, without being detained at any lower stage of awakening.
- 132 *Vicayasa*. Spk glosses with *vicayena* and explains: “Having delimited with knowledge that is capable of discriminating the real nature of the various phenomena.” What follows are the thirty-seven aids to enlightenment (*bodhipakkhiyā dhammā*); see pp. 1485–87.
- 133 Spk glosses “that regarding” (*sāsamanupassanā*) as a “view-formation” (*dit̥ṭhi-saṅkiāra*). I understand *saṅkhāra* here as meaning what is conditioned rather than the active power of generation, i.e., as the *saṅkhata-saṅkhāra* of the commentaries

rather than as *abhisankharaṇa-saṅkhāra*, the act of volitional formation. The point, it seems, is that by calling the act of regarding a “formation,” the Buddha underlines its conditioned origination. This in turn highlights its impermanence, recognition of which knocks away the adherence to the very notion “I am,” thus culminating in arahantship. On “ignorance-contact” (*avijjāsamphassa*), see n. 63.

- 134 This view, which posits the identity of the self and the world (*so attā so loko*), seems to be derived from the Upaniṣads. Strangely, Spk passes over this view in silence, and Ps (commenting on MN I 135,37) offers only an unilluminating word gloss. For a discussion, see Wijesekera, “An Aspect of Upaniṣadic Ātman and Buddhist ‘Anattā,’” *Buddhist and Vedic Studies*, pp. 261–63.
- 135 Here I read with Se and Ee: *no c’ assaṃ no ca me siyā, na bhavissāmi na me bhavissati*. Be reads the third negated verb as *nābhavissam*. Spk: “If I were not, neither would there be my belongings; if I will not be in the future, neither will there be my belongings.” For a fuller discussion, see n. 75.
- 136 Spk: Even though doubt (*vicikicchā*) does not exist in the citta associated with craving, the doubt-formation arises from it because craving has not been abandoned. For doubt arises in one who has not abandoned craving.
- 137 Spk: In this sutta, in twenty-three cases, insight culminating in arahantship has been explained.
- 138 This entire sutta is at MN No. 109.
- 139 *Ime ... pañcupādānakkhandhā chandamūlakā*. Spk: *Tañhāchandamūlakā*. On how the five aggregates originate from craving, see 22:5 and n. 30.
- 140 This exchange is also at MN I 299,33–300,3; see too 22:121 below.

Spk: “Clinging is neither the same as the five aggregates subject to clinging” because the aggregates are not reducible simply to desire and lust; “nor is the clinging something apart from the five aggregates subject to clinging” because there is no clinging apart from the aggregates either as conascent factors or as object. For when a citta associated with craving occurs, the form produced by that citta belongs to the form aggregate, and the remaining mental states except craving belong to the other four

- aggregates: thus there is no clinging apart from the aggregates as conascent factors. (Craving is excepted because craving is what clings to the aggregates, and a mental factor cannot cling to itself.) Then, too, there is no clinging apart from the aggregates as object, because when clinging arises it takes as object one of the aggregates such as form.
- 141 *Rūpakkhandhassa paññāpanāya*. This might have been rendered “for the description of the form aggregate.” *Paññāpana* is literally “making known,” and something is “made known” either by becoming manifest or by being described.
- 142 I prefer the reading of the parallel at MN III 19,12–13, *anattakātāni kammāni kam attānaṃ phusissanti*. In the SN text, Be and Se read *katham attānaṃ*, and Ee *katam attānaṃ*, which perhaps should be amended to *kam attānaṃ*. Spk is silent, but MA explains that this monk had slipped into an eternalist view.
- 143 *Paṭipucchā-vinītā kho me tumhe bhikkhave tatra tatra tesu tesu dhammesu*. The readings in Ee and MN (Ee) should be amended accordingly. Neither MA nor Spk offers any explanation, but it is clear enough that the “training through interrogation” is the catechistic method to be applied in the following paragraph.
- 144 MN No. 109 concludes by stating that while this discourse was being spoken the minds of sixty bhikkhus were liberated from the taints. Spk states that at the conclusion of each sutta in this vagga five hundred bhikkhus attained arahantship! The verse that follows is in Be and Ee, but not in Se or MN. Pāda c should be read with Be: *sakkāyena duve vuttā*.
- 145 Puṇṇa Mantāniputta was declared by the Buddha the foremost among the bhikkhus who were speakers on the Dhamma (AN I 23,26). See 14:15.
- 146 *Upādāya* has a double meaning that is difficult to capture in translation. As absolute of *upādiyati* it means “having clung to,” but it also has an idiomatic sense, “derived from, dependent on,” as in the expression *caturannaṃ ca mahābhūtānaṃ upādāya rūpaṃ*, “the form derived from the four great elements.” I have translated it here “by clinging to,” on the supposition that the literal meaning is primary, but the

gloss of Spk emphasizes the idiomatic sense: *Upādāyā ti āgamma ārabha sandhāya paṭicca*; “*upādāya*: contingent on, referring to, on the basis of, in dependence on.” The mirror simile can support either meaning, and both are probably intended: The youth looks at his or her image with concern for his or her personal appearance (“with clinging”), and the image becomes manifest in dependence on the mirror. Similarly, a person conceives “I am” by clinging to the five aggregates, and it is in dependence on the five aggregates, i.e., with the aggregates as objective referents, that the notion “I am” arises. See 22:151, which again plays upon this dual meaning of *upādāya*.

- 147 *Dhammo me abhisameto*. Spk: He penetrated the Four Noble Truths with wisdom and became a stream-enterer. On *abhisamaya*, see II, n. 13.
- 148 See 21:9.
- 149 This passage occurs elsewhere, e.g., in SN at 47:9 (V 153,11-12) and 47:13 (V 162,15-16). Spk does not explain the etymology of *madhurakajāto* but paraphrases, “It has become unwieldy, as if heavy.” *Madhuraka* means “sweet, pleasant, charming,” but I follow PED’s explanation, “full of sweet drink, intoxicated.” See *madhupitā* in I, v. 842 and I, n. 590. In explaining *dhammā pi maṃ na paṭibhanti*, Spk takes *dhammā* as “the teachings”: “Even the doctrinal teachings are not clear to me; what I learned and studied does not appear.” Possibly *dhammā* here bears the more general sense of “things.”
- 150 Spk: He not only delighted in it, but having gained this consolation from the Teacher, struggling and striving, after some time he was established in arahantship.
- 151 His position is not quite the same as that of the common annihilationist, since he does not hold that all beings are annihilated at death. He seems to hold an eternalist view in regard to unenlightened beings (since they have a lasting self which transmigrates) and annihilationism in regard to the arahant (since he utterly perishes at death).

Spk: If he had thought, “Formations arise and cease; a simple process of formations reaches nonoccurrence,” this would not be a view (*diṭṭhigata*) but knowledge in accordance with the Teaching. But since he thought, “A being is

annihilated and destroyed,” this becomes a view. What follows is paralleled by MN I 130–31 and I 256–57.

- 152 Spk: At the end of this teaching on the three characteristics Yamaka became a stream-enterer. Sāriputta asks the following questions to examine him and to get him to show that he has given up his wrong view.
- Spk glosses *tathāgata* here as “a being” (*satta*), which I think does not quite hit the mark. I take the subject of the discussion to be, not a being in general, but the arahant conceived as a being, as a substantial self. Thus the catechism will show that Yamaka has abandoned his identity view (*sakkāyadiṭṭhi*) regarding the arahant, and therewith his view of the arahant as a self that undergoes annihilation. We find a similar transition from the arahant (*vimuttacitta bhikkhu*) to the Tathāgata at MN I 140,3-7 and I 486–88.
- 153 The first three alternatives—conceiving the aggregates individually as the Tathāgata, the Tathāgata as within the aggregates, and the Tathāgata as apart from the aggregates—correspond to the first three modes of conceiving in the Mūlapariyāya Sutta (M I 1), which are set in relation to the sense bases at 35:30, 31. The fourth position conceives the aggregates collectively as the Tathāgata (perhaps a view of supervenience); the fifth conceives the Tathāgata as entirely transcendent, without any essential relation to the aggregates. These modes of conceiving can also be correlated with the twenty types of identity view.
- 154 *Diṭṭh’ eva dhamme saccato thetato tathāgato anupalabbhiyamāno*. Cp. MN I 138,5-6: *Attani ca bhikkhave attaniye ca saccato thetato anupalabbhamāne*. MN I 140,6-7: *Diṭṭh’ evāhaṃ bhikkhave dhamme tathāgataṃ ananuwejjo ti vadāmi*.
- 155 See n. 147.
- 156 This passage can be read as a gloss on the Buddha’s famous dictum, “I make known just suffering and the cessation of suffering” (see end of 22:86).
- 157 *Ee daheyya* may be better than *saddaheyya*, in Be and Se.
- 158 Spk: The uninstructed worldling attached to the round is like the gullible householder, the five fragile aggregates like the murderous enemy. When the enemy comes up to the householder and offers to serve him, that is like the time the aggregates are acquired at the moment of rebirth.

When the householder takes the enemy to be his friend, that is like the time the worldling grasps the aggregates, thinking, "They are mine." The honour the householder bestows on the enemy, thinking, "He is my friend," is like the honour the worldling bestows on the aggregates by bathing them, feeding them, etc. The murder of the householder by the enemy is like the destruction of the worldling's life when the aggregates break up.

- 159 The next four paragraphs are also at 22:55.  
 160 As in 12:15; see II, n. 31, n. 32.  
 161 This last sentence is not in Be.  
 162 This sutta also occurs at 44:2, with the questionnaire given in full (though abridged in this translation).  
 163 *Tathāgato uttamapuriso paramapuriso paramapattipatto*. This should establish that "the Tathāgata" here is not just "a being," but a Buddha or an arahant; the expression recurs at 44:9. The four theses are all rooted in a conception of the Tathāgata as *ā* self. The commentaries explain the first as eternalism, the second as annihilationism, the third as a syncretic view (partial-eternalism), the fourth as evasive scepticism. Two whole chapters in SN deal with these issues, the *Vacchagottasamyutta* (SN 33) and the *Abyākatasamyutta* (SN 44). See too 16:12.  
 164 Spk: It is said that he thought, "These are hostile enemies of the Teaching. The Teacher would not describe (the Tathāgata) as they say. He must have described him in some other way."  
 165 This oft-quoted dictum can be interpreted at two levels. At the more superficial level the Buddha can be read as saying that he does not make any declaration about such metaphysical questions as an afterlife but teaches only a practical path for reaching the end of suffering here and now. This interpretation, however, does not connect the dictum with the Buddha's previous statement that the Tathāgata is not apprehended in this very life. To make this connection we have to bring in the second interpretation, according to which the "Tathāgata" is a mere term of conventional usage referring to a compound of impermanent formations, which are "suffering" because they contain no permanent essence. It is just these that stand while

the Tathāgata lives, and just these that cease with his passing away. The context in which the dictum occurs at MN I 140,14-15 also supports this interpretation.

- 166 Vakkali was declared by the Buddha the foremost bhikkhu of those resolved through faith (*etadaggaṃ saddhādhimuttānaṃ*; AN I 24,15).  
 Spk: After completing the rains residence, the elder was on his way to see the Blessed One when he fell ill in the middle of the city. He could not walk, so they put him on a stretcher and carried him to a potter's shed.  
 167 *Samadhosi*. Spk: He showed his respect by making a movement; for, it is said, even a patient is obliged to show respect to a superior by making a gesture of rising.  
 168 *Yo kho Vakkali dhammaṃ passati, so maṃ passati. Yo maṃ passati, so dhammaṃ passati*. Spk: Here the Blessed One shows (himself as) the Dhamma-body, as stated in the passage, "The Tathāgata, great king, is the Dhamma-body." For the ninefold supramundane Dhamma is called the Tathāgata's body.  
 I cannot trace a statement that corresponds exactly to the one cited by Spk. Spk may be misquoting DN III 84,23-24, which actually reads: "For this, Vāsetṭha, is a designation of the Tathāgata, that is, the Dhamma-body ..." (*tathāgataṃ h' etaṃ Vāsetṭha adhiṅgamaṃ dhammakāyo iti pi ...*). On the ninefold supramundane Dhamma, see n. 51. Though the second clause seems to be saying that simply by seeing the Buddha's body one sees the Dhamma, the meaning is surely that in order to *really* see the Buddha one should see the Dhamma, the truth to which he awakened. Hence the following catechism, intended to guide Vakkali towards that realization.  
 169 It was here too that the Venerable Godhika expired by his own hand; see 4:23.  
 170 *Vimokkhāya ceteti*. Spk: For the sake of the deliverance of the path (*maggā-vimokkhatthāya*). Although *vimokkha* and *vimutti* are derived from the same prefixed root (*vi + muc*), they usually appear in different contexts. To avoid confusion I have rendered the former as "deliverance," the latter as "liberation." Here they are synonymous.  
 171 *Suvimutto vimuccissati*. Spk: He will be liberated as one liberated by the liberation of the fruit of arahantship. Those

devas spoke thus because they knew, "By whatever method he arouses insight, he will attain arahantship immediately."

- 172 Vakkali's message to the Buddha implies that he already considered himself an arahant. Spk, however, explains: "The elder, it is said, overestimated himself. As he had suppressed the defilements by concentration and insight, he did not see himself assailed by them and thus thought he was an arahant. Disgusted with his miserable life, he cut his jugular vein with a sharp knife. Just then, painful feelings arose in him. Realizing he was still a worldling, he took up his main meditation subject, explored it with knowledge, and attained arahantship just as he died." On the basis of the sutta alone it is impossible to tell whether the commentary is right. For another account of a monk who took his life while thinking he was an arahant, see 35:87. Godhika (in 4:23) did not have this conviction, but took his life from despair due to his illness. He too, however, attained arahantship at the time of death. The sequel is as at 4:23; see I, nn. 313, 314.
- 173 I read with Be: *gelaññe passambhetvā passambhetvā kāyasañkhāre viharāmi, so 'haṃ samādhiṃ nappaṭilabhāmi*. The "bodily formations" are in-breathing and out-breathing (*assāsa-passāsa*); see MN I 56,20-22 and MN I 301,20-21 (= 41:6; IV 293,16).
- Spk: He kept tranquillizing in-and-out breathing when he dwelt in the fourth jhāna, where breathing ceases (36:11; IV 217,8-9). Because he had fallen away from all the meditative absorptions that he had previously attained, he thought, "Let me not fall away from the Teaching."
- 174 Spk: *Samādhisāraṅkā samādhisāmaññā ti samādhiṃ yeva sārāṇi ca sāmāññaṇi ca maññanti*. "In my Teaching that is not the essence; the essence is insight, path, and fruit."
- 175 Spk says that at the end of the Buddha's exposition of the three characteristics, Assaji attained arahantship. Spk explains that the Buddha introduces the following passage to show the arahant's constant abiding. See too 12:51, where the same text is coupled with a different simile. The present version is also at 36:7, 36:8, and 54:8.
- 176 Although all three eds. of SN and both eds. of Spk read

*asmī ti adhigataṃ*, this is probably an old corruption: I propose reading *asmī ti avigataṃ*; see my argument in support of this emendation at n. 61. Spk: Craving and conceit are found occurring in the mode "I am."

This passage clarifies the essential difference between the *sekha* and the arahant. While the *sekha* has eliminated identity view and thus no longer identifies any of the five aggregates as a self, he has not yet eradicated ignorance, which sustains a residual conceit and desire "I am" (*anusahagato asmī ti māno asmī ti chando*) in relation to the five aggregates. The arahant, in contrast, has eradicated ignorance, the root of all misconceptions, and thus no longer entertains any ideas of "I" and "mine." The other elders apparently had not yet attained any stage of awakening and thus did not understand this difference, but the Venerable Khemaka must have been at least a stream-enterer [Spk-pt: some hold he was a nonreturner, others a once-returner] and thus knew that the elimination of identity view does not completely remove the sense of personal identity. Even for the nonreturner, an "odour of subjectivity" based on the five aggregates still lingers over his experience.

- 177 I prefer *vaṇṭassa*, found in SS, over *vaṇṇassa* in all three printed eds.
- 178 Spk: The worldling's mental process is like the soiled cloth. The three contemplations (of impermanence, suffering, and nonself) are like the three cleansers. The mental process of the nonreturner is like the cloth that has been washed with the three cleansers. The defilements to be eradicated by the path of arahantship are like the residual smell of the cleansers. The knowledge of the path of arahantship is like the sweetly scented casket, and the destruction of all defilements by that path is like the vanishing of the residual smell of the cleansers from the cloth after it has been placed in the casket.
- 179 Spk identifies this Channa with the Bodhisatta's charioteer who led him out of the palace on the night of his great renunciation. He had received ordination as a monk but, because of his former close relationship with the Buddha, he became proud and domineering and spoke harshly to the other bhikkhus. Shortly before his parinibbāna the

Buddha had instructed the Saṅgha to impose on him the *brahmadāṇḍa*, “the silence treatment” (DN II 154,18–23). When Channa realized he was being treated as a pariah by the Saṅgha, he was shaken by a sense of urgency (*saṃvega*). It is at this point that the sutta opens.

- 180 Spk: All formations of the three planes (*sabbe tebhūmakā saṅkhārā*) are impermanent; all phenomena of the four planes (*sabbe catubhūmakā dhammā*) are nonself. Why didn’t those bhikkhus mention the characteristic of suffering? Because they thought, “This bhikkhus is argumentative. If we mention suffering he will quarrel with us, saying, ‘If form, etc., are suffering, the path and fruit too are suffering, so you monks have attained nothing but suffering.’” Thus they answered in a way that could not be faulted.

See too MN I 228,10–14, 230,5–8, where only impermanence and nonself are mentioned in the explicit context of debate. The commentary to this passage gives a similar explanation of the omission of suffering.

- 181 *Atha ko carahi me attā*. Spk: It is said that this elder had started to practise insight meditation without having done discernment of conditions. His weak insight could not eliminate the grip of self (*attagāha*), and thus when formations appeared to him as empty, agitation arose in him along with the annihilationist view, “I will be annihilated, I will be destroyed.” He saw himself falling into an abyss. [Spk-pt: Agitation through fear (*bhayaparitassanā*) and clinging to views (*diṭṭh’ upādāna*) arose in him over the thought, “If phenomena are nonself, then what self can deeds done by what is nonself affect?” (see 22:82 (III 104,1) and n. 142)].

Discernment of conditions (*paccayapariggaha*) is a stage in the development of insight in which the meditator explores the conditions for the five aggregates (see *Vism*, chap. 19). In the proper sequence of development this stage should precede investigation of the aggregates as impermanent, suffering, and nonself.

- 182 *Khilaṃ pabhindī*. MN I 101,9–27 mentions five types of mental barrenness (*cetokhila*). Channa’s problem seems to have been the fifth, anger and contemptuousness towards his fellow monks.
- 183 Ānanda’s choice of the Kaccānagotta Sutta is especially

apt, as this sutta teaches how dependent origination counters the two extreme views of eternalism and annihilationism and replaces the view of self with the realization that it is only *dukkha* that arises and ceases.

- 184 This sutta and the next are identical with 18:21–22 and 22:71–72.
- 185 This portion of the sutta offers an important counterpoint to the message of the Kaccānagotta Sutta (12:15). Here the Buddha emphasizes that he does not reject all ontological propositions, but only those that transcend the bounds of possible experience. While the Kaccānagotta Sutta shows that the “middle teaching” excludes static, substantialist conceptions of existence and nonexistence, the present text shows that the same “middle teaching” can accommodate definite pronouncements about these ontological issues. The affirmation of the existence of the five aggregates, as impermanent processes, serves as a rejoinder to illusionist theories, which hold that the world lacks real being.
- 186 *Lokadhamma*. Spk: The five aggregates are called thus because it is their nature to disintegrate (*lujjanasabhāvattā*). *Loka* is derived from *lujjati* at 35:82. The etymology cannot be accepted literally but serves a pedagogic purpose.
- 187 Spk: In this sutta three types of world are spoken of. When it is said, “I do not dispute with the world,” it is the world of beings (*sattaloka*). “A world-phenomenon in the world”: here, the world of formations (*saṅkhāraloka*). “The Tathāgata was born in the world”: here, the geographic world (*okāsaloka*). Ee has omitted *loke jāto*, no doubt by oversight. The simile is also at AN II 38,30–39,3; see too AN V 152,12–16.
- 188 Spk: One evening, while dwelling in that abode, the Blessed One came out from his fragrant cottage and sat down by the bank of the Ganges. He saw a great lump of foam coming downstream and thought, “I will give a Dhamma talk relating to the five aggregates.” Then he addressed the bhikkhus sitting around him.

The sutta is one of the most radical discourses on the empty nature of conditioned phenomena; its imagery (especially the similes of the mirage and the magical illusion) has been taken up by later Buddhist thinkers, most

- persistently by the Mādhyamikas. Some of the images are found elsewhere in the Pāli Canon, e.g., at Dhṛ 46, 170. In the context of early Buddhist thought these similes have to be handled with care. They are not intended to suggest an illusionist view of the world but to show that our conceptions of the world, and of our own existence, are largely distorted by the process of cognition. Just as the mirage and magical illusion are based on real existents—the sand of the desert, the magician’s appurtenances—so these false conceptions arise from a base that objectively exists, namely, the five aggregates; but when seen through a mind subject to conceptual distortion, the aggregates appear in a way that deviates from their actual nature. Instead of being seen as transient and selfless, they appear as substantial and as a self.
- 189 Spk explains at length how form (i.e., the body) is like a lump of foam (*phenapiṇḍa*). I give merely the highlights: as a lump of foam lacks any substance (*sāra*), so form lacks any substance that is permanent, stable, a self; as the lump of foam is full of holes and fissures and the abode of many creatures, so too form; as the lump of foam, after expanding, breaks up, so does form, which is pulverized in the mouth of death. Spk’s commentary is also at Vibh-a 32–35.
- 190 Spk: A bubble (*bubbuḷa*) is feeble and cannot be grasped, for it breaks up as soon as it is seized; so too feeling is feeble and cannot be grasped as permanent and stable. As a bubble arises and ceases in a drop of water and does not last long, so too with feeling: 100,000 *koṭis* of feelings arise and cease in the time of a fingersnap (one *koṭi* = 10 million). As a bubble arises in dependence on conditions, so feeling arises in dependence on a sense base, an object, the defilements, and contact.
- 191 Spk: Perception is like a mirage (*maricikā*) in the sense that it is insubstantial, for one cannot grasp a mirage to drink or bathe or fill a pitcher. As a mirage deceives the multitude, so does perception, which entices people with the idea that the colourful object is beautiful, pleasurable, and permanent.
- 192 *Akukkukajātaṃ*. Spk: There is no pith growing inside (*anta asaṅgātaṃ*). Spk: There is no pith growing inside (*anta asaṅgātaṃ*).
- 193 The simile is used for a different purpose at MN I 233,15–23.
- Spk: As a plantain trunk (*kadalikkhandha*) is an assemblage of many sheaths, each with its own characteristic, so the aggregate of volitional formations is an assemblage of many phenomena, each with its own characteristic.
- 194 Spk: Consciousness is like a magical illusion (*māyā*) in the sense that it is insubstantial and cannot be grasped. Consciousness is even more transient and fleeting than a magical illusion. For it gives the impression that a person comes and goes, stands and sits, with the same mind, but the mind is different in each of these activities. Consciousness deceives the multitude like a magical illusion.
- For a modern parable illustrating the deceptive nature of consciousness, based on this simile, see Nāṇananda, *The Magic of the Mind*, pp. 5–7.
- 195 See MN I 296,9–11, spoken by Sāriputta. I cannot trace a parallel spoken by the Buddha himself, but see Dhṛ 41.
- 196 Spk explains that *māyāyaṃ bālalāpini*, in pāda b, refers specifically to the aggregate of consciousness. The aggregate-mass is a murderer in two ways: (i) because the aggregates slay each other; and (ii) because murder appears in dependence on the aggregates. As to (i), when the earth element breaks up it takes along the other elements, and when the form aggregate breaks up it takes along the mental aggregates. As to (ii), when the aggregates exist such things as murder, bondage, injury, etc., come into being. On the comparison of the aggregates to murderers, see too 22:85 (III 114,20–24).
- 197 Read: *divā vā yadi vā rattiṃ*.
- 198 Spk: The holy life of the path arises stilling the formations of the three planes. If even this much individual existence were permanent, though the path might arise it would not be able to still the round of formations. Thus the holy life would not be discerned.
- 199 Spk: This is said to show: “If any formations were permanent, then the success I enjoyed as King Mahāsudassana would have been permanent.” On King Mahāsudassana, a past incarnation of the Buddha, see the eponymic sutta, DN No. 17.
- 200 The elephant, the steed, the jewel-gem, the beautiful queen, and the commander-gem are five of the seven gems

- of the wheel-turning monarch (*rājā cakkavatti*). The other two, which Mahāsudassana also possessed, are the wheel-gem and the steward-gem; for details, see DN II 172–77. The seven gems are mentioned at 46:42.
- 201 The passage beginning “Of those 84,000 cities” to the end is also at DN II 197–98, but the latter includes an additional closing paragraph. The homily on impermanence is at 15:20 (II 193,3–6).
- Spk: Having shown his success at the time when he was King Mahāsudassana, he now shows its impermanence. Just as a man might place a ladder against a *campaka* tree, climb up, take a *campaka* flower, and then descend, so the Blessed One has climbed up the story of King Mahāsudassana’s success, taken the characteristic of impermanence at the top, and descended.
- 202 I read with Se, *khattiyā vā velāmikā vā*. Spk explains a *velāmika* as one born from a khattiya father and a brahmin mother, or a brahmin father and a khattiya mother.
- 203 As at 15:1, etc. See II, n. 254.
- 204 On the destruction of the world by fire, see Vism 414–17 (Ppn 13:32–41).
- 205 The simile of the dog is also at MN II 232,24–233,4. Spk: The foolish worldling is like the dog, his view is like the leash, his personal identity (*sakkāya*) is like the post. Like the dog’s running around the post is the worldling’s running around his personal identity bound to it by craving and views.
- 206 *Caraṇaṃ nāma cittaṃ*. *Citta* here is the equivalent of Skt *citra*, picture. The exact meaning of the picture’s title is obscure. Spk glosses *vicaraṇacitta*, “the wandering picture” [Spk-pt: because they take it and wander about with it], but *caraṇa* here possibly means conduct, as in other contexts.
- Spk: The Saṅkha were a sect of heretical brahmins. Having taken a canvas, they had various pictures painted on it of the good and bad destinations to illustrate success and failure, and then they took it around on their wanderings. They would show it to the people, explaining, “If one does this deed, one gets this result; if one does that, one gets that.”
- 207 *Tam pi ... caraṇaṃ nāma cittaṃ citten’ eva cittaṃ, tena pi ...*
- caraṇena cittaṃ cittaññeva cittaṃ*. There are several puns here that cannot be successfully conveyed in translation (nor even in Skt for that matter). *Citta* is both mind (as in Skt) and picture (= Skt *citra*). *Cittita* (Ee: *cintita*) is “thought out” (related to *citta*, mind) and “diversified” (related to *citra*, picture). I have used “designed in its diversity” to capture both nuances. As 64–65 quotes this passage in its discussion of how mind designs the world.
- 208 *Te pi ... tiracchānagatā pāṇā citten’ eva cittaṃ, tehi pi ... tiracchānagatehi pāṇehi cittaññeva cittaṃ*. Another series of puns. The point is that the diversity of the creatures in the animal realm reflects the diversity of the past kamma that causes rebirth as an animal, and this diversity of kamma in turn stems from the diversity of volition (*cetanā*), a mental factor. As 64–65 discusses this passage at length.
- Spk: Quails and partridges, etc., do not accumulate diverse kamma, thinking, “We will become diversified in such and such a way,” but the kamma arrives at the appropriate species (*yonī*), and the diversity is rooted in the species. For beings that arise in a particular species become diversified in the way appropriate to that species. Thus the diversity is achieved through the species, and the species reflect kamma.
- 209 The simile is also at 12:64. See II, n. 173.
- 210 Also at 12:23. The following, through to the end, is also at AN IV 125–27.
- 211 Again, these are the thirty-seven aids to enlightenment. The theme of this sutta might be compared with MN No. 126, which deals with the question whether, in living the holy life, it is necessary to make a wish (*āsañ ce pi karitvā*) in order to achieve the fruit (*phalassa adhigamāya*). Here the word rendered “wish” is *icchā*.
- 212 The simile of the chicks is applied differently at MN I 104,3–13 and MN I 357,6–358,2. See too Vin III 3–5. Spk elaborates on the comparison of the bhikkhu’s enlightenment to the hatching of chicks: The hen’s preparatory work is like the bhikkhu’s devotion to development. The nonrotting of the eggs is like the bhikkhu’s not falling away from insight knowledge; the drying up of the moisture in the eggs is like the drying up of attachment to the three realms of

- existence; the thinning of the egg shells is like the thinning of ignorance; the maturation of the chicks is like the maturation of insight knowledge. The time when the chicks break the shells and emerge safely is like the time when the bhikkhu breaks the shell of ignorance and attains arahantship. And as the chicks go about adorning the village field, so the great arahant enters into fruition attainment which takes Nibbāna as its object, and thus adorns his monastery.
- 213 Reading *palagaṇḍassa* with Be and Se. Spk glosses *vaḍḍhakissa*.
- 214 The simile is also at 45:158. I read it as in Se and Ee. Spk develops this simile even more minutely than the simile of the chicks. In brief: Like the wearing away of the rigging by the ocean water is the wearing away of the bhikkhu's fetters by his going forth (into homelessness), study, and questioning. Like the time the ship is hauled onto dry land is the time the bhikkhu takes up a meditation subject and dwells in the forest. Like the drying up of the rigging by wind and sun during the day is the drying up of craving by insight knowledge. Like the wetting by snow at night is the wetting of the mind by gladness and joy arisen from meditation. Like the rain cloud pouring down is the knowledge of the path of arahantship. Like the decay of the rigging is the attainment of the fruit of arahantship. Like the persistence of the rigging in a decrepit state is the persistence of the arahant as he lives on benefitting the multitude. Like the collapse of the decrepit rigging is the arahant's attainment of the Nibbāna element without residue.
- 215 Sensual lust is eliminated by the path of nonreturning; lust for existence, ignorance, and the conceit "I am" by the path of arahantship.
- 216 This simile, and the six to follow, are applied differently at 45:141–47. The simile of the ascending sun is also at 2:29.
- 217 Spk glosses *antā*, lit. "ends," with *koṭṭhāsā*, and explains that this sutta interprets the five aggregates by way of the Four Noble Truths.
- 218 Spk glosses *pariññeyya* with *samatikkamitabba* and *pariññā*

- with *samatikkama*; see n. 41. The "person who has fully understood" (*pariññātāvī*) is a conventional expression; see n. 37.
- 219 Spk: By this, Nibbāna is shown.
- 220 Woodward, at KS 3:136, says that this sutta is the same as the preceding one, but that is not the case; this one adds *samudayaṇ ca atthaṅgamaṇ ca*.
- 221 The stream-enterer (in the preceding sutta) and the arahant share the same understanding of the five aggregates. They differ in that the arahant has used this understanding to extricate all defilements, while the stream-enterer (and higher trainees) have yet to complete this task. Note too that whereas the stream-enterer is explained in terms of a noble disciple, the arahant is always defined as a bhikkhu.
- 222 As at 12:16. See II, nn. 34, 35.
- 223 I follow Be, which reads *baddho jiyati*, as against Se and Ee, which have *baddho jāyati*, "who is born in bondage."
- 224 The Ee title, *Parimucchita*, should be amended to *Paripucchita*.
- 225 This list is found elsewhere in the Nikāyas (e.g., at MN I 435,33–35, MN I 500,3–5, AN II 128,16–18, AN IV 422,25–423,1). The eleven terms are expanded to forty at Paṭi II 238, and commented on at Vism 611–13 (Ppn 20:19–20). Spk reduces them to the three contemplations: "impermanence" and "disintegration" represent contemplation of impermanence; "empty" and "nonself," contemplation of nonself; and the others, contemplation of suffering. Vism 613 and Ps III 146,13, however, assign "as alien" (*parato*) to the contemplation of nonself, which seems more plausible.
- 226 *Natthi ... arahato uttarikaraṇiyam katassa vā paṭicayo*. Spk does not comment on this, but Mp IV 165,3–5 (commenting on AN IV 355,24–25) explains: "There is nothing further to be done, because he has done the four tasks imposed by the Four Noble Truths (see 56:11). And no repetition of what he has already done, for the developed path need not be developed again and the abandoned defilements need not be abandoned again."
- On "a pleasant dwelling in this very life," just below, see II, n. 332.
- 227 *Kukkula*. See I, v. 824. Spk: A great conflagration, hot and

blazing. In this sutta the characteristic of suffering is discussed.

228 See 22:39 and n. 52.

229 The next three suttas correspond to 22:40–42. Ee has omitted the text of 22:148, apparently by oversight as the title is correct while the text is that of 22:149. Accordingly, in this saṃyutta all the following sutta numbers in Ee are short by one.

230 Spk glosses *kiṃ upādāya* with *kiṃ paṭicca*, but a word play is probably involved; see n. 146. The double sense would then be that pleasure and pain arise because one clings to the five aggregates with desire and lust, and they arise in dependence on the five aggregates as their support and object.

231 *Kiṃ abhinivissa*. Spk: *Kiṃ abhinivissitvā; paccayaṃ katoṃ ti attho*. Spk, it seems, does not see *abhinivissa* as contributing anything more to the meaning than a synonym for *upādāya*, but the question then arises why it should be added in the case of views but not in the case of pleasure and pain. *Abhinivissa* is an absolutive related to the noun *abhinivesa*, “adherence,” which implies an element of interpretation, namely, interpretation of experience through the lens of a wrong view. When this is acknowledged, we can then see that *abhinivissa* suggests the imposition of a cognitive interpretation on the aggregates, which goes beyond the bare conative clinging implied by *upādāya*.

232 This is the full eternalist view; see 22:81 and n. 134.

233 The annihilationist view; see 22:81, and nn. 75, 135.

234 *Micchādiṭṭhi*. In the Nikāyas usually explained as the nihilist view, e.g., at MN I 287,12–18. For text, see 24:5.

235 *Sakkāyadiṭṭhi*. See n. 5.

236 *Attānudiṭṭhi*. At Paṭis I 143 defined by the formula for the twenty kinds of *sakkāyadiṭṭhi*.

237 Spk-pṭ explains *adherences* (*abhinivesa*) as craving, conceit, and views, and *shackles* (*vinibandha*) as the mental shackles of not being devoid of lust for form, etc. (see MN I 101,28–102,16).  *Holding* (*ajjhosāna*), in the next sutta, is defined by Spk-pṭ as craving and views.

238 Spk: Ānanda had seen other bhikkhus receive from the Buddha a meditation subject based on the five aggregates,

attain arahantship, and declare final knowledge in the Teacher’s presence. He thus approached thinking to do the same. The Buddha knew he would not attain the three higher paths during his own lifetime, but he gave him instructions to satisfy him. Ānanda would attend to his meditation subject for one or two turns before going to serve the Teacher, and it became one of the factors that matured in his liberation.

### 23. *Rādhasamyutta*

239 DPPN 2:730 explains that he was a brahmin of Rājagaha who had become a monk in his old age. The Buddha declared him the foremost of those who could inspire ingenuity in others (*etadaggaṃ paṭibhāṇakeyyānaṃ*; AN I 25,15). He has two verses at Th 133–34 (= Dhṃ 13–14).

Spk: Whenever the Tathāgata saw this elder, a subtle topic occurred to him. Thus the Blessed One taught him the Dhamma in various ways. In this saṃyutta, two vaggas have come down by way of questions, a third by way of request, and a fourth by way of intimate discourse (*upānisinnakakathā*, lit. “sitting nearby talk”).

240 Spk: Here “*Māra*” is a metaphor for death and the aggregates (*marāṇa-māra*, *khandha-māra*).

241 *Māro vā assa māretā vā yo vā pana miyati*. Spk glosses *māretā* with *māretabbo*, but the word is clearly an agent noun with an active sense.

242 *Vimutti kho Rādha nibbānatthā*. Spk: This “liberation of the fruit” is for the purpose of Nibbāna without clinging (*phalavimutti nāma’ esā anupādānibbānatthā*).

243 This paragraph is also at 48:42 (V 218,19–21) and MN I 304,20–22. Be consistently reads the verb as *accayāsi* (aorist of *atīyāti*), Se as *accasarā* (aorist of *atisarati*). Ee’s *assa* here and *ajjhaparam* below must stem from faulty manuscripts.

The last sentence is: *Nibbānogadhaṃ hi Rādha brahmacariyaṃ vussati nibbānaparāyanaṃ nibbānapariyosānaṃ*. Many translators take *nibbānogadha* to mean “the plunge into Nibbāna” or “merging with Nibbāna,” which the commentaries encourage by connecting *ogadha* with *ogāha*, a plunge (from the verb *ogāhati*, to plunge into). But *ogadha* is

actually a by-form of *ogādha*, from the verb *ogādhati*, which the commentaries treat as synonymous with *patit̥ṭhahati*, “to be established.” They confirm this link by consistently glossing *ogadha* with *patit̥ṭhā*, support; hence my rendering “ground.” For the references, see CPD, s.v. *ogadha*, *ogādhati*, *ogāha*, and the use of the word *gādha*, both literal and metaphorical, in I, v. 263. MW defines *gādha* (from the root *gādh*, to stand firmly) as a ground for standing on in water, a shallow place, a ford.

- 244 This reply hinges on a pun between *satta* as the Pāli equivalent of Skt *sattva*, “a being,” and as the past participle of *sajjati* (= Skt *sakta*), “attached.”
- 245 I read *dhanāyanti* with Be and Se, glossed *dhanaṃ viya maññanti* by Spk.
- 246 I follow Se. Be reads *bhavanetti-nirodho* twice, Ee *bhavanetti bhavanetti-nirodho*. *Bhavanetti*, lit. “what leads to existence,” is glossed *bhavarajju*, “rope of existence,” by Spk. The expression is a synonym of *bhavataṇhā*, craving for existence, and often occurs in verse.
- 247 A partly similar series of terms is met at 12:15. See II, nn. 31, 32.
- 248 *Māradhamma*. Spk glosses with *maraṇadhamma*, “subject to death.” In some of the suttas that follow (namely, in relation to impermanence, suffering, and nonself), I translate the suffix *-dhamma* as “nature” rather than “subject to.”

#### 24. *Dit̥ṭhisamyutta*

- 249 This strange view seems to be a poetic statement of the illusory nature of change. The compound *esikaṭṭhāyit̥ṭhita*, “stands as steady as a pillar,” occurs in the statement of the eternalist views at DN I 14–16 and in the doctrine of the seven bodies just below (24:8; III 211,8). A doctrine holding time and change to be illusory (*avicalita-nityatva*) emerged later in the history of the Ājivika school and may have been brought into the system from the school of Pakudha Kaccāyana, the propounder of the “doctrine of the seven bodies.” See Basham, *History and Doctrines of the Ājivikas*, p. 236. At Mvu III 317 a similar view, stated in nearly identical terms, is cited as an example of the “wicked and

wrong beliefs” that were circulating in Magadha before the Buddha arrived on the scene; see Jones 3:306.

Spk: This, it is said, was their view: “Although winds blow breaking the branches of trees, etc., these are not (really) winds; they are facsimiles of wind (*vātalesā*; Spk-pt: *vātalesā ti vātasadisā*). The wind stands as steady as a pillar and a mountain peak. [Spk-pt: The phrase ‘as a pillar’ shows its immobility (*niccalabhāva*); ‘a mountain peak,’ its eternity (*sassatisama*).] Similarly with water. Though it is said that pregnant women give birth, the fetuses do not (really) emerge; those are facsimiles of fetuses. Though the sun and moon rise and set, they do not (really) do so; those are facsimiles of the sun and moon, which stand as steady as a pillar and a mountain peak.”

- 250 This is a fourfold classification of all objects. According to Spk, *the seen* (*dit̥ṭha*) is the visible-form base; *the heard* (*suta*), the sound base; *the sensed* (*muta*), the objects of smell, taste, and touch; and *the cognized* (*viññāta*), the other seven bases (i.e., the six internal sense bases and the mental-phenomena base). The words “attained, sought after, and ranged over by the mind” (*pattaṃ pariyesitaṃ anuvicariṭaṃ manasā*) are just an elaboration of the fourth. In the following suttas of this vagga, this portion has been elided in the abridgement, but it should be understood in all.
- 251 I read *imesu chasu ṭhānesu*, with Se and Ee, as against Be *imesu ca ṭhānesu*. Spk is silent, but it seems the six cases are the five aggregates and the tetrad of sense objects taken collectively as one. Cp. MN I 135,34–36, where the tetrad of sense objects actually replaces *viññāṇa* as a basis for wrong views (*dit̥ṭhit̥ṭhāna*).
- 252 As at 22:81; see n. 134.
- 253 As at 22:81; see n. 135.
- 254 This is the full nihilist doctrine (*nat̥ṭhikavāda*). At DN I 55,15–31, it is called annihilationism (*ucchedavāda*) and ascribed to Ajita Kesakambali. For the commentarial explanation, see Bodhi, *Discourse on the Fruits of Reclusership*, pp. 77–83.
- 255 The doctrine of the inefficacy of action (*akiriyavāda*), at DN I 52,22–53,2 ascribed to Pūraṇa Kassapa. See *Fruits of Reclusership*, pp. 69–70.

- 256 The doctrine of noncausality (*ahetukavāda*) is ascribed to Makkhali Gosāla at DN I 53,25–33, but at 22:60 a portion of it is attributed to Pūraṇa Kassapa; see above n. 92. For the commentary, see *Fruits of Reclusership*, pp. 70–72. Strict determinism (*niyatīvāda*) is known to have been the main plank of Makkhali's Ājivika philosophy, discussed in detail by Basham, *History and Doctrines of the Ājivikas*, pp. 224–39. The sentence in brackets is brought in from DN I 53,28–29, but is not in the SN text or in the version at MN I 516,33–517,3.
- 257 The six classes (*chalabhijātiyo*)—the black, the blue, the red, the yellow, the white, and the ultimate white—represent stages along the Ājivika road to perfection; see *Fruits of Reclusership*, pp. 73–75. At AN III 383,18–84,7 this scheme is ascribed to Pūraṇa Kassapa, which again shows the connection between the two systems (a point noted by Basham, pp. 23–24).
- 258 At DN I 56,21–34 this doctrine of the seven bodies (*sattakāyavāda*) is ascribed to Pakudha Kaccāyana.
- 259 I have imported the sentence in brackets from the DN and MN versions of this view; it seems to have been lost in the SN transmission.
- 260 In the DN version, this fantastic cosmology is connected to the doctrine of noncausality and subsumed under the teaching of Makkhali Gosāla, where the whole system is called the doctrine of purity by wandering on (*saṃsārasuddhi*). At MN I 517,31–518,15 however, as here, the cosmology is attached to the doctrine of the seven bodies. This dual ascription suggests that the cosmological scheme may have been shared by both systems, and in fact the schools of Makkhali and Pakudha later coalesced to form the southern branch of the Ājivika school. Basham discusses the different ascriptions at pp. 18–23, but treats the cosmology as an integral feature of Makkhali's system at pp. 240–54.

The passage contains a number of anomalous grammatical forms, such as nominatives both singular and plural terminating in *-e*, which are probably vestiges of ancient Māgadhi. Variant readings are common. I have generally translated the passage with the aid of Spk, but we must

- bear in mind that the commentaries are explaining the obscure terms at double remove: first, from the outside perspective of the Buddhist community (which may already have been acquainted with a distorted version of the doctrine), and then from the additional distance of the centuries that separated the commentators from the period when the views were current. Often the commentary is obviously engaging in conjecture, and sometimes is clearly wrong. For a translation of the full commentary, see *Fruits of Reclusership*, pp. 72–77, and for a critical assessment, see Basham's discussion of the passage at pp. 240–54.
- 261 Here I part with Spk, which glosses *ājivaka* with *ājivavutti*, “means of livelihood.”
- 262 *Bāle ca paṇḍite ca nibbēṭhiyamānā sukhadukkhaṃ paleti*. Spk: Starting from a mountain top or a tree top, a ball of thread goes along unwinding for the length of the thread; then, when the thread is finished, it stops right there and goes no farther. Just so, fools and the wise flee from pleasure and pain, “unwinding” by way of time. They do not exceed the aforesaid time.
- The versions at DN I 54,20–21 and MN I 518,13–15 read: *bāle ca paṇḍite ca sandhāvitvā saṃsāritvā dukkhass' antaṃ karissanti*; “the foolish and the wise, having roamed and wandered on, will make an end of suffering.” Note in both versions the nominative plurals terminating in *-e*.
- 263 The next ten suttas are each devoted to one of the ten “undeclared points,” also dealt with from still different angles in SN 33 and SN 44.
- 264 I translate the titles of the next three vaggas as in Be: *Dutiyagamana-vagga*, *Tatiyagamana-vagga*, *Catutthagamana-vagga*. In Se, the third and fourth vaggas are similarly named, but the second is called *Gamanavagga*. Ee includes all the suttas after the first eighteen in a single chapter (Chapter II) subdivided into four sections called *gamana*. Ee applies the title *Purimagamana* to the first eighteen suttas of this chapter, and *Dutiyagamana* to the second eighteen; the third and fourth chapters are named as in the other eds., but without *-vagga*. In his introduction to this part (p. ix) Feer proposes to count the eighteen suttas of the *Sotāpattivagga* twice, and thus maintains that the whole

samyutta consists of 114 suttas (18 + 18 + (3 x 26)). This, however, involves an unnecessary duplication (which Feer admits, to his puzzlement). It is thus best to follow the arrangement of this samyutta in Be and Se.

265 This is said because the five aggregates are *dukkha*.

266 The next eight views are varieties of eternalism with regard to the after-death condition of the self. They are also mentioned at DN I 31,6–15. For a translation of the commentary, see Bodhi, *All-Embracing Net of Views*, pp. 176–82.

Spk: The view of a *self consisting of form* arises from taking the object alone [Spk-pt: the *kasīṇa*] as self; a *formless self*, from taking the *jhāna* as self; the syncretic view, from taking both object and *jhāna* as self; the double negation, from mere reasoning (*takkamattena*). The view of the self as *exclusively happy* arises in the meditator, the rationalist, and those who remember past births. The same for those who view the self as exclusively miserable, etc.

267 This paragraph distinguishes the suttas of this “trip” (*gamana*) from those of the preceding trips. Similarly, the fourth trip is distinguished simply by the concluding argument.

### 25. *Okkantisaṃyutta*

268 The faith-follower (*saddhānusāri*) and the Dhamma-follower (*dhammānusāri*), described just below, are the two classes of disciples who are practising for realization of the fruit of stream-entry. The two are the lowest ranking members of a comprehensive sevenfold typology of noble disciples found, with formal definitions, at MN I 477–79. The seven types are also defined, somewhat differently, at Pp 14–15 (§§30–36) and at Vism 659–60 (Ppn 21:74–78). The faith-follower and the Dhamma-follower are also distinguished at 55:24 (V 377,8–24) and 55:25 (V 379,10–21), though the terms themselves are not used there. At 48:12–17 they come at the end of the more usual list of noble persons, in place of the one practising for the realization of the fruit of stream-entry, and here the faith-follower is placed below the Dhamma-follower for the reason that his faculties are weaker.

Briefly, the faith-follower and the Dhamma-follower differ with regard to their dominant faculty: the former relies

on faith as the vehicle of progress, the latter on wisdom. When they attain the fruit of stream-entry, the former becomes “one liberated by faith” (*saddhāvimutta*; see MN I 478,29–34), the latter “one attained by view” (*ditṭhippatta*; see MN I 478,18–23).

According to the Abhidhamma system, with its conception of the supramundane path as lasting for only a single mind-moment, both the faith-follower and the Dhamma-follower should be such for only the one mind-moment of the path. This interpretation, however, though advocated by the commentaries, is difficult to reconcile with the Nikāyas. For an interesting discussion of the two models, see Gethin, *The Buddhist Path to Awakening*, pp. 129–33.

Spk explains “the fixed course of rightness” (*sammattaniyāma*) as the noble path (*ariyamagga*). On the clause, “he is incapable of passing away without having realized the fruit of stream-entry,” Spk says that once the path has arisen there can be no obstruction to the fruit. It quotes Pp 13 (§20): “Should this person be one practising for the realization of the fruit of stream-entry, and should it be the time when the aeon is to burn up, the aeon will not burn up until that person realizes the fruit of stream-entry.”

269 On the Dhamma-follower, see n. 268. The commentaries do not clarify the syntax of the expression *ime dhammā evaṃ paññāya mattaso nijjhānaṃ khamanti*. Though *nijjhānaṃ* is accusative, in English idiom it is more naturally rendered with an ablative sense.

Spk: *Mattaso nijjhānaṃ khamanti ti pamāṇato olokanam khamanti*; “Accepted after being pondered to a sufficient degree”: accepted in measure (through) examination. Spk-pt: *Olokanan ti saccābhisamayasaṅkhātam dassanam*; *khamanti saḥanti, ñayanti ti attho*; “Examination”: vision consisting in the breakthrough to the truths. “Accepted”: consented to, meaning “are known.”

Spk-pt is trying to identify the Dhamma-follower’s “examination” or “pondering” of the teachings with the breakthrough to the truths achieved on the occasion of stream-entry, but the sutta itself distinguishes them, the former being merely preliminary to the latter.

270 This statement makes it clear how the stream-enterer dif-

fers from those on the way to stream-entry. The faith-follower accepts the teachings on trust (with a limited degree of understanding), the Dhamma-follower through investigation; but the stream-enterer has *known and seen* the teachings directly. I read with Se: *evam jānāti evaṃ passati*.

271 *Viññāṇadhātu* is missing in Ee, but found in Be and Se.

#### 26. *Uppādasamyutta*

272 This is a template, to be filled in with the same content as in the preceding chapter. 26:9 is almost identical with 14:36, but includes as well the space element and the consciousness element. 26:10 is fully identical with 22:30. See II, n. 253.

#### 27. *Kilesasamyutta*

273 *Cittass' eso upakkilesa*. Spk: A corruption of what mind? The mind of the four planes. Admittedly, it is so for the mind of the three (mundane) planes, but how is it a corruption of the supramundane mind? By obstructing its arising. For it is a corruption because it does not allow that mind to arise.

Although the title of the chapter has *kilesa*, which I render "defilement," the body of the text uses *upakkilesa*, which I render "corruption." MN I 36–37 enumerates sixteen "corruptions of mind," while 46:33 applies this designation to the five hindrances.

274 Spk: *His mind inclines to renunciation (nekkhammaninnaṃ c' assa cittaṃ hoti)*: The mind of serenity and insight inclines to the nine supramundane states. *Those things to be realized by direct knowledge (abhiññā sacchikaraṇīyesu dhammesu)*: the things pertaining to the six direct knowledges. Spk does not gloss the verb *khāyati*, lit. "appears."

#### 28. *Sāriputtasamyutta*

275 As at 21:3. See I, n. 18.

276 See II, n. 340.

277 See I, n. 377.

278 Her name means "Pure Face." Spk explains that she

approached the elder intending to mock him with her questions and to instigate a debate. Each question and reply has an implicit meaning, which is elicited just below.

279 *Disāmukha*. Spk: *Catasso disā olovento ti attho*.

280 *Vatthuvijjā*, the science of sites, included among the types of wrong livelihood for ascetics at DN I 9,7. Spk explains it as the means of determining whether a site will be suitable for agricultural cultivation, but Sv I 93,14–17 as the science of determining the virtues and faults of sites selected for homes and monasteries, etc., including the protective charms to be recited over them.

281 *Nakkhattavijjā*. See DN I 10,10–31 for more detailed treatment.

282 *Dūteyya-pahīṇagamanānuyoga*. See DN I 8,20–25. This is considered unfitting for a bhikkhu because it reduces his role to that of a messenger for others.

283 *Aṅgavijjā*, mentioned also at DN I 9,7. Spk explains as the science of determining a person's future from his or her bodily features. "Palmistry" is certainly too narrow, but there is no other simple English word that quite captures the sense.

#### 29. *Nāgasamyutta*

284 On the nāgas and the beings featured in the next three *saṃyuttas*, see Introduction to Part III, pp. 850–51. The four modes of generation (*yoni*) are intended to comprise all sentient beings; see MN I 73,3–15. According to Spk, the Buddha spoke this sutta in order to rescue these bhikkhus from the nāga modes of generation (*nāgayonihi uddharaṇattham*; or Se: *ukkaṇṭhanattham*, to make them fed up with the nāga modes of generation).

285 *Uposathaṃ upavasanti vossatṭhakāyā ca bhavanti*. According to Buddhist folklore, the nāgas can undertake the precepts of virtue on the Uposatha days (see I, n. 513), and may even resolve to uphold the precepts at the cost of their lives. The classic illustration is the Campeyya Jātaka (No. 506), in which the Bodhisatta, reborn as a nāga-king, maintains the Uposatha precepts even when cruelly tormented by a snake-charmer.

Spk-pt: "Relinquish their bodies": as they are determined

to maintain the precepts, they have given up their bodies with a mind of unconcern, thinking, "Let those who have need of my skin, blood, or bones take them all."

- 286 Spk glosses *dvayakārino* with *duvidhakārino*, and explains that they do both wholesome and unwholesome deeds.  
287 Each gift item is the subject of a separate sutta.

### 30. *Supaṇṇasaṃyutta*

- 288 Spk: Supaṇṇas of a given class are able to carry off only nāgas that are of an inferior or equal class but not their superiors.

### 31. *Gandhabbakāyasaṃyutta*

- 289 The gandhabbas are associated with fragrant substances, no doubt because the word is based on the stem *gandha*, meaning scent. Spk: Those dwelling in fragrant roots are born with the support of a tree whose roots are fragrant, but the entire tree is available to them as a dwelling place. The same for the other types.

On the Vedic origins of the Buddhist conception of the gandhabbas, see Wijesekera, "Vedic Gandharva and Pāli Gandhabba," in *Buddhist and Vedic Studies*, esp. pp. 191–93.

- 290 Rebirth as a gandhabba is considered favourable and is thus the direct result of good conduct, unlike rebirth as a nāga or supaṇṇa, which is of mixed status and thus the result of ambivalent kamma.

### 32. *Valāhakaṃyutta*

- 291 Spk: These are devas living in space who have arisen in the company of the devas called the cloud dwellers.  
292 The numbering of suttas in Ee has gone awry here, both in text and translation.  
293 I follow Se and Ee: *Yaṃ nūna mayaṃ sakāya ratiyā rameyyāma*. Be reads the verb as *vaseyyāma*. Spk explains that cool weather during the rainy season or winter is a natural coolness caused by the change of seasons, but when it becomes extremely cold during the cool season, or

cold during the summer, that is caused by the power of these devas. Similar explanations are given for the other cases.

### 33. *Vacchagottasaṃyutta*

- 294 Vacchagotta appears as the inquirer in three suttas in MN, Nos. 71, 72, and 73. In the third he becomes a monk and attains arahantship. In SN he reappears in 44:7–11, again with questions about the undeclared points.  
295 This sutta, and those to follow, apply the framework of the Four Noble Truths to each of the five aggregates. Since not knowing the Four Noble Truths (*dukkhe aññānaṃ*, etc.) is ignorance (*avijjā*; see 12:2; II 4,11–14), these suttas collectively establish that ignorance (i.e., lack of knowledge) is the underlying cause of the ten speculative views. Spk says that this *saṃyutta* contains eleven suttas with a total of fifty-five explanations, but I have followed the printed editions, which count each explanation as a separate sutta.  
296 Spk explains each of the causes as a synonym of not knowing. The Pāli ablatives are: *adassanā*, *anabhisamayā*, *ananubodhā*, *appaṭivedhā*, *asallakkhaṇā*, *anupalakkhaṇā*, *apaccupalakkhaṇā*, *asamapekkhaṇā*, *appaccupekkhaṇā*, *apaccakkhakammā*.

### 34. *Jhānasamṃyutta*

- 297 *Jhānasamṃyutta* is also the title of SN 53, which concerns the four *jhānas* as meditative attainments. Since the present *saṃyutta* focuses on *the process* of meditation rather than on the results, I have translated the title accordingly. The *saṃyutta* is constructed as a "wheel" (*cakka*) showing all the possible dyadic permutations of eleven skills related to meditation practice. Each pair is further considered by way of the four possibilities: possession of both, possession of one but not the other, and possession of neither. The first is always the best. Spk states that this entire *Jhānasamṃyutta* is discussed by way of mundane *jhāna*.

Several of the skills are mentioned elsewhere: six at AN III 311,27–30; a partly overlapping six at AN III 427,25–428,4; and seven at AN IV 34,5–9. Between them

these other sources cover all the skills dealt with here except “skill in the object” (*ārammaṇakusala*), which seems to be unique to this *samyutta*. The explanations at Mp III 354–55 correspond closely to those of Spk, but a few minor differences will be noted below.

- 298 Spk: *Skilled in concentration (samādhikusala)*: skilled in determining the factors thus, “The first *jhāna* has five factors, the second three factors,” etc. *But not skilled in attainment regarding concentration (na samādhismiṃ samāpattikusala)*: though he makes the mind pliant by gladdening it [Spk-pṭ: by removing the opposed states and collecting the cooperative causes], he is unable to attain the *jhāna*.

Mp III 354, on *samāpattikusala*: “Having collected suitable food and climate, he is skilled in attaining concentration—adroit, capable, and adept at it.”

I doubt these explanations capture the intended meaning and think it more likely skill in attainment is synonymous with the “mastery in attainment” (*samāpattivasi*) described at Paṭi I 100 thus: “He attains the first *jhāna* (etc.) where, when, and for as long as he wishes; he has no difficulty in attaining.”

- 299 *Sappimaṇḍa*. See II, n. 64.

- 300 *Na samādhismiṃ ṭhitikusalo*. Spk: Not skilled in steadying the *jhāna*, unable to steady the *jhāna* for a mere seven or eight fingersnaps.

This skill may correspond to the “mastery in determination” (*adhīṭṭhānavasi*) described at Paṭi I 100: “He determines (the duration of) the first *jhāna* (etc.) where, when, and for as long as he wishes; he has no difficulty in determining (the duration).”

- 301 *Na vuṭṭhānakusalo*. Spk: Unable to emerge from the *jhāna* at the predetermined time. See the definition of “mastery in emergence” (*vuṭṭhānavasi*) at Paṭi I 100, parallel to the definitions of the previous two masteries.

- 302 *Na kallitakusalo*. Spk: Unskilled in making the mind pliant by gladdening it.

- 303 *Na ārammaṇakusalo*. Spk: Unskilled in the *kasiṇa* object. The objects of the various meditation subjects used for gaining concentration are discussed at Vism 113 (Ppn 3:117).

- 304 *Na gocarakusalo*. Spk: Unskilled in the range of the medita-

tion subject [Spk-pṭ: in the range of the concentration to be produced, in the place of its occurrence known as the meditation subject], and unskilled in the range of the alms round [Spk-pṭ: owing to lack of mindfulness and clear comprehension].

Mp III 354 comments somewhat differently: “Having avoided the unsuitable things that are unhelpful and pursued the suitable things that are helpful, he is skilled in the range when he knows, ‘This concentration has a sign (*nimitta*, a mental image) as object, this one the characteristics (impermanence, etc.) as object.’” This last sentence refers to the distinction between *samatha* (serenity meditation) and *vipassanā* (insight meditation).

- 305 *Na abhinihāraakusalo*. Spk has nothing helpful, but Spk-pṭ says: “Unskilled in resolving to elevate the meditation subject so that it partakes of distinction (*kammaṭṭhānaṃ visesa-bhāgiyatāya abhiniharitum akusalo*). This means being unable to raise it from the first *jhāna* to the second, from the second to the third, etc.”

Mp III 354–55: “He is said to be skilled in resolution in regard to concentration when he is able to resolve on the concentration of the first *jhāna*, etc., for the sake of attaining the successively higher attainments.”

- 306 *Na sakkaccakāri*. Spk: He does not act carefully enough to enter *jhāna*.

- 307 *Na sātaccakāri*.

- 308 *Na sappāyakāri*. Spk: He is unable to fulfil the qualities that are helpful, suitable, for concentration.